Ohio | Department of Commerce

John R. Kasich, Governor Jacqueline T. Williams, Director

December 2018

At its meeting on December 14, 2018, the Ohio Board of Building Standards adopted the rule changes identified as Amendments Group 97. These rule amendments were adopted with an **effective date of July 1, 2019.**

Amendments Group 97 includes the updated Residential Code of Ohio (RCO) rules shown below. For your use, the complete text of each rule can be found following this coversheet and a summary of the significant changes can be found at the end of the rule pages.

Residential Code of Ohio Rules			
OAC Rule Number	**RCO Chapter**	**Chapter Title**	**Effective Date**
4101:8-1-01	**1**	**Administration.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-2-01	**2**	**Definitions.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-3-01	**3**	**Building planning.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-4-01	**4**	**Foundations.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-5-01	**5**	**Floors.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-6-01	**6**	**Wall construction.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-7-01	**7**	**Wall covering.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-8-01	**8**	**Roof-ceiling construction.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-9-01	**9**	**Roof assemblies.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-10-01	**10**	**Chimneys and fireplaces.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-11-01	**11**	**Energy efficiency.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-12-01	**12**	**Mechanical administration.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-13-01	**13**	**General mechanical system requirements.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-14-01	**14**	**Heating and cooling equipment and appliances.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-15-01	**15**	**Exhaust systems.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-16-01	**16**	**Duct systems.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-17-01	**17**	**Combustion air.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-18-01	**18**	**Chimneys and vents.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-19-01	**19**	**Special appliances, equipment and systems.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-20-01	**20**	**Boilers and water heaters.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-21-01	**21**	**Hydronic piping.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-22-01	**22**	**Special piping and storage systems.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-23-01	**23**	**Solar thermal energy systems.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-24-01	**24**	**Fuel gas.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-25-01	**25**	**Plumbing systems.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-29-01	**29**	**Water supply and distribution.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-34-01	**34**	**Electrical.**	**July 1, 2019**
4101:8-44-01	**44**	**Referenced standards.**	**July 1, 2019**

Ohio Board of Building Standards
6606 Tussing Road
Reynoldsburg, OH 43068-9009

614-644-2613
Fax 614 -644-3147
TTY/TDD 800-750-0750
com.ohio.gov

Reason for Changes: The Board amended the Ohio Administrative Code (OAC) Chapters 4101:8-1 to 4101:8-44 (rescind and adopt new) to comply with the five-year rule review and to update the current Residential Code of Ohio to reflect the 2018 edition of the "International Residential Code" with Ohio amendments.

If you should have any questions regarding these rule changes, please call BBS staff at (614)644-2613.

4101:8-1-01 Administration.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 101
GENERAL

101.1 Title. *Chapters 4101:8-1 to 4101:8-25, 4101:8-29, 4101:8-34, and 4101:8-44 of the Administrative Code are designated as the "Residential Code of Ohio for One-, Two-, and Three-Family Dwellings" for which the designation "RCO" may be substituted. The 2018 edition of the "International Residential Code", first printing, Chapters 2 through 24, 29, and 44 as published by the "International Code Council, Inc." is used as the basis of this document as is incorporated fully except as modified in italic herein. References in these chapters to "this code", to the "residential code", or to the "Residential Code of Ohio" in other sections of the Administrative Code shall mean the "Residential Code of Ohio for One-, Two-, and Three-Family Dwellings".*

101.2 Scope. *The provisions of the "Residential Code of Ohio for One-, Two-, and Three-Family Dwellings" shall apply to the construction, alteration, movement, enlargement, replacement, repair, equipment, use and occupancy, location, maintenance, removal, and demolition of every one-, two-, or three-family dwelling, any appurtenances connected or attached to such buildings or structures, or any accessory structure incidental to that dwelling house including electrical equipment associated with bodies of water as defined in article 680 of NFPA 70 as referenced in part IX, chapter 44. This code also applies to a one-family, two-family, or three-family dwelling house that is used as a model to promote the sale of a similar dwelling house. No building or its equipment or accessories, to which the rules of the board apply shall be erected, constructed, or installed, except in conformity with the rules of the board.*

This code also applies to such other residential occupancies as referenced and to the extent indicated in section 310 of the "Ohio Building Code"or OBC.

Exceptions:

1. *Manufactured homes constructed under "24 CFR Part 3280," "Manufactured Home Construction and Safety Standards" and used as a*

dwelling or by a park operator to promote the sale/rental of manufactured homes.

2. *Multiple single-family dwelling structures more than three stories in height and with more than three dwelling units.*
   a. *The structure of one-, two-, and three-family dwellings which are more than three stories in height shall comply with the structural requirements of the OBC or section 106.5 of this code.*
3. *Residential buildings attached to occupancies that are within the scope of the OBC shall comply with the requirements of the "OBC".*
4. *Buildings or structures containing two or three dwelling units with a shared exit shall comply with the requirements of the "OBC."*
5. *Buildings or structures which are incident to the use for agricultural purposes of the land on which said buildings or structures are located, provided such buildings or structures are not used in the business of retail trade; for the purposes of this section, a building or structure is not considered used in the business of retail trade if fifty per cent or more of the gross income received from sales of products in the building or structure by the owner or operator is from sales of products produced or raised in a normal crop year on farms owned or operated by the seller (see sections 3781.06 and 3781.061 of the Revised Code);*
6. *Agricultural labor camps;*
7. *Type A or Type B family day-care homes, except for the inspection required for licensure by the "Ohio Department of Jobs and Family Services (ODJFS)". This required inspection shall be conducted by the certified building department having jurisdiction in accordance with the inspection checklist found on the board of building standard's website.*
8. *Buildings or structures which are designed, constructed, and maintained in accordance with federal standards and regulations and are used primarily for federal and state military purposes where the U.S. secretary of defense, pursuant to 10 U.S.C. Sections 18233(A)(1) and 18237, has acquired by purchase, lease, or transfer, and constructs, expands, rehabilitates, or corrects and equips, such buildings or structures as he determines to be necessary to carry out the purposes of Chapter 1803 of the U.S.C.*
9. *Sewerage systems, treatment works, and disposal systems (including the tanks, piping, and process equipment associated with these systems) regulated by the legislative authority of a municipal corporation or the governing board of a county or special district owning or operating a publicly owned treatment works or sewerage system as stated in division (A) of section 6111.032 of the Revised Code.*
10. *Building sewer piping.*

11. *Private water systems (including tanks, foundations, piping, and process equipment associated with these systems) regulated by the Ohio Department of Health in accordance with section 3701.344 of the Revised Code.*
12. *Wind turbines, pumps, site lighting, and flagpoles not connected to building services equipment.*
13. *Fixed or floating docks (including the electrical wiring and lighting systems serving the docks not connected to building services equipment).*
14. *Retaining walls, bridges, walkways or site stairs unless associated with or necessary for the building or the building egress to comply with the rules of the board.*
15. *The applicable provisions of the OBC shall apply when installing components, equipment, and systems for which there are no provisions in this code.*
16. *When buildings regulated by the OBC are permitted to use the construction requirements of this code, such buildings remain within the scope of the OBC.*

101.3 Intent. *The purpose of this code is to establish uniform minimum requirements for the erection, construction, repair, alteration, and maintenance of residential buildings, including construction of industrialized units. Such requirements shall relate to the conservation of energy, safety, and sanitation of buildings for their intended use and occupancy with consideration for the following:*

1. ***Performance.*** *Establish such requirements, in terms of performance objectives for the use intended. Further, the rules shall consider the following:*
   1.1. *The impact that the state residential building code may have upon the health, safety, and welfare of the public;*
   1.2. *The economic reasonableness of the residential building code;*
   1.3. *The technical feasibility of the residential building code;*
   1.4. *The financial impact that the residential building code may have on the public's ability to purchase affordable housing.*
2. ***Extent of use.*** *Permit to the fullest extent feasible, the use of materials and technical methods, devices, and improvements which tend to reduce the cost of construction without affecting minimum requirements for the health, safety, and security of the occupants of buildings without preferential treatment of types or classes of materials or products or methods of construction.*
3. ***Standardization.*** *To encourage, so far as may be practicable, the*

standardization of construction practices, methods, equipment, material and techniques, including methods employed to produce industrialized units.

This code does not prevent a local governing authority from adopting additional regulations governing residential structures if the regulations comply with this section.

3.1. A local governing authority shall, and any person may, notify the board of building standards of any regulation the local governing authority adopts related to content within the scope of this code and request that the board of building standards determine whether that regulation conflicts with the state residential building code.

3.1.1. Not later than sixty days after receiving a notice to review local regulations for conflict, the board shall determine, based upon a recommendation from the advisory committee, whether the regulation conflicts with the state residential building code and shall notify any person who submitted the notice and the local governing authority that adopted the regulation of the board's determination.

3.1.2. If the board determines that a conflict does not exist, the board shall take no further action with regard to the regulation. If the board determines a conflict exists and the regulation is not necessary to protect the health or safety of the persons within the local governing authority's jurisdiction, the regulation is not valid and the local governing authority may not enforce the regulation.

3.1.3. If the board determines that a conflict exists and that the regulation is necessary to protect the health or safety of the persons within the local governing authority's jurisdiction, the board shall adopt a rule to incorporate the regulation into the state residential building code. Until the rule becomes a part of the state residential building code, the board shall grant a temporary variance to the local governing authority and any similarly situated local governing authority to which the board determines the temporary variance should apply.

101.4 Reasonable application. *The rules of the board and proceedings shall be liberally construed in order to promote its purpose. When the residential building official finds that the proposed design is a reasonable interpretation of the provisions of this code, it shall be approved. Materials, equipment and devices approved by the building officials pursuant to section 114 shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.*

101.5 Jurisdiction without a certified residential building department. *If no municipal, township, or county building department is certified by the Board of Building Standards for residential buildings in accordance with section 3781.10(E) of the Revised Code has jurisdiction, the owner is not required to make submission of construction documents, seek approvals, request inspections, or obtain certificates of occupancy required in this Chapter.*

SECTION 102
APPLICABILITY AND JURISDICTIONAL AUTHORITY

102.1 General. *Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall be applicable.*

102.2 Other laws. *The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of state or federal law. Municipal corporations may make further and additional regulations, not in conflict with Chapters 3781. and 3791. of the Revised Code or with the rules of the board of building standards. However approval by the board of building standards of any fixture, device, material, system, assembly or product of a manufacturing process, or method or manner of construction or installation shall constitute approval for their use anywhere in Ohio.*

102.3 Rules of the board. *As provided in division (B) of section 3781.11 of the Revised Code, the rules of the board of building standards shall supersede and govern any order, standard, or rule of the divisions of state fire marshal or industrial compliance in the department of commerce, and the department of health and of counties and townships, in all cases where such orders, standards or rules are in conflict with the rules of the board of building standards, except that rules adopted and orders issued by the fire marshal pursuant to Chapter 3743. of the Revised Code prevail in the event of a conflict.*

The rules of the board of building standards adopted pursuant to section 3781.10 of the Revised Code shall govern any rule or standard adopted by the board pursuant to sections 4104.02 and 4105.011 of the Revised Code.

102.4 Application of references. *References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.*

102.5 Referenced codes and standards. *The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be considered part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference. When a reference is made within the code to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in Chapter ~~44~~.*

Unless specified otherwise in this code, reference to the term "International Residential Code" shall be changed to "residential code"; reference to "International Fire Code" shall be changed to "fire prevention code"; and reference in design and construction provisions to "one-and two-family dwellings" shall be changed to "one-, two-, and three-family dwellings."

Because the "International Code Council" has placed design and construction information throughout its model code documents, including into the fire prevention code, any referenced code requirements relating to the design, construction, alteration, movement, enlargement, replacement, repair, equipment, use and occupancy, location, removal, and demolition of every building or structure within the scope of this code, shall be enforced by the residential building official.

Where differences occur between provisions of this code and referenced standards listed in Chapter 44, the provisions of this code shall apply.

102.6 Partial invalidity. *In the event any part or provision of this code is held to be illegal or void, this shall not have the effect of making void or illegal any of the other parts or provisions thereof, and it shall be presumed that this code would have been adopted without such illegal or invalid parts or provisions.*

102.7 Existing structures. *The provisions of section 113 shall control the alteration, repair, addition, maintenance, and change of occupancy of any existing structure.*

The occupancy of any structure currently existing on the date of adoption of this code shall be permitted to continue without change provided there are no orders of the residential building official pending, no evidence of fraud, or no serious safety or sanitation hazard. When requested, such approvals shall be in the form of a "Certificate of Occupancy for an Existing Building" in accordance with section 111.

Buildings constructed in accordance with plans which have been approved prior to the effective date of this code are existing buildings.

102.8 Non-required work. *Any component, building element, equipment, system or portion thereof not required by this code shall be permitted to be installed*

provided that it is constructed or installed in accordance with this code to the extent of the installation.

***102.8.1 Fire protection systems**. Non-required fire protection systems shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 29 to the extent of the intended installation.*

***102.8.2 Elevators and lifts.** Non-required elevators and platform lifts shall be installed in accordance with Section 321.*

***102.9 Temporary structures.** The residential building official is authorized to issue approvals for temporary structures. Such approvals shall be in the form of a "Certificate of Occupancy for a Temporary Building" in accordance with section 111.1.5. This section does not apply to time-limited occupancies in existing structures. See section 111.1.4 for time-limited occupancies.*

***102.9.1 Conformance.** Temporary structures shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this code as necessary to ensure the public health, safety and general welfare.*

***102.9.2 Termination of approval.** The residential building official is authorized to terminate approval for a temporary structure and to order the temporary structure to be discontinued if conditions of the approval have been violated or the structure or use poses an immediate hazard to the public or occupants of the structure.*

***102.10 Work exempt from approval.** Approval shall not be required for the following work; however, this work shall comply with all applicable provisions of the rules of the board:*

Building:

1. *One-story detached accessory structures used as tool and storage sheds, playhouses and similar uses, provided the floor area does not exceed two hundred square feet (18.58 m^2) and playground structures.*
2. *Fences not over six feet (1829 mm) high.*
3. *Retaining walls which are not over four feet (1219 mm) in height measured from the bottom of the footing to the top of the wall, unless supporting a surcharge.*

4. *Water tanks supported directly upon grade if the capacity does not exceed five thousand gallons (18 927 L) and the ratio of height to diameter or width does not exceed two to one.*
5. *Sidewalks and driveways not more than thirty inches (762 mm) above grade and not over any basement or story below and which are not part of an accessible route.*
6. *Painting, papering, tiling, carpeting, cabinets, counter tops and similar finish work.*
7. *Swings and other playground equipment accessory to a one, two, or three-family dwelling.*
8. *Window awnings supported by an exterior wall which do not project more than fifty-four inches (1372 mm) from the exterior wall and do not require additional support.*
9. *Decks not exceeding 200 square feet (18.58 m^2)in area, that are not more than 30 inches (762mm) above grade at any point, are not attached to a dwelling, and do not serve the exit door required by section 311.2.*
10. *Above-ground storage tanks as defined in rule 4101:8-2-01 of the Administrative Code and the associated tank foundations.*
11. *Battery operated smoke or carbon monoxide alarms installed in existing buildings where no construction is taking place.*

Electrical:

1. *Listed cord-and-plug connected temporary decorative lighting.*
2. *Reinstallation of attachment plug receptacles but not the outlets thereof.*
3. *Replacement of branch circuit overcurrent devices of the required capacity and type in the same location.*
4. *Electrical wiring, devices, appliances, apparatus, or equipment operating at less than 25 volts and not capable of supplying more than 50 watts of energy.*
5. *Repairs and Maintenance: Approval shall not be required for minor repair work, including the replacement of lamps or the connection of approved portable electrical equipment to approved permanently installed receptacles.*
6. *Process equipment and the associated wiring on the load side of the power disconnect to the equipment.*
7. *Electrical wiring equipment not connected to building services equipment in and adjacent to natural or artificially made bodies of water as defined in Article 682 of NFPA 70 as referenced in Chapter 44.*

Gas:

1. *Portable heating, cooking, or clothes drying appliances;*
2. *Replacement of any minor part that does not alter approval of equipment or make such equipment unsafe.*
3. *Portable fuel cell appliances that are not connected to a fixed piping system and are not interconnected to a power grid.*
4. *Gas distribution piping owned and maintained by public or municipal utilities and located upstream of the point of delivery.*
5. *Process equipment, including the associated tanks, foundations, and process piping. For combination building services/process or power piping systems, the power or process piping located downstream of the control valve which separates the process from the building services piping is exempt from approval.*

Mechanical:

1. *Portable heating appliances;*
2. *Portable ventilation equipment;*
3. *Portable cooling units;*
4. *Steam, hot or chilled water piping within any heating or cooling equipment regulated by this code.*
5. *Replacement of any part that does not alter approval of equipment or make such equipment unsafe.*
6. *Portable evaporative cooler.*
7. *Self-contained refrigeration systems containing ten pounds (4.54 kg) or less of refrigerant or that are actuated by motors of one horsepower (746 W) or less.*
8. *Portable fuel cell appliances that are not connected to a fixed piping system and are not interconnected to a power grid.*
9. *Heating and cooling distribution piping owned and maintained by public or municipal utilities.*
10. *Process equipment including the associated tanks, foundations, and process piping. For combination building services/process or power piping systems, the power or process piping located downstream of the control valve which separates the process from the building services piping is exempt from approval.*

Plumbing:

1. *The repair of leaks in drains, water, soil, waste or vent pipe; provided, however, that if any concealed trap, drain-pipe, water, soil, waste or vent pipe becomes defective and it becomes necessary to remove and replace the same with new material, such work shall be considered as*

new work and an approval shall be obtained and inspection made as provided in this code.

2. *The clearance of stoppages or the repair of leaks in pipes, valves or fixtures, and the removal and reinstallation of water closets, provided such repairs do not involve or require the replacement of more than one fixture or rearrangement of valves, pipes or fixtures.*
3. *Process equipment including the associated tanks, foundations, and process piping. For combination building services/process or power piping systems, the power or process piping located downstream of the control valve which separates the process from the building services piping is exempt from approval.*

102.10.1 Emergency repairs. *Where equipment replacements and repairs must be performed in an emergency situation, an application for approval shall be submitted within the next working business day to the building official.*

102.10.2 Minor repairs. *Minor repairs to structures may be to residential structures made without application or notice to the residential building official. Such repairs shall not include the cutting away of any wall, partition or portion thereof, the removal or cutting of any structural beam or load bearing support, or the removal or change of any required means of egress, or rearrangement of parts of a structure affecting the egress requirements; nor shall ordinary repairs include addition to, alteration of, replacement or relocation of any standpipe, water supply, sewer, drainage, drain leader, gas, soil, waste, vent or similar piping, electric wiring or mechanical or other work affecting public health or general safety.*

102.11 Building department jurisdictional limitations. *A municipal, township, or county residential building department that has been certified by the board of building standards, pursuant to section 103.2, shall enforce provisions of the rules of the board and of Chapters 3781. and 3791. of the Revised Code, relating to construction, arrangement, and the erection of residential buildings or parts thereof as defined in the rules of the board in accordance with the certification except as follows:*

1. ***Fire.*** *The fire chief of municipal corporations or townships, having fire departments, shall enforce all provisions of the rules of the board relating to fire prevention.*
2. ***Health.*** *The department of health, the boards of health of city or general health districts, or the residential departments of building inspection of municipal corporations, townships, or counties shall enforce such provisions relating to sanitary construction.*

3. ***Sewerage and drainage system.*** *In accordance with Section 3781.03 of the Revised Code, the department of the city engineer, in cities having such departments, the boards of health of health districts, or the sewer purveyor, as appropriate, shall have complete supervision and regulation of the entire sewerage and drainage system of the jurisdiction, including the building sewer and all laterals draining into the street sewers. Such department or agency shall have control and supervision of the installation and construction of all drains and sewers that become a part of the sewerage system of the jurisdiction and shall issue all the necessary permits and licenses for the construction and installation of all building sewers and of all other lateral drains that empty into the main sewers. Such department or agency shall keep a permanent record of the installation and location of every drain and sewerage system of the city.*
4. ***Enforcement.*** *This section does not exempt any officer or department from the obligation of enforcing any provision of the rules of the board.*
5. ***State Projects****. Certification does not confer any jurisdiction to a certified building department to:*
    - 5.1 *The construction of buildings by the state of Ohio or on land owned by the state of Ohio including, but is not limited to, its agencies, authorities, boards, commissions, administrative departments, instrumentalities, community or technical college districts, but does not include other political subdivisions.*

        Exception: *Local school district building projects funded by the Ohio school facilities commission in accordance with Chapter 3318. of the Revised Code where the local certified building department is authorized by the board to regulate construction of school facilities.*

    - 5.2 *Park districts created pursuant to Chapter 1545. of the Revised Code. A certified municipal, township, or county building department may exercise enforcement authority, accept and approve plans and specifications, and make inspections for a park district created pursuant to Chapter 1545. of the Revised Code upon the approval, by resolution, of the board of park commissioners of the park district requesting the department to exercise that authority and conduct those activities.*

Note*: The lands owned by Miami university in the city of Oxford and Oxford township in Butler County and leased to private individuals or corporations under the land rent provisions of the Act of February 17, 1809, as set forth at 7*

Ohio laws 184, are subject to local certified building department jurisdiction and are exempt from these provisions.

SECTION 103
CERTIFIED RESIDENTIAL BUILDING DEPARTMENTS, PERSONNEL, AND APPEALS BOARDS

Refer to division 4101:7 of the Administrative Code for existing relocated building department, building department personnel, and boards of building appeals certification requirements.

SECTION 104
DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

104.1 General. *Personnel of residential building departments that have been certified by the board of building standards, pursuant to rule 4101:7-3-01 of the Administrative Code, shall be responsible for performing the duties described in this section.*

104.2 Residential building department personnel duties and responsibilities. *Municipal, township, or county residential building departments certified by the board shall have personnel qualified to perform the enforcement duties and responsibilities described in this section.*

104.2.1 Residential building official. *The residential building official is responsible for the enforcement of the rules of the board and of Chapters 3781. and 3791. of the Revised Code relating to the construction, arrangement, and the erection of residential buildings or parts thereof and may perform duties outlined in this section and in sections 104.2.2.1 and 104.2.3.1 below. All residential building officials shall conduct themselves in a professional, courteous, impartial, responsive, and cooperative manner. Residential building officials shall be responsible to assure that a system is in place to track and audit all projects, to assure that all residential building department personnel perform their duties in accordance with this section, and for the overall administration of a residential building department as follows:*

104.2.1.1 Applications and plan approvals *The residential building official shall receive applications, examine or cause the submitted construction documents to be examined, ascertain by such examinations whether the construction indicated and described is in accordance with the requirements of this code, and shall issue plan approvals for the*

construction, erection, alteration, demolition, and moving of buildings and structures.

104.2.1.2 Orders. *The residential building official shall issue all orders in accordance with section 109 to ensure compliance with this code.*

104.2.1.3 Inspections. *If the plans for the erection, construction, repair, alteration, relocating, or equipment of a building are subject to inspection by the residential building official, under section 108, the residential building official shall make such inspections as the building official is authorized to make or shall cause to be made such inspections, investigations, and determinations as are necessary to determine whether or not the work which has been performed and the installations which have been made are in conformity with the approved construction documents. The residential building official shall identify any special conditions that would affect the timing of inspections and schedule inspections times mutually agreed upon by the building official and the owner.*

104.2.1.4 Residential department records. *The residential building official shall keep official records of applications received, certificate of plan approvals issued, notices and orders issued, certificates of occupancy, certificates of completion and other such records required by the rules of the board of building standards. Such information shall be retained in the official permanent record for each project. One set of approved residential construction documents shall be retained by the residential building official for a period of not less than one hundred eighty days from date of completion of the permitted work, or as required by the residential department's document retention regulations.*

104.2.1.5 Department reports. *The residential building official shall be responsible for the submission of reports and any requested special information to the board of building standards as required in paragraph (F)(1)-(5) of rule 4101:7-2-01 of the Administrative Code.. Failure to submit these reports in a timely manner as required by rule or by special request or inquiry of the board of building standards may be grounds for board action as described in paragraph (G)(3)(a) of rule 4101:7-2-01 of the Administrative Code.*

104.2.2 Residential plans examiners. *A residential plans examiner is responsible for the examination of construction documents in accordance with section 107, within the limits of their certification, to determine compliance*

with the rules of the board and may perform duties outlined in this section and in section 104.2.3.1 below. All residential plan examiners shall effectively communicate the results of their plan review to the owner or the owner's representative and the residential building official. A residential plans examiner shall conduct themselves in a professional, courteous, impartial, responsive, and cooperative manner.

104.2.2.1 Residential plans examiner. *A residential plans examiner is responsible for the examination of all types of residential construction documents to determine compliance with the rules of the board.*

104.2.2.1.1 Residential plans examiner trainee. *A residential plans examiner trainee is responsible for the examination of all types of residential construction documents to determine compliance with the rules of the board under the direct supervision of the trainee supervisor as required in paragraph (F)(5)(b) of rule 4101:7-3-01 of the Administrative Code.*

104.2.2.1.2 Electrical plans examiner. *An electrical plans examiner is responsible for the examination of construction documents related to electrical systems to determine compliance with the rules of the board.*

If the department does not have in its employ or under contract persons holding the electrical plans examiner certification, then the examination of the construction documents for compliance with the electrical provisions of the code shall be done by the residential plans examiner.

104.2.3 Residential inspectors. *A residential inspector is responsible for performing inspections and determining that work, for which they are certified to make inspections, is performed in compliance with the approved residential construction documents. All residential inspectors shall inspect the work to the extent of the approval given when residential construction documents were approved by the residential building official and for which the inspection was requested. All residential inspectors shall effectively communicate the results of their inspections as required by section 108, and shall conduct themselves in a professional, courteous, impartial, responsive, and cooperative manner.*

104.2.3.1 Residential building inspector. *A residential building inspector is responsible to determine compliance with the approved residential construction documents in accordance with section 108.*

A residential building inspector trainee is designated to determine

compliance with approved residential construction documents, in accordance with section 108, under the direct supervision of an individual holding a residential building inspector certification.

104.2.3.2 Residential plumbing inspector. *A residential plumbing inspector is responsible to determine plumbing system compliance with approved residential construction documents in accordance with section 108.*

A residential plumbing inspector trainee is designated to determine plumbing system compliance with approved residential construction documents, in accordance with section 108, under the direct supervision of an individual holding a residential plumbing inspector certification.

104.2.3.3 Electrical safety inspector. *An electrical safety inspector is responsible to determine electrical systems compliance with approved construction documents in accordance with section 108.*

An electrical safety inspector trainee is designated to determine electrical systems compliance with approved construction documents, in accordance with section 108, under the direct supervision of an individual holding an electrical safety inspector certification.

104.2.3.4 Elective inspectors. *Residential building departments may elect to employ inspectors designated as responsible for making inspections to determine that work is performed in compliance with approved construction documents certified as follows:*

104.2.3.4.1 Residential mechanical inspector. *A residential mechanical inspector is responsible to determine compliance with the approved residential construction documents for heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) systems, and the associated refrigeration, fuel gas, and heating piping systems in accordance with section 108.*

If the residential department does not have in its employ or under contract persons holding the residential mechanical inspector certification, then the enforcement of the mechanical provisions shall be done by the residential building inspector;

A residential mechanical inspector trainee is designated to determine compliance with the approved residential construction documents for heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) systems, and the associated refrigeration, fuel gas, and heating piping systems, in accordance with section 108, under the direct supervision of an individual holding a residential mechanical inspector certification.

104.2.4 Liability. *Liability of certified residential building department personnel for any tortious act will be determined by Ohio courts to the applicable provisions of Chapter 2744. of the Revised Code.*

104.3 Violation of duties. *Any person affected by the improper actions of any residential building department, residential building official, residential plans examiner, residential inspector, or fire protection system designer certified by the board of building standards may file a written complaint with the board. Complaints will be processed by the board in accordance with the procedures outlined in the applicable certification rule found in division 4101:7 of the Administrative Code.*

SECTION 105
APPROVALS

105.1 Approvals required. *Any owner or authorized agent who intends to construct, enlarge, alter, repair, move, or change the occupancy of a residential building or structure, or portion thereof, or to erect, install, enlarge, alter, repair, remove, convert or replace any electrical, gas, mechanical, plumbing system, other residential building service equipment, or piping system the installation of which is regulated by this code, or to cause any such work to be done, shall first make application to the residential building official of a certified residential building department and obtain the required approval.*

105.1.1 Nonconformance approval. *When residential construction documents are submitted which do not conform with the requirements of the rules of the board, such documents may be approved by the residential building official provided such nonconformance is not considered to result in a serious hazard and the owner or owner's representative subsequently submits revised residential construction documents showing evidence of compliance with the applicable provisions of the rules of the board. In the event such residential construction documents are not received within thirty days, the residential building official shall issue an adjudication order revoking the plan approval.*

105.1.2 Conditional approval. *When residential construction documents are submitted which cannot be approved under the other provisions of this rule, the residential building official, may at the request of the owner or owner's representative, issue a conditional plan approval when an objection to any portion of the residential construction documents results from conflicting interpretations of the code, or compliance requires only minor modifications to*

the building design or construction. No conditional approval shall be issued where the objection is to the application of specific technical requirements of the code or correction of the objection would cause extensive changes in the building design or construction. A conditional approval is a conditional license to proceed with construction or materials up to the point where construction or materials objected to by the agency are to be incorporated into the building. The conditions objected to shall be in writing from the residential building official which shall be an adjudication order denying the issuance of a license and may be appealed in accordance with section 3781.19 of the Revised Code.

In the absence of fraud or a serious safety or sanitation hazard, all items previously examined shall be conclusively presumed to comply with Chapters 3781. and 3791. of the Revised Code and the rules of the board. Reexamination of the residential construction documents shall be limited to those items in the adjudication order. A conditional plan approval is not a phased plan approval.

105.1.3 Previous approvals. *This code shall not require changes in the residential construction documents, construction or designated occupancy of a structure for which a lawful approval has previously been issued or otherwise lawfully authorized, and the construction of which has been pursued in good faith within one year of the approval of residential construction documents.*

One extension shall be granted for an additional year if requested by the owner at least ten days in advance of the expiration of the approval and upon payment of any fee not to exceed one hundred dollars.

If, after the start of construction, work is delayed or suspended for more than six months, the approval is invalid. Two extensions shall be granted for six months if requested by the owner at least ten days in advance of the expiration of the approval and upon payment of any fee for each extension not to exceed one hundred dollars.

105.1.4 Phased approval. *The residential building official shall issue an approval for the residential construction of foundations, floors, walls, roofs or any other part of a building, structure, or building service equipment before the residential construction documents for the whole building, structure or building service equipment have been submitted, provided that adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with applicable requirements of this code. The holder of such approval for the foundations, floors, walls, roofs or other parts of a building or structure shall proceed at the holder's own risk with the building operation and without assurance that an approval for the entire structure will be granted. Such approvals shall be issued for various stages in the sequence of construction provided that all information and data required by the code for that portion of the building or structure has*

been submitted. The holder of a phased plan approval may proceed only to the point for which approval has been given.

105.2 Validity of approval. *The construction, erection, and alteration of a building, and any addition thereto, and the equipment and maintenance thereof, shall conform to required plans which have been approved by the residential building official, except for minor deviations which do not involve a violation of the rules of the board. In the absence of fraud or a serious safety or sanitation hazard, any residential structure built in accordance with approved plans shall be conclusively presumed to comply with Chapters 3781. and 3791. of the Revised Code and the rules of the board.*

Exception: *Industrialized units shall be constructed to conform to the plans approved by the board.*

105.3 Expiration. *The approval of plans or drawings and specifications or data in accordance with this rule is invalid if construction, erection, alteration, or other work upon the building has not commenced within twelve months of the approval of the residential construction documents.*

One extension shall be granted for an additional twelve-month period if requested by the owner at least ten days in advance of the expiration of the approval and upon payment of a fee not to exceed one hundred dollars.

105.4 Extension. *If, in the course of construction, work is delayed or suspended for more than six months, the approval of residential construction documents is invalid. Two extensions shall be granted for six months each if requested by the owner at least ten days in advance of the expiration of the approval and upon payment of a fee for each extension of not more than one hundred dollars.*

105.5 Certificate of plan approval. *After residential construction documents have been approved in accordance with section 107, the residential building official shall furnish the owner/applicant a certificate of plan approval.*

105.5.1 Content. *The form of the certificate shall be as prescribed by the residential building official and shall show the serial number of the certificate, the address at which the building or equipment under consideration is or is to be located, the name and address of the owner, the signature of the residential building official who issued the certificate, and such other information as is necessary to facilitate and ensure the proper enforcement of the rules of the board.*

105.5.2 Duplicate issued upon request. *Upon application by the owner, the residential building official shall issue a duplicate certificate of plan approval to replace a lost or destroyed original.*

SECTION 106
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

106.1 Submittal documents. *Residential construction documents and other data shall be submitted in two or more sets with each application for an approval. Before beginning the construction of any building for which construction documents are required under section 105, the owner or the owner's representative shall submit construction documents to the residential building official of a certified residential building department for approval. When construction documents have been found to be in compliance with the rules of the board of building standards in accordance with section 107 by a certified residential building department, that determination of compliance shall be deemed sufficient to obtain approval for construction pursuant to section 105.2 and the residential building official shall issue the certificate of plan approval. Construction documents for the installation of industrialized units shall be submitted to the residential building official for approval in accordance with the provisions of section 106.1.4.*

106.1.1 Professionally prepared construction documents. *Construction documents which have been prepared by a registered design professional who prepared the same as conforming to the requirements of the rules of the board pertaining to design loads, stresses, strength, and stability, or other requirements involving technical analysis, need be examined only to the extent necessary to determine conformity of such residential construction documents with other requirements of this code.*

106.1.2 Residential fire protection system construction documents. *Residential construction documents for fire protection systems authorized to be submitted by individuals certified pursuant to Chapter 4101:2-87 of the Administrative Code shall:*

1. *When submitted under the signature of an individual certified under section 3781.105 of the Revised Code, be processed in the same manner as construction documents submitted under the signature of a registered design professional. Any statistical data, reports, explanations, plan description, or information that would not also be required for a similar submission by a registered design professional need not be submitted by a certified designer.*

2. *If certified by a registered design professional or individual certified under section 3781.105 of the Revised Code as conforming to requirements of the rules of the board pertaining to design loads, stresses, strength, stability, or other requirements involving technical analysis, be examined by the building department official only to the extent necessary to determine conformity of such construction documents with other requirements of this Code.*

106.1.3 Information on construction documents. *Residential construction documents shall be dimensioned and drawn upon suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted when approved by the residential building official. Construction documents shall be coordinated and of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code. Construction documents, adequate for the scope of the project, shall include information necessary to determine compliance with this code.*

1. ***Index.*** *An index of drawings located on the first sheet;*
2. ***Site plan.*** *A site plan showing a north orientation arrow, the size and location of new residential construction and all existing structures on the site, all property and interior lot line locations with setback and side yard dimensions and distances from buildings to lot lines, the locations of the nearest streets, the established street grades, the locations, types and sizes of all utility lines, the location of any fences, and the elevations of all proposed finished grades; and it shall be drawn in accordance with an accurate boundary line survey. In the case of demolition, the site plan shall show construction to be demolished and the location and size of existing structures and construction that are to remain on the site or plot. The residential building official is authorized to waive or modify the requirement for a site plan when the application for approval is for alteration or repair or when otherwise warranted.*

   2.1. ***Residential buildings or structures located in flood hazard areas.*** *Construction documents submitted for residential buildings or structures located in communities with identified flood hazard areas, pursuant to section 1612, shall include the current FEMA "Flood Hazard Boundary Map" (FHBM), "Flood Insurance Rate Map" (FIRM) or "Flood Boundary Floodway Map" (FBFM) for the project location. The required site plan shall include building elevations using the same datum as the related flood hazard map. The owner shall be responsible for the compliance with local flood damage prevention regulations for additional critical elevation information for the project site. The elevation certification and dry*

flood proofing certification, when required for buildings or structures located in communities with identified flood hazard areas, shall be submitted to the residential building official.

2.2. ***Site accessibility plan.*** *For structures of four or more dwellings, information in plan view and details shall be submitted indicating compliance with the accessibility provisions of this code for the exterior of the building in addition to any accessible features of the interior. When applicable, the plans shall include: the exterior accessible route between all facilities required to be connected; ramp locations and elevations along the exterior accessible route; number of and details for the required accessible van and car parking spaces and passenger loading areas; location and detail of required accessibility signage; grade/topographic elevations before and after proposed grading when site impracticality is intended to be applied.*

3. ***Floor plans.*** *Complete floor plans, including plans of full or partial basements and full or partial attics. Floor plans must show all relevant information such as door swings, stairs and ramps, windows, shafts, all portions of the means of egress, etc., and shall be sufficiently dimensioned to describe all relevant space sizes. Wall materials shall be described by cross-hatching (with explanatory key), by notation, or by other clearly understandable method. Spaces must be identified by how each space is intended to be used.*

4. ***Exterior wall envelope.*** *The exterior envelope shall be described in sufficient detail to determine compliance with this code and the referenced standards. Details or elevations shall be provided which describe floor to floor dimensions, flashing, intersections with dissimilar materials, corners, end details, control joints, intersections at roof, eaves, or parapets, means of drainage, water-resistive membrane, details around openings, location and type of vapor retarders, window and door "U"-values, and insulation location and "R"-values. The supporting documentation shall fully describe the exterior wall system, which was tested, where applicable, as well as the test procedure used.*

5. ***Sections.*** *Cross sections, wall sections, details including typical connections as required to fully describe the residential building construction showing wall, ceiling, floor and roof materials. Residential construction documents shall describe the exterior wall envelope in sufficient detail to determine compliance with this code.*

6. ***Structure.*** *Complete structural description of the residential building including size and location of all structural elements used in the design*

of the residential building and other data as required to fully describe the structural system.

7. ***Ratings.*** *The fire-resistance ratings of all structural elements as required by this code, data substantiating all required fire-resistance ratings including details showing how penetrations will be made for electrical, mechanical, plumbing, and communication conduits, pipes, and systems, and the materials and methods for maintaining the required structural integrity, fire-resistance rating, and firestopping.*
8. ***System descriptions.*** *Description of the mechanical, plumbing and electrical systems, including: materials; location and type of fixtures and equipment; materials, and sizes of all ductwork; location and type of heating, ventilation, air conditioning and other mechanical equipment; and all lighting and power equipment.*
9. ***Accessibility provisions.*** *When non-required accessibility components are intended to be installed, indicate whether the project will comply with Type A, Type B, Type C (Visitable), or Accessible units in ICC/ANSI A117.1 listed in Chapter 44 as pursuant to Section 320.1.*
10. ***Additional information.*** *Additional graphic or text information as may be reasonably required by the residential building official to allow the review of special or extraordinary construction methods or equipment.*

106.1.3.1 Fire protection system drawings. *Construction documents for the fire protection system(s) shall be submitted to indicate conformance with this code and shall be approved prior to the start of system installation.*

106.1.3.2 Manufacturer's installation instructions. *Manufacturer's installation instructions, as required by this code, shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection.*

106.1.4 Industrialized units. *When construction includes the use of industrialized units approved by the board, documentation shall be provided to the building official describing how they are to be used. Before these items are installed or used, the following shall be submitted:*

1. *A copy of the construction documents approved by the board; and*
2. *Details pertaining to on-site interconnection of modules or assemblies.* ***Exception****: When construction includes the use of industrialized units for one-, two-, and three- family dwellings and their accessory structures, the documents shall be provided to the residential building official. If no residential department is certified in a jurisdiction, construction documents for one-, two-, or three-family dwellings comprised of industrialized units are not required to be submitted for*

approval.

106.1.4.1. Definitions.

Closed construction. *An assembly of materials or products manufactured in such a manner that its structural, plumbing, electrical, environmental control, or fire protection elements or components are concealed and are not readily accessible for inspection at the site of its erection, without disassembly, damage, or destruction. Closed construction includes assemblies where only one of the components is not accessible for inspection. (For example, an accessory structure where all the electrical conductors and components are exposed for inspection and its roof and wall panels have exposed structural members but the floor panel structural members are not exposed.)*

Industrialized units. *Industrialized units are prefabricated components comprised of closed construction manufactured at a location remote from the site of intended use and transported to a building site for its subsequent use. Industrialized units are not restricted to housing for one-, two-, and three-family dwellings, but include all prefabricated forms of building elements and assembled construction units, intended for both structural and service equipment purposes in all buildings of all groups. Prefabricated shop assemblies may be shipped in structurally complete units ready for installation in the building structure or in knock-down and packaged form for assembly at the site.*

106.1.4.2 General terms. *Such terms as heart modules or cores, modules, modulars, service cores, prefabs, sectional or sectionalized, panels or panelized construction, and specific terms including "prefabricated-subassembly, -building, -unit, -unit service equipment" shall be considered industrialized units. They may be self-sufficient or interdependent as a unit or group of units and used together or incorporated with standard construction methods to form a completed structural entity.*

For a complete description of the Ohio industrialized unit program refer to OBC Section 113.

106.2 Evidence of responsibility. *Required residential construction documents, when submitted for review as required under section 107, shall bear the identification of the person primarily responsible for their preparation.*

106.3 Amended construction documents. *If substantive changes to the residential*

building are contemplated after first document submission, or during construction, those changes must be submitted to the residential building official for review and approval prior to those changes being executed. The residential building official may waive this requirement in the instance of an emergency repair, or similar instance.

106.4 Alternative materials and methods of construction and equipment. *For approval of a device, material or assembly that does not conform to the performance requirements in this code, section 114 shall apply.*

106.5 Alternative engineered design. *The design, documentation, inspection, testing and approval of an alternative engineered system shall comply with sections 106.5.1 to 106.5.3.*

106.5.1 Design criteria. *An alternative engineered design shall conform to the intent of the provisions of this code and shall provide an equivalent level of quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Materials, equipment or components shall be designed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.*

106.5.2 Submittal. *A registered design professional shall indicate on the application that the system is an alternative engineered design. The approval and permanent approval records shall indicate that an alternative engineered design was part of the approved installation. Where special conditions exist, the residential building official is authorized to require additional construction documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.*

106.5.3 Technical data. *The registered design professional shall submit sufficient technical data to substantiate the proposed alternative engineered design and to prove that the performance meets the intent of this code.*

Exception: *Approval of alternative materials, products, assemblies and methods of construction in accordance with Section 114.3.2.*

SECTION 107
PLAN APPROVAL PROCESS

107.1 Plan review required. *Where the rules of the board are applicable under section 101.2, before a residential building or addition to a residential building is constructed or erected, and before a residential building is altered or relocated, or residential building equipment is installed, or a resubmission of construction documents is required or received, residential construction documents relating to*

the work and equipment under consideration shall be prepared in conformity with section 106 and be submitted to the residential building department for examination and approval.

107.2 Application for plan approval. *To obtain a plan approval, the owner or the owner's representative shall first file an application in writing on a form furnished by the residential building department for that purpose. Such application shall:*

1. *Identify and describe the work to be covered for which application is made for approval.*
2. *Describe the land on which the proposed work is to be done, street address or similar description that will readily identify and locate the proposed building or work.*
3. *Be accompanied by residential construction documents and other information as required in section 106.1.*
4. *Be signed by the owner, or the owner's authorized agent.*
5. *Give such other data and information as required by the residential building official.*
6. *Identify and clearly indicate whether the project or portion of a project intends to utilize an industrialized unit.*
7. *Identify and clearly indicate whether the project or portion of a project intends to utilize an assembly of individually listed or labeled products.*

107.2.1 Time limitation of application. *The approval of construction documents under this section is a "license" and the failure to approve such construction documents as submitted within thirty days after filing or the disapproval of such construction documents is an "adjudication order denying the issuance of a license" requiring the opportunity for an "adjudication hearing" as provided by sections 119.07 to 119.13 of the Revised Code and as modified by sections 3781.031 and 3781.19 of the Revised Code. In accordance with section 109, an adjudication order denying the issuance of a license shall specify the reasons for such denial.*

If residential construction documents have been reviewed for compliance with the rules of the board, an adjudication order has been issued to the owner and the owner's representative, and the owner has neither exercised the right to appeal pursuant to section 110 nor resubmitted corrected documents, the application is invalid six months from the date of the issuance of the adjudication order.

107.3 Order of plan review. *Residential construction documents submitted for approval shall be examined for compliance with the rules of the board in the order*

received, unless otherwise consented to by the building owners affected by deferred examination.

107.4 Review of plans. *When residential construction documents have been submitted to the residential building department for review and approval, the building official shall review as appropriate or shall cause the residential construction documents to be examined for compliance with the rules of the board by assigning the examination duty to an appropriately certified individual. The residential building official or plans examiner shall first determine whether the construction documents are adequate as required in section 106. If adequate, the plans examiner(s) shall examine the construction documents to determine compliance with the rules of the board.*

107.4.1 Inadequate construction documents. *If residential construction documents are determined to be incomplete or inadequate for examination, the residential plans examiner shall report the findings to the residential building official. The residential plans examiner shall examine the construction documents to the extent possible and identify what information from section 106 is missing and needed to complete the required examination. Upon receipt and review of the report, the residential building official shall proceed as required in section 107.6.*

107.4.2 Resubmitted documents. *If residential construction documents are resubmitted in response to an adjudication order, the review for compliance shall be limited to determining that the item of non-compliance, and any work affected, has been corrected and shall not be deemed to authorize another review of unmodified construction documents previously determined to comply.*

107.4.3 Sealed construction documents*. Residential construction documents, if prepared by an Ohio registered design professional to conform to the requirements of the rules of the board pertaining to design loads, stresses, strength, and stability, or other requirements involving technical analysis, need be examined only to the extent necessary to determine conformity of such construction documents with other requirements of the rules of the board.*

107.5 Plan review, compliance with rules of the board. *If the residential construction documents are determined to comply with the rules of the board, the residential plans examiner shall communicate the findings and recommend the conditions and type of approval to the residential building official.*

107.5.1 Residential building official approval. *The residential building official*

shall evaluate the residential plans examiner's recommendations. When the residential construction documents have been determined to conform to the applicable provisions of the rules of the board, the residential building official shall endorse or stamp such plans as approved and issue the certificate of plan approval in accordance with section 105.5.

107.5.2 Posting. *The certificate of plan approval shall be posted in a conspicuous location on the site. The owner and the contractor shall preserve and keep the certificate posted until the final inspections have been completed.*

107.6 Plan review, items of noncompliance. *When the residential construction documents are examined and items of noncompliance with the rules of the board are found, the residential building official shall proceed as required in either section 107.6.1 or section 107.6.2.*

107.6.1 Communication process for items of non-compliance.

1. *Item(s) of non-compliance shall be communicated to the owner or the owner's representative and the following options shall be offered:*
   - *1.1 The owner will revise the construction documents and resubmit to the department.*
   - *1.2 The items of noncompliance will not be brought into compliance and will be referred to the residential building official as indicated in item 4 below.*
2. *The owner or the owner's representative shall indicate which option (item 1 above) will be exercised.*
3. *Notations of the communication shall be made on a plan review record. The notations shall include the residential plans examiner's name, the date of the communication with the owner or the owner's representative, the observed items of noncompliance, the code citation related to the item(s) of noncompliance, the action necessary to correct the item(s) of noncompliance, the option chosen by the owner or the owner's representative, the name of the person communicated with, and the estimated dates of compliance and resubmission, if applicable.*
4. *If the owner or the owner's representative indicates that the work will not be brought into compliance with the rules of the board or requests an adjudication order, the residential plans examiner shall report to the building official in accordance with section 107.6.2.*

107.6.2 Residential building official determination of noncompliance. *The residential building official shall evaluate the results of the plans examination and render a final determination as to whether the items of non-compliance are*

to be communicated to the owner in the form of an adjudication order complying with section 109. The residential building official shall also determine whether any approvals are possible, and issue the appropriate approval as described in section 105.

107.7 Approved residential construction document sets. *One set of approved residential construction documents shall be kept by the residential building official. The other set(s) shall be returned to the applicant, kept at the work site, along with manufacturers' installation instructions and product information, and shall be available for use by the residential inspectors.*

SECTION 108
INSPECTION PROCESS

108.1 General. *After residential construction documents have been approved, construction or work may proceed in accordance with the approved documents. Construction or work for which an approval is required shall be subject to inspection. It shall be the duty of the owner or the owner's duly authorized representative to notify the residential building department when work is ready for inspection. Access to and means for inspection of such work shall be provided for any inspections that are required by this code.*

It shall be the duty of the owner or the owner's authorized representative to cause the work to remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes. Such construction or work shall remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes until the work has been inspected to verify compliance with the approved construction documents, but failure of the inspectors to inspect the work within four days, exclusive of Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays, after the work is ready for inspection, allows the work to proceed.

Subsequent work is allowed to proceed only to the point of the next required inspection.

108.2 Required inspections. *At the time that the certificate of plan approval is issued, the residential building official shall provide to the owner, or the owner's representative, a list of all required inspections for each project. The required inspection list shall be created from the applicable inspections set forth in sections 108.2.1 to 108.2.12. The residential building official, upon notification from the owner or the owner's agent that the work is ready for inspection, shall cause the inspections set forth in the required inspection list to be made by an appropriately certified residential inspector in accordance with the approved residential construction documents.*

108.2.1 Lot line markers required. *Before any work is started in the construction of a residential building or an addition to a residential building to which the rules of the board are applicable under section 101.2, all boundary lines shall be clearly marked at their intersections with permanent markers or with markers which are offset at a distance which is of record with the owner.*

108.2.2 Footing or foundation inspection. *Footing and foundation inspections shall be made after excavations for footings are complete and any required reinforcing steel is in place. For concrete foundations, any required forms shall be in place prior to inspection. Materials for the foundation shall be on the job, except where concrete is ready mixed in accordance with "ASTM C 94", the concrete need not be on the job.*

108.2.3 Concrete slab and under-floor inspection. *Concrete slab and under-floor inspections shall be made after in-slab and under-floor reinforcing steel and building service equipment, conduit, insulation, vapor retarder, piping accessories and other ancillary equipment items are in place, but before any concrete is placed or floor sheathing installed, including the subfloor.*

108.2.4 Lowest floor elevation. *The elevation certification required in section 322 shall be submitted to the residential building official.*

108.2.5 Frame inspection. *Framing inspections shall be made after the roof deck or sheathing, all framing, fire blocking and bracing are in place and pipes, chimneys and vents to be concealed are complete and the rough electrical, plumbing, heating wires, pipes and ducts are approved.*

108.2.6 Lath or gypsum board inspection. *Lath and gypsum board inspections shall be made after lathing and gypsum board, interior and exterior, is in place, but before any plastering is applied or before gypsum board joints and fasteners are taped and finished.*

Exception: *Gypsum board that is not part of a fire-resistive assembly or a shear assembly.*

108.2.7 Fire-resistant penetrations. *Protection of joints and penetrations in fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall not be concealed from view until inspected and approved.*

108.2.8 Energy efficiency inspections. *Inspections shall be made to determine compliance with Chapter 11 and shall include, but not be limited to, inspections*

for: envelope insulation "R" and "U" values, fenestration "U" value, duct system "R" value, infiltration air barriers, caulking/sealing of openings in envelope and ductwork, and "HVAC" and water heating equipment efficiency.

108.2.9 Testing of residential building service equipment. *Inspections shall be made of all residential building services equipment to ensure that it has been installed in accordance with the approved construction documents, the equipment listings, and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Inspections shall include, but not be limited to, inspections for the following systems and their associated components: mechanical heating and ventilating systems, mechanical exhaust systems, plumbing systems, fire protection systems, and electrical systems.*

108.2.10 Other inspections. *In addition to the inspections specified above, the residential building official is authorized to cause to be made or require other inspections of any residential construction work to be made to ascertain compliance with the provisions of this code.*

Where applications are submitted for projects of unusual magnitude of construction, the building official may require inspections or full-time project representation by a registered design professional or inspection agency. This inspector/project representative shall keep daily records and submit reports as required by the building official.

Exception: *Where the building official requires full-time project inspection, the installation of a fire protection system may be inspected by a person certified under section 3781.105 of the Revised Code. The person shall be certified in the appropriate subfield of fire protection systems being inspected – automatic sprinkler, fire alarm, or special hazards systems design.*

108.2.11 Inspections, compliance with construction documents. *When an inspector from the department having jurisdiction finds that completed work is in accordance with the approved construction documents, the inspector shall communicate the findings to the owner's on-site representative, shall make a note of the satisfactory inspection on an on-site inspection record and in the inspector's log, and communicate the findings to the residential building official. The residential building official, after review of the findings, shall issue the certificate of occupancy in accordance with section 111.*

108.2.12 Industrialized unit inspections. *If the project will include the use of industrialized units approved by the board, the residential building official shall cause inspections to be made for on-site construction to complete the*

installation of the industrialized unit in conformance with the applicable provisions of the rules of the board. Such inspections shall include:

1. *Connection to on-site construction, interconnection of modules, connection to utilities. The inspections and conducting of required tests shall not require the destruction or disassembly of any factory-constructed component authorized by the board.*
2. *Inspection of the unit for damage resulting from transportation, improper protection of exposed parts from inclement weather or other causes. Damage shall be repaired as required by the residential building official to comply with the applicable provisions of the rules of the board;*
3. *Inspection of the unit to determine if it is marked by an insignia furnished by the board; and*
4. *Inspect the unit to determine if the floor plan, exterior elevations, and exposed details are in conformance with the construction documents approved by the board.*

108.3 Inspection agencies. *The residential building official is authorized to accept reports of approved inspection agencies, provided such agencies are approved in accordance with the rules of the board of building standards.*

108.4 Right of entry. *The residential building official, or the residential building official's designee, is authorized to enter the structure or premises at reasonable times to inspect or to perform the duties imposed by this code, provided that credentials are presented to the occupant and that entry is requested and obtained. Where permission to enter has not been obtained, is denied, or the residential building official has probable cause to believe that there exists in a structure or upon a premises a condition which is a serious hazard, the residential building official shall proceed as required in section 109 and shall also have recourse to the remedies provided by law to secure entry.*

108.5 Inspections, compliance with residential construction documents. *When an individual certified to make inspections from the residential department having jurisdiction finds that completed work is in accordance with the approved residential construction documents, the certified individual shall communicate the findings to the owner's on-site representative, shall make a note of the satisfactory inspection on an on-site inspection record and in the residential inspector's log, and communicate their findings to the residential building official. The residential building official, after review of the findings, shall issue the certificate of occupancy in accordance with section 111.*

108.6 Inspections, observation of violations, unsafe conditions, or serious hazards. *When an individual certified to make inspections from the residential department having jurisdiction finds that any work in connection with the location, erection, construction, repair, alteration, moving, or equipment of a residential building is contrary to the approved residential construction documents for the same, the residential building inspector shall proceed as required in either section 108.6.1 or 108.7.*

108.6.1 Communication process for work contrary to approved construction documents.

1. *Communicate the nature of the differences to the owner or the owner's on-site representative and offer the following options*
   - 1.1 *The owner will bring the item of noncompliance into compliance,*
   - 1.2 *The owner will revise the construction documents and resubmit to the residential department,*
   - 1.3 *The items of noncompliance will not be brought into compliance and will be referred to the residential building official as indicated in item 4 below.*
2. *The owner or the owner's on-site representative shall indicate which option (item 1 above) will be exercised*
3. *Notations on the on-site inspection record and in the residential inspector's log shall be made. The notations shall include the name of the certified individual authorized to make the inspections, the date of the inspection, the type of inspection, the observed items of noncompliance, the option chosen by the owner or the owner's on-site representative, the name of the person communicated with, and the estimated dates of compliance and follow-up inspections, if applicable.*
4. *If the owner or the owner's on-site representative indicates that the work will not be brought into compliance with the approved residential construction documents, the individual certified to make inspections shall submit a report to the residential building official for the final determination of noncompliance in accordance with section 108.7.*

108.6.2 Observation of violations not shown on plans. *If an individual certified to make inspections, in the course of performing the assigned or requested inspections, observes a code violation that was either shown incorrectly or not adequately addressed or detailed in the approved residential construction documents, the certified individual shall communicate the finding to the residential building official so that the residential building official can make a determination of whether the code violation is of such significance to warrant communicating the finding to the owner or the owner's representative*

as a recommended change.

108.6.3 Observation of unsafe conditions or serious hazards. *If an individual certified to make inspections, in the course of performing the assigned or requested inspections, observes an unsafe condition or a serious hazard, the certified individual shall communicate that condition to the owner or the owner's on-site representative and shall report the findings immediately to the residential building official so that the residential building official can make a final determination of whether the violation constitutes a serious hazard which requires the issuance of an adjudication order as required in section 109.*

108.6.4 Industrialized units, observations of noncompliance. *When an individual certified to make inspections from the residential department having jurisdiction finds that a residential industrialized unit has been constructed contrary to the residential construction documents approved by the board, the certified individual shall report the nonconformance to the residential building official. The residential building official shall notify the board of all violations of section 108.2.13. The board or its designee and the residential building official shall determine the corrective action to be taken before the residential building is approved to be occupied.*

108.7 Residential building official determination of noncompliance. *The residential building official shall evaluate any report of items of noncompliance and render a final determination as to whether the items of non-compliance are to be communicated to the owner in the form of an adjudication order complying with section 109. The residential building official shall also determine whether any approvals are possible.*

108.8 Acceptance, performance, and operational testing. *Acceptance, performance, and operational testing shall be conducted as required in the applicable code or referenced standard. Advanced notice of the test schedule shall be given to the building official. The residential building official may require that the tests be conducted in the presence of the building official or certified residential inspector. Testing and inspection records shall be made available to the residential building official or inspector, upon request, at all times during the fabrication of the systems and the erection of the building.*

108.8.1 New, altered, extended or repaired systems. *New systems and parts of existing systems, which have been altered, extended, renovated or repaired, shall be tested as prescribed herein to disclose leaks and defects.*

108.8.2 Apparatus, material and labor for tests. *Apparatus, material and labor required for testing a system or part thereof shall be furnished by the owner or the owner's representative. Required tests shall be conducted by and at the expense of the owner or the owner's representative.*

108.8.3 Reinspection and testing. *Where any work or installation does not pass an initial test or inspection, the inspector shall proceed as outlined in section 108.6.*

SECTION 109
ORDERS, VIOLATIONS, AND UNSAFE BUILDINGS

109.1 Adjudication orders required. *When the residential building official denies any approval or takes action in response to findings of non-compliance, such action shall be initiated by issuing an adjudication order, prior to seeking any remedy, civil or criminal. Every adjudication order shall:*

1. *Clearly identify the section of law or rules violated;*
   - *1.1 Clearly identify, in a contrasting and obviously marked manner, all violations related to accessibility.*
2. *Specifically indicate which detail, installation, site preparation, material, appliance, device, addition, alteration to structures, residential construction documents, assemblages or procedures are necessary to change to comply with the order;*
   - *2.1 When issued to stop work, the order shall also clearly indicate the specific work that is required to cease, when the work must cease and the conditions under which the cited work will be permitted to resume. The order to stop work shall be given to the owner of the property involved, to the owner's agent and the person doing the work.*
3. *Include notice of the procedure for appeal and right to a hearing if requested within thirty days of the mailing of the order. The order shall also indicate that, at the hearing, the owner may be represented by counsel, present arguments or contentions orally or in writing, and present evidence and examine witnesses appearing for or against the owner;*
4. *Specify a reasonable period of time in which to bring the item(s) on the order into compliance;*
5. *Include the signature of the residential building official;*
6. *The order shall be sent by certified mail, return receipt requested, to the owner and any individual designated as a representative or agent by the owner in such matters.*

109.2 Response to orders. *The person receiving an order shall exercise their right to appeal within 30 days of the mailing of the order, comply with the order, or otherwise be released from the order by the residential building official.*

109.3 Prosecution and penalties. *When an owner fails to comply with section 109.2, the owner may be prosecuted and is subject to a fine of not more than five hundred dollars as provided for in section 3791.04 of the Revised Code.*

109.3.1 Unlawful continuance. *Failure to cease work after receipt of an order to stop work is hereby declared a public nuisance.*

109.4 Unsafe buildings. *Structures or existing equipment that are unsafe or unsanitary due to inadequate means of egress facilities, inadequate light and ventilation, or which constitute a fire hazard, or are otherwise dangerous to human life, shall be deemed a serious hazard. Where a residential building is found to be a serious hazard, such hazard shall be eliminated or the residential building shall be vacated, and where such residential building, when vacated, remains a serious hazard, it shall be razed.*

109.4.1 Orders, injunction proceedings. *Where the residential building official finds that a residential building is a serious hazard and the owner of such building fails, in the time specified in an order from the residential building official, to eliminate such hazard, or to vacate or raze the residential building, the residential building official shall proceed under section 3781.15 of the Revised Code.*

109.4.2 Restoration. *Where the residential structure or equipment is determined to be unsafe by the residential building official, it is permitted to be restored to a safe condition. To the extent that repairs, alterations or additions are intended to be made or a change of occupancy occurs during the restoration of the structure, such repairs, alterations, additions or change of occupancy shall comply with this chapter.*

SECTION 110
APPEALS

110.1 Hearing and right of appeal, local board of building appeals. *In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions, or determinations made by the residential building official relative to the application of this code, there shall be a local appeals process established within the certified jurisdiction. Adjudication*

hearings shall be in accordance with sections 119.09 to 119.13 of the Revised Code, as required by section 3781.031 of the Revised Code.

SECTION 111
CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY AND CERTIFICATE OF COMPLETION

111.1 Approval required to occupy. *No residential building or structure, in whole or in part, shall be used or occupied until the residential building official has issued an approval in the form of a certificate of occupancy or certificate of completion in compliance with this section.*

111.1.1 Certificate of occupancy. *The certificate of occupancy shall indicate the conditions under which the residential building shall be used. The building owner shall only use the structure in compliance with the certificate of occupancy and any stated conditions. The residential structure and all approved building service equipment shall be maintained in accordance with the approval.*

When a residential building or structure is entitled thereto (constructed according to the approved construction documents, final tests and inspections are completed, and no orders of the building official are outstanding, or as permitted in this section), the residential building official shall issue a certificate of occupancy in a timely manner.

111.1.1.1 New residential buildings*. A residential building or structure erected shall not be used or occupied, in whole or in part, until the certificate of occupancy has been issued by the residential building official. Occupancy of spaces within a residential building which are unaffected by the work of work shall be allowed to continue if the residential building official determines the existing spaces can be occupied safely until the completion of the work.*

111.1.1.2 Residential building alterations or additions. *A residential building or structure enlarged, extended or altered, in whole or in part, shall not be occupied or used until a certificate of occupancy has been issued. Occupancy of spaces within a building which are unaffected by the work of alteration shall be allowed to continue if the residential building official determines the existing spaces can be occupied safely until the completion of the alteration.*

111.1.1.3 Partial occupancy. *Upon the request of the owner or owner's representative, a residential building official shall issue a certificate of*

occupancy before the completion of the entire work, provided that the residential building official determines that the space can be safely occupied prior to full completion of the residential building, structure, or portion without endangering life or public welfare. The certificate shall indicate the extent of the areas approved for occupancy and any time limits for completion of the work.

111.1.1.4 Time-limited occupancy. *A residential building or structure hereafter changed in part from one occupancy to another for a limited time may receive a certificate of occupancy reflecting that time-limited occupancy provided:*

1. *There are no violations of law or orders of the residential building official pending;*
2. *It is established after inspection and investigation that the proposed use is not deemed to endanger public safety and welfare;*
3. *The residential building official has approved the use for an alternative purpose on a temporary basis;*
4. *The residential building official has issued a certificate of occupancy indicating any special conditions under which the building or part of the residential building can be used for the alternative purpose within the time limit specified.*

111.1.1.5 Temporary structures occupancy. *A residential building intended to be erected, placed and used for a period of time not to exceed one hundred eighty days that has been determined by the residential building official to be in compliance with section 102.9 shall be issued a "Certificate of Occupancy for Temporary Structures." The residential building official is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause.*

111.1.2 Certificate of completion for alterations and repairs. *The certificate of completion for alterations and repairs shall indicate the conditions under which the building shall be used. The building owner shall only use the structure in accordance with the certificate of completion and any stated conditions. The structure and all approved building service equipment shall be maintained in accordance with the approval.*

When the work in a building or structure is entitled thereto, the building official shall issue a certificate of completion for the work provided there are not violations of the rules of the board or orders of the building official pending or as permitted in this section. Occupancy of spaces within a building which are unaffected by the work shall be allowed to continue if the building official determines the existing spaces can be occupied safely.

111.2 Existing residential buildings. *Upon written request from the owner of an existing residential building or structure, the residential building official shall issue a certificate of occupancy, provided there are not violations of law or orders of the residential building official pending, and it is established after inspection and investigation that the alleged occupancy of the residential building or structure has previously existed. This code shall not require the removal, alteration or abandonment of, or prevent the continuance of, the occupancy of a lawfully existing residential building or structure, unless such use is deemed to endanger public safety and welfare.*

111.3 Certificate issued. *The certificate shall certify compliance with the provisions of this code, Chapters 3781. and 3791. of the Revised Code, and the purpose for which the residential building or structure may be used in its several parts. The certificate of occupancy or certificate of completion shall contain the following:*

1. *The plan approval application number.*
2. *The name and address of the owner.*
3. *A description of that portion of the structure for which the certificate is issued.*
4. *The signature of all residential building officials having jurisdiction. When more than one residential building official has jurisdiction for a building (when the certification of the residential building department is limited for such systems as plumbing or piping systems) each shall sign the certificate of occupancy with an indication of the scope of their individual approvals.*
5. *The edition of the residential code under which the plan approval was issued.*
6. *When an automatic sprinkler system is provided, the type and description of the system shall be indicated.*
7. *Any special stipulations and conditions of the plan approval including any variances granted to the requirements of this code.*

111.4 Validity of a certificate of occupancy or certificate of completion. *The certificate represents an approval that is valid only when the residential building or structure is used as approved and certifies conformance with applicable provisions of the "Residential Code of Ohio for One-, Two-, and Three-family Dwellings" and Chapters 3781. and 3791. of the Revised Code. The approval is conditioned upon the building systems and equipment being maintained and tested in accordance with the approval, the "RCO", and applicable equipment and systems schedules.*

111.5 Connection of service utilities. *No connections shall be made from a utility, source of energy, fuel or power to any residential building or system that is regulated by this code for which a plan approval and inspections are required, until approved by the residential building official.*

111.6 Temporary connection. *The residential building official shall approve the temporary connection of the residential building or system to the utility source of energy, fuel or power.*

SECTION 112
CHANGES TO THE CODE

112.1 Changes, board of building standards. *The board may adopt, amend, or rescind the rules of the board on its own motion or in response to an application for changes filed pursuant to this section.*

112.2 Changes, application to the board. *Any person may apply to the board to adopt, amend, or rescind rules of the board. The application for rule change shall be on forms and in format prescribed by the board. Twelve printed copies of the application shall be filed with the secretary of the board.*

112.3 Changes, application to the residential construction advisory committee*. In addition to section 112.2, any person may apply to the residential construction advisory committee to recommend to the board that it adopt, amend, or rescind provisions of the RCO. The application for rule change shall be on forms and in format prescribed by the board and directed to the chairperson of the residential construction advisory committee. Twelve printed copies of the application shall be filed with the secretary of the board.*

112.4 Processing applications for changes. *When the secretary of the board receives a conforming application for an adoption, amendment, or annulment of a provision of the rules of the board, the secretary shall promptly deliver or mail a copy of the application to each member of the board or to each member of the residential construction advisory committee for a recommendation to the board as appropriate.*

After receiving an application for the adoption, amendment, or annulment of a provision of the rules of the board or a recommendation of the residential construction advisory committee, the board shall proceed under sections 3781.101 and 3781.12 of the Revised Code.

SECTION 113

EXISTING BUILDINGS AND STRUCTURES

113.1 General. *Provisions within this section shall control the alteration, repair, addition and change of occupancy if existing residential buildings.*

113.2 Maintenance. *Residential buildings, structures and the building equipment shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition and in accordance with the condition(s) established in current and any previous plan approvals and certificates of occupancy. Devices or safeguards which are required by this code shall be maintained in conformance with the code edition under which installed. The owner or the owner's designated agent shall be responsible for the maintenance.*

The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures without approval of the residential building official.

113.3 Definitions. *The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:*

CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY.
HISTORIC BUILDINGS.

113.4 Additions and alterations. *Additions or alterations to residential buildings shall conform with the requirements of the code for new construction and shall be approved by the residential building official. Additions or alterations shall not be made to an existing residential building or structure which will cause the existing residential building or structure to be in violation of any provisions of this code. Portions of the structure not altered and not affected by the alteration are not required to comply with the code requirements for a new structure.*

Exception: *For residential buildings and structures in flood hazard areas, any additions, alterations or repairs that constitute substantial improvement of the existing structure, shall comply with the flood design requirements for new construction and all aspects of the existing structure shall be brought into compliance with the requirements for new construction for flood design.*

113.5 Replacement of systems, components and materials. *Replacements of an existing system (egress, fire protection, mechanical, plumbing, etc.) and materials or building components not otherwise provided for in this section, shall conform to that required for new construction to the extent of the alteration. The existing systems, materials, or components shall not be required to comply with all of the requirements of this code for new construction except to the extent that they are affected by the alteration. Replacement of existing systems, materials, or*

components shall not cause them to become unsafe, hazardous, overloaded, or become less effective than when originally installed, constructed, and/or approved.

113.5.1 Door and window dimensions. *Minor reductions in the clear opening dimensions of replacement doors and windows that result from the use of different materials shall be allowed, whether or not they are permitted by this code.*

113.6 Repairs to systems, components and materials*. Repair of residential building components, systems and materials or building components not otherwise provided for in this section, shall not be required to meet the provisions for new construction, provided such work is done in accordance with the conditions of the existing approval in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not less safe than when originally installed and is approved.*

113.7 Changes in occupancy. *A residential building, accessory structure, or space within a residential building shall not change in its use or purpose unless it is made to comply with the requirements of this code for such use and approved by the residential building official. An approval is not required when the code requirements are the same for both uses.*

113.7.1 Use of a residential building for other purposes*. No change of occupancy to uses within the scope of the OBC shall be made to any existing residential building, space within, or accessory structure unless such building is made to comply with the requirements of the OBC for such occupancy and approved by the building official with OBC enforcement authority.*

113.7.2 Type A family day care homes*. A residential building that is intended to be used in whole or in part as a licensed type A family day-care home shall be inspected in accordance with the type A family day-care home checklist (available from the board of building standards). The residential building official shall issue a report of the findings to the Ohio department of jobs and family services.*

113.7.3 Type B family day care homes*. When a residential building that is intended to be used in whole or in part as a type B family day-care home and is required to be licensed, the residential building shall be inspected in accordance with the type B family day-care home checklist (available from the board of building standards). The residential building official shall issue a report of the findings to the Ohio department of jobs and family services.*

113.8 Moved structures. *Residential structures moved shall be safe and sanitary and any repair, alteration, or change in occupancy shall comply with the provisions of this code for new structures. Field work, building location, foundations and foundation connections, wind loads, seismic loads, snow loads, and flood loads, shall comply with the requirements of this code.*

The residential building official shall be authorized to inspect, or require inspection at the expense of the owner, the various components of a relocated building to verify that they have not sustained damage. Building service equipment, mechanical, plumbing, and fire protection systems shall be tested to assure that they are in operating condition. Any repairs or alterations required as a result of such inspections shall be approved and completed prior to issuance of the certificate of occupancy.

Buildings previously approved as industrialized units, when moved after first occupancy are to be evaluated for conformance in accordance with this section by the residential building official in the jurisdiction where the building is intended to be relocated.

113.9 Historic buildings. *The provisions of this code relating to the construction, repair, alteration, addition, restoration and movement of residential structures, and change of occupancy shall not be mandatory for historic buildings where such residential buildings are judged by the residential building official not to constitute a distinct life safety hazard.*

113.10 Used materials and equipment. *The use of used materials which meet the requirements of this code for new materials is permitted. Used equipment, appliances, and devices shall not be reused unless approved by the residential building official.*

113.11 Flood hazard areas. *Within flood hazard areas established, the residential building shall be brought into conformance with section 322.*

Exception: *Historic buildings.*

SECTION 114
PRODUCTS AND MATERIALS

114.1 General. *Any material, product, assembly or method of construction used in a building or structure shall be approved by the building official. The provisions of this section describe the product approval process intended by the board of building standards in accordance with Section 3781.10 (C) of the Revised Code.*

114.2 Definitions. *The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this section, have the meanings shown herein:*

Accreditation. *The formal recognition of a conformity assessment body's adherence and operation under a documented quality system whereby a third party (Accreditation Body) attests to technical competence and the specific scope of accreditation of the conformity assessment body.*

Accreditation body. *An authoritative body that is an established, independent, internationally recognized, third-party organization that performs accreditation to ascribe initial recognition and monitors, on an cyclical basis, the competency, integrity, and performance of conformity assessment bodies in accordance with established standards.*

Assembly. *A preassembled grouping of materials, products and/or components designed to act as a whole. This does not include industrialized units regulated by section 113.*

Calibration laboratory. *An established, independent, nationally recognized and accredited, third-party organization that regularly provides calibration services such as, but not limited to, tolerance testing to ensure the accuracy of measuring equipment used in construction.*

Conformity assessment body. *A body that performs conformity assessment services and can be an object of accreditation, such as a testing laboratory, inspection body, product certification body.*

Evaluation service. *An established, independent, nationally recognized and accredited, third-party conformity assessment body that is accredited as a product certification body and performs technical evaluations of building materials, products, and methods of construction where code requirements are not clear or the innovative products do not have national consensus standards. The evaluation of the product results in the issuance of a research report establishing the code compliance and conditions of its use based upon multiple sources of information including test reports, test data, performance data, or acceptance criteria, and can be approved for installation by the building official in accordance with the rules of the board.*

Fabricator inspection agency. *An established, independent, nationally recognized and accredited, third-party conformity assessment body regularly engaged in fabrication of construction materials and methods of construction.*

Field evaluation body. *An established, independent, nationally recognized and accredited, third-party conformity assessment body regularly engaged in furnishing field inspection, observation, testing, or reporting services for construction materials, products, and methods of construction.*

Industry trade association certification program*. A certification program operated by an established and nationally recognized organization, founded and funded by businesses that operate in a specific industry, where the main focus is to monitor quality assurance among associated members.*

Insignia. *A mark or label prescribed in accordance with board procedures.*

Inspection body. *An established, independent, nationally recognized and accredited, third-party conformity assessment body regularly engaged in furnishing inspection, observation, testing, or reporting services for construction materials, products, and methods of construction. Such services include, but are not limited to geotechnical inspections, environmental inspections, mechanical and metallurgical analysis, non-destructive testing and evaluation, chemical analysis, and structural and product testing.*

Listing agency*. An established, independent, nationally recognized and accredited, third-party conformity assessment body that is accredited as a product certification body and conducts tests on materials, products, or methods of construction to certify products that meet the criteria for compliance with nationally recognized codes and standards. The product certification body allows its insignia of conformity to be placed on a material or product by the manufacturer, identifying that the material or product has been certified by the product certification body. The product certification body maintains a list or directory of all of the materials and products that they have certified and the conditions of their use.*

Material. *A manufactured form or substance designed to act as a whole.*

Method of construction. *A procedure or system intended to result in a finished building, structure or portion thereof.*

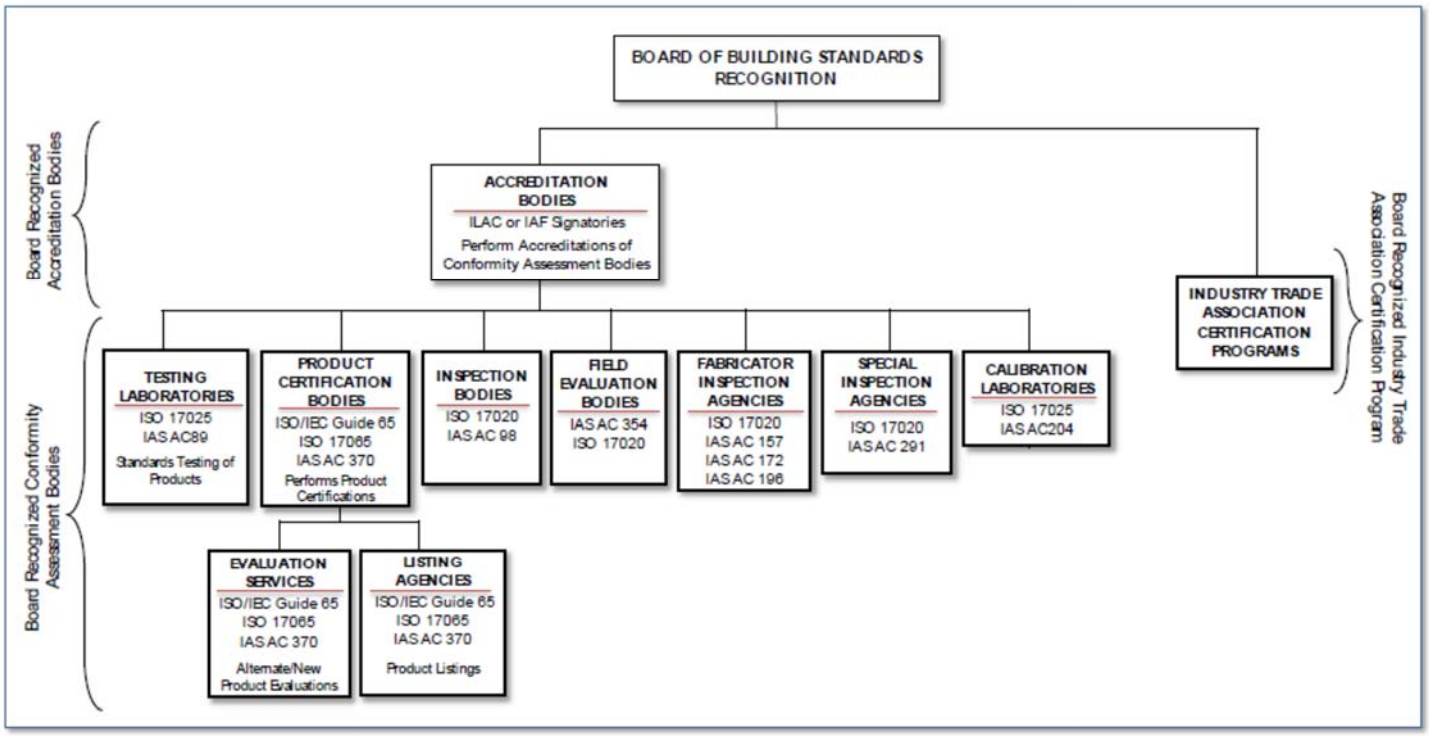
Product. *A material or device designed and manufactured to perform a predetermined function. Appliances, assemblies and equipment are also considered products.*

Product certification body. *An established, independent, nationally recognized and accredited, third-party conformity assessment body regularly engaged in conducting evaluation services, inspections and tests on materials and products to certify compliance with nationally recognized codes and standards. Product Certification Bodies are sub-classified as either Evaluation Services or Listing Agencies.*

Recognition. *An acceptance by the board of building standards of an accreditation body, a conformity assessment body, or an industry trade association certification program in accordance with the rules of the board of building standards.*

Special inspection agency. *An established, independent, nationally recognized and accredited, third-party conformity assessment body regularly engaged in performing special inspections as required by Chapter 17.*

Testing laboratory. *An established, independent, nationally recognized and accredited, third-party conformity assessment body regularly engaged in conducting tests of materials, products, or methods of construction to determine compliance with a specification or testing standard. The testing laboratory issues a report documenting the test results.*



ILAC – International Laboratory Accreditation Cooperation
IAF – International Accreditation Forum
ISO – International Organization for Standardization
IAS – International Accreditation Service
IEC – International Electrotechnical Commission

Figure 114.2
ORGANIZATION OF BOARD RECOGNIZED BODIES AND CERTIFICATION PROGRAMS

114.3 Building official approval process. *The building official shall approve the use of products in accordance with Sections 114.3.1 through 114.3.3.*

114.3.1 Materials, products, assemblies and methods of construction prescribed in the code.

114.3.1.1 Testing laboratories. *When test reports are required to be submitted or when the rules of the Board require materials, products, assemblies and methods of construction to conform to specific referenced standards, the building official shall verify that the proposed material, product, assembly, and method of construction has been tested by a testing laboratory recognized by the board and published on the list titled "Recognized Conformity Assessment Bodies" found on the board's website at http://www.com.ohio.gov/dico/bbs/.*

The building official shall verify that the testing laboratory is accredited to perform the specific tests prescribed in the code by verifying the testing laboratory's "scope of accreditation" found on the testing laboratory's website.

Exception: *Acceptance, performance, and operational testing reports submitted in accordance with Section 108.8 are permitted to be prepared and submitted by the individual performing the acceptance, performance, and operational tests. Board recognition is not required for persons conducting acceptance, performance, or operational tests.*

114.3.1.2 Listing agencies. *When the rules of the Board require materials, products, assemblies and methods of construction to be marked or listed and labeled in accordance with a specific referenced standard, the building official shall verify that the proposed material, product, assembly, and method of construction has been listed and labeled by a listing agency recognized by the board and published on the list titled "Recognized Conformity Assessment Bodies" found on the board's website at http://www.com.ohio.gov/dico/bbs/.*

Building officials are authorized to approve listed and labeled materials, products, assemblies and methods of construction after verifying all of the following additional information:

1. *The product is listed on the product certification body's website directory.*
2. *The listing is current.*
3. *The product is proposed to be installed/used in accordance with the listing.*
4. *When used as an assembly, the assembly is proposed to be installed/used in compliance with this code.*
5. *The extent of the listing does not include in its scope, elements of design, construction or installation otherwise in conflict with the provisions of this code such as fire-resistance and structural design.*

114.3.2 Alternative materials, products, assemblies and methods of construction not prescribed in the code. *The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any material, product, assembly or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative shall have a valid research report or listing from an evaluation service recognized by the board and published on a list titled "Recognized Conformity Assessment Bodies" found on the board's website at http://www.com.ohio.gov/dico/bbs/.*

The alternative material, product, assembly, or method of construction shall

be deemed to be approved provided it complies with the conditions listed in the research report or listing found on the evaluation service's website.

Exceptions:

1. *Alternative materials, products, assemblies, or methods of construction submitted pursuant to section 106.5.*
2. *Industrialized units shall be approved and constructed in accordance with section 113.1 of this chapter.*

114.3.2.1 Evaluation Service Reports. *Building officials are authorized to accept evaluation service reports for materials, products, assemblies, and methods of construction from recognized evaluation service agencies after reviewing and verifying all of the following minimum information in the evaluation service report:*

1. *Identification and description of the product specifically addressed in the report and a description of how the product can be identified;*
2. *Identification of the specific code provisions to which the product was evaluated as a suitable alternative to the requirements of the code;*
3. *The product installation requirements;*
4. *The statement of the conditions and limitations of use of the product; and*
5. *List the test reports used in the evaluation.*

114.3.3 Used materials and products. *The use of used materials and products which meet the requirements of this code for new materials and products is permitted. Used products and materials shall not be reused unless approved by the building official.*

114.4 Process for board-recognition of "Accreditation Bodies," "Conformity Assessment Bodies," and "Industry Trade Association Certification Programs." *All accreditation bodies, conformity assessment bodies, and industry trade association certification programs shall be recognized by the board in accordance with division 4101:7 of the Administrative Code.*

SECTION 115
BOARD ORGANIZATION

115.1 Meetings.

1. ***Meeting schedule.*** *No later than December thirty-first of each year, the board shall establish a schedule of the dates, times, and locations of all*

regular board meetings and meetings of board committees for the following calendar year. Such schedule shall be posted on the board's website: http://www.com.ohio.gov/dico/bbs/.

2. ***Meeting location.*** *All meetings of the board shall be held in offices of the Ohio department of commerce, training room #1, 6606 Tussing Rd., Reynoldsburg, Ohio, 43068, unless otherwise designated.*

115.2 Notices. *Prior to all regular or special meetings of the board, the executive secretary shall distribute the agenda, including meeting date, time, and location, by electronic mail to any person who has requested such information.*

115.3 Rules. *All rules of the board shall be adopted in accordance with Chapter 119. of the Revised Code.*

115.4 Board committees and duties. *The board shall have three standing committees.*

1. ***Code committee.*** *The code committee provides general oversight of the board's rule promulgation and code development activities. The committee reviews proposed rule changes and petitions for code changes and shall make recommendations to the board for action.*
2. ***Education committee.*** *The education committee provides general oversight to the board's continuing education program. The committee reviews continuing education course applications submitted for approval pursuant to paragraph (G) of rule 4101:7-3-01 of the Administrative Code and shall make recommendations to the board for action on the applications.*
3. ***Certification committee.*** *The certification committee provides general oversight to the board's personnel and building department certification program. The committee reviews personnel and building department certification applications submitted for approval pursuant to paragraph (G) of rule 4101:7-3-01 of the Administrative Code and shall make recommendations to the board for action on the applications.*

Replaces:	4101:8-1-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	05/27/2006, 07/01/2007, 01/01/2008, 01/01/2009, 01/01/2013, 01/01/2015, 01/01/2016, 01/01/2018

4101:8-2-01 Definitions.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 201
GENERAL

201.1 Scope. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Where terms are not defined in this code such terms shall have the meanings ascribed *to them as* in other *codes adopted and referenced by the Board of Building Standards (the Board).*

201.4 Terms not defined. Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION 202
DEFINITIONS

ABOVE-GRADE WALL. *A wall more than 50 percent above grade and enclosing conditioned space. This includes between-floor spandrels, peripheral edges of floors, roof and basement knee walls, dormer walls, gable end walls, walls enclosing a mansard roof and skylight shafts.*

ABOVE-GROUND STORAGE TANK. *A vessel, intended for fixed installation above grade, at grade, or below grade without backfill, used for the purpose of bulk-storage, dispensing, handling or processing of hazardous, flammable or combustible liquids or gases and not connected to and utilized for the operation of building service equipment.*

ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, an appliance or equipment to be reached by ready access or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel, door or similar obstruction.

ACCESSIBLE. *Admitting close approach as a result of not being guarded by locked doors, elevation or other effective means (see "Readily accessible").*

ACCESSORY STRUCTURE. A *building, the use of which is* incidental to that of the dwelling(s) and that is located on the same lot.

ADDITION. An extension or increase in floor area, number of stories or height of a building or structure.

Addition (Chapter 11 Energy Conservation). *An extension or increase in the conditioned space floor area, number of stories or height of a building or structure*.

ADHERED STONE OR MASONRY VENEER. Stone or masonry veneer secured and supported through the adhesion of an approved bonding material applied to an approved backing.

AIR ADMITTANCE VALVE. A one-way valve designed to allow air into the plumbing drainage system where a negative pressure develops in the piping. This device shall close by gravity and seal the terminal under conditions of zero differential pressure (no flow conditions) and under positive internal pressure.

AIR BARRIER. *One or more materials joined together in a continuous manner to restrict or prevent the passage of air through the building thermal envelope and its assemblies.*

AIR BREAK (DRAINAGE SYSTEM). An arrangement where a discharge pipe from a fixture, appliance or device drains indirectly into a receptor below the flood-level rim of the receptor and above the trap seal.

AIR CIRCULATION, FORCED. A means of providing space conditioning utilizing movement of air through ducts or plenums by mechanical means.

AIR CONDITIONER, GAS-FIRED. *A gas-burning, automatically operated appliance for supplying cooled air, dehumidified air, or both, or chilled liquid.*

AIR CONDITIONING. *The treatment of air so as to control simultaneously the temperature, humidity, cleanness and distribution of the air to meet the requirements of a conditioned space.*

AIR, EXHAUST. *Air being removed from any space or piece of equipment or appliance and conveyed directly to the atmosphere by means of openings or ducts.*

AIR-CONDITIONING SYSTEM. A system that consists of heat exchangers, blowers, filters, supply, exhaust and return-air systems, and shall include any apparatus installed in connection therewith.

AIR GAP, DRAINAGE SYSTEM. The unobstructed vertical distance through free atmosphere between the outlet of a waste pipe and the flood-level rim of the fixture or receptor into which it is discharging.

AIR GAP, WATER-DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. The unobstructed vertical distance through free atmosphere between the lowest opening from a water supply discharge to the flood-level rim of a plumbing fixture.

AIR-HANDLING UNIT. *A blower or fan used for the purpose of distributing supply air to a room, space or area.*

AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION. An insulation having an air permeance equal to or less than 0.02 L/s-m^2 at 75 Pa pressure differential as tested in accordance with ASTM E2178 or E283 *and that can function as an air barrier material as required in Chapter 11*.

AIR, MAKEUP. *Any combination of outdoor and transfer air intended to replace exhaust air and exfiltration.*

ALTERATION. *The* construction, retrofit or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition that requires a permit. Also, a change in a building, electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation that requires *an approval*.

Alteration (Chapter 24 Fuel gas) *The construction or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition.*

ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICE. A device that has a series of steps between 50 and 70 degrees (0.87 and 1.22 rad) from horizontal, usually attached

to a center support rail in an alternating manner so that the user does not have both feet on the same level at the same time.

ANCHORED STONE OR MASONRY VENEER. Stone or masonry veneer secured with approved mechanical fasteners to an approved backing.

ANCHORS. See "Supports."

ANODELESS RISER. *A transition assembly in which plastic piping is installed and terminated above ground outside of a building.*

ANTISIPHON. A term applied to valves or mechanical devices that eliminate siphonage.

APPLIANCE. A device or apparatus that is manufactured and designed to utilize energy and for which this code provides specific requirements.

Appliance (Chapter 24 Fuel gas). *Any apparatus or device that utilizes a fuel or a raw material as a fuel to produce light, heat, power, refrigeration or air conditioning. Also, an apparatus that compresses fuel gases.*

APPLIANCE, AUTOMATICALLY CONTROLLED. *Appliances equipped with an automatic burner ignition and safety shutoff device and other automatic devices that accomplish complete turn-on and shutoff of the gas to the main burner or burners, and graduate the gas supply to the burner or burners, but do not affect complete shutoff of the gas.*

APPLIANCE, FAN-ASSISTED COMBUSTION. *An appliance equipped with an integral mechanical means to either draw or force products of combustion through the combustion chamber or heat exchanger.*

APPLIANCE, UNVENTED. *An appliance designed or installed in such a manner that the products of combustion are not conveyed by a vent or chimney directly to the outside atmosphere.*

APPLIANCE, VENTED. *An appliance designed and installed in such a manner that all of the products of combustion are conveyed directly from the appliance to the outside atmosphere through an approved chimney or vent system.*

APPROVED. *Determined to be in compliance by the authority having jurisdiction in accordance with the rules of the board.*

Approved (Chapter 24 Fuel gas). *Refers to approval by the building official as the result of review, investigation, inspection and testing in accordance with the provisions of this code.*

APPROVED AGENCY. An established and *accredited testing laboratory, listing agency, inspection body, or field evaluation body* recognized *by the board of building standards providing services consistent with their accreditation and the code section requiring the approved agency service.*

APPROVED SOURCE. An independent person, firm or corporation, approved by the building official, who is competent and experienced in the application of engineering principles to materials, methods or systems analyses.

ASPECT RATIO. The ratio of longest to shortest perpendicular dimensions, or for wall sections, the ratio of height to length.

ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE. *The pressure of the weight of air and water vapor on the surface of the earth, approximately 14.7 pounds per square inch (psi) (101 kPa absolute) at sea level.*

ATTIC. The unfinished space between the ceiling assembly and the roof assembly.

ATTIC, HABITABLE. A finished or unfinished habitable space within an attic.

AUTOMATIC. *Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current strength, pressure, temperature or mechanical configuration (see "Manual").*

Automatic ignition. *Ignition of gas at the burner(s) when the gas controlling device is turned on, including re ignition if the flames on the burner(s) have been extinguished by means other than by the closing of the gas controlling device.*

BACKFLOW, DRAINAGE. A reversal of flow in the drainage system.

BACKFLOW PREVENTER. A backflow prevention assembly, a backflow prevention device or other means or method to prevent backflow into the potable water supply.

BACKFLOW PREVENTER, REDUCED-PRESSURE-ZONE TYPE. A backflow-prevention device consisting of two independently acting check valves,

internally force loaded to a normally closed position and separated by an intermediate chamber (or zone) in which there is an automatic relief means of venting to atmosphere internally loaded to a normally open position between two tightly closing shutoff valves and with means for testing for tightness of the checks and opening of relief means.

BACKFLOW, WATER DISTRIBUTION. The flow of water or other liquids into the potable water-supply piping from any sources other than its intended source. Backsiphonage is one type of backflow.

BACKPRESSURE. Pressure created by any means in the water distribution system that by being in excess of the pressure in the water supply mains causes a potential backflow condition.

BACKPRESSURE, LOW HEAD. A pressure less than or equal to 4.33 psi (29.88 kPa) or the pressure exerted by a 10-foot (3048 mm) column of water.

BACKSIPHONAGE. The flowing back of used or contaminated water from piping into a potable water-supply pipe due to a negative pressure in such pipe.

BACKWATER VALVE. A device installed in a drain or pipe to prevent backflow of sewage.

BAROMETRIC DRAFT REGULATOR. *A balanced damper device attached to a chimney, vent connector, breeching or flue gas manifold to protect combustion appliances by controlling chimney draft. A double-acting barometric draft regulator is one whose balancing damper is free to move in either direction to protect combustion appliances from both excessive draft and backdraft.*

BASEMENT. A story that is not a story above grade plane. (see "Story above grade plane").

BASEMENT WALL. *A wall 50 percent or more below grade and enclosing conditioned space.*

BASIC WIND SPEED. Three-second gust speed at 33 feet (10 058 mm) above the ground in Exposure C (see Section 301.2.1) as given in Figure 301.2(5)A.

BATHROOM GROUP. A group of fixtures, including or excluding a bidet, consisting of a water closet, lavatory, and bathtub or shower. Such fixtures are located together on the same floor level.

BATTERY SYSTEM, STATIONARY STORAGE. A rechargeable energy storage system consisting of electrochemical storage batteries, battery chargers, controls and associated electrical equipment designed to provide electrical power to a building. The system is typically used to provide standby or emergency power, an uninterruptable power supply, load shedding, load sharing or similar capabilities.

BEND. A drainage fitting, designed to provide a change in direction of a drain pipe of less than the angle specified by the amount necessary to establish the desired slope of the line (see "Elbow" and "Sweep").

BOILER. *A closed vessel in which water is heated, steam is generated, steam is superheated, or any combination thereof, under pressure or vacuum for use externally to itself by the direct application of heat from the combustion of fuels, or from electricity or nuclear energy. The term boiler includes fired units for heating or vaporizing liquids other than water where these units are separate from processing systems and are complete within themselves.* Low-pressure boilers operate at pressures less than or equal to 15 pounds per square inch (psi) (103 kPa) for steam and 160 psi (1103 kPa) *or temperatures not exceeding 250 °F* for water. High-pressure boilers operate at pressures exceeding those pressures *and temperatures*.

Boiler, low pressure. *A steam boiler operating at pressures not exceeding fifteen psig, or a hot water heating boiler operating at pressures not exceeding one hundred sixty psig or temperatures not exceeding two hundred fifty degrees.*

Hot water heating boiler. *A boiler in which no steam is generated, from which hot water is circulated for heating purposes and then returned to the boiler, and that operates at water pressures not exceeding 160 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (1100 kPa gauge) and at water temperatures not exceeding 250ºF (121ºC) at or near the boiler outlet.*

Hot water supply boiler. *A boiler, completely filled with water, which furnishes hot water to be used externally to itself, and that operates at water pressures not exceeding 160 psig (1100 kPa gauge) and at water temperatures not exceeding 250ºF (121ºC) at or near the boiler outlet.*

Steam heating boiler. *A boiler in which steam is generated and that operates at a steam pressure not exceeding 15 psig (100 kPa gauge).*

BOND BEAM. A horizontal grouted element within masonry in which reinforcement is embedded.

BONDING JUMPER. *A conductor installed to electrically connect metallic gas piping to the grounding electrode system.*

BRACED WALL LINE. A straight line through the building plan that represents the location of the lateral resistance provided by the wall bracing.

BRACED WALL LINE, CONTINUOUSLY SHEATHED. A braced wall line with structural sheathing applied to all sheathable surfaces including the areas above and below openings.

BRACED WALL PANEL. A full-height section of wall constructed to resist in-plane shear loads through interaction of framing members, sheathing material and anchors. The panel's length meets the requirements of its particular bracing method, and contributes toward the total amount of bracing required along its braced wall line in accordance with Section 602.10.1.

BRANCH. Any part of the piping system other than a riser, main or stack.

BRANCH, FIXTURE. See "Fixture branch, drainage."

BRANCH, HORIZONTAL. See "Horizontal branch, drainage."

BRANCH INTERVAL. A vertical measurement of distance, 8 feet (2438 mm) or more in developed length, between the connections of horizontal branches to a drainage stack. Measurements are taken down the stack from the highest horizontal branch connection.

BRANCH, MAIN. A water-distribution pipe that extends horizontally off a main or riser to convey water to branches or fixture groups.

BRANCH, VENT. A vent connecting two or more individual vents with a vent stack or stack vent.

BRAZING. *A metal-joining process wherein coalescence is produced by the use of a nonferrous filler metal having a melting point above 1,000ºF (538ºC), but lower than that of the base metal being joined. The filler material is distributed between the closely fitted surfaces of the joint by capillary action.*

BTU. *Abbreviation for British thermal unit, which is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 pound (454 g) of water 1ºF (0.56ºC) (1 Btu*

= 1055 J).

BTU/H. The listed maximum capacity of an appliance, absorption unit or burner expressed in British thermal units input per hour.

BUILDING DRAIN. The lowest piping that collects the discharge from all other drainage piping inside the house and extends 30 inches (762 mm) in developed length of pipe, beyond the exterior walls and conveys the drainage to the building sewer.

BUILDING, EXISTING. Existing building is a building erected prior to the adoption of this code, or one for which a legal building *approval* has been issued.

BUILDING-INTEGRATED PHOTOVOLTAIC PRODUCT. A building product that incorporates photovoltaic modules and functions as a component of the building envelope.

BUILDING-INTEGRATED PHOTOVOLTAIC ROOF PANEL (BIPV Roof Panel). A photovoltaic panel that functions as a component of the building envelope.

BUILDING LINE. The line established by law, beyond which a building shall not extend, except as specifically provided by law.

BUILDING OFFICIAL. *An individual who has received and maintains a certification of "Residential Building Official" in accordance with rules of the board of building standards. The designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, approved by the board in accordance with section 103 of this code, in a municipal corporation, township or county having a building department, certified by the board pursuant to section 3781.10 of the Revised Code, or the health commissioner or his authorized representative in health districts, whichever one has jurisdiction.*

BUILDING SERVICE EQUIPMENT. *Equipment, appliances, materials, devices, and systems integrated into a building which provide space heating, air conditioning, ventilation, fire protection, lighting, electricity, sanitation, water, heating, cooking, medical gas, medical vacuum, and clothes drying. Building service equipment begins from the connected stored source of liquid or gas fuel or electrical power supplying the equipment or the utility service point/point of delivery and extends through the point of use but does not include process equipment that may also be connected to the same source.*

BUILDING SERVICES PIPING. *All piping systems and their component parts that are part of a building system and that promote the safe, sanitary, and energy efficient occupancy of a building. Building services piping includes, but is not limited to, cold and hot potable water distribution for plumbing fixtures; sanitary lines from plumbing fixtures; nonflammable medical gas systems; medical oxygen systems; medical vacuum systems; fire protection piping systems and compressed air in dry systems; refrigeration, chilled water, condenser and cooling tower water, brine, and water/antifreeze systems; steam, steam condensate, and hot water piping systems; and fuel oil piping and fuel gas piping for heating, cooling, and cooking applications.*

BUILDING SEWER. That part of the drainage system that extends from the end of the building drain and conveys its discharge to a public sewer, private sewer, individual sewage-disposal system or other point of disposal.

BUILDING SITE. *A continguous area of land that is under the ownership or control of one entity.*

BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE. *The basement walls, exterior walls, floors, ceilings, roofs and any other building element assemblies that enclose conditioned space or provide a boundary between conditioned space and exempt or unconditioned space.*

BUILT-UP ROOF COVERING. Two or more layers of felt cemented together and surfaced with a cap sheet, mineral aggregate, smooth coating or similar surfacing material.

BURNER. *A device for the final conveyance of the gas, or a mixture of gas and air, to the combustion zone.*

Induced-draft. *A burner that depends on draft induced by a fan that is an integral part of the appliance and is located downstream from the burner.*

Power. *A burner in which gas, air or both are supplied at pressures exceeding, for gas, the line pressure, and for air, atmospheric pressure, with this added pressure being applied at the burner.*

CAP PLATE. The top plate of the double top plates used in structural insulated panel (SIP) construction. The cap plate is cut to match the panel thickness such that it overlaps the wood structural panel facing on both sides.

CARBON MONOXIDE ALARM. A single- or multiple-station alarm intended to detect carbon monoxide gas and alert occupants by a distinct audible signal. It

incorporates a sensor, control components and an alarm notification appliance in a single unit.

CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTOR. A device with an integral sensor to detect carbon monoxide gas and transmit an alarm signal to a connected alarm control unit.

CEILING HEIGHT. The clear vertical distance from the finished floor to the finished ceiling.

CEMENT PLASTER. A mixture of portland or blended cement, Portland cement or blended cement and hydrated lime, masonry cement or plastic cement and aggregate and other approved materials as specified in this code.

CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY. *A change in the purpose or level of activity within a building that involves a change in application of the requirements of the code. Such a change could be to an entire building or a portion of a building. A change of occupancy shall include any change that causes an increase in risk.*

CHIMNEY. A primary vertical structure containing one or more flues, for the purpose of carrying gaseous products of combustion and air from a fuel-burning appliance to the outside atmosphere.

Factory-built chimney. *A listed and labeled chimney composed of factory-made components, assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.*

Masonry chimney. *A field-constructed chimney com- posed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.*

CHIMNEY CONNECTOR. A pipe that connects a fuel-burning appliance to a chimney.

CHIMNEY TYPES.

Residential-type appliance. An approved chimney for removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, residential-type appliances producing combustion gases not in excess of 1,000°F (538°C) under normal operating conditions, and capable of producing combustion gases of 1,400°F (760°C) during intermittent forces firing for periods up to 1 hour. All temperatures shall be measured at the appliance flue outlet. Residential-type appliance chimneys include masonry and factory-built types.

CIRCUIT VENT. A vent that connects to a horizontal drainage branch and vents two traps to not more than eight traps or trapped fixtures connected into a battery.

CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM. A specifically designed water distribution system where one or more pumps are operated in the service hot water piping to circulate heated water from the water-heating equipment to fixtures and back to the water-heating equipment.

CLADDING. The exterior materials that cover the surface of the building envelope that is directly loaded by the wind.

CLEANOUT. An opening in the drainage system used for the removal of possible obstruction and located to allow for access.

CLEARANCE (Chapter 24 Fuel Gas). *The minimum distance through air measured between the heat-producing surface of the mechanical appliance, device or equipment and the surface of the combustible material or assembly.*

CLIMATE ZONE. A geographical region based on climatic criteria as specified in this code.

CLOSED CONSTRUCTION. *An assembly of materials or products manufactured in such a manner that its structural, plumbing, electrical, environmental control, or fire protection elements or components are concealed and are not readily accessible for inspection at the site of its erection, without disassembly, damage, or destruction. Closed construction includes assemblies where only one of the components is not accessible for inspection. (For example, an equipment enclosure where all the electrical conductors and components are exposed for inspection and its roof and wall panels have exposed structural members but the floor panel structural members are not exposed, would be required to comply with this section.)*

CLOSET. A small room or chamber used for storage.

CLOTHES DRYER. *An appliance used to dry wet laundry by means of heated air.*

Type 1. *Factory-built package, multiple production. Primarily used in the family living environment. Usually the smallest unit physically and in function output.*

CODE, BUILDING, MECHANICAL, AND PLUMBING. *When reference is made within this code to building code, mechanical code, or plumbing code, those references shall have the following meanings:*

Building code or this code. *The Residential Code of Ohio, current edition.*

Mechanical Code. *The current edition of the Ohio Mechanical Code.*

Plumbing Code. *The edition of the Ohio Plumbing Code referenced in Chapter 44 of this code, Section 4401.2.*

COLLAPSIBLE SOILS. Soils that exhibit volumetric reduction in response to partial or full wetting under load.

COLLECTION PIPE. Unpressurized pipe used within the collection system that drains on-site nonpotable water or rainwater to a storage tank by gravity.

COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT SYSTEM. A specially designed system of waste piping embodying the horizontal wet venting of one or more sinks, lavatories or floor drains by means of a common waste and vent pipe adequately sized to provide free movement of air above the flow line of the drain.

COMBUSTIBLE ASSEMBLY. *Wall, floor, ceiling or other assembly constructed of one or more component materials that are not defined as noncombustible.*

COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL. Any material not defined as noncombustible.

COMBUSTION (Chapter 24 Fuel gas). *In the context of this code, refers to the rapid oxidation of fuel accompanied by the production of heat or heat and light.*

COMBUSTION AIR. The air provided to fuel-burning equipment including air for fuel combustion, draft hood dilution and ventilation of the equipment enclosure.

Combustion Air (Chapter 24 - Fuel gas). *Air necessary for complete combustion of a fuel, including theoretical air and excess air.*

COMBUSTION CHAMBER (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *The portion of an appliance within which combustion occurs.*

COMBUSTION PRODUCTS (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *Constituents resulting from the combustion of a fuel with the oxygen of the air, including the inert gases, but excluding excess air.*

COMMON VENT. A single pipe venting two trap arms within the same branch interval, either back-to-back or one above the other.

COMPRESSIBLE SOILS. Soils that exhibit volumetric reduction in response to the application of load even in the absence of wetting or drying.

CONCEALED LOCATION. *A location that cannot be accessed without damaging permanent parts of the building structure or finish surface. Spaces above, below or behind readily removable panels or doors shall not be considered as concealed.*

CONCEALED PIPING. *Piping that is located in a concealed location (see "Concealed location").*

CONDENSATE. The liquid that separates from a gas due to a reduction in temperature; for example, water that condenses from flue gases and water that condenses from air circulating through the cooling coil in air conditioning equipment.

Condensate (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *The liquid that condenses from a gas (including flue gas) caused by a reduction in temperature or increase in pressure*

CONDENSING APPLIANCE. An appliance that condenses water generated by the burning of fuels.

CONDITIONED AIR. Air treated to control its temperature, relative humidity or quality.

CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA. *The horizontal projection of the floors associated with the conditioned space.*

CONDITIONED SPACE.
An area, room or space that is enclosed *by, but not* within, the building thermal envelope assembly and that is directly heated or cooled or that is indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors, or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.

CONNECTOR, APPLIANCE (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *Rigid metallic pipe and fittings, semi rigid metallic tubing and fittings or a listed and labeled device that*

connects an appliance to the gas piping system.

CONNECTOR, CHIMNEY OR VENT. *The pipe that connects an appliance to a chimney or vent.*

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS. Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining *plan approval in accordance with Section 106*.

CONTAMINATION. A high-hazard or health-hazard impairment of the quality of the potable water that creates an actual hazard to the public health through poisoning or through the spread of disease by sewage, industrial fluids or waste.

CONTINUOUS AIR BARRIER. *A combination of materials and assemblies that restrict or prevent the passage of air through the building thermal envelope.*

CONTINUOUS INSULATION (ci). *Insulating material that is continuous across all structural members without thermal bridges other than fasteners and service openings. It is installed on the interior or exterior, or is integral to any opaque surface, of the building envelope.*

CONTINUOUS WASTE. A drain from two or more similar adjacent fixtures connected to a single trap.

CONTROL (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *A manual or automatic device designed to regulate the gas, air, water or electrical supply to, or operation of, a mechanical system.*

CONTROL, LIMIT. An automatic control responsive to changes in liquid flow or level, pressure, or temperature for limiting the operation of an appliance.

CONTROL, PRIMARY SAFETY. A safety control responsive directly to flame properties that senses the presence or absence of flame and, in event of ignition failure or unintentional flame extinguishment, automatically causes shutdown of mechanical equipment.

CONVECTOR. A system incorporating a heating element in an enclosure in which air enters an opening below the heating element, is heated and leaves the enclosure through an opening located above the heating element.

CONVERSION BURNER. *A unit consisting of a burner and its controls for installation in an appliance originally utilizing another fuel.*

CORE. The lightweight middle section of a structural insulated panel, composed of foam plastic insulation, that provides the link between the two facing shells.

CORROSION RESISTANCE. The ability of a material to withstand deterioration of its surface or its properties where exposed to its environment.

COURT. A space, open and unobstructed to the sky, located at or above grade level on a lot and bounded on three or more sides by walls or a building.

CRAWL SPACE. An underfloor space that is not a basement.

CRAWL SPACE WALL. *The opaque portion of a wall that encloses a crawl space and is partially or totally below grade.*

CRIPPLE WALL. A framed wall extending from the top of the foundation to the underside of the floor framing of the first story above grade plane.

CROSS CONNECTION. Any connection between two otherwise separate piping systems that allows a flow from one system to the other.

CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER. A prefabricated engineered wood product consisting of not less than three layers of solid-sawn lumber or structural composite lumber where the adjacent layers are cross-oriented and bonded with structural adhesive to form a solid wood element.

CUBIC FOOT (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *The amount of gas that occupies 1 cubic foot (0.02832 m^3) when at a temperature of 60ºF (16ºC), saturated with water vapor and under a pressure equivalent to that of 30 inches of mercury (101 kPa).*

CURTAIN WALL. *Fenestration products used to create an external nonload-bearing wall that is designed to separate the exterior and interior environments.*

DALLE GLASS. A decorative composite glazing material made of individual pieces of glass that are embedded in a cast matrix of concrete or epoxy.

DAMPER. *A manually or automatically controlled device to regulate draft or the rate of flow of air or combustion gases.*

DAMPER, VOLUME. A device that will restrict, retard or direct the flow of air in any duct, or the products of combustion of heat-producing equipment, vent connector, vent or chimney.

DEAD LOADS. The weight of the materials of construction incorporated into the building, including but not limited to walls, floors, roofs, ceilings, stairways, built-in partitions, finishes, cladding, and other similarly incorporated architectural and structural items, and fixed service equipment.

DECORATIVE APPLIANCE, VENTED (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *A vented appliance wherein the primary function lies in the aesthetic effect of the flames.*

DECORATIVE APPLIANCES FOR INSTALLATION IN VENTED FIREPLACES (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *A vented appliance designed for installation within the fire chamber of a vented fireplace, wherein the primary function lies in the aesthetic effect of the flames.*

DECORATIVE GLASS. A carved, leaded or Dalle glass or glazing material with a purpose that is decorative or artistic, not functional; with coloring, texture or other design qualities or components that cannot be removed without destroying the glazing material; and with a surface, or assembly into which it is incorporated, that is divided into segments.

DEMAND (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *The maximum amount of gas input required per unit of time, usually expressed in cubic feet per hour, or Btu/h (1 Btu/h = 0.2931 W).*

DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM. *A water distribution system having one or more recirculation pumps that pump water from a heated water supply pipe back to the heated water source through a cold-water supply pipe.*

DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION. *The elevation of the "design flood," including wave height, relative to the datum specified on the community's legally designated flood hazard map. In areas designated as Zone AO, the design flood elevation shall be the elevation of the highest existing grade of the building's perimeter plus the depth number (in feet) specified on the flood hazard map. In areas designated as Zone AO where a depth number is not specified on the map, the depth number shall be taken as being equal to 2 feet (610 mm).*

DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. See "Registered design professional."

DEVELOPED LENGTH. The length of a pipeline measured along the center line of the pipe and fittings.

DIAMETER. Unless specifically stated, the term "diameter" is the nominal diameter as designated by the approved material standard.

DIAPHRAGM. A horizontal or nearly horizontal system acting to transmit lateral forces to the vertical resisting elements. Where the term "diaphragm" is used, it includes horizontal bracing systems.

DILUTION AIR. Air that enters a draft hood or draft regulator and mixes with flue gases.

DIRECT SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the gas or liquid in the solar collector loop is not separated from the load.

DIRECT-VENT APPLIANCE. A fuel-burning appliance with a sealed combustion system that draws all air for combustion from the outside atmosphere and discharges all flue gases to the outside atmosphere.

DRAFT. The pressure difference existing between the appliance or any component part and the atmosphere, that causes a continuous flow of air and products of combustion through the gas passages of the appliance to the atmosphere.

***Mechanical or induced* draft.** The pressure difference created by the action of a fan, blower or ejector, that is located between the appliance and the chimney or vent termination.

Natural draft. The pressure difference created by a vent or chimney because of its height, and the temperature difference between the flue gases and the atmosphere.

DRAFT HOOD. A device built into an appliance, or *made as* part of the vent connector from an appliance, that is designed to: provide for the ready escape of the flue gases from the appliance in the event of no draft, backdraft or stoppage beyond the draft hood; prevent a backdraft from entering the appliance; and neutralize the effect of stack action of the chimney or gas vent on the operation of the appliance.

DRAFT REGULATOR. A device that functions to maintain a desired draft in the appliance by automatically reducing the draft to the desired value.

DRAFT STOP. A material, device or construction installed to restrict the movement of air within open spaces of concealed areas of building components such as crawl spaces, floor-ceiling assemblies, roof-ceiling assemblies and attics.

DRAIN. Any pipe that carries soil and waterborne wastes in a building drainage system.

DRAIN-BACK SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the fluid in the solar collector loop is drained from the collector into a holding tank under prescribed circumstances.

DRAINAGE FITTING. A pipe fitting designed to provide connections in the drainage system that have provisions for establishing the desired slope in the system. These fittings are made from a variety of both metals and plastics. The methods of coupling provide for required slope in the system.

DRIP (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *The container placed at a low point in a system of piping to collect condensate and from which the condensate is removable.*

DUCT. *A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts.*

DUCT FURNACE. *A warm-air furnace normally installed in an air distribution duct to supply warm air for heating. This definition shall apply only to a warm-air heating appliance that depends for air circulation on a blower not furnished as part of the furnace.*

DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling equipment and appliances.

DWELLING. Any building that *exclusively* contains one, two, *or three* dwelling units *each of which may be occupied by a family and no more than five lodgers or boarders*, intended, or designed to be built, used, rented, leased, let or hired out to be occupied, or that *is* occupied for living purposes, *physically separated from adjacent structures and with an independent exit from each dwelling unit*.

DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation. *The dwelling unit may include any accessory space intended for the exclusive use of the occupants of an individual dwelling unit such as a private garage, greenhouse, etc.*

DWV. Abbreviated term for drain, waste and vent piping as used in common plumbing practice.

EFFECTIVE OPENING. The minimum cross-sectional area at the point of water-supply discharge, measured or expressed in terms of diameter of a circle and if the opening is not circular, the diameter of a circle of equivalent cross-sectional area. (This is applicable to air gap.)

ELBOW. A pressure pipe fitting designed to provide an exact change in direction of a pipe run. An elbow provides a sharp turn in the flow path (see "Bend" and "Sweep").

EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENING. An operable exterior window, door or similar device that provides for a means of escape and access for rescue in the event of an emergency. (See also "Grade floor opening.")

ENERGY ANALYSIS. *A method for estimating the annual energy use of the proposed design and standard reference design based on estimates of energy use.*

ENERGY COST. *The total estimated annual cost for purchased energy for the building functions regulated by this code, including applicable demand charges.*

ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL. *An approved software program or calculation-based methodology that projects the annual energy use of a building.*

ENGINE-MOUNTED TANK. *A fuel tank furnished by the engine manufacturer or the emergency power system supplier and mounted on the engine, the engine-frame, or under as a subbase.*

ENGINEERED WOOD RIM BOARD. A full-depth structural composite lumber, wood structural panel, structural glued laminated timber or prefabricated wood I-joist member designed to transfer horizontal (shear) and vertical (compression) loads, provide attachment for diaphragm sheathing, siding and exterior deck ledgers and provide lateral support at the ends of floor or roof joists or rafters.

EQUIPMENT (OR FIXTURE). *Any plumbing, heating, electrical, ventilating, air conditioning, refrigerating and fire protection devices and components of systems other than appliances, and elevators, dumb-waiters, and other mechanical facilities or installations that are related to building services.*

EQUIVALENT LENGTH. For determining friction losses in a piping system, the effect of a particular fitting equal to the friction loss through a straight piping length of the same nominal diameter.

ERI REFERENCE DESIGN. *A version of the rated design that meets the minimum requirements of the 2006 International Energy Conservation Code.*

ESCARPMENT. With respect to topographic wind effects, a cliff or steep slope generally separating two levels or gently sloping areas.

ESSENTIALLY NONTOXIC TRANSFER FLUIDS. Fluids having a Gosselin rating of 1, including propylene glycol; mineral oil; polydimethy oil oxane; hydrochlorofluorocarbon, chlorofluorocarbon and hydrofluorocarbon refrigerants; and FDA-approved boiler water additives for steam boilers.

ESSENTIALLY TOXIC TRANSFER FLUIDS. Soil, water or gray water and fluids having a Gosselin rating of 2 or more including ethylene glycol, hydrocarbon oils, ammonia refrigerants and hydrazine.

EVAPORATIVE COOLER. A device used for reducing air temperature by the process of evaporating water into an airstream.

EXCESS AIR. Air that passes through the combustion chamber and the appliance flue in excess of what is theoretically required for complete combustion.

EXCESS FLOW VALVE (EFV). *A valve designed to activate when the fuel gas passing through it exceeds a prescribed flow rate.*

EXHAUST HOOD, FULL OPENING. An exhaust hood with an opening not less than the diameter of the connecting vent.

EXISTING INSTALLATIONS. Any plumbing system regulated by this code that was legally installed prior to the effective date of this code, or for which a permit to install has been issued.

EXIT. *That portion of a means of egress system between the exit access and the exit discharge or public way. Exit components include exterior exit doors at the level of exit discharge, interior exit stairways, interior exit ramps, exit passageways, exterior exit stairways and exterior exit ramps and horizontal exits.*

EXPANSIVE SOILS. Soils that exhibit volumetric increase or decrease (swelling or shrinking) in response to partial or full wetting or drying under load.

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS). EIFS are nonstructural, nonload-bearing exterior wall cladding systems that consist of an insulation board attached either adhesively or mechanically, or both, to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat; and a textured protective finish coat.

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS) WITH DRAINAGE. An EIFS that incorporates a means of drainage applied over a water-resistive barrier.

EXTERIOR MASONRY CHIMNEYS. *Masonry chimneys exposed to the outdoors on one or more sides below the roof line.*

EXTERIOR WALL. *Walls including both above-grade walls and basement walls.*

EXTERIOR WALL COVERING. A material or assembly of materials applied on the exterior side of exterior walls for the purpose of providing a weather-resistive barrier, insulation or for aesthetics, including but not limited to, veneers, siding, exterior insulation and finish systems, architectural trim and embellishments such as cornices, soffits, and fascias.

FACING. The wood structural panel facings that form the two outmost rigid layers of the structural insulated panel.

FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEY. A listed and labeled chimney composed of factory-made components assembled in the field in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

FACTORY-MADE AIR DUCT. A listed and labeled duct manufactured in a factory and assembled in the field in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and conditions of the listing.

FENESTRATION. Products classified as either vertical fenestration or skylights and sloped glazing, installed in such a manner as to preserve the weather-resistant barrier of the wall or roof in which they are installed. Fenestration includes products with glass or other transparent or transluscent materials.

Site-built fenestration product. *A fenestration designed to be made up of field-glazed or field-assembled units using specific factory cut or otherwise factory-formed framing and glazing units. Examples of site-built fenestration include storefront systems, curtain walls, and atrium roof systems.*

Skylights and sloped glazing. *Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or more from vertical. Unit skylights, tubular daylighting devices and glazing materials in solariums, sunrooms, roofs and sloped walls are included in this definition.*

Skylights (Chapter 11 Energy Conservation). *Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.*

Unit Skylight.. A factory assembled, glazed fenestration unit, containing one panel of glazing material, that allows for natural daylighting through an opening in the roof assembly while preserving the weather-resistant barrier of the roof.

Vertical fenestration. *Windows that are fixed or movable, opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque and glazed doors installed in a wall at less than 15 degrees from vertical.*

Vertical fenestration (Chapter 11 Energy Conservation). *Windows that are fixed or operable, opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque/glazed doors composed of glass or other transparent or translucent glazing materials and installed at a slope of not less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.*

FIBER-CEMENT (BACKERBOARD, SIDING, SOFFIT, TRIM AND UNDERLAYMENT) PRODUCTS. Manufactured thin section composites of hydraulic cementitious matrices and discrete nonasbestos fibers.

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE. The distance measured from the building face to one of the following:

1. To the closest interior lot line.
2. To the centerline of a street, an alley or public way.
3. To an imaginary line between two buildings on the lot.

The distance shall be measured at a right angle from the face of the wall.

FIREBLOCKING. Building materials or materials approved for use as fireblocking, installed to resist the free passage of flame to other areas of the building through concealed spaces.

FIREPLACE. *A fire chamber and hearth constructed of non-combustible material for use with solid fuels and provided with a chimney.*

Factory-built fireplace. A listed and labeled fireplace and chimney system composed of factory-made components, and assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

Masonry fireplace. A field-constructed *hearth and fire chamber composed of solid masonry units such as bricks, stones, listed masonry units or reinforced concrete and provided with a suitable chimney.*

FIREPLACE STOVE. A free-standing, chimney-connected solid-fuel-burning heater designed to be operated with the fire chamber doors in either the open or closed position.

FIREPLACE THROAT. The opening between the top of the firebox and the smoke chamber.

FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD. Pressure-treated lumber and plywood that exhibit reduced surface burning characteristics and resist propagation of fire.

Other means during manufacture. A process where the wood raw material is treated with a fire-retardant formulation while undergoing creation as a finished product.

Pressure process. A process for treating wood using an initial vacuum followed by the introduction of pressure above atmospheric.

FIXTURE. See "Plumbing fixture."

FIXTURE (OR EQUIPMENT). *Any plumbing, heating, electrical, ventilating, air conditioning, refrigerating and fire protection devices and components of systems other than appliances, and elevators, dumb-waiters, and other mechanical facilities or installations that are related to building services.*

FIXTURE BRANCH, DRAINAGE. A drain serving two or more fixtures that discharges into another portion of the drainage system.

FIXTURE BRANCH, WATER-SUPPLY. A water-supply pipe between the fixture supply and a main water-distribution pipe or fixture group main.

FIXTURE DRAIN. The drain from the trap of a fixture to the junction of that drain with any other drain pipe.

FIXTURE FITTING.

Supply fitting. A fitting that controls the volume or directional flow or both of water and that is either attached to or accessed from a fixture or is used with an open or atmospheric discharge.

Waste fitting. A combination of components that conveys the sanitary waste from the outlet of a fixture to the connection of the sanitary drainage system.

FIXTURE GROUP, MAIN. The main water-distribution pipe (or secondary branch) serving a plumbing fixture grouping such as a bath, kitchen or laundry area to which two or more individual fixture branch pipes are connected.

FIXTURE SUPPLY. The water-supply pipe connecting a fixture or fixture fitting to a fixture branch.

FIXTURE UNIT, DRAINAGE (d.f.u.). A measure of probable discharge into the drainage system by various types of plumbing fixtures, used to size DWV piping systems. The drainage fixture-unit value for a particular fixture depends on its volume rate of drainage discharge, on the time duration of a single drainage operation and on the average time between successive operations.

FIXTURE UNIT, WATER-SUPPLY (w.s.f.u.). A measure of the probable hydraulic demand on the water supply by various types of plumbing fixtures used to size water-piping systems. The water-supply fixture-unit value for a particular fixture depends on its volume rate of supply, on the time duration of a single supply operation and on the average time between successive operations.

FLAME SAFEGUARD. *A device that will automatically shut off the fuel supply to a main burner or group of burners when the means of ignition of such burners becomes inoperative, and when flame failure occurs on the burner or group of burners.*

FLAME SPREAD. The propagation of flame over a surface.

FLAME SPREAD INDEX. A comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from visual measurements of the spread of flame versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

FLASHBACK ARRESTOR CHECK VALVE. *A device that will prevent the backflow of one gas into the supply system of another gas and prevent the passage of flame into the gas supply system.*

FLEXIBLE AIR CONNECTOR. A conduit for transferring air between an air duct or plenum and an air terminal unit, an air inlet or an air outlet. Such conduit is limited in its use, length and location.

FLIGHT. A continuous run of rectangular treads or winders or combination thereof from one landing to another.

FLOOD HAZARD AREA. *The greater of the following two areas:*

1. *The area within a floodplain subject to a 1 percent or greater chance of flooding in any given year.*
2. *This area designated as a flood hazard area on a community's flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.*

FLOOD-LEVEL RIM. The edge of the receptor or fixture from which water overflows.

FLOOR DRAIN. A plumbing fixture for recess in the floor having a floor-level strainer intended for the purpose of the collection and disposal of wastewater used in cleaning the floor and for the collection and disposal of accidental spillage to the floor.

FLOOR FURNACE. A *completely* self-contained furnace suspended from the floor of the space being heated, taking air for combustion from outside such space, and with means for *observing flames and* lighting the appliance from such space.

FLOW PRESSURE. The static pressure reading in the water-supply pipe near the faucet or water outlet while the faucet or water outlet is open and flowing at capacity.

FLUE. See "Vent."

FLUE, APPLIANCE. The passages within an appliance through which combustion products pass from the combustion chamber to the flue collar.

FLUE COLLAR. The portion of a fuel-burning appliance designed for the attachment of a draft hood, vent connector or venting system.

FLUE GASES. Products of combustion plus excess air in appliance flues or heat exchangers.

FLUE LINER (LINING). *A system or material used to form the inside surface of a flue in a chimney or vent, for the purpose of protecting the surrounding structure from the effects of combustion products and for conveying combustion products without leakage to the atmosphere.*

FLUSH VALVE. A device located at the bottom of a flush tank that is operated to flush water closets.

FLUSHOMETER TANK. A device integrated within an air accumulator vessel that is designed to discharge a predetermined quantity of water to fixtures for flushing purposes.

FLUSHOMETER VALVE. A flushometer valve is a device that discharges a predetermined quantity of water to fixtures for flushing purposes and is actuated by direct water pressure.

FOAM BACKER BOARD. Foam plastic used in siding applications where the foam plastic is a component of the siding.

FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION. A plastic that is intentionally expanded by the use of a foaming agent to produce a reduced-density plastic containing voids consisting of open or closed cells distributed throughout the plastic for thermal insulating or acoustic purposes and that has a density less than 20 pounds per cubic foot (320 kg/m^3) unless it is used as interior trim.

FOAM PLASTIC INTERIOR TRIM. Exposed foam plastic used as picture molds, chair rails, crown moldings, baseboards, handrails, ceiling beams, door trim and window trim and similar decorative or protective materials used in fixed applications.

FUEL-PIPING SYSTEM. All piping, tubing, valves and fittings used to connect fuel utilization equipment to the point of fuel delivery.

FUEL GAS. *A natural gas, manufactured gas, liquefied petroleum gas or mixtures of these gases.*

FUEL TANK. *A tank containing fuel for an engine(s) or appliance.*

FULL-OPEN VALVE. A water control or shutoff component in the water supply system piping that, where adjusted for maximum flow, the flow path through the component's closure member is not a restriction in the component's through-flow area.

FULLWAY VALVE. A valve that in the full open position has an opening cross-sectional area that is not less than 85 percent of the cross-sectional area of the connecting pipe.

FURNACE. *A completely self-contained heating unit that is designed to supply heated air to spaces remote from or adjacent to the appliance location.*

Furnace, central. *A self-contained appliance for heating air by transfer of heat of combustion through metal to the air, and designed to supply heated air through ducts to spaces remote from or adjacent to the appliance location.*

Furnace plenum. *An air compartment or chamber to which one or more ducts are connected and that forms part of an air distribution system.*

GAS CONVENIENCE OUTLET. *A permanently mounted, manually operated device that provides the means for connecting an appliance to, and disconnecting an appliance from, the supply piping. The device includes an integral, manually operated valve with a non-displaceable valve member and is designed so that disconnection of an appliance only occurs when the manually operated valve is in the closed position.*

GAS PIPING. *An installation of pipe, valves or fittings installed on a premises or in a building and utilized to convey fuel gas.*

GLAZING AREA. The interior surface area of all glazed fenestration, including the area of sash, curbing or other framing elements, that enclose conditioned space. Includes the area of glazed fenestration assemblies in walls bounding conditioned basements.

GRADE. The finished ground level adjoining the building at all exterior walls.

GRADE, PIPING. See "Slope."

GRADE FLOOR OPENING. A window or other opening located such that the sill height of the opening is not more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above or below

the finished ground level adjacent to the opening. (See also "Emergency escape and rescue opening.")

GRADE PLANE. A reference plane representing the average of the finished ground level adjoining the building at all exterior walls. Where the finished ground level slopes away from the exterior walls, the reference plane shall be established by the lowest points within the area between the building and the lot line or, where the lot line is more than 6 feet (1829 mm) from the building between the structure and a point 6 feet (1829 mm) from the building.

GRAY WATER. Waste discharged from lavatories, bathtubs, showers, clothes washers and laundry trays. *Private water supplies and recycled water systems are regulated by the Ohio Department of Health rules found in Chapter 3701-28 of the Administrative Code.*

GRIDDED WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. A water distribution system where every water distribution pipe is interconnected so as to provide two or more paths to each fixture supply pipe.

GROSS AREA OF EXTERIOR WALLS. The normal projection of all exterior walls, including the area of all windows and doors installed therein.

GROUND-SOURCE HEAT PUMP LOOP SYSTEM. Piping buried in horizontal or vertical excavations or placed in a body of water for the purpose of transporting heat transfer liquid to and from a heat pump. Included in this definition are closed loop systems in which the liquid is recirculated and open loop systems in which the liquid is drawn from a well or other source.

GUARD. A building component or a system of building components located near the open sides of elevated walking surfaces that minimizes the possibility of a fall from the walking surface to the lower level.

GUESTROOM. Any room or rooms used or intended to be used by one or more guests for living or sleeping purposes.

GYPSUM BOARD. The generic name for a family of sheet products consisting of a noncombustible core primarily of gypsum with paper surfacing. Gypsum wallboard, gypsum sheathing, gypsum base for gypsum veneer plaster, exterior gypsum soffit board, predecorated gypsum board and water-resistant gypsum backing board complying with the standards listed in Section 702.3 and Part IX of this code are types of gypsum board.

GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCT. The general name for a family of sheet products consisting essentially of gypsum.

HABITABLE SPACE. A space in a building for living, sleeping, eating or cooking. Bathrooms, toilet rooms, closets, halls, storage or utility spaces and similar areas are not considered habitable spaces.

HANDRAIL. A horizontal or sloping rail intended for grasping by the hand for guidance or support.

HANGERS. See "Supports."

HAZARDOUS LOCATION. Any location considered to be a fire hazard for flammable vapors, dust, combustible fibers or other highly combustible substances. *The location is not necessarily categorized in the Ohio Building Code as a high-hazard use group classification.*

HEAT PUMP. An appliance having heating or heating and cooling capability and that uses refrigerants to extract heat from air, liquid or other sources.

HEATED SLAB. *Slab-on-grade construction in which the heating elements, hydronic tubing, or hot air distribution system is in contact with, or placed within or under, the slab.*

HEIGHT, BUILDING. The vertical distance from grade plane to the average height of the highest roof surface.

HEIGHT, STORY. The vertical distance from top to top of two successive tiers of beams or finished floor surfaces; and, for the topmost story, from the top of the floor finish to the top of the ceiling joists or, where there is not a ceiling, to the top of the roof rafters.

HIGH-EFFICACY LAMPS. *Compact fluorescent lamps, light-emitting diode (LED) lamps, T-8 or smaller diameter linear fluorescent lamps, or other lamps with an efficacy of not less than the following:*

1. *60 lumens per watt for lamps over 40 watts.*
2. *50 lumens per watt for lamps over 15 watts to 40 watts.*
3. *40 lumens per watt for lamps 15 watts or less.*

HIGH-TEMPERATURE (H.T.) CHIMNEY. A high temperature chimney complying with the requirements of UL 103. A Type H.T. chimney is identifiable by the markings "Type H.T." on each chimney pipe section.

HILL. With respect to topographic wind effects, a land surface characterized by strong relief in any horizontal direction.

HISTORIC BUILDING. A building or structure that is one or more of the following:

1. Listed, or certified as eligible for listing, by the State Preservation *Office at the Ohio History Connection* or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places in the National Register of Historic Places.
2. Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.
3. Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register-listed, or a state-designated or locally designated historic district.

HORIZONTAL BRANCH, DRAINAGE. A drain pipe extending laterally from a soil or waste stack or building drain, that receives the discharge from one or more fixture drains.

HORIZONTAL PIPE. Any pipe or fitting that makes an angle of less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) with the horizontal.

HOUSE PIPING. *See "Piping system."*

HOT WATER. Water at a temperature greater than or equal to 110°F (43°C).

HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS. Areas vulnerable to hurricanes, defined as the U.S. Atlantic Ocean and Gulf of Mexico coasts where the ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, is greater than 115 miles per hour (51 m/s), and Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Guam, Virgin Islands and America Samoa.

HYDROGEN-GENERATING APPLIANCE. A self-contained package or factory-matched packages of integrated systems for generating gaseous hydrogen. Hydrogen-generating appliances utilize electrolysis, reformation, chemical or other processes to generate hydrogen.

IGNITION PILOT. *A pilot that operates during the lighting cycle and discontinues during main burner operation.*

IGNITION SOURCE. A flame, spark or hot surface capable of igniting flammable vapors or fumes. Such sources include appliance burners, burner ignitions and electrical switching devices.

IMPACT PROTECTIVE SYSTEM. Construction that has been shown by testing to withstand the impact of test missiles and that is applied, attached, or locked over exterior glazing.

INDIRECT SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the gas or liquid in the solar collector loop circulates between the solar collector and a heat exchanger and such gas or liquid is not drained from the system or supplied to the load during normal operation.

INDIRECT WASTE PIPE. A waste pipe that discharges into the drainage system through an air gap into a trap, fixture or receptor.

INDIVIDUAL SEWAGE DISPOSAL SYSTEM. A system for disposal of sewage by means of a septic tank or mechanical treatment, designed for use apart from a public sewer to serve a single establishment or building.

INDIVIDUAL VENT. A pipe installed to vent a single fixture drain that connects with the vent system above or terminates independently outside the building.

INDIVIDUAL WATER SUPPLY. A supply other than an approved public water supply that serves one or more families.

INDUSTRIALIZED UNITS. *Industrialized units are prefabricated components comprised of closed construction manufactured at a location remote from the site of intended use and transported to a building site for its subsequent use. Industrialized units are not restricted to housing for one-, two-, and three-family dwellings, but includes all prefabricated forms of building elements and assembled construction units, intended for both structural and service equipment purposes in all buildings of all groups. Prefabricated shop assemblies may be shipped in structurally complete units ready for installation in the building structure or in knock-down and packaged form for assembly at the site.*

INFILTRATION. *The uncontrolled inward air leakage into a building caused by the pressure effects of wind or the effect of differences in the indoor and outdoor air density or both.*

INFRARED RADIANT HEATER. *A heater that directs a substantial amount of its energy output in the form of infrared radiant energy into the area to be heated. Such heaters are of either the vented or unvented type.*

INSULATED SIDING. A type of continuous insulation, with manufacturer-installed insulating material as an integral part of the cladding product, having a minimum *R*-value of R-2.

INSULATED VINYL SIDING. A vinyl cladding product, with manufacturer-installed foam plastic insulating material as an integral part of the cladding product, having a thermal resistance of not less than R-2.

INSULATING CONCRETE FORM (ICF). A concrete forming system using stay-in-place forms of rigid foam plastic insulation, a hybrid of cement and foam insulation, a hybrid of cement and wood chips, or other insulating material for constructing cast-in-place concrete walls.

INSULATING SHEATHING. An insulating board having a thermal resistance of not less than R-2 of the core material.

JOINT, FLARED. *A metal-to-metal compression joint in which a conical spread is made on the end of a tube that is compressed by a flare nut against a mating flare.*

JOINT, MECHANICAL. *A general form of gas-tight joints obtained by the joining of metal parts through a positive-holding mechanical construction, such as a press-connect joint, flanged joint, threaded joint, flared joint or compression joint.*

JOINT, PLASTIC ADHESIVE. *A joint made in thermoset plastic piping by the use of an adhesive substance that forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces without dis- solving either one of them.*

JURISDICTION. *The municipality, township or county governmental unit with a residential building department certified by the board of building standards.*

KITCHEN. Kitchen shall mean an area used, or designated to be used, for the preparation of food.

LABEL. An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer that contains the name of the manufacturer, the function and performance characteristics of the product or material, and the name and identification of an

approved agency and that indicates that the representative sample of the product or material has been tested and evaluated by an approved agency. (See also "Manufacturer's designation" and "Mark.")

LABELED. Equipment, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, approved agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of such labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LEAK CHECK. *An operation performed on a gas piping system to verify that the system does not leak.*

LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION. Construction whose vertical and horizontal structural elements are primarily formed by a system of repetitive wood or cold-formed steel framing members.

LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS or LPG (LP-GAS). *Liquefied petroleum gas composed predominately of pro- pane, propylene, butanes or butylenes, or mixtures thereof that is gaseous under normal atmospheric conditions, but is capable of being liquefied under moderate pressure at normal temperatures.*

LISTED. Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization *recognized by the Board* and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose *when installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions*.

LIVE LOADS. Those loads produced by the use and occupancy of the building or other structure and do not include construction or environmental loads such as wind load, snow load, rain load, earthquake load, flood load or dead load.

LIVING SPACE. Space within a dwelling unit utilized for living, sleeping, eating, cooking, bathing, washing and sanitation purposes.

LOAD-BEARING ELEMENT. *Any column, girder, beam, joist, truss, rafter, wall, floor or roof sheathing that supports any vertical load in addition to its own weight, and/or any lateral load.*

LOCAL EXHAUST. An exhaust system that uses one or more fans to exhaust air from a specific room or rooms within a dwelling.

LOCKING-TYPE TAMPER-RESISTANT CAP. A cap designed to be unlocked by a specially designed tool or key to prevent removal of the cap by means of hand-loosening or by commonly available tools.

LODGING HOUSE. A one-family dwelling where one or more occupants are primarily permanent in nature, and rent is paid for guestrooms.

LOG LIGHTER. *A manually operated solid-fuel ignition appliance for installation in a vented solid fuel-burning fire- place.*

LOT. A portion or parcel of land considered as a unit.

LOT LINE. A line dividing one lot from another, or from a street or any public place.

LOW-VOLTAGE LIGHTING. *Lighting equipment powered through a transformer such as a cable conductor, a rail conductor and track lighting.*

MACERATING TOILET SYSTEMS. A system comprised of a sump with macerating pump and with connections for a water closet and other plumbing fixtures, that is designed to accept, grind and pump wastes to an approved point of discharge.

MAIN. The principal pipe artery to which branches may be connected.

MAIN BURNER. *A device or group of devices essentially forming an integral unit for the final conveyance of gas or a mixture of gas and air to the combustion zone, and on which combustion takes place to accomplish the function for which the appliance is designed.*

MAIN SEWER. See "Public sewer."

MANIFOLD WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS. A fabricated piping arrangement in which a large supply main is fitted with multiple branches in close proximity in which water is distributed separately to fixtures from each branch.

MANUAL. *Capable of being operated by personal intervention (see "Automatic").*

MANUFACTURED HOME. *A building unit or assembly of closed construction that is fabricated in an off-site facility and constructed in conformance with the federal construction and safety standards established by the secretary of housing and urban development pursuant to the "Manufactured Housing Construction and Safety Standards Act of 1974," 88 Stat. 700, 42 U.S.C.A. 5401, 5403, and that has a permanent label or tag affixed to it, as specified in 42 U.S.C.A. 5415, certifying compliance with all applicable federal construction and safety standards.*

MANUFACTURER'S DESIGNATION. An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer indicating that a product or material complies with a specified standard or set of rules. (See also "Mark" and "Label.")

MANUFACTURER'S INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS. *Instructions published for appliances, materials, components, products,* equipment*, assemblies or systems* as part of the conditions of their listing and labeling.

MARK. An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer indicating the name of the manufacturer and the function of a product or material. (See also "Manufacturer's designation" and "Label.")

MASONRY CHIMNEY. A field-constructed chimney composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.

MASONRY HEATER. A masonry heater is a solid fuel burning heating appliance constructed predominantly of concrete or solid masonry having a mass of not less than 1,100 pounds (500 kg), excluding the chimney and foundation. It is designed to absorb and store a substantial portion of heat from a fire built in the firebox by routing exhaust gases through internal heat exchange channels in which the flow path downstream of the firebox includes not less than one 180-degree (3.14-rad) change in flow direction before entering the chimney and that deliver heat by radiation through the masonry surface of the heater.

MASONRY, SOLID. Masonry consisting of solid masonr units laid contiguously with the joints between the units filled with mortar.

MASONRY UNIT. Brick, tile, stone, architectural cast stone, glass block or concrete block conforming to the requirements specified in Section 2103 of the *building code*.

Clay. A building unit larger in size than a brick, composed of burned clay, shale, fire clay or mixtures thereof.

Concrete. A building unit or block larger in size than 12 inches by 4 inches by 4 inches (305 mm by 102 mm by 102 mm) made of cement and suitable aggregates.

Glass. Nonload-bearing masonry composed of glass units bonded by mortar.

Hollow. A masonry unit with a net cross-sectional area in any plane parallel to the loadbearing surface that is less than 75 percent of its gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

Solid. A masonry unit with a net cross-sectional area in every plane parallel to the loadbearing surface that is 75 percent or more of its cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

MEAN ROOF HEIGHT. The average of the roof eave height and the height to the highest point on the roof surface, except that eave height shall be used for roof angle of less than or equal to 10 degrees (0.18 rad).

MECHANICAL DRAFT SYSTEM. A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases by mechanical means, that consists of an induced draft portion under nonpositive static pressure or a forced draft portion under positive static pressure.

Forced draft venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static pressure.

Induced draft venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure.

Power venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static vent pressure.

MECHANICAL EXHAUST SYSTEM. A system for removing air from a room or space by mechanical means.

MECHANICAL JOINT.

1. A connection between pipes, fittings or pipes and fittings that is not welded, brazed, caulked, soldered, solvent cemented or heat-fused.

2. A general form of gas- or liquid-tight connections obtained by the joining of parts through a positive holding mechanical construction such as, but not limited to, flanged, screwed, clamped or flared connections.

MECHANICAL SYSTEM. A system specifically addressed and regulated in this code and composed of components, devices, appliances and equipment.

METAL ROOF PANEL. An interlocking metal sheet having an installed weather exposure of not less than 3 square feet (0.28 m^2) per sheet.

METAL ROOF SHINGLE. An interlocking metal sheet having an installed weather exposure less than 3 square feet (0.28 m^2) per sheet.

METER. *The instrument installed to measure the volume of gas delivered through it.*

MEZZANINE. An intermediate level or levels between the floor and ceiling of any story.

MINOR REPAIR. See "Repair, Minor".

MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOF COVERING. One or more layers of polymer modified asphalt sheets. The sheet materials shall be fully adhered or mechanically attached to the substrate or held in place with an approved ballast layer.

MODULATING (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *Modulating or throttling is the action of a control from its maximum to minimum position in either pre-determined steps or increments of movement as caused by its actuating medium.*

MULTIPLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM. Two or more single-station alarm devices that are capable of interconnection such that actuation of one causes all integral or separate audible alarms to operate.

NAILABLE SUBSTRATE. A product or material such as framing, sheathing or furring, composed of wood or wood-based materials, or other materials and fasteners providing equivalent fastener withdrawal resistance.

NATURAL DRAFT SYSTEM. A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure entirely by natural draft.

NATURALLY DURABLE WOOD. The heartwood of the following species with the exception that an occasional piece with corner sapwood is permitted if 90 percent or more of the width of each side on which it occurs is heartwood.

Decay resistant. Redwood, cedar, black locust and black walnut.

Termite resistant. Alaska yellow cedar, redwood, Eastern red cedar and Western red cedar including all sapwood of Western red cedar.

NONCOMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL. Materials that pass the test procedure for defining noncombustibility of elementary materials set forth in ASTM E136.

Noncombustible materials (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *Materials that, where tested in accordance with ASTM E136, have not fewer than three of four specimens tested meeting all of the following criteria:*

1. *The recorded temperature of the surface and interior thermocouples shall not at any time during the test rise more than 54ºF (30ºC) above the furnace temperature at the beginning of the test.*
2. *There shall not be flaming from the specimen after the first 30 seconds.*
3. *If the weight loss of the specimen during testing exceeds 50 percent, the recorded temperature of the surface and interior thermocouples shall not at any time during the test rise above the furnace air temperature at the beginning of the test, and there shall not be flaming of the specimen.*

NOSING. The leading edge of treads of stairs and of landings at the top of stairway flights.

OCCUPIED SPACE. The total area of all buildings or structures on any lot or parcel of ground projected on a horizontal plane, excluding permitted projections as allowed by this code.

OFFSET. A combination of fittings that makes two changes in direction, bringing one section of the pipe out of line and into a line parallel with the other section.

Offset (vent). *A combination of approved bends that make two changes in direction bringing one section of the vent out of line, but into a line parallel with the other section.*

ON-SITE NONPOTABLE WATER REUSE SYSTEMS. Water systems for the collection, treatment, storage, distribution, and reuse of nonpotable water generated on site, including but not limited to graywater systems. This definition does not include rainwater harvesting systems.

OPAQUE DOOR. *A door that is not less than 50-percent opaque in surface area.*

OUTLET (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *The point at which a gas-fired appliance connects to the gas piping system.*

OWNER. Any person, agent, firm or corporation having a legal or equitable interest in the property.

OXYGEN DEPLETION SAFETY SHUTOFF SYSTEM (ODS). *A system designed to act to shut off the gas supply to the main and pilot burners if the oxygen in the surrounding atmosphere is reduced below a predetermined level.*

PAN FLASHING. Corrosion-resistant flashing at the base of an opening that is integrated into the building exterior wall to direct water to the exterior and is premanufactured, fabricated, formed or applied at the job site.

PANEL THICKNESS. Thickness of core plus two layers of structural wood panel facings.

PELLET FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCE. A closed combustion, vented appliance equipped with a fuel feed mechanism for burning processed pellets of solid fuel of a specified size and composition.

PELLET VENT. A vent listed and labeled for use with a listed pellet fuel-burning appliance.

PERFORMANCE CATEGORY. A designation of wood structural panels as related to the panel performance used in Chapters 4, 5, 6 and 8.

PERMIT. An *approval indicated in an* official document or certificate issued by the *residential* building official that authorizes performance of a specified activity. *Also see "APPROVED".*

PERSON. An individual, heirs, executors, administrators or assigns, and a firm, partnership or corporation, its or their successors or assigns, or the agent of any of the aforesaid.

PHOTOVOLTAIC MODULE. A complete, environmentally protected unit consisting of solar cells, optics and other components, exclusive of a tracker, designed to generate DC power where exposed to sunlight.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL. A collection of photovoltaic modules mechanically fastened together, wired, and designed to provide a field-installable unit.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEM. A system that incorporates discrete photovoltaic panels that convert solar radiation into electricity, including rack support systems.

PHOTOVOLTAIC SHINGLES. A roof covering that resembles shingles and that incorporates photovoltaic modules.

PILOT. *A small flame that is utilized to ignite the gas at the main burner or burners.*

PIPING (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *Where used in this code, "piping" refers to either pipe or tubing, or both.*

Pipe. *A rigid conduit of iron, steel, copper, copper-alloy or plastic.*

Tubing. *Semi-rigid conduit of copper, copper-alloy, aluminum, plastic or steel.*

PIPING SYSTEM (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *The fuel piping, valves and fittings from the outlet of the point of delivery to the outlets of the appliance shutoff valves.*

PITCH. See "Slope."

PLASTIC COMPOSITE. A generic designation that refers to wood-plastic composites and plastic lumber.

PLASTIC, THERMOPLASTIC. *A plastic that is capable of being repeatedly softened by increase of temperature and hardened by decrease of temperature.*

PLATFORM CONSTRUCTION. A method of construction by which floor framing bears on load bearing walls that are not continuous through the story levels or floor framing.

PLENUM. A chamber that forms part of an air-circulation system other than the occupied space being conditioned.

PLUMBING. *The practice, materials and fixtures utilized in the installation, maintenance, extension and alteration of all piping, fixtures, appliances and appurtenances within or adjacent to any structure, in connection with sanitary drainage or storm drainage facilities; venting systems; and public or private water supply systems*.

PLUMBING APPLIANCE. An energized household appliance with plumbing connections, such as a dishwasher, food waste disposer, clothes washer or water heater.

PLUMBING APPURTENANCE. A device or assembly that is an adjunct to the basic plumbing system and does not demand additional water supply or add any discharge load to the system. It is presumed that it performs some useful function in the operation, maintenance, servicing, economy or safety of the plumbing system. Examples include filters, relief valves and aerators.

PLUMBING FIXTURE. A receptacle or device that is connected to a water supply system or discharges to a drainage system or both. Such receptacles or devices require a supply of water; or discharge liquid waste or liquidborne solid waste; or require a supply of water and discharge waste to a drainage system.

PLUMBING SYSTEMS. Includes the water distribution pipes; plumbing fixtures and traps; water-treating or water-using equipment; soil, waste and vent pipes; and building drains; in addition to their respective connections, devices and appurtenances within a structure or premises; and the water service, building sewer and building storm sewer serving such structure or premises.

POINT OF DELIVERY (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *For natural gas systems, the point of delivery is the outlet of the service meter assembly or the outlet of the service regulator or service shutoff valve where a meter is not provided. Where a valve is provided at the outlet of the service meter assembly, such valve shall be considered to be downstream of the point of delivery. For undiluted liquefied petroleum gas systems, the point of delivery shall be considered to be the outlet of the service pressure regulator, exclusive of line gas regulators, in the system.*

POLLUTION. A low-hazard or nonhealth-hazard impairment of the quality of the potable water to a degree that does not create a hazard to the public health and

that does adversely and unreasonably affect the aesthetic qualities of such potable water for domestic use.

POLYPROPYLENE SIDING. A shaped material, made principally from polypropylene homopolymer, or copolymer, that in some cases contains fillers or reinforcements, that is used to clad exterior walls or buildings.

PORTABLE-FUEL-CELL APPLIANCE. A fuel cell generator of electricity that is not fixed in place. A portable-fuel-cell appliance utilizes a cord and plug connection to a grid-isolated load and has an integral fuel supply.

POSITIVE ROOF DRAINAGE. The drainage condition in which consideration has been made for the loading deflections of the roof deck, and additional slope has been provided to ensure drainage of the roof within 48 hours of precipitation.

POTABLE WATER. Water free from impurities present in amounts sufficient to cause disease or harmful physiological effects and conforming in bacteriological and chemical quality to the requirements of the public health authority having jurisdiction.

PRECAST CONCRETE. A structural concrete element cast elsewhere than its final position in the structure.

PRECAST CONCRETE FOUNDATION WALLS. Preengineered, precast concrete wall panels that are designed to withstand specified stresses and used to build below-grade foundations.

PRESSURE DROP (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *The loss in pressure due to friction or obstruction in pipes, valves, fittings, regulators and burners.*

PRESSURE-RELIEF VALVE. A pressure-actuated valve held closed by a spring or other means and designed to automatically relieve pressure at the pressure at which it is set.

PRESSURE TEST (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *An operation performed to verify the gas-tight integrity of gas piping following its installation or modification.*

PROCESS EQUIPMENT. *Equipment, machinery and devices specifically intended and used exclusively for purposes other than building service equipment.*

PROPOSED DESIGN. *A description of the proposed building used to estimate annual energy use for determining compliance based on total building performance.*

PUBLIC SEWER. A common sewer directly controlled by public authority.

PUBLIC WATER MAIN. A water-supply pipe for public use controlled by public authority.

PUBLIC WAY. Any street, alley or other parcel of land open to the outside air leading to a public street, that has been deeded, dedicated or otherwise permanently appropriated to the public for public use and that has a clear width and height of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm).

PURGE. To clear of air, gas or other foreign substances.

QUICK-CLOSING VALVE. A valve or faucet that closes automatically where released manually or controlled by mechanical means for fast-action closing.

RAMP. A walking surface that has a running slope steeper than 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope).

RATED DESIGN. *A description of the proposed building used to determine the energy rating index.*

READILY ACCESSIBLE. *Capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal or inspection without requiring those to whom ready access is requisite to climb over or remove obstacles or to resort to portable ladders or access equipment (see "Accessible").*

READY ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be directly reached, without requiring the removal or movement of any panel, door or similar obstruction.

RECEPTOR. A fixture or device that receives the discharge from indirect waste pipes.

RECLAIMED WATER. Nonpotable water that has been derived from the treatment of wastewater by a facility or system licensed or permitted to produce water meeting the jurisdiction's water requirements for its intended uses. Also known as "Recycled water."

REFRIGERANT. A substance used to produce refrigeration by its expansion or evaporation.

REFRIGERANT COMPRESSOR. A specific machine, with or without accessories, for compressing a given refrigerant vapor.

REFRIGERATING SYSTEM. A combination of interconnected parts forming a closed circuit in which refrigerant is circulated for the purpose of extracting, then rejecting, heat. A direct refrigerating system is one in which the evaporator or condenser of the refrigerating system is in direct contact with the air or other substances to be cooled or heated. An indirect refrigerating system is one in which a secondary coolant cooled or heated by the refrigerating system is circulated to the air or other substance to be cooled or heated.

REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. *Any architect holding a certificate issued under sections 4703.10 and 4703.36 of the Revised Code or any engineer holding a certificate issued under section 4733.14 of the Revised Code.*

REGULATOR. *A device for controlling and maintaining a uniform gas supply pressure, either pounds-to-inches water column (MP regulator) or inches-to-inches water column (appliance regulator).*

REGULATOR, GAS APPLIANCE. *A pressure regulator for controlling pressure to the manifold of the gas appliance.*

REGULATOR, LINE GAS PRESSURE. *A device placed in a gas line between the service pressure regulator and the appliance for controlling, maintaining or reducing the pressure in that portion of the piping system downstream of the device.*

REGULATOR, MEDIUM-PRESSURE (MP Regulator). *A line pressure regulator that reduces gas pressure from the range of greater than 0.5 psig (3.4 kPa) and less than or equal to 5 psig (34.5 kPa) to a lower pressure.*

REGULATOR, PRESSURE. *A device placed in a gas line for reducing, controlling and maintaining the pressure in that portion of the piping system downstream of the device.*

REGULATOR, SERVICE PRESSURE. *For natural gas systems, a device installed by the serving gas supplier to reduce and limit the service line pressure*

to delivery pressure. For undiluted liquefied petroleum gas systems, the regulator located upstream from all line gas pressure regulators, where installed, and downstream from any first stage or a high pressure regulator in the system.

RELIEF OPENING. *The opening provided in a draft hood to permit the ready escape to the atmosphere of the flue products from the draft hood in the event of no draft, backdraft or stoppage beyond the draft hood, and to permit air into the draft hood in the event of a strong chimney updraft.*

RELIEF VALVE (DEVICE). *A safety valve designed to forestall the development of a dangerous condition by relieving either pressure, temperature or vacuum in the hot water supply system.*

RELIEF VALVE, PRESSURE. *An automatic valve that opens and closes a relief vent, depending on whether the pressure is above or below a predetermined value.*

RELIEF VALVE, TEMPERATURE.

Manual reset type. *A valve that automatically opens a relief vent at a predetermined temperature and that must be manually returned to the closed position.*

Reseating or self-closing type. *An automatic valve that opens and closes a relief vent, depending on whether the temperature is above or below a predetermined value.*

RELIEF VALVE, VACUUM. A device to prevent excessive buildup of vacuum in a pressure vessel.

REPAIR. The reconstruction, replacement or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

REPAIR, MINOR. *The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance when the work has limited impact on access, safety or health. Minor repairs do not include the cutting away of any wall, partition or portions of walls, the removal or cutting of any structural beam or load bearing support, or the removal or change of any required element of accessibility, means of egress, or rearrangement of parts of a structure affecting the egress requirements. Minor repairs do not include addition to, alteration of, replacement or relocation of any standpipe, water supply, sewer, drainage, drain leader, gas, soil, waste, vent or similar piping, electric wiring or mechanical or other work affecting public health or general safety.*

REROOFING. The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See "Roof recover."

RESIDENTIAL BUILDING. *A one-family, two-family, or three-family dwelling house, and any accessory structure incidental to that dwelling house. "Residential building" includes a one-family, two-family, or three-family dwelling house that is used as a model to promote the sale of a similar dwelling house. "Residential building" does not include an industrialized unit as defined by division (C)(3) of Section 3781.06 of the Revised Code, a manufactured home as defined by division (C)(4) of Section 3781.06 of the Revised Code, or a mobile home as defined by division (O) of Section 4501.01 of the Revised Code.*

RESIDENTIAL BUILDING OFFICIAL. *An individual who has received and maintains a certification of "Residential Building Official" in accordance with rules of the board of building standards.*

RETURN AIR. Air removed from an approved conditioned space or location and recirculated or exhausted.

RIDGE. With respect to topographic wind effects, an elongated crest of a hill characterized by strong relief in two directions.

RISER, GAS. *A vertical pipe supplying fuel gas.*

RISER (PLUMBING). A water pipe that extends vertically one full story or more to convey water to branches or to a group of fixtures.

RISER (STAIR). The vertical component of a step or stair.

ROOF ASSEMBLY. A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck. A roof assembly includes the roof deck, underlayment and roof covering, and can also include a thermal barrier, ignition barrier, insulation or a vapor retarder.

ROOF COATING. A fluid-applied, adhered coating used for roof maintenance or roof repair, or as a component of a roof covering system or roof assembly.

ROOF COVERING. The covering applied to the roof deck for weather resistance, fire classification or appearance.

ROOF COVERING SYSTEM. See "Roof assembly."

ROOF DECK. The flat or sloped surface not including its supporting members or vertical supports.

ROOF RECOVER. The process of installing an additional roof covering over a prepared existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

ROOF REPAIR. Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purposes of its maintenance.

ROOF REPLACEMENT. The process of removing the existing roof covering, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new roof covering.

ROOM HEATER. A free-standing heating appliance installed in the space being heated and not connected to ducts.

ROOM HEATER, UNVENTED. *See "Unvented room heater."*

ROOM HEATER, VENTED. *See "Vented room heater."*

ROUGH-IN. The installation of the parts of the plumbing system that must be completed prior to the installation of fixtures. This includes DWV, water supply and built-in fixture supports.

RUNNING BOND. The placement of masonry units such that head joints in successive courses are horizontally offset not less than one-quarter the unit length.

R-VALUE (THERMAL RESISTANCE). *The inverse of the time rate of heat flow through a body from one of its bounding surfaces to the other surface for a unit temperature difference between the two surfaces, under steady state conditions, per unit area (h • ft^2 • °F/Btu) [(m^2 • K)/W].*

SAFE. *As applied to a building, means free from danger or hazard to the life, safety, health or welfare of persons occupying or frequenting it, or of the public, and from danger of settlement, movement, disintegration, or collapse, whether such danger arises from the method or materials of its construction or from equipment installed therein, for the purpose of lighting, heating, the transmission or utilization of electric current, or from its location or otherwise.*

SAFETY SHUTOFF DEVICE. *See "Flame safeguard."*

SANITARY. *As applied to a building, means free from danger or hazard to the health of persons occupying or frequenting it or to that of the public, if such danger arises from the method or materials of its construction or from any equipment installed therein for the purpose of lighting, heating, ventilating, or plumbing.*

SANITARY SEWER. A sewer that carries sewage and excludes storm, surface and groundwater.

SCUPPER. An opening in a wall or parapet that allows water to drain from a roof.

SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY (SDC). A classification assigned to a structure based on its occupancy category and the severity of the design earthquake ground motion at the site.

SEPTIC TANK. A water-tight receptor that receives the discharge of a building sanitary drainage system and is constructed so as to separate solids from the liquid, digest organic matter through a period of detention, and allow the liquids to discharge into the soil outside of the tank through a system of open joint or perforated piping or a seepage pit.

SERIOUS HAZARD. *A hazard of considerable consequence to safety or health through the design, location, construction, or equipment of a building, or the condition thereof, which hazard has been established through experience to be of certain or probable consequence, or which can be determined to be, or which is obviously such a hazard.*

SERVICE WATER HEATING. *Supply of hot water for purposes other than comfort heating.*

SEWAGE. Any liquid waste containing animal matter, vegetable matter or other impurity in suspension or solution.

SEWAGE PUMP. A permanently installed mechanical device for removing sewage or liquid waste from a sump.

SHAFT. *An enclosed space extending through one or more stories of a building, connecting vertical openings in successive floors, or floors and the roof.*

SHALL. The term, where used in the code, is construed as mandatory.

SHEAR WALL. A general term for walls that are designed and constructed to resist racking from seismic and wind by use of masonry, concrete, cold-formed steel or wood framing in accordance with Chapter 6 of this code and the *applicable* limitations in Section 301.2 of this code.

SHINGLE FASHION. A method of installing roof or wall coverings, water-resistive barriers, flashing or other building components such that upper layers of material are placed overlapping lower layers of material to provide drainage and protect against water intrusion at unsealed penetrations and joints or in combination with sealed joints.

SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE. A roofing membrane that is field applied using one layer of membrane material (either homogeneous or composite) rather than multiple layers.

SINGLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM. An assembly incorporating the detector, control equipment and alarm sounding device in one unit that is operated from a power supply either in the unit or obtained at the point of installation.

SITE-BUILT FENESTRATION PRODUCT. *See FENESTRATION, Site-Built Fenestration Product.*

SKYLIGHT. *See FENESTRATION, Skylights.*

SKYLIGHT, UNIT. *See FENESTRATION, Unit Skylight.*

SKYLIGHTS AND SLOPED GLAZING. *See FENESTRATION, Skylights and Sloped Glazing.*

SLIP JOINT. A mechanical-type joint used primarily on fixture traps. The joint tightness is obtained by compressing a friction-type washer such as rubber, nylon, neoprene, lead or special packing material against the pipe by the tightening of a (slip) nut.

SLOPE. The fall (pitch) of a line of pipe in reference to a horizontal plane. In drainage, the slope is expressed as the fall in units vertical per units horizontal (percent) for a length of pipe.

SMOKE-DEVELOPED INDEX. A comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from measurements of smoke obscuration versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

SPECIFIC GRAVITY (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *As applied to gas, specific gravity is the ratio of the weight of a given volume to that of the same volume of air, both measured under the same condition.*

SOIL STACK OR PIPE. A pipe that conveys sewage containing fecal material.

SOLAR ENERGY SYSTEM. A system that converts solar radiation to usable energy, including photovoltaic panel systems and solar thermal systems.

SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC). *The ratio of the solar heat gain entering the space through the fenestration assembly to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation that is then reradiated, conducted or convected into the space.*

SOLAR THERMAL COLLECTOR. Components in a solar thermal system that collect and convert solar radiation to thermal energy.

SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM. A system that converts solar radiation to thermal energy for use in heating or cooling.

SOLID MASONRY. Load-bearing or nonload-bearing construction using masonry units where the net cross-sectional area of each unit in any plane parallel to the bearing surface is not less than 75 percent of its gross cross-sectional area. Solid masonry units shall conform to ASTM C55, C62, C73, C145 or C216.

SPLINE. A strip of wood structural panel cut from the same material used for the panel facings, used to connect two structural insulated panels. The strip (spline) fits into a groove cut into the vertical edges of the two structural insulated panels to be joined. Splines are used behind each facing of the structural insulated panels being connected as shown in Figure 610.8.

STACK. Any main vertical DWV line, including offsets, that extends one or more stories as directly as possible to its vent terminal.

STACK BOND. The placement of masonry units in a bond pattern is such that head joints in successive courses are vertically aligned. For the purpose of this

code, requirements for stack bond shall apply to all masonry laid in other than running bond.

STACK VENT. The extension of soil or waste stack above the highest horizontal drain connected.

STAIR. A change in elevation, consisting of one or more risers.

STAIRWAY. One or more flights of stairs, either interior or exterior, with the necessary landings and connecting platforms to form a continuous and uninterrupted passage from one level to another within or attached to a building, porch or deck.

STAIRWAY, SPIRAL. A stairway with a plan view of closed circular form and uniform section-shaped treads radiating from a minimum-diameter circle.

STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN. *A version of the proposed design that meets the minimum requirements of this code and is used to determine the maximum annual energy use requirement for compliance based on total building performance.*

STANDARD TRUSS. Any construction that does not permit the roof-ceiling insulation to achieve the required R-value over the exterior walls.

STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER PLANT. A self-contained package or factory-matched packages that constitute an automatically-operated assembly of integrated systems for generating useful electrical energy and recoverable thermal energy that is permanently connected and fixed in place.

STORM SEWER, DRAIN. A pipe used for conveying rainwater, surface water, subsurface water and similar liquid waste.

STORY. That portion of a building included between the upper surface of a floor and the upper surface of the floor or roof next above.

STORY ABOVE GRADE PLANE. Any story having its finished floor surface entirely above grade plane, or in which the finished surface of the floor next above is either of the following:

1. More than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade plane.
2. More than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the finished ground level at any point.

STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER. Structural members manufactured using wood elements bonded together with exterior adhesives.

Examples of structural composite lumber are:

Laminated strand lumber (LSL). A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.10 inch (2.54 mm) or less and their average lengths are not less than 150 times the least dimension of the wood strand elements.

Laminated veneer lumber (LVL). A composite of wood veneer elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the veneer element thicknesses are 0.25 inch (6.4 mm) or less.

Oriented strand lumber (OSL). A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.10 inch (2.54 mm) or less and their average lengths are not less than 75 times and less than 150 times the least dimension of the wood strand elements.

Parallel strand lumber (PSL). A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.25 inch (6.4 mm) or less and their average lengths are not less than 300 times the least dimension of the wood strand elements.

STRUCTURAL INSULATED PANEL (SIP). A structural sandwich panel that consists of a lightweight foam plastic core securely laminated between two thin, rigid wood structural panel facings.

STRUCTURE. That which is built or constructed.

SUBSOIL DRAIN. A drain that collects subsurface water or seepage water and conveys such water to a place of disposal.

SUMP. A tank or pit that receives sewage or waste, located below the normal grade of the gravity system and that must be emptied by mechanical means.

SUMP PUMP. A pump installed to empty a sump. These pumps are used for removing storm water only. The pump is selected for the specific head and volume of the load and is usually operated by level controllers.

SUNROOM. A one-story structure attached to a dwelling with a glazing area in excess of 40 percent of the gross area of the structure's exterior walls and roof.

SUPPLY AIR. Air delivered to a conditioned space through ducts or plenums from the heat exchanger of a heating, cooling or ventilating system.

SUPPORTS. Devices for supporting, hanging and securing pipes, fixtures and equipment.

SWEEP. A drainage fitting designed to provide a change in direction of a drain pipe of less than the angle specified by the amount necessary to establish the desired slope of the line. Sweeps provide a longer turning radius than bends and a less turbulent flow pattern (see "Bend" and "Elbow").

TEMPERATURE- AND PRESSURE-RELIEF (T AND P) VALVE. A combination relief valve designed to function as both a temperature-relief and pressure-relief valve.

TEMPERATURE-RELIEF VALVE. A temperature-actuated valve designed to discharge automatically at the temperature at which it is set.

TERMITE-RESISTANT MATERIAL. Pressure-preservative-treated wood in accordance with the AWPA standards in Section 317.1, naturally durable termite-resistant wood, steel, concrete, masonry or other approved material.

THERMAL ISOLATION. P*hysical and space conditioning separation from conditioned spaces. The conditioned spaces shall be controlled as separate zones for heating and cooling or conditioned by separate equipment.*

THERMAL RESISTANCE, R-VALUE. See "R-value."

THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE, U-FACTOR. See "U-factor."

THERMOSTAT. *An automatic control device used to maintain temperature at a fixed or adjustable set point.*

Electric switch type. *A device that senses changes in temperature and controls electrically, by means of separate components, the flow of gas to the burner(s) to maintain selected temperatures.*

THIRD-PARTY CERTIFICATION AGENCY. *Deleted.*

THIRD-PARTY CERTIFIED. *Deleted.*

TOILET, GAS-FIRED. *A packaged and completely assembled appliance containing a toilet that incinerates refuse instead of flushing it away with water.*

TOWNHOUSE. *Deleted.*

TRANSITION FITTINGS, PLASTIC TO STEEL. *An adapter for joining plastic pipe to steel pipe. The purpose of this fitting is to provide a permanent, pressure-tight connection between two materials that cannot be joined directly one to another.*

TRAP. A fitting, either separate or built into a fixture, that provides a liquid seal to prevent the emission of sewer gases without materially affecting the flow of sewage or wastewater through it.

TRAP ARM. That portion of a fixture drain between a trap weir and the vent fitting.

TRAP PRIMER. A device or system of piping to maintain a water seal in a trap, typically installed where infrequent use of the trap would result in evaporation of the trap seal, such as floor drains.

TRAP SEAL. The trap seal is the maximum vertical depth of liquid that a trap will retain, measured between the crown weir and the top of the dip of the trap.

TRIM. Picture molds, chair rails, baseboards, handrails, door and window frames, and similar decorative or protective materials used in fixed applications.

TRUSS DESIGN DRAWING. The graphic depiction of an individual truss, that describes the design and physical characteristics of the truss.

TUBULAR DAYLIGHTING DEVICE (TDD). A nonoperable fenestration unit primarily designed to transmit daylight from a roof surface to an interior ceiling via a tubular conduit. The basic unit consists of an exterior glazed weathering surface, a light-transmitting tube with a reflective interior surface, and an interior-sealing device such as a translucent ceiling panel. The unit may be factory assembled, or field assembled from a manufactured kit.

TYPE L VENT. A listed and labeled vent conforming to UL 641 for venting oil-burning appliances listed for use with Type L vents or with gas appliances listed for use with Type B vents.

U-FACTOR (THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE). *The coefficient of heat transmission (air to air) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films (Btu/h • ft^2 • °F) [W/(m^2 • K)].*

UNDERLAYMENT. One or more layers of felt, sheathing paper, nonbituminous saturated felt, or other approved material over which a roof covering, with a slope of 2 to 12 (17-percent slope) or greater, is applied.

UNIT HEATER. *A self-contained, automatically controlled, vented, fuel-gas-burning, space-heating appliance, intended for installation in the space to be heated without the use of ducts, and having integral means for circulation of air.*

UNVENTED ROOM HEATER. *An unvented heating appliance designed for stationary installation and utilized to provide comfort heating. Such appliances provide radiant heat or convection heat by gravity or fan circulation directly from the heater and do not utilize ducts.*

VACUUM BREAKER. A device that prevents back-siphonage of water by admitting atmospheric pressure through ports to the discharge side of the device.

VALVE (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas). *A device used in piping to control the gas supply to any section of a system of piping or to an appliance.*

Appliance shutoff. *A valve located in the piping system, used to isolate individual appliances for purposes such as service or replacement.*

Automatic. *An automatic or semiautomatic device consisting essentially of a valve and an operator that control the gas supply to the burner(s) during operation of an appliance. The operator shall be actuated by application of gas pressure on a flexible diaphragm, by electrical means, by mechanical means or by other approved means.*

Automatic gas shutoff. *A valve used in conjunction with an automatic gas shutoff device to shut off the gas supply to a water-heating system. It shall be constructed integrally with the gas shutoff device or shall be a separate assembly.*

Individual main burner. *A valve that controls the gas supply to an individual main burner.*

Main burner control. *A valve that controls the gas supply to the main burner manifold.*

Manual main gas-control. *A manually operated valve in the gas line for the purpose of completely turning on or shutting off the gas supply to the appliance, except to pilot or pilots that are provided with independent shutoff.*

Manual reset. *An automatic shutoff valve installed in the gas supply piping and set to shut off when unsafe conditions occur. The device remains closed until manually reopened.*

Service shutoff. *A valve, installed by the serving gas sup- plier between the service meter or source of supply and the customer piping system, to shut off the entire piping system.*

VAPOR DIFFUSION PORT. A passageway for conveying water vapor from an unvented attic to the outside atmosphere.

VAPOR PERMEABLE. The property of having a moisture vapor permeance rating of 5 perms (2.9×10^{-10} kg/Pa × s × m^2) or greater, where tested in accordance with the desiccant method using Procedure A of ASTM E96. A vapor permeable material permits the passage of moisture vapor.

VAPOR RETARDER CLASS. A measure of the ability of a material or assembly to limit the amount of moisture that passes through that material or assembly. Vapor retarder class shall be defined using the desiccant method with Procedure A of ASTM E96 as follows:

Class I: ≤ 0.1 perm rating
Class II: > 0.1 to ≤ 1.0 perm rating
Class III: > 1.0 to ≤ 10 perm rating

VENT. *A pipe or other conduit composed of factory-made components, containing a passageway for conveying combustion products and air to the atmosphere, listed and labeled for use with a specific type or class of appliance.*

Special gas vent. *A vent listed and labeled for use with listed Category II, III and IV gas appliances.*

Type B vent. *A vent listed and labeled for use with appliances with draft hoods and other Category I appliances that are listed for use with Type B vents.*

Type BW vent. *A vent listed and labeled for use with wall furnaces.*

Type L vent. *A vent listed and labeled for use with appliances that are listed for use with Type L or Type B vents.*

VENT COLLAR. See "Flue collar."

VENT CONNECTOR. That portion of a venting system that connects the flue collar or draft hood of an appliance to a vent.

VENT DAMPER DEVICE, AUTOMATIC. A device intended for installation in the venting system, in the outlet of an individual, automatically operated fuel burning appliance and that is designed to open the venting system automatically where the appliance is in operation and to close off the venting system automatically where the appliance is in a standby or shutdown condition.

VENT GASES. Products of combustion from fuel-burning appliances, plus excess air and dilution air, in the venting system above the draft hood or draft regulator.

VENT PIPING (Chapter 24 – Fuel gas).

Breather. *Piping run from a pressure-regulating device to the outdoors, designed to provide a reference to atmospheric pressure. If the device incorporates an integral pressure relief mechanism, a breather vent can also serve as a relief vent.*

Relief. *Piping run from a pressure-regulating or pressure- limiting device to the outdoors, designed to provide for the safe venting of gas in the event of excessive pressure in the gas piping system.*

VENT STACK. A vertical vent pipe installed to provide circulation of air to and from the drainage system and that extends through one or more stories.

VENT SYSTEM. Piping installed to equalize pneumatic pressure in a drainage system to prevent trap seal loss or blowback due to siphonage or back pressure.

VENTED APPLIANCE CATEGORIES. *Appliances that are categorized for the purpose of vent selection are classified into the following four categories:*

Category I. *An appliance that operates with a non-positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that avoids excessive condensate production in the vent.*

Category II. *An appliance that operates with a non-positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that is capable of causing excessive condensate production in the vent.*

Category III. *An appliance that operates with a positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that avoids excessive condensate production in the vent.*

Category IV. *An appliance that operates with a positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that is capable of causing excessive condensate production in the vent.*

VENTED ROOM HEATER. *A vented self-contained, free- standing, non-*

recessed appliance for furnishing warm air to the space in which it is installed, directly from the heater without duct connections.

VENTED WALL FURNACE. *A self-contained vented appliance complete with grilles or equivalent, designed for incorporation in or permanent attachment to the structure of a building, mobile home or travel trailer, and furnishing heated air circulated by gravity or by a fan directly into the space to be heated through openings in the casing. This definition shall exclude floor furnaces, unit heaters and central furnaces as herein defined.*

VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VENTILATION AIR. *That portion of supply air that comes from outside (outdoors) plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space.*

VENTING. Removal of combustion products to the outdoors.

VENTING SYSTEM. A continuous open passageway from the flue collar *or draft hood* of an appliance to the outside atmosphere for the purpose of removing flue or vent gases. A venting system is usually composed of a vent or a chimney and vent connector, if used, assembled to form the open passageway.

VERTICAL FENESTRATION. *See FENESTRATION, vertical.*

VERTICAL PIPE. Any pipe or fitting that makes an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) or more with the horizontal.

VINYL SIDING. A shaped material, made principally from rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC), that is used to cover exterior walls of buildings.

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE (VT). *The ratio of visible light entering the space through the fenestration product assembly to the incident visible light, Visible Transmittance, includes the effects of glazing material and frame and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.*

WALL HEATER, UNVENTED TYPE. *A room heater of the type designed for insertion in or attachment to a wall or partition. Such heater does not incorporate concealed venting arrangements in its construction and discharges all products of combustion through the front into the room being heated.*

WALL, RETAINING. A wall not laterally supported at the top, that resists lateral soil load and other imposed loads.

WALLS. Walls shall be defined as follows:

Load-bearing wall. A wall supporting any vertical load in addition to its own weight.

Nonbearing wall. A wall which does not support vertical loads other than its own weight.

WASTE. Liquidborne waste that is free of fecal matter.

WASTE PIPE OR STACK. Piping that conveys only liquid sewage not containing fecal material.

WASTE RECEPTOR. A floor sink, standpipe, hub drain or a floor drain that receives the discharge of one or more indirect waste pipes.

WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Piping that conveys water from the service to the plumbing fixtures, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, devices or other systems served, including fittings and control valves.

WATER HEATER. Any heating appliance or equipment that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

WATER MAIN. A water supply pipe for public use.

WATER OUTLET. A valved discharge opening, including a hose bibb, through which water is removed from the potable water system supplying water to a plumbing fixture or plumbing appliance that requires either an air gap or backflow prevention device for protection of the supply system.

WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER. A material behind an exterior wall covering that is intended to resist liquid water that has penetrated behind the exterior covering from further intruding into the exterior wall assembly.

WATER SERVICE PIPE. The outside pipe from the water main or other source of potable water supply to the water distribution system inside the building, terminating at the service valve.

WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM. The water service pipe, the water-distributing pipes and the necessary connecting pipes, fittings, control valves and appurtenances in or adjacent to the building or premises.

WET VENT. A vent that receives the discharge of wastes from other fixtures.

WHOLE-HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM. An exhaust system, supply system, or combination thereof that is designed to mechanically exchange indoor air for outdoor air where operating continuously or through a programmed intermittent schedule to satisfy the whole-house ventilation rate.

WINDBORNE DEBRIS REGION. *Deleted.*

WINDER. A tread with nonparallel edges.

WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL. A panel manufactured from veneers; or wood strands or wafers; bonded together with waterproof synthetic resins or other suitable bonding systems. Examples of wood structural panels are plywood, orientated strand board (OSB) or composite panels.

YARD. An open space, other than a court, unobstructed from the ground to the sky, except where specifically provided by this code, on the lot on which a building is situated.

ZONE. *A space or group of spaces within a building with heating or cooling requirements that are sufficiently similar so that desired conditions can be maintained throughout using a single controlling device.*

Replaces:	4101:8-2-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	05/27/2006, 07/01/2007, 01/01/2013, 07/01/2014, 01/01/2016

4101:8-3-01 Building planning.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 301
DESIGN CRITERIA

301.1 Application. Buildings and structures, and parts thereof, shall be constructed to safely support all loads, including dead loads, live loads, roof loads, flood loads, snow loads, wind loads and seismic loads as prescribed by this code. The construction of buildings and structures in accordance with the provisions of this code shall result in a system that provides a complete load path that meets the requirements for the transfer of loads from their point of origin through the load-resisting elements to the foundation. Buildings and structures constructed as prescribed by this code are deemed to comply with the requirements of this section.

301.1.1 Alternative provisions. As an alternative to the requirements in Section 301.1, the following standards are permitted subject to the limitations of this code and the limitations therein. Where engineered design is used in conjunction with these standards, the design shall comply with the *Ohio building code*.

1. AWC Wood Frame Construction Manual (WFCM).
2. AISI Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One- and Two-Family Dwellings (AISI S230).
3. ICC Standard on the Design and Construction of Log Structures (ICC 400).

301.1.2 Construction systems. The requirements of this code are based on platform and balloon-frame construction for light-frame buildings. The requirements for concrete and masonry buildings are based on a balloon framing system. Other framing systems must have equivalent detailing to ensure force transfer, continuity and compatible deformations.

301.1.3 Engineered design. Where a building of otherwise conventional construction contains structural elements exceeding the limits of Section 301

or otherwise not conforming to this code, these elements shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. The extent of such design need only demonstrate compliance of nonconventional elements with other applicable provisions and shall be compatible with the performance of the conventional framed system. Engineered design in accordance with the *Ohio building code* is permitted for buildings and structures, and parts thereof, included in the scope of this code.

301.2 Climatic and geographic design criteria. Buildings shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions of this code as limited by the provisions of this section. Additional criteria shall be established by the local jurisdiction and set forth in Table 301.2(1).

301.2.1 Wind design criteria. Buildings and portions thereof shall be constructed in accordance with the wind provisions of this code using the ultimate design wind speed in Table 301.2(1) as determined from Figure 301.2(5)A. The structural provisions of this code for wind loads are not permitted where wind design is required as specified in Section 301.2.1.1. Where different construction methods and structural materials are used for various portions of a building, the applicable requirements of this section for each portion shall apply. Where not otherwise specified, the wind loads listed in Table 301.2(2) adjusted for height and exposure using Table 301.2(3) shall be used to determine design load performance requirements for wall coverings, curtain walls, roof coverings, exterior windows, skylights, garage doors and exterior doors. Asphalt shingles shall be designed for wind speeds in accordance with Section 905.2.4. A continuous load path shall be provided to transmit the applicable uplift forces in Section 802.11.1 from the roof assembly to the foundation.

301.2.1.1 Wind limitations and wind design required. *Deleted*

301.2.1.1.1 Sunrooms. Sunrooms shall comply with AAMA/NPEA/NSA 2100. For the purpose of applying the criteria of AAMA/NPEA/NSA 2100 based on the intended use, sunrooms shall be identified as one of the following categories by the permit applicant, design professional or the property owner or owner's agent in the construction documents. Component and cladding pressures shall be used for the design of elements that do not qualify as main windforce-resisting systems. Main windforce-resisting system pressures shall be used for the design of elements assigned to provide support and stability for the overall sunroom.

1. **Category I:** A thermally isolated sunroom with walls that are open or enclosed with insect screening or 0.5 mm (20 mil) maximum thick- ness plastic film. The space is non-habitable and unconditioned.
2. **Category II:** A thermally isolated sunroom with enclosed walls. The openings are enclosed with translucent or transparent plastic or glass. The space is non-habitable and unconditioned.
3. **Category III:** A thermally isolated sunroom with enclosed walls. The openings are enclosed with translucent or transparent plastic or glass. The sunroom fenestration complies with additional requirements for air infiltration resistance and water penetration resistance. The space is non-habitable and unconditioned.
4. **Category IV:** A thermally isolated sunroom with enclosed walls. The sunroom is designed to be heated or cooled by a separate temperature control or system and is thermally isolated from the primary structure. The sunroom fenestration complies with additional requirements for water penetration resistance, air infiltration resistance and thermal performance. The space is non-habitable and conditioned.
5. **Category V:** A sunroom with enclosed walls. The sunroom is designed to be heated or cooled and is open to the main structure. The sunroom fenestration complies with additional requirements for water penetration resistance, air infiltration resistance and thermal performance. The space is habitable and conditioned.

301.2.1.2 Protection of openings. *Deleted*

301.2.1.2.1 Application of ASTM E1996. *Deleted*

TABLE 301.2.1.2
WINDBORNE DEBRIS PROTECTION FASTENING SCHEDULE FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS

Deleted

301.2.1.3 Wind speed conversion. Where referenced documents are based on nominal design wind speeds and do not provide the means for conversion between ultimate design wind speeds and nominal design wind speeds, the ultimate design wind speeds, V_{ult}, of Figure 301.2(5)A shall be

converted to nominal design wind speeds, V_{asd}, using Table 301.2.1.3.

TABLE 301.2.1.3
WIND SPEED CONVERSIONS[a]

V_{ult}	110	115	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	190	200
V_{asd}	85	89	93	101	108	116	124	132	139	147	155

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Linear interpolation is permitted.

301.2.1.4 Exposure category. For each wind direction considered, an exposure category that adequately reflects the characteristics of ground surface irregularities shall be determined for the site at which the building or structure is to be constructed. For a site located in the transition zone between categories, the category resulting in the largest wind forces shall apply. Account shall be taken of variations in ground surface roughness that arise from natural topography and vegetation as well as from constructed features. For a site where multiple detached one-, two- *and three* family dwellings, *Ohio building code group R occupancies permitted to use this code* or other structures are to be constructed as part of a subdivision or master-planned community, or are otherwise designated as a developed area by the authority having jurisdiction, the exposure category for an individual structure shall be based on the site conditions that will exist at the time when all adjacent structures on the site have been constructed, provided that their construction is expected to begin within 1 year of the start of construction for the structure for which the exposure category is determined. For any given wind direction, the exposure in which a specific building or other structure is sited shall be assessed as being one of the following categories:

1. **Exposure B.** Urban and suburban areas, wooded areas or other terrain with numerous closely spaced obstructions having the size of single-family dwellings or larger. Exposure B shall be assumed unless the site meets the definition of another type exposure.
2. **Exposure C.** Open terrain with scattered obstructions, including surface undulations or other irregularities, having heights generally less than 30 feet (9144 mm) extending more than 1,500 feet (457 m) from the building site in any quadrant. This exposure shall apply to any building located within Exposure B type terrain where the building is directly adjacent to open areas of Exposure C type terrain in any quadrant for a distance of more than 600 feet (183 m). This category includes flat, open country and grasslands.
3. **Exposure D.** Flat, unobstructed areas exposed to wind flowing over open water, smooth mud flats, salt flats and unbroken ice for a distance

of not less than 5,000 feet (1524 m). This exposure shall apply only to those buildings and other structures exposed to the wind coming from over the unobstructed area. Exposure D extends downwind from the edge of the unobstructed area a distance of 600 feet (183 m) or 20 times the height of the building or structure, whichever is greater.

TABLE 301.2(1)
CLIMATIC AND GEOGRAPHIC DESIGN CRITERIA

GROUND SNOW LOAD[o]	WIND DESIGN Speed [d] (mph)	SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY	SUBJECT TO DAMAGE FROM Weathering[a]	Frost line depth[b]	Termite[c]	WINTER DESIGN TEMP. [e]	ICE BARRIER UNDERLAYMENT REQUIRED [h]	FLOOD HAZARDS [g]	AIR FREEZING INDEX [i]	MEAN ANNUAL TEMP [j]
	115		*severe*		*Moderate to heavy*		*Yes*			
MANUAL J DESIGN CRITERIA [n]										
Deleted portion of table – owners shall use manual J when required by this code										

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Where weathering requires a higher strength concrete or grade of masonry than necessary to satisfy the structural requirements of this code, the frost line depth strength required for weathering shall govern. The grade of masonry units shall be determined from ASTM C34, C55, C62, C73, C90, C129, C145, C216 or C652.

b. Where the frost line depth requires deeper footings than indicated in Figure R403.1(1), the frost line depth strength required for weathering shall govern. The jurisdiction shall fill in the frost line depth column with the minimum depth of footing below finish grade.

c. *Indicates* the need for protection depending on whether there has been a history of local subterranean termite damage.

d. Wind exposure category shall be determined on a site-specific basis in accordance with Section 301.2.1.4.

e. The outdoor design dry-bulb temperature shall be *determined from the following table:*

STATION	***HEATING DEGREE DAYS (Yearly Total)***	***DESIGN TEMPERATURES***	***DEGREES NORTH LATITUDE***
Akron-Canton	*6,037*	*6°*	*41°00′ – 40°50′*
Cincinnati	*4,410*	*6°*	*39°10′*
Cleveland	*6,351*	*5°*	*41°30′*
Columbus	*5,660*	*5°*	*40°00′*
Dayton	*5,622*	*4°*	*39°50′*
Mansfield	*6,403*	*5°*	*40°50′*
Sandusky	*5,796*	*6°*	*41°30′*
Toledo	*6,494*	*1°*	*41°40′*
Youngstown	*6,417*	*4°*	*41°10′*

Deviations from the *tabulated* temperatures shall be permitted to reflect local climates or local weather experience as *documented* by the building official.

f. The jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table with the seismic design category determined from Section 301.2.2.1.

g. The jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table with (a) the date of the jurisdiction's entry into the National Flood Insurance Program (date of adoption of the first code or ordinance for management of flood hazard areas), (b) the date(s) of the Flood Insurance Study and (c) the panel numbers and dates of the currently effective FIRMs and FBFMs or other flood hazard map adopted by the authority having jurisdiction, as amended.

h. In accordance with Sections 905.1.2, 905.4.3.1, 905.5.3.1, 905.6.3.1, 905.7.3.1 and 905.8.3.1, *all jurisdictions in Ohio have* a history of local damage from the effects of ice damming.

i. The jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table with the 100-year return period air freezing index (BF-days) from Figure 403.3(2) or from the 100-year (99 percent) value on the National Climatic Data Center data table "Air Freezing Index-USA Method (Base 32°F)."

j. The jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table with the mean annual temperature from the National Climatic Data Center data table "Air Freezing Index-USA Method (Base 32°F)."

k. *T*opographic wind speed-up effects -*Deleted*

l. *U*nusual wind conditions -*Deleted*

m. *W*ind-borne debris wind zone(s) -*Deleted*

n. The jurisdiction shall fill in these sections of the table to establish the design criteria using Table 1a or 1b from ACCA Manual J or established criteria determined by the jurisdiction.

o. The jurisdiction shall fill in this section of the table using the Ground Snow Loads in Figure 301.2(6).

TABLE 301.2(2)
COMPONENT AND CLADDING LOADS FOR A BUILDING WITH A MEAN ROOF HEIGHT OF 30 FEET LOCATED IN EXPOSURE B (ASD) (psf)[a, b, c, d, e]

	ZONE	EFFECTIVE WIND AREA (feet^2)	ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ULT} (mph)																	
			110		115		120		130		140		150		160		170		180	
Roof 0 to 7 degrees	1	10	10.0	-13.0	10.0	-14.0	10.0	-15.0	10.0	-18.0	10.0	-21.0	9.9	-24.0	11.2	-27.0	12.6	-31.0	14.2	-35.0
	1	20	10.0	-12.0	10.0	-13.0	10.0	-15.0	10.0	-17.0	10.0	-20.0	9.2	-23.0	10.6	-26.0	11.9	-30.0	13.3	-34.1
	1	50	10.0	-12.0	10.0	-13.0	10.0	-14.0	10.0	-17.0	10.0	-19.0	8.5	-22.0	10.0	-26.0	10.8	-29.0	12.2	-32.9
	1	100	10.0	-11.0	10.0	-13.0	10.0	-14.0	10.0	-16.0	10.0	-19.0	7.8	-22.0	10.0	-25.0	10.0	-28.0	11.3	-32.0
	2	10	10.0	-21.0	10.0	-23.0	10.0	-26.0	10.0	-30.0	10.0	-35.0	9.9	-40.0	11.2	-46.0	12.6	-52.0	14.2	-58.7
	2	20	10.0	-19.0	10.0	-21.0	10.0	-23.0	10.0	-27.0	10.0	-31.0	9.2	-36.0	10.6	-41.0	11.9	-46.0	13.3	-52.4
	2	50	10.0	-16.0	10.0	-18.0	10.0	-19.0	10.0	-23.0	10.0	-26.0	8.5	-30.0	10.0	-34.0	10.8	-39.0	12.2	-44.1
	2	100	10.0	-14.0	10.0	-15.0	10.0	-16.0	10.0	-19.0	10.0	-22.0	7.8	-26.0	10.0	-30.0	10.0	-33.0	11.3	-37.9
	3	10	10.0	-33.0	10.0	-36.0	10.0	-39.0	10.0	-46.0	10.0	-53.0	9.9	-61.0	11.2	-69.0	12.6	-78.0	14.2	-88.3
	3	20	10.0	-27.0	10.0	-29.0	10.0	-32.0	10.0	-38.0	10.0	-44.0	9.2	-50.0	10.6	-57.0	11.9	-65.0	13.3	-73.1
	3	50	10.0	-19.0	10.0	-21.0	10.0	-23.0	10.0	-27.0	10.0	-32.0	8.5	-36.0	10.0	-41.0	10.8	-47.0	12.2	-53.1
	3	100	10.0	-14.0	10.0	-15.0	10.0	-16.0	10.0	-19.0	10.0	-22.0	7.8	-26.0	10.0	-30.0	10.0	-33.0	11.3	-37.9
Roof > 7 to 27 degrees	1	10	10.0	-11.0	10.0	-13.0	10.0	-14.0	10.5	-16.0	12.2	-19.0	14.0	-22.0	15.9	-25.0	17.9	-28.0	20.2	-32.0
	1	20	10.0	-11.0	10.0	-12.0	10.0	-13.0	10.0	-16.0	11.1	-18.0	12.8	-21.0	14.5	-24.0	16.4	-27.0	18.4	-31.1
	1	50	10.0	-11.0	10.0	-12.0	10.0	-13.0	10.0	-15.0	10.0	-18.0	11.1	-20.0	12.7	-23.0	14.3	-26.0	16.0	-29.9
	1	100	10.0	-10.0	10.0	-11.0	10.0	-12.0	10.0	-15.0	10.0	-17.0	9.9	-20.0	11.2	-22.0	12.6	-25.0	14.2	-29.0
	2	10	10.0	-20.0	10.0	-22.0	10.0	-24.0	10.5	-29.0	12.2	-33.0	14.0	-38.0	15.9	-44.0	17.9	-49.0	20.2	-55.8
	2	20	10.0	-19.0	10.0	-20.0	10.0	-22.0	10.0	-26.0	11.1	-31.0	12.8	-35.0	14.5	-40.0	16.4	-45.0	18.4	-51.2
	2	50	10.0	-16.0	10.0	-18.0	10.0	-20.0	10.0	-23.0	10.0	-27.0	11.1	-31.0	12.7	-35.0	14.3	-40.0	16.0	-45.4
	2	100	10.0	-15.0	10.0	-16.0	10.0	-18.0	10.0	-21.0	10.0	-24.0	9.9	-28.0	11.2	-32.0	12.6	-36.0	14.2	-40.9
	3	10	10.0	-30.0	10.0	-33.0	10.0	-36.0	10.5	-43.0	12.2	-49.0	14.0	-57.0	15.9	-65.0	17.9	-73.0	20.2	-82.4
	3	20	10.0	-28.0	10.0	-31.0	10.0	-34.0	10.0	-40.0	11.1	-46.0	12.8	-53.0	14.5	-60.0	16.4	-68.0	18.4	-77.0
	3	50	10.0	-26.0	10.0	-28.0	10.0	-31.0	10.0	-36.0	10.0	-42.0	11.1	-48.0	12.7	-55.0	14.3	-62.0	16.0	-69.9
	3	100	10.0	-24.0	10.0	-26.0	10.0	-28.0	10.0	-33.0	10.0	-39.0	9.9	-44.0	11.2	-51.0	12.6	-57.0	14.2	-64.6
Roof > 27 to 45 degrees	1	10	11.9	-13.0	13.1	-14.0	14.2	-15.0	16.7	-18.0	19.4	-21.0	22.2	-24.0	25.3	-27.0	28.5	-31.0	32.0	-35.0
	1	20	11.6	-12.0	12.7	-13.0	13.8	-14.0	16.2	-17.0	18.8	-20.0	21.6	-23.0	24.6	-26.0	27.7	-29.0	31.1	-33.2
	1	50	11.2	-11.0	12.2	-12.0	13.3	-13.0	15.6	-16.0	18.1	-18.0	20.8	-21.0	23.6	-24.0	26.7	-27.0	29.9	-30.8
	1	100	10.9	-10.0	11.9	-11.0	12.9	-12.0	15.1	-15.0	17.6	-17.0	20.2	-20.0	22.9	-22.0	25.9	-25.0	29.0	-29.0
	2	10	11.9	-15.0	13.1	-16.0	14.2	-18.0	16.7	-21.0	19.4	-24.0	22.2	-28.0	25.3	-32.0	28.5	-36.0	32.0	-40.9
	2	20	11.6	-14.0	12.7	-16.0	13.8	-17.0	16.2	-20.0	18.8	-23.0	21.6	-27.0	24.6	-30.0	27.7	-34.0	31.1	-39.1
	2	50	11.2	-13.0	12.2	-15.0	13.3	-16.0	15.6	-19.0	18.1	-22.0	20.8	-25.0	23.6	-29.0	26.7	-32.0	29.9	-36.8
	2	100	10.9	-13.0	11.9	-14.0	12.9	-15.0	15.1	-18.0	17.6	-21.0	20.2	-24.0	22.9	-27.0	25.9	-31.0	29.0	-35.0
	3	10	11.9	-15.0	13.1	-16.0	14.2	-18.0	16.7	-21.0	19.4	-24.0	22.2	-28.0	25.3	-32.0	28.5	-36.0	32.0	-40.9
	3	20	11.6	-14.0	12.7	-16.0	13.8	-17.0	16.2	-20.0	18.8	-23.0	21.6	-27.0	24.6	-30.0	27.7	-34.0	31.1	-39.1
	3	50	11.2	-13.0	12.2	-15.0	13.3	-16.0	15.6	-19.0	18.1	-22.0	20.8	-25.0	23.6	-29.0	26.7	-32.0	29.9	-36.8
	3	100	10.9	-13.0	11.9	-14.0	12.9	-15.0	15.1	-18.0	17.6	-21.0	20.2	-24.0	22.9	-27.0	25.9	-31.0	29.0	-35.0
Wall	4	10	13.1	-14.0	14.3	-15.0	15.5	-16.0	18.2	-19.0	21.2	-22.0	24.3	-26.0	27.7	-30.0	31.2	-33.0	35.0	-37.9
	4	20	12.5	-13.0	13.6	-14.0	14.8	-16.0	17.4	-19.0	20.2	-22.0	23.2	-25.0	26.4	-28.0	29.7	-32.0	33.4	-36.4
	4	50	11.7	-12.0	12.8	-14.0	13.9	-15.0	16.3	-17.0	19.0	-20.0	21.7	-23.0	24.7	-27.0	27.9	-30.0	31.3	-34.3
	4	100	11.1	-12.0	12.1	-13.0	13.2	-14.0	15.5	-17.0	18.0	-19.0	20.6	-22.0	23.5	-25.0	26.5	-29.0	29.8	32.7
	4	500	10.0	-10.0	10.6	-11.0	11.6	-12.0	13.6	-15.0	15.8	-17.0	18.1	-20.0	20.6	-22.0	23.2	-25.0	26.1	-29.0
	5	10	13.1	-17.0	14.3	-19.0	15.5	-20.0	18.2	-24.0	21.2	-28.0	24.3	-32.0	27.7	-37.0	31.2	-41.0	35.0	-46.8
	5	20	12.5	-16.0	13.6	-17.0	14.8	-19.0	17.4	-22.0	20.2	-26.0	23.2	-30.0	26.4	-34.0	29.7	-39.0	33.4	-43.7
	5	50	11.7	-14.0	12.8	-16.0	13.9	-17.0	16.3	-20.0	19.0	-23.0	21.7	-27.0	24.7	-31.0	27.9	-35.0	31.3	-39.5
	5	100	11.1	-13.0	12.1	-14.0	13.2	-16.0	15.5	-19.0	18.0	-22.0	20.6	-25.0	23.5	-28.0	26.5	-32.0	29.8	-36.4
	5	500	10.0	-10.0	10.6	-11.0	11.6	-12.0	13.6	-15.0	15.8	-17.0	18.1	-20.0	20.6	-22.0	23.2	-25.0	26.1	-29.0

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The effective wind area shall be equal to the span length multiplied by an effective width. This width shall be permitted to be not less than one-third the span length. For cladding fasteners, the effective wind area shall not be greater than the area that is tributary to an individual fastener.

b. For effective areas between those given, the load shall be interpolated or the load associated with the lower effective area shall be used.

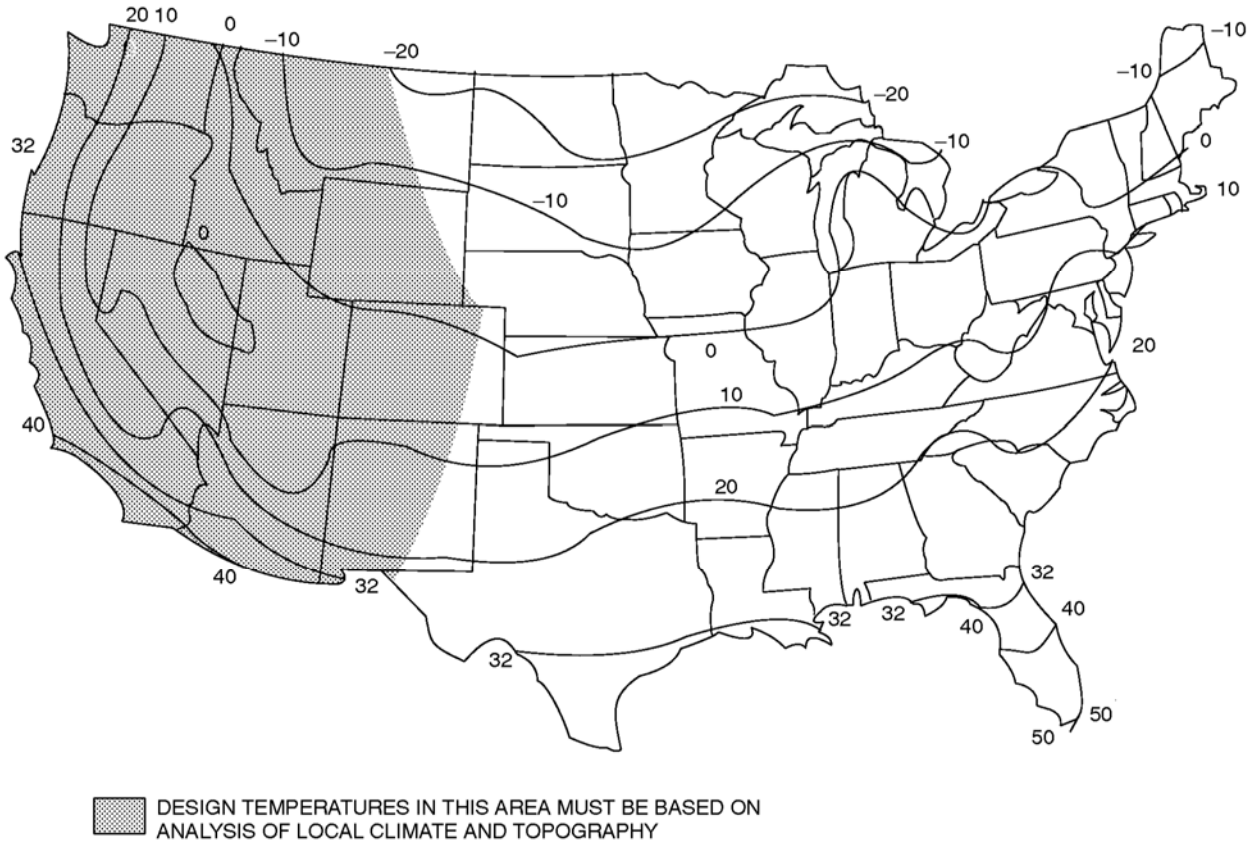
c. Table values shall be adjusted for height and exposure by multiplying by the adjustment coefficient in Table 301.2(3).

d. See Figure 301.2(8) for location of zones.

e. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the building surfaces.

TABLE 301.2(3)
HEIGHT AND EXPOSURE ADJUSTMENT COEFFICIENTS FOR TABLE 301.2(2)

MEAN ROOF HEIGHT	EXPOSURE		
	B	C	D
15	1.00	1.21	1.47
20	1.00	1.29	1.55
25	1.00	1.35	1.61
30	1.00	1.40	1.66
35	1.05	1.45	1.70
40	1.09	1.49	1.74
45	1.12	1.53	1.78
50	1.16	1.56	1.81
55	1.19	1.59	1.84
60	1.22	1.62	1.87



For SI: °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8.

FIGURE 301.2(1)
ISOLINES OF THE 97½ -PERCENT WINTER (DECEMBER, JANUARY AND FEBRUARY) DESIGN TEMPERATURES (°F)

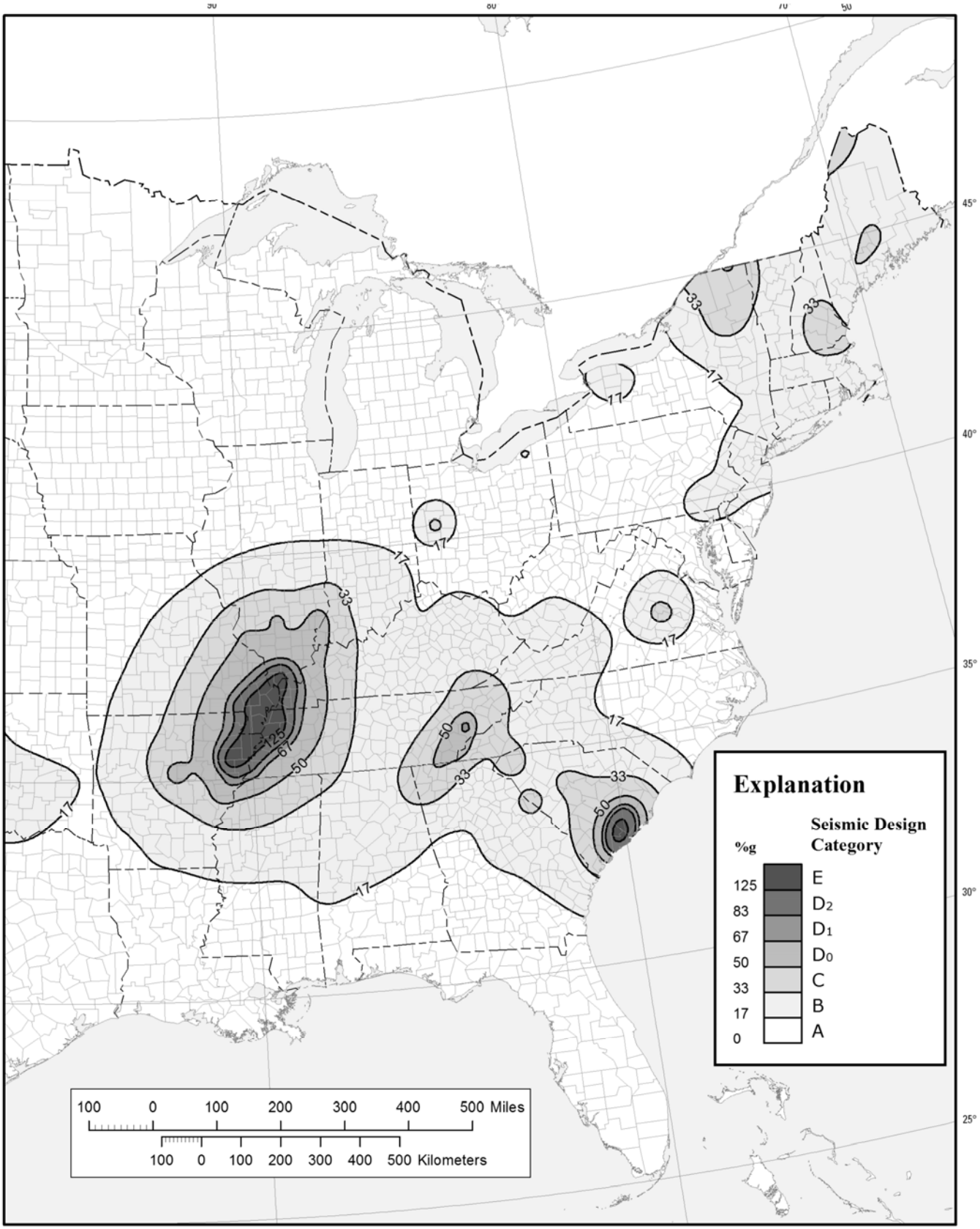


FIGURE 301.2(2)
SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES

D E L E T E D *portion of Figure 301.2(2) for Alaska, Hawaii, Puerto Rico and western U.S*

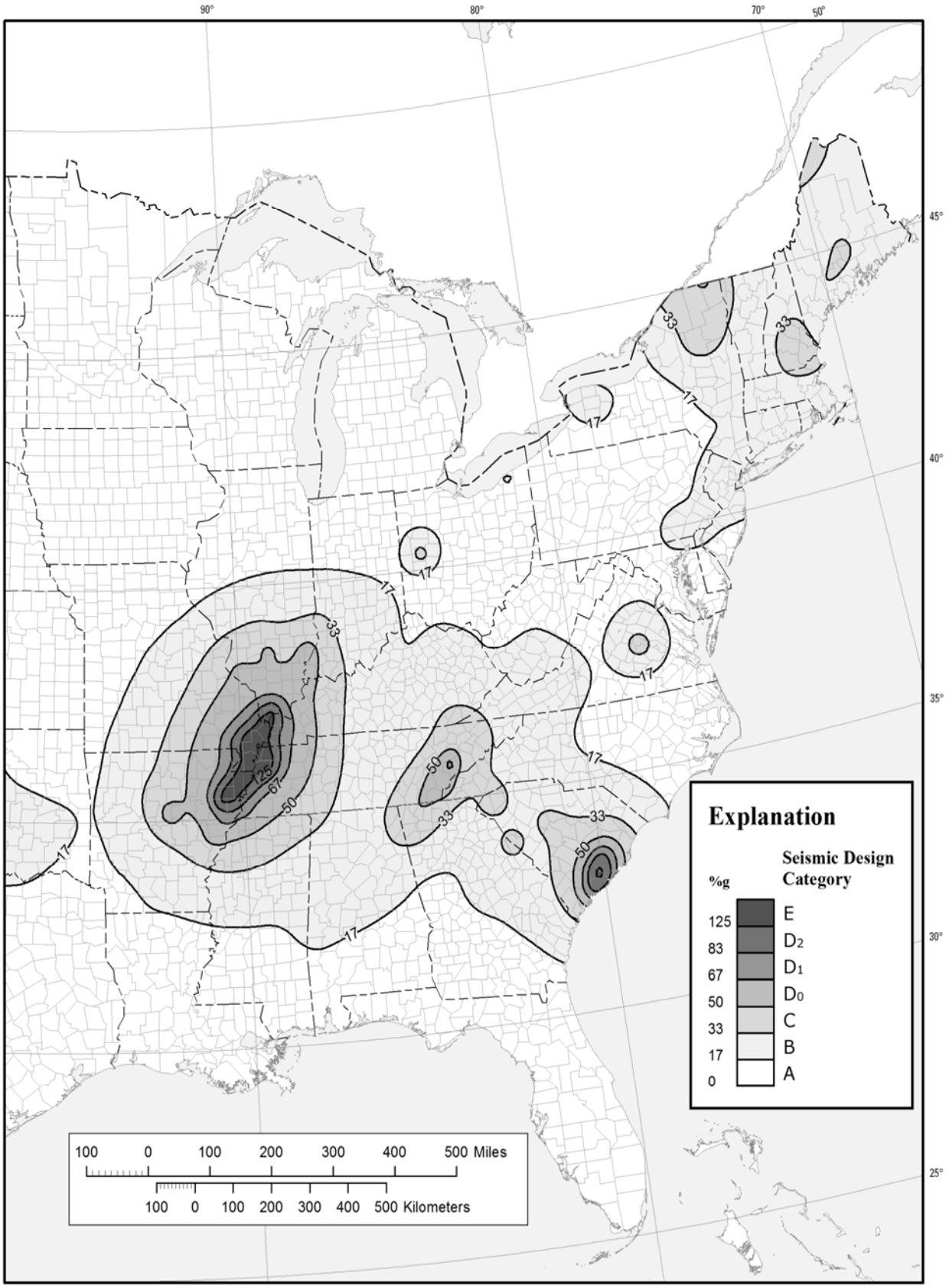
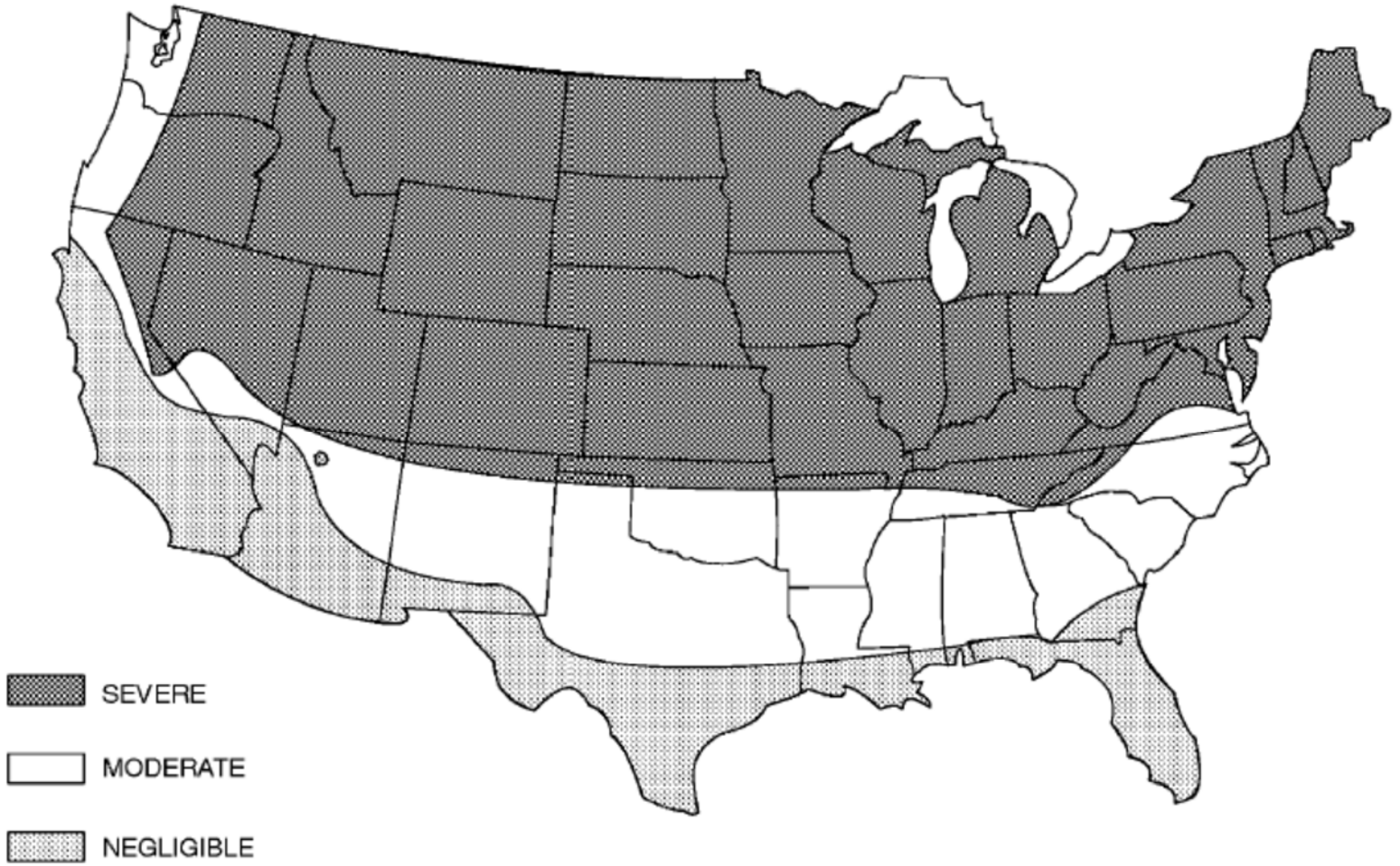


FIGURE 301.2(3)
ALTERNATE SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES

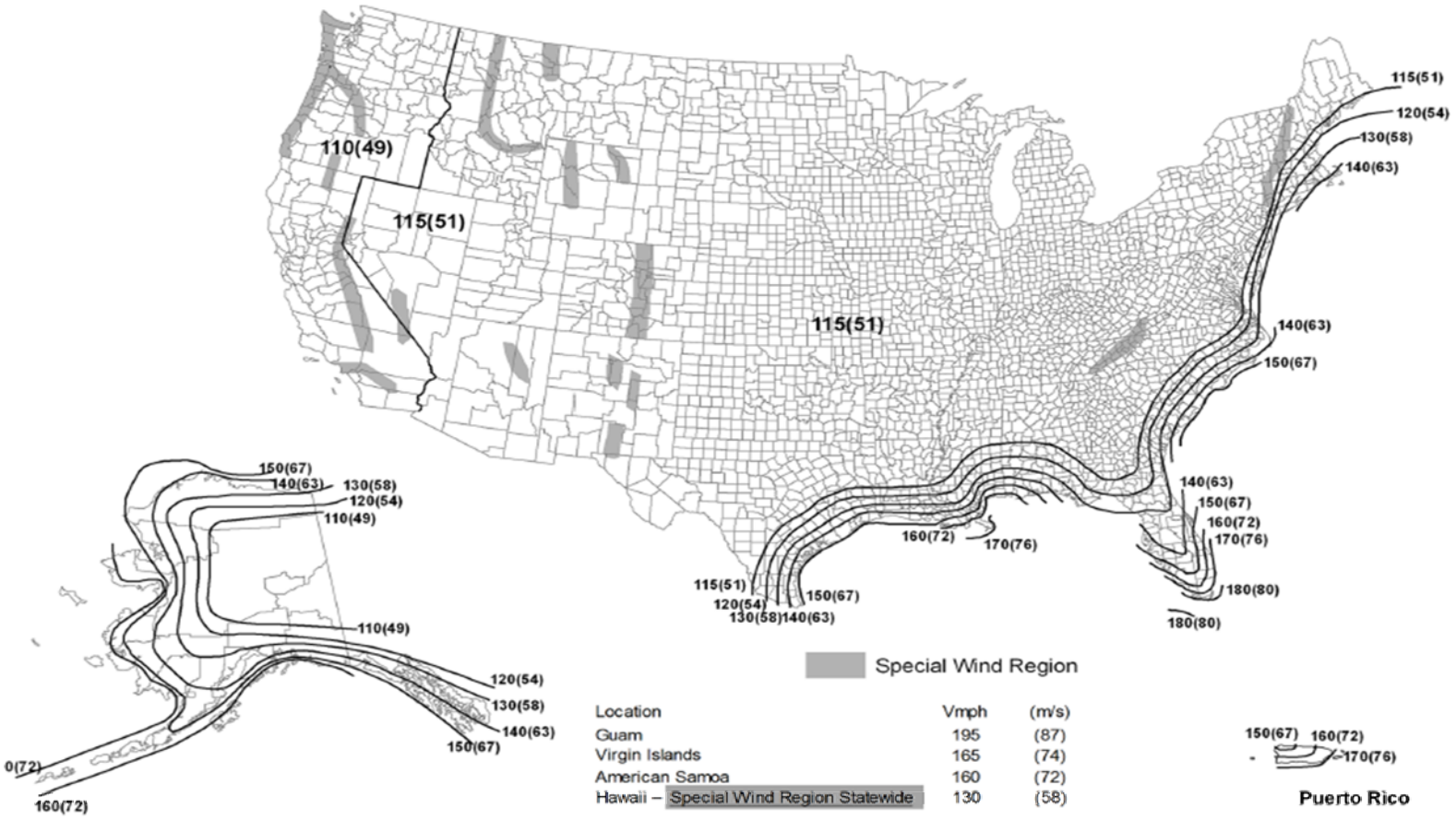
D E L E T E D *portion of Figure 301.2(3) for Alaska, Hawaii, Puerto Rico and western U.S*



a. Alaska and Hawaii are classified as severe and negligible, respectively.

b. Lines defining areas are approximate only. Local conditions may be more or less severe than indicated by region classification. A severe classification is where weather conditions result in significant snowfall combined with extended periods during which there is little or no natural thawing causing deicing salts to be used extensively.

FIGURE 301.2(4)
WEATHERING PROBABILITY MAP FOR CONCRETE [a, b]



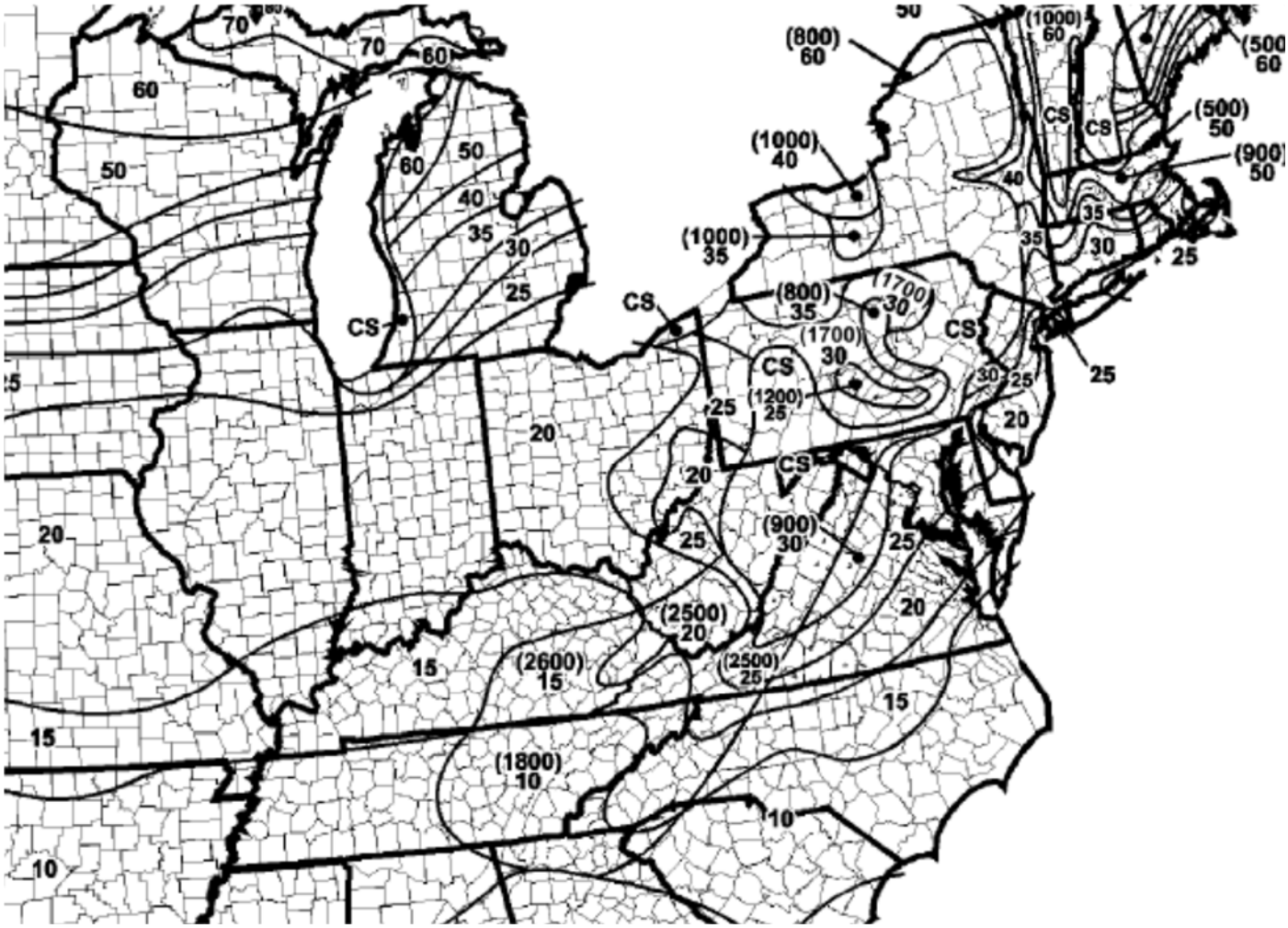
Notes:

1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 ft (10m) above ground for Exposure C category.
2. Linear interpolation between contours is permitted.
3. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 7% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.00143, MRI = 700 Years).

FIGURE 301.2(5) A
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEEDS

D E L E T E D *Figure 301.2(5)B Regions where wind design is required*

D E L E T E D *portion of Figure 301.2(6) for western U.S*

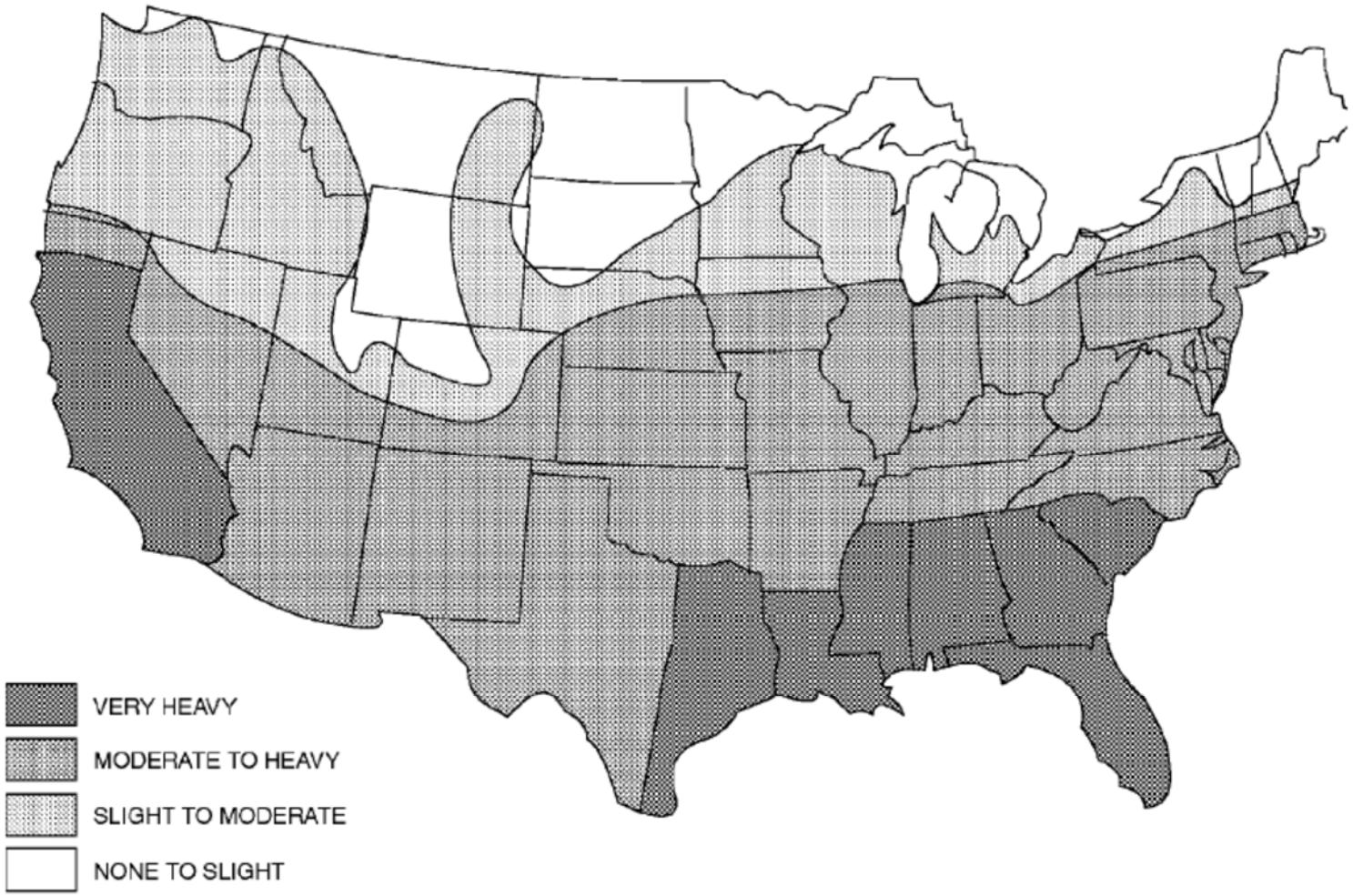


For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mile = 1.61 km.

a. In CS areas, site-specific Case Studies are required to establish ground snow loads. Extreme local variations in ground snow loads in these areas preclude mapping at this scale.

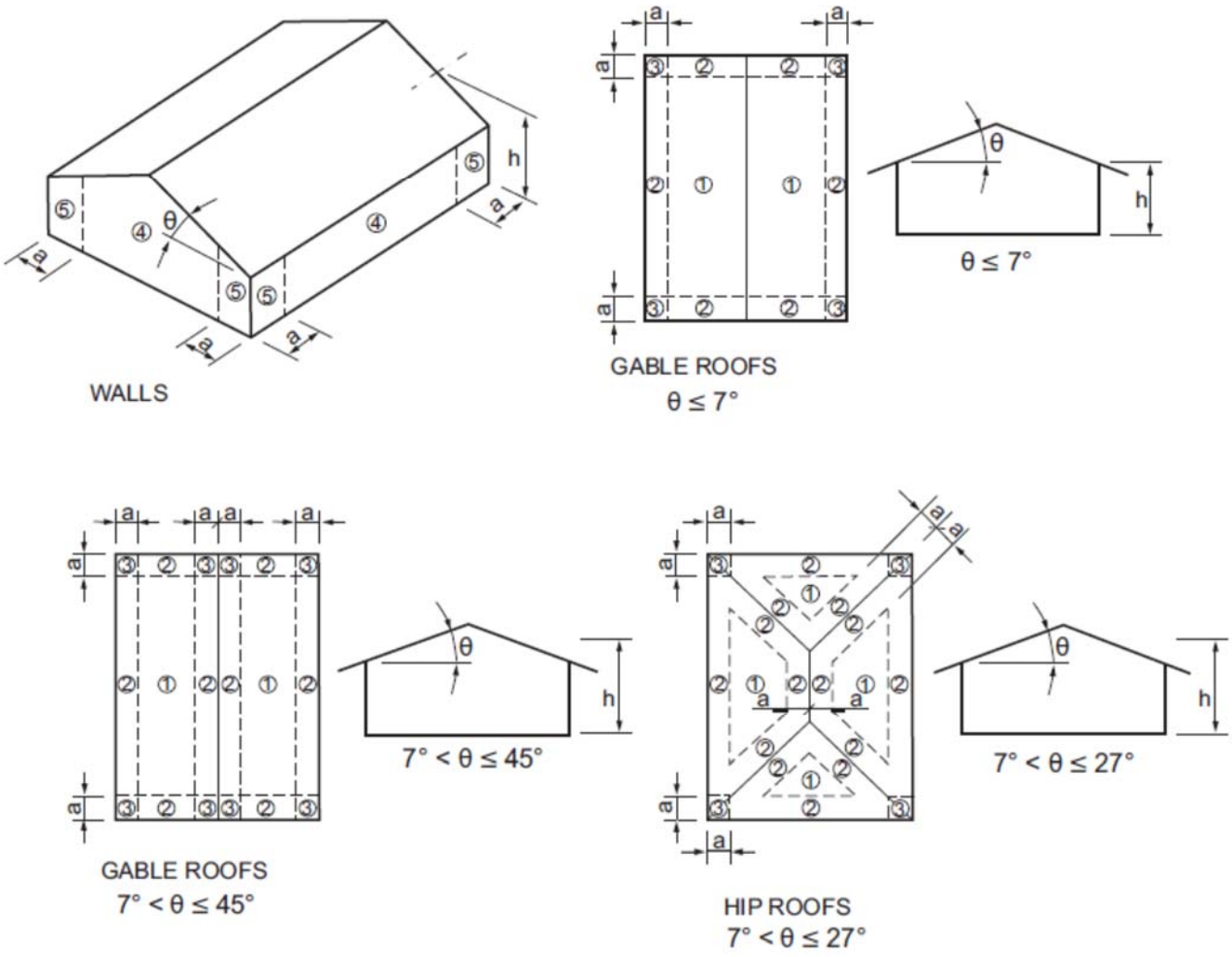
b. Numbers in parentheses represent the upper elevation limits in feet for the ground snow load values presented below. Site-specific case studies are required to establish ground snow loads at elevations not covered.

FIGURE 301.2(6)
GROUND SNOW LOADS, P_g, (lb/ft)
FOR THE *EASTERN* UNITED STATES



Note: Lines defining areas are approximate only. Local conditions may be more or less severe than indicated by the region classification

FIGURE 301.2(7)
TERMITE INFESTATION PROBABILITY MAP



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.
Note: a = 4 feet in all cases.

FIGURE 301.2(8)
COMPONENT AND CLADDING PRESSURE ZONES

301.2.1.5 Topographic wind effects. *Deleted*

TABLE 301.2.1.5.1
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED MODIFICATION FOR TOPOGRAPHIC WIND EFFECT[a, b]
Deleted

Deleted

FIGURE 301.2.1.5.1(1)
TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURES FOR WIND SPEED-UP EFFECT

Deleted

FIGURE 301.2.1.5.1(2)
ILLUSTRATION OF WHERE ON A TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURE, WIND SPEED INCREASE IS APPLIED

Deleted

FIGURE 301.2.1.5.1(3)
UPWIND OBSTRUCTION

301.2.1.5.1 Simplified topographic wind speed-up method. *Deleted*

301.2.2 Seismic provisions. Buildings in Seismic Design Categories C shall be constructed in accordance with the requirements of this section and other seismic requirements of this code. The seismic provisions of this code shall apply as follows:

1. *Buildings with four or more dwelling units* in Seismic Design Categories C.
2. *Deleted*

Components of buildings not required to be designed to resist seismic loads shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions of this code.

301.2.2.1 Determination of seismic design category. Buildings shall be assigned a seismic design category in accordance with Figure 301.2(2) *and Table 301.2.2.1.1*

301.2.2.1.1 Alternate determination of seismic design category. The seismic design categories and corresponding short-period design spectral response accelerations, S_{DS}, shown in Figure 301.2(2), are based on soil Site Class D, used as an assumed default, as defined in Section 1613.2 of the *Ohio Building Code*. If soil conditions are determined by the building official to be Site Class A, B, or D, the seismic design category and short-period design spectral response accelerations, S_{DS}, for a site shall be allowed to be determined in accordance with Figure 301.2(3), or Section 1613.3 of the *Ohio Building Code*. The value of S_{DS} determined in accordance with Section

1613.3 of the *Ohio Building Code* is permitted to be used to set the seismic design category in accordance with Table 301.2.2.1.1, and to interpolate between values in Tables 602.10.3(3), 603.9.2(1) and other seismic design requirements of this code.

TABLE 301.2.2.1.1
SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY DETERMINATION

CALCULATED S_{DS}	SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY
$S_{DS} \leq 0.17g$	A
$0.17g < S_{DS} \leq 0.33g$	B
$0.33g < S_{DS} \leq 0.50g$	C

301.2.2.1.2 Alternative determination of Seismic Design Category E. *Deleted*

301.2.2.2 Weights of materials. Average dead loads shall not exceed 15 pounds per square foot (720 Pa) for the combined roof and ceiling assemblies (on a horizontal projection) or 10 pounds per square foot (480 Pa) for floor assemblies, except as further limited by Section 301.2.2. Dead loads for walls above grade shall not exceed:

1. Fifteen pounds per square foot (720 Pa) for exterior light-frame wood walls.
2. Fourteen pounds per square foot (670 Pa) for exterior light-frame cold-formed steel walls.
3. Ten pounds per square foot (480 Pa) for interior light-frame wood walls.
4. Five pounds per square foot (240 Pa) for interior light-frame cold-formed steel walls.
5. Eighty pounds per square foot (3830 Pa) for 8-inch-thick (203 mm) masonry walls.
6. Eighty-five pounds per square foot (4070 Pa) for 6-inch-thick (152 mm) concrete walls.
7. Ten pounds per square foot (480 Pa) for SIP walls.

Exceptions:

1. Roof and ceiling dead loads not exceeding 25 pounds per square foot (1190 Pa) shall be permitted provided that the wall bracing amounts in Section 602.10.3 are increased in accordance with Table 602.10.3(4).
2. Light-frame walls with stone or masonry veneer shall be permitted in accordance with the provisions of Sections 702.1 and 703.

3. Fireplaces and chimneys shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 10.

301.2.2.3 Stone and masonry veneer. Anchored stone and masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Sections 702.1 and 703.

301.2.2.4 Masonry construction. *Deleted*

301.2.2.5 Concrete construction. Buildings with exterior above-grade concrete walls shall comply with PCA 100 or shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318.

Exception: Detached one-, two- *and three*-family dwellings in Seismic Design Category C with exterior above-grade concrete walls are allowed to comply with the requirements of Section 608.

301.2.2.6 Irregular buildings. The seismic provisions of this code shall not be used for structures, or portions thereof, located in Seismic Design Categories C and considered to be irregular in accordance with this section. A building or portion of a building shall be considered to be irregular where one or more of the conditions defined in Items 1 through 7 occur. Irregular structures, or irregular portions of structures, shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice to the extent the irregular features affect the performance of the remaining structural system. Where the forces associated with the irregularity are resisted by a structural system designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice, the remainder of the building shall be permitted to be designed using the provisions of this code.

1. **Shear wall or braced wall offsets out of plane**. Conditions where exterior shear wall lines or braced wall panels are not in one plane vertically from the foundation to the uppermost story in which they are required.

   Exception: For wood light-frame construction, floors with cantilevers or setbacks not exceeding four times the nominal depth of the wood floor joists are permitted to support braced wall panels that are out of plane with braced wall panels below provided that all of the following are satisfied:

   1. Floor joists are nominal 2 inches by 10 inches (51 mm by 254 mm) or larger and spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center.
   2. The ratio of the back span to the cantilever is not less than 2 to 1.
   3. Floor joists at ends of braced wall panels are doubled.

4. For wood-frame construction, a continuous rim joist is connected to ends of cantilever joists. Where spliced, the rim joists shall be spliced using a galvanized metal tie not less than 0.058 inch (1.5 mm) (16 gage) and 11/2 inches (38 mm) wide fastened with six 16d nails on each side of the splice; or a block of the same size as the rim joist and of sufficient length to fit securely between the joist space at which the splice occurs, fastened with eight 16d nails on each side of the splice.
5. Gravity loads carried at the end of cantilevered joists are limited to uniform wall and roof loads and the reactions from headers having a span of 8 feet (2438 mm) or less.

2. **Lateral support of roofs and floors.** Conditions where a section of floor or roof is not laterally supported by shear walls or braced wall lines on all edges.
Exception: Portions of floors that do not support shear walls, braced wall panels above, or roofs shall be permitted to extend not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) beyond a shear wall or braced wall line.
3. **Shear wall or braced wall offsets in plane.** Conditions where the end of a braced wall panel occurs over an opening in the wall below and extends more than 1 foot (305 mm) horizontally past the edge of the opening. This provision is applicable to shear walls and braced wall panels offset in plane and to braced wall panels offset out of plane in accordance with the exception to Item 1.
Exception: For wood light-frame wall construction, one end of a braced wall panel shall be permitted to extend more than 1 foot (305 mm) over an opening not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) in width in the wall below provided that the opening includes a header in accordance with all of the following:
    1. The building width, loading condition and framing member species limitations of Table 602.7(1) shall apply.
    2. The header is composed of:
        2.1 Not less than one 2 × 12 or two 2 × 10 for an opening not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) wide.
        2.2 Not less than two 2 × 12 or three 2 × 10 for an opening not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) in width.
        2.3 Not less than three 2 × 12 or four 2 × 10 for an opening not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) in width.
    3. The entire length of the braced wall panel does not occur over

an opening in the wall below.

4. **Floor and roof opening**. Conditions where an opening in a floor or roof exceeds the lesser of 12 feet (3658 mm) or 50 percent of the least floor or roof dimension.
5. **Floor level offset**. Conditions where portions of a floor level are vertically offset.
   Exceptions:
   1. Framing supported directly by continuous foundations at the perimeter of the building.
   2. For wood light-frame construction, floors shall be permitted to be vertically offset where the floor framing is lapped or tied together as required by Section 502.6.1.

6. **Perpendicular shear wall and wall bracing**. Conditions where shear walls and braced wall lines do not occur in two perpendicular directions.
7. **Wall bracing in stories containing masonry or concrete construction**. Conditions where stories above grade plane are partially or completely braced by wood wall framing in accordance with Section 602 or cold-formed steel wall framing in accordance with Section 603 include masonry or concrete construction. Where this irregularity applies, the entire story shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.
   Exceptions: Fireplaces, chimneys and masonry veneer in accordance with this code.

301.2.2.7 Height limitations. Wood-framed buildings shall be limited to three stories above grade plane or the limits given in Table 602.10.3(3). Cold-formed steel-framed buildings shall be limited to less than or equal to three stories above grade plane in accordance with AISI S230. Mezzanines as defined in Section 202. Structural insulated panel buildings shall be limited to two stories above grade plane.

301.2.2.8 Cold-formed steel framing in Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2. *Deleted*

301.2.2.9 Masonry chimneys. *Deleted*

301.2.2.10 Anchorage of water heaters. *Deleted*

301.2.3 Snow loads. Wood-framed construction, cold-formed, steel-framed construction and masonry and concrete construction, and structural insulated panel construction in regions with ground snow loads 70 pounds per square foot (3.35 kPa) or less, shall be in accordance with Chapters 5, 6 and 8. Buildings in regions with ground snow loads greater than 70 pounds per square foot (3.35 kPa) shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

301.2.4 Floodplain construction. Buildings and structures constructed in whole or in part in flood hazard areas (including A or V Zones) as established in Table 301.2(1), and substantial improvement and repair of substantial damage of buildings and structures in flood hazard areas, shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 322. Buildings and structures that are located in more than one flood hazard area shall comply with the provisions associated with the most restrictive flood hazard area. Buildings and structures located in whole or in part in identified floodways shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

301.2.4.1 Alternative provisions. As an alternative to the requirements in Section 322, ASCE 24 is permitted subject to the limitations of this code and the limitations therein.

301.3 Story height. The wind and seismic provisions of this code shall apply to buildings with story heights not exceeding the following:

1. For wood wall framing, the story height shall not exceed 11 feet 7 inches (3531 mm) and the laterally unsupported bearing wall stud height permitted by Table 602.3(5).
2. For cold-formed steel wall framing, the story height shall be not more than 11 feet 7 inches (3531 mm) and the unsupported bearing wall stud height shall be not more than 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. For masonry walls, the story height shall be not more than 13 feet 7 inches (4140 mm) and the bearing wall clear height shall be not more than 12 feet (3658 mm).
   Exception: An additional 8 feet (2438 mm) of bearing wall clear height is permitted for gable end walls.
4. For insulating concrete form walls, the maximum story height shall not exceed 11 feet 7 inches (3531 mm) and the maximum unsupported wall height per story as permitted by Section 608 tables shall not exceed 10 feet (3048 mm).
5. For structural insulated panel (SIP) walls, the story height shall be not more than 11 feet 7 inches (3531 mm) and the bearing wall height per

story as permitted by Section 610 tables shall not exceed 10 feet (3048 mm).

Individual walls or wall studs shall be permitted to exceed these limits as permitted by Chapter 6 provisions, provided that story heights are not exceeded. An engineered design shall be provided for the wall or wall framing members where the limits of Chapter 6 are exceeded. Where the story height limits of this section are exceeded, the design of the building, or the noncompliant portions thereof, to resist wind and seismic loads shall be in accordance with the *Ohio building code*.

301.4 Dead load. The actual weights of materials and construction shall be used for determining dead load with consideration for the dead load of fixed service equipment.

301.5 Live load. The minimum uniformly distributed live load shall be as provided in Table 301.5.

TABLE 301.5
MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS
(in pounds per square foot)

USE	LIVE LOAD
Uninhabitable attics without storage[b]	10
Uninhabitable attics with limited storage[b, g]	20
Habitable attics and attics served with fixed stairs	30
Balconies (exterior) and decks[e]	40
Fire escapes	40
Guards and handrails[d]	200[h]
Guard in-fill components[f]	50[h]
Passenger vehicle garages[a]	50[a]
Rooms other than sleeping rooms	40
Sleeping rooms	30
Stairs	40[c]

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 square inch = 645 mm^2, 1 pound = 4.45 N.

a. Elevated garage floors shall be capable of supporting a 2,000-pound load applied over a 20-square-inch area.

b. Uninhabitable attics without storage are those where the clear height between joists and rafters is not more than 42 inches, or where there are not two or more adjacent trusses with web configurations capable of accommodating an assumed rectangle 42 inches in height by 24 inches in width, or greater, within the plane of the trusses. This live load need not be assumed to act concurrently with any other live load requirements.

c. Individual stair treads shall be designed for the uniformly distributed live load or a 300-pound concentrated load acting over an area of 4 square inches, whichever produces the greater stresses.

d. A single concentrated load applied in any direction at any point along the top.

e. See Section 507.1 for decks attached to exterior walls.

f. Guard in-fill components (all those except the handrail), balusters and panel fillers shall be designed to withstand a horizontally applied normal load of 50 pounds on an area equal to 1 square foot. This load need not be assumed to act concurrently with any other live load requirement.

g. Uninhabitable attics with limited storage are those where the clear height between joists and rafters is 42 inches or greater, or where there are two or more adjacent trusses with web configurations capable of

accommodating an assumed rectangle 42 inches in height by 24 inches in width, or greater, within the plane of the trusses.

The live load need only be applied to those portions of the joists or truss bottom chords where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The attic area is accessed from an opening not less than 20 inches in width by 30 inches in length that is located where the clear height in the attic is not less than 30 inches.
2. The slopes of the joists or truss bottom chords are not greater than 2 inches vertical to 12 units horizontal.
3. Required insulation depth is less than the joist or truss bottom chord member depth.

The remaining portions of the joists or truss bottom chords shall be designed for a uniformly distributed concurrent live load of not less than 10 pounds per square foot.

h. Glazing used in handrail assemblies and guards shall be designed with a safety factor of 4. The safety factor shall be applied to each of the concentrated loads applied to the top of the rail, and to the load on the infill components. These loads shall be determined independent of one another, and loads are assumed not to occur with any other live load.

301.6 Roof load. The roof shall be designed for the live load indicated in Table 301.6 or the snow load indicated in Table 301.2(1), whichever is greater.

TABLE 301.6
MINIMUM ROOF LIVE LOADS IN POUNDS-FORCE PER SQUARE FOOT OF HORIZONTAL PROJECTION

ROOF SLOPE	TRIBUTARY LOADED AREA IN SQUARE FEET FOR ANY STRUCTURAL MEMBER		
	0 to 200	201 to 600	Over 600
Flat or rise less than 4 inches per foot (1:3)	20	16	12
Rise 4 inches per foot (1:3) to less than 12 inches per foot (1:1)	16	14	12
Rise 12 inches per foot (1:1) and greater	12	12	12

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 inch per foot = 83.3 mm/m.

301.7 Deflection. The allowable deflection of any structural member under the live load listed in Sections 301.5 and 301.6 or wind loads determined by Section 301.2.1 shall not exceed the values in Table 301.7.

TABLE 301.7
ALLOWABLE DEFLECTION OF STRUCTURAL MEMBERS [b, c]

STRUCTURAL MEMBER	ALLOWABLE DEFLECTION
Rafters having slopes greater than 3:12 with finished ceiling not attached to rafters	*L*/180
Interior walls and partitions	*H*/180
Floors	*L*/360
Ceilings with brittle finishes (including plaster and stucco)	*L*/360
Ceilings with flexible finishes (including gypsum board)	*L*/240
All other structural members	*L*/240
Exterior walls—wind loads [a] with plaster or stucco finish	*H*/360

Exterior walls—wind loads [a] with other brittle finishes	*H*/240
Exterior walls—wind loads [a] with flexible finishes	*H*/120 [d]
Lintels supporting masonry veneer walls [e]	*L*/600

Note: *L* = span length, *H* = span height.

a. For the purpose of the determining deflection limits herein, the wind load shall be permitted to be taken as 0.7 times the component and cladding (ASD) loads obtained from Table 301.2(2).
b. For cantilever members, *L* shall be taken as twice the length of the cantilever.
c. For aluminum structural members or panels used in roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers, not supporting edge of glass or sandwich panels, the total load deflection shall not exceed *L*/60. For continuous aluminum structural members supporting edge of glass, the total load deflection shall not exceed *L*/175 for each glass lite or *L*/60 for the entire length of the member, whichever is more stringent. For sandwich panels used in roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers, the total load deflection shall not exceed *L*/120.
d. Deflection for exterior walls with interior gypsum board finish shall be limited to an allowable deflection of *H*/180.
e. Refer to Section 703.8.2.

301.8 Nominal sizes. For the purposes of this code, dimensions of lumber specified shall be deemed to be nominal dimensions unless specifically designated as actual dimensions.

SECTION 302
FIRE-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

302.1 Exterior walls. Construction, projections, openings and penetrations of exterior walls of dwellings and accessory buildings shall comply with Table 302.1(1); or dwellings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 2904 shall comply with Table 302.1(2).

Exceptions:

1. Walls, projections, openings or penetrations in walls perpendicular to the line used to determine the fire separation distance.
2. Walls of individual dwelling units and their accessory structures located on the same lot.
3. Detached tool sheds and storage sheds, playhouses and similar structures exempted from *approval by Section 102.10* are not required to provide wall protection based on location on the lot. Projections beyond the exterior wall shall not extend over the lot line.
4. Detached garages accessory to a dwelling located within 2 feet (610 mm) of a lot line are permitted to have roof eave projections not exceeding 4 inches (102 mm).
5. Foundation vents installed in compliance with this code are permitted.
6. *Detached garages accessory to a dwelling with an exterior wall located greater than or equal to 3 feet from a lot line.*

Where referenced in this code, an unoccupied space on an adjoining property

may be included in the required fire separation distance, provided that the adjoining property is dedicated or deeded so as to preclude, for the life of the structure, the erection of any building or structure on such space (see section 3781.02 of the Revised Code).

TABLE 302.1(1)
EXTERIOR WALLS

EXTERIOR WALL ELEMENT		MINIMUM FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING	MINIMUM FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE
Walls	Fire-resistance rated	1 hour—tested in accordance with ASTM E119, UL 263 or Section 703.3 of the *Ohio building code* with exposure from both sides	0 feet
	Not fire-resistance rated	0 hours	≥5 feet
Projections	Not allowed	N/A	< 2 feet
	Fire-resistance rated	1 hour on the underside, or heavy timber, or fire- retardant-treated wood[a, b]	≥2 feet to < 5 feet
	Not fire-resistance rated	0 hours	≥5 feet
Openings in walls	Not allowed	N/A	< 3 feet
	25% maximum of wall area	0 hours	3 feet
	Unlimited	0 hours	5 feet
Penetrations	All	Comply with Section 302.4	< 3 feet
		None required	3 feet

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm. N/A = Not Applicable.

a. The fire-resistance rating shall be permitted to be reduced to 0 hours on the underside of the eave overhang if fireblocking is provided from the wall top plate to the underside of the roof sheathing.

b. The fire-resistance rating shall be permitted to be reduced to 0 hours on the underside of the rake overhang where gable vent openings are not installed.

TABLE 302.1(2)
EXTERIOR WALLS—DWELLINGS WITH FIRE SPRINKLERS

EXTERIOR WALL ELEMENT		MINIMUM FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING	MINIMUM FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE
Walls	Fire-resistance rated	1 hour—tested in accordance with ASTM E119, UL 263 or Section 703.3 of the *Ohio building code* with exposure from the outside	0 feet
	Not fire-resistance rated	0 hours	3 feet [a]
Projections	Not allowed	N/A	< 2 feet
	Fire-resistance rated	1 hour on the underside, or heavy timber, or fire- retardant-treated wood [b, c]	2 feet [a]
	Not fire-resistance rated	0 hours	3 feet
Openings in walls	Not allowed	N/A	< 3 feet
	Unlimited	0 hours	3 feet [a]
Penetrations	All	Comply with Section 302.4	< 3 feet

		None required	3 feet [a]

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm. N/A = Not Applicable.

a. For residential subdivisions where all dwellings are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 2904, the fire separation distance for exterior walls not fire-resistance rated and for fire-resistance-rated projections shall be permitted to be reduced to 0 feet, and unlimited unprotected openings and penetrations shall be permitted, where the adjoining lot provides an open setback yard that is 6 feet or more in width on the opposite side of the property line.

b. The fire-resistance rating shall be permitted to be reduced to 0 hours on the underside of the eave overhang if fireblocking is provided from the wall top plate to the underside of the roof sheathing.

c. The fire-resistance rating shall be permitted to be reduced to 0 hours on the underside of the rake overhang where gable vent openings are not installed.

302.2 *Residential structures with more than two dwelling units.* *In structures with more than two dwelling units, each grouping of two dwelling units shall be separated from an adjacent dwelling unit or an adjacent grouping of two dwelling units by two wall assemblies, each having a fire resistance rating of one hour when tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and/or a floor ceiling assembly having a fire resistance rating of two hours when tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.*

Alternatively, each grouping of two dwelling units shall be separated from an adjacent dwelling unit or an adjacent grouping of two dwelling units by a common wall assembly having a fire resistance rating of not less than two hours when tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and/or a floor ceiling assembly having a fire resistance rating of two hours when tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. This option is only permissible if the common wall does not contain plumbing or mechanical equipment, ducts or vents in the cavity of the common wall. The common wall shall be rated for fire exposure from both sides and shall extend to and be tight against exterior walls and the underside of the roof sheathing. Penetrations of electrical outlet boxes shall be in accordance with Section 302.4.

Additionally, within any grouping of two dwelling units, separated as indicated above, the individual dwelling units shall be separated vertically and horizontally from adjacent dwelling units by wall and/or floor assemblies having a fire resistance rating of not less than one hour when tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

When assemblies are required to be fire-resistance-rated, the supporting construction of such assemblies shall have an equal or greater fire-resistive rating.

302.2.1 Double walls. *Deleted*

302.2.2 Common walls. *Deleted*

302.2.3 Continuity. The fire-resistance-rated wall or assembly separating *dwelling units* shall be continuous from the foundation to the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab. The fire-resistance rating shall extend the full length of the wall or assembly, including wall extensions through and separating attached enclosed accessory structures.

302.2.4 Parapets. Parapets constructed in accordance with Section 302.2.5 shall be constructed for *dwellings units* as an extension of exterior walls or common walls in accordance with the following:

1. Where roof surfaces adjacent to the wall or walls are at the same elevation, the parapet shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the roof surfaces.
2. Where roof surfaces adjacent to the wall or walls are at different elevations and the higher roof is not more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the lower roof, the parapet shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the lower roof surface.

   Exception: A parapet is not required in the preceding two cases where the roof covering complies with a minimum Class C rating as tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL 790 and the roof decking or sheathing is of noncombustible materials or fire-retardant-treated wood for a distance of 4 feet (1219 mm) on each side of the wall or walls, or one layer of $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum board is installed directly beneath the roof decking or sheathing, supported by not less than nominal 2-inch (51 mm) ledgers attached to the sides of the roof framing members, for a distance of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) on each side of the wall or walls and any openings or penetrations in the roof are not within 4 feet (1219 mm) of the common walls. Fire-retardant-treated wood shall meet the requirements of Sections 802.1.5 and 803.2.1.2.

3. A parapet is not required where roof surfaces adjacent to the wall or walls are at different elevations and the higher roof is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the lower roof. The common wall construction from the lower roof to the underside of the higher roof deck shall have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating. The wall shall be rated for exposure from both sides.

302.2.5 Parapet construction. Parapets shall have the same fire-resistance rating as that required for the supporting wall or walls. On any side adjacent to a roof surface, the parapet shall have noncombustible faces for the uppermost 18 inches (457 mm), to include counterflashing and coping materials. Where the

roof slopes toward a parapet at slopes greater than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (16.7-percent slope), the parapet shall extend to the same height as any portion of the roof within a distance of 3 feet (914 mm), and the height shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm).

302.2.6 Structural independence. Each individual *dwelling unit* shall be structurally independent.

Exceptions:

1. Foundations supporting exterior walls or common walls.
2. Structural roof and wall sheathing from each unit fastened to the common wall framing.
3. Nonstructural wall and roof coverings.
4. Flashing at termination of roof covering over common wall.
5. *Dwelling units* separated by a common wall as provided in Section 302.2.2, Item 1 or 2.
6. *Dwelling units stacked vertically.*

302.3 Two-family dwellings. Dwelling units in two-family dwellings shall be separated from each other by wall and floor assemblies having not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating where tested in accordance with ASTM E119, UL 263 or Section 703.3 of the *Ohio building code*. Fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling and wall assemblies shall extend to and be tight against the exterior wall, and wall assemblies shall extend from the foundation to the underside of the roof sheathing.

Exceptions:

1. A fire-resistance rating of $\frac{1}{2}$-hour shall be permitted in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with NFPA 13.
2. Wall assemblies need not extend through attic spaces where the ceiling is protected by not less than $\frac{5}{8}$-inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum board, an attic draft stop constructed as specified in Section 302.12.1 is provided above and along the wall assembly separating the dwellings and the structural framing supporting the ceiling is protected by not less than $\frac{1}{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board or equivalent *and the dwelling is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with NFPA 13D.*

302.3.1 Supporting construction. Where floor assemblies are required to be fire-resistance rated by Section 302.3, the supporting construction of such assemblies shall have an equal or greater fire-resistance rating.

302.4 Dwelling unit rated penetrations. Penetrations of wall or floor-ceiling assemblies required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 302.2

or 302.3 shall be protected in accordance with this section.

302.4.1 Through penetrations. Through penetrations of fire-resistance-rated wall or floor assemblies shall comply with Section 302.4.1.1 or 302.4.1.2.

Exception: Where the penetrating items are steel, ferrous or copper pipes, tubes or conduits, the annular space shall be protected as follows:

1. In concrete or masonry wall or floor assemblies, concrete, grout or mortar shall be permitted where installed to the full thickness of the wall or floor assembly or the thickness required to maintain the fire-resistance rating, provided that both of the following are complied with:
   1.1. The nominal diameter of the penetrating item is not more than 6 inches (152 mm).
   1.2. The area of the opening through the wall does not exceed 144 square inches (92,900 mm^2).
2. The material used to fill the annular space shall prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste where subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time temperature fire conditions under a positive pressure differential of not less than 0.01 inch of water (3 Pa) at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the construction penetrated.

302.4.1.1 Fire-resistance-rated assembly. Penetrations shall be installed as tested in the approved fire resistance-rated assembly.

302.4.1.2 Penetration firestop system. Penetrations shall be protected by an approved penetration firestop system installed as tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479, with a positive pressure differential of not less than 0.01 inch of water (3 Pa) and shall have an F rating of not less than the required fire-resistance rating of the wall or floor-ceiling assembly penetrated.

302.4.2 Membrane penetrations. Membrane penetrations shall comply with Section 302.4.1. Where walls are required to have a fire-resistance rating, recessed fixtures shall be installed so that the required fire-resistance rating will not be reduced.

Exceptions:

1. Membrane penetrations of not more than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated walls and partitions by steel electrical boxes that do not exceed 16 square inches (0.0103 m^2) in area provided that the aggregate area of the openings through the membrane does not exceed 100 square inches (0.0645 m^2) in any 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of wall area. The annular

space between the wall membrane and the box shall not exceed $^1/_8$ inch (3.1 mm). Such boxes on opposite sides of the wall shall be separated by one of the following:

1.1. By a horizontal distance of not less than 24 inches (610 mm) where the wall or partition is constructed with individual noncommunicating stud cavities.

1.2. By a horizontal distance of not less than the depth of the wall cavity where the wall cavity is filled with cellulose loose-fill, rockwool or slag mineral wool insulation.

1.3. By solid fireblocking in accordance with Section 302.11.

1.4. By protecting both boxes with listed putty pads.

1.5. By other listed materials and methods.

2. Membrane penetrations by listed electrical boxes of any materials provided that the boxes have been tested for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing. The annular space between the wall membrane and the box shall not exceed $^1/_8$ inch (3.1 mm) unless listed otherwise. Such boxes on opposite sides of the wall shall be separated by one of the following:

2.1. By the horizontal distance specified in the listing of the electrical boxes.

2.2. By solid fireblocking in accordance with Section 302.11.

2.3. By protecting both boxes with listed putty pads.

2.4. By other listed materials and methods

3. The annular space created by the penetration of a fire sprinkler provided that it is covered by a metal escutcheon plate.

4. Ceiling membrane penetrations by listed *and labeled* luminaires or by luminaires protected with listed materials that have been tested for use in fire resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing.

302.5 Dwelling-garage opening and penetration protection. Openings and penetrations through the walls or ceilings separating the dwelling from the garage shall be in accordance with Sections 302.5.1 through 302.5.3.

302.5.1 Opening protection. Openings from a private garage directly into a room used for sleeping purposes shall not be permitted. Other openings between the garage and residence shall be equipped with solid wood doors not less than $1^3/_8$ inches (35 mm) in thickness, solid or honeycomb-core steel doors not less than $1^3/_8$ inches (35 mm) thick, or 20-minute fire-rated doors.

302.5.2 Duct penetration. Ducts in the garage and ducts penetrating the walls or ceilings separating the dwelling from the garage shall be constructed of a minimum No. 26 gage (0.48 mm) sheet steel or other approved material and shall not have openings into the garage.

302.5.3 Other penetrations. Penetrations through the separation required in Section 302.6 shall be protected as required by Section 302.11, Item 4.

302.6 Dwelling-garage fire separation. The garage shall be separated as required by Table 302.6. Openings in garage walls shall comply with Section 302.5. Attachment of gypsum board shall comply with Table 702.3.5. The wall separation provisions of Table 302.6 shall not apply to garage walls that are perpendicular to the adjacent dwelling unit wall.

TABLE 302.6
DWELLING-GARAGE SEPARATION [1]

SEPARATION	MATERIAL
From the residence and attics	Not less than 1/2 -inch gypsum board or equivalent applied to the garage side
From habitable rooms above the garage	Not less than 5/8 -inch Type X gypsum board or equivalent
Structure(s) supporting floor/ceiling assemblies used for separation required by this section	Not less than 1/2 -inch gypsum board or equivalent
Garages located less than 3 feet from a dwelling unit on the same lot	Not less than 1/2 -inch gypsum board or equivalent applied to the interior side of exterior walls that are within this area

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
1. To determine fire resistance equivalents, refer to section 302.14

302.7 Under-stair protection. Enclosed space under stairs that is accessed by a door or access panel shall have walls, under-stair surface and any soffits protected on the enclosed side with 1/2 -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board.

302.8 Foam plastics. For requirements for foam plastics, see Section 316.

302.9 Flame spread index and smoke-developed index for wall and ceiling finishes. Flame spread and smoke- developed indices for wall and ceiling finishes shall be in accordance with Sections 302.9.1 through 302.9.4.

302.9.1 Flame spread index. Wall and ceiling finishes shall have a flame spread index of not greater than 200.

Exception: Flame spread index requirements for finishes shall not apply to trim defined as picture molds, chair rails, baseboards and handrails; to doors and windows or their frames; or to materials that are less than 1/28 -inch (0.91 mm) in thickness cemented to the surface of walls or ceilings if these materials

exhibit flame spread index values not greater than those of paper of this thickness cemented to a noncombustible backing.

302.9.2 Smoke-developed index. Wall and ceiling finishes shall have a smoke-developed index of not greater than 450.

302.9.3 Testing. Tests shall be made in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

302.9.4 Alternative test method. As an alternative to having a flame spread index of not greater than 200 and a smoke-developed index of not greater than 450 where tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, wall and ceiling finishes shall be permitted to be tested in accordance with NFPA 286. Materials tested in accordance with NFPA 286 shall meet the following criteria:

The interior finish shall comply with the following:

1. During the 40 kW exposure, flames shall not spread to the ceiling.
2. The flame shall not spread to the outer extremity of the sample on any wall or ceiling.
3. Flashover, as defined in NFPA 286, shall not occur.
4. The peak heat release rate throughout the test shall not exceed 800 kW.
5. The total smoke released throughout the test shall not exceed 1,000 m^2.

302.10 Flame spread index and smoke-developed index for insulation. Flame spread and smoke-developed index for insulation shall be in accordance with Sections 302.10.1 through 302.10.5.

302.10.1 Insulation. Insulating materials installed within floor-ceiling assemblies, roof-ceiling assemblies, wall assemblies, crawl spaces and attics shall comply with the requirements of this section. They shall exhibit a flame spread index not to exceed 25 and a smoke-developed index not to exceed 450 where tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Insulating materials, where tested in accordance with the requirements of this section, shall include facings, where used, such as vapor retarders, vapor permeable membranes and similar coverings.

Exceptions:

1. Where such materials are installed in concealed spaces, the flame spread index and smoke-developed index limitations do not apply to the facings, provided that the facing is installed in substantial contact with the unexposed surface of the ceiling, floor or wall finish.

2. Cellulose fiber loose-fill insulation that is not spray applied and that complies with the requirements of Section 302.10.3 shall not be required to meet the flame spread index requirements but shall be required to meet a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 where tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2.
3. Foam plastic insulation shall comply with Section 316.

302.10.2 Loose-fill insulation. Loose-fill insulation materials that cannot be mounted in the ASTM E84 or UL723 apparatus without a screen or artificial supports shall comply with the flame spread and smoke-developed limits of Section 302.10.1 where tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2.

Exception: Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation shall not be required to be tested in accordance with CAN/ ULC S102.2, provided that such insulation complies with the requirements of Sections 302.10.1 and 302.10.3.

302.10.3 Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation. Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation shall comply with CPSC 16 CFR, Parts 1209 and 1404. Each package of such insulating material shall be clearly *labeled* in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR, Parts 1209 and 1404.

302.10.4 Exposed attic insulation. Exposed insulation materials installed on attic floors shall have a critical radiant flux of not less than 0.12 watt per square centimeter.

302.10.5 Testing. Tests for critical radiant flux shall be made in accordance with ASTM E970.

302.11 Fireblocking. In combustible construction, fireblocking shall be provided to cut off both vertical and horizontal concealed draft openings and to form an effective fire barrier between stories, and between a top story and the roof space.

Fireblocking shall be provided in wood-framed construction in the following locations:

1. In concealed spaces of stud walls and partitions, including furred spaces and parallel rows of studs or staggered studs, as follows:
   1.1. Vertically at the ceiling and floor levels.
   1.2. Horizontally at intervals not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm).
2. At interconnections between concealed vertical and horizontal spaces such as occur at soffits, drop ceilings and cove ceilings.
3. In concealed spaces between stair stringers at the top and bottom of the run. Enclosed spaces under stairs shall comply with Section 302.7.
4. At openings around vents, pipes, ducts, cables and wires at ceiling and floor

level, with an approved material to resist the free passage of flame and products of combustion. The material filling this annular space shall not be required to meet the ASTM E136 requirements.

5. For the fireblocking of chimneys and fireplaces, see Section 1003.19.
6. *In buildings or structures with more than one dwelling unit, fireblocking* of cornices is required at the line of dwelling unit separation.

302.11.1 Fireblocking materials. Except as provided in Section 302.11, Item 4, fireblocking shall consist of the following materials.

1. Two-inch (51 mm) nominal lumber
2. Two thicknesses of 1-inch (25.4 mm) nominal lumber with broken lap joints.
3. One thickness of $^{23}/_{32}$ -inch (18.3 mm) wood structural panels with joints backed by $^{23}/_{32}$ -inch (18.3 mm) wood structural panels.
4. One thickness of $^{3}/_{4}$-inch (19.1 mm) particleboard with joints backed by $^{3}/_{4}$-inch (19.1 mm) particleboard
5. One-half-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board.
6. One-quarter-inch (6.4 mm) cement-based millboard.
7. Batts or blankets of mineral wool or glass fiber or other approved materials installed in such a manner as to be securely retained in place.
8. Cellulose insulation installed as tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263, for the specific application.

302.11.1.1 Batts or blankets of mineral or glass fiber. Batts or blankets of mineral or glass fiber or other approved nonrigid materials shall be permitted for compliance with the 10-foot (3048 mm) horizontal fireblocking in walls constructed using parallel rows of studs or staggered studs.

302.11.1.2 Unfaced fiberglass. Unfaced fiberglass batt insulation used as fireblocking shall fill the entire cross section of the wall cavity to a height of not less than 16 inches (406 mm) measured vertically. Where piping, conduit or similar obstructions are encountered, the insulation shall be packed tightly around the obstruction.

302.11.1.3 Loose-fill insulation material. Loose-fill insulation material shall not be used as a fireblock unless specifically tested in the form and manner intended for use to demonstrate its ability to remain in place and to retard the spread of fire and hot gases.

302.11.2 Fireblocking integrity. The integrity of fire-blocks shall be

maintained.

302.12 Draftstopping. In combustible construction where there is usable space both above and below the concealed space of a floor-ceiling assembly, draftstops shall be installed so that the area of the concealed space does not exceed 1,000 square feet (92.9 m^2). Draftstopping shall divide the concealed space into approximately equal areas. Where the assembly is enclosed by a floor membrane above and a ceiling membrane below, draftstopping shall be provided in floor-ceiling assemblies under the following circumstances:

1. Ceiling is suspended under the floor framing.
2. Floor framing is constructed of truss-type open-web or perforated members.

302.12.1 Materials. Draftstopping materials shall be not less than $^1/_2$ -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board, $^3/_8$ -inch (9.5 mm) wood structural panels or other approved materials adequately supported. Draftstopping shall be installed parallel to the floor framing members unless otherwise approved by the building official. The integrity of the draftstops shall be maintained.

302.13 Fire protection of floors. Floor assemblies that are not required elsewhere in this code to be fire-resistance rated, shall be provided with a $^1/_2$ -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board membrane, $^5/_8$-inch (16 mm) wood structural panel membrane, or equivalent *material, which complies with section 302.15,* on the underside of the floor framing member.

Exceptions:

1. Floor assemblies located directly over a space protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 2904, NFPA 13D, *NFPA 13R or NFPA 13 as referenced in Chapter 44 of this code.*
2. Floor assemblies located directly over *an underfloor space as referenced in section 408 and* not intended for storage or for the installation of fuel-fired or electric-powered heating appliances.
3. Portions of floor assemblies shall be permitted to be unprotected where complying with the following:
   3.1. The aggregate area of the unprotected portions *shall* not exceed 80 square feet (7.4 m^2) per story.
   3.2. Fireblocking in accordance with Section 302.11.1 is installed along the perimeter of the unprotected portion to separate the unprotected portion from the remainder of the floor assembly.
4. Wood floor assemblies using dimension lumber or structural composite lumber equal to or greater than 2-inch by 10-inch (50.8 mm by 254 mm) nominal dimension, or other approved floor assemblies demonstrating equivalent fire performance.

302.14 Combustible insulation clearance. Combustible insulation shall be separated not less than 3 inches (76 mm) from recessed luminaires, fan motors and other heat-producing devices.

Exception: Where heat-producing devices are listed for lesser clearances, combustible insulation complying with the listing requirements shall be separated in accordance with the conditions stipulated in the listing.

Recessed luminaires installed in the building thermal envelope shall meet the requirements of Section 1102.4.5 of this code.

302.15 Fire resistance determination for assemblies and materials. *When this chapter requires a fire resistive assembly or component, and there is no available evidence matching the assembly or component to a rated assembly or component tested in accordance with ASTM E 119 or UL 263, the fire resistance rating of the assembly or component can be evaluated by using section 721 in the "Ohio Building Code" or "Resource A, Guidelines on Fire Ratings of Archaic Materials and Assemblies in the International Existing Buildings Code."*

When this code requires an assembly or component to serve in a fire resistive manner but the assembly or component is not required to be fire resistance rated, equivalent fire resistive values can be derived from section 721 in the "Ohio Building Code" or "Resource A, Guidelines on Fire Ratings of Archaic Materials and Assemblies in the International Existing Building Code."

SECTION 303
LIGHT, VENTILATION AND HEATING

303.1 Habitable rooms. Habitable rooms shall have an aggregate glazing area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of such rooms. Natural ventilation shall be through windows, skylights, doors, louvers or other approved openings to the outdoor air. Such openings shall be provided with ready access or shall otherwise be readily controllable by the building occupants. The openable area to the outdoors shall be not less than 4 percent of the floor area being ventilated.

Exceptions:

1. The glazed areas need not be openable where the opening is not required by Section 310 and a whole-house mechanical ventilation system is installed in accordance with Section 1505.
2. The glazed areas need not be installed in rooms where exception 1 is satisfied and artificial light is provided that is capable of producing an

average illumination of 6 footcandles (65 lux) over the area of the room at a height of 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor level.

3. Use of sunroom and patio covers, as defined in Section 202, shall be permitted for natural ventilation if in excess of 40 percent of the exterior sunroom walls are open, or are enclosed only by insect screening.

303.2 Adjoining rooms. For the purpose of determining light and ventilation requirements, rooms shall be considered to be a portion of an adjoining room where not less than one-half of the area of the common wall is open and unobstructed and provides an opening of not less than one-tenth of the floor area of the interior room and not less than 25 square feet (2.3 m^2).

Exception: Openings required for light or ventilation shall be permitted to open into a sunroom with thermal isolation or a patio cover, provided that there is an openable area between the adjoining room and the sunroom or patio cover of not less than one-tenth of the floor area of the interior room and not less than 20 square feet (2 m^2). The minimum openable area to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

303.3 Bathrooms. Bathrooms, water closet compartments and other similar rooms shall be provided with aggregate glazing area in windows of not less than 3 square feet (0.3 m^2), one-half of which shall be openable.

Exception: The glazed areas shall not be required where artificial light and a local exhaust system are provided. The minimum local exhaust rates shall be determined in accordance with Section 1505. Exhaust air from the space shall be exhausted directly to the outdoors.

303.4 Mechanical ventilation. Where the air infiltration rate of a dwelling unit is 5 air changes per hour or less where tested with a blower door at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.c. (50 Pa) in accordance with Section 1102.4.1.2 *or Section 1112.2.4.2.1*, the dwelling unit shall be provided with whole-house mechanical ventilation in accordance with Section 1505.4.

303.5 Opening location. Outdoor intake and exhaust openings shall be located in accordance with Sections 303.5.1 and 303.5.2.

303.5.1 Intake openings. Mechanical and gravity outdoor air intake openings shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from any hazardous or noxious contaminant, such as vents, chimneys, plumbing vents, streets, alleys, parking lots and loading docks.

For the purpose of this section, the exhaust from dwelling unit toilet rooms, bathrooms and kitchens shall not be considered as hazardous or noxious.

Exceptions:

1. The 10-foot (3048 mm) separation is not required where the intake opening is located 3 feet (914 mm) or greater below the contaminant source.
2. Vents and chimneys serving fuel-burning appliances shall be terminated in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapters 18 and 24.
3. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall be terminated in accordance with Section 1502.3.

303.5.2 Exhaust openings. Exhaust air shall not be directed onto walkways.

303.6 Outside opening protection. Air exhaust and intake openings that terminate outdoors shall be protected with corrosion-resistant screens, louvers or grilles having an opening size of not less than $^1/_4$-inch (6 mm) and a maximum opening size of inch $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm), in any dimension. Openings shall be protected against local weather conditions. Outdoor air, exhaust and intake openings shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with this code.

303.7 Interior stairway illumination. Interior stairways shall be provided with an artificial light source to illuminate the landings and treads. The light source shall be capable of illuminating treads and landings to levels of not less than 1 foot-candle (11 lux) as measured at the center of treads and landings. There shall be a wall switch at each floor level to control the light source where the stairway has six or more risers.

Exception: A switch is not required where remote, central or automatic control of lighting is provided.

303.8 Exterior stairway illumination. Exterior stairways shall be provided with an artificial light source located at the top landing of the stairway. Exterior stairways providing access to a basement from the outdoor grade level shall be provided with an artificial light source located at the bottom landing of the stairway.

303.9 Required glazed openings. Required glazed openings shall open directly onto a street or public alley, or a yard or court located on the same lot as the building.

Exceptions:

1. Required glazed openings that face into a roofed porch where the porch abuts a street, yard or court and the longer side of the porch is not less than 65 percent unobstructed and the ceiling height is not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).
2. Eave projections shall not be considered as obstructing the clear open space

of a yard or court.

3. Required glazed openings that face into the area under a deck, balcony, bay or floor cantilever where a clear vertical space not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in height is provided.

303.9.1 Sunroom additions. Required glazed openings shall be permitted to open into sunroom additions or patio covers that abut a street, yard or court if in excess of 40 percent of the exterior sunroom walls are open, or are enclosed only by insect screening, and the ceiling height of the sunroom is not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

303.10 Required heating. Where the winter design temperature in Table 301.2(1) is below 60°F (16°C), every dwelling unit shall be provided with heating facilities capable of maintaining a room temperature of not less than 68°F (20°C) at a point 3 feet (914 mm) above the floor and 2 feet (610 mm) from exterior walls in habitable rooms at the design temperature. The installation of one or more portable space heaters shall not be used to achieve compliance with this section.

SECTION 304
MINIMUM ROOM AREAS

304.1 Minimum area. Habitable rooms shall have a floor area of not less than 70 square feet (6.5 m^2).

Exception: Kitchens.

304.2 Minimum dimensions. Habitable rooms shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) in any horizontal dimension.

Exception: Kitchens.

304.3 Height effect on room area. Portions of a room with a sloping ceiling measuring less than 5 feet (1524 mm) or a furred ceiling measuring less than 7 feet (2134 mm) from the finished floor to the finished ceiling shall not be considered as contributing to the minimum required habitable area for that room.

SECTION 305
CEILING HEIGHT

305.1 Minimum height. Habitable space, hallways and portions of basements containing these spaces shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm). Bathrooms, toilet rooms and laundry rooms shall have a ceiling height of not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm).

Exceptions:

1. For rooms with sloped ceilings, the required floor area of the room shall have a ceiling height of not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) and not less than 50 percent of the required floor area shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).
2. The ceiling height above bathroom and toilet room fixtures shall be such that the fixture is capable of being used for its intended purpose. A shower or tub equipped with a showerhead shall have a ceiling height of not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) above an area of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) by 30 inches (762 mm) at the showerhead.
3. Beams, girders, ducts or other obstructions in basements containing habitable space shall be permitted to project to within 6 feet 4 inches (1931 mm) of the finished floor.

305.1.1 Basements. P ortions of basements that do not contain habitable space or hallways shall have a ceiling height of not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm).

Exceptions:

1. At beams, girders, ducts or other obstructions, the ceiling height shall be not less than 6 feet 4 inches (1931 mm) from the finished floor.
2. *Habitable spaces created in existing basements shall be permitted to have ceiling heights of not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm). Obstructions may project to within 6 feet 4 inches of the basement floor.*

SECTION 306
SANITATION

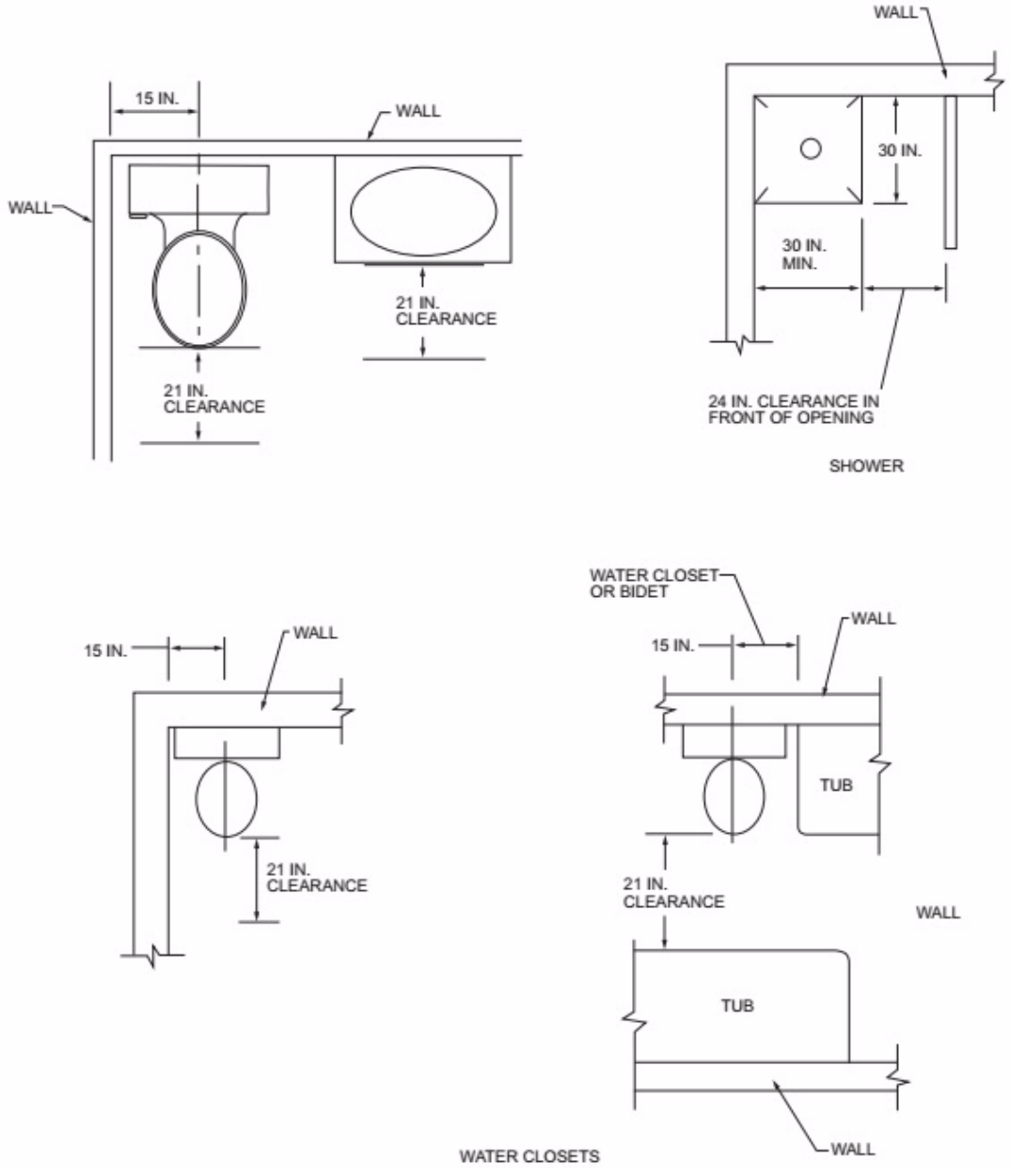
306.1 Toilet facilities. Every dwelling unit shall be provided with a water closet, lavatory, and a bathtub or shower.

306.2 Kitchen. Each dwelling unit shall be provided with a kitchen area and every kitchen area shall be provided with a sink.

306.3 Sewage disposal. Plumbing fixtures shall be connected to a sanitary sewer or to an approved private sewage disposal system.

306.4 Water supply to fixtures. Plumbing fixtures shall be connected to an approved water supply. Kitchen sinks, lavatories, bathtubs, showers, bidets, laundry tubs and washing machine outlets shall be provided with hot and cold water.

SECTION 307
TOILET, BATH AND SHOWER SPACES



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 307.1
MINIMUM FIXTURE CLEARANCES

307.1 Space required. Fixtures shall be spaced in accordance with Figure 307.1, and in accordance with the requirements of *the plumbing code*.

307.2 Bathtub and shower spaces. Bathtub and shower floors and walls above bathtubs with installed shower heads and in shower compartments shall be finished with a nonabsorbent surface. Such wall surfaces shall extend to a height of not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

SECTION 308
GLAZING

308.1 Identification. Except as indicated in Section 308.1.1 each pane of glazing installed in hazardous locations as defined in Section 308.4 shall be provided with a manufacturer's designation specifying who applied the designation, the type of glass and the safety glazing standard with which it complies, and that is visible in the final installation. The designation shall be acid etched, sandblasted, ceramic- fired, laser etched, embossed, or be of a type that once applied cannot be removed without being destroyed. A label shall be permitted in lieu of the manufacturer's designation.

Exceptions:

1. For other than tempered glass, manufacturer's designations are not required provided that the building official approves the use of a certificate, affidavit or other evidence confirming compliance with this code.
2. Tempered spandrel glass is permitted to be identified by the manufacturer with a removable paper designation.

308.1.1 Identification of multiple assemblies. Multi-pane assemblies having individual panes not exceeding 1 square foot (0.09 m^2) in exposed area shall have not less than one pane in the assembly identified in accordance with Section 308.1. Other panes in the assembly shall be labeled "CPSC 16 CFR 1201" or "ANSI Z97.1" as appropriate.

308.2 Louvered windows or jalousies. Regular, float, wired or patterned glass in jalousies and louvered windows shall be not less than nominal $^3/_{16}$ -inch (5 mm) thick and not more than 48 inches (1219 mm) in length. Exposed glass edges shall be smooth.

308.2.1 Wired glass prohibited. Wired glass with wire exposed on longitudinal edges shall not be used in jalousies or louvered windows.

308.3 Human impact loads. Individual glazed areas, including glass mirrors in hazardous locations such as those indicated as defined in Section 308.4, shall pass the test requirements of Section 308.3.1.

Exceptions:

1. Louvered windows and jalousies shall comply with Section 308.2.
2. Mirrors and other glass panels mounted or hung on a surface that provides a continuous backing support.
3. Glass unit masonry complying with Section 607.

308.3.1 Impact test. Where required by other sections of the code, glazing shall be tested in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR 1201. Glazing shall comply with the test criteria for Category II unless otherwise indicated in Table 308.3.1(1).

Exception: Glazing not in doors or enclosures for hot tubs, whirlpools, saunas, steam rooms, bathtubs and showers shall be permitted to be tested in accordance with ANSI Z97.1. Glazing shall comply with the test criteria for Class A unless otherwise indicated in Table 308.3.1(2).

TABLE 308.3.1(1)
MINIMUM CATEGORY CLASSIFICATION OF GLAZING USING CPSC 16 CFR 1201

EXPOSED SURFACE AREA OF ONE SIDE OF ONE LITE	GLAZING IN STORM OR COMBINATION DOORS (Category Class)	GLAZING IN DOORS (Category Class)	GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 308.4.3 (Category Class)	GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 308.4.2 (Category Class)	GLAZING IN DOORS AND ENCLOSURES REGULATED BY SECTION 308.4.5 (Category Class)	SLIDING GLASS DOORS PATIO TYPE (Category Class)
9 square feet or less	I	I	NR	I	II	II
More than 9 square feet	II	II	II	II	II	II

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2. NR = No Requirement.

TABLE 308.3.1(2)
MINIMUM CATEGORY CLASSIFICATION OF GLAZING USING ANSI Z97.1

EXPOSED SURFACE AREA OF ONE SIDE OF ONE LITE	GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 308.4.3 (Category Class)	GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 308.4.2 (Category Class)	DOORS AND ENCLOSURES REGULATED BY SECTION 308.4.5 [a] (Category Class)
9 square feet or less	No requirement	B	A
More than 9 square feet	A	A	A

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

a. Use is permitted only by the exception to Section 308.3.1.

308.4 Hazardous locations. The locations specified in Sections 308.4.1 through 308.4.7 shall be considered to be specific hazardous locations for the purposes of glazing.

308.4.1 Glazing in doors. Glazing in fixed and operable panels of swinging,

sliding and bifold doors shall be considered to be a hazardous location.

Exceptions:

1. Glazed openings of a size through which a 3 -inch-diameter (76 mm) sphere is unable to pass.
2. Decorative glazing.

308.4.2 Glazing adjacent to doors. Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel adjacent to a door shall be considered to be a hazardous location where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the floor or walking surface and it meets either of the following conditions:

1. Where the glazing is within 24 inches (610 mm) of either side of the door in the plane of the door in a closed position.
2. Where the glazing is on a wall less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad) from the plane of the door in a closed position and within 24 inches (610 mm) of the hinge side of an in-swinging door.

Exceptions:

1. Decorative glazing.
2. Where there is an intervening wall or other permanent barrier between the door and the glazing.
3. Where access through the door is to a closet or storage area 3 feet (914 mm) or less in depth. Glazing in this application shall comply with Section 308.4.3.
4. Glazing that is adjacent to the fixed panel of patio doors.

308.4.3 Glazing in windows. Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel that meets all of the following conditions shall be considered to be a hazardous location:

1. The exposed area of an individual pane is larger than 9 square feet (0.836 m^2).
2. The bottom edge of the glazing is less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.
3. The top edge of the glazing is more than 36 inches (914 mm) above the floor.
4. One or more walking surfaces are within 36 inches (914 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, of the glazing.

   Exceptions:

   1. Decorative glazing.
   2. Where glazing is adjacent to a walking surface and a horizontal rail is installed 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the walking surface. The rail shall be capable of withstanding a horizontal

load of 50 pounds per linear foot (730 N/m) without contacting the glass and have a cross-sectional height of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm).

3. Outboard panes in insulating glass units and other multiple glazed panels where the bottom edge of the glass is 25 feet (7620 mm) or more above grade, a roof, walking surfaces or other horizontal [within 45degrees (0.79 rad) of horizontal] surface adjacent to the glass exterior.

308.4.4 Glazing in guards and railings. Glazing in guards and railings, including structural baluster panels and nonstructural in-fill panels, regardless of area or height above a walking surface shall be considered to be a hazardous location.

308.4.4.1 Structural glass baluster panels. Guards with structural glass baluster panels shall be installed with an attached top rail or handrail. The top rail or handrail shall be supported by not less than three glass baluster panels, or shall be otherwise supported to remain in place should one glass baluster panel fail.

Exception: An attached top rail or handrail is not required where the glass baluster panels are laminated glass with two or more glass plies of equal thickness and of the same glass type.

308.4.5 Glazing and wet surfaces. Glazing in walls, enclosures or fences containing or facing hot tubs, spas, whirlpools, saunas, steam rooms, bathtubs, showers and indoor or outdoor swimming pools where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) measured vertically above any standing or walking surface shall be considered to be a hazardous location. This shall apply to single glazing and each pane in multiple glazing.

Exception: Glazing that is more than 60 inches (1524 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, from the water's edge of a bathtub, hot tub, spa, whirlpool or swimming pool or from the edge of a shower, sauna or steam room.

308.4.6 Glazing adjacent to stairs and ramps. Glazing where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 36 inches (914 mm) above the plane of the adjacent walking surface of stairways, landings between flights of stairs and ramps shall be considered to be a hazardous location.

Exceptions:

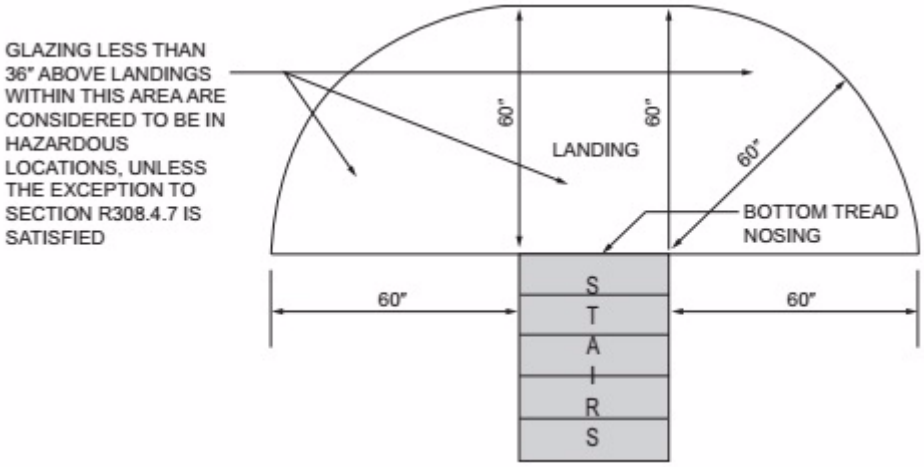
1. Where glazing is adjacent to a walking surface and a horizontal rail is installed at 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the walking surface.

The rail shall be capable of withstanding a horizontal load of 50 pounds per linear foot (730 N/m) without contacting the glass and have a cross-sectional height of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm).

2. Glazing 36 inches (914 mm) or more measured horizontally from the walking surface.

308.4.7 Glazing adjacent to the bottom stair landing. Glazing adjacent to the landing at the bottom of a stairway where the glazing is less than 36 inches (914 mm) above the landing and within a 60-inch (1524 mm) horizontal arc less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad) from the bottom tread nosing shall be considered to be a hazardous location.

Exception: Where the glazing is protected by a guard complying with Section 312 and the plane of the glass is more than 18 inches (457 mm) from the guard.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 308.4.7
HAZARDOUS GLAZING LOCATIONS AT BOTTOM STAIR LANDINGS

308.5 Site-built *fenestration products*. Site-built *fenestration products* shall comply with Section 2404 of the *Ohio building code.*

308.6 Skylights and sloped glazing. Skylights and sloped glazing shall comply with the following sections.

308.6.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

SKYLIGHT, UNIT.

SKYLIGHTS AND SLOPED GLAZING.

TUBULAR DAYLIGHTING DEVICE (TDD).

308.6.2 Materials. Glazing materials shall be limited to the following:

1. Laminated glass with not less than a 0.015-inch (0.38 mm) polyvinyl butyral interlayer for glass panes 16 square feet (1.5 m^2) or less in area located such that the highest point of the glass is not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above a walking surface; for higher or larger sizes, the interlayer thickness shall be not less than 0.030 inch (0.76 mm).
2. Fully tempered glass.
3. Heat-strengthened glass.
4. Wired glass.
5. Approved rigid plastics.

308.6.3 Screens, general. For fully tempered or heat- strengthened glass, a retaining screen meeting the requirements of Section 308.6.7 shall be installed below the glass, except for fully tempered glass that meets either condition listed in Section 308.6.5.

308.6.4 Screens with multiple glazing. Where the inboard pane is fully tempered, heat-strengthened or wired glass, a retaining screen meeting the requirements of Section 308.6.7 shall be installed below the glass, except for either condition listed in Section 308.6.5. Other panes in the multiple glazing shall be of any type listed in Section 308.6.2.

308.6.5 Screens not required. Screens shall not be required where fully tempered glass is used as single glazing or the inboard pane in multiple glazing and either of the following conditions are met:

1. The glass area is 16 square feet (1.49 m^2) or less; the highest point of glass is not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above a walking surface; the nominal glass thickness is not more than $^3/_{16}$ inch (4.8 mm); and (for multiple glazing only) the other pane or panes are fully tempered, laminated or wired glass.
2. The glass area is greater than 16 square feet (1.49 m^2); the glass is sloped 30 degrees (0.52 rad) or less from vertical; and the highest point of glass is not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) above a walking surface.

308.6.6 Glass in greenhouses. Any glazing material is permitted to be installed without screening in the sloped areas of greenhouses, provided that the greenhouse height at the ridge does not exceed 20 feet (6096 mm) above grade.

308.6.7 Screen characteristics. The screen and its fastenings shall be capable of supporting twice the weight of the glazing, be firmly and substantially fastened to the framing members, and have a mesh opening of not more than 1 inch by 1 inch (25 mm by 25 mm).

308.6.8 Curbs for skylights. Unit skylights installed in a roof with a pitch of less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) shall be mounted on a curb extending not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the plane of the roof, unless otherwise specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions.

308.6.9 Testing and labeling. Unit skylights and tubular daylighting devices shall be tested by an approved independent laboratory, and bear a label identifying manufacturer, performance grade rating and approved inspection agency to indicate compliance with the requirements of AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.

308.6.9.1 Comparative analysis for glass-glazed unit skylights. Structural wind load design pressures for glass-glazed unit skylights different than the size tested in accordance with Section 308.6.9 shall be permitted to be different than the design value of the tested unit where determined in accordance with one of the following comparative analysis methods:

1. Structural wind load design pressures for glass-glazed unit skylights smaller than the size tested in accordance with Section 308.6.9 shall be permitted to be higher than the design value of the tested unit provided that such higher pressures are determined by accepted engineering analysis. Components of the smaller unit shall be the same as those of the tested unit. Such calculated design pressures shall be validated by an additional test of the glass-glazed unit skylight having the highest allowable design pressure.
2. In accordance with WDMA I.S. 11.

SECTION 309
GARAGES AND CARPORTS

309.1 Floor surface. Garage floor surfaces shall be of approved noncombustible material.

The area of floor used for parking of automobiles or other vehicles shall be sloped to facilitate the movement of liquids to a drain or toward the main vehicle entry doorway.

309.2 Carports. Carports shall be open on not less than two sides. Carport floor surfaces shall be of approved noncombustible material. Carports not open on two or more sides shall be considered to be a garage and shall comply with the provisions of this section for garages.

The area of floor used for parking of automobiles or other vehicles shall be sloped to facilitate the movement of liquids to a drain or toward the main vehicle entry doorway.

Exception: Asphalt surfaces shall be permitted at ground level in carports.

309.3 Flood hazard areas. For buildings located in flood hazard areas as established by Table 301.2(1), garage floors shall be one of the following:

1. Elevated to or above the design flood elevation as determined in accordance with Section 322.
2. Located below the design flood elevation provided that the floors are at or above grade on not less than one side, are used solely for parking, building access or storage, meet the requirements of Section 322 and are otherwise constructed in accordance with this code.

309.4 Automatic garage door openers. Automatic garage door openers, if provided, shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 325.

309.5 Fire sprinklers. Private garages shall be protected by fire sprinklers where the garage wall has been designed based on Table 302.1(2), Note a. Sprinklers in garages shall be connected to an automatic sprinkler system that complies with Section 2904. Garage sprinklers shall be residential sprinklers or quick-response sprinklers, designed to provide a density of 0.05 gpm/ft^2. Garage doors shall not be considered obstructions with respect to sprinkler placement.

SECTION 310
EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENINGS

310.1 Emergency escape and rescue opening required. *Every* sleeping room shall have not less than one operable emergency escape and rescue opening. Emergency escape and rescue openings shall open directly into a public way, or to a yard or court that opens to a public way.

Exceptions: Where the dwelling *or dwelling unit* is equipped with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 2904, sleeping rooms in basements shall not be required to have emergency escape and rescue openings provided that the basement has one of the following:

1. One means of egress complying with Section 311 and one emergency escape and rescue opening.
2. Two means of egress complying with Section 311.

310.1.1 Operational constraints and opening control devices. Emergency escape and rescue openings shall be operational from the inside of the room without the use of keys, tools or special knowledge. Window opening control devices on windows serving as a required emergency escape and rescue opening shall comply with ASTM F2090.

310.2 Emergency escape and rescue openings. Emergency escape and rescue openings shall have minimum dimensions as specified in this section.

310.2.1 Minimum opening area. Emergency and escape rescue openings shall have a net clear opening of not less than 5.7 square feet (0.530 m^2). The net clear opening dimensions required by this section shall be obtained by the normal operation of the emergency escape and rescue opening from the inside. The net clear height of the opening shall be not less than 24 inches (610 mm) and the net clear width shall be not less than 20 inches (508 mm).

Exception: Grade floor openings or below-grade openings shall have a net clear opening area of not less than 5 square feet (0.465 m^2).

310.2.2 Window sill height. Where a window is provided as the emergency escape and rescue opening, it shall have a sill height of not more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor; where the sill height is below grade, it shall be provided with a window well in accordance with Section 310.2.3.

310.2.3 Window wells. The horizontal area of the window well shall be not less than 9 square feet (0.9 m^2), with a horizontal projection and width of not less than 36 inches (914 mm). The area of the window well shall allow the emergency escape and rescue opening to be fully opened.

Exception: The ladder or steps required by Section 310.2.3.1 shall be permitted to encroach not more than 6 inches (152 mm) into the required dimensions of the window well.

310.2.3.1 Ladder and steps. Window wells with a vertical depth greater than 44 inches (1118 mm) shall be equipped with a permanently affixed ladder or steps usable with the window in the fully open position. Ladders or steps required by this section shall not be required to comply with Section 311.7. Ladders or rungs shall have an inside width of not less than 12 inches (305 mm), shall project not less than 3 inches (76 mm) from the wall and

shall be spaced not more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center vertically for the full height of the window well.

310.2.3.2 Drainage. Window wells shall be designed for proper drainage by connecting to the building's foundation drainage system required by Section 405.1 or by an approved alternative method.

Exception: A drainage system for window wells is not required where the foundation is on well-drained soil or sand-gravel mixture soils in accordance with the United Soil Classification System, Group I Soils, as detailed in Table 405.1.

310.2.4 Emergency escape and rescue openings under decks and porches. Emergency escape and rescue openings installed under decks and porches shall be fully openable and provide a path not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in height to a yard or court.

310.2.5 Replacement windows. Replacement windows installed in buildings meeting the scope of this code shall be exempt from the maximum sill height requirements of Section 310.2.2 and the requirements of Section 310.2.1, provided that the replacement window meets the following conditions:

1. The replacement window is the manufacturer's largest standard size window that will fit within the existing frame or existing rough opening. The replacement window is of the same operating style as the existing window or a style that provides for an equal or greater window opening area than the existing window.
2. The replacement window is not part of a change of occupancy.

Exception: *Replacement windows installed in accordance with Section 113.5.1 shall not be required to comply with 310.2.1*

310.3 Emergency escape and rescue doors. Where a door is provided as the required emergency escape and rescue opening, it shall be a side-hinged door or a slider. Where the opening is below the adjacent grade, it shall be provided with an area well.

310.3.1 Minimum door opening size. The minimum net clear height opening for any door that serves as an emergency and escape rescue opening shall be in accordance with Section 310.2.1.

310.3.2 Area wells. Area wells shall have a width of not less than 36 inches (914 mm). The area well shall be sized to allow the emergency escape and rescue door to be fully opened.

310.3.2.1 Ladder and steps. Area wells with a vertical depth greater than 44 inches (1118 mm) shall be equipped with a permanently affixed ladder or steps usable with the door in the fully open position. Ladders or steps required by this section shall not be required to comply with Section 311.7. Ladders or rungs shall have an inside width of not less than 12 inches (305 mm), shall project not less than 3 inches (76 mm) from the wall and shall be spaced not more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center vertically for the full height of the exterior stairwell.

310.3.2.2 Drainage. Area wells shall be designed for proper drainage by connecting to the building's foundation drainage system required by Section 405.1 or by an approved alternative method.

Exception: A drainage system for area wells is not required where the foundation is on well-drained soil or sand-gravel mixture soils in accordance with the United Soil Classification System, Group I Soils, as detailed in Table 405.1.

310.4 Bars, grilles, covers and screens. Where bars, grilles, covers, screens or similar devices are placed over emergency escape and rescue openings, area wells, or window wells, the minimum net clear opening size shall comply with Sections 310.2.1 through 310.2.3, and such devices shall be releasable or removable from the inside without the use of a key, tool, special knowledge or force greater than that required for the normal operation of the escape and rescue opening.

310.5 Dwelling additions. Where dwelling additions contain sleeping rooms, an emergency escape and rescue opening shall be provided in each new sleeping room.

310.6 Alterations or repairs of existing basements. An emergency escape and rescue opening is not required where existing basements undergo alterations or repairs.

Exception: N ew sleeping rooms created in an existing basement shall be provided with emergency escape and rescue openings in accordance with Section 310.1.

SECTION 311
MEANS OF EGRESS

311.1 Means of egress. Dwellings shall be provided with a means of egress in accordance with this section. The means of egress shall provide a continuous and unobstructed path of vertical and horizontal egress travel from all portions of the

dwelling to the required egress door without requiring travel through a garage. The required egress door shall open directly into a public way or to a yard or court that opens to a public way.

311.2 Egress door. Not less than one egress door shall be provided for each dwelling unit. The egress door shall be side-hinged, and shall provide a clear width of not less than 32 inches (813 mm) where measured between the face of the door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees (1.57 rad). The clear height of the door opening shall be not less than 78 inches (1981 mm) in height measured from the top of the threshold to the bottom of the stop. Other doors shall not be required to comply with these minimum dimensions. Egress doors shall be readily openable from inside the dwelling without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

311.2.1 Garage access doors. *Garages shall be served by at least one side-hinged door not less than 2 feet 6 inches (760 mm) in width and 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) in height. Such door located between a dwelling and an attached garage shall be acceptable for meeting this requirement.*

311.3 Floors and landings at exterior doors. There shall be a landing or floor on each side of each exterior door. The width of each landing shall be not less than the door served. Landings shall have a dimension of not less than 36 inches (914 mm) measured in the direction of travel. The slope at exterior landings shall not exceed $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2 percent).

Exception: Exterior balconies less than 60 square feet (5.6 m^2) and only *accessed* from a door are permitted to have a landing that is less than 36 inches (914 mm) measured in the direction of travel.

311.3.1 Floor elevations at the required egress doors. Landings or finished floors at the required egress door shall be not more than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) lower than the top of the threshold.

Exception: The landing or floor on the exterior side shall be not more than *8 1/4* -inches (*209* mm) below the top of the threshold provided that the door does not swing over the landing or floor.

Where exterior landings or floors serving the required egress door are not at grade, they shall be provided with access to grade by means of a ramp in accordance with Section 311.8 or a stairway in accordance with Section 311.7.

311.3.2 Floor elevations at other exterior doors. Doors other than the required egress door shall be provided with landings or floors not more than *8 1/4* -inches (*209* mm) below the top of the threshold.

Exception: A top landing is not required *for the* stairway located on the exterior side of the door, provided that *the threshold of the door is not more than 30" above the adjacent grade and* the door does not swing over the stairway.

311.3.3 Storm and screen doors. Storm and screen doors shall be permitted to swing over exterior stairs and landings.

311.4 Vertical egress. Egress from habitable levels including habitable attics and basements that are not provided with an egress door in accordance with Section 311.2 shall be by a ramp in accordance with Section 311.8 or a stairway in accordance with Section 311.7.

311.5 Landing, deck, balcony and stair construction and attachment. Exterior landings, decks, balconies, stairs and similar facilities shall be positively anchored to the primary structure to resist both vertical and lateral forces or shall be designed to be self-supporting. Attachment shall not be accomplished by use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal.

311.6 Hallways. The width of a hallway shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm).

311.7 Stairways.

311.7.1 Width. Stairways shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width at all points above the permitted handrail height and below the required headroom height. The clear width of stairways at and below the handrail height, including treads and landings, shall be not less than 31 $^{1}/_{2}$ inches (787 mm) where a handrail is installed on one side and 27 inches (698 mm) where handrails are installed on both sides.

Exception: The width of spiral stairways shall be in accordance with Section 311.7.10.1.

311.7.2 Headroom. The headroom in stairways shall be not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) measured vertically from the sloped line adjoining the tread nosing or from the floor surface of the landing or platform on that portion of the stairway.

Exceptions:

1. Where the nosings of treads at the side of a flight extend under the edge of a floor opening through which the stair passes, the floor opening shall not project horizontally into the required headroom more than 4 $^{3}/_{4}$ inches (121 mm).

2. The headroom for spiral stairways shall be in accordance with Section 311.7.10.1.

311.7.3 Vertical rise. A flight of stairs shall not have a vertical rise larger than *148 1/2* -inches (*3772* mm) between floor levels or landings.

311.7.4 Walkline. The walkline across winder treads and landings shall be concentric to the turn and parallel to the direction of travel entering and exiting the turn. The walkline shall be located 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside of the turn. The 12-inch (305 mm) dimension shall be measured from the widest point of the clear stair width at the walking surface. Where winders are adjacent within a flight, the point of the widest clear stair width of the adjacent winders shall be used.

311.7.5 Stair treads and risers. Stair treads and risers shall meet the requirements of this section. For the purposes of this section, dimensions and dimensioned surfaces shall be exclusive of carpets, rugs or runners.

311.7.5.1 Risers. The riser height shall be not more than *8 1/4* -inches (*209* mm). The riser shall be measured vertically between leading edges of the adjacent treads. The greatest riser height within any flight of stairs shall not exceed the smallest by more than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm). Risers shall be vertical or sloped from the underside of the nosing of the tread above at an angle not more than 30 degrees (0.51 rad) from the vertical. At open risers, openings located more than 30 inches (762 mm), as measured vertically, to the floor or grade below shall not permit the passage of a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere.

Exceptions:

1. The opening between adjacent treads is not limited on spiral stairways.
2. The riser height of spiral stairways shall be in accordance with Section 311.7.10.1.

311.7.5.2 Treads. The tread depth shall be not less than *9* -inches (*229* mm). The tread depth shall be measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads and at a right angle to the tread's leading edge. The greatest tread depth within any flight of stairs shall not exceed the smallest by more than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).

311.7.5.2.1 Winder treads. Winder treads shall have a tread depth of not less than *9* -inches (*229* mm) measured between the vertical planes

of the foremost projection of adjacent treads at the intersections with the walkline. Winder treads shall have a tread depth of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) at any point within the clear width of the stair. Within any flight of stairs, the largest winder tread depth at the walkline shall not exceed the smallest winder tread by more than $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm). Consistently shaped winders at the walkline shall be allowed within the same flight of stairs as rectangular treads and shall not be required to be within $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) of the rectangular tread depth.

Exception: The tread depth at spiral stairways shall be in accordance with Section 311.7.10.1.

311.7.5.3 Nosings. Nosings at treads, landings and floors of stairways shall have a radius of curvature at the nosing not greater than $^{9}/_{16}$ inch (14 mm) or a bevel not greater than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm). A nosing projection not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19 mm) and not more than $1^{1}/_{4}$ inches (32 mm) shall be provided on stairways. The greatest nosing projection shall not exceed the smallest nosing projection by more than $^{3}/_{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) within a stairway.

Exception: A nosing projection is not required where the tread depth is not less than 11 inches (279 mm).

311.7.5.4 Exterior plastic composite stair treads. Plastic composite exterior stair treads shall comply with the provisions of this section and Section 507.2.2.

311.7.6 Landings for stairways. There shall be a floor or landing at the top and bottom of each stairway. The width perpendicular to the direction of travel shall be not less than the width of the flight served. For landings of shapes other than square or rectangular, the depth at the walk line and the total area shall be not less than that of a quarter circle with a radius equal to the required landing width. Where the stairway has a straight run, the depth in the direction of travel shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm).

Exception: A floor or landing is not required at the top of an interior flight of stairs, including stairs in an enclosed garage, provided that a door does not swing over the stairs.

311.7.7 Stairway walking surface. The walking surface of treads and landings of stairways shall be sloped not steeper than one unit vertical in 48 inches horizontal (2-percent slope).

311.7.8 Handrails. Handrails shall be provided on not less than one side of

each flight of stairs with four or more risers.

311.7.8.1 Height. Handrail height, measured vertically from the sloped plane adjoining the tread nosing, or finish surface of ramp slope, shall be not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm)

Exceptions:

1. The use of a volute, turnout or starting easing shall be allowed over the lowest tread.
2. Where handrail fittings or bendings are used to provide continuous transition between flights, transitions at winder treads, the transition from handrail to guard, or used at the start of a flight, the handrail height at the fittings or bendings shall be permitted to exceed 38 inches (956 mm).

311.7.8.2 Handrail projection. Handrails shall not project more than $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm) on either side of the stairway.

Exception: Where nosings of landings, floors or passing flights project into the stairway reducing the clearance at passing handrails, handrails shall project not more than $6^1/_2$ inches (165 mm) into the stairway, provided that the stair width and handrail clearance are not reduced to less than that required.

311.7.8.3 Handrail clearance. Handrails adjacent to a wall shall have a space of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) between the wall and the handrails.

311.7.8.4 Continuity. Handrails shall be continuous for the full length of the flight, from a point directly above the top riser of the flight to a point directly above the lowest riser of the flight. Handrail ends shall be returned or shall terminate in newel posts or safety terminals.

Exceptions:

1. Handrail continuity shall be permitted to be interrupted by a newel post at a turn in a flight with winders, at a landing, or over the lowest tread.
2. A volute, turnout or starting easing shall be allowed to terminate over the lowest tread.
3. *Two or more separate rails shall be considered continuous if the termination of the rails occurs over a single tread and positioned within 4 inches of each other. If the transition occurs between a wall mounted handrail and handrail/guardrail combination, the wall mounted handrail shall return into the wall.*

311.7.8.5 Grip size. Required handrails shall be of one of the following types or provide equivalent graspability.

1. **Type I.** Handrails with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of not less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) and not greater than 2 inches (51 mm). If the handrail is not circular, it shall have a perimeter of not less than 4 inches (102 mm) and not greater than $6^1/_4$ inches (160 mm) and a cross section of not more than $2^1/_4$ inches (57 mm). Edges shall have a radius of not less than 0.01 inch (0.25 mm).
2. **Type II.** Handrails with a perimeter greater than $6^1/_4$ -inches (160 mm) shall have a graspable finger recess area on both sides of the profile. The finger recess shall begin within $^3/_4$ -inch (19 mm) measured vertically from the tallest portion of the profile and have a depth of not less than $^5/_{16}$ -inch (8 mm) within $^7/_8$ -inch (22 mm) below the widest portion of the profile. This required depth shall continue for not less than $^3/_8$ -inch (10 mm) to a level that is not less than $1^3/_4$ -inches (45 mm) below the tallest portion of the profile. The width of the handrail above the recess shall be not less than $1^1/_4$ -inches (32 mm) and not more than $2^3/_4$ -inches (70 mm). Edges shall have a radius of not less than 0.01 inch (0.25 mm).

311.7.8.6 Exterior plastic composite handrails. Plastic composite exterior handrails shall comply with the requirements of Section 507.2.2.

311.7.9 Illumination. Stairways shall be provided with illumination in accordance with Sections 303.7 and 303.8.

311.7.10 Special stairways. Spiral stairways and bulkhead enclosure stairways shall comply with the requirements of Section 311.7 except as specified in Sections 311.7.10.1 and 311.7.10.2.

311.7.10.1 Spiral stairways. The clear width at and below the handrails at spiral stairways shall be not less than 26 inches (660 mm) and the walkline radius shall be not greater than $24^1/_2$ inches (622 mm). Each tread shall have a depth of no less than $6^3/_4$ inches (171 mm) at the walkline. Treads shall be identical, and the rise shall be not more than $9^1/_2$ inches (241 mm). Headroom shall be not less than 6 feet 6 inches (1982 mm).

311.7.10.2 Bulkhead enclosure stairways. Stairways serving bulkhead enclosures, not part of the required building egress, providing access from

the outside grade level to the basement shall be exempt from the requirements of Sections 311.3 and 311.7 where the height from the basement finished floor level to grade adjacent to the stairway is not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) and the grade level opening to the stairway is covered by a bulkhead enclosure with hinged doors or other approved means.

311.7.11 Alternating tread devices. Alternating tread devices shall not be used as an element of a means of egress. Alternating tread devices shall be permitted provided that a required means of egress stairway or ramp serves the same space at each adjoining level or where a means of egress is not required. The clear width at and below the handrails shall be not less than 20 inches (508 mm).

Exception: Alternating tread devices are allowed to be used as an element of a means of egress for lofts, mezzanines and similar areas of 200 gross square feet (18.6m^2) or less where such devices do not provide exclusive access to a kitchen or bathroom.

311.7.11.1 Treads of alternating tread devices. Alternating tread devices shall have a tread depth of not less than 5 inches (127 mm), a projected tread depth of not less than $8^1/_2$ inches (216 mm), a tread width of not less than 7 inches (178 mm) and a riser height of not more than $9^1/_2$ inches (241 mm). The tread depth shall be measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projections of adjacent treads. The riser height shall be measured vertically between the leading edges of adjacent treads. The riser height and tread depth provided shall result in an angle of ascent from the horizontal of between 50 and 70 degrees (0.87 and 1.22 rad). The initial tread of the device shall begin at the same elevation as the platform, landing or floor surface.

311.7.11.2 Handrails of alternating tread devices. Handrails shall be provided on both sides of alternating tread devices and shall comply with Sections 311.7.8.2 to 311.7.8.6. Handrail height shall be uniform, not less than 30 inches (762 mm) and not more than 34 inches (864 mm).

311.7.12 Ships ladders. Ships ladders shall not be used as an element of a means of egress. Ships ladders shall be permitted provided that a required means of egress stairway or ramp serves the same space at each adjoining level or where a means of egress is not required. The clear width at and below the handrails shall be not less than 20 inches (508 mm).

Exception: Ships ladders are allowed to be used as an element of a means of egress for lofts, mezzanines and similar areas of 200 gross square feet

(18.6 m2) or less that do not provide exclusive access to a kitchen or bathroom.

311.7.12.1 Treads of ships ladders. Treads shall have a depth of not less than 5 inches (127 mm). The tread shall be projected such that the total of the tread depth plus the nosing projection is not less than $8^1/_2$ inches (216 mm). The riser height shall be not more than $9^1/_2$ inches (241 mm).

311.7.12.2 Handrails of ships ladders. Handrails shall be provided on both sides of ships ladders and shall comply with Sections 311.7.8.2 to 311.7.8.6. Handrail height shall be uniform, not less than 30 inches (762 mm) and not more than 34 inches (864 mm).

311.8 Ramps.

311.8.1 Maximum slope. Ramps serving the egress door required by Section 311.2 shall have a slope of not more than 1 unit vertical in *8* units horizontal (*12.5* -percent slope).

311.8.2 Landings required. There shall be a floor or landing at the top and bottom of each ramp, where doors open onto ramps, and where ramps change directions. The width of the landing perpendicular to the ramp slope shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm).

311.8.3 Handrails required. Handrails shall be provided on not less than one side of ramps exceeding a slope of one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33-percent slope).

311.8.3.1 Height. Handrail height, measured above the finished surface of the ramp slope, shall be not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm).

311.8.3.2 Grip size. Handrails on ramps shall comply with Section 311.7.8.5.

311.8.3.3 Continuity. Handrails where required on ramps shall be continuous for the full length of ramp. Handrail ends shall return or shall terminate in newel posts or safety terminals. Handrails adjacent to a wall shall have a space of not less than $1^1/_2$ -inches (38 mm) between the wall and the handrails.

SECTION 312
GUARDS AND WINDOW FALL PROTECTION

312.1 Guards. Guards shall be provided in accordance with Sections 312.1.1 through 312.1.4.

312.1.1 Where required. Guards shall be provided for those portions of open-sided walking surfaces, including stairs, ramps and landings, that are located more than 30 inches (762 mm) measured vertically to the floor or grade below at any point within 36 inches (914 mm) horizontally to the edge of the open side. Insect screening shall not be considered as a guard.

Exception: *Guards are not required where a protective bar is installed 34 inches to 38 inches (864 mm to 965 mm) above the porch or deck on the interior side of the screening. The protective bar shall be capable of resisting a horizontal load of 50 pounds per lineal foot (730 N/m) without contacting the screen and be a minimum of 1½ inches (38 mm) in height.*

312.1.2 Height. Required guards at open-sided walking surfaces, including stairs, porches, balconies or landings, shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in height as measured vertically above the adjacent walking surface or the line connecting the nosings.

Exceptions:

1. Guards on the open sides of stairs shall have a height of not less than 34 inches (864 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the nosings.
2. Where the top of the guard serves as a handrail on the open sides of stairs, the top of the guard shall be not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm) as measured vertically from a line connecting the nosings.

312.1.3 Opening limitations. Required guards shall not have openings from the walking surface to the required guard height that allow passage of a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter.

Exceptions:

1. The triangular openings at the open side of stair, formed by the riser, tread and bottom rail of a guard, shall not allow passage of a sphere 6 inches (153 mm) in diameter.
2. Guards on the open side of stairs shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere $4^{3}/_{8}$ -inches (111 mm) in diameter.

312.1.4 Exterior plastic composite guards. Plastic composite exterior guards

shall comply with the requirements of Section 317.4.

312.2 Window fall protection. *When provided, window* fall protection shall be in accordance with Sections 312.2.1 and 312.2.2.

312.2.1 Window fall prevention devices. *Window fall prevention devices and window guards, where provided, shall comply with the requirements of ASTM F 2090.*

312.2.2 Window opening limiting devices. *Where provided, window opening limiting devices shall comply with the provisions of this section.*

312.2.2.1 General requirements. *Window opening limiting devices shall be self-acting and shall be positioned to prohibit the free passage of a 4-in. (102-mm) diameter rigid sphere through the window opening when the window opening limiting device is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.*

312.2.2.2 Operation for emergency escape. *Window opening limiting devices shall be designed with release mechanisms to allow for emergency escape through the window opening without the need for keys, tools or special knowledge. Window opening limiting devices shall comply with all of the following:*

1. *Release of the window opening-limiting device shall require no more than 15 pounds (66 N) of force.*
2. *The window opening limiting device release mechanism shall operate properly in all types of weather.*
3. *Window opening limiting devices shall have their release mechanisms clearly identified for proper use in an emergency.*
4. *The window opening limiting device shall not reduce the minimum net clear opening area of the window unit below what is required by Section 310.1.1 of the code.*

SECTION 313
AUTOMATIC FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

313.1 *Dwelling unit* automatic fire sprinkler systems. An automatic residential fire sprinkler system is *not required* to be installed in *buildings with four or more dwelling units or other Group R occupancies permitted to use this code.*

313.1.1 Design and installation *for non-required systems*. *When a non-*

required automatic residential fire sprinkler *system is intended to be installed within a building with four or more dwelling units or a dwelling in another R-3 occupancy using this code, the system* shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 2904, *NFPA 13, NFPA 13R* or NFPA 13D *as referenced in Chapter 44 of this code.*

313.2 One-, two- *and three*-family dwellings automatic fire systems. An automatic residential fire sprinkler system *is not required to* be installed in one-, two-, *or three*-family dwellings.

313.2.1 Design and installation *for non-required systems*. When an automatic residential fire sprinkler *system is intended to be installed, it* shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 2904, *NFPA 13, NFPA 13R* or NFPA 13D *as referenced in Chapter 44 of this code.*

313.3 Design and installation of non-required fire sprinkler systems. *Any full or partial fire sprinkler system not required by this code shall be permitted to be installed for partial or complete protection provided that such system meets the requirements of this code to the extent of the intended installation.*

SECTION 314
SMOKE ALARMS

314.1 General. Smoke alarms shall comply with *the household fire warning equipment provisions of* NFPA 72 and Section 314.

314.1.1 Listings. Smoke alarms shall be listed *and labeled* in accordance with UL 217. Combination smoke and carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed *and labeled* in accordance with UL 217 and UL 2034.

314.1.2 Technologies. *On each level within each dwelling unit smoke alarms utilizing photoelectric and ionization technologies shall be installed. Separate or dual-sensing smoke alarms may be used. A smoke alarm located in accordance with section 314.3(2) shall include photoelectric technology.*

Exception: *A system meeting the requirements of Section 314.7 is not required to include both technologies.*

314.2 Where required. Smoke alarms shall be provided in accordance with this section.

314.2.1 New construction. Smoke alarms shall be provided in dwelling units

in the locations described in Section 314.3.

314.2.2 Alterations, repairs and additions. Where alterations, repairs or additions requiring *an approval* occur, *smoke alarms shall be installed, as required for new construction, as follows:*

1. *When alterations or repairs are made to spaces described in items 1 and 2 of Section 314.3, smoke alarms shall be provided in those areas.*
2. *When one or more sleeping rooms are added to or created in existing dwelling units, the new sleeping rooms and the immediate vicinity outside each sleeping room shall be equipped with smoke alarms.*

Exceptions:

1. Work involving the exterior surfaces of dwellings, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, the addition or replacement of windows or doors, or the addition of a porch or deck.
2. Installation, alteration or repairs of plumbing or mechanical systems.

314.3 Location. Smoke alarms shall be installed in the following locations:

1. In each sleeping room.
2. Outside each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the *sleeping rooms*.
3. On each additional story of the dwelling, including basements and habitable attics and not including crawl spaces and uninhabitable attics. In dwellings or dwelling units with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full story below the upper level.
4. Smoke alarms shall be installed not less than 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from the door or opening of a bathroom that contains a bathtub or shower unless this would prevent placement of a smoke alarm required by this section.

314.3.1 Installation near cooking appliances. Smoke alarms shall not be installed in the following locations unless this would prevent placement of a smoke alarm in a location required by Section 314.3.

1. Ionization smoke alarms shall not be installed less than 20 feet (6096 mm) horizontally from a permanently installed cooking appliance.
2. Ionization smoke alarms with an alarm-silencing switch shall not be installed less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from a permanently installed cooking appliance.
3. Photoelectric smoke alarms shall not be installed less than 6 feet

(1828 mm) horizontally from a permanently installed cooking appliance.

314.4 Interconnection. Where more than one smoke alarm is required to be installed within an individual dwelling unit in accordance with Section 314.3, the alarm devices shall be interconnected in such a manner that the actuation of one alarm will activate all of the alarms in the individual dwelling unit. Physical interconnection of smoke alarms shall not be required where listed *and labeled* wireless alarms are installed and all alarms sound upon activation of one alarm.

Exception: *Interconnection of smoke alarms in existing areas shall not be required where the alterations or repairs do not result in the removal of interior wall or ceiling finishes exposing the structure, unless there is an attic, crawl space or basement available which could provide access for interconnection without the removal of interior finishes.*

314.5 Combination alarms. Combination smoke and carbon monoxide alarms shall be permitted to be used in lieu of smoke alarms.

314.6 Power source. Smoke alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source and, where primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than those required for overcurrent protection.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke alarms shall be permitted to be battery operated where installed in buildings without commercial power.
2. *Hard-wiring of smoke alarms in existing areas shall not be required where the alterations or repairs do not result in the removal of interior wall or ceiling finishes exposing the structure, unless there is an attic, crawl space or basement available which could provide access for hard wiring without the removal of interior finishes.*

314.7 Fire alarm systems. Fire alarm systems shall be permitted to be used in lieu of smoke alarms and shall comply with Sections 314.7.1 through 314.7.4.

314.7.1 General. Fire alarm systems shall comply with the provisions of this code and the household fire warning equipment provisions of NFPA 72. Smoke detectors shall be listed in accordance with UL 268.

314.7.2 Location. Smoke detectors shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 314.3.

314.7.3 Permanent fixture. Where a household fire alarm system is installed, it shall become a permanent fixture of the occupancy, owned by the homeowner.

Exception. *Where separate smoke alarms are provided meeting all other requirements of this section, the fire alarm system is not required to be a permanent fixture of the occupancy or owned by the homeowner.*

314.7.4 Combination detectors. Combination smoke and carbon monoxide detectors shall be permitted to be installed in fire alarm systems in lieu of smoke detectors, provided that they are listed in accordance with UL 268 and UL 2075.

SECTION 315
CARBON MONOXIDE ALARMS

315.1 General. Carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Section 315.

315.1.1 Listings. Carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed *and labeled* in accordance with UL 2034 *and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.* Combination carbon monoxide and smoke alarms shall be listed *and labeled* in accordance with UL 2034 and UL 217.

315.2 *When* required. Carbon monoxide alarms shall be provided in accordance with Sections 315.2.1 and 315.2.2.

315.2.1 New construction. For new construction, carbon monoxide alarms shall be provided in dwelling units where either or both of the following conditions exist.

1. The dwelling unit contains a fuel-fired appliance.
2. The dwelling unit has an attached garage

315.2.2 Alterations, repairs and additions. *In existing dwelling units, having fuel-fired appliances or an attached garage, where an application for approval is required for work involving any of the following areas or systems within that dwelling unit*, the individual dwelling unit shall be equipped with carbon monoxide alarms located as required for new dwellings:

1. *The addition or creation of a new sleeping room*
2. *An alteration of a sleeping room*
3. *An alteration in the immediate vicinity outside of a sleeping room;*
4. *An addition of, or an alteration to, an attached garage;*
5. *An addition, alteration, repair or replacement of a fuel-fired appliance.*

315.3 Location. Carbon monoxide alarms in dwelling units shall be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms. Where a fuel-burning appliance is located within a bedroom or its attached bathroom, a carbon monoxide alarm shall be installed within the bedroom.

315.4 Combination alarms. Combination carbon monoxide and smoke alarms shall be permitted to be used in lieu of carbon monoxide alarms.

315.5 Interconnectivity. *Deleted*

315.6 Power source. *Deleted*

315.7 Carbon monoxide detection systems. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall be permitted to be used in lieu of carbon monoxide alarms and shall comply with Sections 315.7.1 through 315.7.4.

315.7.1 General. Household carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be listed *and labeled* in accordance with UL 2075.

315.7.2 Location. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 315.3. These locations supersede the locations specified in NFPA 720.

315.7.3 Permanent fixture. Where a household carbon monoxide detection system is installed, it shall become a permanent fixture of the occupancy and owned by the homeowner.

Exception. *Where separate carbon monoxide alarms are provided meeting all other requirements of this section, the carbon monoxide detection system is not required to be a permanent fixture of the occupancy or owned by the homeowner.*

315.7.4 Combination detectors. Combination carbon monoxide and smoke detectors installed in carbon monoxide detection systems in lieu of carbon monoxide detectors shall be listed *and labeled* in accordance with UL 2075 and UL 268.

SECTION 316
FOAM PLASTIC

316.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the materials, design, application, construction and installation of foam plastic materials.

316.2 Labeling and identification. Packages and containers of foam plastic insulation and foam plastic insulation components delivered to the job site shall bear the label of an approved agency showing the manufacturer's name, the product listing, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with the requirements.

316.3 Surface burning characteristics. Unless otherwise allowed in Section 316.5, foam plastic, or foam plastic cores used as a component in manufactured assemblies, used in building construction shall have a flame spread index of not more than 75 and shall have a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in the maximum thickness and density intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Loose-fill-type foam plastic insulation shall be tested as board stock for the flame spread index and smoke- developed index.

Exception: Foam plastic insulation more than 4 inches (102 mm) thick shall have a flame spread index of not more than 75 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 where tested at a thickness of not more than 4 inches (102 mm), provided that the end use is approved in accordance with Section 316.6 using the thickness and density intended for use.

316.4 Thermal barrier. Unless otherwise allowed in Section 316.5, foam plastic shall be separated from the interior of a building by an approved thermal barrier of not less than $^{1}/_{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard, $^{23}/_{32}$ -inch (18.2 mm) wood structural panel or a material that is tested in accordance with and meets the acceptance criteria of both the Temperature Transmission Fire Test and the Integrity Fire Test of NFPA 275.

316.5 Specific requirements. The following requirements shall apply to these uses of foam plastic unless specifically approved in accordance with Section 316.6 or by other sections of the code or the requirements of Sections 316.2 through 316.4 have been met.

316.5.1 Masonry or concrete construction. The thermal barrier specified in Section 316.4 is not required in a masonry or concrete wall, floor or roof where the foam plastic insulation is separated from the interior of the building by not less than a 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of masonry or concrete.

316.5.2 Roofing. The thermal barrier specified in Section 316.4 is not required where the foam plastic in a roof assembly or under a roof covering is installed

in accordance with the code and the manufacturer's instructions and is separated from the interior of the building by tongue-and-groove wood planks or wood structural panel sheathing, in accordance with Section 803, that is not less than $^{15}/_{32}$ inch (11.9 mm) thick bonded with exterior glue, identified as Exposure 1 and with edges supported by blocking or tongue-and-groove joints or an equivalent material. The smoke-developed index for roof applications shall not be limited.

316.5.3 Attics. The thermal barrier specified in Section 316.4 is not required where all of the following apply:

1. Attic access is required by Section 807.1.
2. The space is entered only for purposes of repairs or maintenance.
3. The foam plastic insulation has been tested in accordance with Section 316.6 or the foam plastic insulation is protected against ignition using one of the following ignition barrier materials:
   - 3.1. $1^1/_2$ -inch-thick (38 mm) mineral fiber insulation.
   - 3.2. $^1/_4$ -inch-thick (6.4 mm) wood structural panels.
   - 3.3. $^3/_8$ -inch (9.5 mm) particleboard
   - 3.4. $^1/_4$ -inch (6.4 mm) hardboard.
   - 3.5. $^3/_8$ -inch (9.5 mm) gypsum board.
   - 3.6. Corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of 0.016 inch (0.406 mm).
   - 3.7. $1^1/_2$ -inch-thick (38 mm) cellulose insulation.
   - 3.8. $^1/_4$ -inch (6.4 mm) fiber-cement panel, soffit or backer board.

The ignition barrier is not required where the foam plastic insulation has been tested in accordance with Section 316.6.

316.5.4 Crawl spaces. The thermal barrier specified in Section 316.4 is not required where all of the following apply:

1. Crawl space access is required by Section 408.4.
2. Entry is made only for purposes of repairs or maintenance.
3. The foam plastic insulation has been tested in accordance with Section 316.6 or the foam plastic insulation is protected against ignition using one of the following ignition barrier materials:
   - 3.1. $1^1/_2$ -inch-thick (38 mm) mineral fiber insulation.
   - 3.2. $^1/_4$ -inch-thick (6.4 mm) wood structural panels.
   - 3.3. $^3/_8$ -inch (9.5 mm) particleboard.
   - 3.4. $^1/_4$ -inch (6.4 mm) hardboard.
   - 3.5. $^3/_8$ -inch (9.5 mm) gypsum board.
   - 3.6. Corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of 0.016

inch (0.406 mm).

3.7. 1/4 -inch (6.4 mm) fiber-cement panel, soffit or backer board.

316.5.5 Foam-filled exterior doors. Foam-filled exterior doors are exempt from the requirements of Sections 316.3 and 316.4.

316.5.6 Foam-filled garage doors. Foam-filled garage doors in attached or detached garages are exempt from the requirements of Sections 316.3 and 316.4.

316.5.7 Foam backer board. The thermal barrier specified in Section 316.4 is not required where siding backer board foam plastic insulation has a thickness of not more than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) and a potential heat of not more than 2000 Btu per square foot (22 720 kJ/m2) when tested in accordance with NFPA 259 and it complies with one or more of the following:

1. The foam plastic insulation is separated from the interior of the building by not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of mineral fiber insulation.
2. The foam plastic insulation is installed over existing exterior wall finish in conjunction with re-siding.
3. The foam plastic insulation has been tested in accordance with Section 316.6.

316.5.8 Re-siding. The thermal barrier specified in Section 316.4 is not required where the foam plastic insulation is installed over existing exterior wall finish in conjunction with re-siding provided that the foam plastic has a thickness of not more than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) and a potential heat of not more than 2000 Btu per square foot (22 720 kJ/m2) when tested in accordance with NFPA 259.

316.5.9 Interior trim. The thermal barrier specified in Section 316.4 is not required for exposed foam plastic interior trim, provided that all of the following are met:

1. The density is not less than 20 pounds per cubic foot (320 kg/m^3).
2. The thickness of the trim is not more than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) and the width is not more than 8 inches (204 mm).
3. The interior trim shall not constitute more than 10 percent of the aggregate wall and ceiling area of any room or space.
4. The flame spread index does not exceed 75 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The smoke-developed index is not limited.

316.5.10 Interior finish. Foam plastics used as interior finishes shall comply

with Section 316.6 and shall meet the flame spread index and smoke-developed index requirements of Sections 302.9.1 and 302.9.2.

316.5.11 Sill plates and headers. Foam plastic be spray applied to sill plates and headers or installed in the perimeter joist space without the thermal barrier specified in Section 316.4 shall comply with all of the following:

1. The thickness of the foam plastic shall be not more than $3^1/_4$ inches (83mm).
2. The density of the foam plastic shall be in the range of 0.5 to 2.0 pounds per cubic foot (8 to 32 kg/m^3).
3. The foam plastic shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less and an accompanying smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

316.5.12 Sheathing. Foam plastic insulation used as sheathing shall comply with Section 316.3 and Section 316.4. Where the foam plastic sheathing is exposed to the attic space at a gable or kneewall, the provisions of Section 316.5.3 shall apply. Where foam plastic insulation is used as exterior wall sheathing on framed wall assemblies, it shall comply with Section 316.8.

316.5.13 Floors. The thermal barrier specified in Section 316.4 is not required to be installed on the walking surface of a structural floor system that contains foam plastic insulation where the foam plastic is covered by not more than a nominal $^1/_2$ -inch-thick (12.7 mm) wood structural panel or equivalent. The thermal barrier specified in Section 316.4 is required on the underside of the structural floor system that contains foam plastic insulation where the underside of the structural floor system is exposed to the interior of the building.

316.6 Specific approval. Foam plastic not meeting the requirements of Sections 316.3 through 316.5 shall be specifically approved on the basis of one of the following approved tests: NFPA 286 with the acceptance criteria of Section 302.9.4, FM 4880, UL 1040 or UL 1715, or fire tests related to actual end-use configurations. Approval shall be based on the actual end-use configuration and shall be performed on the finished foam plastic assembly in the maximum thickness intended for use. Assemblies tested shall include seams, joints and other typical details used in the installation of the assembly and shall be tested in the manner intended for use.

316.7 Termite damage. The use of foam plastics in areas of "very heavy" termite infestation probability shall be in accordance with Section 318.4.

316.8 Wind resistance. Foam plastic insulation complying with ASTM C578 and ASTM C1289 and used as exterior wall sheathing on framed wall assemblies shall comply with SBCA FS 100 for wind pressure resistance unless installed directly over a sheathing material that is separately capable of resisting the wind load or otherwise exempted from the scope of SBCA FS 100.

SECTION 317
PROTECTION OF WOOD AND WOOD-BASED PRODUCTS AGAINST DECAY

317.1 Location required. Protection of wood and wood-based products from decay shall be provided in the following locations by the use of naturally durable wood or wood that is preservative-treated in accordance with AWPA U1.

1. Wood joists or the bottom of a wood structural floor where closer than 18 inches (457 mm) or wood girders where closer than 12 inches (305 mm) to the exposed ground in crawl spaces or unexcavated area located within the periphery of the building foundation.
2. Wood framing members that rest on concrete or masonry exterior foundation walls and are less than 8 inches (203 mm) from the exposed ground.
3. Sills and sleepers on a concrete or masonry slab that is in direct contact with the ground unless separated from such slab by an impervious moisture barrier.
4. The ends of wood girders entering exterior masonry or concrete walls having clearances of less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) on tops, sides and ends.
5. Wood siding, sheathing and wall framing on the exterior of a building having a clearance of less than 6 inches (152 mm) from the ground or less than 2 inches (51 mm) measured vertically from concrete steps, porch slabs, patio slabs and similar horizontal surfaces exposed to the weather.
6. Wood structural members supporting moisture-permeable floors or roofs that are exposed to the weather, such as concrete or masonry slabs, unless separated from such floors or roofs by an impervious moisture barrier.
7. Wood furring strips or other wood framing members attached directly to the interior of exterior masonry walls or concrete walls below grade except where an approved vapor retarder is applied between the wall and the furring strips or framing members.

317.1.1 Field treatment. *Deleted*

317.1.2 Ground contact. All wood in contact with the ground, embedded in

concrete in direct contact with the ground or embedded in concrete exposed to the weather that supports permanent structures intended for human occupancy shall be approved pressure-preservative-treated wood suitable for ground contact use, except that untreated wood used entirely below groundwater level or continuously submerged in fresh water shall not be required to be pressure-preservative treated.

317.1.3 Geographical areas. In geographical areas where experience has demonstrated a specific need, approved naturally durable or pressure-preservative-treated wood shall be used for those portions of wood members that form the structural supports of buildings, balconies, porches or similar permanent building appurtenances where those members are exposed to the weather without adequate protection from a roof, eave, overhang or other covering that would prevent moisture or water accumulation on the surface or at joints between members. Depending on local experience, such members typically include:

1. Horizontal members such as girders, joists and decking.
2. Vertical members such as posts, poles and columns.
3. Both horizontal and vertical members.

317.1.4 Wood columns. Wood columns shall be approved wood of natural decay resistance or approved pressure-preservative-treated wood.

Exceptions:

1. Columns exposed to the weather or in basements where supported by concrete piers or metal pedestals projecting 1 inch (25 mm) above a concrete floor or 6 inches (152 mm) above exposed earth and the earth is covered by an approved impervious moisture barrier.
2. Columns in enclosed crawl spaces or unexcavated areas located within the periphery of the building where supported by a concrete pier or metal pedestal at a height more than 8 inches (203 mm) from exposed earth and the earth is covered by an impervious moisture barrier.
3. Deck posts supported by concrete piers or metal pedestals projecting not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above a concrete floor or 6 inches (152 mm) above exposed earth.

317.1.5 Exposed glued-laminated timbers. The portions of glued-laminated timbers that form the structural supports of a building or other structure and are exposed to weather and not properly protected by a roof, eave or similar covering shall be pressure treated with preservative, or be manufactured from naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

317.2 Quality mark. Lumber and plywood required to be pressure-preservative treated in accordance with Section 318.1 shall bear the quality mark of an approved inspection agency that maintains continuing supervision, testing and inspection over the quality of the product and that has been approved by an accreditation body that complies with the requirements of the American Lumber Standard Committee treated wood program.

317.2.1 Required information. The required quality mark on each piece of pressure-preservative-treated lumber or plywood shall contain the following information:

1. Identification of the treating plant.
2. Type of preservative.
3. The minimum preservative retention.
4. End use for which the product was treated.
5. Standard to which the product was treated.
6. Identity of the approved inspection agency.
7. The designation "Dry," if applicable.

Exception: Quality marks on lumber less than 1 inch (25 mm) nominal thickness, or lumber less than nominal 1 inch by 5 inches (25 mm by 127 mm) or 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm by 102 mm) or lumber 36 inches (914 mm) or less in length shall be applied by stamping the faces of exterior pieces or by end labeling not less than 25 percent of the pieces of a bundled unit.

317.3 Fasteners and connectors in contact with preservative-treated and fire-retardant-treated wood. Fasteners, including nuts and washers, and connectors in contact with preservative-treated wood and fire-retardant-treated wood shall be in accordance with this section. The coating weights for zinc-coated fasteners shall be in accordance with ASTM A153. Stainless steel driven fasteners shall be in accordance with the material requirements of ASTM F1667.

317.3.1 Fasteners for preservative-treated wood. Fasteners, including nuts and washers, for preservative-treated wood shall be of hot-dipped, zinc-coated galvanized steel, stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper. Staples shall be of stainless steel. Coating types and weights for connectors in contact with preservative-treated wood shall be in accordance with the connector manufacturer's recommendations. In the absence of manufacturer's recommendations, not less than ASTM A653 type G185 zinc-coated galvanized steel, or equivalent, shall be used.

Exceptions:

1. 1/2 -inch-diameter (12.7 mm) or greater steel bolts.
2. Fasteners other than nails, staples and timber rivets shall be permitted to be of mechanically deposited zinc-coated steel with coating weights in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55 minimum.
3. Plain carbon steel fasteners in SBX/DOT and zinc borate preservative-treated wood in an interior, dry environment shall be permitted.

317.3.2 Fastenings for wood foundations. Fastenings, including nuts and washers, for wood foundations shall be as required in AWC PWF.

317.3.3 Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated wood used in exterior applications or wet or damp locations. Fasteners, including nuts and washers, for fire-retardant-treated wood used in exterior applications or wet or damp locations shall be of hot-dipped, zinc-coated galvanized steel, stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper. Fasteners other than nails, staples and timber rivets shall be permitted to be of mechanically deposited zinc-coated steel with coating weights in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55 minimum.

317.3.4 Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated wood used in interior applications. Fasteners, including nuts and washers, for fire-retardant-treated wood used in interior locations shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In the absence of the manufacturer's recommendations, Section 317.3.3 shall apply.

317.4 Plastic composites. Plastic composite exterior deck boards, stair treads, guards and handrails containing wood, cellulosic or other biodegradable materials shall comply with the requirements of Section 507.2.2.

SECTION 318
PROTECTION AGAINST SUBTERRANEAN TERMITES

318.1 Subterranean termite control methods. In areas subject to damage from termites as indicated by Table 301.2(1), protection shall be by one, or a combination, of the following methods:

1. Chemical termiticide treatment in accordance with Section 318.2.
2. Termite-baiting system installed and maintained in accordance with the label.
3. Pressure-preservative-treated wood in accordance with the provisions of Section 317.1.
4. Naturally durable termite-resistant wood.
5. Physical barriers in accordance with Section 318.3 and used in locations as

specified in Section 317.1.

6. Cold-formed steel framing in accordance with Sections 505.2.1 and 603.2.1.

318.1.1 Quality mark. Lumber and plywood required to be pressure-preservative treated in accordance with Section 318.1 shall bear the quality mark of an approved inspection agency that maintains continuing supervision, testing and inspection over the quality of the product and that has been approved by an accreditation body that complies with the requirements of the American Lumber Standard Committee treated wood program.

318.1.2 Field treatment. *Deleted*

318.2 Chemical termiticide treatment. Chemical termiticide treatment shall include soil treatment or field-applied wood treatment. The concentration, rate of application and method of treatment of the chemical termiticide shall be in strict accordance with the termiticide label.

318.3 Barriers. Approved physical barriers, such as metal or plastic sheeting or collars specifically designed for termite prevention, shall be installed in a manner to prevent termites from entering the structure. Shields placed on top of an exterior foundation wall shall be used only if in combination with another method of protection.

318.4 Foam plastic protection. In areas where the probability of termite infestation is "very heavy" as indicated in Figure 301.2(7), extruded and expanded polystyrene, polyisocyanurate and other foam plastics shall not be installed on the exterior face or under interior or exterior foundation walls or slab foundations located below grade. The clearance between foam plastics installed above grade and exposed earth shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Buildings where the structural members of walls, floors, ceilings and roofs are entirely of noncombustible materials or pressure-preservative-treated wood.
2. Where in addition to the requirements of Section 318.1, an approved method of protecting the foam plastic and structure from subterranean termite damage is used.
3. On the interior side of basement walls.

SECTION 319
SITE ADDRESS

319.1 Address identification. *Buildings shall have approved address numbers, building numbers or approved building identification placed in a position that is plainly legible and visible from the street or road fronting the property.* Where required by the fire code official, address identification shall be provided in additional *approved* locations to facilitate emergency response. Where access is by means of a private road and the building address cannot be viewed from the public way, a monument, pole or other sign or means shall be used to identify the structure. Address identification shall be maintained.

SECTION 320
ACCESSIBILITY

320.1 Scope. *Where there are four or more dwelling units or sleeping units in a single structure, and the design qualifies for this code to apply, the provisions of section 320 shall apply.*

In structures with 1, 2 or 3 dwelling units, the accessibility provisions of this code are not required but when non-required accessibility components are intended to be installed inside the dwellings, they shall comply with the provisions for Type A, Type B, Type C (Visitable), or Accessible units in ICC/ANSI A117.1 listed in Chapter 44 to the extent of the installation.

320.1.1 Guestrooms. A dwelling with guestrooms *for primarily transient occupants* shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 11 of the *Ohio building code* for Group R-3. For the purpose of applying the requirements of Chapter 11 of the *Ohio building code*, guestrooms shall be considered to be sleeping units.

Exception: Owner-occupied lodging houses with five or fewer guestrooms constructed in accordance with the Residential Code *of Ohio* are not required to be accessible.

320.2 Applicability. *Where there are four or more dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as residences in a single structure, every dwelling unit shall be a Type B unit designed and constructed for accessibility in accordance with section 320 and the provisions for Type B units in Chapter 10 of the ICC/ANSI A117.1 listed in Chapter 44.*

***Exception**: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 320.4.*

When this code applies to structures of four or more dwellings and Type B units are required, the common and public use areas serving the Type B dwellings and

the accessible route connecting the common and public use areas to the Type B units shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 listed in Chapter 44.

***320.3 Accessible route**. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with the primary entrance of each Type B unit within the building or facility and with those exterior and interior spaces and facilities that serve the Type B units.*

Exception:

If due to circumstances outside the control of the owner, either the slope of the finished ground level between accessible facilities and buildings exceeds one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1:12), or where physical barriers or legal restrictions prevent the installation of an accessible route, a vehicular route with parking that complies with ICC/ANSI A117.1 listed in Chapter 44 at each public or common use facility or building is permitted in place of the accessible route.

***320.4 General exceptions.** The required number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Sections 320.4.1 through 320.4.5.*

***320.4.1 Structures without elevator service.** Where no elevator service is provided in a structure, only the dwelling units that are located on stories indicated in Sections 320.4.1.1 and 320.4.1.2 are required to be Type B units, respectively.*

***320.4.1.1 One story with Type B units required**. At least one story containing dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence shall be provided with an accessible entrance from the exterior of the structure and all units intended to be occupied as a residence on that story shall be Type B units.*

***320.4.1.2 Additional stories with Type B units.** On all other stories that have a building entrance in proximity to arrival points intended to serve units on that story, as indicated in Items 1 and 2, all dwelling units intended to be occupied as a residence served by that entrance on that story shall be Type B units.*

1. *Where the slopes of the undisturbed site measured between the planned entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance are 10 percent or less, and*
2. *Where the slopes of the planned finished grade measured between the entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50*

feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance are 10 percent or less.

Where no such arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the entrance, the closest arrival point shall be used unless that arrival point serves the story required by Section 320.4.1.1.

320.4.2 Multistory units. *A multistory dwelling which is not provided with elevator service is not required to be a Type B unit. Where a multistory unit is provided with external elevator service to only one floor, the floor provided with elevator service shall be the primary entry to the unit, shall comply with the requirements for a Type B unit and a toilet facility shall be provided on that floor.*

For purposes of applying section 320, multistory units are dwellings with finished, habitable space on more than one level of the unit.

320.4.3 Elevator service to the lowest story with units. *Where elevator service in the building provides an accessible route only to the lowest story containing dwelling or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, only the units on that story which are intended to be occupied as a residence are required to be Type B units.*

320.4.4 Site impracticality. *On a site with multiple non-elevator buildings, the number of units required by Section 320.4.1 to be Type B units is permitted to be reduced to a percentage which is equal to the percentage of the entire site having grades, prior to development, which are less than 10 percent, provided that all of the following conditions are met:*

1. *Not less than 20 percent of the units required by Section 320.4.1 on the site are Type B units;*
2. *Units required by Section 320.4.1, where the slope between the building entrance serving the units on that story and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point is no greater than 8.33 percent, are Type B units;*
3. *Units required by Section 320.4.1, where an elevated walkway is planned between a building entrance serving the units on that story and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point and the slope between them is 10 percent or less are Type B units; and*
4. *Units served by an elevator in accordance with Section 320.4.3 are Type B units.*

320.4.5 Design flood elevation. *The required number of Type B units shall not apply to a site where the required elevation of the lowest floor or the lowest*

horizontal structural building members of non-elevator buildings are at or above the design flood elevation resulting in:

1. *A difference in elevation between the minimum required floor elevation at the primary entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) exceeding 30 inches (762 mm), and*
2. *A slope exceeding 10 percent between the minimum required floor elevation at the primary entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15.24 m).*

Where no such arrival points are within 50 feet (15.24 m) of the primary entrances, the closest arrival points shall be used.

SECTION 321
ELEVATORS AND PLATFORM LIFTS

321.1 Elevators. Where provided, passenger elevators, limited-use and limited-application elevators or private residence elevators shall comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

321.2 Platform lifts. Where provided, platform lifts shall comply with ASME A18.1.

321.3 Accessibility. Elevators or platform lifts that are part of an accessible route shall *also* comply with ICC A117.1.

SECTION 322
FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

322.1 General. *Except where approved by the Flood Plain Administrator having jurisdiction or by variance granted, buildings* and structures constructed in whole or in part in flood hazard areas, including A or V Zones and Coastal A Zones, as established in Table 301.2(1), and substantial improvement and repair of substantial damage of buildings and structures in flood hazard areas, shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions contained in this section. Buildings and structures that are located in more than one flood hazard area shall comply with the provisions associated with the most restrictive flood hazard area. Buildings and structures located in whole or in part in identified floodways shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

322.1.1 Alternative provisions. As an alternative to the requirements in Section 322, ASCE 24 is permitted subject to the limitations of this code and the limitations therein.

322.1.2 Structural systems. Structural systems of buildings and structures shall be designed, connected and anchored to resist flotation, collapse or permanent lateral movement due to structural loads and stresses from flooding equal to the design flood elevation.

322.1.3 Flood-resistant construction. Buildings and structures erected in areas prone to flooding shall be constructed by methods and practices that minimize flood damage.

322.1.4 Establishing the design flood elevation. The design flood elevation shall be used to define flood hazard areas. At a minimum, the design flood elevation shall be the higher of the following:

1. The base flood elevation at the depth of peak elevation of flooding, including wave height, that has a 1-percent (100-year flood) or greater chance of being equaled or exceeded in any given year.
2. The elevation of the design flood associated with the area designated on a flood hazard map adopted by the community, or otherwise legally designated.

322.1.4.1 Determination of design flood elevations. If design flood elevations are not specified, the building official is authorized to require the applicant to comply with either of the following:

1. Obtain and reasonably use data available from a federal, state or other source.
2. Determine the design flood elevation in accordance with accepted hydrologic and hydraulic engineering practices used to define special flood hazard areas. Determinations shall be undertaken by a registered design professional who shall document that the technical methods used reflect currently accepted engineering practice. Studies, analyses and computations shall be submitted in sufficient detail to allow thorough review and approval.

322.1.4.2 Determination of impacts. In riverine flood hazard areas where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, the applicant shall demonstrate that the effect of the proposed buildings and structures on design flood elevations, including fill, when combined with other existing and anticipated flood hazard area

encroachments, will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point within the jurisdiction.

322.1.5 Lowest floor. The lowest floor shall be the lowest floor of the lowest enclosed area, including basement, and excluding any unfinished flood-resistant enclosure that is useable solely for vehicle parking, building access or limited storage provided that such enclosure is not built so as to render the building or structure in violation of this section.

322.1.6 Protection of mechanical, plumbing and electrical systems. Electrical systems, equipment and components; heating, ventilating, air-conditioning; plumbing appliances and plumbing fixtures; duct systems; and other service equipment shall be located at or above the elevation required in Section 322.2 or 322.3. If replaced as part of a substantial improvement, electrical systems, equipment and components; heating, ventilating, air-conditioning and plumbing appliances and plumbing fixtures; duct systems; and other service equipment shall meet the requirements of this section. Systems, fixtures, and equipment and components shall not be mounted on or penetrate through walls intended to break away under flood loads.

Exception: Locating electrical systems, equipment and components; heating, ventilating, air-conditioning; plumbing appliances and plumbing fixtures; duct systems; and other service equipment is permitted below the elevation required in Section 322.2 or 322.3 provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the design flood elevation in accordance with ASCE 24. Electrical wiring systems are permitted to be located below the required elevation provided that they conform to the provisions of the electrical part of this code for wet locations.

322.1.7 Protection of water supply and sanitary sewage systems. New and replacement water supply systems shall be designed to minimize or eliminate infiltration of flood waters into the systems in accordance with the plumbing provisions of this code. New and replacement sanitary sewage systems shall be designed to minimize or eliminate infiltration of floodwaters into systems and discharges from systems into floodwaters in accordance with the *plumbing code.*

322.1.8 Flood-resistant materials. Building materials and installation methods used for flooring and interior and exterior walls and wall coverings

below the elevation required in Section 322.2 or 322.3 shall be flood damage-resistant materials that conform to the provisions of FEMA TB-2.

322.1.9 Manufactured homes. Deleted

322.1.10 As-built elevation documentation. A registered design professional shall prepare and seal documentation of the elevations specified in Section 322.2 or 322.3.

322.2 Flood hazard areas (including A Zones). Areas that have been determined to be prone to flooding and that are not subject to high-velocity wave action shall be designated as flood hazard areas. Flood hazard areas that have been delineated as subject to wave heights between $1^1/_2$ feet (457 mm) and 3 feet (914 mm) or otherwise designated by the jurisdiction shall be designated as Coastal A Zones and are subject to the requirements of Section 322.3. Buildings and structures constructed in whole or in part in flood hazard areas shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 322.2.1 through 322.2.3.

322.2.1 Elevation requirements.

1. Buildings and structures in flood hazard areas, including flood hazard areas designated as Coastal A Zones, shall have the lowest floors elevated to or above the base flood elevation plus 1 foot (305 mm), or the design flood elevation, whichever is higher.
2. In areas of shallow flooding (AO Zones), buildings and structures shall have the lowest floor (including basement) elevated to a height above the highest adjacent grade of not less than the depth number specified in feet (mm) on the FIRM plus 1 foot (305 mm), or not less than 3 feet (915 mm) if a depth number is not specified.
3. Basement floors that are below grade on all sides shall be elevated to or above base flood elevation plus 1 foot (305 mm), or the design flood elevation, whichever is higher.

Exception: Enclosed areas below the design flood elevation, including basements with floors that are not below grade on all sides, shall meet the requirements of Section 322.2.2.

322.2.2 Enclosed area below design flood elevation. Enclosed areas, including crawl spaces, that are below the design flood elevation shall:

1. Be used solely for parking of vehicles, building access or storage.
2. Be provided with flood openings that meet the following criteria and are installed in accordance with Section 322.2.2.1:
   2.1. The total net area of nonengineered openings shall be not less than

1 square inch (645 mm^2) for each square foot (0.093 m^2) of enclosed area where the enclosed area is measured on the exterior of the enclosure walls, or the openings shall be designed as engineered openings and the construction documents shall include a statement by a registered design professional that the design of the openings will provide for equalization of hydrostatic flood forces on exterior walls by allowing for the automatic entry and exit of floodwaters as specified in Section 2.7.2.2 of ASCE 24.

2.2. Openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in any direction in the plane of the wall.

2.3. The presence of louvers, blades, screens and faceplates or other covers and devices shall allow the automatic flow of floodwater into and out of the enclosed areas and shall be accounted for in the determination of the net open area.

322.2.2.1 Installation of openings. The walls of enclosed areas shall have openings installed such that:

1. There shall be not less than two openings on different sides of each enclosed area; if a building has more than one enclosed area below the design flood elevation, each area shall have openings.
2. The bottom of each opening shall be not more than 1 foot (305 mm) above the higher of the final interior grade or floor and the finished exterior grade immediately under each opening.
3. Openings shall be permitted to be installed in doors and windows; doors and windows without installed openings do not meet the requirements of this section.

322.2.3 Foundation design and construction. Foundation walls for buildings and structures erected in flood hazard areas shall meet the requirements of Chapter 4.

Exception: Unless designed in accordance with Section 404:

1. The unsupported height of 6-inch (152 mm) plain masonry walls shall be not more than 3 feet (914 mm).
2. The unsupported height of 8-inch (203 mm) plain masonry walls shall be not more than 4 feet (1219 mm).
3. The unsupported height of 8-inch (203 mm) reinforced masonry walls shall be not more than 8 feet (2438 mm).

For the purpose of this exception, unsupported height is the distance from the finished grade of the under-floor space to the top of the wall.

322.2.4 Tanks. Underground tanks shall be anchored to prevent flotation, collapse and lateral movement under conditions of the base flood. Above-ground tanks shall be installed at or above the elevation required in Section 322.2.1 or shall be anchored to prevent flotation, collapse and lateral movement under conditions of the base flood.

322.3 Coastal high-hazard areas (including V Zones and Coastal A Zones, where designated). Areas that have been determined to be subject to wave heights in excess of 3 feet (914 mm) or subject to high-velocity wave action or wave-induced erosion shall be designated as coastal high-hazard areas. Flood hazard areas that have been designated as subject to wave heights between $1^1/_2$ feet (457 mm) and 3 feet (914 mm) or otherwise designated by the jurisdiction shall be designated as Coastal A Zones. Buildings and structures constructed in whole or in part in coastal high-hazard areas and Coastal A Zones, where designated, shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 322.3.1 through 322.3.10.

322.3.1 Location and site preparation.

1. New buildings and buildings that are determined to be substantially improved pursuant to Section *113.4* shall be located landward of the reach of mean high tide.
2. For any alteration of sand dunes and *other coastal features*, the building official shall require submission of an engineering analysis that demonstrates that the proposed alteration will not increase the potential for flood damage.

322.3.2 Elevation requirements.

1. Buildings and structures erected within coastal high hazard areas and Coastal A Zones, shall be elevated so that the bottom of the lowest horizontal structural members supporting the lowest floor, with the exception of piling, pile caps, columns, grade beams and bracing, is elevated to or above the base flood elevation plus 1 foot (305 mm) or the design flood elevation, whichever is higher.
2. Basement floors that are below grade on all sides are prohibited.
3. The use of fill for structural support is prohibited.
4. Minor grading, and the placement of minor quantities of fill, shall be permitted for landscaping and for drainage purposes under and around buildings and for support of parking slabs, pool decks, patios and walkways.
5. Walls and partitions enclosing areas below the design flood elevation shall meet the requirements of Sections 322.3.5 and 322.3.6.

322.3.3 Foundations. Buildings and structures erected in coastal high-hazard areas and Coastal A Zones shall be supported on pilings or columns and shall be adequately anchored to such pilings or columns. The space below the elevated building shall be either free of obstruction or, if enclosed with walls, the walls shall meet the requirements of Section 322.3.5. Pilings shall have adequate soil penetrations to resist the combined wave and wind loads (lateral and uplift). Water-loading values used shall be those associated with the design flood. Wind-loading values shall be those required by this code. Pile embedment shall include consideration of decreased resistance capacity caused by scour of soil strata surrounding the piling. Pile systems design and installation shall be certified in accordance with Section 322.3.9. Spread footing, mat, raft or other foundations that support columns shall not be permitted where soil investigations that are required in accordance with Section 401.4 indicate that soil material under the spread footing, mat, raft or other foundation is subject to scour or erosion from wave-velocity flow conditions. If permitted, spread footing, mat, raft or other foundations that support columns shall be designed in accordance with ASCE 24.

Exception: In Coastal A Zones, stem wall foundations supporting a floor system above and backfilled with soil or gravel to the underside of the floor system shall be permitted provided that the foundations are designed to account for wave action, debris impact, erosion and local scour. Where soils are susceptible to erosion and local scour, stem wall foundations shall have deep footings to account for the loss of soil.

322.3.4 Concrete slabs. Concrete slabs used for parking, floors of enclosures, landings, decks, walkways, patios and similar uses that are located beneath structures, or slabs that are located such that if undermined or dis- placed during base flood conditions could cause structural damage to the building foundation, shall be designed and constructed in accordance with one of the following:

1. To be structurally independent of the foundation system of the structure, to not transfer flood loads to the main structure, and to be frangible and break away under flood conditions prior to base flood conditions. Slabs shall be a maximum of 4 inches (102 mm) thick, shall not have turned-down edges, shall not contain reinforcing, shall have isolation joints at pilings and columns, and shall have control or construction joints in both directions spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) apart.
2. To be self-supporting, structural slabs capable of remaining intact and functional under base flood conditions, including erosion and local scour, and the main structure shall be capable of resisting any added flood loads and effects of local scour caused by the presence of the slabs.

322.3.5 Walls below design flood elevation. Walls and partitions are permitted below the elevated floor, provided that such walls and partitions are not part of the structural support of the building or structure and:

1. Electrical, mechanical and plumbing system components are not to be mounted on or penetrate through walls that are designed to break away under flood loads; and
2. Are constructed with insect screening or open lattice; or
3. Are designed to break away or collapse without causing collapse, displacement or other structural damage to the elevated portion of the building or supporting foundation system. Such walls, framing and connections shall have a resistance of not less than 10 (479 Pa) and not more than 20 pounds per square foot (958 Pa) as determined using allowable stress design; or
4. Where wind loading values of this code exceed 20 pounds per square foot (958 Pa), as determined using allowable stress design, the construction documents shall include documentation prepared and sealed by a registered design professional that:
   4.1. The walls and partitions below the design flood elevation have been designed to collapse from a water load less than that which would occur during the base flood.
   4.2. The elevated portion of the building and supporting foundation system have been designed to withstand the effects of wind and flood loads acting simultaneously on structural and nonstructural building components. Water-loading values used shall be those associated with the design flood. Wind-loading values shall be those required by this code.
5. Walls intended to break away under flood loads as specified in Item 3 or 4 have flood openings that meet the criteria in Section 322.2.2, Item 2.

322.3.6 Enclosed areas below design flood elevation. Enclosed areas below the design flood elevation shall be used solely for parking of vehicles, building access or storage.

322.3.6.1 Protection of building envelope. An exterior door that meets the requirements of Section 609 shall be installed at the top of stairs that provide access to the building and that are enclosed with walls designed to break away in accordance with Section 322.3.5.

322.3.7 Stairways and ramps. Stairways and ramps that are located below the lowest floor elevations specified in Section 322.3.2 shall comply with one or

more of the following:

1. Be designed and constructed with open or partially open risers and guards.
2. Stairways and ramps not part of the required means of egress shall be designed and constructed to break away during design flood conditions without causing damage to the building or structure, including foundation.
3. Be retractable, or able to be raised to or above the lowest floor elevation, provided that the ability to be retracted or raised prior to the onset of flooding is not contrary to the means of egress requirements of the code.
4. Be designed and constructed to resist flood loads and minimize transfer of flood loads to the building or structure, including foundation.

Areas below stairways and ramps shall not be enclosed with walls below the design flood elevation unless such walls are constructed in accordance with Section 322.3.5.

322.3.8 Decks and porches. Attached decks and porches shall meet the elevation requirements of Section 322.3.2 and shall either meet the foundation requirements of this section or shall be cantilevered from or knee braced to the building or structure. Self-supporting decks and porches that are below the elevation required in Section 322.3.2 shall not be enclosed by solid, rigid walls, including walls designed to break away. Self-supporting decks and porches shall be designed and constructed to remain in place during base flood conditions or shall be frangible and break away under base flood conditions.

322.3.9 Construction documents. The construction documents shall include documentation that is prepared and sealed by a registered design professional that the design and methods of construction to be used meet the applicable criteria of this section.

322.3.10 Tanks. Underground tanks shall be anchored to prevent flotation, collapse and lateral movement under conditions of the base flood. Above-ground tanks shall be installed at or above the elevation required in Section 322.3.2. Where elevated on platforms, the platforms shall be cantilevered from or knee braced to the building or shall be supported on foundations that conform to the requirements of Section 322.3.

SECTION 323
STORM SHELTERS

323.1 General. This section applies to storm shelters where constructed as separate detached buildings or where constructed as safe rooms within buildings for the purpose of providing refuge from storms that produce high winds, such as tornados and hurricanes. In addition to other applicable requirements in this code, storm shelters shall be constructed in accordance with ICC/NSSA-500.

SECTION 324
SOLAR ENERGY SYSTEMS

324.1 General. Solar energy systems shall comply with the provisions of this section.

324.2 Solar thermal systems. Solar thermal systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Chapter 23.

324.3 Photovoltaic systems. Photovoltaic systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 324.3.1 through 324.7.1, NFPA 70*, the fire code* and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

324.3.1 Equipment listings. Photovoltaic panels and modules shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1703. Inverters shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1741. Systems connected to the utility grid shall use inverters listed for utility interaction.

324.4 Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic systems. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel systems installed on or above the roof covering shall be designed and installed in accordance with this section.

324.4.1 Structural requirements. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed to structurally support the system and withstand applicable gravity loads in accordance with Chapter 3. The roof on which these systems are installed shall be designed and constructed to support the loads imposed by such systems in accordance with Chapter 8.

324.4.1.1 Roof load. Portions of roof structures not covered with photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed for dead loads and roof loads in accordance with Sections 301.4 and 301.6. Portions of roof structures covered with photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed for the following load cases:

1. Dead load (including photovoltaic panel weight) plus snow load in accordance with Table 301.2(1).

2. Dead load (excluding photovoltaic panel weight) plus roof live load or snow load, whichever is greater, in accordance with Section 301.6.

324.4.1.2 Wind load. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel or module systems and their supports shall be designed and installed to resist the component and cladding loads specified in Table 301.2(2), adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table 301.2(3).

324.4.2 Fire classification. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel systems shall have the same fire classification as the roof assembly required in Section 902.

324.4.3 Roof penetrations. Roof penetrations shall be flashed and sealed in accordance with Chapter 9.

324.5 Building-integrated photovoltaic systems. Building-integrated photovoltaic systems that serve as roof coverings shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 905.

324.5.1 Photovoltaic shingles. Photovoltaic shingles shall comply with Section 905.16.

324.5.2 Fire classification. Building-integrated photovoltaic systems shall have a fire classification in accordance with Section 902.3.

324.6 Roof access and pathways. Roof access, pathways and setback requirements shall be provided in accordance with Sections 324.6.1 through 324.6.2.1. Access and minimum spacing shall be required to provide emergency access to the roof, to provide pathways to specific areas of the roof, provide for smoke ventilation opportunity areas, and to provide emergency egress from the roof.

Exceptions:

1. Detached, non-habitable structures, including but not limited to detached garages, parking shade structures, carports, solar trellises and similar structures, shall not be required to provide roof access.
2. Roof access, pathways and setbacks need not be provided where the code official has determined that rooftop operations will not be employed.
3. These requirements shall not apply to roofs with slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) or less.

324.6.1 Pathways. Not fewer than two pathways, on separate roof planes from

lowest roof edge to ridge and not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide, shall be provided on all buildings. Not fewer than one pathway shall be provided on the street or driveway side of the roof. For each roof plane with a photovoltaic array, a pathway not less than 36 inches wide (914 mm) shall be provided from the lowest roof edge to ridge on the same roof plane as the photovoltaic array, on an adjacent roof plane, or straddling the same and adjacent roof planes. Pathways shall be over areas capable of supporting fire fighters accessing the roof. Pathways shall be located in areas with minimal obstructions such as vent pipes, conduit, or mechanical equipment.

324.6.2 Setback at ridge. For photovoltaic arrays occupying not more than 33 percent of the plan view total roof area, not less than an 18-inch (457 mm) clear setback is required on both sides of a horizontal ridge. For photovoltaic arrays occupying more than 33 percent of the plan view total roof area, not less than a 36-inch (914 mm) clear setback is required on both sides of a horizontal ridge.

324.6.2.1 Alternative setback at ridge. Where an automatic sprinkler system is installed within the dwelling in accordance with NFPA 13D or Section 2904, setbacks at ridges shall comply with one of the following:

1. For photovoltaic arrays occupying not more than 66 percent of the plan view total roof area, not less than an 18-inch (457 mm) clear setback is required on both sides of a horizontal ridge.
2. For photovoltaic arrays occupying more than 66 percent of the plan view total roof area, not less than a 36-inch (914 mm) clear setback is required on both sides of a horizontal ridge.

324.6.2.2 Emergency escape and rescue opening. Panels and modules installed on dwellings shall not be placed on the portion of a roof that is below an emergency escape and rescue opening. A pathway not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide shall be provided to the emergency escape and rescue opening.

324.7 Ground-mounted photovoltaic systems. Ground-mounted photovoltaic systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 301.

324.7.1 Fire separation distances. Ground-mounted photovoltaic systems shall be subject to the fire separation distance requirements determined by the local jurisdiction.

SECTION 325
MEZZANINES

- Deleted

SECTION 326
SWIMMING POOLS, SPAS AND HOT TUBS

- Deleted

SECTION 327
STATIONARY STORAGE BATTERY SYSTEMS

327.1 General. Stationary storage battery system shall comply with the provisions of this section.

327.2 Equipment listings. Stationary storage battery systems shall be listed and labeled for residential use in accordance with UL 9540.

Exceptions:

1. Where approved, repurposed unlisted battery systems from electric vehicles are allowed to be installed outdoors or in detached sheds located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from exterior walls, property lines and public ways.
2. Battery systems that are an integral part of an electric vehicle are allowed provided that the installation complies with Section 625.48 of NFPA 70.
3. Battery systems less than 1 kWh (3.6 megajoules).

327.3 Installation. Stationary storage battery systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and their listing, if applicable, and shall not be installed within the habitable space of a dwelling unit.

327.4 Electrical installation. Stationary storage battery systems shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70. Inverters shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1741 or provided as part of the UL 9540 listing. Systems connected to the utility grid shall use inverters listed for utility interaction.

327.5 Ventilation. Indoor installations of stationary storage battery systems that include batteries that produce hydro- gen or other flammable gases during charging shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 1307.4.

327.6 Protection from impact. Stationary storage battery systems installed in a location subject to vehicle damage shall be protected by approved barriers.

SECTION 328

POST FRAME ACCESSORY STRUCTURES

328.1 Post frame accessory structures. *The following requirements serve as minimum standards for post and frame structures within all of the following structural limitations:*

1. *Residential accessory structures,*
2. *Single story,*
3. *Solid exterior structural sheathing or metal roof, and solid wall panels,*
4. *No attic storage,*
5. *Maximum building width of thirty six feet including the overhang,*
6. *Maximum wall height of sixteen feet,*
7. *Maximum mean roof height of twenty feet, and*
8. *Maximum post spacing of eight feet.*

Post and frame structures and portions thereof outside the above structural limitations of this standard shall be accompanied by structural calculations as required by the residential building official or designed under the provisions of section 106.5 of the Residential Code of Ohio (RCO). Post and frame structures shall comply with the structural design requirements of section 301 of the RCO.

328.2 Definition. *Post frame accessory structures consist of primary members (wood posts, beams & single span roof trusses or ceiling joist and rafters) and secondary members (wood roof purlins, wall girts, bracing & sheathing) where all loads are transmitted from the sheathing and the secondary members to the primary members which transfer all combined loads to the soil through vertical posts bearing on footings embedded in the ground. See Figure 328.*

328.3 Footings and foundations. *Footings and foundations shall comply with applicable provisions of 401. Post frame structures shall have poured in-place concrete footings installed below all posts. The top of the footing shall be a minimum of 48 inches below finished grade and have footing diameters complying with Table 328.3.*

TABLE 328.3
POST FRAME PIER FOOTING DIAMETERS [1,2,3,4]

	Building width (length of truss) including overhang (feet)			
	24	***28***	***32***	***36***
Diameter (inches) 20# roof snow load	*18*	*20*	*22*	*22*
Diameter (inches) 30# roof snow load	*18*	*22*	*24*	*26*

1. *Pier footing thickness shall be a minimum one-half of the diameter of the footing.*
2. *Based upon 2000 PSF soil bearing capacity and truss loads of 20 or 30 PSF live or snow load*

top chord, 10 PSF dead load top chord, 5 PSF dead load on the bottom chord and no live load on the bottom chord

3. *Fractional widths shall be rounded to the next higher pier footing diameter.*
4. *Table not to be used in Ohio case study areas.*

328.4 Post and wall construction. *Posts shall be three (3) ply unspliced, reinforced spliced or solid wood and shall not be less than 4 inch by 6 inch nominal size. Posts shall comply with the requirements of Section 317.*

328.4.1 Uplift protection: *Posts shall have uplift protection by one of the following methods:*

1. *Two 2x6x12 inch post uplift protection blocks attached to each side of the base of the post. The post uplift blocks shall be placed horizontally, attached per Table 328.7 and comply with Section 317;*
2. *12 inch high, concrete collar poured on top of footing around the post, with 2-#5x9 inch rebar placed through the post at 3 inches and 9 inches from bottom of post in opposite directions. The rebar ends must be 1 ½ inches from the soil. See Figure 328.1;*

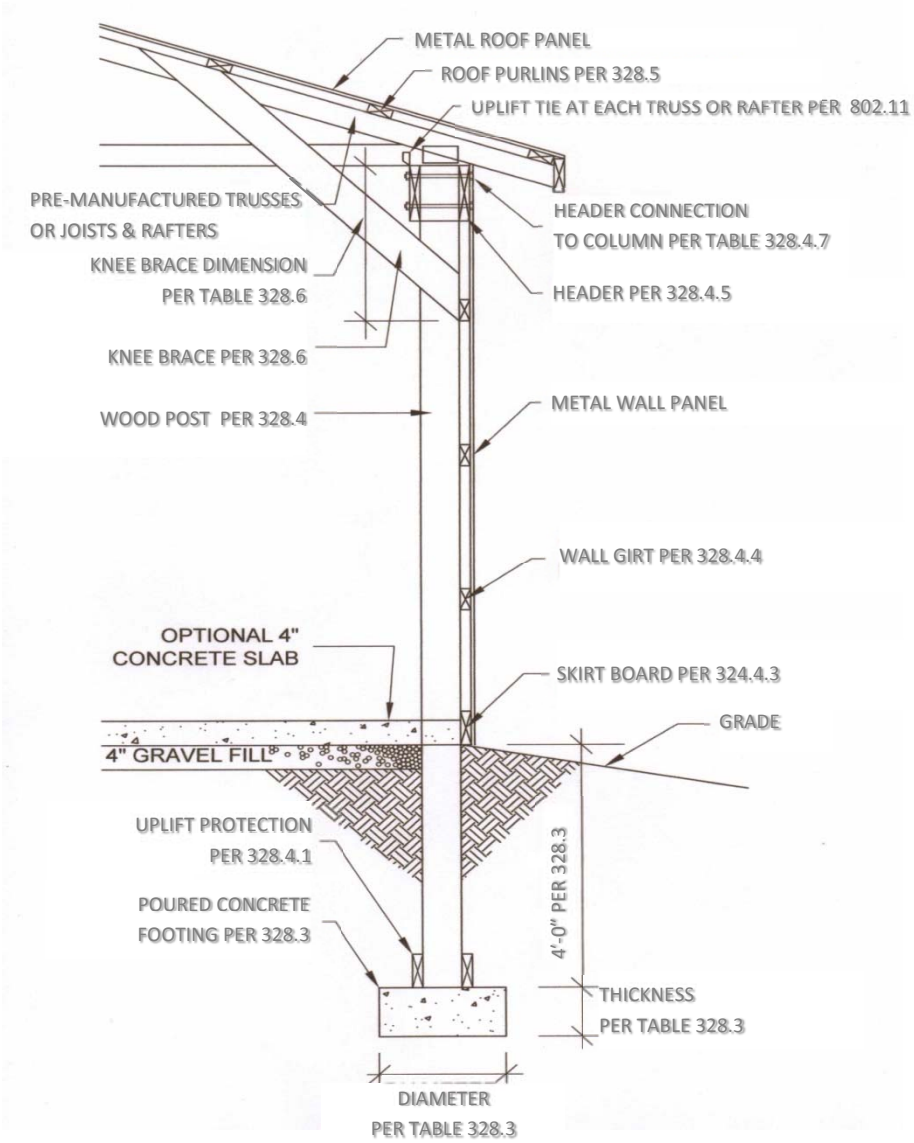


FIGURE 328
POST AND FRAME WALL SECTION.

(NO SCALE)

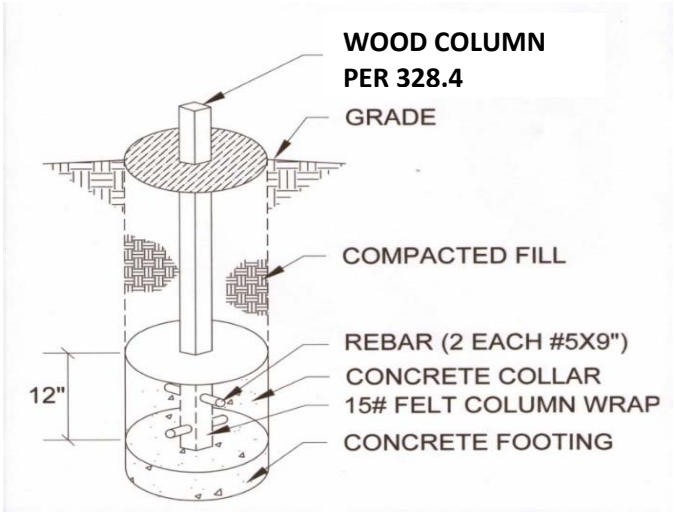


FIGURE 328.1
POST UPLIFT PROTECTION EXCEPTION
(NO SCALE)

328.4.2 Post Spacing. *The maximum spacing for posts shall be (eight) 8 feet on center.*

328.4.3 Skirt Boards. *Skirt boards shall be treated lumber meeting the requirements of Section 317 and attached per Table 328.7.*

328.4.4 Wall girts. *Wall girts shall be not less than 2 x 4 inches nominal and spaced not more than twenty-four (24) inches on center.*

328.4.5 Load bearing beams and headers: *Load bearing beams and headers shall comply with Table 502.5(1).*

Exceptions:

1. Bearing beams are not required if the trusses or ceiling joists and rafters bear directly on the posts.

2. Headers in the gable-end wall which do not support more than five square feet of wall area per lineal foot of header shall be sized per Table 328.4.5.

TABLE 328.4.5
GABLE END HEADER SIZES.

Opening Width (feet)	***10***	***12***	***16***
Header Size (inches)	*2-2x8*	*2-2x10*	*2-2x12*

328.4.6 Bracing. *Wall bracing shall be provided to resist all racking and shearing forces and must comply with the applicable provisions of section 602.10 or by installing 2x6 diagonal cross braces in the bays between adjacent posts as described in this section. The diagonal cross braces shall be placed from the top header or girt to the next adjacent post at the skirt board. The cross bracing shall be placed or installed on all sides of the building and shall be spaced at a maximum of 25 feet on center and within 12 feet of the corners of the building and attached per Table 328.7. Any splices of the diagonal brace required due to excessive length, must lap over two consecutive wall girts.*

328.4.7 Beams supporting trusses or rafters and ceiling joists attachment to column. *Bearing beams supporting roof trusses or rafters and ceiling joists shall be connected to the posts by one of the following methods:*

1. *Bolts that are ½ inch diameter through-bolted to the side of the post;*
2. *Bolts that are ½ inch diameter, directly attached to a 3-ply post notch, enclosing the truss or rafter at the top of post; or*
3. *Other fasteners with minimum shear or withdraw values stated in Table 328.4.7*

328.4.7.1 Number of fasteners. *The minimum numbers of through bolts or other fasteners with minimum shears or withdraw values required per Table 328.4.7.*

TABLE 328.4.7
BEAM OR TRUSS CONNECTION AT POSTS
MINIMUM FASTENERS OR TOTAL SHEAR OR WITHDRAW VALUES [a,b,c]

	Building Width (Length of Truss) including overhang (feet)			
	24	***28***	***32***	***36***
Shear or withdraw (pounds) 20 lb snow load	*3360*	*3920*	*4480*	*5040*
Number of Bolts, 20 lb roof snow load	*2*	*2*	*2*	*3*
Shear or withdraw (pounds) 30 lb roof snow load	*4320*	*5040*	*5760*	*6480*
Number of Bolts, 30 lb roof snow load	*2*	*3*	*3*	*3*

a. *Based upon truss loads of 20 or 30 PSF live or snow load top chord, 10 PSF dead load top chord, 5 PSF live load on the bottom chord and no live load on the bottom chord.*
b. *Based upon post spacing at intervals not exceeding 8 feet.*
c. *When beams are attached at each side of the column and fasteners do not extend through both beams such*

as through-bolts, the required values are one-half the amount shown above for each beam.

328.5 Roof purlins. *Roof purlins shall be a minimum of 4x2 SPF#2 laid flat for spans up to 4 feet, and 4x2 SPF#2 laid on edge for spans up to 8 feet. Roof purlins shall be spaced not more than 24 inches on center.*

328.6 Knee bracing: *A 2x6 brace shall extend from the post to the top chord of the truss or rafter adjacent to the post at a 45 degree angle. The vertical distance down from the bottom chord of the truss or ceiling joist to the point where the brace attaches to the posts shall be in compliance with Table 328.6 as shown on Figure 328. Trusses or rafters must be spaced such that they align with the post intervals. Attachment of knee brace shall be per Table 328.7.*

TABLE 328.6
KNEE BRACE VERTICAL DISTANCE.

Wall Height	***Vertical Dimension***
8'-0" and 9'-0"	*1'-6"*
10'-0" and 11'-0"	*2'-0"*
12'-0" and 13'-0"	*3'-0"*
14'-0" through 16'-0"	*4'-0"*

328.7 Attachment details. *Structural fastener details for post and frame buildings shall comply with Table 328.7.*

TABLE 328.7
STRUCTURAL FASTENERS

Fastener Schedule for Structural Members		
Description of Building Element	***Number and Type of Fastener***	***Attachment type***
Uplift blocking to post	*5-16d Hot Dipped Galvanized*	*Each block*
Skirt board to post	*2-16d Hot Dipped Galvanized*	*Face nail*
Wall girt to post	*2-16d Hot Dipped Galvanized*	*Face nail*
Diagonal cross bracing to post	*2-16d Hot Dipped Galvanized*	*Face nail*
Diagonal cross bracing to skirt board	*2-10d Hot Dipped Galvanized*	*Face nail*
Diagonal cross bracing to wall girts, beam, or header	*2-10d*	*Face nail*
Knee brace to post	*3-16d Hot Dipped Galvanized*	*Face nail*
Knee brace to top chord of truss or rafter	*3-10d*	*Face nail*
Knee brace to bottom chord of truss or ceiling joist	*3-10d*	*Face nail*
Roof purlin to truss or rafter with span of 2' or 4'	*2-16d*	*Face nail*
Roof purlin to truss or rafter with span of 8'	*Mechanical fastener with uplift protection greater than 225 pounds.*	*Per manufacturer installation manual*

328.8 Roof trusses. *Engineered roof trusses, where used, shall be accompanied by*

drawings sealed by the registered design professional responsible for their preparation and shall be submitted to the residential building official for approval prior to the framing inspection. The truss design shall comply with Sections 802.10 and 802.11 and shall account for all loads imposed on the truss as a result of the prescriptive requirements of this section.

Replaces:	4101:8-3-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	05/27/2006, 01/01/2013, 07/01/2014, 01/01/2016

4101:8-4-01 Foundations.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 401
GENERAL

401.1 Application. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of the foundation and foundation spaces for buildings. In addition to the provisions of this chapter, the design and construction of foundations in flood hazard areas as established by Table 301.2(1) shall meet the provisions of Section 322. Wood foundations shall be designed and installed in accordance with AWC PWF.

Exception: The provisions of this chapter shall be permitted to be used for wood foundations only in the following situations:

1. In buildings that have not more than two floors and a roof.
2. Where interior basement and foundation walls are constructed at intervals not exceeding 50 feet (15 240 mm).

401.2 Requirements. Foundation construction shall be capable of accommodating all loads in accordance with Section R301 and of transmitting the resulting loads to the supporting soil. Fill soils that support footings and foundations shall be designed, installed and tested in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

401.3 Drainage. Surface drainage shall be diverted to a storm sewer conveyance or other approved point of collection that does not create a hazard. Lots shall be graded to drain surface water away from foundation walls. The grade shall fall not fewer than 6 inches (152 mm) within the first 10 feet (3048 mm).

Exception: Where lot lines, walls, slopes or other physical barriers prohibit 6 inches (152 mm) of fall within 10 feet (3048 mm), drains or swales shall be constructed to ensure drainage away from the structure. Impervious surfaces within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the building foundation shall be sloped not less than 2 percent away from the building.

401.4 Soil tests. Where quantifiable data created by accepted soil science methodologies indicate expansive soils, compressible soils, shifting soils or other

questionable soil characteristics are likely to be present, the building official *may* determine whether to require a soil test to determine the soil's characteristics at a particular location. This test shall be done by an approved agency using an approved method.

401.4.1 Geotechnical evaluation. In lieu of a complete geotechnical evaluation, the load-bearing values in Table 401.4.1 shall be assumed.

TABLE 401.4.1
PRESUMPTIVE LOAD-BEARING VALUES OF FOUNDATION MATERIALS [a]

CLASS OF MATERIAL	LOAD-BEARINGPRESSURE (pounds per square foot)
Crystalline bedrock	12,000
Sedimentary and foliated rock	4,000
Sandy gravel and/or gravel (GW and GP)	3,000
Sand, silty sand, clayey sand, silty gravel and clayey gravel (SW, SP, SM, SC, GM and GC)	2,000
Clay, sandy, silty clay, clayey silt, silt and sandy siltclay (CL, ML, MH and CH)	1,500[b]

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Where soil tests are required by Section 401.4, the allowable bearing capacities of the soil shall be part of the recommendations.

b. Where the building official determines that in-place soils with an allowable bearing capacity of less than 1,500 psf are likely to be present at the site, the allowable bearing capacity shall be determined by a soils investigation.

401.4.2 Controlled low-strength material (CLSM). *Where footings will bear on controlled low-strength material (CLSM), the CLSM shall comply with the provisions of an approved report. The report shall contain the following:*

1. *Specifications for the preparation of the site prior to placement of CLSM.*
2. *Specifications for the CLSM.*
3. *Laboratory or field test method(s) to be used to determine the compressive strength or bearing capacity of the CLSM.*
4. *Test methods for determining the acceptance of the CLSM in the field.*
5. *Number and frequency of field tests required to determine compliance with Item 4.*

401.4.3 Compressible or shifting soil. Instead of a complete geotechnical evaluation, where top or subsoils are compressible or shifting, they shall be removed to a depth and width sufficient to ensure stable moisture content in each active zone and shall not be used as fill or stabilized within each active zone by chemical, dewatering or presaturation.

SECTION 402
MATERIALS

402.1 Wood foundations. Wood foundation systems shall be designed and

installed in accordance with the provisions of this code.

402.1.1 Fasteners. Fasteners used below grade to attach plywood to the exterior side of exterior basement or crawl-space wall studs, or fasteners used in knee wall construction, shall be of Type 304 or 316 stainless steel. Fasteners used above grade to attach plywood and all lumber-to-lumber fasteners except those used in knee wall construction shall be of Type 304 or 316 stainless steel, silicon bronze, copper, hot-dipped galvanized (zinc coated) steel nails, or hot-tumbled galvanized (zinc coated) steel nails. Electro-galvanized steel nails and galvanized (zinc coated) steel staples shall not be permitted.

402.1.2 Wood treatment. Lumber and plywood shall be pressure-preservative treated and dried after treatment in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Special Requirement 4.2), and shall bear the label of an accredited agency. Where lumber or plywood is cut or drilled after treatment, the treated surface shall be field treated with copper naphthenate, the concentration of which shall contain not less than 2-percent copper metal, by repeated brushing, dipping or soaking until the wood cannot absorb more preservative.

402.2 Concrete. Concrete shall have a minimum specified compressive strength of f'_c, as shown in Table 402.2. Concrete subject to moderate or severe weathering as indicated in Table 301.2(1) shall be air entrained as specified in Table 402.2. The maximum weight of fly ash, other pozzolans, silica fume, slag or blended cements that is included in concrete mixtures for garage floor slabs and for exterior porches, carport slabs and steps that will be exposed to deicing chemicals shall not exceed the percentages of the total weight of cementitious materials specified in Section 19.3.3.4 of ACI 318. Materials used to produce concrete and testing thereof shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Chapters 19 and 20 of ACI 318 or ACI 332.

402.2.1 Materials for concrete. Materials for concrete shall comply with the requirements of Section 608.5.1.

TABLE 402.2
MINIMUM SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF CONCRETE

TYPE OR LOCATION OF CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH [a] (f'_c)		
	Weathering Potential [b]		
	Negligible	Moderate	Severe
Basement walls, foundations and other concrete not exposed to the weather	2,500	2,500	2,500 [c]
Basement slabs and interior slabs on grade, except garage floor slabs	2,500	2,500	2,500 [c]

TYPE OR LOCATION OF CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH [a] (f'_c)		
	Weathering Potential [b]		
	Negligible	Moderate	Severe
Basement walls, foundation walls, exterior walls and other vertical concrete work exposed to the weather	2,500	3,000 [d]	3,000 [d]
Porches, carport slabs and steps exposed to the weather, and garage floor slabs	2,500	3,000 [d, e, f]	3,500 [d, e, f]

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Strength at 28 days psi.
b. See Table 301.2(1) for weathering potential.
c. Concrete in these locations that is subject to freezing and thawing during construction shall be air-entrained concrete in accordance with Footnote d.
d. Concrete shall be air-entrained. Total air content (percent by volume of concrete) shall be not less than 5 percent or more than 7 percent.
e. See Section 402.2 for maximum cementitious materials content.
f. For garage floors with a steel-troweled finish, reduction of the total air content (percent by volume of concrete) to not less than 3 percent is permitted if the specified compressive strength of the concrete is increased to not less than 4,000 psi.

402.3 Precast concrete. Precast concrete foundations shall be designed in accordance with Section 404.5 and shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this code and the manufacturer's instructions.

402.3.1 Precast concrete foundation materials. Materials used to produce precast concrete foundations shall meet the following requirements.

1. All concrete used in the manufacture of precast concrete foundations shall have a minimum compressive strength of 5,000 psi (34 470 kPa) at 28 days. Concrete exposed to a freezing and thawing environment shall be air entrained with a minimum total air content of 5 percent.
2. Structural reinforcing steel shall meet the requirements of ASTM A615, A706 or A996. The minimum yield strength of reinforcing steel shall be 40,000 psi (Grade 40) (276 MPa). Steel reinforcement for pre- cast concrete foundation walls shall have a minimum concrete cover of $^3/_4$-inch (19.1 mm).
3. Panel-to-panel connections shall be made with Grade II steel fasteners.
4. The use of nonstructural fibers shall conform to ASTM C1116.
5. Grout used for bedding precast foundations placed on concrete footings shall meet ASTM C1107.

402.4 Masonry. Masonry systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with this chapter and shall have a minimum specified compressive strength of 1,500 psi (10.3 MPa).

SECTION 403

FOOTINGS

403.1 General. All exterior walls shall be supported on continuous solid or fully grouted masonry or concrete footings, crushed stone footings, wood foundations, or other approved structural systems that shall be of sufficient design to accommodate all loads according to Section 301 and to transmit the resulting loads to the soil within the limitations as determined from the character of the soil. Footings shall be supported on undisturbed natural soils or engineered fill. Concrete footing shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Section 403 or in accordance with ACI 332.

403.1.1 Minimum size. The minimum width, *W*, and thickness, *T*, for concrete footings shall be in accordance with Tables 403.1(1) through 403.1(3) and Figure 403.1(1) or 403.1.3, as applicable. The footing width shall be based on the load-bearing value of the soil in accordance with Table 401.4.1. Footing projections, *P*, shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) and shall not exceed the thickness of the footing. Footing thickness and projection for fireplaces shall be in accordance with Section 1001.2. The size of footings supporting piers and columns shall be based on the tributary load and allowable soil pressure in accordance with Table 401.4.1. Footings for wood foundations shall be in accordance with the details set forth in Section 403.2, and Figures 403.1(2) and 403.1(3). Footings for precast foundations shall be in accordance with the details set forth in Section 403.4, Table 403.4, and Figures 403.4(1) and 403.4(2).

TABLE 403.1(1)
MINIMUM WIDTH AND THICKNESS FOR CONCRETE FOOTINGS FOR LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION (inches) [a, b]

SNOW LOAD OR ROOF LIVE LOAD	STORY AND TYPE OF STRUCTURE WITH LIGHT FRAME	LOAD-BEARING VALUE OF SOIL (psf)					
		1500	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000
20 psf	1 story—slab-on-grade	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—with crawl space	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—plus basement	18 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—slab-on-grade	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—with crawl space	16 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—plus basement	22 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—slab-on-grade	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—with crawl space	19 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—plus basement	25 x 8	19 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
30 psf	1 story—slab-on-grade	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—with crawl space	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—plus basement	19 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—slab-on-grade	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—with crawl space	17 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—plus basement	23 x 6	17 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—slab-on-grade	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—with crawl space	20 x 6	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—plus basement	26 x 8	20 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
50 psf	1 story—slab-on-grade	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—with crawl space	16 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—plus basement	21 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—slab-on-grade	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—with crawl space	19 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—plus basement	25 x 7	19 x 6	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—slab-on-grade	17 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—with crawl space	22 x 6	17 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—plus basement	28 x 9	21 x 6	17 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
70 psf	1 story—slab-on-grade	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—with crawl space	18 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—plus basement	24 x 7	18 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—slab-on-grade	16 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—with crawl space	21 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—plus basement	27 x 9	20 x 6	16 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—slab-on-grade	19 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—with crawl space	25 x 7	18 x 6	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—plus basement	30 x 10	23 x 6	18 x 6	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 plf = 14.6 N/m, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2.

a. Interpolation allowed. Extrapolation is not allowed.

b. Based on 32-foot-wide house with load-bearing center wall that carries half of the tributary attic, and floor framing. For every 2 feet of adjustment to the width of the house, add or subtract 2 inches of footing width and 1 inch of footing thickness (but not less than 6 inches thick).

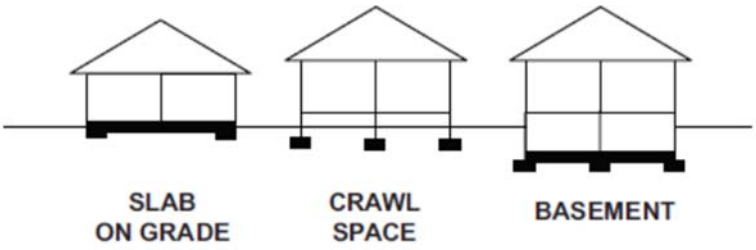


TABLE 403.1(2)
MINIMUM WIDTH AND THICKNESS FOR CONCRETE FOOTINGS FOR LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION WITH BRICK VENEER (inches) [a, b]

SNOW LOAD OR ROOF LIVE	STORY AND TYPE OF STRUCTURE WITH BRICK VENEER	LOAD-BEARING VALUE OF SOIL (psf)					
		1500	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000
20 psf	1 story—slab-on-grade	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—with crawl space	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—plus basement	21 x 6	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—slab-on-grade	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—with crawl space	20 x 6	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—plus basement	26 x 8	20 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—slab-on-grade	20 x 6	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—with crawl space	26 x 8	19 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—plus basement	32 x 11	24 x 7	19 x 6	16 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6
30 psf	1 story—slab-on-grade	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—with crawl space	16 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—plus basement	22 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—slab-on-grade	16 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—with crawl space	22 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—plus basement	27 x 9	21 x 6	16 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—slab-on-grade	21 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—with crawl space	27 x 8	20 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—plus basement	33 x 11	24 x 7	20 x 6	16 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6
50 psf	1 story—slab-on-grade	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—with crawl space	18 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—plus basement	24 x 7	18 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—slab-on-grade	18 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—with crawl space	24 x 7	18 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—plus basement	29 x 10	22 x 6	18 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—slab-on-grade	27 x 7	18 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—with crawl space	29 x 9	22 x 6	17 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—plus basement	35 x 12	26 x 8	21 x 6	17 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6
70 psf	1 story—slab-on-grade	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—with crawl space	20 x 6	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—plus basement	26 x 8	20 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—slab-on grade	20 x 6	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—with crawl space	26 x 8	19 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—plus basement	32 x 11	24 x 7	19 x 6	16 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—slab-on-grade	26 x 8	19 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—with crawl space	31 x 11	23 x 7	19 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—plus basement	37 x 13	28 x 9	22 x 6	18 x 6	16 x 6	14 x 6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 plf = 14.6 N/m, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2.

a. Interpolation allowed. Extrapolation is not allowed.

b. Based on 32-foot-wide house with load-bearing center wall that carries half of the tributary attic, and floor framing. For every 2 feet of adjustment to the width of the house, add or subtract 2 inches of footing width and 1 inch of footing thickness (but not less than 6 inches thick).

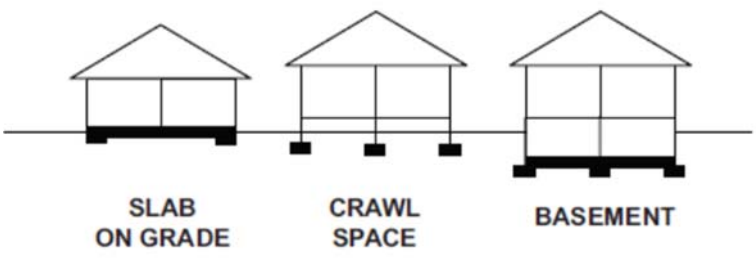


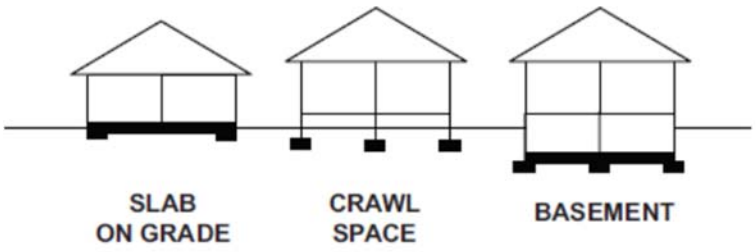
TABLE 403.1(3)
MINIMUM WIDTH AND THICKNESS FOR CONCRETE FOOTINGS
WITH CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE OR FULLY GROUTED MASONRY WALL CONSTRUCTION (inches)[a, b]

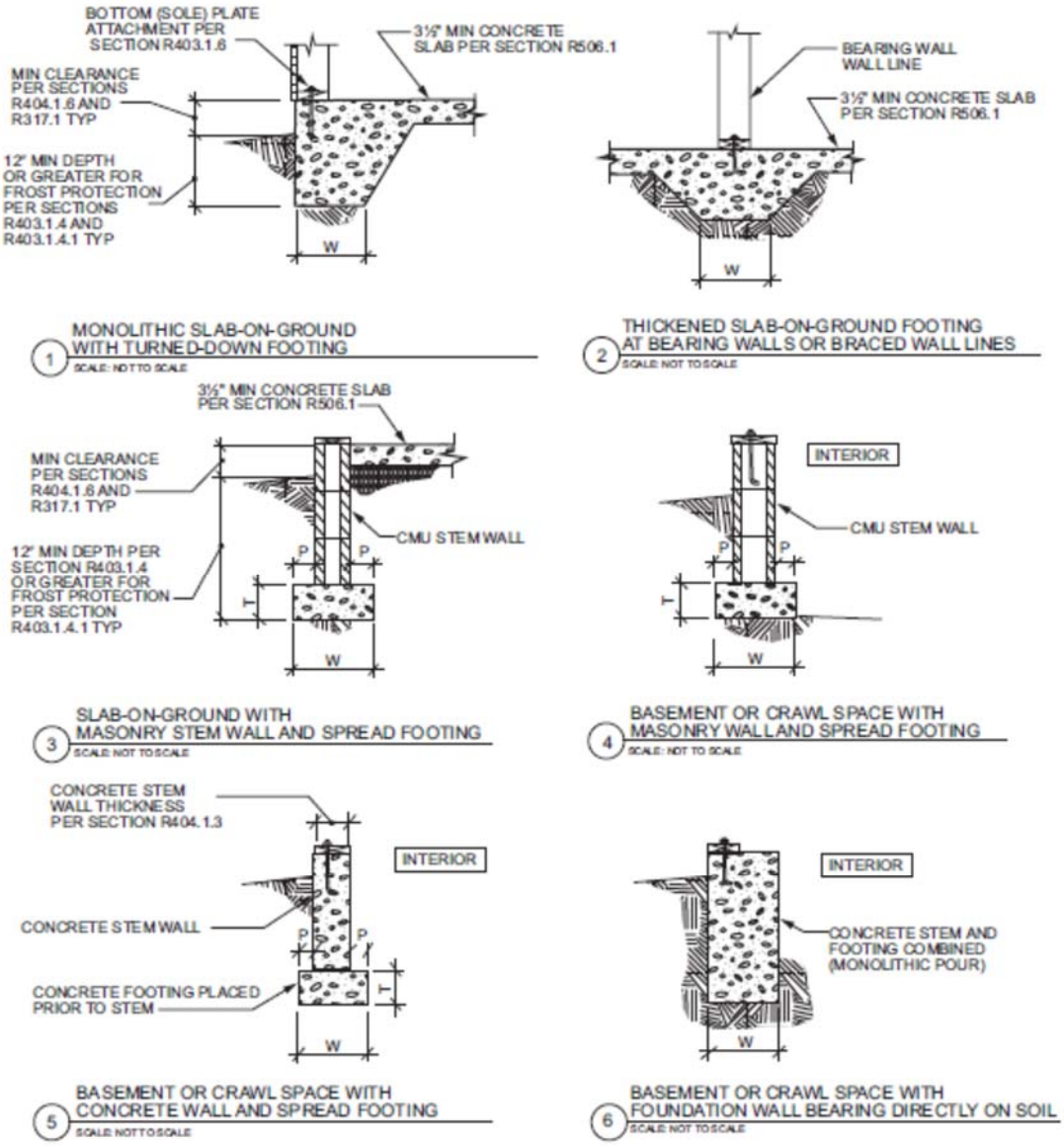
SNOW LOAD OR ROOF LIVE LOAD	STORY AND TYPE OF STRUCTURE WITH CMU	LOAD-BEARING VALUE OF SOIL (psf)					
		1500	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000
20 psf	1 story—slab-on-grade	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—with crawl space	19 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—plus basement	25 x 8	19 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—slab-on-grade	23 x 7	18 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—with crawl space	29 x 9	22 x 6	17 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—plus basement	35 x 12	26 x 8	21 x 6	17 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6
	3 story—slab-on-grade	32 x 11	24 x 7	19 x 6	16 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—with crawl space	38 x 14	28 x 9	23 x 6	19 x 6	16 x 6	14 x 6
	3 story—plus basement	43 x 17	33 x 11	26 x 8	22 x 6	19 x 6	16 x 6
30 psf	1 story—slab-on-grade	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—with crawl space	20 x 6	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—plus basement	26 x 8	20 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—slab-on-grade	24 x 7	18 x 6	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—with crawl space	30 x 10	22 x 6	18 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—plus basement	36 x 13	27 x 8	21 □ 6	18 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6
	3 story—slab-on-grade	33 x 12	25 x 7	20 x 6	17 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6
	3 story—with crawl space	39 x 14	29 x 9	23 x 7	19 x 6	17 x 6	14 x 6
	3 story—plus basement	44 x 17	33 x 12	27x 8	22 x 6	19 x 6	17 x 6
50 psf	1 story—slab-on-grade	17 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—with crawl space	22 x 6	17 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—plus basement	28x 9	21 x 6	17 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—slab-on-grade	27 x 8	20 x 6	16 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—with crawl space	32 x 11	24 x 7	19 x 6	16 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—plus basement	38 x 14	28 x 9	23 x 6	19 x 6	16 x 6	14 x 6
	3 story—slab-on-grade	35 x 13	27 x 8	21 x 6	18 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6
	3 story—with crawl space	41 x 15	31 x 10	24 x 7	20 x 6	17 x 6	15 x 6
	3 story—plus basement	47 x 18	35 x 12	28 x 9	23 x 7	20 x 6	17 x 6
70 psf	1 story—slab-on-grade	19 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—with crawl space	25 x 7	18 x 6	15 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	1 story—plus basement	30 x 10	23 x 6	18 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—slab-on-grade	29 x 9	22 x 6	17 x 6	14 x 6	12 x 6	12 x 6
	2 story—with crawl space	34 x 12	26 x 8	21 x 6	17 x 6	15 x 6	13 x 6
	2 story—plus basement	40 x 15	30 x 10	24 x 7	20 x 6	17 x 6	15 x 6
	3 story—slab-on-grade	38 x 14	28 x 9	23 x 6	19 x 6	16 x 6	14 x 6
	3 story—with crawl space	43 x 16	32 x 11	26 x 8	21 x 6	18 x 6	16 x 6
	3 story—plus basement	49 x 19	37 x 13	29 x 10	24 x 7	21 x 6	18 x 6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 plf = 14.6 N/m, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2.

a. Interpolation allowed. Extrapolation is not allowed.

b. Based on 32-foot-wide house with load-bearing center wall that carries half of the tributary attic, and floor framing. For every 2 feet of adjustment to the width of the house add or subtract 2 inches of footing width and 1 inch of footing thickness (but not less than 6 inches thick).





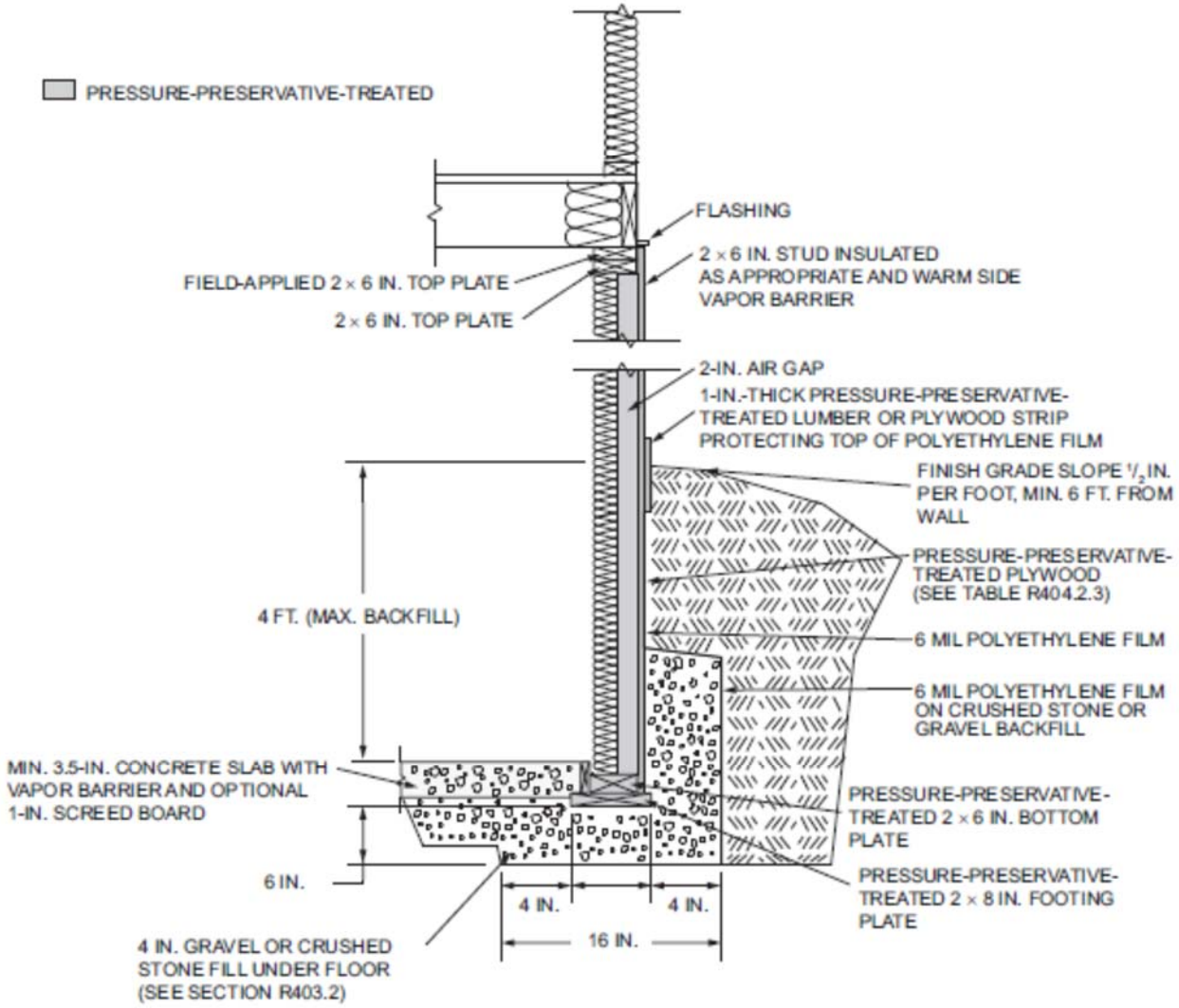
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

W = Width of footing, *T* = Thickness of footing and *P* = Projection per Section 403.1.1

NOTES:

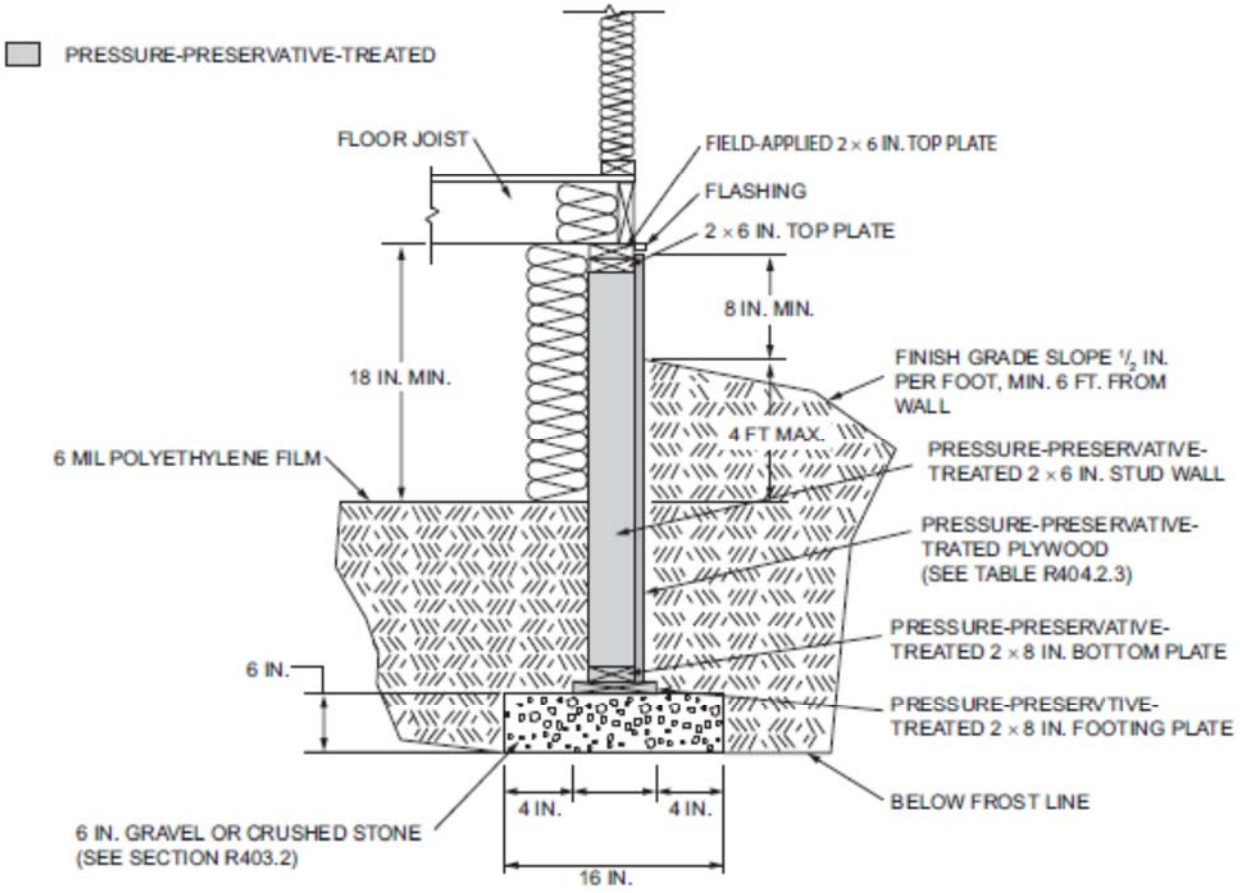
a. See Section 404.3 for sill requirements.
b. See Section 403.1.6 for sill attachment.
c. See Section 506.2.3 for vapor barrier requirements.
d. See Section 403.1 for base.
e. *Deleted*
f. See Section 408 for under-floor ventilation and access requirements.

FIGURE 403.1(1)
PLAIN CONCRETE FOOTINGS WITH MASONRY AND CONCRETE STEM WALLS IN SDC A, B and C [a, b, c, d, e, f]



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254.

FIGURE 403.1(2)
PERMANENT WOOD FOUNDATION BASEMENT WALL SECTION



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

FIGURE 403.1(3)
PERMANENT WOOD FOUNDATION CRAWL SPACE SECTION

403.1.2 Continuous footing in Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2. *Deleted*

403.1.3 Footing and stem wall reinforcing in Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1, and D_2. *Deleted*

403.1.3.1 Concrete stem walls with concrete footings. *Deleted*

403.1.3.2 Masonry stem walls with concrete footings. *Deleted*

403.1.3.3 Slabs-on-ground with turned-down footings. *Deleted*

403.1.3.4 Interior bearing and braced wall panel (1219 mm) footings in Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2. *Deleted*

403.1.3.5 Reinforcement. *Deleted*

403.1.3.5.1 Steel reinforcement. *Deleted*

403.1.3.5.2 Location of reinforcement in wall. *Deleted*

403.1.3.5.3 Support and cover. *Deleted*

403.1.3.5.4 Lap splices. *Deleted*

403.1.3.6 Isolated concrete footings. *Deleted*

Deleted figure

FIGURE 403.1.3
REINFORCED CONCRETE FOOTINGS AND
MASONRY AND CONCRETE STEM WALLS IN SDC D_0, D_1 AND D_2 [a, b, c, d, e, f]

403.1.4 Minimum depth. Exterior footings shall be placed not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below the undisturbed ground surface. Where applicable, the depth of footings shall also conform to Sections 403.1.4.1.

403.1.4.1 Frost protection. Except where otherwise protected from frost, foundation walls, piers and other permanent supports of buildings and structures shall be protected from frost by one or more of the following methods:

1. Extended below the frost line specified in Table 301.2(1).
2. Constructed in accordance with Section 403.3.
3. Constructed in accordance with ASCE 32.
4. Erected on solid rock.

Footings shall not bear on frozen soil unless the frozen condition is permanent that extend below the frost line.

Exceptions:

1. *Deleted*
2. *Deleted*
3. Decks not supported by a dwelling need not be provided with footings that extend below the frost line.

403.1.5 Slope. The top surface of footings shall be level. The bottom surface of footings shall not have a slope exceeding one unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope). Footings shall be stepped where it is necessary to change the elevation of the top surface of the footings or where the slope of the bottom surface of the footings will exceed one unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope).

403.1.6 Foundation anchorage. Wood sill plates and wood walls supported directly on continuous foundations shall be anchored to the foundation in accordance with this section.

Cold-formed steel framing shall be anchored directly to the foundation or fastened to wood sill plates in accordance with Section 505.3.1 or 603.3.1, as applicable. Wood sill plates supporting cold-formed steel framing shall be anchored to the foundation in accordance with this section.

Wood sole plates at all exterior walls on monolithic slabs, wood sole plates of braced wall panels at building interiors on monolithic slabs and all wood sill plates shall be anchored to the foundation with minimum $^1/_2$ -inch diameter (12.7 mm) anchor bolts spaced not greater than 6 feet (1829 mm) on center or approved anchors or anchor straps spaced as required to provide equivalent anchorage to $^1/_2$ -inch diameter (12.7 mm) anchor bolts. Bolts shall extend not less than 7 inches (178 mm) into concrete or grouted cells of concrete masonry units. A nut and washer shall be tightened on each anchor bolt. There shall be not fewer than two bolts per plate section with one bolt located not more than 12 inches (305 mm) or less than seven bolt diameters from each end of the plate section. Interior bearing wall sole plates on monolithic slab foundation that are not part of a braced wall panel shall be positively anchored with approved fasteners. Sill plates and sole plates shall be protected against decay and termites where required by Sections 317 and 318.

Exceptions:

1. Walls 24 inches (610 mm) total length or shorter connecting offset braced wall panels shall be anchored to the foundation with not fewer than one anchor bolt located in the center third of the plate section and shall be attached to adjacent braced wall panels at corners as shown in Item 9 of Table 602.3(1).

2. Connection of walls 12 inches (305 mm) total length or shorter connecting offset braced wall panels to the foundation without anchor bolts shall be permitted. The wall shall be attached to adjacent braced wall panels at corners as shown in Item 9 of Table 602.3(1).

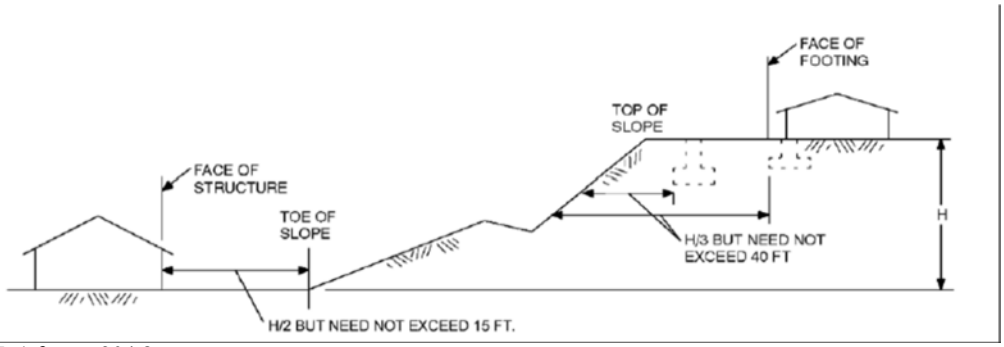
403.1.6.1 Foundation anchorage in Seismic Design Categories *C*. In addition to the requirements of Section 403.1.6, the following requirements shall apply to wood light-frame *dwellings with four or more dwelling units* in Seismic Design Categories *C*:

1. Plate washers conforming to Section 602.11.1 shall be provided for all anchor bolts over the full length of required braced wall lines except where approved anchor straps are used. Properly sized cut washers shall be permitted for anchor bolts in wall lines not containing braced wall panels.
2. Interior braced wall plates shall have anchor bolts spaced at not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) on center and located within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ends of each plate section where supported on a continuous foundation.
3. Interior bearing wall sole plates shall have anchor bolts spaced at not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) on center and located within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ends of each plate section where supported on a continuous foundation.
4. The maximum anchor bolt spacing shall be 4 feet (1219 mm) for buildings over two stories in height.
5. Stepped cripple walls shall conform to Section 602.11.2.
6. Where continuous wood foundations in accordance with Section 404.2 are used, the force transfer shall have a capacity equal to or greater than the connections required by Section 602.11.1 or the braced wall panel shall be connected to the wood foundations in accordance with the braced wall panel-to-floor fastening requirements of Table 602.3(1).

403.1.7 Footings on or adjacent to slopes. The placement of buildings and structures on or adjacent to slopes steeper than one unit vertical in three units horizontal (33.3-percent slope) shall conform to Sections 403.1.7.1 through 403.1.7.4.

403.1.7.1 Building clearances from ascending slopes. In general, buildings below slopes shall be set a sufficient distance from the slope to provide protection from slope drainage, erosion and shallow failures.

Except as provided in Section 403.1.7.4 and Figure 403.1.7.1, the following criteria will be assumed to provide this protection. Where the existing slope is steeper than one unit vertical in one unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the toe of the slope shall be assumed to be at the intersection of a horizontal plane drawn from the top of the foundation and a plane drawn tangent to the slope at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal. Where a retaining wall is constructed at the toe of the slope, the height of the slope shall be measured from the top of the wall to the top of the slope.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 403.1.7.1
FOUNDATION CLEARANCE FROM SLOPES

403.1.7.2 Footing setback from descending slope surfaces. Footings on or adjacent to slope surfaces shall be founded in material with an embedment and setback from the slope surface sufficient to provide vertical and lateral support for the footing without detrimental settlement. Except as provided for in Section 403.1.7.4 and Figure 403.1.7.1, the following setback is deemed adequate to meet the criteria. Where the slope is steeper than one unit vertical in one unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the required setback shall be measured from an imaginary plane 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal, projected upward from the toe of the slope.

403.1.7.3 Foundation elevation. On graded sites, the top of any exterior foundation shall extend above the elevation of the street gutter at point of discharge or the inlet of an approved drainage device not less than 12 inches (305 mm) plus 2 percent. Alternate elevations are permitted subject to the approval of the building official, provided that it can be demonstrated that required drainage to the point of discharge and away from the structure is provided at all locations on the site.

403.1.7.4 Alternate setbacks and clearances. Alternate setbacks and

clearances are permitted, subject to the approval of the building official. The building official is permitted to require an investigation and recommendation of a qualified engineer to demonstrate that the intent of this section has been satisfied. Such an investigation shall include consideration of material, height of slope, slope gradient, load intensity and erosion characteristics of slope material.

403.1.8 Foundations on expansive soils. Foundation and floor slabs for buildings located on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with Section 1808.6 of the *Ohio building code*.

Exception: Slab-on-ground and other foundation systems that have performed adequately in soil conditions similar to those encountered at the building site are permitted subject to the approval of the building official.

403.1.8.1 Expansive soils classifications. Soils meeting all of the following provisions shall be considered to be expansive, except that tests to show compliance with Items 1, 2 and 3 shall not be required if the test prescribed in Item 4 is conducted:

1. Plasticity Index (*PI*) of 15 or greater, determined in accordance with ASTM D4318.
2. More than 10 percent of the soil particles pass a No. 200 sieve (75 µm), determined in accordance with ASTM D422.
3. More than 10 percent of the soil particles are less than 5 micrometers in size, determined in accordance with ASTM D422.
4. Expansion Index greater than 20, determined in accordance with ASTM D4829.

403.2 Footings for wood foundations. Footings for wood foundations shall be in accordance with Figures 403.1(2) and 403.1(3). Gravel shall be washed and well graded. The maximum size stone shall not exceed $^{3}/_{4}$ -inch (19.1 mm). Gravel shall be free from organic, clayey or silty soils. Sand shall be coarse, not smaller than $^{1}/_{16}$ -inch (1.6 mm) grains and shall be free from organic, clayey or silty soils. Crushed stone shall have a maximum size of $^{1}/_{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm)

403.3 Frost-protected shallow foundations. For buildings where the monthly mean temperature of the building is maintained at not less than 64°F (18°C), footings are not required to extend below the frost line where protected from frost by insulation in accordance with Figure 403.3(1) and Table 403.3(1). Foundations protected from frost in accordance with Figure 403.3(1) and Table 403.3(1) shall not be used for unheated spaces such as porches, utility rooms, garages and carports, and shall not be attached to basements or crawl spaces that are not

maintained at a minimum monthly mean temperature of 64°F (18°C).

Materials used below grade for the purpose of insulating footings against frost shall be labeled as complying with ASTM C578.

403.3.1 Foundations adjoining frost-protected shallow foundations. Foundations that adjoin frost-protected shallow foundations shall be protected from frost in accordance with Section 403.1.4.

403.3.1.1 Attachment to unheated slab-on-ground structure. Vertical wall insulation and horizontal insulation of frost-protected shallow foundations that adjoin a slab-on-ground foundation that does not have a monthly mean temperature maintained at not less than 64°F (18°C) shall be in accordance with Figure 403.3(3) and Table 403.3(1). Vertical wall insulation shall extend between the frost-protected shallow foundation and the adjoining slab foundation. Required horizontal insulation shall be continuous under the adjoining slab foundation and through any foundation walls adjoining the frost-protected shallow foundation. Where insulation passes through a foundation wall, it shall be either of a type complying with this section and having bearing capacity equal to or greater than the structural loads imposed by the building, or the building shall be designed and constructed using beams, lintels, cantilevers or other means of transferring building loads such that the structural loads of the building do not bear on the insulation.

403.3.1.2 Attachment to heated structure. Where a frost-protected shallow foundation abuts a structure that has a monthly mean temperature maintained at not less than 64°F (18°C), horizontal insulation and vertical wall insulation shall not be required between the frost-protected shallow foundation and the adjoining structure. Where the frost-protected shallow foundation abuts the heated structure, the horizontal insulation and vertical wall insulation shall extend along the adjoining foundation in accordance with Figure 403.3(4) a distance of not less than Dimension A in Table 403.3(1).

Exception: Where the frost-protected shallow foundation abuts the heated structure to form an inside corner, vertical insulation extending along the adjoining foundation is not required.

403.3.2 Protection of horizontal insulation below ground. Horizontal insulation placed less than 12 inches (305 mm) below the ground surface or that portion of horizontal insulation extending outward more than 24 inches (610 mm) from the foundation edge shall be protected against damage by use of a

concrete slab or asphalt paving on the ground surface directly above the insulation or by cementitious board, plywood rated for below-ground use, or other approved materials placed below ground, directly above the top surface of the insulation.

403.3.3 Drainage. Final grade shall be sloped in accordance with Section 401.3. In other than Group I Soils, as detailed in Table 405.1, gravel or crushed stone beneath horizontal insulation below ground shall drain *by gravity or mechanical means into an approved drainage system or other location that complies with the plumbing code.*

403.3.4 Termite protection. The use of foam plastic in areas of "very heavy" termite infestation probability shall be in accordance with Section 318.4.

TABLE 403.3(1)
MINIMUM FOOTING DEPTH AND INSULATION REQUIREMENTS FOR FROST-PROTECTED FOOTINGS IN HEATED BUILDINGS [a]

AIR FREEZING INDEX (°F-days)[b]	MINIMUM FOOTING DEPTH, *D*	VERTICAL INSULATION R-VALUE [c, d]	HORIZONTAL INSULATION R-VALUE [c, e]		HORIZONTAL INSULATION DIMENSIONS PER FIGURE 403.3(1) (inches)		
			Along walls	At corners	A	B	C
1,500 or less	12	4.5	Not required	Not required	Not required	Not required	Not required
2,000	14	5.6	Not required	Not required	Not required	Not required	Not required

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

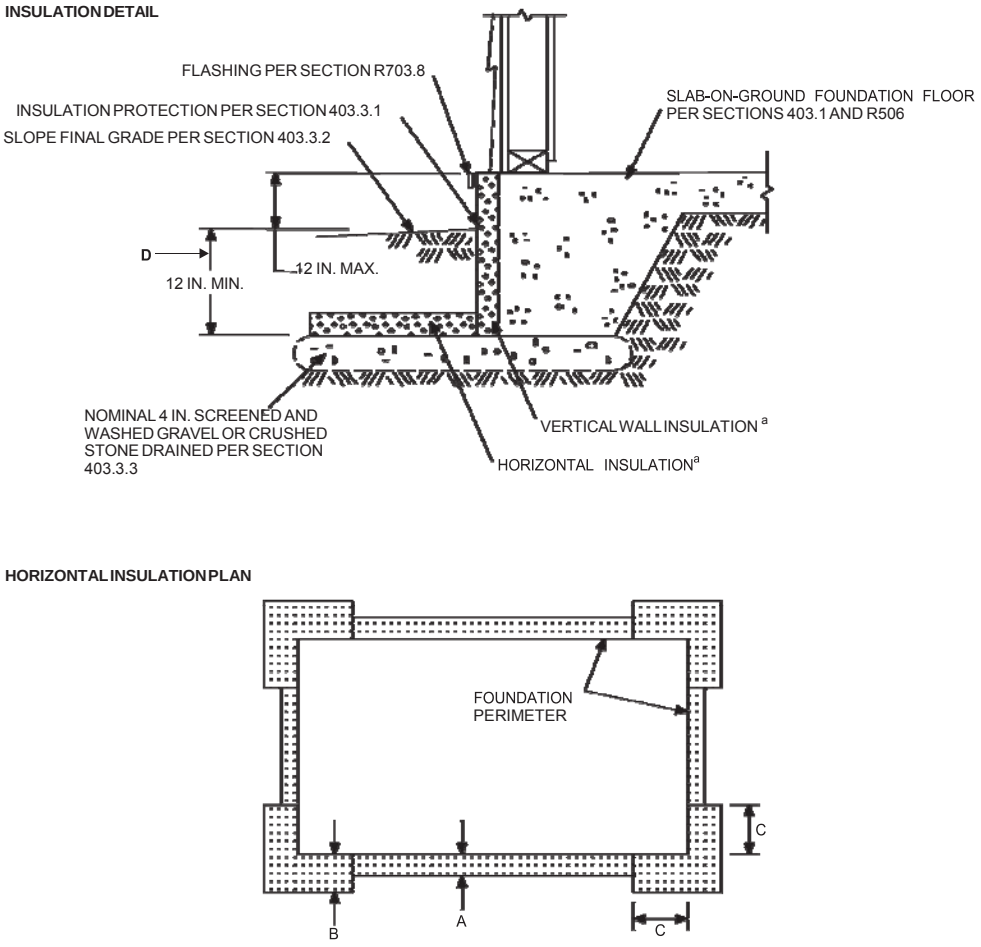
a. Insulation requirements are for protection against frost damage in heated buildings. Greater values could be required to meet energy conservation standards.

b. See Figure 403.3(2) or Table 403.3(2) for Air Freezing Index values.

c. Insulation materials shall provide the stated minimum *R*-values under long-term exposure to moist, below-ground conditions in freezing climates. The following *R*-values shall be used to determine insulation thicknesses required for this application: Type II expanded polystyrene (EPS)-3.2 R per inch for vertical insulation and 2.6 R per inch for horizontal insulation; Type IX expanded polystyrene (EPS)-3.4 R per inch for vertical insulation and 2.8 R per inch for horizontal insulation; Types IV, V, VI, VII, and X extruded polystyrene (XPS)-4.5 R per inch for vertical insulation and 4.0 R per inch for horizontal insulation.

d. Vertical insulation shall be expanded polystyrene insulation or extruded polystyrene insulation.

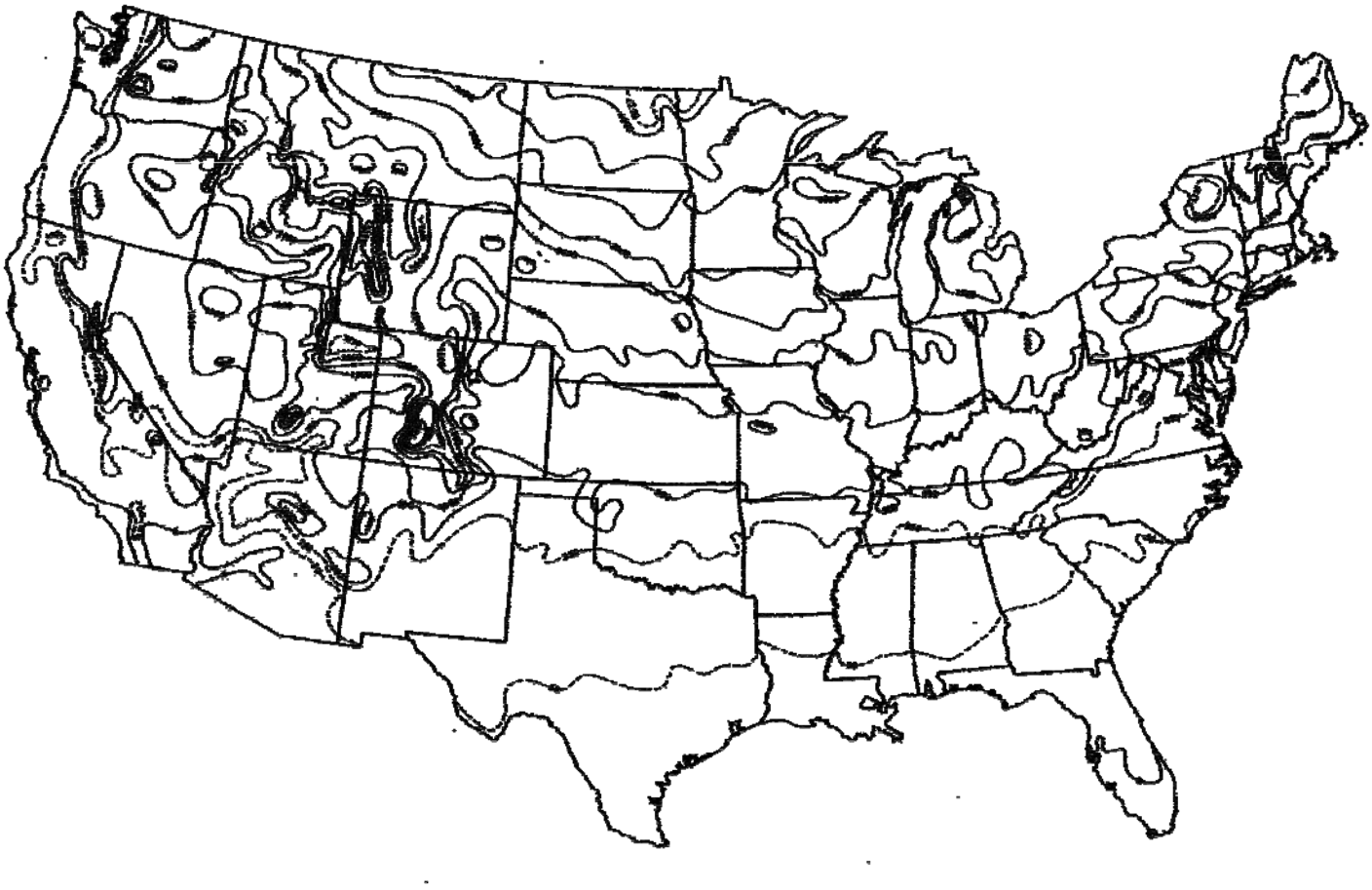
e. Horizontal insulation shall be expanded polystyrene insulation or extruded polystyrene insulation.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. See Table 403.3(1) for required dimensions and *R*-values for vertical and horizontal insulation and minimum footing depth.

FIGURE 403.3(1)
INSULATION PLACEMENT FOR
FROST-PROTECTED FOOTINGS IN HEATED BUILDINGS



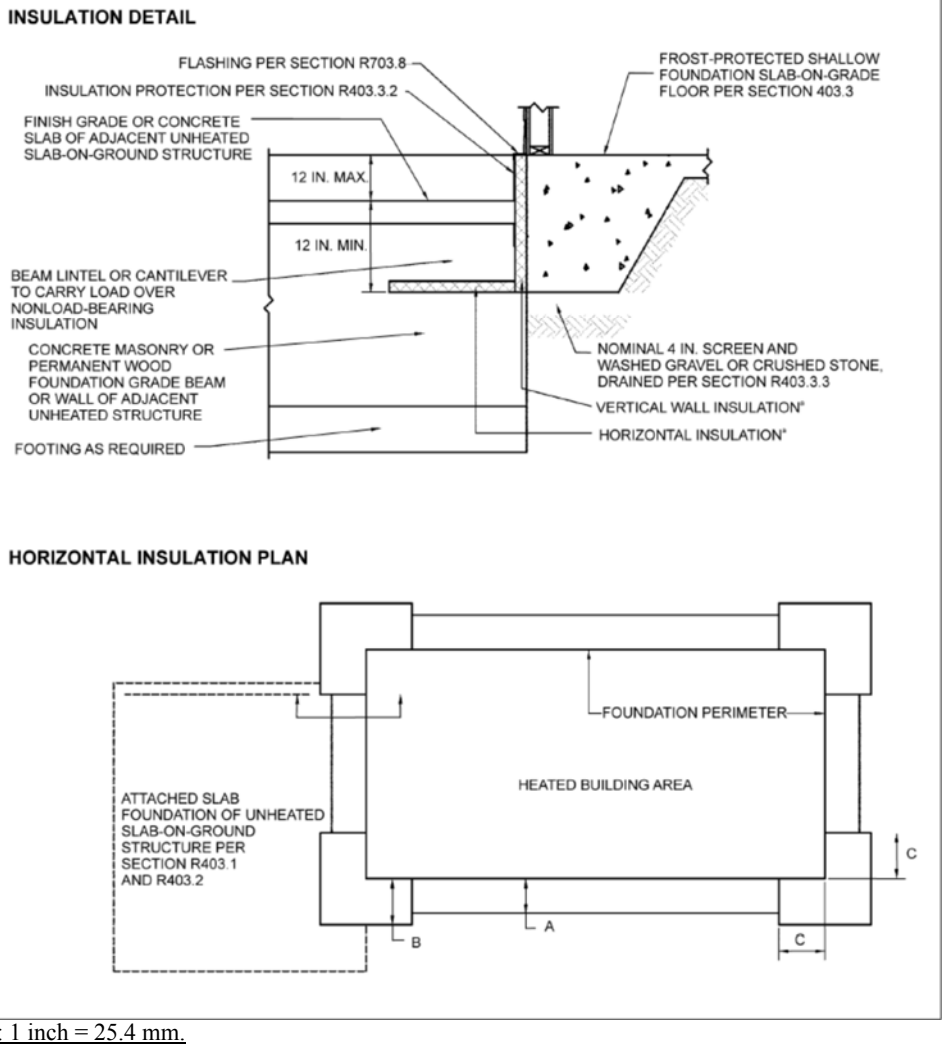
For SI: °C = [(°F) -32]/1.8.

Note: The air-freezing index is defined as cumulative degree days below 32°F. It is used as a measure of the combined magnitude and duration of air temperature below freezing. The index was computed over a 12-month period (July-June) for each of the 3,044 stations used in the above analysis. Dates from the 1951-80 period were fitted to a Weibull probability distribution to produce an estimate of the 100-year return period.

FIGURE 403.3(2)
AIR-FREEZING INDEX AN ESTIMATE OF THE 100-YEAR RETURN PERIOD

TABLE 403.3(2)
AIR-FREEZING INDEX FOR U.S. LOCATIONS BY COUNTY

STATE	AIR-FREEZING INDEX					
	1500 or less	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000
Ohio	All counties not listed	Ashland, Crawford, Defiance, Holmes, Huron, Knox, Licking, Morrow, Paulding, Putnam, Richland, Seneca, Williams	—	—	—	—



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1. See Table 403.3(1) for required dimensions and *R*-values for vertical and horizontal insulation.

FIGURE 403.3(3)
INSULATION PLACEMENT FOR FROST-PROTECTED FOOTINGS ADJACENT TO UNHEATED SLAB-ON-GROUND STRUCTURE

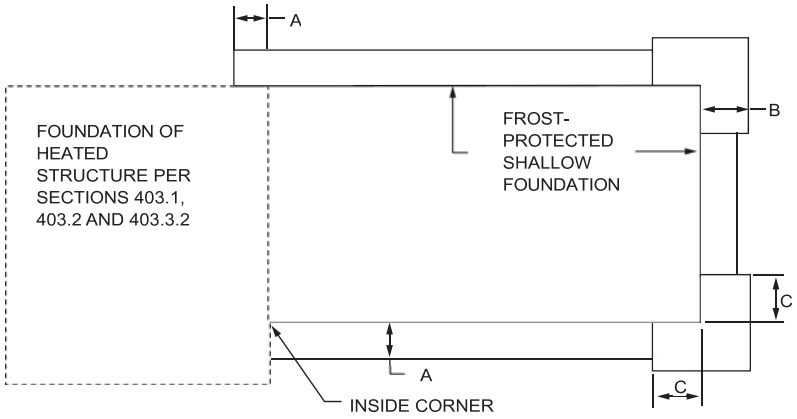


FIGURE 403.3(4)
INSULATION PLACEMENT FOR FROST-PROTECTED FOOTINGS ADJACENT TO HEATED STRUCTURE

TABLE 403.4
MINIMUM DEPTH (*D*) AND WIDTH (*W*) OF CRUSHED STONE FOOTINGS [a, b] (inches)

NUMBER OF STORIES	UNIFORM WALL LOAD	DEPTH (*D*) AND WIDTH (*W*)	LOAD-BEARING VALUE OF SOIL (psf)																	
			1500			2000			2500			3000			3500			4000		
			MH, CH, CL, ML [c]			SC, GC, SM, GM, SP, SW [c]						GP, GW [c]								
			Wall width (inches)			Wall width (inches)			Wall width (inches)			Wall width (inches)			Wall width (inches)			Wall width (inches)		
			8	10	12	8	10	12	8	10	12	8	10	12	8	10	12	8	10	12
Conventional light-frame construction																				
1-story	1100 plf	D	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
		W	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17
2-story	1800 plf	D	6	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
		W	15	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17
3-story	2900 plf	D	14	12	10	9	7	5	6	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
		W	25	24	24	19	19	18	15	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17
4-inch brick veneer over light-frame or 8-inch hollow concrete masonry																				
1-story	1500 plf	D	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
		W	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17
2-story	2700 plf	D	12	11	9	8	6	4	5	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
		W	22	23	23	18	17	17	14	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17
3-story	4000 plf	D	21	20	18	14	13	11	10	8	7	7	6	4	5	4	4	4	4	4
		W	33	34	33	25	26	25	20	20	21	17	17	17	14	15	17	13	15	17
8-inch solid or fully grouted masonry																				
1-story	2000 plf	D	7	6	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
		W	17	17	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17
2-story	3600 plf	D	19	17	15	12	11	9	9	7	5	6	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
		W	30	30	30	22	23	23	19	19	18	15	15	17	13	15	17	13	15	17
3-story	5300 plf	D	30	29	27	21	19	18	16	14	12	12	10	8	9	8	6	7	6	4
		W	43	44	44	33	32	33	27	27	26	22	22	22	19	20	19	17	17	17

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 plf = 14.6 N/m, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2.

a. Linear interpolation of stone depth between wall widths is permitted within each Load-Bearing Value of Soil (psf).

b. Crushed stone must be consolidated in 8-inch lifts with a plate vibrator.

c. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table 4045.1.

403.4 Footings for precast concrete foundations. Footings for precast concrete foundations shall comply with Section 403.4.

403.4.1 Crushed stone footings. Clean crushed stone shall be free from organic, clayey or silty soils. Crushed stone shall be angular in nature and meet ASTM C33, with the maximum size stone not to exceed $^1/_2$ -inch (12.7 mm) and the minimum stone size not to be smaller than $^1/_{16}$ -inch (1.6 mm). Crushed stone footings for precast foundations shall be installed in accordance with Figure 403.4(1) and Table 403.4. Crushed stone footings shall be consolidated using a vibratory plate in not greater than 8-inch (203 mm) lifts. Crushed stone footings shall be limited to Seismic Design Categories A, B and C.

403.4.2 Concrete footings. Concrete footings shall be installed in accordance with Section 403.1 and Figure 403.4(2).

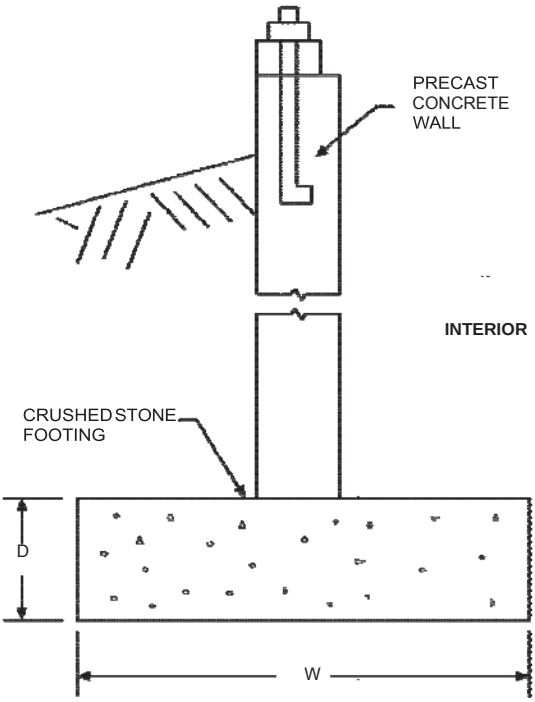


FIGURE 403.4(1)
BASEMENT OR CRAWL SPACE WITH PRECAST FOUNDATION WALL BEARING ON CRUSHED STONE

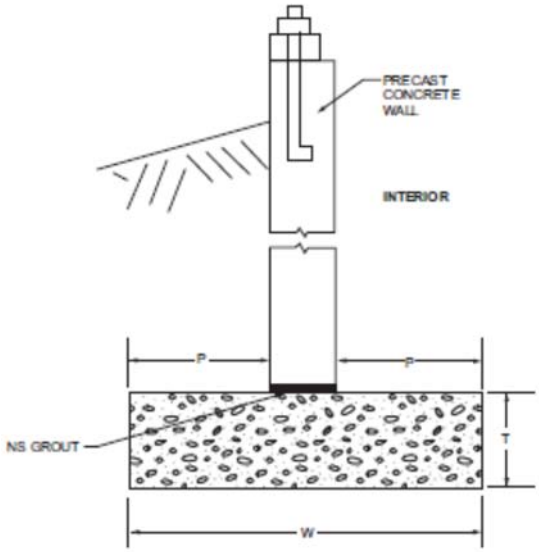


FIGURE 403.4(2)
BASEMENT OR CRAWL SPACE WITH PRECAST FOUNDATION WALL ON SPREAD FOOTING

403.5 Exterior deck footings. *See Section 507 for exterior deck foundation requirements.*

SECTION 404
FOUNDATION AND RETAINING WALLS

404.1 Concrete and masonry foundation walls. Concrete foundation walls shall be selected and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Section 404.1.3. Masonry foundation walls shall be selected and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Section 404.1.2.

404.1.1 Design required. Concrete or masonry foundation walls shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice where either of the following conditions exists:

1. Walls are subject to hydrostatic pressure from ground water.
2. Walls supporting more than 48 inches (1219 mm) of unbalanced backfill that do not have permanent lateral support at the top or bottom.

TABLE 404.1.1(1)
PLAIN MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS [f]

MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT [c] (feet)	PLAIN MASONRY [a] MINIMUM NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches)		
		Soil classes [b]		
		GW, GP, SW and SP	GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML	SC, MH, ML-CL and inorganic CL
5	4	6 solid[d] or 8	6 solid[d] or 8	6 solid[d] or 8
	5	6 solid[d] or 8	8	10
6	4	6 solid[d] or 8	6 solid[d] or 8	6 solid[d] or 8
	5	6 solid[d] or 8	8	10
	6	8	10	12
7	4	6 solid[d] or 8	8	8
	5	6 solid[d] or 8	10	10
	6	10	12	10 solid[d]
	7	12	10 solid[d]	12 solid[d]
8	4	6 solid[d] or 8	6 solid[d] or 8	8
	5	6 solid[d] or 8	10	12
	6	10	12	12 solid[d]
	7	12	12 solid[d]	Footnote e
	8	10 grout[d]	12 grout[d]	Footnote e
9	4	6 grout[d] or 8	6 grout[d] or 8	8 grout[d] or 10
	5	6 grout[d] or 10	8 grout[d] or 12	8 grout[d]
	6	8 grout[d] or 12	10 grout[d]	10 grout[d]
	7	solid[d]	10 grout[d]	12 grout
	8	10 grout[d]	12 grout	Footnote [e]
	9	12 grout	Footnote e	Footnote [e]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 Pa.

a. Mortar shall be Type M or S and masonry shall be laid in running bond. Ungrouted hollow masonry units are permitted except where otherwise indicated.

b. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table 405.1.

c. Unbalanced backfill height is the difference in height between the exterior finish ground level and the lower of the top of the concrete footing that supports the foundation wall or the interior finish ground level. Where an interior concrete slab-on-grade is provided and is in contact with the interior surface of the foundation wall, measurement of the unbalanced backfill height from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the interior concrete slab is permitted.

d. Solid indicates solid masonry unit; grout indicates grouted hollow units.

e. Wall construction shall be in accordance with either Table 404.1.1(2), Table 404.1.1(3), Table 404.1.1(4), or a design shall be provided.

f. The use of this table shall be prohibited for soil classifications not shown.

TABLE 404.1.1(2)
8-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCING WHERE *d* ≥ 5 INCHES [a, c, f]

WALL HEIGHT	HEIGHT OF UNBALANCED BACKFILL[e]	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT AND SPACING (INCHES) [b, c]		
		Soil classes and lateral soil load [d] (psf per foot below grade)		
		GW, GP, SW and SP soils	GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML soils	SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL soils
		30	45	60
6 feet 8 inches	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	5 feet	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	6 feet 8 inches	#4 at 48	#5 at 48	#6 at 48
7 feet 4 inches	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	5 feet	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	6 feet	#4 at 48	#5 at 48	#5 at 48
	7 feet 4 inches	#5 at 48	#6 at 48	#6 at 40
8 feet	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	5 feet	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	6 feet	#4 at 48	#5 at 48	#5 at 48
	7 feet	#5 at 48	#6 at 48	#6 at 40
	8 feet	#5 at 48	#6 at 48	#6 at 32
8 feet 8 inches	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	5 feet	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#5 at 48
	6 feet	#4 at 48	#5 at 48	#6 at 48
	7 feet	#5 at 48	#6 at 48	#6 at 40
	8 feet 8 inches	#6 at 48	#6 at 32	#6 at 24
9 feet 4 inches	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	5 feet	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#5 at 48
	6 feet	#4 at 48	#5 at 48	#6 at 48
	7 feet	#5 at 48	#6 at 48	#6 at 40
	8 feet	#6 at 48	#6 at 40	#6 at 24
	9 feet 4 inches	#6 at 40	#6 at 24	#6 at 16
10 feet	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	5 feet	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#5 at 48
	6 feet	#4 at 48	#5 at 48	#6 at 48
	7 feet	#5 at 48	#6 at 48	#6 at 32
	8 feet	#6 at 48	#6 at 32	#6 at 24
	9 feet	#6 at 40	#6 at 24	#6 at 16
	10 feet	#6 at 32	#6 at 16	#6 at 16

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/mm.

a. Mortar shall be Type M or S and masonry shall be laid in running bond.

b. Alternative reinforcing bar sizes and spacings having an equivalent cross-sectional area of reinforcement per lineal foot of wall shall be permitted provided the spacing of the reinforcement does not exceed 72 inches in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C.

c. Vertical reinforcement shall be Grade 60 minimum. The distance, *d*, from the face of the soil side of the wall to the center of vertical reinforcement shall be not less than 5 inches.

d. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System and design lateral soil loads are for moist conditions without hydrostatic pressure. Refer to Table 405.1.

e. Unbalanced backfill height is the difference in height between the exterior finish ground level and the lower of the top of the concrete footing that supports the foundation wall or the interior finish ground level. Where an interior concrete slab-on-grade is provided and is in contact with the interior surface of the foundation wall, measurement of the unbalanced backfill height from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the interior concrete slab is permitted.

f. The use of this table shall be prohibited for soil classifications not shown.

TABLE 404.1.1(3)
10-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCING WHERE $d \geq 6.75$ INCHES [a, c, f]

WALL HEIGHT	HEIGHT OF UNBALANCED BACKFILL [e]	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT AND SPACING (INCHES) [b, c]		
		Soil classes and later soil load [d] (psf per foot below grade)		
		GW, GP, SW and SP soils 30	GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML soils 45	SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL soils 60
6 feet 8 inches	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	5 feet	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	6 feet 8 inches	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#5 at 56
7 feet 4 inches	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	5 feet	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	6 feet	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#5 at 56
	7 feet 4 inches	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#6 at 56
8 feet	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	5 feet	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	6 feet	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#5 at 56
	7 feet	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#6 at 56
	8 feet	#5 at 56	#6 at 56	#6 at 48
8 feet 8 inches	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	5 feet	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	6 feet	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#5 at 56
	7 feet	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#6 at 56
	8 feet 8 inches	#5 at 56	#6 at 48	#6 at 32
9 feet 4 inches	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	5 feet	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	6 feet	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#5 at 56
	7 feet	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#6 at 56
	8 feet	#5 at 56	#6 at 56	#6 at 40
	9 feet 4 inches	#6 at 56	#6 at 40	#6 at 24
10 feet	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	5 feet	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	6 feet	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#5 at 56
	7 feet	#5 at 56	#6 at 56	#6 at 48
	8 feet	#5 at 56	#6 at 48	#6 at 40
	9 feet	#6 at 56	#6 at 40	#6 at 24
	10 feet	#6 at 48	#6 at 32	#6 at 24

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/mm.

a. Mortar shall be Type M or S and masonry shall be laid in running bond.

b. Alternative reinforcing bar sizes and spacings having an equivalent cross-sectional area of reinforcement per lineal foot of wall shall be permitted provided the spacing of the reinforcement does not exceed 72 inches in Seismic Design Categories A B and C.

c. Vertical reinforcement shall be Grade 60 minimum. The distance, *d*, from the face of the soil side of the wall to the center of vertical reinforcement shall be not less than 6.75 inches.

d. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System and design lateral soil loads are for moist conditions without hydrostatic pressure. Refer to Table 405.1.

e. Unbalanced backfill height is the difference in height between the exterior finish ground level and the lower of the top of the concrete footing that supports the foundation wall or the interior finish ground level. Where an interior concrete slab-on-grade is provided and is in contact with the interior surface of the foundation wall, measurement of the unbalanced backfill height from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the interior concrete slab is permitted.

f. The use of this table shall be prohibited for soil classifications not shown.

TABLE 404.1.1(4)
12-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS
WITH REINFORCING WHERE *d* ≥ 8.75 INCHES [a, c, f]

WALL HEIGHT	HEIGHT OF UNBALANCED BACKFILL[e]	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT AND SPACING (INCHES)[b, c]		
		Soil classes and lateral soil load[d] (psf per foot below grade)		
		GW, GP, SW and SP soils 30	GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML soils 45	SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL soils 60
6 feet 8 inches	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	5 feet	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	6 feet 8 inches	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#5 at 72
7 feet 4 inches	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	5 feet	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	6 feet	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#5 at 72
	7 feet 4 inches	#4 at 72	#5 at 72	#6 at 72
8 feet	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	5 feet	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	6 feet	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#5 at 72
	7 feet	#4 at 72	#5 at 72	#6 at 72
	8 feet	#5 at 72	#6 at 72	#6 at 64
8 feet 8 inches	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	5 feet	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	6 feet	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#5 at 72
	7 feet	#4 at 72	#5 at 72	#6 at 72
	8 feet 8 inches	#5 at 72	#7 at 72	#6 at 48
9 feet 4 inches	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	5 feet	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	6 feet	#4 at 72	#5 at 72	#5 at 72
	7 feet	#4 at 72	#5 at 72	#6 at 72
	8 feet	#5 at 72	#6 at 72	#6 at 56
	9 feet 4 inches	#6 at 72	#6 at 48	#6 at 40
10 feet	4 feet (or less)	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	5 feet	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	6 feet	#4 at 72	#5 at 72	#5 at 72
	7 feet	#4 at 72	#6 at 72	#6 at 72
	8 feet	#5 at 72	#6 at 72	#6 at 48
	9 feet	#6 at 72	#6 at 56	#6 at 40
	10 feet	#6 at 64	#6 at 40	#6 at 32

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/mm.

a. Mortar shall be Type M or S and masonry shall be laid in running bond.

b. Alternative reinforcing bar sizes and spacings having an equivalent cross-sectional area of reinforcement per lineal foot of wall shall be permitted provided the spacing of the reinforcement does not exceed 72 inches in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C.

c. Vertical reinforcement shall be Grade 60 minimum. The distance, *d*, from the face of the soil side of the wall to the center of vertical reinforcement shall be not less than 8.75 inches.

d. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System and design lateral soil loads are for moist conditions without hydrostatic pressure. Refer to Table 405.1.

e. Unbalanced backfill height is the difference in height between the exterior finish ground level and the lower of the top of the concrete footing that supports the foundation wall or the interior finish ground levels. Where an interior concrete slab-on-grade is provided and in contact with the interior surface of the foundation wall, measurement of the unbalanced backfill height is permitted to be measured from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the interior concrete slab is permitted.

f. The use of this table shall be prohibited for soil classifications not shown.

404.1.2 Design of masonry foundation walls. Masonry foundation walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section or in accordance with the provisions of TMS 402.

404.1.2.1 Masonry foundation walls. Concrete masonry and clay masonry foundation walls shall be constructed as set forth in Table 404.1.1(1), 404.1.1(2), 404.1.1(3) or 404.1.1(4) and shall comply with applicable provisions of Section 606. Rubble stone masonry foundation walls shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 404.1.8 and 606.4.2.

TABLE 404.1.2(1)
MINIMUM HORIZONTAL REINFORCEMENT FOR CONCRETE BASEMENT WALLS [a, b]

MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED HEIGHT OF BASEMENT WALL (feet)	LOCATION OF HORIZONTAL REINFORCEMENT
≤ 8	One No. 4 bar within 12 inches of the top of the wall story and one No. 4 bar near mid-height of the wall story.
> 8	One No. 4 bar within 12 inches of the top of the wall story and one No. 4 bar near third points in the wall story.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Horizontal reinforcement requirements are for reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi and concrete with a minimum concrete compressive strength of 2,500 psi.

b. See Section 404.1.3.2 for minimum reinforcement required for foundation walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

TABLE 404.1.2(2)
MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 6-INCH NOMINAL FLAT CONCRETE BASEMENT WALLS [b, c, d, e, g, h, i, j, k]

MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT [f] (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)		
		Soil classes [a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth)		
		GW, GP, SW, SP 30	GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45	SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60
8	4	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	6 @ 39	6 @ 48
	6	5 @ 39	6 @ 48	6 @ 35
	7	6 @ 48	6 @ 34	6 @ 25
	8	6 @ 39	6 @ 25	6 @ 18
9	4	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	5 @ 37	6 @ 48
	6	5 @ 36	6 @ 44	6 @ 32
	7	6 @ 47	6 @ 30	6 @ 22
	8	6 @ 34	6 @ 22	6 @ 16
	9	6 @ 27	6 @ 17	DR
10	4	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	5 @ 35	6 @ 48
	6	6 @ 48	6 @ 41	6 @ 30
	7	6 @ 43	6 @ 28	6 @ 20
	8	6 @ 31	6 @ 20	DR
	9	6 @ 24	6 @ 15	DR
	10	6 @ 19	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 kPa^2/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

NR = Not Required.

DR = Design Required.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table 405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi and vertical reinforcement being located at the centerline of the wall. See Section 404.1.3.3.7.2.

c. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section 404.1.3.3.7.6 and Table 404.1.2(9).

d. Deflection criterion is *L*/240, where *L* is the height of the basement wall in inches.

e. Interpolation is not permitted.

f. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

g. NR indicates vertical wall reinforcement is not required, except for 6-inch-nominal walls formed with stay-in-place forming systems in which case vertical reinforcement shall be No. 4@48 inches on center.

h. See Section 404.1.3.2 for minimum reinforcement required for basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

i. See Table 608.3 for tolerance from nominal thickness permitted for flat walls.

j. DR means design is required in accordance with the applicable building code, or in the absence of a code, in accordance with ACI 318.

k. The use of this table shall be prohibited for soil classifications not shown.

TABLE 404.1.2(3)
MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR
8-INCH (203 mm) NOMINAL FLAT CONCRETE BASEMENT WALLS [b, c, d, e, f, h, i, j]

MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT [g] (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)		
		Soil classes [a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth)		
		GW, GP, SW, SP 30	GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45	SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60
8	4	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	NR	NR
	6	NR	NR	6 @ 37
	7	NR	6 @ 36	6 @ 35
	8	6 @ 41	6 @ 35	6 @ 26
9	4	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	NR	NR
	6	NR	NR	6 @ 35
	7	NR	6 @ 35	6 @ 32
	8	6 @ 36	6 @ 32	6 @ 23
	9	6 @ 35	6 @ 25	6 @ 18
10	4	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	NR	NR
	6	NR	NR	6 @ 35
	7	NR	6 @ 35	6 @ 29
	8	6 @ 35	6 @ 29	6 @ 21
	9	6 @ 34	6 @ 22	6 @ 16
	10	6 @ 27	6 @ 17	6 @ 13

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 kPa^2/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

NR = Not Required.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table 405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi, concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi and vertical reinforcement being located at the centerline of the wall. See Section 404.1.3.3.7.2.

c. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section 404.1.3.3.7.6 and Table 404.1.2(9).

d. NR indicates vertical reinforcement is not required.

e. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the height of the basement wall in inches.

f. Interpolation is not permitted.

g. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

h. See Section 404.1.3.2 for minimum reinforcement required for basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

i. See Table 608.3 for tolerance from nominal thickness permitted for flat walls.

j. The use of this table shall be prohibited for soil classifications not shown.

TABLE 404.1.2(4)
MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 10-INCH NOMINAL FLAT CONCRETE BASEMENT WALLS [b, c, d, e, f, h, i, j]

MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT [g] (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)		
		Soil classes [a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth)		
		GW, GP, SW, SP 30	GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45	SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60
8	4	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	NR	NR
	6	NR	NR	NR
	7	NR	NR	NR
	8	6 @ 48	6 @ 35	6 @ 28
9	4	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	NR	NR
	6	NR	NR	NR
	7	NR	NR	6 @ 31
	8	NR	6 @ 31	6 @ 28
	9	6 @ 37	6 @ 28	6 @ 24
10	4	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	NR	NR
	6	NR	NR	NR
	7	NR	NR	6 @ 28
	8	NR	6 @ 28	6 @ 28
	9	6 @ 33	6 @ 28	6 @ 21
	10	6 @ 28	6 @ 23	6 @ 17

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 kPa^2/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa. NR = Not Required.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table 405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi and vertical reinforcement being located at the centerline of the wall. See Section 404.1.3.3.7.2.

c. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section 404.1.3.3.7.6 and Table 404.1.2(9).

d. NR indicates vertical reinforcement is not required.

e. Deflection criterion is *L*/240, where *L* is the height of the basement wall in inches.

f. Interpolation is not permitted.

g. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

h. See Section 404.1.3.2 for minimum reinforcement required for basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

i. See Table 608.3 for tolerance from nominal thickness permitted for flat walls.

j. The use of this table shall be prohibited for soil classifications not shown.

TABLE 404.1.2(5)
MINIMUM VERTICAL WALL REINFORCEMENT FOR 6-INCH WAFFLE-GRID BASEMENT WALLS [b, c, d, e, g, h, i, j]

MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT [f] (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)		
		Soil classes [a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth)		
		GW, GP, SW, SP 30	GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45	SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60
8	4	4 @ 48	4 @ 46	6 @ 39
	5	4 @ 45	5 @ 46	6 @ 47
	6	5 @ 45	6 @ 40	DR
	7	6 @ 44	DR	DR
	8	6 @ 32	DR	DR
9	4	4 @ 48	4 @ 46	4 @ 37
	5	4 @ 42	5 @ 43	6 @ 44
	6	5 @ 41	6 @ 37	DR
	7	6 @ 39	DR	DR
	> 8	DR[i]	DR	DR
10	4	4 @ 48	4 @ 46	4 @ 35
	5	4 @ 40	5 @ 40	6 @ 41
	6	5 @ 38	6 @ 34	DR
	7	6 @ 36	DR	DR
	> 8	DR	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 kPa^2/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

DR = Design Required.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table 405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi and vertical reinforcement being located at the centerline of the wall. See Section 404.1.3.3.7.2.

c. Maximum spacings shown are the values calculated for the specified bar size. Where the bar used is Grade 60 and the size specified in the table, the actual spacing in the wall shall not exceed a whole-number multiple of 12 inches (12, 24, 36 and 48) that is less than or equal to the tabulated spacing. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section 404.1.3.3.7.6 and Table 404.1.2(9).

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the height of the basement wall in inches.

e. Interpolation is not permitted.

f. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

g. See Section 404.1.3.2 for minimum reinforcement required for basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

h. See Table 608.3 for thicknesses and dimensions of waffle-grid walls.

i. DR means design is required in accordance with the applicable building code, or in the absence of a code, in accordance with ACI 318.

j. The use of this table shall be prohibited for soil classifications not shown.

TABLE 404.1.2(6)
MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 8-INCH WAFFLE-GRID BASEMENT WALLS [b, c, d, e, f, h, i, j, k]

MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT [g] (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)		
		Soil classes[a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth)		
		GW, GP, SW, SP 30	GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45	SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60
8	4	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	5 @ 48	5 @ 46
	6	5 @ 48	5 @ 43	6 @ 45
	7	5 @ 46	6 @ 43	6 @ 31
	8	6 @ 48	6 @ 32	6 @ 23
9	4	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	5 @ 47	5 @ 46
	6	5 @ 46	5 @ 39	6 @ 41
	7	5 @ 42	6 @ 38	6 @ 28
	8	6 @ 44	6 @ 28	6 @ 20
	9	6 @ 34	6 @ 21	DR
10	4	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	5 @ 46	5 @ 44
	6	5 @ 46	5 @ 37	6 @ 38
	7	5 @ 38	6 @ 35	6 @ 25
	8	6 @ 39	6 @ 25	DR
	9	6 @ 30	DR	DR
	10	6 @ 24	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 kPa^2/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

NR = Not Required.

DR = Design Required.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table 405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi and vertical reinforcement being located at the centerline of the wall. See Section 404.1.3.3.7.2.

c. Maximum spacings shown are the values calculated for the specified bar size. Where the bar used is Grade 60 (420 MPa) and the size specified in the table, the actual spacing in the wall shall not exceed a whole-number multiple of 12 inches (12, 24, 36 and 48) that is less than or equal to the tabulated spacing. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section 404.1.3.3.7.6 and Table 404.1.2(9).

d. NR indicates vertical reinforcement is not required.

e. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the height of the basement wall in inches.

f. Interpolation shall not be permitted.

g. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

h. See Section 404.1.3.2 for minimum reinforcement required for basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

i. See Table 608.3 for thicknesses and dimensions of waffle-grid walls.

j. DR means design is required in accordance with the applicable building code, or in the absence of a code, in accordance with ACI 318.

k. The use of this table shall be prohibited for soil classifications not shown.

TABLE 404.1.2(7)
MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 6-INCH (152 mm) SCREEN-GRID BASEMENT WALLS [b, c, d, e, g, h, i, j]

MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT [f] (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)		
		Soil classes [a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth)		
		GW, GP, SW, SP 30	GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45	SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60
8	4	4 @ 48	4 @ 48	5 @ 43
	5	4 @ 48	5 @ 48	5 @ 37
	6	5 @ 48	6 @ 45	6 @ 32
	7	6 @ 48	DR	DR
	8	6 @ 36	DR	DR
9	4	4 @ 48	4 @ 48	4 @ 41
	5	4 @ 48	5 @ 48	6 @ 48
	6	5 @ 45	6 @ 41	DR
	7	6 @ 43	DR	DR
	≥ 8	DR	DR	DR
10	4	4 @ 48	4 @ 48	4 @ 39
	5	4 @ 44	5 @ 44	6 @ 46
	6	5 @ 42	6 @ 38	DR
	7	6 @ 40	DR	DR
	≥ 8	DR	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 kPa^2/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

DR = Design Required.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table 405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi, concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi and vertical reinforcement being located at the centerline of the wall. See Section 404.1.3.3.7.2.

c. Maximum spacings shown are the values calculated for the specified bar size. Where the bar used is Grade 60 and the size specified in the table, the actual spacing in the wall shall not exceed a whole-number multiple of 12 inches (12, 24, 36 and 48) that is less than or equal to the tabulated spacing. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section 404.1.3.3.7.6 and Table 404.1.2(9).

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the height of the basement wall in inches.

e. Interpolation is not permitted.

f. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

g. See Sections 404.1.3.2 for minimum reinforcement required for basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

h. See Table 608.3 for thicknesses and dimensions of screen-grid walls.

i. DR means design is required in accordance with the applicable building code, or in the absence of a code, in accordance with ACI 318.

j. The use of this table shall be prohibited for soil classifications not shown.

TABLE 404.1.2(8)
MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 6-, 8-, 10- AND 12-INCH NOMINAL FLAT BASEMENT WALLS [b, c, d, e, f, h, i, k, n, o]

MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT [g] (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)											
		Soil classes[a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth)											
		GW, GP, SW, SP 30				GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45				SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60			
		Minimum nominal wall thickness (inches)											
		6	8	10	12	6	8	10	12	6	8	10	12
5	4	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
6	4	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR[l]	NR	NR	4 @ 35	NR[l]	NR	NR
	6	NR	NR	NR	NR	5 @ 48	NR	NR	NR	5 @ 36	NR	NR	NR
7	4	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	5 @ 47	NR	NR	NR
	6	NR	NR	NR	NR	5 @ 42	NR	NR	NR	6 @ 43	5 @ 48	NR[l]	NR
	7	5 @ 46	NR	NR	NR	6 @ 42	5 @ 46	NR[l]	NR	6 @ 34	6 @ 48	NR	NR
8	4	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	NR	NR	NR	4 @ 38	NR[l]	NR	NR	5 @ 43	NR	NR	NR
	6	4 @ 37	NR[l]	NR	NR	5 @ 37	NR	NR	NR	6 @ 37	5 @ 43	NR[l]	NR
	7	5 @ 40	NR	NR	NR	6 @ 37	5 @ 41	NR[l]	NR	6 @ 34	6 @ 43	NR	NR
	8	6 @ 43	5 @ 47	NR[l]	NR	6 @ 34	6 @ 43	NR	NR	6 @ 27	6 @ 32	6 @ 44	NR
9	4	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	NR	NR	NR	4 @ 35	NR[l]	NR	NR	5 @ 40	NR	NR	NR
	6	4 @ 34	NR[l]	NR	NR	6 @ 48	NR	NR	NR	6 @ 36	6 @ 39	NR[l]	NR
	7	5 @ 36	NR	NR	NR	6 @ 34	5 @ 37	NR	NR	6 @ 33	6 @ 38	5 @ 37	NR[l]
	8	6 @ 38	5 @ 41	NR[l]	NR	6 @ 33	6 @ 38	5 @ 37	NR[l]	6 @ 24	6 @ 29	6 @ 39	4 @ 48[m]
	9	6 @ 34	6 @ 46	NR	NR	6 @ 26	6 @ 30	6 @ 41	NR	6 @ 19	6 @ 23	6 @ 30	6 @ 39
10	4	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
	5	NR	NR	NR	NR	4 @ 33	NR[l]	NR	NR	5 @ 38	NR	NR	NR
	6	5 @ 48	NR[l]	NR	NR	6 @ 45	NR	NR	NR	6 @ 34	5 @ 37	NR	NR
	7	6 @ 47	NR	NR	NR	6 @ 34	6 @ 48	NR	NR	6 @ 30	6 @ 35	6 @ 48	NR[l]
	8	6 @ 34	5 @ 38	NR	NR	6 @ 30	6 @ 34	6 @ 47	NR[l]	6 @ 22	6 @ 26	6 @ 35	6 @ 45[m]
	9	6 @ 34	6 @ 41	4 @ 48	NR[l]	6 @ 23	6 @ 27	6 @ 35	4 @ 48[m]	DR	6 @ 22	6 @ 27	6 @ 34
	10	6 @ 28	6 @ 33	6 @ 45	NR	DR[j]	6 @ 23	6 @ 29	6 @ 38	DR	6 @ 22	6 @ 22	6 @ 28

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 kPa^2/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

NR = Not Required. DR = Design Required.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table 405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi.

c. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section 404.1.3.3.7.6 and Table 404.1.2(9).

d. NR indicates vertical wall reinforcement is not required, except for 6-inch nominal walls formed with stay-in-place forming systems in which case vertical reinforcement shall be No. 4@48 inches on center.

e. Allowable deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the unsupported height of the basement wall in inches.

f. Interpolation is not permitted.

g. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

h. Vertical reinforcement shall be located to provide a cover of $1^1/_4$ -inches measured from the inside face of the wall. The center of the steel shall not vary from the specified location by more than the greater of 10 percent of the wall thickness or $^3/_8$ -inch.

i. Concrete cover for reinforcement measured from the inside face of the wall shall be not less than $^3/_4$ -inch. Concrete cover for reinforcement measured from the outside face of the wall shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ -inches for No. 5 bars and smaller, and not less than 2 -inches for larger bars.

j. DR means design is required in accordance with the applicable building code, or in the absence of a code, in accordance with ACI 318.

k. Concrete shall have a specified compressive strength, f'_c, of not less than 2,500 psi at 28 days, unless a higher strength is required by Footnote l or m.

l. The minimum thickness is permitted to be reduced 2 inches, provided that the minimum specified compressive strength of concrete, f'_c, is 4,000 psi.

m. A plain concrete wall with a minimum nominal thickness of 12 inches is permitted, provided that the minimum specified compressive strength of concrete, f'_c, is 3,500 psi.

n. See Table 608.3 for tolerance from nominal thickness permitted for flat walls.

o. The use of this table shall be prohibited for soil classifications not shown.

TABLE 404.1.2(9)
MINIMUM SPACING FOR ALTERNATE BAR SIZE AND ALTERNATE GRADE OF STEEL [a, b, c]

BAR SPACING FROM APPLICABLE TABLE IN SECTION 404.1.3.2 (inches)	BAR SIZE FROM APPLICABLE TABLE IN SECTION 404.1.3.2															
	#4					#5					#6					
	Alternate bar size and alternate grade of steel desired															
	Grade 60		Grade 40			Grade 60		Grade 40			Grade 60		Grade 40			
	#5	#6	#4	#5	#6	#4	#6	#4	#5	#6	#4	#5	#4	#5	#6	
	Maximum spacing for alternate bar size and alternate grade of steel (inches)															
8	12	18	5	8	12	5	11	3	5	8	4	6	2	4	5	
9	14	20	6	9	13	6	13	4	6	9	4	6	3	4	6	
10	16	22	7	10	15	6	14	4	7	9	5	7	3	5	7	
11	17	24	7	11	16	7	16	5	7	10	5	8	3	5	7	
12	19	26	8	12	18	8	17	5	8	11	5	8	4	6	8	
13	20	29	9	13	19	8	18	6	9	12	6	9	4	6	9	
14	22	31	9	14	21	9	20	6	9	13	6	10	4	7	9	
15	23	33	10	16	22	10	21	6	10	14	7	11	5	7	10	
16	25	35	11	17	23	10	23	7	11	15	7	11	5	8	11	
17	26	37	11	18	25	11	24	7	11	16	8	12	5	8	11	
18	28	40	12	19	26	12	26	8	12	17	8	13	5	8	12	
19	29	42	13	20	28	12	27	8	13	18	9	13	6	9	13	
20	31	44	13	21	29	13	28	9	13	19	9	14	6	9	13	
21	33	46	14	22	31	14	30	9	14	20	10	15	6	10	14	
22	34	48	15	23	32	14	31	9	15	21	10	16	7	10	15	
23	36	48	15	24	34	15	33	10	15	22	10	16	7	11	15	
24	37	48	16	25	35	15	34	10	16	23	11	17	7	11	16	
25	39	48	17	26	37	16	35	11	17	24	11	18	8	12	17	
26	40	48	17	27	38	17	37	11	17	25	12	18	8	12	17	
27	42	48	18	28	40	17	38	12	18	26	12	19	8	13	18	
28	43	48	19	29	41	18	40	12	19	26	13	20	8	13	19	
29	45	48	19	30	43	19	41	12	19	27	13	20	9	14	19	
30	47	48	20	31	44	19	43	13	20	28	14	21	9	14	20	
31	48	48	21	32	45	20	44	13	21	29	14	22	9	15	21	
32	48	48	21	33	47	21	45	14	21	30	15	23	10	15	21	
33	48	48	22	34	48	21	47	14	22	31	15	23	10	16	22	
34	48	48	23	35	48	22	48	15	23	32	15	24	10	16	23	
35	48	48	23	36	48	23	48	15	23	33	16	25	11	16	23	
36	48	48	24	37	48	23	48	15	24	34	16	25	11	17	24	
37	48	48	25	38	48	24	48	16	25	35	17	26	11	17	25	
38	48	48	25	39	48	25	48	16	25	36	17	27	12	18	25	
39	48	48	26	40	48	25	48	17	26	37	18	27	12	18	26	
40	48	48	27	41	48	26	48	17	27	38	18	28	12	19	27	
41	48	48	27	42	48	26	48	18	27	39	19	29	12	19	27	
42	48	48	28	43	48	27	48	18	28	40	19	30	13	20	28	
43	48	48	29	44	48	28	48	18	29	41	20	30	13	20	29	
44	48	48	29	45	48	28	48	19	29	42	20	31	13	21	29	
45	48	48	30	47	48	29	48	19	30	43	20	32	14	21	30	
46	48	48	31	48	48	30	48	20	31	44	21	32	14	22	31	
47	48	48	31	48	48	30	48	20	31	44	21	33	14	22	31	
48	48	48	32	48	48	31	48	21	32	45	22	34	15	23	32	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. This table is for use with tables in Section 404.1.3.2 that specify the minimum bar size and maximum spacing of vertical wall reinforcement for foundation walls and above-grade walls. Reinforcement specified in tables in Section 404.1.3.2 is based on Grade 60 steel reinforcement.

b. Bar spacing shall not exceed 48 inches on center and shall be not less than one-half the nominal wall thickness.

c. For Grade 50 steel bars (ASTM A996, Type R), use spacing for Grade 40 bars or interpolate between Grades 40 and 60.

404.1.3 Concrete foundation walls. Concrete foundation walls that support light-frame walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section, ACI 318, ACI 332 or PCA 100. Concrete foundation walls that support above-grade concrete walls that are within the applicability limits of Section 608.2 shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section, ACI 318, ACI 332 or PCA 100. Concrete foundation walls that support above-grade concrete walls that are not within the applicability limits of Section 608.2 shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of ACI 318, ACI 332 or PCA 100.

404.1.3.1 Concrete cross-section. Concrete walls constructed in accordance with this code shall comply with the shapes and minimum concrete cross-sectional dimensions required by Table 608.3. Other types of forming systems resulting in concrete walls not in compliance with this section and Table 608.3 shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318.

404.1.3.2 Reinforcement for foundation walls. Concrete foundation walls shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom. Horizontal reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Table 404.1.2(1). Vertical reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Table 404.1.2(2), 404.1.2(3), 404.1.2(4), 404.1.2(5), 404.1.2(6), 404.1.2(7) or 404.1.2(8). Vertical reinforcement for flat basement walls retaining 4 feet (1219 mm) or more of unbalanced backfill is permitted to be determined in accordance with Table 404.1.2(8). For basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls, vertical reinforcement shall be the greater of that required by Tables 404.1.2(2) through 404.1.2(8) or by Section 608.6 for the above-grade wall.

404.1.3.2.1 Concrete foundation stem walls supporting above-grade concrete walls. Foundation stem walls that support above-grade concrete walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with this section.

1. Stem walls not laterally supported at top. Concrete stem walls that are not monolithic with slabs-on-ground or are not otherwise laterally supported by slabs-on-ground shall comply with this section. Where unbalanced backfill retained by the stem wall is less than or equal to 18 inches (457 mm), the stem wall and above-grade wall it supports shall be provided with vertical reinforcement in accordance with Section 608.6 and Table 608.6(1), 608.6(2) or 608.6(3) for above-grade walls. Where unbalanced backfill retained by the stem wall is greater than 18 inches (457 mm), the stem wall and above-grade wall it

supports shall be provided with vertical reinforcement in accordance with Section 608.6 and Table 608.6(4).

2. Stem walls laterally supported at top. Concrete stem walls that are monolithic with slabs-on-ground or are otherwise laterally supported by slabs-on-ground shall be vertically reinforced in accordance with Section 608.6 and Table 608.6(1), 608.6(2) or 608.6(3) for above-grade walls. Where the unbalanced backfill retained by the stem wall is greater than 18 inches (457 mm), the connection between the stem wall and the slab-on-ground, and the portion of the slab-on-ground providing lateral support for the wall shall be designed in accordance with PCA 100 or with accepted engineering practice. Where the unbalanced backfill retained by the stem wall is greater than 18 inches (457 mm), the minimum nominal thick- ness of the wall shall be 6 inches (152 mm).

404.1.3.2.2 Concrete foundation stem walls supporting light-frame above-grade walls. Concrete foundation stem walls that support light-frame, above-grade walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with this section.

1. Stem walls not laterally supported at top. Concrete stem walls that are not monolithic with slabs-on-ground or are not otherwise laterally supported by slabs-on-ground and retain 48 inches (1219 mm) or less of unbalanced fill, measured from the top of the wall, shall be constructed in accordance with Section 404.1.3. Foundation stem walls that retain more than 48 inches (1219 mm) of unbalanced fill, measured from the top of the wall, shall be designed in accordance with Sections 404.1.4 and 404.4.
2. Stem walls laterally supported at top. Concrete stem walls that are monolithic with slabs-on-ground or are otherwise laterally supported by slabs-on-ground shall be constructed in accordance with Section 404.1.3. Where the unbalanced backfill retained by the stem wall is greater than 48 inches (1219 mm), the connection between the stem wall and the slab-on-ground, and the portion of the slab-on-ground providing lateral support for the wall, shall be designed in accordance with PCA 100 or in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

404.1.3.3 Concrete, materials for concrete, and forms. Materials used in concrete, the concrete itself and forms shall conform to requirements of this section or ACI 318.

404.1.3.3.1 Compressive strength. The minimum specified compressive strength of concrete, f'_c, shall comply with Section 402.2 and shall be not less than 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa) at 28 days in buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C.

404.1.3.3.2 Concrete mixing and delivery. Mixing and delivery of concrete shall comply with ASTM C94 or ASTM C685.

404.1.3.3.3 Maximum aggregate size. The nominal maximum size of coarse aggregate shall not exceed one-fifth the narrowest distance between sides of forms, or three-fourths the clear spacing between reinforcing bars or between a bar and the side of the form.

Exception: Where approved, these limitations shall not apply where removable forms are used and workability and methods of consolidation permit concrete to be placed without honeycombs or voids.

404.1.3.3.4 Proportioning and slump of concrete. Proportions of materials for concrete shall be established to provide workability and consistency to permit concrete to be worked readily into forms and around reinforcement under conditions of placement to be employed, without segregation or excessive bleeding. Slump of concrete placed in removable forms shall not exceed 6 inches (152 mm).

Exception: Where approved, the slump is permitted to exceed 6 inches (152 mm) for concrete mixtures that are resistant to segregation, and are in accordance with the form manufacturer's recommendations.

Slump of concrete placed in stay-in-place forms shall exceed 6 inches (152 mm). Slump of concrete shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C143.

404.1.3.3.5 Consolidation of concrete. Concrete shall be consolidated by suitable means during placement and shall be worked around embedded items and reinforcement and into corners of forms. Where stay-in-place forms are used, concrete shall be consolidated by internal vibration.

Exception: Where approved for concrete to be placed in stay-in-place forms, self-consolidating concrete mixtures with slumps equal to or greater than 8 inches (203 mm) that are specifically designed

for placement without internal vibration need not be internally vibrated.

404.1.3.3.6 Form materials and form ties. Forms shall be made of wood, steel, aluminum, plastic, a composite of cement and foam insulation, a composite of cement and wood chips, or other approved material suitable for supporting and containing concrete. Forms shall provide sufficient strength to contain concrete during the concrete placement operation.

Form ties shall be steel, solid plastic, foam plastic, a composite of cement and wood chips, a composite of cement and foam plastic, or other suitable material capable of resisting the forces created by fluid pressure of fresh concrete.

404.1.3.3.6.1 Stay-in-place forms. Stay-in-place concrete forms shall comply with this section.

1. Surface burning characteristics. The flame-spread index and smoke-developed index of forming material, other than foam plastic, left exposed on the interior shall comply with Section 302. The surface burning characteristics of foam plastic used in insulating concrete forms shall comply with Section 316.3.
2. Interior covering. Stay-in-place forms constructed of rigid foam plastic shall be protected on the interior of the building as required by Section 316. Where gypsum board is used to protect the foam plastic, it shall be installed with a mechanical fastening system. Use of adhesives in addition to mechanical fasteners is permitted.
3. Exterior wall covering. Stay-in-place forms constructed of rigid foam plastics shall be protected from sunlight and physical damage by the application of an approved exterior wall covering complying with this code. Exterior surfaces of other stay-in-place forming systems shall be protected in accordance with this code.
4. Termite protection. In areas where the probability of termite infestation is "very heavy" as indicated by Table 301.2(1) or Figure 301.2(7), foam plastic insulation shall be permitted below grade on foundation walls in accordance with Section 318.4.
5. Flat ICF wall system forms shall conform to ASTM E2634.

404.1.3.3.7 Reinforcement.

404.1.3.3.7.1 Steel reinforcement. Steel reinforcement shall comply with the requirements of ASTM A615, A706, or A996. ASTM A996 bars produced from rail steel shall be Type R. In buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C, the minimum yield strength of reinforcing steel shall be 40,000 psi (Grade 40) (276 MPa).

404.1.3.3.7.2 Location of reinforcement in wall. The center of vertical reinforcement in basement walls determined from Tables 404.1.2(2) through 404.1.2(7) shall be located at the centerline of the wall. Vertical reinforcement in basement walls determined from Table 404.1.2(8) shall be located to provide a maximum cover of $1^1/_4$ -inches(32 mm) measured from the inside face of the wall. Regardless of the table used to determine vertical wall reinforcement, the center of the steel shall not vary from the specified location by more than the greater of 10 percent of the wall thickness and $^3/_8$ -inch (10 mm). Horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be located in foundation walls to provide the minimum cover required by Section 404.1.3.3.7.4.

404.1.3.3.7.3 Wall openings. Vertical wall reinforcement required by Section 404.1.3.2 that is interrupted by wall openings shall have additional vertical reinforcement of the same size placed within 12 inches (305 mm) of each side of the opening.

404.1.3.3.7.4 Support and cover. Reinforcement shall be secured in the proper location in the forms with tie wire or other bar support system to prevent displacement during the concrete placement operation. Steel reinforcement in concrete cast against the earth shall have a minimum cover of 3 inches (75 mm). Minimum cover for reinforcement in concrete cast in removable forms that will be exposed to the earth or weather shall be $1^1/_2$ -inches (38 mm) for No. 5 bars and smaller, and 2 inches (50 mm) for No. 6 bars and larger. For concrete cast in removable forms that will not be exposed to the earth or weather, and for concrete cast in stay-in-place forms, minimum cover shall be $^3/_4$ -inch (19 mm). The minus tolerance for cover shall not exceed the smaller of one-third the required cover or $^3/_8$ -inch (10 mm).

404.1.3.3.7.5 Lap splices. Vertical and horizontal wall reinforcement shall be the longest lengths practical. Where splices are necessary in reinforcement, the length of lap splice shall be in accordance with Table 608.5.4(1) and Figure 608.5.4(1). The

maximum gap between noncontact parallel bars at a lap splice shall not exceed the smaller of one-fifth the required lap length and 6 inches (152 mm) [See Figure 608.5.4(1)].

404.1.3.3.7.6 Alternate grade of reinforcement and spacing. Where tables in Section 404.1.3.2 specify vertical wall reinforcement based on minimum bar size and maximum spacing, which are based on Grade 60 (414 MPa) steel reinforcement, different size bars or bars made from a different grade of steel are permitted provided that an equivalent area of steel per linear foot of wall is provided. Use of Table 404.1.2(9) is permitted to determine the maxi- mum bar spacing for different bar sizes than specified in the tables or bars made from a different grade of steel. Bars shall not be spaced less than one-half the wall thickness, or more than 48 inches (1219 mm) on center.

404.1.3.3.7.7 Standard hooks. Where reinforcement is required by this code to terminate with a standard hook, the hook shall comply with Section 608.5.4.5 and Figure 608.5.4(3).

404.1.3.3.7.8 Construction joint reinforcement. Construction joints in foundation walls shall be made and located to not impair the strength of the wall. Construction joints in plain concrete walls, including walls required to have not less than No. 4 bars at 48 inches (1219 mm) on center by Sections 404.1.3.2 and 404.1.4.2, shall be located at points of lateral support, and not fewer than one No. 4 bar shall extend across the construction joint at a spacing not to exceed 24 inches (610 mm) on center. Construction joint reinforcement shall have not less than 12 inches (305 mm) embedment on both sides of the joint. Construction joints in reinforced concrete walls shall be located in the middle third of the span between lateral supports, or located and constructed as required for joints in plain concrete walls.

Exception: Use of vertical wall reinforcement required by this code is permitted in lieu of construction joint reinforcement provided that the spacing does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm), or the combination of wall reinforcement and No. 4 bars described in this section does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm).

404.1.3.3.8 Exterior wall coverings. Requirements for installation of masonry veneer, stucco and other wall coverings on the exterior of concrete walls and other construction details not covered in this section

shall comply with the requirements of this code.

404.1.3.4 Requirements for Seismic Design Category C. Concrete foundation walls supporting above-grade concrete walls in *dwellings with four or more dwelling units* assigned to Seismic Design Category C shall comply with ACI 318, ACI 332 or PCA 100 (see Section 404.1.3).

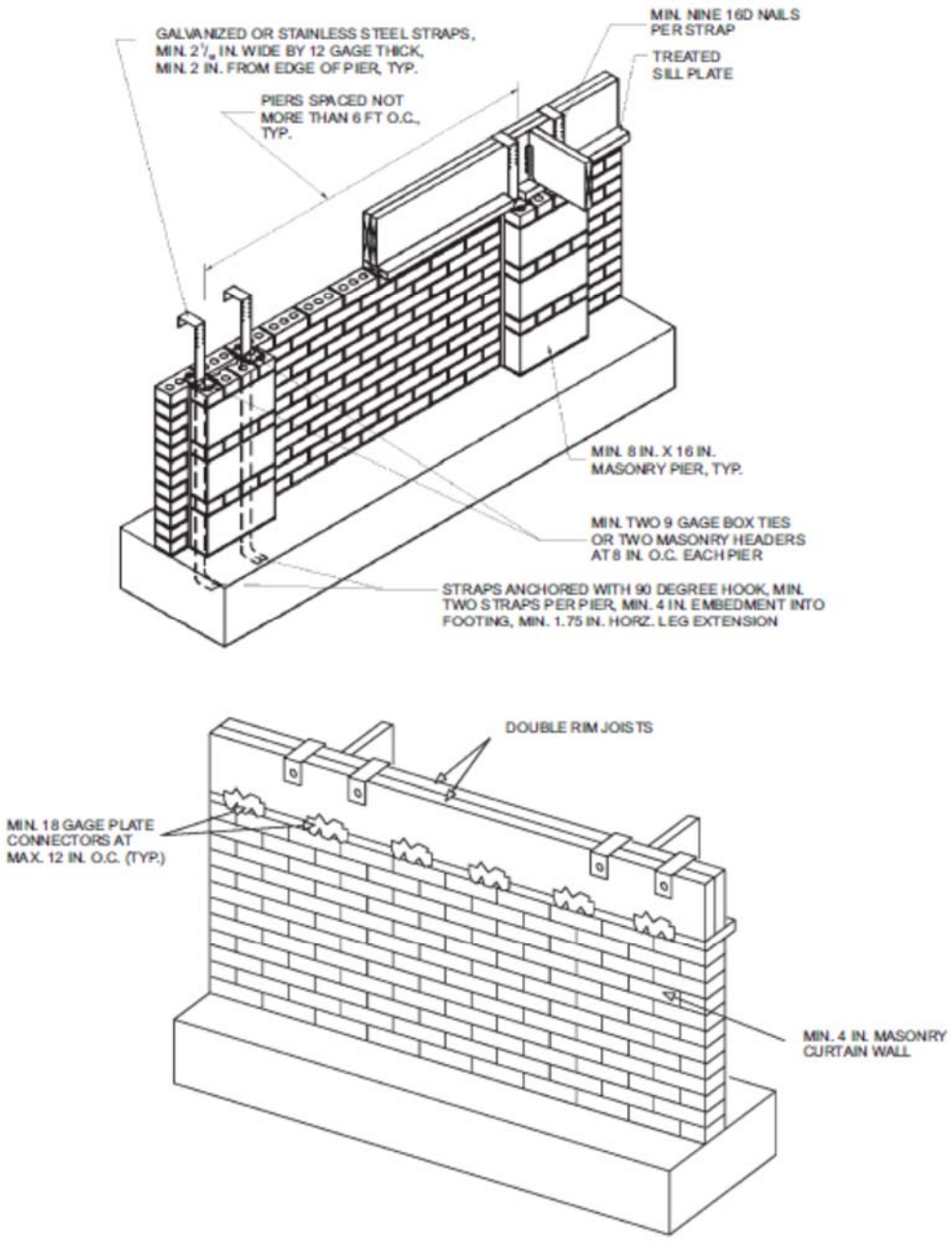
404.1.4 Seismic Design Category D_0, D_1 or D_2. *deleted*

404.1.4.1 Masonry foundation walls. *deleted*

404.1.4.2 Concrete foundation walls. *deleted*

404.1.5 Foundation wall thickness based on walls supported. The thickness of masonry or concrete foundation walls shall be not less than that required by Section 404.1.5.1 or 404.1.5.2, respectively.

404.1.5.1 Masonry wall thickness. Masonry foundation walls shall be not less than the thickness of the wall supported, except that masonry foundation walls of not less than 8- inch (203 mm) nominal thickness shall be permitted under brick veneered frame walls and under 10- inch-wide (254 mm) cavity walls where the total height of the wall supported, including gables, is not more than 20 feet (6096 mm), provided that the requirements of Section 404.1.1 are met.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad

FIGURE 404.1.5(1)
FOUNDATION WALL CLAY MASONRY CURTAIN WALL WITH CONCRETE MASONRY PIERS

404.1.5.2 Concrete wall thickness. The thickness of concrete foundation walls shall be equal to or greater than the thickness of the wall in the story above. Concrete foundation walls with corbels, brackets or other projections built into the wall for support of masonry veneer or other purposes are not within the scope of the tables in this section.

Where a concrete foundation wall is reduced in thickness to provide a shelf for the support of masonry veneer, the reduced thickness shall be equal to or greater than the thickness of the wall in the story above. Vertical reinforcement for the foundation wall shall be based on Table 404.1.2(8) and located in the wall as required by Section 404.1.3.3.7.2 where that table is used. Vertical reinforcement shall be based on the thickness of the thinner portion of the wall.

Exception: Where the height of the reduced thickness portion measured to the underside of the floor assembly or sill plate above is less than or equal to 24 inches (610 mm) and the reduction in thickness does not exceed 4 inches (102 mm), the vertical reinforcement is permitted to be based on the thicker portion of the wall.

404.1.5.3 Pier and curtain wall foundations. Use of pier and curtain wall foundations shall be permitted to support light-frame construction not more than two stories in height, provided that the following requirements are met:

1. All load-bearing walls shall be placed on continuous concrete footings placed integrally with the exterior wall footings.
2. The minimum actual thickness of a load-bearing masonry wall shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal or $3^3/_8$-inches (92 mm) actual thickness, and shall be bonded integrally with piers spaced in accordance with Section 606.6.4.
3. Piers shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 606.7 and 606.7.1, and shall be bonded into the load-bearing masonry wall in accordance with Section 606.13.1 or 606.13.1.1.
4. The maximum height of a 4-inch (102 mm) load-bearing masonry foundation wall supporting wood-frame walls and floors shall be not more than 4 feet (1219 mm).
5. Anchorage shall be in accordance with Section 403.1.6, Figure 404.1.5(1), or as specified by engineered design accepted by the building official.
6. The unbalanced fill for 4-inch (102 mm) foundation walls shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) for solid masonry or 12 inches (305 mm) for hollow masonry.
7. *deleted*

404.1.6 Height above finished grade. Concrete and masonry foundation walls shall extend above the finished grade adjacent to the foundation at all points not less than 4 inches (102 mm) where masonry veneer is used and not less than 6 inches (152 mm) elsewhere.

404.1.7 Backfill placement. Backfill shall not be placed against the wall until the wall has sufficient strength and has been anchored to the floor above, or has been sufficiently braced to prevent damage by the backfill.

Exception: Bracing is not required for walls supporting less than 4 feet (1219 mm) of unbalanced backfill.

404.1.8 Rubble stone masonry. Rubble stone masonry foundation walls shall have a minimum thickness of 16 inches (406 mm), shall not support an unbalanced backfill exceeding 8 feet (2438 mm) in height *and* shall not support a soil pressure greater than 30 pounds per square foot per foot (4.71 kPa/m), and shall not be constructed *for dwellings with four or more dwelling units* in Seismic Design Category C, as established in Figure 301.2(2)

404.1.9 Isolated masonry piers. Isolated masonry piers shall be constructed in accordance with this section and the general masonry construction requirements of Section 606. Hollow masonry piers shall have a minimum nominal thickness of 8 inches (203 mm), with a nominal height not exceeding four times the nominal thickness and a nominal length not exceeding three times the nominal thickness. Where hollow masonry units are solidly filled with concrete or grout, piers shall be permitted to have a nominal height not exceeding ten times the nominal thickness. Footings for isolated masonry piers shall be sized in accordance with Section 403.1.1.

404.1.9.1 Pier cap. Hollow masonry piers shall be capped with 4 inches (102 mm) of solid masonry or concrete, a masonry cap block, or shall have cavities of the top course filled with concrete or grout. Where required, termite protection for the pier cap shall be provided in accordance with Section 318.

404.1.9.2 Masonry piers supporting floor girders. Masonry piers supporting wood girders sized in accordance with Tables 602.7(1) and 602.7(2) shall be permitted in accordance with this section. Piers supporting girders for interior bearing walls shall have a minimum nominal dimension of 12 inches (305 mm) and a maximum height of 10 feet (3048 mm) from top of footing to bottom of sill plate or girder. Piers supporting girders for

exterior bearing walls shall have a minimum nominal dimension of 12 inches (305 mm) and a maximum height of 4 feet (1220 mm) from top of footing to bottom of sill plate or girder. Girders and sill plates shall be anchored to the pier or footing in accordance with Section 403.1.6 or Figure 404.1.5(1). Floor girder bearing shall be in accordance with Section 502.6.

404.1.9.3 Masonry piers supporting braced wall panels. Masonry piers supporting braced wall panels shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

404.1.9.4 Seismic design of masonry piers. Masonry piers in *dwellings with four or more dwelling units* located in Seismic Design Category C, shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

404.1.9.5 Masonry piers in flood hazard areas. Masonry piers for dwellings in flood hazard areas shall be designed in accordance with Section 322.

404.2 Wood foundation walls. Wood foundation walls shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions of Sections 404.2.1 through 404.2.6 and with the details shown in Figures 403.1(2) and 403.1(3).

404.2.1 Identification. Load-bearing lumber shall be identified by the grade mark of a lumber grading or inspection agency that has been approved by an accreditation body that complies with DOC PS 20. In lieu of a grade mark, a certificate of inspection issued by a lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be accepted. Wood structural panels shall conform to DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2 and shall be identified by a grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an approved agency.

404.2.2 Stud size. The studs used in foundation walls shall be 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) members. Where spaced 16 inches (406 mm) on center, a wood species with an F_b value of not less than 1,250 pounds per square inch (8619 kPa) as listed in ANSI AWC NDS shall be used. Where spaced 12 inches (305 mm) on center, an F_b of not less than 875 psi (6033 kPa) shall be required.

404.2.3 Height of backfill. For wood foundations that are not designed and installed in accordance with AWC PWF, the height of backfill against a foundation wall shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm). Where the height of fill is more than 12 inches (305 mm) above the interior grade of a crawl space or floor of a basement, the thickness of the plywood sheathing shall meet the

requirements of Table 404.2.3.

TABLE 404.2.3
PLYWOOD GRADE AND THICKNESS FOR WOOD FOUNDATION CONSTRUCTION (30 pcf equivalent-fluid weight soil pressure)

HEIGHT OF FILL (inches)	STUD SPACING (inches)	FACE GRAIN ACROSS			FACE GRAIN PARALLEL TO STUDS		
		Grade [a]	Minimum thickness (inches)	Span rating	Grade [a]	Minimum thickness (inches) [b, c]	Span rating
24	12	B	15/32	32/16	A	15/32	32/16
					B	15/32 [c]	32/16
	16	B	15/32	32/16	A	15/32 [c]	32/16
					B	19/32 [c] (4, 5 ply)	40/20
36	12	B	15/32	32/16	A	15/32	32/16
					B	15/32 [c] (4, 5 ply)	32/16
					B	19/32 (4, 5 ply)	40/20
	16	B	15/32 [c]	32/16	A	19/32	40/20
					B	23/32	48/24
48	12	B	15/32	32/16	A	15/32 [c]	32/16
					B	19/32 [c] (4, 5 ply)	40/20
	16	B	19/32	40/20	A	19/32 [c]	40/20
					A	23/32	48/24

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per cubic foot = 0.1572 kN/m3.

a. Plywood shall be of the following minimum grades in accordance with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2:
   1. DOC PS 1 Plywood grades marked:
      1.1. Structural I C-D (Exposure 1).
      1.2. C-D (Exposure 1).
   2. DOC PS 2 Plywood grades marked:
      2.1. Structural I Sheathing (Exposure 1).
      2.2. Sheathing (Exposure 1).
   3. Where a major portion of the wall is exposed above ground and a better appearance is desired, the following plywood grades marked exterior are suitable:
      3.1. Structural I A-C, Structural I B-C or Structural I C-C (Plugged) in accordance with DOC PS 1.
      3.2. A-C Group 1, B-C Group 1, C-C (Plugged) Group 1 or MDO Group 1 in accordance with DOC PS 1.
      3.3. Single Floor in accordance with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2.

b. Minimum thickness $^{15}/_{32}$ -inch, except crawl space sheathing shall have not less than $^{3}/_{8}$ -inch for face grain across studs 16 inches on center and maximum 2-foot depth of unequal fill.

c. For this fill height, thickness and grade combination, panels that are continuous over less than three spans (across less than three stud spacings) require blocking 16 inches above the bottom plate. Offset adjacent blocks and fasten through studs with two 16d corrosion-resistant nails at each end.

404.2.4 Backfilling. Wood foundation walls shall not be backfilled until the basement floor and first floor have been constructed or the walls have been braced. For crawl space construction, backfill or bracing shall be installed on the interior of the walls prior to placing backfill on the exterior.

404.2.5 Drainage and dampproofing. Wood foundation basements shall be drained and dampproofed in accordance with Sections 405 and 406, respectively.

404.2.6 Fastening. Wood structural panel foundation wall sheathing shall be attached to framing in accordance with Table 602.3(1) and Section 402.1.1.

404.3 Wood sill plates. Wood sill plates shall be not less than 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) nominal lumber. Sill plate anchorage shall be in accordance with Sections 403.1.6 and 602.11.

404.4 Retaining walls. Retaining walls that are not laterally supported at the top and that retain in excess of 48 inches (1219 mm) of unbalanced fill, or retaining walls exceeding 24 inches (610 mm) in height that resist lateral loads in addition to soil, shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice to ensure stability against overturning, sliding, excessive foundation pressure and water uplift. Retaining walls shall be designed for a safety factor of 1.5 against lateral sliding and overturning. This section shall not apply to foundation walls supporting buildings.

404.5 Precast concrete foundation walls.

404.5.1 Design. Precast concrete foundation walls shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. The design and manufacture of precast concrete foundation wall panels shall comply with the materials requirements of Section 402.3 or ACI 318. The panel design drawings shall be in accordance with Section *106.4.5*.

404.5.2 Precast concrete foundation design drawings. Precast concrete foundation wall design drawings shall be submitted to the building official and approved prior to installation. Drawings shall include, at a minimum, the following information:

1. Design loading as applicable.
2. Footing design and material.
3. Concentrated loads and their points of application.
4. Soil bearing capacity.
5. Maximum allowable total uniform load.
6. Seismic design category.
7. Basic wind speed.

404.5.3 Identification. Precast concrete foundation wall panels shall be

identified by a certificate of inspection label issued by an approved inspection agency.

SECTION 405
FOUNDATION DRAINAGE

405.1 Concrete or masonry foundations. Drains shall be provided around concrete or masonry foundations that retain earth and enclose habitable or usable spaces located below grade. Drainage tiles, gravel or crushed stone drains, perforated pipe or other approved systems or materials shall be installed at or below the top of the footing or below the bottom of the slab and shall discharge by gravity or mechanical means into an approved drainage system *or other location that complies with the plumbing code*. Gravel or crushed stone drains shall extend not less than 1 foot (305 mm) beyond the outside edge of the footing and 6 inches (152 mm) above the top of the footing and be covered with an approved filter membrane material. The top of open joints of drain tiles shall be protected with strips of building paper. Except where otherwise recommended by the drain manufacturer, perforated drains shall be surrounded with an approved filter membrane or the filter membrane shall cover the washed gravel or crushed rock covering the drain. Drainage tiles or perforated pipe shall be placed on not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of washed gravel or crushed rock not less than one sieve size larger than the tile joint opening or perforation and covered with not less than 6 inches (152 mm) of the same material.

Exception: A drainage system is not required where the foundation is installed on well-drained ground or sand-gravel mixture soils according to the Unified Soil Classification System, Group I soils, as detailed in Table 405.1.

TABLE 405.1
PROPERTIES OF SOILS
CLASSIFIED ACCORDING TO THE UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

SOIL GROUP	UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM SYMBOL	SOIL DESCRIPTION	DRAINAGE CHARACTERISTICS [a]	FROST-HEAVE POTENTIAL	VOLUME CHANGE POTENTIAL EXPANSION [b]
Group I	GW	Well-graded gravels, gravel sand mixtures, little or no fines	Good	Low	Low
	GP	Poorly graded gravels or gravel sand mixtures, little or no fines	Good	Low	Low
	SW	Well-graded sands, gravelly sands, little or no fines	Good	Low	Low
	SP	Poorly graded sands or gravelly sands, little or no fines	Good	Low	Low
	GM	Silty gravels, gravel-sand-silt mixtures	Good	Medium	Low
	SM	Silty sand, sand-silt mixtures	Good	Medium	Low
Group II	GC	Clayey gravels, gravel-sand-clay mixtures	Medium	Medium	Low
	SC	Clayey sands, sand-clay mixture	Medium	Medium	Low
	ML	Inorganic silts and very fine sands, rock flour, silty or clayey fine sands or clayey silts with slight plasticity	Medium	High	Low
	CL	Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity, gravelly clays, sandy clays, silty clays, lean clays	Medium	Medium	Medium to Low
Group III	CH	Inorganic clays of high plasticity, fat clays	Poor	Medium	High
	MH	Inorganic silts, micaceous or diatomaceous fine sandy or silty soils, elastic silts	Poor	High	High
Group IV	OL	Organic silts and organic silty clays of low plasticity	Poor	Medium	Medium
	OH	Organic clays of medium to high plasticity, organic silts	Unsatisfactory	Medium	High
	Pt	Peat and other highly organic soils	Unsatisfactory	Medium	High

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The percolation rate for good drainage is over 4 inches per hour, medium drainage is 2 inches to 4 inches per hour, and poor is less than 2 inches per hour.

b. Soils with a low potential expansion typically have a plasticity index (*PI*) of 0 to 15, soils with a medium potential expansion have a *PI* of 10 to 35 and soils with a high potential expansion have a *PI* greater than 20.

405.1.1 Precast concrete foundation. Precast concrete walls that retain earth and enclose habitable or useable space located below-grade that rest on crushed stone footings shall have a perforated drainage pipe installed below the base of the wall on either the interior or exterior side of the wall, not less than 1 foot (305 mm) beyond the edge of the wall. If the exterior drainage pipe is used, an approved filter membrane material shall cover the pipe. The drainage system shall discharge, *by gravity or mechanical means*, into an approved *drainage* system *or other location that complies with the plumbing code.*

405.2 Wood foundations. Wood foundations enclosing habitable or usable spaces

located below grade shall be adequately drained in accordance with Sections 405.2.1 through 405.2.3.

405.2.1 Base. A porous layer of gravel, crushed stone or coarse sand shall be placed to a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm) under the basement floor. Provision shall be made for automatic draining of this layer and the gravel or crushed stone wall footings.

405.2.2 Vapor retarder. A 6-mil-thick (0.15 mm) polyethylene vapor retarder shall be applied over the porous layer with the basement floor constructed over the polyethylene.

405.2.3 Drainage system. In other than Group I soils, a sump shall be provided to drain the porous layer and footings. The sump shall be not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in diameter or 20 inches square (0.0129 m2), shall extend not less than 24 inches (610 mm) below the bottom of the basement floor and shall be capable of positive gravity or mechanical drainage to remove any accumulated water. The drainage system shall discharge, *by gravity or mechanical means*, into an approved *drainage* system *or other location that complies with the plumbing code.*

SECTION 406
FOUNDATION WATERPROOFING AND DAMPPROOFING

406.1 Concrete and masonry foundation dampproofing. Except where required by Section 406.2 to be waterproofed, foundation walls that retain earth and enclose interior spaces and floors below grade shall be dampproofed from the higher of (a) the top of the footing or (b) 6 inches (152 mm) below the top of the basement floor, to the finished grade. Masonry walls shall have not less than $^{3}/_{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) Portland cement parging applied to the exterior of the wall. The parging shall be dampproofed in accordance with one of the following:

1. Bituminous coating.
2. Three pounds per square yard (1.63 kg/m2) of acrylic modified cement.
3. One-eighth-inch (3.2 mm) coat of surface bonding cement complying with ASTM C887.
4. Any material permitted for waterproofing in Section 406.2.
5. Other approved methods or materials.

   Exception: Parging of unit masonry walls is not required where a material is approved for direct application to the masonry.

Concrete walls shall be dampproofed by applying any one of the listed

dampproofing materials or any one of the waterproofing materials listed in Section 406.2 to the exterior of the wall.

Exception: *Existing foundations shall not be required to be dampproofed where a supplemental interior foundation drainage system is installed and connected to a sump pump.*

406.2 Concrete and masonry foundation waterproofing. In areas where a high water table or other severe soil-water conditions are known to exist, exterior foundation walls that retain earth and enclose interior spaces and floors below grade shall be waterproofed from the higher of (a) the top of the footing or (b) 6 inches (152 mm) below the top of the basement floor, to the finished grade. Walls shall be water- proofed in accordance with one of the following:

1. Two-ply hot-mopped felts.
2. Fifty-five-pound (25 kg) roll roofing.
3. Six-mil (0.15 mm) polyvinyl chloride.
4. Six-mil (0.15 mm) polyethylene.
5. Forty-mil (1 mm) polymer-modified asphalt.
6. Sixty-mil (1.5 mm) flexible polymer cement.
7. One-eighth-inch (3 mm) cement-based, fiber-reinforced, waterproof coating.
8. Sixty-mil (1.5 mm) solvent-free liquid-applied synthetic rubber.

All joints in membrane waterproofing shall be lapped and sealed with an adhesive compatible with the membrane.

Exception:

1. Organic-solvent-based products such as hydrocarbons, chlorinated hydrocarbons, ketones and esters shall not be used for ICF walls with expanded polystyrene form material. Use of plastic roofing cements, acrylic coatings, latex coatings, mortars and pargings to seal ICF walls is permitted. Cold-setting asphalt or hot asphalt shall conform to Type C of ASTM D449. Hot asphalt shall be applied at a temperature of less than 200°F (93°C).

2. Where existing exterior or interior dampproofing exists, no waterproofing shall be required.

3. Where an existing home has a supplemental interior foundation drainage system connected to a sump pump, no waterproofing shall be required.

406.3 Dampproofing for wood foundations. Wood foundations enclosing habitable or usable spaces located below grade shall be dampproofed in accordance with Sections 406.3.1 through 406.3.4.

406.3.1 Panel joint sealed. Plywood panel joints in the foundation walls shall be sealed full length with a caulking compound capable of producing a moisture-proof seal under the conditions of temperature and moisture content at which it will be applied and used.

406.3.2 Below-grade moisture barrier. A 6-mil-thick (0.15 mm) polyethylene film shall be applied over the below-grade portion of exterior foundation walls prior to backfilling. Joints in the polyethylene film shall be lapped 6 inches (152 mm) and sealed with adhesive. The top edge of the polyethylene film shall be bonded to the sheathing to form a seal. Film areas at grade level shall be protected from mechanical damage and exposure by a pressure-preservative treated lumber or plywood strip attached to the wall several inches above finished grade level and extending approximately 9 inches (229 mm) below grade. The joint between the strip and the wall shall be caulked full length prior to fastening the strip to the wall. Where approved, other coverings appropriate to the architectural treatment shall be permitted to be used. The polyethylene film shall extend down to the bottom of the wood footing plate but shall not overlap or extend into the gravel or crushed stone footing.

406.3.3 Porous fill. The space between the excavation and the foundation wall shall be backfilled with the same material used for footings, up to a height of 1 foot (305 mm) above the footing for well-drained sites, or one-half the total backfill height for poorly drained sites. The porous fill shall be covered with strips of 30-pound (13.6 kg) asphalt paper or 6-mil (0.15 mm) polyethylene to permit water seepage while avoiding infiltration of fine soils.

406.3.4 Backfill. The remainder of the excavated area shall be backfilled with the same type of soil as was removed during the excavation.

406.4 Precast concrete foundation system dampproofing. Except where required by Section 406.2 to be waterproofed, precast concrete foundation walls enclosing habitable or useable spaces located below grade shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section 406.1.

406.4.1 Panel joints sealed. Precast concrete foundation panel joints shall be sealed full height with a sealant meeting ASTM C920, Type S or M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT, M or A. Joint sealant shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 407
COLUMNS

407.1 Wood column protection. Wood columns shall be protected against decay as set forth in Section 317.

407.2 Steel column protection. All surfaces (inside and outside) of steel columns shall be given a shop coat of rust inhibitive paint, except for corrosion-resistant steel and steel treated with coatings to provide corrosion resistance.

407.3 Structural requirements. The columns shall be restrained to prevent lateral displacement at the bottom end. Wood columns shall be not less in nominal size than 4 inches by 4 inches (102 mm by 102 mm). Steel columns shall be not less than 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) Schedule 40 pipe manufactured in accordance with ASTM A53 Grade B or approved equivalent.

Exception: In Seismic Design Categories A, B and C, columns not more than 48 inches (1219 mm) in height on a pier or footing are exempt from the bottom end lateral displacement requirement within under-floor areas enclosed by a continuous foundation.

SECTION 408
UNDER-FLOOR SPACE

408.1 Ventilation. The under-floor space between the bottom of the floor joists and the earth under any building (except space occupied by a basement) shall have ventilation openings through foundation walls or exterior walls. The minimum net area of ventilation openings shall be not less than 1 square foot (0.0929 m^2) for each 150 square feet (14 m^2) of under-floor space area, unless the ground surface is covered by a Class 1 vapor retarder material. Where a Class 1 vapor retarder material is used, the minimum net area of ventilation openings shall be not less than 1 square foot (0.0929 m^2) for each 1,500 square feet (140 m^2) of under-floor space area. One such ventilating opening shall be within 3 feet (914 mm) of each corner of the building.

408.2 Openings for under-floor ventilation. The minimum net area of ventilation openings shall be not less than 1 square foot (0.0929 m^2) for each 150 square feet (14 m^2) of under-floor area. One ventilation opening shall be within 3 feet (915 mm) of each corner of the building. Ventilation openings shall be covered for their height and width with any of the following materials provided that the least dimension of the covering shall not exceed ¼-inch(6.4 mm):

1. Perforated sheet metal plates not less than 0.070 -inch (1.8 mm) thick

2. Expanded sheet metal plates not less than 0.047 -inch (1.2 mm) thick.
3. Cast-iron grill or grating
4. Extruded load-bearing brick vents
5. Hardware cloth of 0.035 -inch (0.89 mm) wire or heavier
6. Corrosion resistant wire mesh, with the least dimension being $^1/_8$ -inch (3.2 mm) thick.

Exception: The total area of ventilation openings shall be permitted to be reduced to $^1/_{1,500}$ of the under-floor area where the ground surface is covered with an approved Class I vapor retarder material and the required openings are placed to provide cross ventilation of the space. The installation of operable louvers shall not be permitted.

408.3 Unvented crawl space. Ventilation openings in under-floor spaces specified in Sections 408.1 and 408.2 shall not be required where the following items are provided:

1. Exposed earth is covered with a continuous Class I vapor retarder. Joints of the vapor retarder shall overlap by 6 inches (152 mm) and shall be sealed or taped. The edges of the vapor retarder shall extend not less than 6 inches (152 mm) up the stem wall and shall be attached and sealed to the stem wall or insulation.
2. One of the following is provided for the under-floor space:
   2.1. Continuously operated mechanical exhaust ventilation at a rate equal to 1 cubic foot per minute (0.47 L/s) for each 50 square feet (4.7 m2) of crawl space floor area, including an air pathway to the common area (such as a duct or transfer grille), and perimeter walls insulated in accordance with Section 1102.2.11 of this code.
   2.2. Conditioned air supply sized to deliver at a rate equal to 1 cubic foot per minute (0.47 L/s) for each 50 square feet (4.7 m2) of under-floor area, including a return air pathway to the common area (such as a duct or transfer grille), and perimeter walls insulated in accordance with Section 1102.2.11 of this code.
   2.3. Plenum in existing structures complying with Section 1601.5, if under-floor space is used as a plenum.
   2.4. Dehumidification sized to provide 70 pints (33 liters) of moisture removal per day for every 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) of crawl space floor area.

408.4 Access. Access shall be provided to all under-floor spaces. Access openings through the floor shall be not smaller than 18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610

mm). Openings through a perimeter wall shall be not less than 16 inches by 24 inches (407 mm by 610 mm). Where any portion of the of the through-wall access is below grade, an areaway not less than 16 inches by 24 inches (407 mm by 610 mm) shall be provided. The bottom of the areaway shall be below the threshold of the access opening. Through wall access openings shall not be located under a door to the residence. See Section 1305.1.4 for access requirements where mechanical equipment is located under floors.

408.5 Removal of debris. The under-floor grade shall be cleaned of all vegetation and organic material. Wood forms used for placing concrete shall be removed before a building is occupied or used for any purpose. Construction materials shall be removed before a building is occupied or used for any purpose.

408.6 Finished grade. The finished grade of under-floor surface shall be permitted to be located at the bottom of the footings; however, where there is evidence that the ground-water table can rise to within 6 inches (152 mm) of the finished floor at the building perimeter or where there is evidence that the surface water does not readily drain from the building site, the grade in the under-floor space shall be as high as the outside finished grade, unless an approved drainage system is provided.

408.7 Flood resistance. For buildings located in flood hazard areas as established in Table 301.2(1) *unless otherwise approved by the local flood plain administrator:*

1. Walls enclosing the under-floor space shall be provided with flood openings in accordance with Section 322.2.2.
2. The finished ground level of the under-floor space shall be equal to or higher than the outside finished ground level on at least one side.
   Exception: Under-floor spaces that meet the requirements of FEMA TB 11-1.

SECTION 409
FOUNDATION INSULATION

409.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation. *Foundation walls and the edges of slab-on-grade floors with exterior applied insulation shall have a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed insulation and extend to a minimum of 6 inches (153 mm) below grade.*

Replaces:	4101:8-4-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.06, 3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10
Prior Effective Dates:	05/27/2006, 01/01/2013, 07/01/2014, 01/01/2016

4101:8-5-01 Floors.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 501
GENERAL

501.1 Application. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of the floors for buildings, including the floors of attic spaces used to house mechanical or plumbing fixtures and equipment.

501.2 Requirements. Floor construction shall be capable of accommodating all loads in accordance with Section 301 and of transmitting the resulting loads to the supporting structural elements.

SECTION 502
WOOD FLOOR FRAMING

502.1 General. Wood and wood-based products used for load-supporting purposes shall conform to the applicable provisions of this section.

502.1.1 Sawn lumber. Sawn lumber shall be identified by a grade mark of an accredited lumber grading or inspection agency and have design values certified by an accreditation body that complies with DOC PS 20. In lieu of a grade mark, a certificate of inspection issued by *an approved* lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be accepted.

502.1.1.1 Preservative-treated lumber. Preservative treated dimension lumber shall be identified as required by Section 317.2.

502.1.1.2 End-jointed lumber. Approved end-jointed lumber identified by a grade mark conforming to Section 502.1.1 shall be permitted to be used inter- changeably with solid-sawn members of the same species and grade. End-jointed lumber used in an assembly required elsewhere in this code to have a fire-resistance rating shall have the designation “Heat-Resistant Adhesive” or “HRA” included in its grade mark.

502.1.2 Prefabricated wood I-joists. Structural capacities and design provisions for prefabricated wood I-joists shall be established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D5055.

502.1.3 Structural glued laminated timbers. Glued laminated timbers shall be manufactured and identified as required in ANSI A190.1, ANSI 117 and ASTM D3737.

502.1.4 Structural log members. Structural log members shall comply with the provisions of ICC 400.

502.1.5 Structural composite lumber. Structural capacities for structural composite lumber shall be established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D5456.

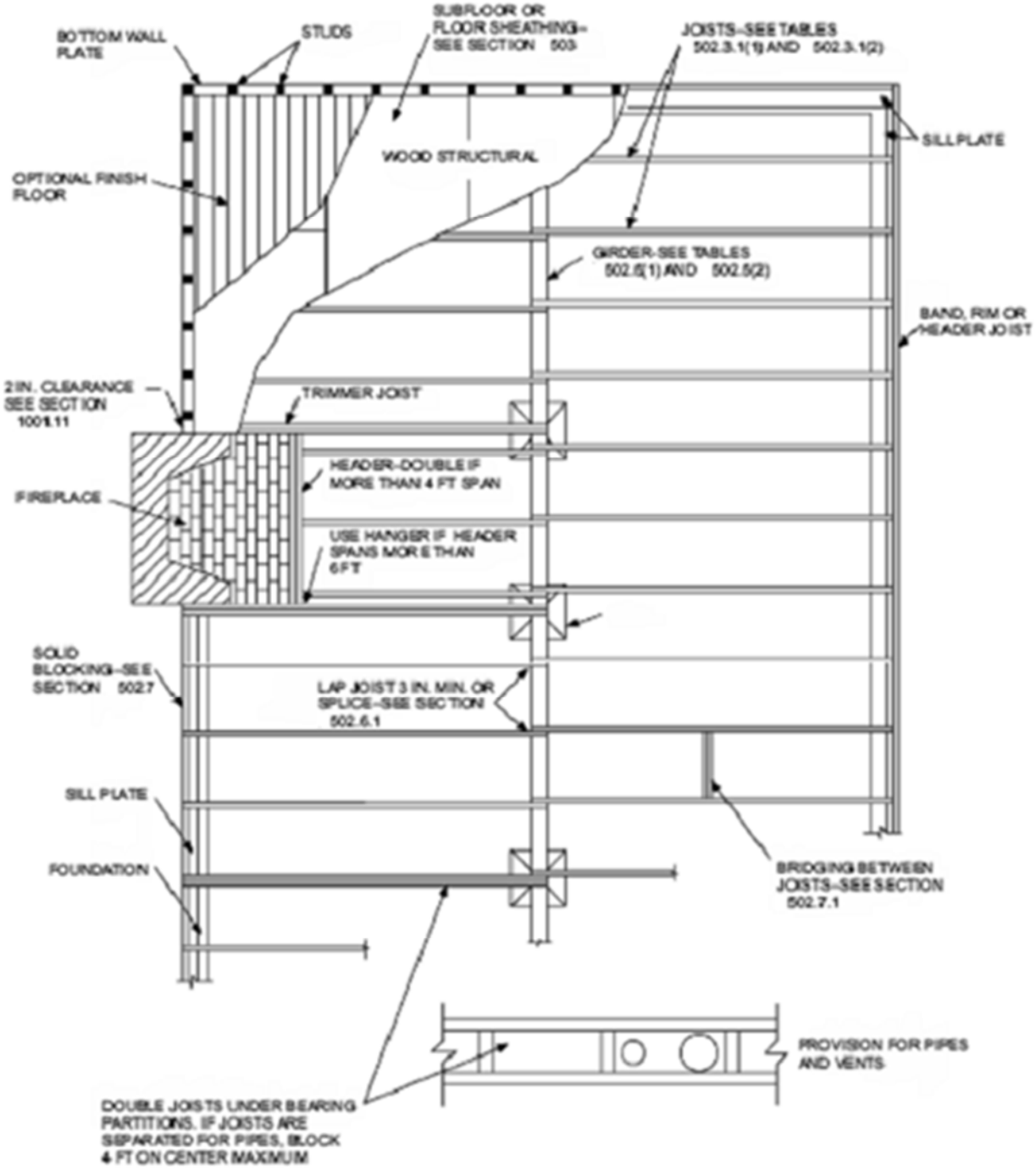
502.1.6 Cross-laminated timber. Cross-laminated timber shall be manufactured and identified as required by ANSI/APA PRG 320.

502.1.7 Engineered wood rim board. Engineered wood rim boards shall conform to ANSI/APA PRR 410 or shall be evaluated in accordance with ASTM D7672. Structural capacities shall be in accordance with ANSI/APA PRR 410 or established in accordance with ASTM D7672. Rim boards conforming to ANSI/APA PRR 410 shall be marked in accordance with that standard.

502.2 Design and construction. Floors shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this chapter, Figure 502.2 and Sections 317 and 318 or in accordance with ANSI AWC NDS.

502.2.1 Framing at braced wall lines. A load path for lateral forces shall be provided between floor framing and braced wall panels located above or below a floor, as specified in Section 602.10.8.

502.2.2 Blocking and subflooring. Blocking for fastening panel edges or fixtures shall be not less than utility grade lumber. Subflooring shall be not less than utility grade lumber, No. 4 common grade boards or wood structural panels as specified in Section 503.2. Fireblocking shall be of any grade lumber.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 502.2
FLOOR CONSTRUCTION

502.3 Allowable joist spans. Spans for floor joists shall be in accordance with Tables 502.3.1(1) and 502.3.1(2). For other grades and species and for other loading conditions, refer to the AWC STJR.

502.3.1 Sleeping areas and attic joists. Table 502.3.1(1) shall be used to determine the maximum allowable span of floor joists that support sleeping areas and attics that are accessed by means of a fixed stairway in accordance with Section 311.7 provided that the design live load does not exceed 30 pounds per square foot (1.44 kPa) and the design dead load does not exceed 20 pounds per square foot (0.96 kPa). The allowable span of ceiling joists that support attics used for limited storage or no storage shall be determined in accordance with Section 802.5.

TABLE 502.3.1(1)
FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Residential sleeping areas, live load = 30 psf, $L/\Delta = 360$) [a]

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf			
			2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum floor joist spans							
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	12-6	16-6	21-0	25-7	12-6	16-6	21-0	25-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	12-0	15-10	20-3	24-8	12-0	15-7	19-0	22-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	11-10	15-7	19-10	23-4	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	9-11	12-7	15-5	17-10	8-11	11-3	13-9	16-0
	Hem-fir	SS	11-10	15-7	19-10	24-2	11-10	15-7	19-10	24-2
	Hem-fir	#1	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7	11-7	15-3	18-9	21-9
	Hem-fir	#2	11-0	14-6	18-6	22-6	11-0	14-4	17-6	20-4
	Hem-fir	#3	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Southern pine	SS	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1
	Southern pine	#1	11-10	15-7	19-10	24-2	11-10	15-7	18-7	22-0
	Southern pine	#2	11-3	14-11	18-1	21-4	10-9	13-8	16-2	19-1
	Southern pine	#3	9-2	11-6	14-0	16-6	8-2	10-3	12-6	14-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	11-3	14-11	19-0	23-0	11-3	14-7	17-9	20-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	11-3	14-11	19-0	23-0	11-3	14-7	17-9	20-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	11-4	15-0	19-1	23-3	11-4	15-0	19-1	23-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-11	14-5	18-5	21-4	10-8	13-6	16-5	19-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	10-9	14-2	17-5	20-3	10-1	12-9	15-7	18-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	8-7	10-11	13-4	15-5	7-8	9-9	11-11	13-10
	Hem-fir	SS	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf			
			2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum floor joist spans							
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
16	Hem-fir	#1	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-1	10-6	13-4	16-3	18-10
	Hem-fir	#2	10-0	13-2	16-10	19-8	9-10	12-5	15-2	17-7
	Hem-fir	#3	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6
	Southern pine	SS	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10
	Southern pine	#1	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-4	10-9	13-9	16-1	19-1
	Southern pine	#2	10-3	13-3	15-8	18-6	9-4	11-10	14-0	16-6
	Southern pine	#3	7-11	10-0	11-1	14-4	7-1	8-11	10-10	12-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	10-3	13-6	17-2	19-11	9-11	12-7	15-5	17-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	10-3	13-6	17-2	19-11	9-11	12-7	15-5	17-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	10-8	14-1	18-0	21-10	10-8	14-1	18-0	21-4
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-4	13-7	16-9	19-6	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	10-1	13-0	15-11	18-6	9-3	11-8	14-3	16-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1	7-0	8-11	10-11	12-7
	Hem-fir	SS	10-1	13-4	17-0	20-8	10-1	13-4	17-0	20-7
	Hem-fir	#1	9-10	13-0	16-7	19-3	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-2
	Hem-fir	#2	9-5	12-5	15-6	17-1	8-11	11-4	13-10	16-1
	Hem-fir	#3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
	Southern pine	SS	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6
	Southern pine	#1	10-1	13-4	16-5	19-6	9-11	12-7	14-8	17-5
	Southern pine	#2	9-6	12-1	14-4	16-10	8-6	10-10	12-10	15-1
	Southern pine	#3	7-3	9-1	11-0	13-1	6-5	8-2	9-10	11-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-10	13-0	16-7	20-2	9-10	13-0	16-7	19-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	9-8	12-9	15-8	18-3	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	9-8	12-9	15-8	18-3	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-11	13-1	16-8	20-3	9-11	13-1	16-5	19-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	9-7	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-3	11-8	14-3	16-6	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-0	8-11	10-11	12-7	6-3	8-0	9-9	11-3
	Hem-fir	SS	9-4	12-4	15-9	19-2	9-4	12-4	15-9	18-5
	Hem-fir	#1	9-2	12-1	14-10	17-2	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-fir	#2	8-9	11-4	13-10	16-1	8-0	10-2	12-5	14-4
	Hem-fir	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0
	Southern pine	SS	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-8
	Southern pine	#1	9-4	12-4	14-8	17-5	8-10	11-3	13-1	15-7

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf			
			2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum floor joist spans							
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
	Southern pine	#2	8-6	10-10	12-10	15-1	7-7	9-8	11-5	13-6
	Southern pine	#3	6-5	8-2	9-10	11-8	5-9	7-3	8-10	10-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-2	12-1	15-5	18-9	9-2	12-1	15-0	17-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-11	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-11	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

Note: Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

a. *Deleted*

TABLE 502.3.1(2)
FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Residential living areas, live load = 40 psf, L/Δ = 360)[b]

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf			
			2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum floor joist spans							
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	11-4	15-0	19-1	23-3	11-4	15-0	19-1	23-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-11	14-5	18-5	22-0	10-11	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	10-9	14-2	18-0	20-11	10-8	13-6	16-5	19-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	8-11	11-3	13-9	16-0	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Hem-fir	SS	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11
	Hem-fir	#1	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6	10-6	13-10	17-1	19-10
	Hem-fir	#2	10-0	13-2	16-10	20-4	10-0	13-1	16-0	18-6
	Hem-fir	#3	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7	7-11	10-0	12-3	14-3
	Southern pine	SS	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10
	Southern pine	#1	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	10-9	14-2	16-11	20-1
	Southern pine	#2	10-3	13-6	16-2	19-1	9-10	12-6	14-9	17-5
	Southern pine	#3	8-2	10-3	12-6	14-9	7-5	9-5	11-5	13-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	10-3	13-6	17-3	20-7	10-3	13-3	16-3	18-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	10-3	13-6	17-3	20-7	10-3	13-3	16-3	18-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7	7-11	10-0	12-3	14-3
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	10-4	13-7	17-4	21-1	10-4	13-7	17-4	21-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	9-11	13-1	16-5	19-1	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-9	12-9	15-7	18-1	9-3	11-8	14-3	16-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-8	9-9	11-11	13-10	7-0	8-11	10-11	12-7
	Hem-fir	SS	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf			
			2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum floor joist spans							
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
	Hem-fir	#1	9-6	12-7	16-0	18-10	9-6	12-2	14-10	17-2
	Hem-fir	#2	9-1	12-0	15-2	17-7	8-11	11-4	13-10	16-1
	Hem-fir	#3	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
16	Southern pine	SS	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9
	Southern pine	#1	9-9	12-10	16-1	19-1	9-9	12-7	14-8	17-5
	Southern pine	#2	9-4	11-10	14-0	16-6	8-6	10-10	12-10	15-1
	Southern pine	#3	7-1	8-11	10-10	12-10	6-5	8-2	9-10	11-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-6	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	9-4	12-3	15-5	17-10	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	9-4	12-3	15-5	17-10	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-8	12-10	16-4	19-10	9-8	12-10	16-4	19-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	9-4	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-2	11-8	14-3	16-6	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-0	8-11	10-11	12-7	6-5	8-2	9-11	11-6
	Hem-fir	SS	9-2	12-1	15-5	18-9	9-2	12-1	15-5	18-9
	Hem-fir	#1	9-0	11-10	14-10	17-2	8-9	11-1	13-6	15-8
	Hem-fir	#2	8-7	11-3	13-10	16-1	8-2	10-4	12-8	14-8
	Hem-fir	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-3	7-11	9-8	11-3
	Southern pine	SS	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-6	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-6
	Southern pine	#1	9-2	12-1	14-8	17-5	9-0	11-5	13-5	15-11
	Southern pine	#2	8-6	10-10	12-10	15-1	7-9	9-10	11-8	13-9
	Southern pine	#3	6-5	8-2	9-10	11-8	5-11	7-5	9-0	10-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-0	11-10	15-1	18-4	9-0	11-10	15-1	17-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-9	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-3	10-6	12-10	14-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-9	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-3	10-6	12-10	14-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-3	7-11	9-8	11-3
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-0	11-11	15-2	18-5	9-0	11-11	15-0	17-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7	7-11	10-0	12-3	14-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-3	8-0	9-9	11-3	5-9	7-3	8-11	10-4
	Hem-fir	SS	8-6	11-3	14-4	17-5	8-6	11-3	14-4	16-10[a]
	Hem-fir	#1	8-4	10-10	13-3	15-5	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-0
	Hem-fir	#2	7-11	10-2	12-5	14-4	7-4	9-3	11-4	13-1
	Hem-fir	#3	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0	5-7	7-1	8-8	10-1
	Southern pine	SS	8-10	11-8	14-11	18-1	8-10	11-8	14-11	18-0
	Southern pine	#1	8-6	11-3	13-1	15-7	8-1	10-3	12-0	14-3

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf			
			2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum floor joist spans							
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
	Southern pine	#2	7-7	9-8	11-5	13-6	7-0	8-10	10-5	12-4
	Southern pine	#3	5-9	7-3	8-10	10-5	5-3	6-8	8-1	9-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-4	11-0	14-0	17-0	8-4	11-0	13-8	15-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7	7-5	9-5	11-6	13-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7	7-5	9-5	11-6	13-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0	5-7	7-1	8-8	10-1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

Note: Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

a. End bearing length shall be increased to 2 inches.

b. *Deleted*

TABLE 502.3.3(1)
CANTILEVER SPANS FOR FLOOR JOISTS SUPPORTING LIGHT-FRAME EXTERIOR BEARING WALL AND ROOF ONLY [a, b, c, f, g, h]
(Floor Live Load = 40 psf, Roof Live Load = 20 psf)

MEMBER & SPACING	MAXIMUM CANTILEVER SPAN (uplift force at backspan support in lbs.) [d, e]											
	Ground Snow Load											
	≤ 20 psf			30 psf			50 psf			70 psf		
	Roof Width			Roof Width			Roof Width			Roof Width		
	24 ft	32 ft	40 ft	24 ft	32 ft	40 ft	24 ft	32 ft	40 ft	24 ft	32 ft	40 ft
2 × 8 @ 12″	20″ (177)	15″ (227)	—	18″ (209)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2 × 10 @ 16″	29″ (228)	21″ (297)	16″ (364)	26″ (271)	18″ (354)	—	20″ (375)	—	—	—	—	—
2 × 10 @ 12″	36″ (166)	26″ (219)	20″ (270)	34″ (198)	22″ (263)	16″ (324)	26″ (277)	—	—	19″ (356)	—	—
2 × 12 @ 16″	—	32″ (287)	25″ (356)	36″ (263)	29″ (345)	21″ (428)	29″ (367)	20″ (484)	—	23″ (471)	—	—
2 × 12 @ 12″	—	42″ (209)	31″ (263)	—	37″ (253)	27″ (317)	36″ (271)	27″ (358)	17″ (447)	31″ (348)	19″ (462)	—
2 × 12 @ 8″	—	48″ (136)	45″ (169)	—	48″ (164)	38″ (206)	—	40″ (233)	26″ (294)	36″ (230)	29″ (304)	18″ (379)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Tabulated values are for clear-span roof supported solely by exterior bearing walls.

b. Spans are based on No. 2 Grade lumber of Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, and spruce-pine-fir for repetitive (three or more) members. No.1 or better shall be used for Southern pine.

c. Ratio of backspan to cantilever span shall be not less than 3:1.

d. Connections capable of resisting the indicated uplift force shall be provided at the backspan support.

e. Uplift force is for a backspan to cantilever span ratio of 3:1. Tabulated uplift values are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by a factor equal to 3 divided by the actual backspan ratio provided (3/backspan ratio).

f. *Deleted*

g. A full-depth rim joist shall be provided at the unsupported end of the cantilever joists. Solid blocking shall be provided at the supported end. Where the cantilever length is 24 inches or less and the building is assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C, solid blocking at the support for the cantilever shall not be required.

h. Linear interpolation shall be permitted for building widths and ground snow loads other than shown.

TABLE 502.3.3(2)
CANTILEVER SPANS FOR FLOOR JOISTS SUPPORTING EXTERIOR BALCONY [a, b, e, f]

MEMBER SIZE	SPACING	MAXIMUM CANTILEVER SPAN (uplift force at backspan support in lbs.)[c, d]		
		Ground Snow Load		
		≤ 30 psf	50 psf	70 psf
2 × 8	12″	42″ (139)	39″ (156)	34″ (165)
2 × 8	16″	36″ (151)	34″ (171)	29″ (180)
2 × 10	12″	61″ (164)	57″ (189)	49″ (201)
2 × 10	16″	53″ (180)	49″ (208)	42″ (220)
2 × 10	24″	43″ (212)	40″ (241)	34″ (255)
2 × 12	16″	72″ (228)	67″ (260)	57″ (268)
2 × 12	24″	58″ (279)	54″ (319)	47″ (330)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Spans are based on No. 2 Grade lumber of Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, and spruce-pine-fir for repetitive (three or more) members. No.1 or better shall be used for Southern pine.
b. Ratio of backspan to cantilever span shall be not less than 2:1.
c. Connections capable of resisting the indicated uplift force shall be provided at the backspan support.
d. Uplift force is for a backspan to cantilever span ratio of 2:1. Tabulated uplift values are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by a factor equal to 2 divided by the actual backspan ratio provided (2/backspan ratio).
e. A full-depth rim joist shall be provided at the unsupported end of the cantilever joists. Solid blocking shall be provided at the supported end. Where the cantilever length is 24 inches or less and the building is assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C, solid blocking at the support for the cantilever shall not be required.
f. Linear interpolation shall be permitted for ground snow loads other than shown.

502.3.2 Other floor joists. Table 502.3.1(2) shall be used to determine the maximum allowable span of floor joists that support other areas of the building, other than sleeping rooms and attics, provided that the design live load does not exceed 40 pounds per square foot (1.92 kPa) and the design dead load does not exceed 20 pounds per square foot (0.96 kPa).

502.3.3 Floor cantilevers. Floor cantilever spans shall not exceed the nominal depth of the wood floor joist. Floor cantilevers constructed in accordance with Table 502.3.3(1) shall be permitted where supporting a light- frame bearing wall and roof only. Floor cantilevers supporting an exterior balcony are permitted to be constructed in accordance with Table 502.3.3(2).

502.4 Joists under bearing partitions. Joists under parallel bearing partitions shall be of adequate size to support the load. Double joists, sized to adequately support the load, that are separated to permit the installation of piping or vents shall be full-depth solid blocked with lumber not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in nominal thickness spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center. Bearing partitions perpendicular to joists shall not be offset from supporting girders, walls or partitions

more than the joist depth unless such joists are of sufficient size to carry the additional load.

502.5 Allowable girder and header spans. The allowable spans of girders and headers fabricated of dimension lumber shall not exceed the values set forth in Tables 602.7(1), 602.7(2) and 602.7(3).

502.6 Bearing. The ends of each joist, beam or girder shall have not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal, have not less than 3 inches of bearing (76 mm) on masonry or concrete or be supported by approved joist hangers. Alternatively, the ends of joists shall be supported on a 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) ribbon strip and shall be nailed to the adjacent stud. The bearing on masonry or concrete shall be direct, or a sill plate of 2-inch-minimum (51 mm) nominal thickness shall be provided under the joist, beam or girder. The sill plate shall provide a minimum nominal bearing area of 48 square inches (30 865 mm^2).

502.6.1 Floor systems. Joists framing from opposite sides over a bearing support shall lap not less than 3 inches (76 mm) and shall be nailed together with a minimum three 10d face nails. A wood or metal splice with strength equal to or greater than that provided by the nailed lap is permitted.

502.6.2 Joist framing. Joists framing into the side of a wood girder shall be supported by approved framing anchors or on ledger strips not less than nominal 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm).

502.6.3 Beams ending on an open pocket. *When not prescribed in the manufacturer's installation instructions, or as otherwise may be prescribed by a registered design professional, at a minimum, beams ending on an open pocket shall use clip angles to attach the beam to the foundation at beam pockets. The clip angle to beam connection shall be either a welded or a bolted connection.*

When the clip angle to beam connection is a welded connection, the clip angle shall be welded to the beam along the clip angle's entire length. When the clip angle to beam connection is a bolted connection, the clip angle shall be bolted to the beam using no less than ½" diameter bolts.

The clip angle shall be attached to the foundation wall using no less than a ½" diameter anchor placed in the middle of the clip angle.

502.7 Lateral restraint at supports. Joists shall be supported laterally at the ends by full-depth solid blocking not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in

thickness; or by attachment to a full-depth header, band or rim joist, or to an adjoining stud or shall be otherwise provided with lateral support to prevent rotation.

Exceptions:

1. Trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glued-laminated members and I-joists shall be supported laterally as required by the manufacturer's recommendations.
2. *Deleted.*

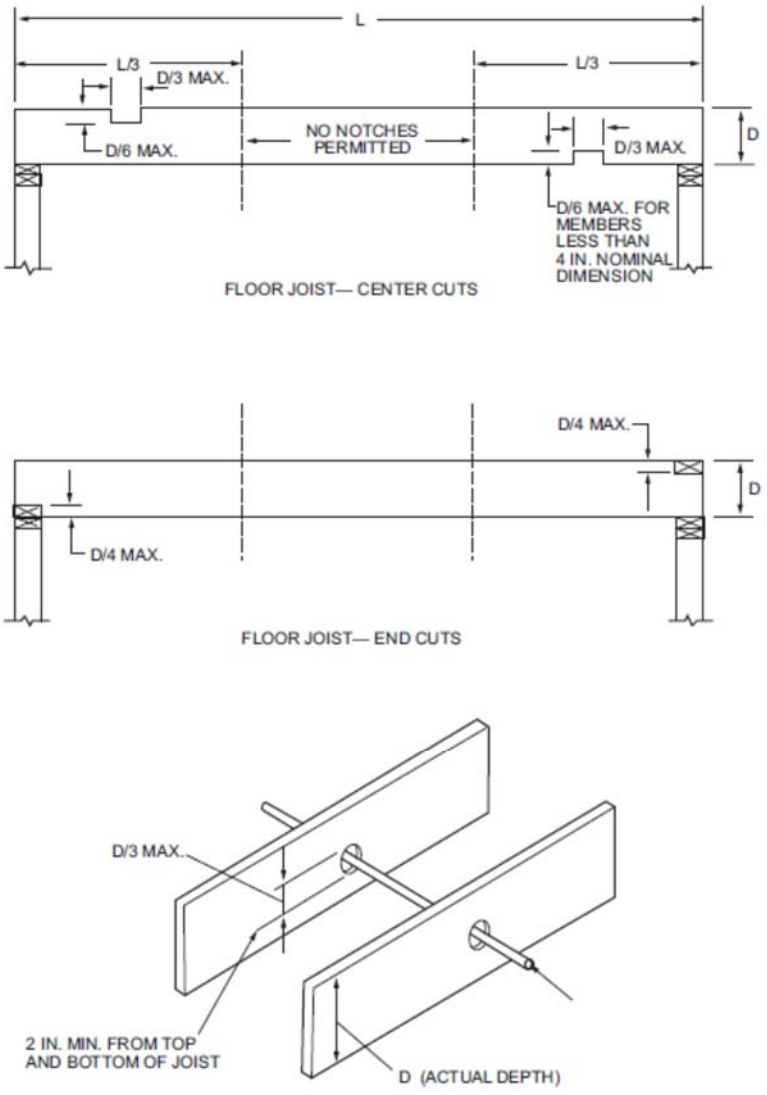
502.7.1 Bridging. Joists exceeding a nominal 2 inches by 12 inches (51 mm by 305 mm) shall be supported laterally by solid blocking, diagonal bridging (wood or metal), or a continuous 1-inch by 3-inch (25 mm by 76 mm) strip nailed across the bottom of joists perpendicular to joists at intervals not exceeding 8 feet (2438 mm).

Exception: Trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glued-laminated members and I-joists shall be supported laterally as required by the manufacturer's recommendations.

502.8 Cutting, drilling and notching. Structural floor members shall not be cut, bored or notched in excess of the limitations specified in this section. See Figure 502.8.

502.8.1 Sawn lumber. Notches in solid lumber joists, rafters and beams shall not exceed one-sixth of the depth of the member, shall not be longer than one-third of the depth of the member and shall not be located in the middle one-third of the span. Notches at the ends of the member shall not exceed one-fourth the depth of the member. The tension side of members 4 inches (102 mm) or greater in nominal thickness shall not be notched except at the ends of the members. The diameter of holes bored or cut into members shall not exceed one-third the depth of the member. Holes shall not be closer than 2 inches (51 mm) to the top or bottom of the member, or to any other hole located in the member. Where the member is notched, the hole shall not be closer than 2 inches (51 mm) to the notch.

502.8.2 Engineered wood products. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glue-laminated members, cross-laminated timber members or I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 502.8
CUTTING, NOTCHING AND DRILLING

502.9 Fastening. Floor framing shall be nailed in accordance with Table 602.3(1). Where posts and beam or girder construction is used to support floor framing, positive connections shall be provided to ensure against uplift and lateral displacement.

502.9.1 Column to beam fastening. *When not prescribed in the manufacturer's installation instructions, or as otherwise may be prescribed by a registered design professional, at a minimum, the top plate of supporting steel column(s) shall be connected to the beam using either welded or bolted connections.*

1. *When a beam ends in a concrete pocket and the column to beam connection is a welded connection, the top plate of the column shall be welded along the length of the two sides of the top plate perpendicular to the steel beam's length. When the column to beam connection is a bolted connection, no less than two ½" diameter bolts placed diagonally shall be used through the top plate of the steel column(s) and the bottom of the beam. The base plate(s) of steel column(s) shall be anchored to concrete footing pad(s) with no less than two ½" diameter anchors or bolts placed diagonally through the base plate(s) of the steel column(s) into the concrete footing pad(s).*
2. *When a beam ends on a steel column rather than in a beam pocket, and that connection is a bolted connection, no less than four ½" diameter bolts shall be used connecting the top plate of the steel column to the beam. The base plate of the steel column shall be anchored to the concrete footing pad with no less than four ½" diameter anchors through the base plate of the steel column to the concrete footing pad.*

All powder actuated fasteners are prohibited when connecting steel column top plates to beams and steel column base plates to concrete footing pads.

502.10 Framing of openings. Openings in floor framing shall be framed with header and trimmer joists. Where the header joist span does not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm), the header joist shall be a single member the same size as the floor joist. Single trimmer joists shall be used to carry a single header joist that is located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the trimmer joist bearing. Where the header joist span exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm), the trimmer joists and the header joist shall be doubled and of sufficient cross section to support the floor joists framing into the header.

502.11 Wood trusses.

502.11.1 Design. Wood trusses shall be designed in accordance with approved engineering practice. The design and manufacture of metal-plate-connected wood trusses shall comply with ANSI/TPI 1. The truss design drawings shall *bear the identification of the person primarily responsible for their preparation and include all loads, reactions and calculations used in design or* be prepared by a registered *design* professional. *The truss design drawings shall comply with the requirements of this section and be* in accordance with Section 106.1.

502.11.2 Bracing. Trusses shall be braced to prevent rotation and provide lateral stability in accordance with the requirements specified in the construction documents for the building and on the individual truss design drawings. In the absence of specific bracing requirements, trusses shall be braced in accordance with accepted industry practices, such as, the SBCA Building Component Safety Information (BCSI) Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing & Bracing of Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses.

502.11.3 Alterations to trusses. Truss members and components shall not be cut, notched, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without the approval of a registered design professional. Alterations resulting in the addition of load that exceeds the design load for the truss, shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting the additional loading.

502.11.4 Truss design drawings. Truss design drawings, prepared in compliance with Section 502.11.1, shall be submitted to the building official and approved prior to installation. Truss design drawings shall be provided with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. Truss design drawings shall include, at a minimum, the information specified as follows:

1. Slope or depth, span and spacing.
2. Location of all joints.
3. Required bearing widths.
4. Design loads as applicable:
   - 4.1. Top chord live load.
   - 4.2. Top chord dead load.
   - 4.3. Bottom chord live load.
   - 4.4. Bottom chord dead load.
   - 4.5. Concentrated loads and their points of application.
   - 4.6. Controlling wind and earthquake loads.
5. Adjustments to lumber and joint connector design values for conditions of use.
6. Each reaction force and direction.
7. Joint connector type and description, such as size, thickness or gage, and the dimensioned location of each joint connector except where symmetrically located relative to the joint interface.
8. Lumber size, species and grade for each member.
9. Connection requirements for:
   - 9.1. Truss-to-girder-truss.
   - 9.2. Truss ply-to-ply.
   - 9.3. Field splices.

10. Calculated deflection ratio, maximum description for live and total load, or both.
11. Maximum axial compression forces in the truss members to enable the building designer to design the size, connections and anchorage of the permanent continuous lateral bracing. Forces shall be shown on the truss drawing or on supplemental documents.
12. Required permanent truss member bracing location.

502.12 Draftstopping required. Draftstopping shall be provided in accordance with Section 302.12.

502.13 Fireblocking required. Fireblocking shall be provided in accordance with Section 302.11.

SECTION 503
FLOOR SHEATHING

503.1 Lumber sheathing. Maximum allowable spans for lumber used as floor sheathing shall conform to Tables 503.1, 503.2.1.1(1) and 503.2.1.1(2).

503.1.1 End joints. End joints in lumber used as sub- flooring shall occur over supports unless end-matched lumber is used, in which case each piece shall bear on not less than two joists. Subflooring shall be permitted to be omitted where joist spacing does not exceed 16 inches (406 mm) and a 1-inch (25 mm) nominal tongue-and-groove wood strip flooring is applied perpendicular to the joists.

TABLE 503.1
MINIMUM THICKNESS OF LUMBER FLOOR SHEATHING

JOIST OR BEAM SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM NET THICKNESS	
	Perpendicular to joist	Diagonal to joist
24	11/16	3/4
16	5/8	5/8
48 [a]	1 1/2 T & G	N/A
54 [b]		
60 [c]		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

N/A = Not Applicable.

a. For this support spacing, lumber sheathing shall have a minimum F_b of 675 and minimum E of 1,100,000 (see ANSI AWC NDS).
b. For this support spacing, lumber sheathing shall have a minimum F_b of 765 and minimum E of 1,400,000 (see ANSI AWC NDS).
c. For this support spacing, lumber sheathing shall have a minimum F_b of 855 and minimum E of 1,700,000 (see ANSI AWC NDS).

503.2 Wood structural panel sheathing.

503.2.1 Identification and grade. Wood structural panel sheathing used for structural purposes shall conform to CSA O325, CSA O437, DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2. Panels shall be identified for grade, bond classification and Performance Category by a grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an approved agency. The Performance Category value shall be used as the "nominal panel thickness" or "panel thickness" wherever referenced in this code

503.2.1.1 Subfloor and combined subfloor underlayment. Where used as subflooring or combination subfloor underlayment, wood structural panels shall be of one of the grades specified in Table 503.2.1.1(1). Where sanded plywood is used as combination subfloor underlayment, the grade, bond classification, and Performance Category shall be as specified in Table 503.2.1.1(2).

TABLE 503.2.1.1(1)
ALLOWABLE SPANS AND LOADS FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS FOR ROOF AND SUBFLOOR SHEATHING AND COMBINATION SUBFLOOR UNDERLAYMENT [a, b, c]

SPAN RATING	MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inch)	ALLOWABLE LIVE LOAD (psf) [h, l]		MAXIMUM SPAN (inches)		LOAD (pounds per square foot, at maximum span)		MAXIMUM SPAN (inches)
		SPAN @ 16″ o.c.	SPAN @ 24″ o.c.	With edge support [d]	Without edge support	Total load	Live load	
Sheathing [e]				Roof [f]				Subfloor [j]
16/0	3/8	30	—	16	16	40	30	0
20/0	3/8	50	—	20	20	40	30	0
24/0	3/8	100	30	24	20[g]	40	30	0
24/16	7/16	100	40	24	24	50	40	16
32/16	15/32, 1/2	180	70	32	28	40	30	16 [h]
40/20	19/32, 5/8	305	130	40	32	40	30	20 [h, i]
48/24	23/32, 3/4	—	175	48	36	45	35	24
60/32	7/8	—	305	60	48	45	35	32
Underlayment, C-C plugged, single floor [e]				Roof [f]				Combination subfloor underlayment [k]
16 o.c.	19/32, 5/8	100	40	24	24	50	40	16 [i]
20 o.c.	19/32, 5/8	150	60	32	32	40	30	20 [i, j]
24 o.c.	23/32, 3/4	240	100	48	36	35	25	24
32 o.c.	7/8	—	185	48	40	50	40	32
48 o.c.	1-3/32, 1-1/8	—	290	60	48	50	40	48

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The allowable total loads were determined using a dead load of 10 psf. If the dead load exceeds 10 psf, then the live load shall be reduced accordingly.

b. Panels continuous over two or more spans with long dimension (strength axis) perpendicular to supports. Spans shall be limited to

values shown because of possible effect of concentrated loads.

c. Applies to panels 24 inches or wider.

d. Lumber blocking, panel edge clips (one midway between each support, except two equally spaced between supports where span is 48 inches), tongue-and- groove panel edges, or other approved type of edge support.

e. Includes Structural I panels in these grades.

f. Uniform load deflection limitation: $^1/_{180}$ of span under live load plus dead load, $^1/_{240}$ of span under live load only.

g. Maximum span 24 inches for $^{15}/_{32}$ - and $^1/_2$ -inch panels.

h. Maximum span 24 inches where $^3/_4$ -inch wood finish flooring is installed at right angles to joists.

i. Maximum span 24 inches where 1.5 inches of lightweight concrete or approved cellular concrete is placed over the subfloor.

j. Unsupported edges shall have tongue-and-groove joints or shall be supported with blocking unless minimum nominal $^1/_4$ -inch-thick wood panel-type underlayment, fiber-cement underlayment with end and edge joints offset not less than 2 inches or $1^1/_2$ inches of lightweight concrete or approved cellular concrete is placed over the subfloor, or $^3/_4$ -inch wood finish flooring is installed at right angles to the supports. Fiber-cement underlayment shall comply with ASTM C1288 or ISO 8336 Category C. Allowable uniform live load at maximum span, based on deflection of $^1/_{360}$ of span, is 100 psf.

k. Unsupported edges shall have tongue-and-groove joints or shall be supported by blocking unless nominal $^1/_4$ -inch-thick wood panel-type underlayment, fiber- cement underlayment with end and edge joints offset not less than 2 inches or $^3/_4$ -inch wood finish flooring is installed at right angles to the supports. Fiber-cement underlayment shall comply with ASTM C1288 or ISO 8336 Category C. Allowable uniform live load at maximum span, based on deflection of $^1/_{360}$ of span, is 100 psf, except panels with a span rating of 48 on center are limited to 65 psf total uniform load at maximum span.

l. Allowable live load values at spans of 16 inches on center and 24 inches on center taken from reference standard APA E30, APA Engineered Wood Construction Guide. Refer to reference standard for allowable spans not listed in the table.

TABLE 503.2.1.1(2)
ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR SANDED PLYWOOD COMBINATION SUBFLOOR UNDERLAYMENT [a]

IDENTIFICATION	SPACING OF JOISTS (inches)		
	16	20	24
Species group [b]	—	—	—
1	$^1/_2$	$^5/_8$	$^3/_4$
2, 3	$^5/_8$	$^3/_4$	$^7/_8$
4	$^3/_4$	$^7/_8$	1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Plywood continuous over two or more spans and face grain perpendicular to supports. Unsupported edges shall be tongue-and-groove or blocked except where nominal $^1/_4$ -inch-thick wood panel-type underlayment, fiber- cement underlayment or $^3/_4$ -inch wood finish floor is used. Fiber-cement underlayment shall comply with ASTM C1288 or ISO 8336 Category C. Allowable uniform live load at maximum span based on deflection of $^1/_{360}$ of span is 100 psf.

b. Applicable to all grades of sanded exterior-type plywood.

503.2.2 Allowable spans. The maximum allowable span for wood structural panels used as subfloor or combination subfloor underlayment shall be as set forth in Table 503.2.1.1(1), or APA E30. The maximum span for sanded plywood combination subfloor underlayment shall be as set forth in Table 503.2.1.1(2).

503.2.3 Installation. Wood structural panels used as subfloor or combination subfloor underlayment shall be attached to wood framing in accordance with Table 602.3(1) and shall be attached to cold-formed steel framing in accordance with Table 505.3.1(2).

503.3 Particleboard.

503.3.1 Identification and grade. Particleboard shall conform to ANSI A208.1 and shall be so identified by a grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an approved agency.

503.3.2 Floor underlayment. Particleboard floor underlayment shall conform to Type PBU and shall be not less than 1/4 -inch (6.4 mm) in thickness.

503.3.3 Installation. Particleboard underlayment shall be installed in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and attached to framing in accordance with Table 602.3(1).

SECTION 504
PRESSURE PRESERVATIVE-TREATED WOOD FLOORS (ON GROUND)

504.1 General. Pressure preservative-treated wood basement floors and floors on ground shall be designed to withstand axial forces and bending moments resulting from lateral soil pressures at the base of the exterior walls and floor live and dead loads. Floor framing shall be designed to meet joist deflection requirements in accordance with Section 301.

504.1.1 Unbalanced soil loads. Unless special provision is made to resist sliding caused by unbalanced lateral soil loads, wood basement floors shall be limited to applications where the differential depth of fill on opposite exterior foundation walls is 2 feet (610 mm) or less.

504.1.2 Construction. Joists in wood basement floors shall bear tightly against the narrow face of studs in the foundation wall or directly against a band joist that bears on the studs. Plywood subfloor shall be continuous over lapped joists or over butt joints between in-line joists. Sufficient blocking shall be provided between joists to transfer lateral forces at the base of the end walls into the floor system.

504.1.3 Uplift and buckling. Where required, resistance to uplift or restraint against buckling shall be provided by interior bearing walls or properly designed stub walls anchored in the supporting soil below.

504.2 Site preparation. The area within the foundation walls shall have all

vegetation, topsoil and foreign material removed, and any fill material that is added shall be free of vegetation and foreign material. The fill shall be compacted to ensure uniform support of the pressure preservative- treated wood floor sleepers.

504.2.1 Base. A minimum 4-inch-thick (102 mm) granular base of gravel having a maximum size of $^3/_4$ -inch (19.1 mm) or crushed stone having a maximum size of $^1/_2$ -inch (12.7 mm) shall be placed over the compacted earth.

504.2.2 Moisture barrier. Polyethylene sheeting of minimum 6-mil (0.15 mm) thickness shall be placed over the granular base. Joints shall be lapped 6 inches (152 mm) and left unsealed. The polyethylene membrane shall be placed over the pressure preservative-treated wood sleepers and shall not extend beneath the footing plates of the exterior walls.

504.3 Materials. Framing materials, including sleepers, joists, blocking and plywood subflooring, shall be pressure preservative-treated and dried after treatment in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Special Requirement 4.2), and shall bear the label of an *approved* agency.

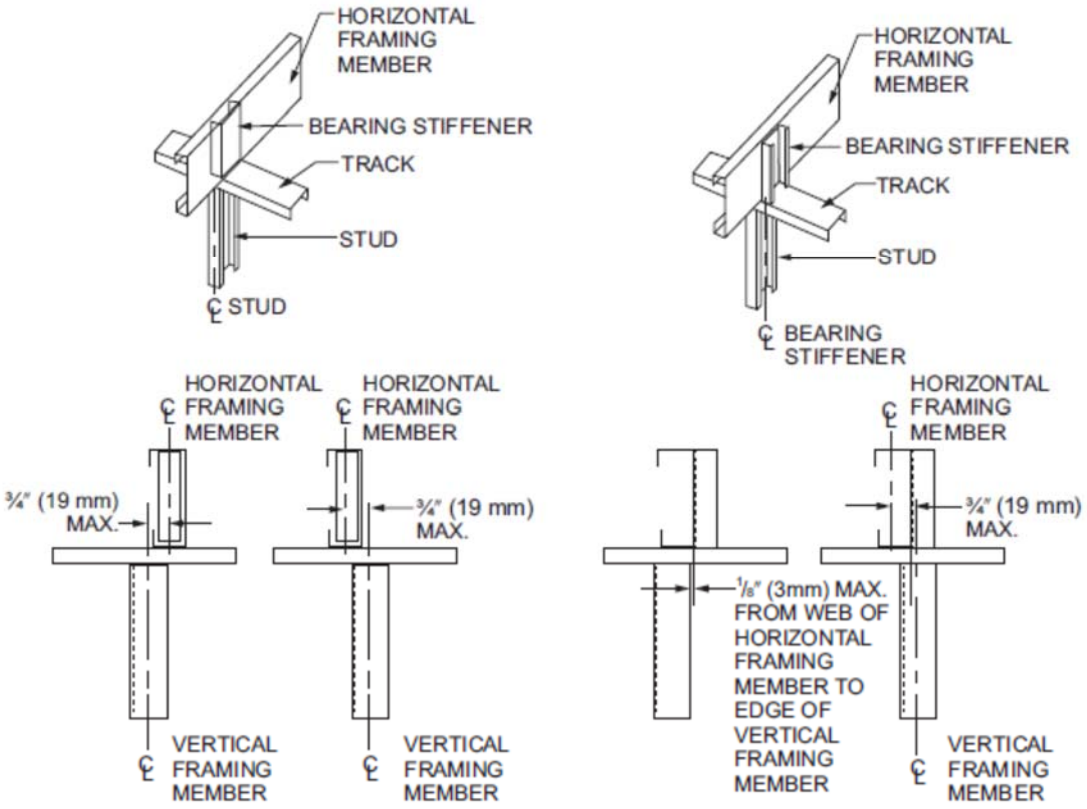
SECTION 505
COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR FRAMING

505.1 Cold-formed steel floor framing. Elements shall be straight and free of any defects that would significantly affect structural performance. Cold-formed steel floor framing members shall be in accordance with the requirements of this section.

505.1.1 Applicability limits. The provisions of this section shall control the construction of cold-formed steel floor framing for buildings not greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length perpendicular to the joist span, not greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in width parallel to the joist span and less than or equal to three stories above grade plane. Cold-formed steel floor framing constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to sites where the ultimate design wind speed is less than 140 miles per hour (63 m/s), Exposure Category B or C, and the ground snow load is less than or equal to 70 pounds per square foot (3.35 kPa).

505.1.2 In-line framing. Where supported by cold-formed steel-framed walls in accordance with Section 603, cold-formed steel floor framing shall be constructed with floor joists located in-line with load-bearing studs located below the joists in accordance with Figure 505.1.2 and the tolerances specified as follows:

1. The maximum tolerance shall be $^{3}/_{4}$ -inch (19.1 mm) between the centerline of the horizontal framing member and the centerline of the vertical framing member.
2. Where the centerline of the horizontal framing member and bearing stiffener are located to one side of the centerline of the vertical framing member, the maximum tolerance shall be $^{1}/_{8}$ -inch (3 mm) between the web of the horizontal framing member and the edge of the vertical framing member.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 505.1.2
IN-LINE FRAMING

505.1.3 Floor trusses. Cold-formed steel trusses shall be designed, braced and installed in accordance with AISI S240. In the absence of specific bracing requirements, trusses shall be braced in accordance with accepted industry

practices, such as the SBCA Cold-Formed Steel Building Component Safety Information (CFSBCSI), Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing & Bracing of Cold-Formed Steel Trusses. Truss members shall not be notched, cut or altered in any manner without an approved design.

505.2 Structural framing. Load-bearing cold-formed steel floor framing members shall be in accordance with this section.

505.2.1 Material. Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall be cold formed to shape from structural quality sheet steel complying with the requirements of ASTM A1003: Structural Grades 33 Type H and 50 Type H.

505.2.2 Corrosion protection. Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing shall have a metallic coating complying with ASTM A1003 and one of the following:

1. Not less than G 60 in accordance with ASTM A653.
2. Not less than AZ 50 in accordance with ASTM A792.

505.2.3 Dimension, thickness and material grade. Load-bearing cold-formed steel floor framing members shall comply with Figure 505.2.3(1) and with the dimensional and thickness requirements specified in Table 505.2.3. Additionally, all C-shaped sections shall have a minimum flange width of 1.625 -inches (41 mm) and a maximum flange width of 2 inches (51 mm). The minimum lip size for C-shaped sections shall be $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm). Track sections shall comply with Figure 505.2.3(2) and shall have a minimum flange width of $1^1/_4$ -inch (32 mm). Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used wherever 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses are specified. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used wherever 54 and 68 mil thicknesses are specified.

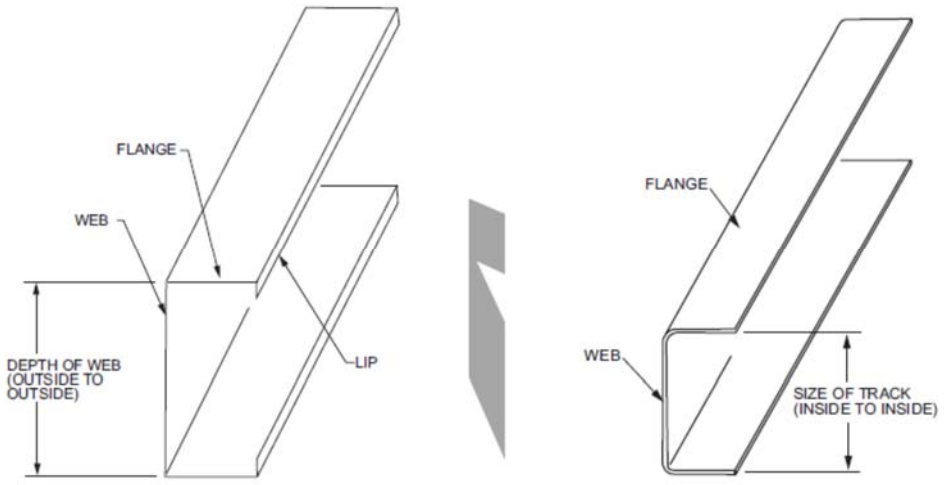


FIGURE 505.2.3(1)
C SHAPED SECTION

FIGURE 505.2.3(2)
TRACK SECTION

TABLE 505.2.3
COLD-FORMED STEEL JOIST SIZES AND THICKNESS

MEMBER DESIGNATION [a]	WEB DEPTH (inches)	MINIMUM BASE STEEL THICKNESS mil (inches)
550S162-t	5.5	33 (0.0329), 43 (0.0428), 54 (0.0538), 68 (0.0677)
800S162-t	8	33 (0.0329), 43 (0.0428), 54 (0.0538), 68 (0.0677)
1000S162-t	10	43 (0.0428), 54 (0.0538), 68 (0.0677)
1200S162-t	12	43 (0.0428), 54 (0.0538), 68 (0.0677)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

a. The member designation is defined by the first number representing the member depth in 0.01 inch, the letter "S" representing a stud or joist member, the second number representing the flange width in 0.01 inch, and the letter "t" shall be a number representing the minimum base metal thickness in mils.

505.2.4 Identification. Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall have a legible label, stencil, stamp or embossment with the following information as a minimum:

1. Manufacturer's identification.
2. Minimum base steel thickness in inches (mm).
3. Minimum coating designation.
4. Minimum yield strength, in kips per square inch (ksi) (MPa).

505.2.5 Fastening. Screws for steel-to-steel connections shall be installed with a minimum edge distance and center-to-center spacing of $^1/_2$ -inch (12.7 mm), shall be self-drilling tapping, and shall conform to ASTM C1513. Floor sheathing shall be attached to cold-formed steel joists with minimum No. 8 self-drilling tapping screws that conform to ASTM C1513. Screws attaching floor sheathing to cold-formed steel joists shall have a minimum head diameter of 0.292-inch (7.4 mm) with countersunk heads and shall be installed with a minimum edge distance of $^3/_8$ -inch (9.5 mm). Gypsum board ceilings shall be attached to cold- formed steel joists with minimum No. 6 screws conforming to ASTM C954 or ASTM C1513 with a bugle-head style and shall be installed in accordance with Section R702. For all connections, screws shall extend through the steel not fewer than three exposed threads. Fasteners shall have a rust-inhibitive coating suitable for the installation in which they are being used, or be manufactured from material not susceptible to corrosion.

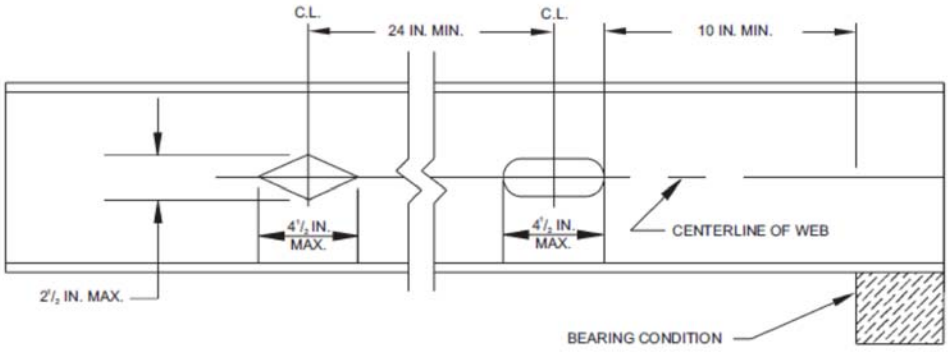
505.2.6 Web holes, web hole reinforcing and web hole patching. Web holes, web hole reinforcing, and web hole patching shall be in accordance with this

section.

505.2.6.1 Web holes. Web holes in floor joists shall comply with all of the following conditions:

1. Holes shall conform to Figure 505.2.6.1.
2. Holes shall be permitted only along the centerline of the web of the framing member.
3. Holes shall have a center-to-center spacing of not less than 24 inches (610 mm).
4. Holes shall have a web hole width not greater than 0.5 times the member depth, or $2^1/_2$ -inches (64.5 mm).
5. Holes shall have a web hole length not exceeding $4^1/_2$ -inches (114 mm)
6. Holes shall have a minimum distance between the edge of the bearing surface and the edge of the web hole of not less than 10 inches (254 mm).

Framing members with web holes not conforming to these requirements shall be reinforced in accordance with Section 505.2.6.2, patched in accordance with Section 505.2.6.3 or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practices.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

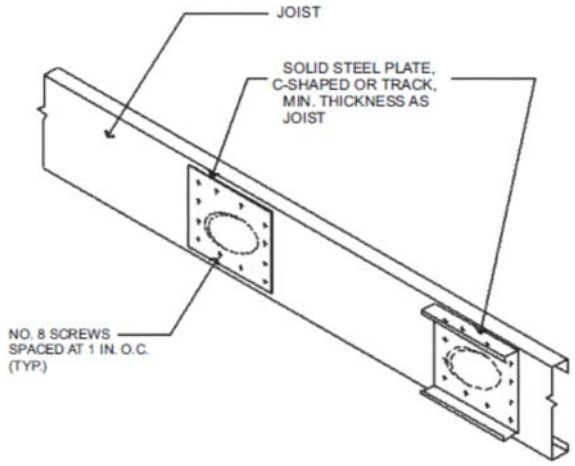
FIGURE 505.2.6.1
FLOOR JOIST WEB HOLES

505.2.6.2 Web hole reinforcing. Reinforcement of web holes in floor joists not conforming to the requirements of Section 505.2.6.1 shall be permitted if the hole is located fully within the center 40 percent of the span and the depth and length of the hole does not exceed 65 percent of the flat width of the web. The rein- forcing shall be a steel plate or C-shaped section with a

hole that does not exceed the web hole size limitations of Section 505.2.6.1 for the member being reinforced. The steel reinforcing shall be not thinner than the thickness of the receiving member and shall extend not less than 1 inch (25 mm) beyond all edges of the hole. The steel reinforcing shall be fastened to the web of the receiving member with No. 8 screws spaced not more than 1 inch (25 mm) center-to-center along the edges of the patch with minimum edge distance of $^1/_2$ -inch (12.7 mm).

505.2.6.3 Hole patching. Patching of web holes in floor joists not conforming to the requirements in Section 505.2.6.1 shall be permitted in accordance with either of the following methods:

1. Framing members shall be replaced or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practices where web holes exceed the following size limits:
   1.1. The depth of the hole, measured across the web, exceeds 70 percent of the flat width of the web.
   1.2. The length of the hole, measured along the web, exceeds 10 inches (254 mm) or the depth of the web, whichever is greater.
2. Web holes not exceeding the dimensional requirements in Section 505.2.6.3, Item 1, shall be patched with a solid steel plate, stud section or track section in accordance with Figure 505.2.6.3. The steel patch shall, as a minimum, be of the same thickness as the receiving member and shall extend not less than 1 inch (25 mm) beyond all edges of the hole. The steel patch shall be fastened to the web of the receiving member with No. 8 screws spaced not more than 1 inch (25 mm) center-to-center along the edges of the patch with minimum edge distance of $^1/_2$ -inch (12.7 mm).



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 505.2.6.3
FLOOR JOIST WEB HOLE PATCH

505.3 Floor construction. Cold-formed steel floors shall be constructed in accordance with this section.

505.3.1 Floor-to-foundation or load-bearing wall connections. Cold-formed steel-framed floors shall be anchored to foundations, wood sills or load-bearing walls in accordance with Table 505.3.1(1) and Figure 505.3.1(1), 505.3.1(2), 505.3.1(3), 505.3.1(4), 505.3.1(5) or 505.3.1(6). Anchor bolts shall be located not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from corners or the termination of bottom tracks. Continuous cold-formed steel joists supported by interior load-bearing walls shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 505.3.1(7). Lapped cold-formed steel joists shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 505.3.1(8). End floor joists constructed on foundation walls parallel to the joist span shall be doubled unless a C-shaped bearing stiffener, sized in accordance with Section 505.3.4, is installed web-to-web with the floor joist beneath each supported wall stud, as shown in Figure 505.3.1(9). Fastening of cold-formed steel joists to other framing members shall be in accordance with Section 505.2.5 and Table 505.3.1(2).

TABLE 505.3.1(1)
FLOOR-TO-FOUNDATION OR BEARING WALL CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS [a, b]

FRAMING CONDITION	BASIC ULTIMATE WIND SPEED (mph) AND EXPOSURE	
	110 mph Exposure Category C or less than 139 mph Exposure Category B	Less than 139 mph Exposure Category C
Floor joist to wall track of exterior wall in accordance with Figure 505.3.1(1)	2-No. 8 screws	3-No. 8 screws
Rim track or end joist to load-bearing wall top track in accordance with Figure 505.3.1(1)	1-No. 8 screw at 24 inches o.c.	1-No. 8 screw at 24 inches o.c.
Rim track or end joist to wood sill in accordance with Figure 505.3.1(2)	Steel plate spaced at 4 feet o.c. with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails	Steel plate spaced at 2 feet o.c. with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails
Rim track or end joist to foundation in accordance with Figure 505.3.1(3)	1/2 -inch minimum diameter anchor bolt and clip-angle spaced at 6 feet o.c. with 8-No. 8 screws	1/2 -inch minimum diameter anchor bolt and clip angle spaced at 4 feet o.c. with 8-No. 8 screws
Cantilevered joist to foundation in accordance with Figure 505.3.1(4)	1/2 -inch minimum diameter anchor bolt and clip-angle spaced at 6 feet o.c. with 8-No. 8 screws	1/2 -inch minimum diameter anchor bolt and clip angle spaced at 4 feet o.c. with 8-No. 8 screws
Cantilevered joist to wood sill in accordance with Figure 505.3.1(5)	Steel plate spaced at 4 feet o.c. with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails	Steel plate spaced at 2 feet o.c. with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails
Cantilevered joist to exterior load-bearing wall track in accordance with Figure 505.3.1(6)	2-No. 8 screws	3-No. 8 screws

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Anchor bolts are to be located not more than 12 inches from corners or the termination of bottom tracks such as at door openings or corners. Bolts extend not less than 15 inches into masonry or 7 inches into concrete. Anchor bolts connecting cold-formed steel

framing to the foundation structure are to be installed so that the distance from the center of the bolt hole to the edge of the connected member is not less than one and one-half bolt diameters.

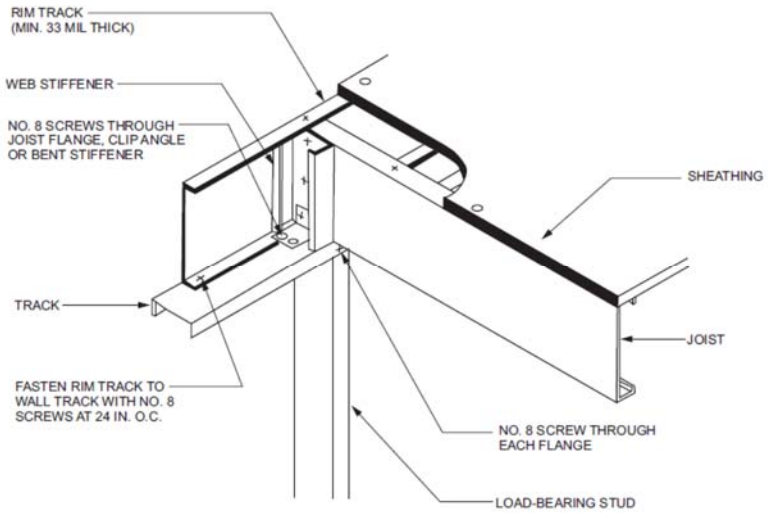
b. All screw sizes shown are minimum.

TABLE 505.3.1(2)
FLOOR FASTENING SCHEDULE [a]

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND SIZE OF FASTENERS	SPACING OF FASTENERS
Floor joist to track of an interior load-bearing wall in accordance with Figures 505.3.1(7) and 505.3.1(8)	2 No. 8 screws	Each joist
Floor joist to track at end of joist	2 No. 8 screws	One per flange or two per bearing stiffener
Subfloor to floor joists	No. 8 screws	6 in. o.c. on edges and 12 in. o.c. at intermediate supports

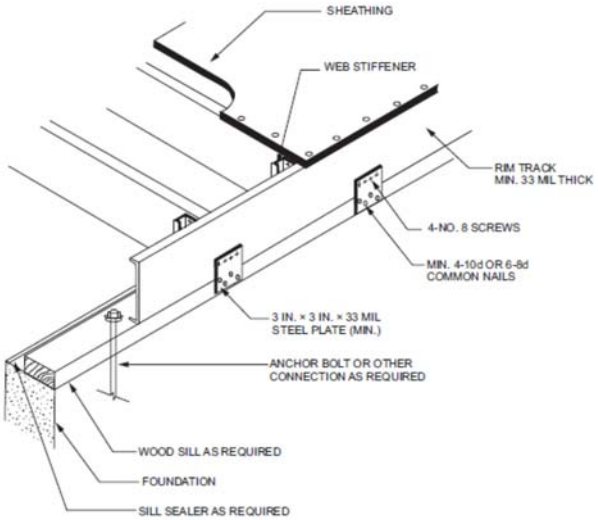
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. All screw sizes shown are minimum.



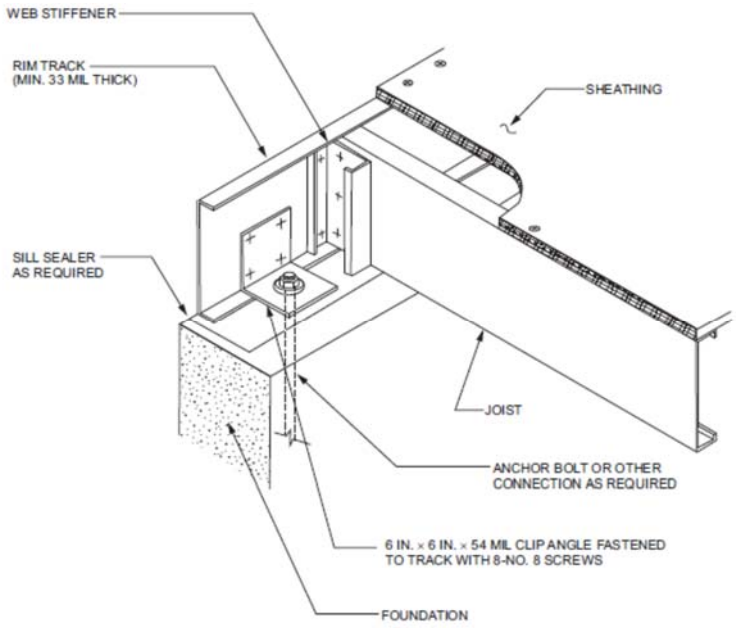
For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.1(1)
FLOOR-TO-EXTERIOR LOAD-BEARING WALL STUD CONNECTION



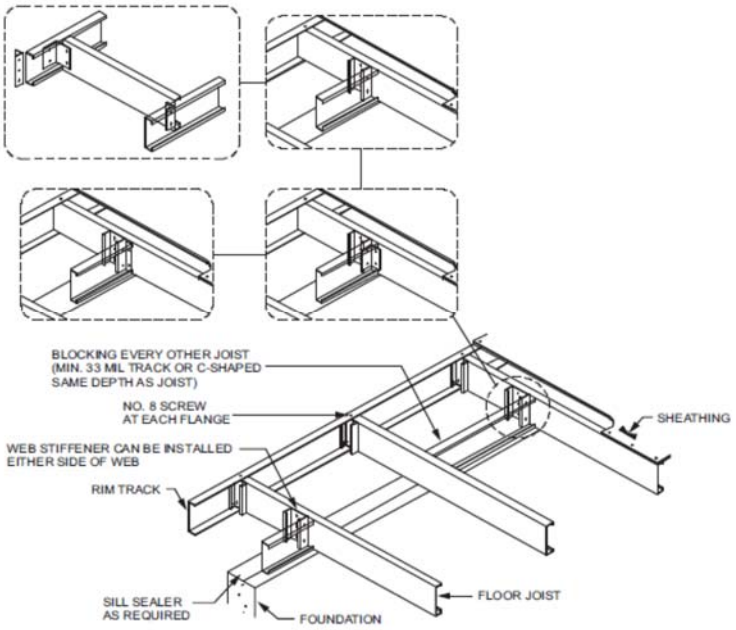
For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.1(2)
FLOOR-TO-WOOD-SILL CONNECTION



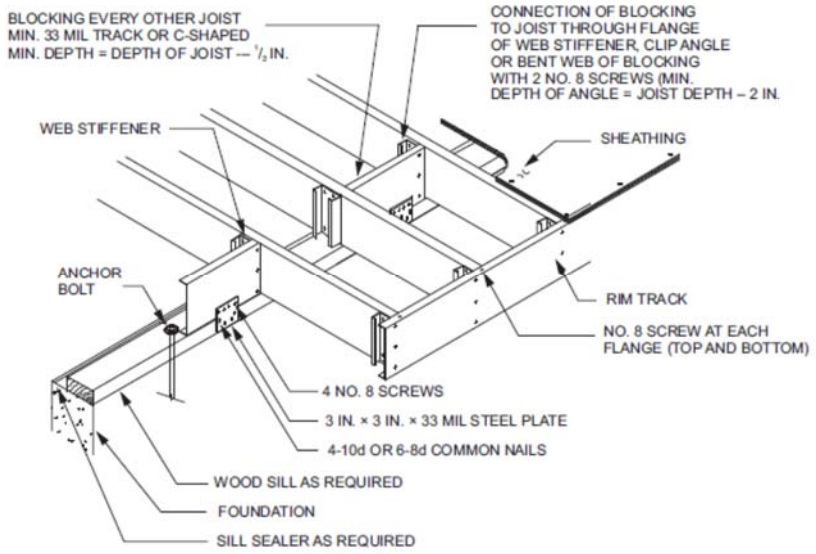
For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.1(3)
FLOOR-TO-FOUNDATION CONNECTION



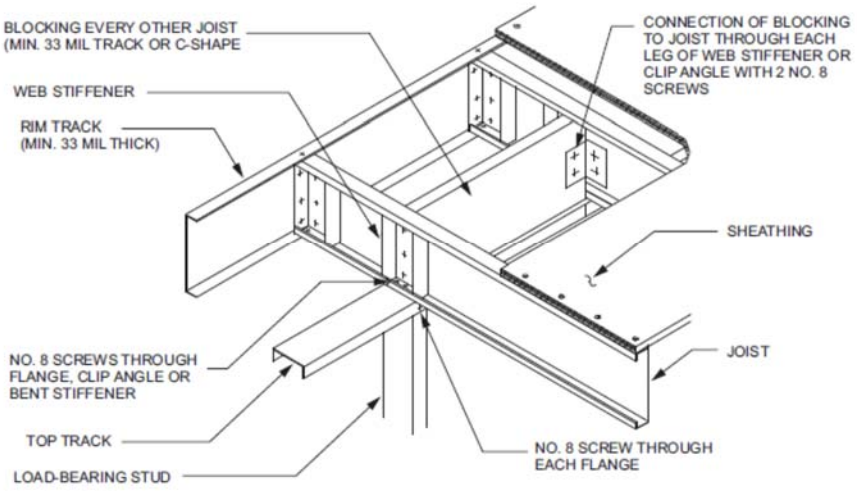
For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.1(4)
CANTILEVERED FLOOR-TO-FOUNDATION CONNECTION



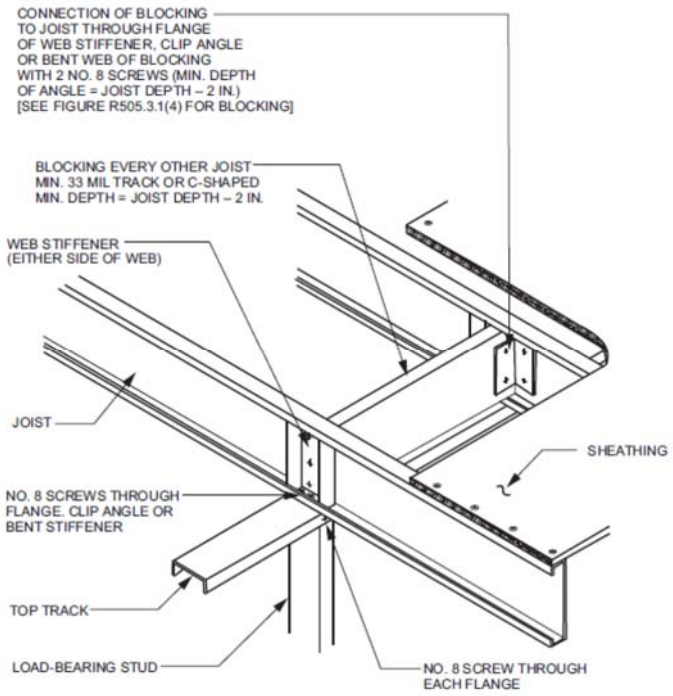
For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.1(5)
CANTILEVERED FLOOR-TO-WOOD-SILL CONNECTION



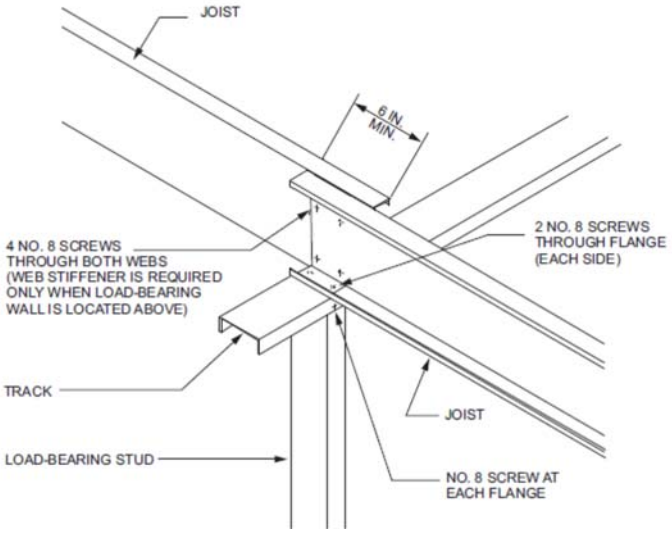
For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.1(6)
CANTILEVERED FLOOR TO EXTERIOR LOAD-BEARING WALL CONNECTION



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.1(7)
CONTINUOUS SPAN JOIST SUPPORTED ON INTERIOR LOAD-BEARING WALL



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.1(8)
LAPPED JOISTS SUPPORTED ON INTERIOR LOAD-BEARING WALL

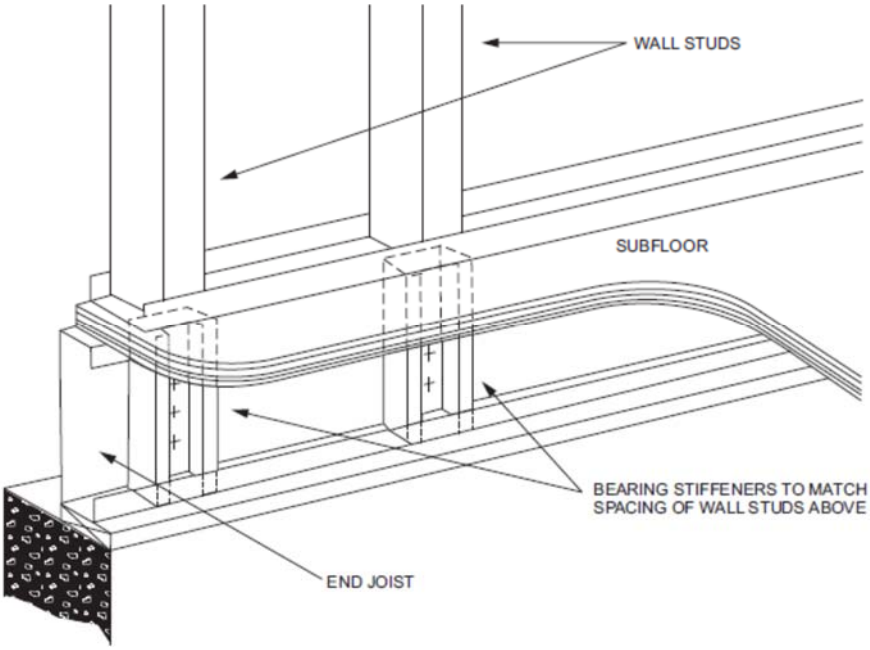


FIGURE 505.3.1(9)
BEARING STIFFENERS FOR END JOISTS

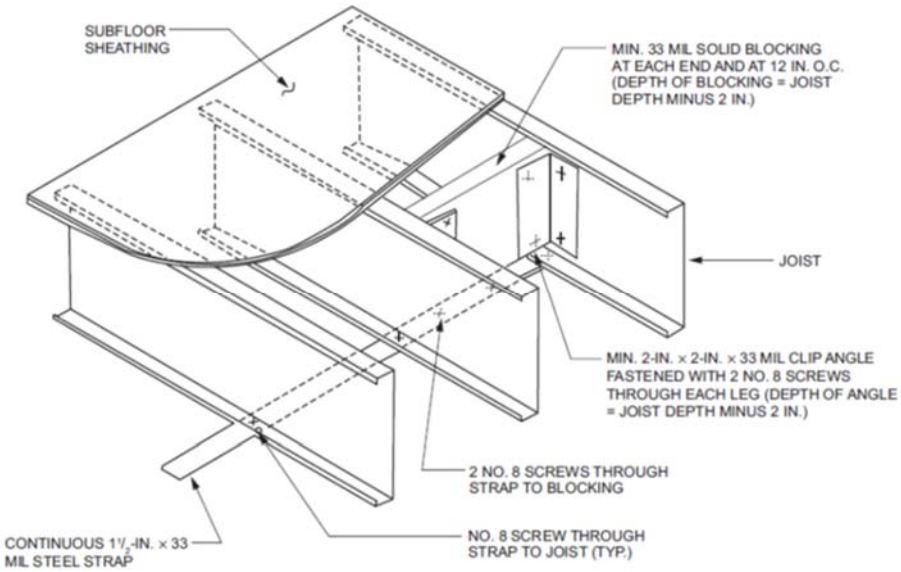
505.3.2 Minimum floor joist sizes. Floor joist size and thickness shall be determined in accordance with the limits set forth in Table 505.3.2 for single or continuous spans. Where continuous joist members are used, the interior bearing supports shall be located within 2 feet (610 mm) of mid-span of the cold-formed steel joists, and the individual spans shall not exceed the spans in Table 505.3.2. Floor joists shall have a bearing support length of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) for exterior wall supports and $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) for interior wall supports. Tracks shall be not less than 33 mils (0.84 mm) thick except where used as part of a floor header or trimmer in accordance with Section 505.3.8. Bearing stiffeners shall be installed in accordance with Section 505.3.4.

505.3.3 Joist bracing and blocking. Joist bracing and blocking shall be in accordance with this section.

505.3.3.1 Joist top flange bracing. The top flanges of cold-formed steel joists shall be laterally braced by the application of floor sheathing fastened to the joists in accordance with Section 505.2.5 and Table 505.3.1(2).

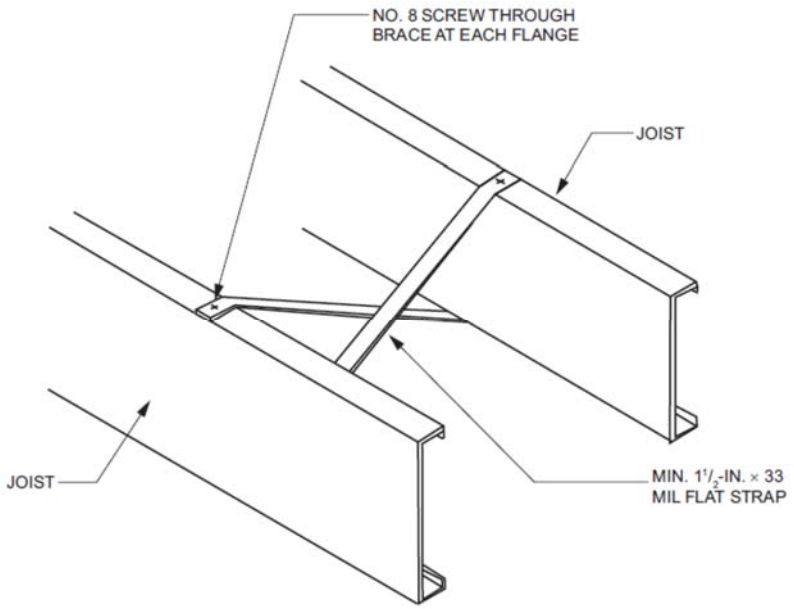
505.3.3.2 Joist bottom flange bracing/blocking. Floor joists with spans that exceed 12 feet (3658 mm) shall have the bottom flanges laterally braced in accordance with one of the following:

1. Gypsum board installed with minimum No. 6 screws in accordance with Section 702.
2. Continuous steel straps installed in accordance with Figure 505.3.3.2(1). Steel straps shall be spaced at not greater than 12 feet (3658 mm) on center and shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in width and 33 mils (0.84 mm) in thick- ness. Straps shall be fastened to the bottom flange of each joist with one No. 8 screw, fastened to blocking with two No. 8 screws, and fastened at each end (of strap) with two No. 8 screws. Blocking in accordance with Figure 505.3.3.2(1) or 505.3.3.2(2) shall be installed between joists at each end of the continuous strapping and at a maximum spacing of 12 feet (3658 mm) measured along the continuous strapping (perpendicular to the joist run). Blocking shall also be located at the termination of all straps. As an alternative to blocking at the ends, anchoring the strap to a stable building component with two No. 8 screws shall be permitted.



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.3.2(1)
JOIST BLOCKING (SOLID)



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.3.2(2)
JOIST BLOCKING (STRAP)

TABLE 505.3.2
ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR COLD-FORMED STEEL JOISTS—
SINGLE OR CONTINUOUS SPANS [a, b, c, d, e, f]

JOIST DESIGNATION	30 PSF LIVE LOAD				40 PSF LIVE LOAD			
	Spacing (inches)				Spacing (inches)			
	12	16	19.2	24	12	16	19.2	24
550S162-33	11′-8″	10′-4″	9′-5″	8′-5″	10′-7″	9′-2″	8′-5″	7′-6″
550S162-43	12′-8″	11′-6″	10′-8″	10′-5″	11′-6″	10′-4″	9′-10″	9′-3″
550S162-54	13′-7″	12′-4″	11′-7″	10′-9″	12′-4″	11′-3″	10′-7″	9′-10″
550S162-68	14′-7″	13′-3″	12′-6″	11′-7″	13′-3″	12′-0″	11′-4″	10′-6″
800S162-33	14′-6″	12′-6″	11′-5″	10′-3″	12′-10″	11′-1″	10′-2″	9′-1″
800S162-43	17′-0″	15′-1″	13′-9″	12′-4″	15′-5″	13′-5″	12′-3″	10′-11″
800S162-54	18′-3″	16′-7″	15′-8″	14′-6″	16′-7″	15′-1″	14′-2″	13′-2″
800S162-68	19′-9″	17′-11″	16′-11″	15′-8″	17′-11″	16′-3″	15′-4″	14′-3″
1000S162-43	19′-4″	16′-9″	15′-3″	13′-8″	17′-2″	14′-10″	13′-7″	12′-2″
1000S162-54	21′-9″	19′-9″	18′-7″	17′-3″	19′-9″	18′-0″	16′-11″	15′-8″
1000S162-68	23′-7″	21′-5″	20′-2″	18′-9″	21′-5″	19′-6″	18′-4″	17′-0″
1200S162-54	25′-1″	22′-10″	21′-6″	19′-9″	22′-10″	20′-9″	19′-6″	17′-6″
1200S162-68	27′-3″	24′-9″	23′-4″	21′-8″	24′-9″	22′-6″	21′-2″	19′-8″

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

a. Deflection criteria: *L*/480 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.
b. Floor dead load = 10 psf.
c. Table provides the maximum clear span in feet and inches.
d. Bearing stiffeners are to be installed at all support points and concentrated loads.
e. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thickness. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thickness.
f. Table 505.3.2 is not applicable for 800S162-33 and 1000S162-43 continuous joist members.

505.3.3.3 Blocking at interior bearing supports. Blocking is not required for continuous back-to-back floor joists at bearing supports. Blocking shall be installed between every other joist for single continuous floor joists across bearing supports in accordance with Figure 505.3.1(7). Blocking shall consist of C-shaped or track section with a minimum thickness of 33 mils (0.84 mm). Blocking shall be fastened to each adjacent joist through a 33-mil (0.84 mm) clip angle, bent web of blocking or flanges of web stiffeners with two No. 8 screws on each side. The minimum depth of the blocking shall be equal to the depth of the joist minus 2 -inches (51 mm). The minimum length of the angle shall be equal to the depth of the joist minus 2 -inches (51 mm).

505.3.3.4 Blocking at cantilevers. Blocking shall be installed between every other joist over cantilever bearing supports in accordance with Figure 505.3.1(4), 505.3.1(5) or 505.3.1(6). Blocking shall consist of C-shaped or track section with minimum thickness of 33 mils (0.84 mm). Blocking shall

be fastened to each adjacent joist through bent web of blocking, 33 mil clip angle or flange of web stiffener with two No. 8 screws at each end. The depth of the blocking shall be equal to the depth of the joist. The minimum length of the angle shall be equal to the depth of the joist minus 2 -inches (51 mm). Blocking shall be fastened through the floor sheathing and to the support with three No. 8 screws (top and bottom).

505.3.4 Bearing stiffeners. Bearing stiffeners shall be installed at each joist bearing location in accordance with this section, except for joists lapped over an interior sup- port not carrying a load-bearing wall above. Floor joists supporting jamb studs with multiple members shall have two bearing stiffeners in accordance with Figure 505.3.4(1). Bearing stiffeners shall be fabricated from a C-shaped, track or clip angle member in accordance with the one of following:

1. C-shaped bearing stiffeners:
   - 1.1. Where the joist is not carrying a load-bearing wall above, the bearing stiffener shall be a minimum 33 mil (0.84 mm) thickness.
   - 1.2. Where the joist is carrying a load-bearing wall above, the bearing stiffener shall be not less than the same designation thickness as the wall stud above.
2. Track bearing stiffeners:
   - 2.1. Where the joist is not carrying a load-bearing wall above, the bearing stiffener shall be a minimum 43 mil (1.09 mm) thickness.
   - 2.2. Where the joist is carrying a load-bearing wall above, the bearing stiffener shall be not less than one designation thickness greater than the wall stud above.

The minimum length of a bearing stiffener shall be the depth of member being stiffened minus $^{3}/_{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm). Each bearing stiffener shall be fastened to the web of the member it is stiffening as shown in Figure 505.3.4(2).

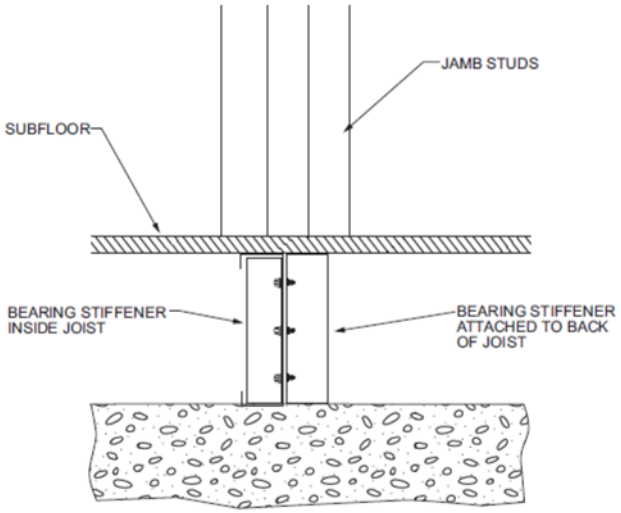
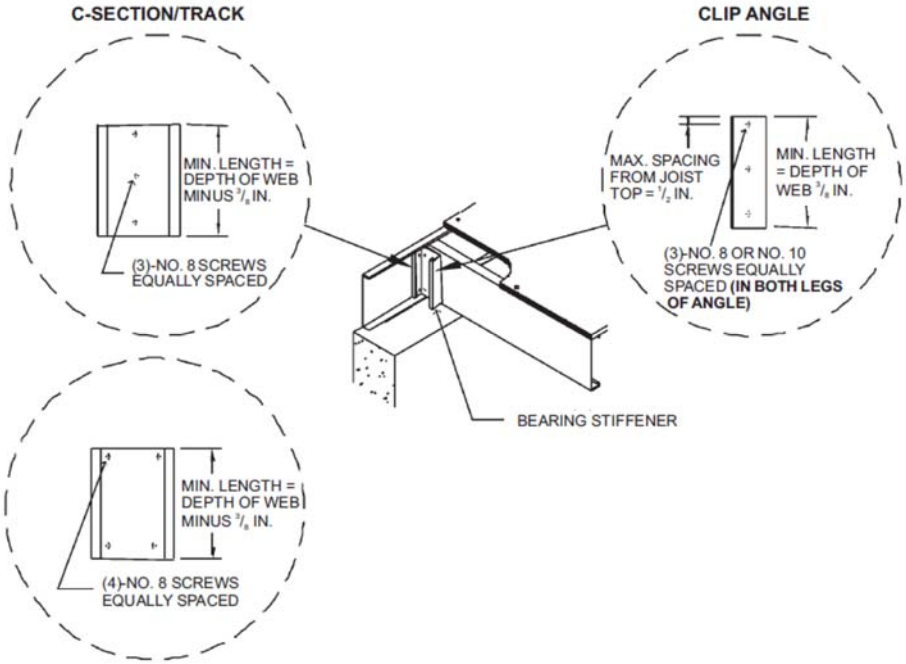


FIGURE 505.3.4(1)
BEARING STIFFENERS UNDER JAMB STUDS



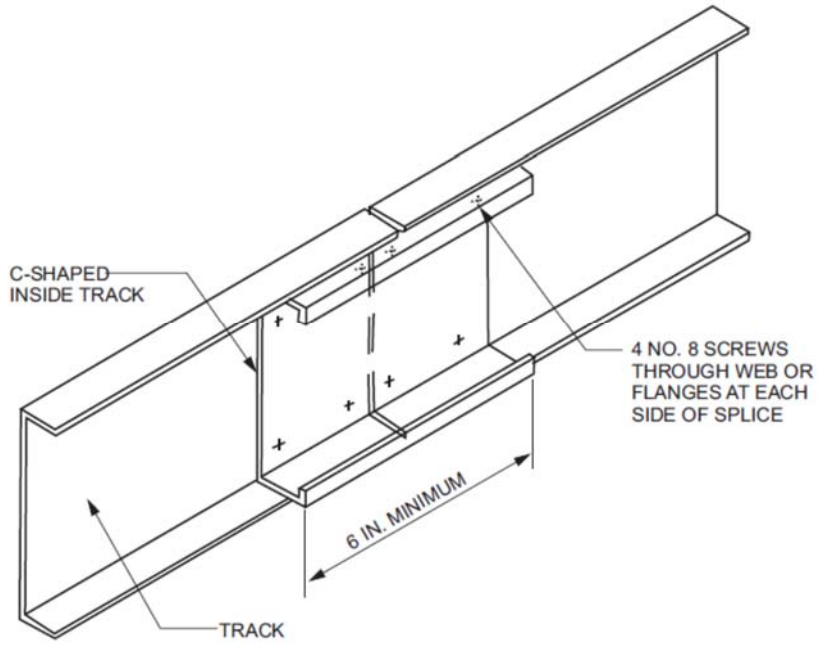
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.4(2)
BEARING STIFFENER

505.3.5 Cutting and notching. Flanges and lips of load- bearing cold-formed steel floor framing members shall not be cut or notched.

505.3.6 Floor cantilevers. Floor cantilevers for the top floor of a two- or three-story building or the first floor of a one-story building shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm). Cantilevers, not exceeding 24 inches (610 mm) and sup- porting two stories and roof (first floor of a two-story building), shall be permitted provided that all cantilevered joists are doubled (nested or back-to-back). The doubled cantilevered joists shall extend not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) toward the inside and shall be fastened with not less than two No. 8 screws spaced at 24 inches (610 mm) on center through the webs (for back-to-back) or flanges (for nested joists).

505.3.7 Splicing. Joists and other structural members shall not be spliced without an approved design. Splicing of tracks shall conform to Figure 505.3.7.



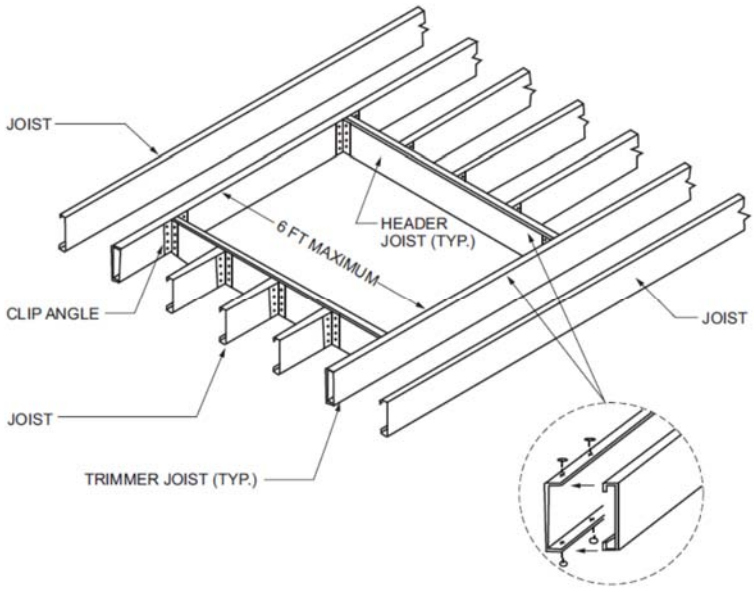
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.7
TRACK SPLICE

505.3.8 Framing of floor openings. Openings in floors shall be framed with

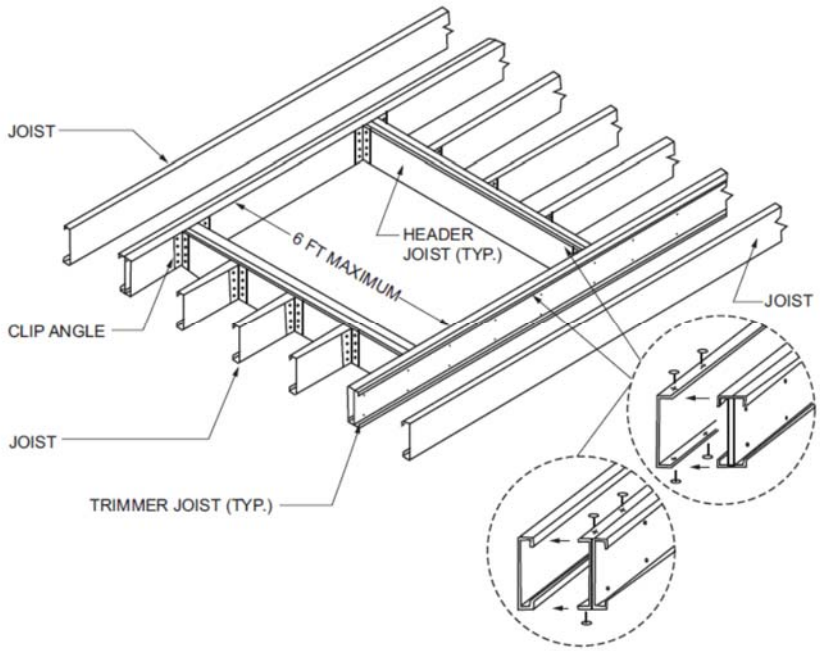
header and trimmer joists. Header joist spans shall not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) or 8 feet (2438 mm) in length in accordance with Figure 505.3.8(1) or 505.3.8(2), respectively. Header and trimmer joists shall be fabricated from joist and track members, having a minimum size and thickness at least equivalent to the adjacent floor joists, and shall be installed in accordance with Figures 505.3.8(1), 505.3.8(2), 505.3.8(3) and 505.3.8(4).

Each header joist shall be connected to trimmer joists with four 2 -inch by 2 -inch (51-mm by 51-mm) clip angles. Each clip angle shall be fastened to both the header and trimmer joists with four No. 8 screws, evenly spaced, through each leg of the clip angle. The clip angles shall have a thickness not less than that of the floor joist. Each track section for a built-up header or trimmer joist shall extend the full length of the joist (continuous).



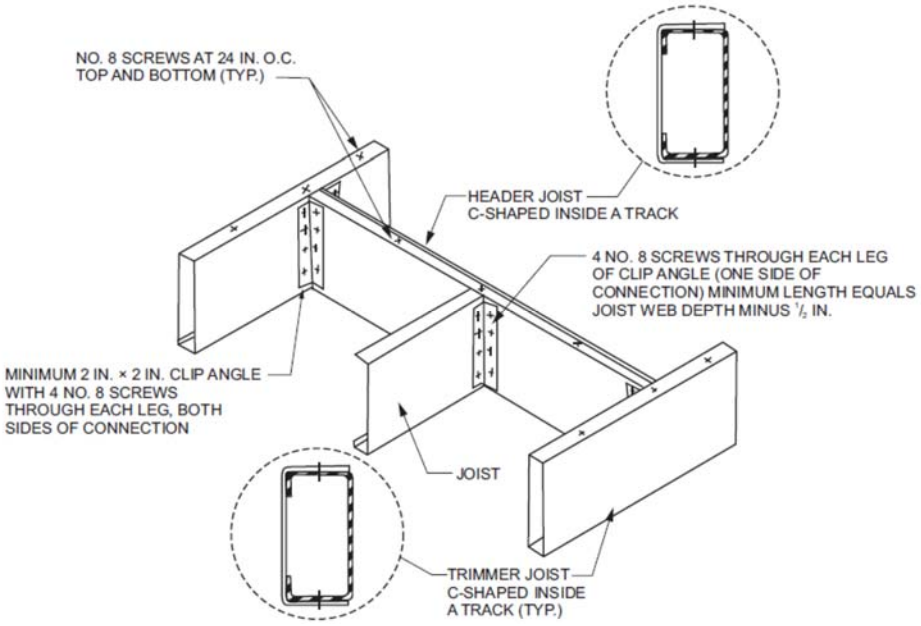
For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.8(1)
COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR CONSTRUCTION—
6-FOOT FLOOR OPENING



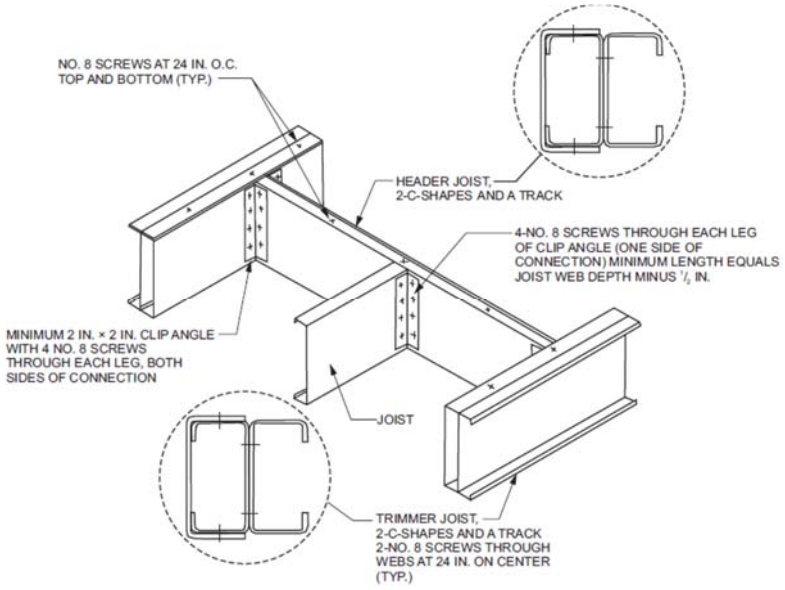
For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.8(2)
COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR CONSTRUCTION—
8-FOOT FLOOR OPENING



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.8(3)
COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR CONSTRUCTION: FLOOR HEADER TO TRIMMER CONNECTION—6-FOOT OPENING



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 505.3.8(4)
COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR CONSTRUCTION: FLOOR HEADER TO TRIMMER CONNECTION—8-FOOT OPENING

SECTION 506
CONCRETE FLOORS (ON GROUND)

506.1 General. Concrete slab-on-ground floors shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section or ACI 332. Floors shall be a minimum $3^1/_2$ -inches (89 mm) thick (for expansive soils, see Section 403.1.8). The specified compressive strength of concrete shall be as set forth in Section 402.2.

506.2 Site preparation. The area within the foundation walls shall have all vegetation, top soil and foreign material removed.

506.2.1 Fill. Fill material shall be free of vegetation and foreign material. The fill shall be compacted to ensure uniform support of the slab, and except where approved, the fill depths shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) for clean sand or gravel and 8 inches (203 mm) for earth.

Exception: *Fills constructed of controlled low-strength material (CLSM) need not be compacted.*

506.2.2 Base. A 4-inch-thick (102 mm) base course consisting of clean graded sand, gravel, crushed stone, crushed concrete or crushed blast-furnace slag passing a 2 -inch (51 mm) sieve shall be placed on the prepared subgrade where the slab is below grade.

Exception: A base course is not required where the concrete slab is installed on well-drained or sand-gravel mixture soils classified as Group I according to the United Soil Classification System in accordance with Table 405.1.

506.2.3 Vapor retarder. A 6-mil (0.006 inch; 152 µm) polyethylene or approved vapor retarder with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) shall be placed between the concrete floor slab and the base course or the prepared subgrade where a base course does not exist.

Exception: The vapor retarder is not required for the following:

1. *Detached garages*, utility buildings and other unheated accessory structures.
2. For unheated storage rooms having an area of less than 70 square feet (6.5 m^2) and carports.
3. Driveways, walks, patios and other flatwork not likely to be enclosed and heated at a later date.
4. Where approved by the building official, based on local site conditions.

506.2.4 Reinforcement support. Where provided in slabs-on-ground, reinforcement shall be supported to remain in place from the center to upper one-third of the slab for the duration of the concrete placement.

SECTION 507
EXTERIOR DECKS

507.1 Decks. Wood-framed decks shall be in accordance with this section. For decks using materials and conditions not prescribed in this section, refer to Section 301.

507.2 Materials. Materials used for the construction of decks shall comply with this section.

507.2.1 Wood materials. Wood materials shall be No. 2 grade or better lumber, preservative-treated in accordance with Section 317, or approved, naturally durable lumber, and termite protected where required in accordance with Section 318. Where design in accordance with Section 301 is provided, wood structural members shall be designed using the wet service factor defined in AWC NDS. Cuts, notches and drilled holes of preservative-treated wood members shall be treated in accordance with Section 317.1.1. All preservative-treated wood products in contact with the ground shall be labeled for such usage.

507.2.1.1 Engineered wood products. Engineered wood products shall be in accordance with Section 502.

507.2.2 Plastic composite deck boards, stair treads, guards, or handrails. Plastic composite exterior deck boards, stair treads, guards and handrails shall comply with the requirements of ASTM D7032 and this section.

507.2.2.1 Labeling. Plastic composite deck boards and stair treads, or their packaging, shall bear a label that indicates compliance with ASTM D7032 and includes the allowable load and maximum allowable span determined in accordance with ASTM D7032. Plastic or composite handrails and guards, or their packaging, shall bear a label that indicates compliance with ASTM D7032 and includes the maximum allowable span determined in accordance with ASTM D7032.

507.2.2.2 Flame spread index. Plastic composite deck boards, stair treads, guards, and handrails shall exhibit a flame spread index not exceeding 200 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 with the test specimen remaining in place during the test.

Exception: Plastic composites determined to be noncombustible.

507.2.2.3 Decay resistance. Plastic composite deck boards, stair treads, guards and handrails containing wood, cellulosic or other biodegradable materials shall be decay resistant in accordance with ASTM D7032.

507.2.2.4 Termite resistance. Where required by Section 318, plastic composite deck boards, stair treads, guards and handrails containing wood, cellulosic or other biodegradable materials shall be termite resistant in accordance with ASTM D7032.

507.2.2.5 Installation of plastic composites. Plastic composite deck boards, stair treads, guards and handrails shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's instructions.

507.2.3 Fasteners and connectors. Metal fasteners and connectors used for all decks shall be in accordance with Section 317.3 and Table 507.2.3.

TABLE 507.2.3
FASTENER AND CONNECTOR SPECIFICATIONS FOR DECKS [a, b]

ITEM	MATERIAL	MINIMUM FINISH/COATING	ALTERNATE FINISH/COATING [e]
Nails and timber rivets	In accordance with ASTM F1667	Hot-dipped galvanized per ASTM A153	Stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper
Bolts [c] Lag screws [d] (including nuts and washers)	In accordance with ASTM A307 (bolts), ASTM A563 (nuts), ASTM F844 (washers)	Hot-dipped galvanized per ASTM A153, Class C (Class D for 3/8 -inch diameter and less) or mechanically galvanized per ASTM B695, Class 55 or 410 stainless steel	Stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper
Metal connectors	Per manufacturer's specification	ASTM A653 type G185 zinc coated galvanized steel or post hot-dipped galvanized per ASTM A123 providing a minimum average coating weight of 2.0 oz./ft^2 (total both sides)	Stainless steel

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Equivalent materials, coatings and finishes shall be permitted.
b. Fasteners and connectors exposed to salt water or located within 300 feet of a salt water shoreline shall be stainless steel.
c. Holes for bolts shall be drilled a minimum 1/32 -inch and a maximum 1/16 -inch larger than the bolt.
d. Lag screws 1/2 -inch and larger shall be predrilled to avoid wood splitting per the National Design Specification (NDS) for Wood Construction.
e. Stainless-steel-driven fasteners shall be in accordance with ASTM F1667.

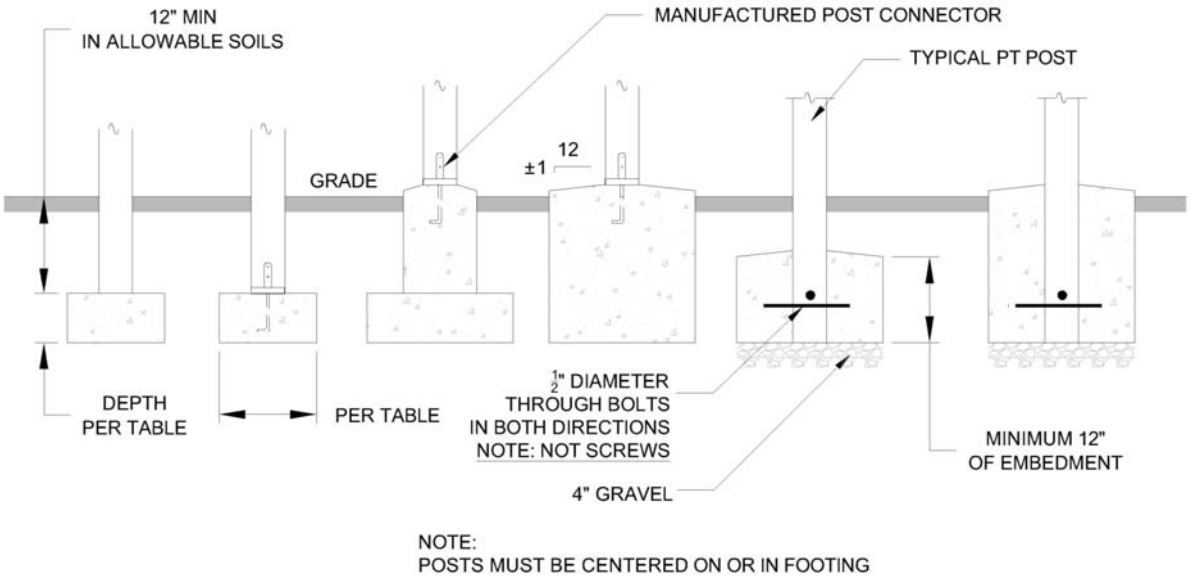
507.2.4 Flashing. Flashing shall be corrosion-resistant metal of nominal thickness not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) or approved nonmetallic material that is compatible with the substrate of the structure and the decking materials.

507.2.5 Alternate materials. Alternative materials, including glass and metals, shall be permitted.

507.3 Footings. Decks shall be supported on concrete footings or other approved structural systems designed to accommodate all loads in accordance with Section 301. Deck footings shall be sized to carry the imposed loads from the deck structure to the ground as shown in Figure 507.3. The footing depth shall be in accordance with Section 403.1.4.

Exception: Free-standing decks consisting of joists directly supported on grade over their entire length.

507.3.1 Minimum size. The minimum size of concrete footings shall be in accordance with Table 507.3.1, based on the tributary area and allowable soil-bearing pressure in accordance with Table 401.4.1.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 507.3
DECK POSTS TO DECK FOOTING CONNECTION

TABLE 507.3.1
MINIMUM FOOTING SIZE FOR DECKS

LIVE OR GROUND SNOW LOAD [b] (psf)	TRIBUTARY AREA (sq. ft.)	LOAD BEARING VALUE OF SOILS [a, c, d] (psf)											
		1500 [a]			2000 [a]			2500 [a]			≥3000 [a]		
		Side of a square footing (inches)	Diameter of a round footing (inches)	Thickness (inches)	Side of a square footing (inches)	Diameter of a round footing (inches)	Thickness (inches)	Side of a square footing (inches)	Diameter of a round footing (inches)	Thickness (inches)	Side of a square footing (inches)	Diameter of a round footing (inches)	Thickness (inches)
40	20	12	14	6	12	14	6	12	14	6	12	14	6
	40	14	16	6	12	14	6	12	14	6	12	14	6
	60	17	19	6	15	17	6	13	15	6	12	14	6
	80	20	22	7	17	19	6	15	17	6	14	16	6
	100	22	25	8	19	21	6	17	19	6	15	17	6
	120	24	27	9	21	23	7	19	21	6	17	19	6
	140	26	29	10	22	25	8	20	23	7	18	21	6
	160	28	31	11	24	27	9	21	24	8	20	22	7
50	20	12	14	6	12	14	6	12	14	6	12	14	6
	40	15	17	6	13	15	6	12	14	6	12	14	6
	60	19	21	6	16	18	6	14	16	6	13	15	6
	80	21	24	8	19	21	6	17	19	6	15	17	6
	100	24	27	9	21	23	7	19	21	6	17	19	6
	120	26	30	10	23	26	8	20	23	7	19	21	6
	140	28	32	11	25	28	9	22	25	8	20	23	7
	160	30	34	12	26	30	10	24	27	9	21	24	8
60	20	12	14	6	12	14	6	12	14	6	12	14	6
	40	16	19	6	14	16	6	13	14	6	12	14	6
	60	20	23	7	17	20	6	16	18	6	14	16	6
	80	23	26	9	20	23	7	18	20	6	16	19	6
	100	26	29	10	22	25	8	20	23	7	18	21	6
	120	28	32	11	25	28	9	22	25	8	20	23	7
	140	31	35	12	27	30	10	24	27	9	22	24	8
	160	33	37	13	28	32	11	25	29	10	23	26	9
70	20	12	14	6	12	14	6	12	14	6	12	14	6
	40	18	20	6	15	17	6	14	15	6	12	14	6
	60	21	24	8	19	21	6	17	19	6	15	17	6
	80	25	28	9	21	24	8	19	22	7	18	20	6
	100	28	31	11	24	27	9	21	24	8	20	22	7
	120	30	34	12	26	30	10	24	27	9	21	24	8
	140	33	37	13	28	32	11	25	29	10	23	26	9
	160	35	40	15	30	34	12	27	31	11	25	28	9

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Interpolation permitted, extrapolation not permitted.

b. Based on highest load case: Dead + Live or Dead + Snow.

c. Assumes minimum square footing to be 12 inches x 12 inches x 6 inches for 6 x 6 post.

d. If the support is a brick or CMU pier, the footing shall have a minimum 2-inch projection on all sides.

e. Area, in square feet, of deck surface supported by post and footings.

507.3.2 Minimum depth. Deck footings shall extend below the frost line specified in Table 301.2(1) in accordance with Section 403.1.4.1.

Exceptions:

1. Free-standing decks that meet all of the following criteria:
   1.1. The joists bear directly on precast concrete pier blocks at grade without sup- port by beams or posts.
   1.2. The area of the deck does not exceed 200 square feet (18.9 m^2).
   1.3. The walking surface is not more than 20 inches (616 mm) above grade at any point within 36 inches (914 mm) measured horizontally from the edge.
2. Free-standing decks need not be provided with footings that extend below the frost line.

507.4 Deck posts. For single-level wood-framed decks with beams sized in accordance with Table 507.5, deck post size shall be in accordance with Table 507.4.

TABLE 507.4
DECK POST HEIGHT [a]

DECK POST SIZE	MAXIMUM HEIGHT [a, b] (feet-inches)
4 x 4	6-9 [C]
4 x 6	8
6 x 6	14
8 x 8	14

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm,
1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Measured to the underside of the beam.
b. Based on 40 psf live load.
c. The maximum permitted height is 8 feet for one-ply and two-ply beams. The maximum permitted height for three-ply beams on post cap is 6 feet 9 inches.

507.4.1 Deck post to deck footing connection. Where posts bear on concrete footings in accordance with Section 403 and Figure 507.4.1, lateral restraint shall be provided by manufactured connectors or a minimum post embedment of 12 inches (305 mm) in surrounding soils or concrete piers. Other footing systems shall be permitted.

Exception: Where expansive, compressible, shifting or other questionable soils are present, surrounding soils shall not be relied on for lateral support.

507.5 Deck Beams. Maximum allowable spans for wood deck beams, as shown in Figure 507.5, shall be in accordance with Table 507.5. Beam plies shall be fastened with two rows of 10d (3-inch x 0.128-inch) nails minimum at 16 inches (406 mm) on center along each edge. Beams shall be permitted to cantilever at each end up to one-fourth of the allowable beam span. Deck beams of other materials shall be permitted where designed in accordance with accepted engineering practices.

TABLE 507.5
DECK BEAM SPAN LENGTHS [a, b, g] (feet - inches)

SPECIES[c]	SIZE[d]	DECK JOIST SPAN LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO: (feet)						
		6	8	10	12	14	16	18
Southern pine	1 – 2 x 6	4-11	4-0	3-7	3-3	3-0	2-10	2-8
	1 – 2 x 8	5-11	5-1	4-7	4-2	2-10	3-7	3-5
	1 – 2 x 10	7-0	6-0	5-5	4-11	4-7	4-3	4-0
	1 – 2 x 12	8-3	7-1	6-4	5-10	5-5	5-0	4-9
	2 – 2 x 6	6-11	5-11	5-4	4-10	4-6	4-3	4-0
	2 – 2 x 8	8-9	7-7	6-9	6-2	5-9	5-4	5-0
	2 – 2 x 10	10-4	9-0	8-0	7-4	6-9	6-4	6-0
	2 – 2 x 12	12-2	10-7	9-5	8-7	8-0	7-6	7-0
	3 – 2 x 6	8-2	7-5	6-8	6-1	5-8	5-3	5-0
	3 – 2 x 8	10-10	9-6	8-6	7-9	7-2	6-8	6-4
	3 – 2 x 10	13-0	11-3	10-0	9-2	8-6	7-11	7-6
	3 – 2 x 12	15-3	13-3	11-10	10-9	10-0	9-4	8-10
Douglas fir-larch [e], hem-fir [e], spruce-pine-fir [e], redwood, western cedars, ponderosa pine [f], red pine [f]	3 x 6 or 2 – 2 x 6	5-5	4-8	4-2	3-10	3-6	3-1	2-9
	3 x 8 or 2 – 2 x 8	6-10	5-11	5-4	4-10	4-6	4-1	3-8
	3 x 10 or 2 – 2 x 10	8-4	7-3	6-6	5-11	5-6	5-1	4-8
	3 x 12 or 2 – 2 x 12	9-8	8-5	7-6	6-10	6-4	5-11	5-7
	4 x 6	6-5	5-6	4-11	4-6	4-2	3-11	3-8
	4 x 8	8-5	7-3	6-6	5-11	5-6	5-2	4-10
	4 x 10	9-11	8-7	7-8	7-0	6-6	6-1	5-8
	4 x 12	11-5	9-11	8-10	8-1	7-6	7-0	6-7
	3 – 2 x 6	7-4	6-8	6-0	5-6	5-1	4-9	4-6
	3 – 2 x 8	9-8	8-6	7-7	6-11	6-5	6-0	5-8
	3 – 2 x 10	12-0	10-5	9-4	8-6	7-10	7-4	6-11
	3 – 2 x 12	13-11	12-1	10-9	9-10	9-1	8-6	8-1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. Ground snow load, live load = 40 psf, dead load = 10 psf, L/Δ = 360 at main span, L/Δ = 180 at cantilever with a 220-pound point load applied at the end.
b. Beams supporting deck joists from one side only.
c. No. 2 grade, wet service factor.
d. Beam depth shall be greater than or equal to depth of joists with a flush beam condition.
e. Includes incising factor.
f. Northern species. Incising factor not included.
g. Beam cantilevers are limited to the adjacent beam's span divided by 4.

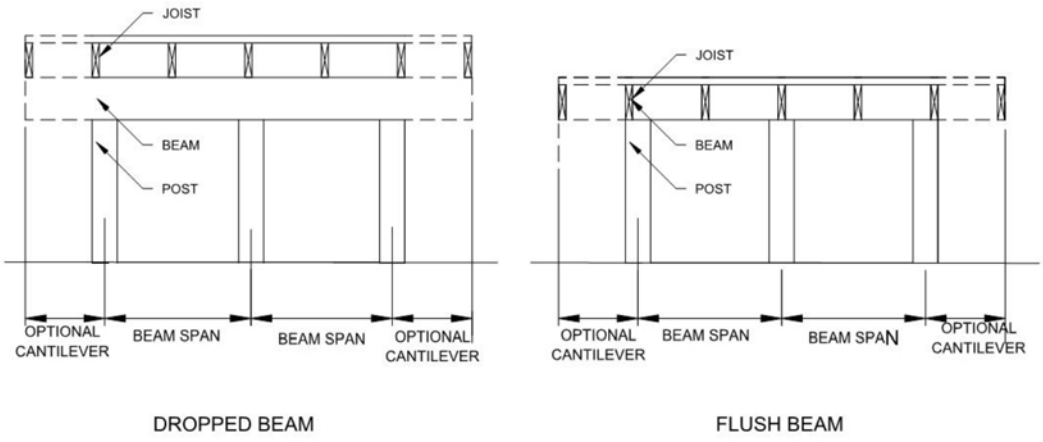
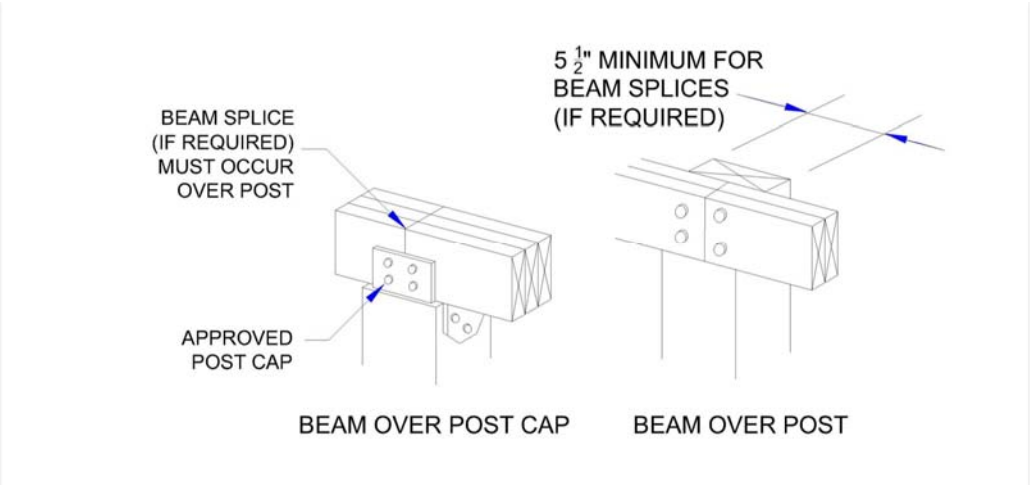


FIGURE 507.5
TYPICAL DECK JOIST SPANS

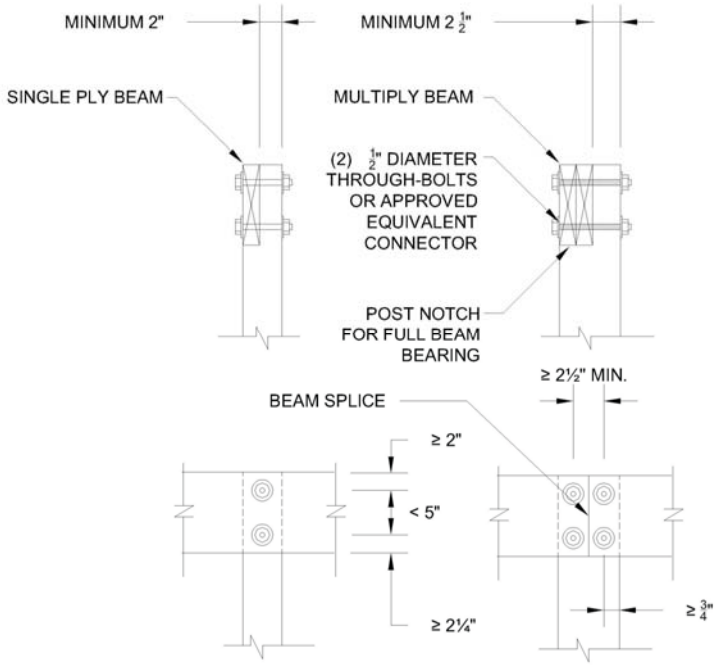
507.5.1 Deck beam bearing. The ends of beams shall have not less than $1^1/_2$ -inches (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal and not less than 3 -inches (76 mm) of bearing on concrete or masonry for the entire width of the beam. Where multiple-span beams bear on intermediate posts, each ply must have full bearing on the post in accordance with Figures 507.5.1(1) and 507.5.1(2).

507.5.2 Deck beam connection to supports. Deck beams shall be attached to supports in a manner capable of transferring vertical loads and resisting horizontal displacement. Deck beam connections to wood posts shall be in accordance with Figures 507.5.1(1) and 507.5.1(2). Manufactured post-to-beam connectors shall be sized for the post and beam sizes. Bolts shall have washers under the head and nut.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 507.5.1(1)
DECK BEAM TO DECK POST



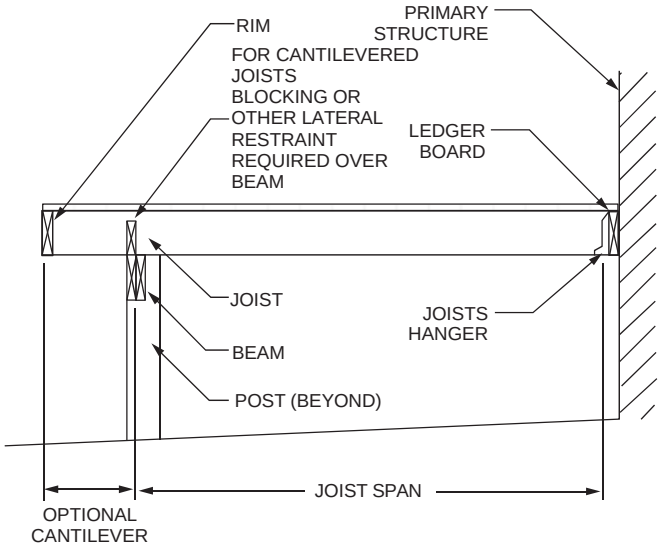
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 507.5.1(2)
NOTCHED POST-TO-BEAM CONNECTION

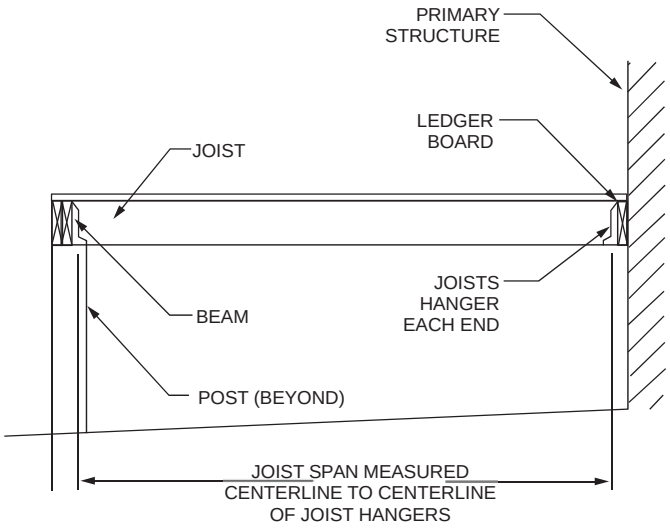
507.6 Deck joists. Maximum allowable spans for wood deck joists, as shown in Figure 507.6, shall be in accordance with Table 507.6. The maximum joist spacing shall be limited by the decking materials in accordance with Table 507.7. The maximum joist cantilever shall be limited to one-fourth of the joist span or the maximum cantilever length specified in Table 507.6, whichever is less.

507.6.1 Deck joist bearing. The ends of joists shall have not less than $1^1/_2$ -inches (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal and not less than 3 -inches (76 mm) of bearing on concrete or masonry over its entire width. Joists bearing on top of a multiple-ply beam or ledger shall be fastened in accordance with Table 602.3(1). Joists bearing on top of a single-ply beam or ledger shall be attached by a mechanical connector. Joist framing into the side of a beam or ledger board shall be supported by approved joist hangers.

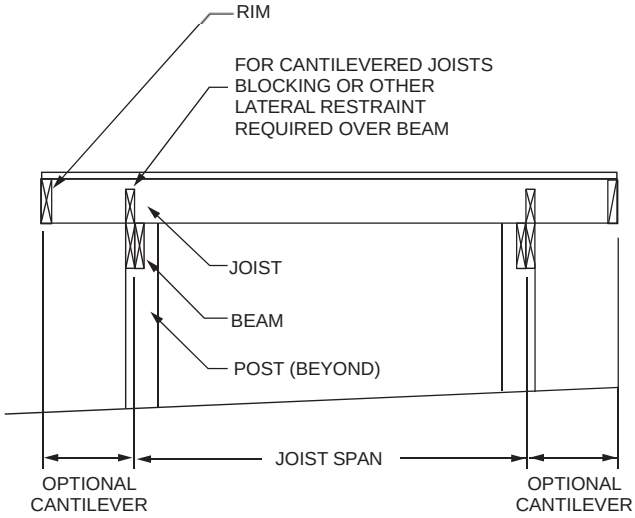
507.6.2 Deck joist lateral restraint. Joist ends and bearing locations shall be provided with lateral resistance to prevent rotation. Where lateral restraint is provided by joist hangers or blocking between joists, their depth shall equal not less than 60 percent of the joist depth. Where lateral restraint is provided by rim joists, they shall be secured to the end of each joist with not fewer than three 10d (3-inch by 0.128-inch) (76 mm by 3.3 mm) nails or three No. 10 x 3-inch (76 mm) long wood screws.



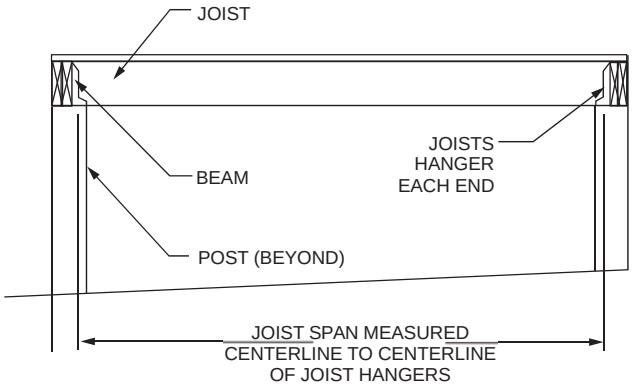
CANTILEVERED JOISTS WITH DROPPED BEAM



JOISTS WITH FLUSH BEAM



JOISTS ON FREE-STANDING DECK WITH DROPPED BEAM



JOISTS ON FREE-STANDING DECK WITH FLUSH BEAM

FIGURE 507.6
TYPICAL DECK JOIST SPANS

TABLE 507.6
DECK JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES (ft. - in.)

SPECIES[a]	SIZE	ALLOWABLE JOIST SPAN[b] SPACING OF DECK JOISTS (inches)			MAXIMUM CANTILEVER [c, f] SPACING OF DECK JOISTS WITH CANTILEVERS [c] (inches)		
		12	16	24	12	16	24
Southern pine	2 x 6	9-11	9-0	7-7	1-3	1-4	1-6
	2 x 8	13-1	11-10	9-8	2-1	2-3	2-5
	2 x 10	16-2	14-0	11-5	3-4	3-6	2-10
	2 x 12	18-0	16-6	13-6	4-6	4-2	3-4
Douglas fir-larch[d], hem-fir[d] spruce-pine-fir[d],	2 x 6	9-6	8-8	7-2	1-2	1-3	1-5
	2 x 8	12-6	11-1	9-1	1-11	2-1	2-3
	2 x 10	15-8	13-7	11-1	3-1	3-5	2-9
	2 x 12	18-0	15-9	12-10	4-6	3-11	3-3
Redwood, western cedars, ponderosa pine[e], red pine[e]	2 x 6	8-10	8-0	7-0	1-0	1-1	1-2
	2 x 8	11-8	10-7	8-8	1-8	1-10	2-0
	2 x 10	14-11	13-0	10-7	2-8	2-10	2-8
	2 x 12	17-5	15-1	12-4	3-10	3-9	3-1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. No. 2 grade with wet service factor.
b. Ground snow load, live load = 40 psf, dead load = 10 psf, $L/\Delta = 360$.
c. Ground snow load, live load = 40 psf, dead load = 10 psf, $L/\Delta = 360$ at main span, $L/\Delta = 180$ at cantilever with a 220-pound point load applied to end.
d. Includes incising factor.
e. Northern species with no incising factor.
f. Cantilevered spans not exceeding the nominal depth of the joist are permitted.

507.7 Decking. Maximum allowable spacing for joists supporting decking shall be in accordance with Table 507.7. Wood decking shall be attached to each supporting member with not less than two 8d threaded nails or two No. 8 wood screws. Other approved decking or fastener systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation requirements.

TABLE 507.7
MAXIMUM JOIST SPACING FOR DECKING

DECKING MATERIAL TYPE AND NOMINAL SIZE	MAXIMUM ON-CENTER JOIST SPACING	
	Decking perpendicular to joist	Decking diagonal to joist[a]
$1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-thick wood	16 inches	12 inches
2-inch-thick wood	24 inches	16 inches
Plastic composite	In accordance with Section 507.2	In accordance with Section 507.2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

a. Maximum angle of 45 degrees from perpendicular for wood deck boards.

507.8 Vertical and lateral supports. Where supported by attachment to an

exterior wall, decks shall be positively anchored to the primary structure and designed for both vertical and lateral loads. Such attachment shall not be accomplished by the use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal. For decks with cantilevered framing members, connection to exterior walls or other framing members shall be designed and constructed to resist uplift resulting from the full live load specified in Table 301.5 acting on the cantilevered portion of the deck. Where positive connection to the primary building structure cannot be verified during inspection, decks shall be self-supporting.

507.9 Vertical and lateral supports at band joist. Vertical and lateral supports for decks shall comply with this section.

507.9.1 Vertical supports. Vertical loads shall be transferred to band joists with ledgers in accordance with this section.

507.9.1.1 Ledger details. Deck ledgers shall be a minimum 2-inch by 8-inch (51 mm by 203 mm) nominal, pressure-preservative-treated Southern pine, incised pressure-preservative-treated hem-fir, or approved, naturally durable, No. 2 grade or better lumber. Deck ledgers shall not support concentrated loads from beams or girders. Deck ledgers shall not be supported on stone or masonry veneer.

507.9.1.2 Band joist details. Band joists supporting a ledger shall be a minimum 2-inch-nominal (51 mm), solid-sawn, spruce-pine-fir or better lumber or a minimum 1-inch by $9^1/_2$ -inch (25 mm by 241 mm) dimensional, Douglas fir or better, laminated veneer lumber. Band joists shall bear fully on the primary structure capable of supporting all required loads.

507.9.1.3 Ledger to band joist details. Fasteners used in deck ledger connections in accordance with Table 507.9.1.3(1) shall be hot-dipped galvanized or stainless steel and shall be installed in accordance with Table 507.9.1.3(2) and Figures 507.9.1.3(1) and 507.9.1.3(2).

507.9.1.4 Alternate ledger details. Alternate framing configurations supporting a ledger constructed to meet the load requirements of Section 301.5 shall be permitted.

TABLE 507.9.1.3(1)
DECK LEDGER CONNECTION TO BAND JOIST [a, b]
(Deck live load = 40 psf, deck dead load = 10 psf, snow load ≤ 40 psf)

CONNECTION DETAILS	JOIST SPAN						
	6′ and less	6′ 1″ to 8′	8′ 1″ to 10′	10′ 1″ to 12′	12′ 1″ to 14′	14′ 1″ to 16′	16′ 1″ to 18′
	On-center spacing of fasteners						
1/2 -inch diameter lag screw with 1/2 -inch maximum sheathing [c, d]	30	23	18	15	13	11	10
1/2 -inch diameter bolt with 1/2 -inch maximum sheathing [d]	36	36	34	29	24	21	19
1/2 -inch diameter bolt with 1-inch maximum sheathing [e]	36	36	29	24	21	18	16

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

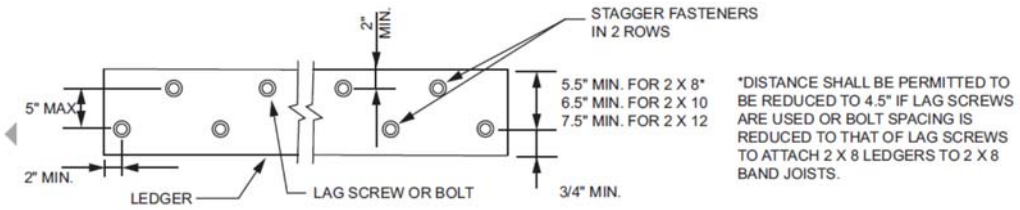
a. Ledgers shall be flashed in accordance with Section 703.4 to prevent water from contacting the house band joist.
b. Snow load shall not be assumed to act concurrently with live load.
c. The tip of the lag screw shall fully extend beyond the inside face of the band joist.
d. Sheathing shall be wood structural panel or solid sawn lumber.
e. Sheathing shall be permitted to be wood structural panel, gypsum board, fiberboard, lumber or foam sheathing. Up to 1/2 -inch thickness of stacked washers shall be permitted to substitute for up to 1/2 -inch of allowable sheathing thickness where combined with wood structural panel or lumber sheathing.

TABLE 507.9.1.3(2)
PLACEMENT OF LAG SCREWS AND BOLTS IN DECK LEDGERS AND BAND JOISTS

	MINIMUM END AND EDGE DISTANCES AND SPACING			
	TOP EDGE	BOTTOM EDGE	ENDS	ROW SPACING
Ledger [a]	2 inches [d]	3/4 -inch	2 inches [b]	1 5/8 inches [b]
Band Joist [c]	3/4 -inch	2 inches	2 inches [b]	1 5/8 inches [b]

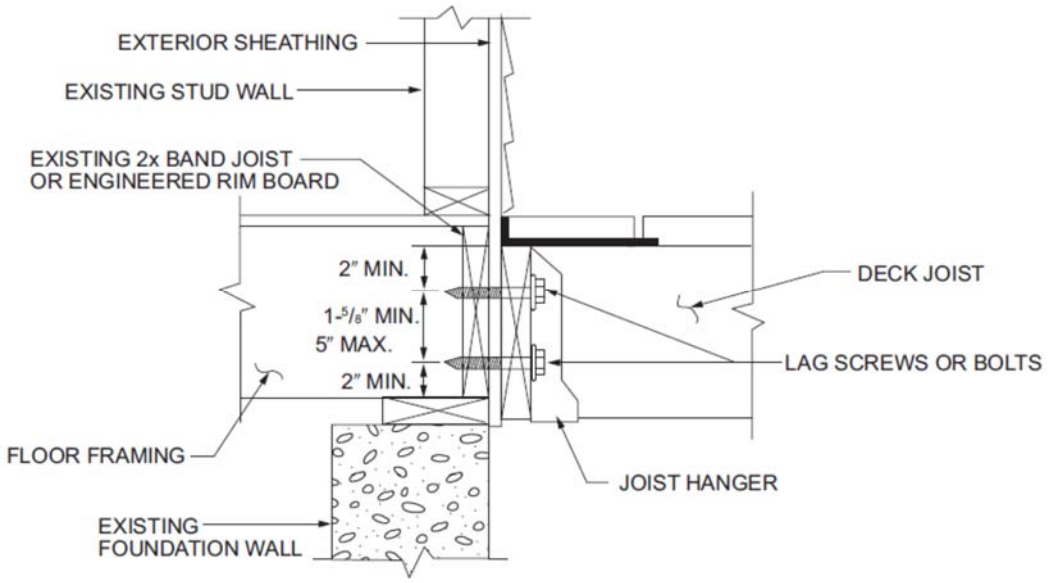
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Lag screws or bolts shall be staggered from the top to the bottom along the horizontal run of the deck ledger in accordance with Figure 507.9.1.3(1).
b. Maximum 5 inches.
c. For engineered rim joists, the manufacturer's recommendations shall govern.
d. The minimum distance from bottom row of lag screws or bolts to the top edge of the ledger shall be in accordance with Figure 507.9.1.3(1).



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 507.9.1.3(1)
PLACEMENT OF LAG SCREWS AND BOLTS IN LEDGERS



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 507.9.1.3(2)
PLACEMENT OF LAG SCREWS AND BOLTS IN BAND JOISTS

507.9.2 Lateral connection. *Deleted*

Delete Figure

FIGURE 507.9.2(1)
DECK ATTACHMENT FOR LATERAL LOADS

Delete Figure

FIGURE 507.9.2(2)
DECK ATTACHMENT FOR LATERAL LOADS

Replaces:	4101:8-5-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.10, 3781.06, 3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11
Prior Effective Dates:	05/27/2006, 01/01/2013, 01/01/2016, 01/01/2018

4101:8-6-01 Wall construction.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 601
GENERAL

601.1 Application. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of walls and partitions for buildings.

601.2 Requirements. Wall construction shall be capable of accommodating all loads imposed in accordance with Section 301 and of transmitting the resulting loads to the supporting structural elements.

601.2.1 Compressible floor-covering materials. Compressible floor-covering materials that compress more than $^{1}/_{32}$ -inch (0.8 mm) when subjected to 50 pounds (23 kg) applied over 1 inch square (645 mm) of material and are greater than $^{1}/_{8}$ inch (3.2 mm) in thickness in the uncompressed state shall not extend beneath walls, partitions or columns, which are fastened to the floor.

SECTION 602
WOOD WALL FRAMING

602.1 General. Wood and wood-based products used for load-supporting purposes shall conform to the applicable provisions of this section.

602.1.1 Sawn lumber. Sawn lumber shall be identified by a grade mark of an accredited lumber grading or inspection agency and have design values certified by an accreditation body that complies with DOC PS 20. In lieu of a grade mark, a certification of inspection issued by *an approved* lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be accepted.

602.1.2 End-jointed lumber. Approved end-jointed lumber identified by a grade mark conforming to Section 602.1 shall be permitted to be used interchangeably with solid-sawn members of the same species and grade. End-jointed lumber used in an assembly required elsewhere in this code to have a

fire-resistance rating shall have the designation "Heat Resistant Adhesive" or "HRA" included in its grade mark.

602.1.3 Structural glued-laminated timbers. Glued-laminated timbers shall be manufactured and identified as required in ANSI A190.1, ANSI 117 and ASTM D3737.

602.1.4 Structural log members. Structural log members shall comply with the provisions of ICC 400.

602.1.5 Structural composite lumber. Structural capacities for structural composite lumber shall be established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D5456.

602.1.6 Cross-laminated timber. Cross-laminated timber shall be manufactured and identified as required by ANSI/APA PRG 320.

602.1.7 Engineered wood rim board. Engineered wood rim boards shall conform to ANSI/APA PRR 410 or shall be evaluated in accordance with ASTM D7672. Structural capacities shall be in accordance with either ANSI/APA PRR 410 or established in accordance with ASTM D7672. Rim boards conforming to ANSI/APA PRR 410 shall be marked in accordance with that standard.

602.1.8 Wood structural panels. Wood structural panel sheathing shall conform to DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2 or, when manufactured in Canada, CSA O325 or CSA O437. Panels shall be identified for grade, bond classification, and performance category by a grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an approved agency.

602.1.9 Particleboard. Particleboard shall conform to ANSI A208.1. Particleboard shall be identified by the grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an approved agency.

602.1.10 Fiberboard. Fiberboard shall conform to ASTM C208. Fiberboard sheathing, where used structurally, shall be identified by an approved agency as con- forming to ASTM C208.

602.1.11 Structural insulated panels. Structural insulated panels shall be manufactured and identified in accordance with ANSI/APA PRS 610.1.

602.2 Grade. Studs shall be a minimum No. 3, standard or stud grade lumber.

Exception: Bearing studs not supporting floors and non-bearing studs shall be permitted to be utility grade lumber, provided that the studs are spaced in accordance with Table 602.3(5).

602.3 *Exterior walls, design* and construction. Exterior walls of wood-frame construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this chapter and Figures 602.3(1) and 602.3(2), or in accordance with AWC NDS. Components of exterior walls shall be fastened in accordance with Tables 602.3(1) through 602.3(4). Wall sheathing shall be fastened directly to framing members and, where placed on the exterior side of an exterior wall, shall be capable of resisting the wind pressures listed in Table 301.2(2) adjusted for height and exposure using Table 301.2(3) and shall conform to the requirements of Table 602.3(3). *Exterior walls shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section 602.8.* Wall sheathing used only for exterior wall covering purposes shall comply with Section 703.

Studs shall be continuous from support at the sole plate to a support at the top plate to resist loads perpendicular to the wall. The support shall be a foundation or floor, ceiling or roof diaphragm or shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

Exception: Jack studs, trimmer studs and cripple studs at openings in walls that comply with Tables 602.7(1) and 602.7(2).

TABLE 602.3(1)
FASTENING SCHEDULE

ITEM	DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER [a, b, c]	SPACING AND LOCATION
	Roof		
1	Blocking between ceiling joists or rafters to top plate	4-8d box (2 1/2 ″ × 0.113″) or 3-8d common (2 1/2 ″ × 0.131″); or 3-10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 3-3″ × 0.131″ nails	Toe nail
2	Ceiling joists to top plate	4-8d box (2 1/2 ″ × 0.113″); or 3-8d common (2 1/2 ″ × 0.131″); or 3-10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 3-3″ × 0.131″ nails	Per joist, toe nail
3	Ceiling joist not attached to parallel rafter, laps over partitions (see Section 802.5.2 and Table 802.5.2)	4-10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 3-16d common (3 1/2 ″ × 0.162″); or 4-3″ × 0.131″ nails	Face nail
4	Ceiling joist attached to parallel rafter (heel joint) (see Section 802.5.2 and Table 802.5.2)	Table 802.5.2	Face nail

ITEM	DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER [a, b, c]	SPACING AND LOCATION
		Roof (continued)	
5	Collar tie to rafter, face nail or 1 1/4 ″ × 20 ga. ridge strap to rafter	4-10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 3-10d common (3″ × 0.148″); or 4-3″ × 0.131″ nails	Face nail each rafter
6	Rafter or roof truss to plate	3-16d box nails (3 1/2 ″ × 0.135″); or 3-10d common nails (3″ × 0.148″); or 4-10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 4-3″ × 0.131″ nails	2 toe nails on one side and 1 toe nail on opposite side of each rafter or truss [1]
7	Roof rafters to ridge, valley or hip rafters or roof rafter to minimum 2″ ridge beam	4-16d (3 1/2 ″ × 0.135″); or 3-10d common (3″ × 0.148″); or 4-10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 4-3″ × 0.131″ nails	Toe nail
		3-16d box 3 1/2 ″ × 0.135″); or 2-16d common (3 1/2 ″ × 0.162″); or 3-10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 3-3″ × 0.131″ nails	End nail
		Wall	
8	Stud to stud (not at braced wall panels)	16d common (3 1/2 ″ × 0.162″)	24″ o.c. face nail
		10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 3″ × 0.131″ nails	16″ o.c. face nail
9	Stud to stud and abutting studs at intersecting wall corners (at braced wall panels)	16d box (3 1/2 ″ × 0.135″); or 3″ × 0.131″ nails	12″ o.c. face nail
		16d common (3 1/2 ″ × 0.162″)	16″ o.c. face nail
10	Built-up header (2″ to 2″ header with 1/2 ″ spacer)	16d common (3 1/2 ″ × 0.162″)	16″ o.c. each edge face nail
		16d box (3 1/2″ × 0.135″)	12″ o.c. each edge face nail
11	Continuous header to stud	5-8d box (2 1/2 ″ × 0.113″); or 4-8d common (2 1/2 ″ × 0.131″); or 4-10d box (3″ × 0.128″)	Toe nail
12	Top plate to top plate	16d common (3 1/2 ″ × 0.162″)	16″ o.c. face nail
		10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 3″ × 0.131″ nails	12″ o.c. face nail
13	Double top plate splice	8-16d common (3 1/2 ″ × 0.162″); or 12-16d box (3 1/2″ × 0.135″); or 12-10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 12-3″ × 0.131″ nails	Face nail on each side of end joint (minimum 24″ lap splice length each side of end joint)
14	Bottom plate to joist, rim joist, band joist or blocking (not at braced wall panels)	16d common (3 1/2 ″ × 0.162″)	16″ o.c. face nail
		16d box (3 1/2 ″ × 0.135″); or 3″ × 0.131″ nails	12″ o.c. face nail
15	Bottom plate to joist, rim joist, band joist or blocking (at braced wall panel)	3-16d box (3 1/2 ″ × 0.135″); or 2-16d common (3 1/2 ″ × 0.162″); or 4-3″ × 0.131″ nails	3 each 16″ o.c. face nail 2 each 16″ o.c. face nail 4 each 16″ o.c. face nail

ITEM	DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER [a, b, c]	SPACING AND LOCATION
Wall (continued)			
16	Top or bottom plate to stud	4-8d box (2 1/2 " × 0.113"); or 3-16d box (3 1/2 " × 0.135"); or 4-8d common (2 1/2 " × 0.131"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails	Toe nail
		3-16d box (3 1/2 " × 0.135"); or 2-16d common (3 1/2 " × 0.162"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails	End nail
17	Top plates, laps at corners and intersections	3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 2-16d common (3 1/2 " × 0.162"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails	Face nail
18	1" brace to each stud and plate	3-8d box (2 1/2 " × 0.113"); or 2-8d common (2 1/2 " × 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 2 staples 1 3/4 "	Face nail
19	1" × 6" sheathing to each bearing	3-8d box (2 1/2 " × 0.113"); or 2-8d common (2 1/2 " × 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 2 staples, 1" crown, 16 ga., 1 3/4"long	Face nail
20	1" × 8" and wider sheathing to each bearing	3-8d box (2 1/2 " × 0.113"); or 3-8d common (2 1/2 " × 0.131"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3 staples, 1" crown, 16 ga., 1 3/4 "long	Face nail
		Wider than 1" × 8" 4-8d box (2 1/2 " × 0.113"); or 3-8d common (2 1/2 " × 0.131"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4 staples, 1" crown, 16 ga., 1 3/4 " long	
Floor			
21	Joist to sill, top plate or girder	4-8d box (2 1/2 " × 0.113"); or 3-8d common (2 1/2 " × 0.131"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails	Toe nail
22	Rim joist, band joist or blocking to sill or top plate (roof applications also)	8d box (2 1/2 " × 0.113")	4" o.c. toe nail
		8d common (2 1/2 " × 0.131"); or 10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3" × 0.131" nails	6" o.c. toe nail
23	1" × 6" subfloor or less to each joist	3-8d box (2 1/2 " × 0.113"); or 2-8d common (2 1/2 " × 0.131"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 2 staples, 1" crown, 16 ga., 1 3/4 " long	Face nail
24	2" subfloor to joist or girder	3-16d box (3 1/2 " × 0.135"); or 2-16d common (3 1/2 " × 0.162")	Blind and face nail

ITEM	DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER [a, b, c]	SPACING AND LOCATION	
		Floor (continued)		
25	2″ planks (plank & beam—floor & roof)	3-16d box (3 1/2 ″ × 0.135″); or 2-16d common (3 1/2 ″ × 0.162″)	At each bearing, face nail	
26	Band or rim joist to joist	3-16d common (3 1/2 ″ × 0.162″) 4-10 box (3″ × 0.128″), or 4-3″ × 0.131″ nails; or 4-3″ × 14 ga. staples, 7/16 ″ crown	End nail	
27	Built-up girders and beams, 2-inch lumber layers	20d common (4″ × 0.192″); or	Nail each layer as follows: 32″ o.c. at top and bottom and staggered.	
		10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 3″ × 0.131″ nails	24″ o.c. face nail at top and bottom staggered on opposite sides	
		And: 2-20d common (4″ × 0.192″); or 3-10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 3-3″ × 0.131″ nails	Face nail at ends and at each splice	
28	Ledger strip supporting joists or rafters	4-16d box (3 1/2 ″ × 0.135″); or 3-16d common (3 1/2 ″ × 0.162″); or 4-10d box (3″ × 0.128″); or 4-3″ × 0.131″ nails	At each joist or rafter, face nail	
29	Bridging or blocking to joist	2-10d box (3″ × 0.128″), or 2-8d common (2 1/2 ″ × 0.131″; or 2-3″ × 0.131″) nails	Each end, toe nail	
ITEM	**DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS**	**NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER [a, b, c]**	**SPACING OF FASTENERS**	
			Edges (inches) [h]	**Intermediate supports [c, e] (inches)**
Wood structural panels, subfloor, roof and interior wall sheathing to framing and particleboard wall sheathing to framing [see Table 602.3(3) for wood structural panel exterior wall sheathing to wall framing]				
30	3/8 " – 1/2 "	6d common (2″ × 0.113″) nail (subfloor, wall) [i] 8d common (2 1/2 ″ × 0.131″) nail (roof); or RSRS-01 (2 3/8 ″ × 0.113") nail (roof) [j]	6	12 [f]
31	19/32 " – 1"	8d common nail (2 1/2 ″ × 0.131″); or RSRS-01 (2 3/8 ″ × 0.113") nail (roof) [j]	6	12 [f]
32	1 1/8 " – 1 1/4 "	10d common (3″ × 0.148″) nail; or 8d (2 1/2 ″ × 0.131″) deformed nail	6	12
		Other wall sheathing [g]		
33	1/2 ″ structural cellulosic fiberboard sheathing	1 1/2″ galvanized roofing nail, 7/16″ head diameter, or 1 1/4″ long 16 ga. staple with 7/16″ or 1″ crown	3	6
34	25/32 ″ structural cellulosic fiberboard sheathing	1 3/4″ galvanized roofing nail, 7/16″ head diameter, or 1 1/2″ long 16 ga. staple with 7/16″ or 1″ crown	3	6

ITEM	DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER [a, b, c]	SPACING AND LOCATION	
Other wall sheathing (continued)				
35	1/2 " gypsum sheathing [d]	1 1/2" galvanized roofing nail; staple galvanized, 1 1/2" long; 1 1/4" screws, Type	7	7
36	5/8 " gypsum sheathing [d]	1 3/4" galvanized roofing nail; staple galvanized, 1 5/8" long; 1 5/8" screws, Type W or S	7	7
Wood structural panels, combination subfloor underlayment to framing				
37	3/4 " and less	6d deformed (2" × 0.120") nail; or 8d common (2 1/2 " × 0.131") nail	6	12
38	7/8 " – 1"	8d common (2 1/2 " × 0.131") nail; or 8d deformed (2 1/2 " × 0.120") nail	6	12
39	1 1/8 " – 1 1/4 "	10d common (3" × 0.148") nail; or 8d deformed (2 1/2" × 0.120") nail	6	12
Steel column, posts, and beam attachment				
40	*Beams ending in an open beam pocket, beam clip angles.*	*Clip angles either welded to the beam along each clip angle's entire length or bolted to the beam using a minimum of ½" diameter bolts. Clip angle attached to the foundation wall using no less than a ½" diameter anchor.*	--	--
41	*Beams, steel column top plate.*	*Column top plate either welded along the length of the two sides perpendicular to the beam's length or bolted with no less than two ½" diameter bolts placed diagonally through the top plate.*	--	--
42	*Beams ending over a steel column, steel column top plate.*	*Column top plate bolted to beam with at least four ½" diameter bolts.*	--	--
43	*Steel column(s) base plate(s) (for beams ending in beam pockets), footing(s).*	*Anchored to concrete footing pad(s) with no less than two ½" diameter anchors placed diagonally through the base plate(s) of the steel column(s) into the concrete footing pad(s)*	--	--
44	*Steel column base plate (when beam ends over a steel column), footing.*	*Anchored to concrete footing pad with no less than four ½" diameter anchors through the base plate of the steel column to the concrete footing pad.*	--	--

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s; 1 ksi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Nails are smooth-common, box or deformed shanks except where otherwise stated. Nails used for framing and sheathing connections shall have minimum average bending yield strengths as shown: 80 ksi for shank diameter of 0.192 inch (20d common nail), 90 ksi for shank diameters larger than 0.142 inch but not larger than 0.177 inch, and 100 ksi for shank diameters of 0.142 inch or less.

b. Staples are 16 gage wire and have a minimum 7/16 -inch on diameter crown width.

c. Nails shall be spaced at not more than 6 inches on center at all supports where spans are 48 inches or greater.

d. Four-foot by 8-foot or 4-foot by 9-foot panels shall be applied vertically.

e. Spacing of fasteners not included in this table shall be based on Table 602.3(2).

f. For wood structural panel roof sheathing attached to gable end roof framing and to intermediate supports within 48 inches of roof edges and ridges, nails shall be spaced at 6 inches on center where the ultimate design wind speed is less than 130 mph and shall be spaced 4 inches on center where the ultimate design wind speed is 130 mph or greater but less than 140 mph.

g. Gypsum sheathing shall conform to ASTM C1396 and shall be installed in accordance with GA 253. Fiberboard sheathing shall conform to ASTM C208.

h. Spacing of fasteners on floor sheathing panel edges applies to panel edges supported by framing members and required blocking and at floor perimeters only. Spacing of fasteners on roof sheathing panel edges applies to panel edges supported by framing members and required blocking. Blocking of roof or floor sheathing panel edges perpendicular to the framing members need not be provided except as required by other provisions of this code. Floor perimeter shall be supported by framing members or solid blocking.

i. Where a rafter is fastened to an adjacent parallel ceiling joist in accordance with this schedule, provide two toe nails on one side of the rafter and toe nails from the ceiling joist to top plate in accordance with this schedule. The toe nail on the opposite side of the rafter shall not be required.

j. RSRS-01 is a Roof Sheathing Ring Shank nail meeting the specifications in ASTM F1667.

TABLE 602.3(2)
ALTERNATE ATTACHMENTS TO TABLE 602.3(1)

NOMINAL MATERIAL THICKNESS (inches)	DESCRIPTION [a, b] OF FASTENER AND LENGTH (inches)	SPACING [c] OF FASTENERS	
		Edges (inches)	Intermediate supports (inches)
Wood structural panels subfloor, roof [g] and wall sheathing to framing and particleboard wall sheathing to framing [f]			
Up to 1/2	Staple 15 ga. 1 3/4	4	8
	0.097 - 0.099 Nail 2 1/4	3	6
	Staple 16 ga. 1 3/4	3	6
19/32 and 5/8	0.113 Nail 2	3	6
	Staple 15 and 16 ga. 2	4	8
	0.097 - 0.099 Nail 2 1/4	4	8
23/32 and 3/4	Staple 14 ga. 2	4	8
	Staple 15 ga. 1 3/4	3	6
	0.097 - 0.099 Nail 2 1/4	4	8
	Staple 16 ga. 2	4	8
1	Staple 14 ga. 2 1/4	4	8
	0.113 Nail 2 1/4	3	6
	Staple 15 ga. 2 1/4	4	8
	0.097 - 0.099 Nail 2 1/2	4	8
NOMINAL MATERIAL THICKNESS (inches)	**DESCRIPTION [a, b] OF FASTENER AND LENGTH (inches)**	**SPACING [c] OF FASTENERS**	
		Edges (inches)	**Body of panel [d] (inches)**
Floor underlayment; plywood-hardboard-particleboard [f]-fiber-cement [h]			
Fiber-cement			
1/4	3d, corrosion-resistant, ring shank nails (finished flooring other than	3	6
	Staple 18 ga., 7/8 long, 1/4 crown (finished flooring other than tile)	3	6
	1 1/4 long × .121 shank × .375 head diameter corrosion-resistant (galvanized or stainless steel) roofing nails (for tile finish)	8	8
	1 1/4 long, No. 8 × .375 head diameter, ribbed wafer-head screws (for tile finish)	8	8

NOMINAL MATERIAL THICKNESS (inches)	DESCRIPTION [a, b] OF FASTENER AND LENGTH (inches)	SPACING [c] OF FASTENERS	
		Edges (inches)	Intermediate supports (inches)
Wood structural panels subfloor, roof [g] and wall sheathing to framing and particleboard wall sheathing to framing [f]			
Plywood			
1/4 and 5/16	1 1/4 ring or screw shank nail-minimum 12 1/2 ga. (0.099″) shank diameter	3	6
	Staple 18 ga., 7/8, 3/16 crown width	2	5
11/32, 3/8, 15/32, and 1/2	1 1/4 ring or screw shank nail-minimum 12 1/2 ga. (0.099″) shank diameter	6	8e
19/32, 5/8, 23/32 and 3/4	1 1/2 ring or screw shank nail-minimum 12 1/2 ga. (0.099″) shank diameter	6	8
	Staple 16 ga. 1 1/2	6	8
Hardboard [f]			
0.200	1 1/2 long ring-grooved underlayment nail	6	6
	4d cement-coated sinker nail	6	6
	Staple 18 ga., 7/8 long (plastic coated)	3	6
Particleboard			
1/4	4d ring-grooved underlayment nail	3	6
	Staple 18 ga., 7/8 long, 3/16 crown	3	6
3/8	6d ring-grooved underlayment nail	6	10
	Staple 16 ga., 1 1/8 long, 3/8 crown	3	6
1/2, 5/8	6d ring-grooved underlayment nail	6	10
	Staple 16 ga., 1 5/8 long, 3/8 crown	3	6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm

a. Nail is a general description and shall be permitted to be T-head, modified round head or round head.

b. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of 7/16 -inch on diameter except as noted.

c. Nails or staples shall be spaced at not more than 6 inches on center at all supports where spans are 48 inches or greater. Nails or staples shall be spaced at not more than 12 inches on center at intermediate supports for floors.

d. Fasteners shall be placed in a grid pattern throughout the body of the panel.

e. For 5-ply panels, intermediate nails shall be spaced not more than 12 inches on center each way.

f. Hardboard underlayment shall conform to CPA/ANSI A135.4

g. Specified alternate attachments for roof sheathing shall be permitted where the ultimate design wind speed is less than 130 mph. Fasteners attaching wood structural panel roof sheathing to gable end wall framing shall be installed using the spacing listed for panel edges.

h. Fiber-cement underlayment shall conform to ASTM C1288 or ISO 8336, Category C.

TABLE 602.3(3)
REQUIREMENTS FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL WALL SHEATHING USED TO RESIST WIND PRESSURES [a, b, c]

MINIMUM NAIL		MINIMUM WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SPAN RATING	MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inches)	MAXIMUM WALL STUD SPACING (inches)	PANEL NAIL SPACING		ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)		
Size	Penetration (inches)				Edges (inches o.c.)	Field (inches o.c.)	Wind exposure category		
							B	C	D
6d Common (2.0″ × 0.113″)	1.5	24/0	3/8	16	6	12	140	115	110
8d Common (2.5″ × 0.131″)	1.75	24/16	7/16	16	6	12	170	140	135
				24	6	12	140	115	110

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Panel strength axis parallel or perpendicular to supports. Three-ply plywood sheathing with studs spaced more than 16 inches on center shall be applied with panel strength axis perpendicular to supports.

b. Table is based on wind pressures acting toward and away from building surfaces in accordance with Section 301.2. Lateral bracing requirements shall be in accordance with Section 602.10.

c. Wood structural panels with span ratings of Wall-16 or Wall-24 shall be permitted as an alternate to panels with a 24/0 span rating. Plywood siding rated 16 o.c. or 24 o.c. shall be permitted as an alternate to panels with a 24/16 span rating. Wall-16 and Plywood siding 16 o.c. shall be used with studs spaced not more than 16 inches on center.

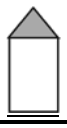
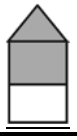
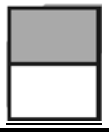
TABLE 602.3(4)
ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR PARTICLEBOARD WALL SHEATHING [a]

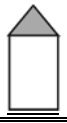
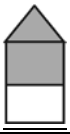
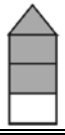
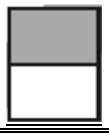
THICKNESS (inch)	GRADE	STUD SPACING (inches)	
		Where siding is nailed to studs	Where siding is nailed to sheathing
3/8	M-1 Exterior glue	16	—
1/2	M-2 Exterior glue	16	16

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Wall sheathing not exposed to the weather. If the panels are applied horizontally, the end joints of the panel shall be offset so that four panel corners will not meet. Panel edges must be supported. Leave a 1/16-inch gap between panels and nail not less than 3/8 -inch from panel edges.

TABLE 602.3(5)
SIZE, HEIGHT AND SPACING OF WOOD STUDS [a]

STUD SIZE (inches)	BEARING WALLS					NONBEARING	
	Laterally unsupported stud height [a] (feet)	Maximum spacing where supporting a roof-ceiling assembly or a habitable attic assembly, only (inches)	Maximum spacing where supporting one floor, plus a roof-ceiling assembly or a habitable attic assembly (inches)	Maximum spacing where supporting two floors, plus a roof-ceiling assembly or a habitable attic assembly (inches)	Maximum spacing where supporting one floor height [a] (inches)	Laterally unsupported stud height [a] (feet)	Maximum spacing (inches)
							
2 × 3 [b]	—	—	—	—	—	10	16
2 × 4	10	24 [c]	16 [c]	—	24	14	24

STUD SIZE (inches)	BEARING WALLS					NONBEARING	
	Laterally unsupported stud height [a] (feet)	Maximum spacing where supporting a roof-ceiling assembly or a habitable attic assembly, only (inches)	Maximum spacing where supporting one floor, plus a roof-ceiling assembly or a habitable attic assembly (inches)	Maximum spacing where supporting two floors, plus a roof-ceiling assembly or a habitable attic assembly (inches)	Maximum spacing where supporting one floor height [a] (inches)	Laterally unsupported stud height [a] (feet)	Maximum spacing (inches)
							
3 × 4	10	24	24	16	24	14	24
2 × 5	10	24	24	—	24	16	24
2 × 6	10	24	24	16	24	20	24

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Listed heights are distances between points of lateral support placed perpendicular to the plane of the wall. Bearing walls shall be sheathed on not less than one side or bridging shall be installed not greater than 4 feet apart measured vertically from either end of the stud. Increases in unsupported height are permitted where in compliance with Exception 2 of Section 602.3.1 or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

b. Shall not be used in exterior walls.

c. A habitable attic assembly supported by 2 × 4 studs is limited to a roof span of 32 feet. Where the roof span exceeds 32 feet, the wall studs shall be increased to 2 × 6 or the studs shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

TABLE 602.3(6)
ALTERNATE WOOD BEARING WALL STUD SIZE, HEIGHT AND SPACING

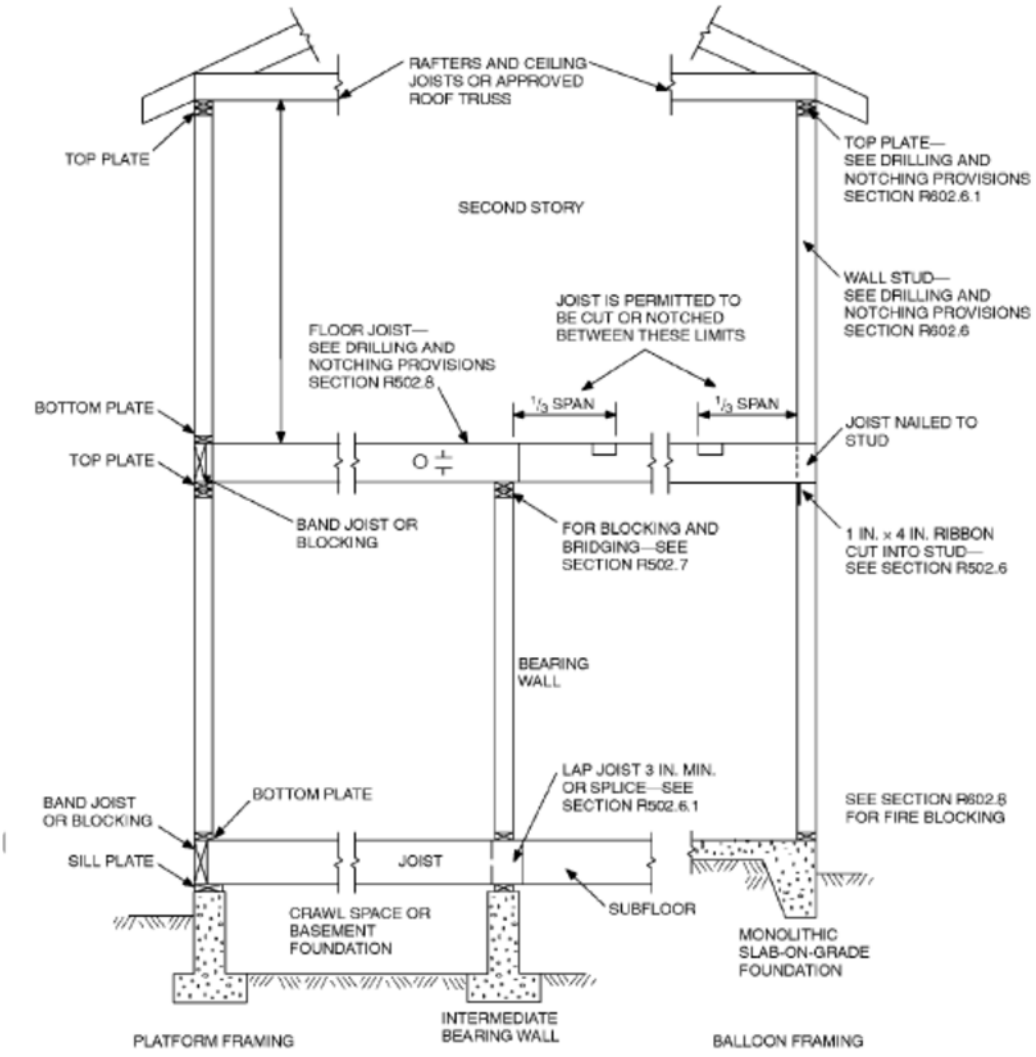
STUD HEIGHT	SUPPORTING	STUD SPACING [a]	ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED					
			115 mph		130 mph [b]		140 mph [b]	
			Maximum roof/floor span [c]		Maximum roof/floor span [c]		Maximum roof/floor span [c]	
			12 ft.	24 ft.	12 ft.	24 ft.	12 ft.	24 ft.
11 ft.	Roof Only	12 in.	2 × 4	2 × 4	2 × 4	2 × 4	2 × 4	2 × 4
		16 in.	2 × 4	2 × 4	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 4	2 × 6
		24 in.	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6
	Roof and One Floor	12 in.	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 4	2 × 6
		16 in.	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6
		24 in.	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6
12 ft.	Roof Only	12 in	2 × 4	2 × 4	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 4	2 × 6
		16 in.	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6
		24 in.	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6
	Roof and One Floor	12 in	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6
		16 in.	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6
		24 in.	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	2 × 6	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mph = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound = 4.448 N. DR = Design Required.

a. Wall studs not exceeding 16 inches on center shall be sheathed with minimum $^1/_2$ -inch gypsum board on the interior and 3/8 -inch wood structural panel sheathing on the exterior. Wood structural panel sheathing shall be attached with 8d (2.5" x 0.131") nails not greater than 6 inches on center along panel edges and 12 inches on center at intermediate supports, and all panel joints shall occur over studs or blocking.

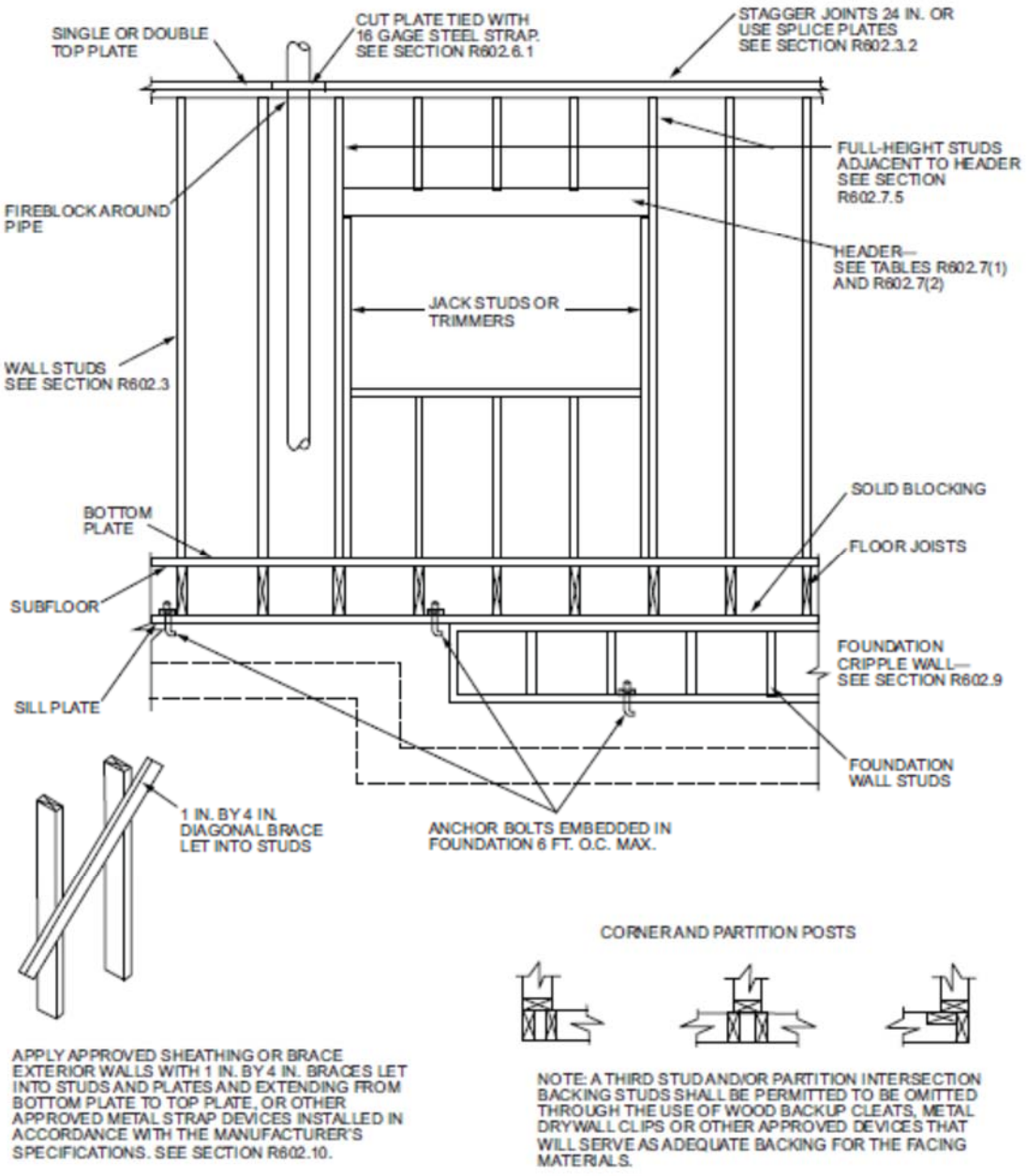
b. Where the ultimate design wind speed exceeds 115 mph, studs shall be attached to top and bottom plates with connectors having a minimum 300-pound lateral capacity.

c. The maximum span is applicable to both single- and multiple-span roof and floor conditions. The roof assembly shall not contain a habitable attic.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 602.3(1)
TYPICAL WALL, FLOOR AND ROOF FRAMING



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 602.3(2)
FRAMING DETAILS

602.3.1 Stud size, height and spacing. The size, height and spacing of studs shall be in accordance with Table 602.3(5).

Exceptions:

1. Utility grade studs shall not be spaced more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center, shall not support more than a roof and ceiling, and shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm) in height for exterior walls and load-bearing walls or 10 feet (3048 mm) for interior nonload-bearing walls.
2. Where snow loads are less than or equal to 25 pounds per square foot (1.2 kPa), and the ultimate design wind speed is less than or equal to 130 mph (58.1 m/s), 2-inch by 6-inch (38 mm by 140 mm) studs supporting a roof load with not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) of tributary length shall have a maximum height of 18 feet (5486 mm) where spaced at 16 inches (406 mm) on center, or 20 feet (6096 mm) where spaced at 12 inches (305 mm) on center. Studs shall be No. 2 grade lumber or better.
3. Exterior load-bearing studs not exceeding 12 feet (3658 mm) in height provided in accordance with Table 602.3(6). The minimum number of full-height studs adjacent to openings shall be in accordance with Section 602.7.5. The building shall be located in Exposure B, the roof live load shall not exceed 20 psf (0.96 kPa), and the ground snow load shall not exceed 30 psf (1.4 kPa). Studs and plates shall be No. 2 grade lumber or better.

602.3.2 Top plate. Wood stud walls shall be capped with a double top plate installed to provide overlapping at corners and intersections with bearing partitions. End joints in top plates shall be offset not less than 24 inches (610 mm). Joints in plates need not occur over studs. Plates shall be not less than 2-inches (51 mm) nominal thickness and have a width not less than the width of the studs.

Exception: A single top plate used as an alternative to a double top plate shall comply with the following:

1. The single top plate shall be tied at corners, intersecting walls, and at in-line splices in straight wall lines in accordance with Table 602.3.2.
2. The rafters or joists shall be centered over the studs with a tolerance of not more than 1 inch (25 mm).
3. Omission of the top plate is permitted over headers where the headers are adequately tied to adjacent wall sections in accordance with Table 602.3.2.

TABLE 602.3.2
SINGLE TOP-PLATE SPLICE CONNECTION DETAILS

CONDITION	TOP-PLATE SPLICE LOCATION			
	Corners and intersecting walls		Butt joints in straight walls	
	Splice plate size	Minimum nails each side of joint	Splice plate size	Minimum nails each side
Structures in *Seismic design category* A-*B*	3" x 6" x 0.036" galvanized steel plate or equivalent	(6) 8d box (2 1/2" x 0.113") nails	3' x 12" x 0.036" galvanized steel plate or equivalent	(12) 8d box (2 1/2" x 0.113") nails

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

602.3.3 Bearing studs. Where joists, trusses or rafters are spaced more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center and the bearing studs below are spaced 24 inches (610 mm) on center, such members shall bear within 5 inches (127 mm) of the studs beneath.

Exceptions:

1. The top plates are two 2-inch by 6-inch (38 mm by 140 mm) or two 3-inch by 4-inch (64 mm by 89 mm) members.
2. A third top plate is installed.
3. Solid blocking equal in size to the studs is installed to reinforce the double top plate.

602.3.4 Bottom (sole) plate. Studs shall have full bearing on a nominal 2-by (51 mm) or larger plate or sill having a width not less than to the width of the studs.

602.3.5 Braced wall panel uplift load path. Braced wall panels located at exterior walls that support roof rafters or trusses (including stories below top story) shall have the framing members connected in accordance with one of the following:

1. Fastening in accordance with Table 602.3(1) where:
   1.1. The ultimate design wind speed does not exceed 115 mph (51 m/s), the wind exposure category is B, the roof pitch is 5:12 or greater, and the roof span is 32 feet (9754 mm) or less.
   1.2. The net uplift value at the top of a wall does not exceed 100 plf (146 N/mm). The net uplift value shall be determined in accordance with Section 802.11 and shall be permitted to be reduced by 60 plf (86 N/mm) for each full wall above.
2. Where the net uplift value at the top of a wall exceeds 100 plf (146 N/mm), installing approved uplift framing connectors to provide a continuous load path from the top of the wall to the foundation or to a point where the uplift force is 100 plf (146 N/mm) or less. The net uplift value shall be as determined in Item 1.2.

3. Wall sheathing and fasteners designed to resist combined uplift and shear forces in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

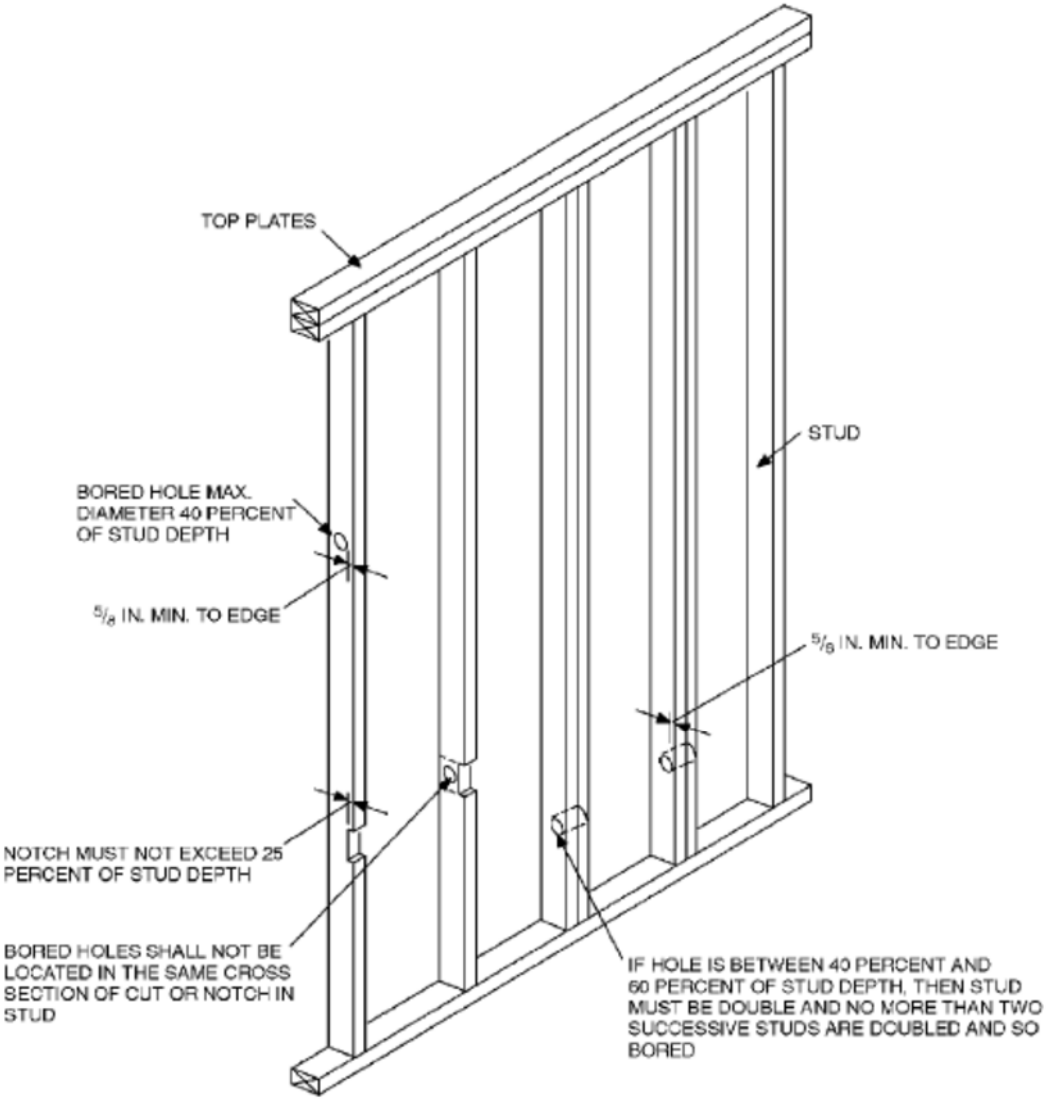
602.4 Interior load-bearing walls. Interior load-bearing walls shall be constructed, framed and fireblocked as specified for exterior walls *in accordance with Section 602.8*.

602.5 Interior nonbearing walls. Interior nonbearing walls shall be permitted to be constructed with 2 -inch by 3 -inch (51 mm by 76 mm) studs spaced 24 -inches (610 mm) on center or, where not part of a braced wall line, 2 -inch by 4 -inch (51 mm by 102 mm) flat studs spaced at 16 -inches (406 mm) on center. Interior nonbearing walls shall be capped with not less than a single top plate. Interior nonbearing walls shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section 602.8.

602.6 Drilling and notching of studs. Drilling and notching of studs shall be in accordance with the following:

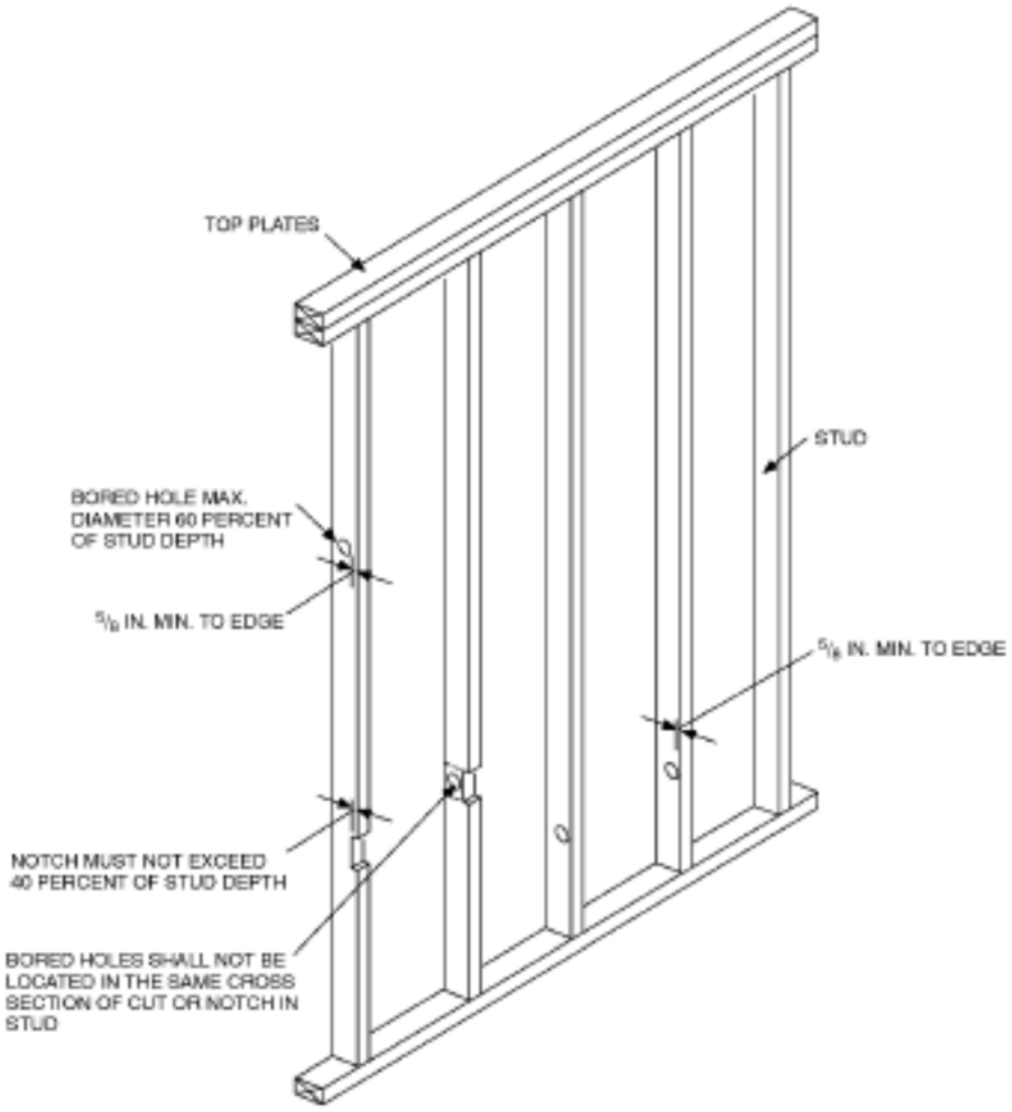
1. Notching. Any stud in an exterior wall or bearing partition shall be permitted to be cut or notched to a depth not exceeding 25 percent of its width. Studs in nonbearing partitions shall be permitted to be notched to a depth not to exceed 40 percent of a single stud width.
2. Drilling. Any stud shall be permitted to be bored or drilled, provided that the diameter of the resulting hole is not more than 60 percent of the stud width, the edge of the hole is not *closer* than $^{5}/_{8}$ -inch (16 mm) to the edge of the stud, and the hole is not located in the same section as a cut or notch. Studs located in exterior walls or bearing partitions drilled over 40 percent and up to 60 percent shall be doubled with not more than two successive doubled studs bored. See Figures 602.6(1) and 602.6(2).

   Exception: Use of approved stud shoes is permitted where they are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
Note: Condition for exterior and bearing walls.

FIGURE 602.6(1)
NOTCHING AND BORED HOLE LIMITATIONS FOR EXTERIOR WALLS AND BEARING WALLS



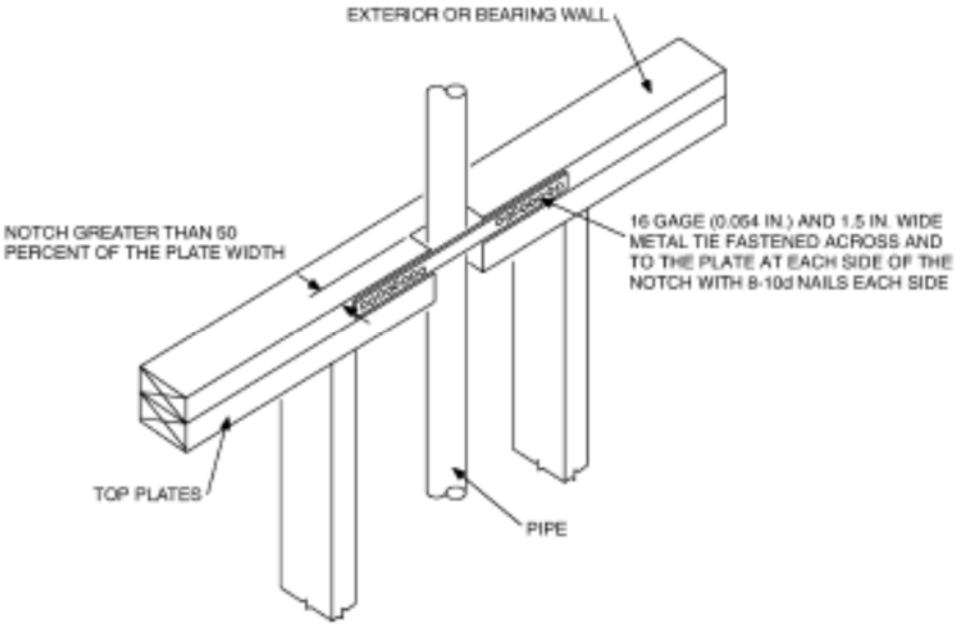
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 602.6(2)
NOTCHING AND BORED HOLE LIMITATIONS FOR INTERIOR NONBEARING WALLS

602.6.1 Drilling and notching of top plate. Where piping or ductwork is placed in or partly in an exterior wall or interior load-bearing wall, necessitating cutting, drilling or notching of the top plate by more than 50 percent of its width, a galvanized metal tie not less than 0.054 inch thick (1.37 mm) (16 ga) and $1^1/_2$

-inches (38 mm) wide shall be fastened across and to the plate at each side of the opening with not less than eight 10d (0.148 inch diameter) nails having a minimum length of $1^1/_2$ -inches (38 mm) at each side or equivalent. The metal tie must extend not less than 6 inches past the opening. See Figure 602.6.1.

Exception: Where the entire side of the wall with the notch or cut is covered by wood structural panel sheathing.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 602.6.1
TOP PLATE FRAMING TO ACCOMMODATE PIPING

602.7 Headers. For header spans, see Tables 602.7(1), 602.7(2) and 602.7(3).

TABLE 602.7(1)
GIRDER SPANS [a] AND HEADER SPANS [a] FOR EXTERIOR BEARING WALLS
(Maximum spans for Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, Southern pine and spruce-pine-fir [b] and required number of jack studs)

GIRDERS AND HEADERS SUPPORTING	SIZE	GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf) [c]																	
		30						50						70					
		Building width [c] (feet)																	
		12		24		36		12		24		36		12		24		36	
		Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]
Roof and ceiling 	1-2 × 6	4-0	1	3-1	2	2-7	2	3-5	1	2-8	2	2-3	2	3-0	2	2-4	2	2-0	2
	1-2 × 8	5-1	2	3-11	2	3-3	2	4-4	2	3-4	2	2-10	2	3-10	2	3-0	2	2-6	3
	1-2 × 10	6-0	2	4-8	2	3-11	2	5-2	2	4-0	2	3-4	3	4-7	2	3-6	3	3-0	3
	1-2 × 12	7-1	2	5-5	2	4-7	3	6-1	2	4-8	3	3-11	3	5-5	2	4-2	3	3-6	3
	2-2 × 4	4-0	1	3-1	1	2-7	1	3-5	1	2-7	1	2-2	1	3-0	1	2-4	1	2-0	1
	2-2 × 6	6-0	1	4-7	1	3-10	1	5-1	1	3-11	1	3-3	2	4-6	1	3-6	2	2-11	2
	2-2 × 8	7-7	1	5-9	1	4-10	2	6-5	1	5-0	2	4-2	2	5-9	1	4-5	2	3-9	2
	2-2 × 10	9-0	1	6-10	2	5-9	2	7-8	2	5-11	2	4-11	2	6-9	2	5-3	2	4-5	2
	2-2 × 12	10-7	2	8-1	2	6-10	2	9-0	2	6-11	2	5-10	2	8-0	2	6-2	2	5-2	3
	3-2 × 8	9-5	1	7-3	1	6-1	1	8-1	1	6-3	1	5-3	2	7-2	1	5-6	2	4-8	2
	3-2 × 10	11-3	1	8-7	1	7-3	2	9-7	1	7-4	2	6-2	2	8-6	1	6-7	2	5-6	2
	3-2 × 12	13-2	1	10-1	2	8-6	2	11-3	2	8-8	2	7-4	2	10-0	2	7-9	2	6-6	2
	4-2 × 8	10-11	1	8-4	1	7-0	1	9-4	1	7-2	1	6-0	1	8-3	1	6-4	1	5-4	2
	4-2 × 10	12-11	1	9-11	1	8-4	1	11-1	1	8-6	1	7-2	2	9-10	1	7-7	2	6-4	2
	4-2 × 12	15-3	1	11-8	1	9-10	2	13-0	1	10-0	2	8-5	2	11-7	1	8-11	2	7-6	2
Roof, ceiling and one center-bearing floor 	1-2 × 6	3-3	1	2-7	2	2-2	2	3-0	2	2-4	2	2-0	2	2-9	2	2-2	2	1-10	2
	1-2 × 8	4-1	2	3-3	2	2-9	2	3-9	2	3-0	2	2-6	3	3-6	2	2-9	2	2-4	3
	1-2 × 10	4-11	2	3-10	2	3-3	3	4-6	2	3-6	3	3-0	3	4-1	2	3-3	3	2-9	3
	1-2 × 12	5-9	2	4-6	3	3-10	3	5-3	2	4-2	3	3-6	3	4-10	3	3-10	3	3-3	4
	2-2 × 4	3-3	1	2-6	1	2-2	1	3-0	1	2-4	1	2-0	1	2-8	1	2-2	1	1-10	1
	2-2 × 6	4-10	1	3-9	1	3-3	2	4-5	1	3-6	2	3-0	2	4-1	1	3-3	2	2-9	2
	2-2 × 8	6-1	1	4-10	2	4-1	2	5-7	2	4-5	2	3-9	2	5-2	2	4-1	2	3-6	2
	2-2 × 10	7-3	2	5-8	2	4-10	2	6-8	2	5-3	2	4-5	2	6-1	2	4-10	2	4-1	2
	2-2 × 12	8-6	2	6-8	2	5-8	2	7-10	2	6-2	2	5-3	3	7-2	2	5-8	2	4-10	3
	3-2 × 8	7-8	1	6-0	1	5-1	2	7-0	1	5-6	2	4-8	2	6-5	1	5-1	2	4-4	2
	3-2 × 10	9-1	1	7-2	2	6-1	2	8-4	1	6-7	2	5-7	2	7-8	2	6-1	2	5-2	2
	3-2 × 12	10-8	2	8-5	2	7-2	2	9-10	2	7-8	2	6-7	2	9-0	2	7-1	2	6-1	2
	4-2 × 8	8-10	1	6-11	1	5-11	1	8-1	1	6-4	1	5-5	2	7-5	1	5-11	1	5-0	2
	4-2 × 10	10-6	1	8-3	2	7-0	2	9-8	1	7-7	2	6-5	2	8-10	1	7-0	2	6-0	2
	4-2 × 12	12-4	1	9-8	2	8-3	2	11-4	2	8-11	2	7-7	2	10-4	2	8-3	2	7-0	2
	1-2 × 6	2-11	2	2-3	2	1-11	2	2-9	2	2-1	2	1-9	2	2-7	2	2-0	2	1-8	2
	1-2 × 8	3-9	2	2-10	2	2-5	3	3-6	2	2-8	2	2-3	3	3-3	2	2-6	3	2 -2	3
	1-2 × 10	4-5	2	3-5	3	2-10	3	4-2	2	3-2	3	2-8	3	3-11	2	3-0	3	2-6	3
	1-2 × 12	5-2	2	4-0	3	3-4	3	4-10	3	3-9	3	3-2	4	4-7	3	3-6	3	3-0	4
	2-2 × 4	2-11	1	2-3	1	1-10	1	2-9	1	2-1	1	1-9	1	2-7	1	2-0	1	1-8	1
	2-2 × 6	4-4	1	3-4	2	2-10	2	4-1	1	3-2	2	2-8	2	3-10	1	3-0	2	2-6	2

GIRDERS AND HEADERS SUPPORTING	SIZE	GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf) [e]																	
		30						50						70					
		Building width [c] (feet)																	
		12		24		36		12		24		36		12		24		36	
		Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]	Span	NJ [d]
Roof, ceiling and one clear-span floor 	2-2 × 8	5-6	2	4-3	2	3-7	2	5-2	2	4-0	2	3-4	2	4-10	2	3-9	2	3-2	2
	2-2 × 10	6-7	2	5-0	2	4-2	2	6-1	2	4-9	2	4-0	2	5-9	2	4-5	2	3-9	3
	2-2 × 12	7-9	2	5-11	2	4-11	3	7-2	2	5-7	2	4-8	3	6-9	2	5-3	3	4-5	3
	3-2 × 8	6-11	1	5-3	2	4-5	2	6-5	1	5-0	2	4-2	2	6-1	1	4-8	2	4-0	2
	3-2 × 10	8-3	2	6-3	2	5-3	2	7-8	2	5-11	2	5-0	2	7-3	2	5-7	2	4-8	2
	3-2 × 12	9-8	2	7-5	2	6-2	2	9-0	2	7-0	2	5-10	2	8-6	2	6-7	2	5-6	3
	4-2 × 8	8-0	1	6-1	1	5-1	2	7-5	1	5-9	2	4-10	2	7-0	1	5-5	2	4-7	2
	4-2 × 10	9-6	1	7-3	2	6-1	2	8-10	1	6-10	2	5-9	2	8-4	1	6-5	2	5-5	2
	4-2 × 12	11-2	2	8-6	2	7-2	2	10-5	2	8-0	2	6-9	2	9-10	2	7-7	2	6-5	2
Roof, ceiling and two center-bearing floors 	1-2 × 6	2-8	2	2-1	2	1-10	2	2-7	2	2-0	2	1-9	2	2-5	2	1-11	2	1-8	2
	1-2 × 8	3-5	2	2-8	2	2-4	3	3-3	2	2-7	2	2-2	3	3-1	2	2-5	3	2-1	3
	1-2 × 10	4-0	2	3-2	3	2-9	3	3-10	2	3-1	3	2-7	3	3-8	2	2-11	3	2-5	3
	1-2 × 12	4-9	3	3-9	3	3-2	4	4-6	3	3-7	3	3-1	4	4-3	3	3-5	3	2-11	4
	2-2 × 4	2-8	1	2-1	1	1-9	1	2-6	1	2-0	1	1-8	1	2-5	1	1-11	1	1-7	1
	2-2 × 6	4-0	1	3-2	2	2-8	2	3-9	1	3-0	2	2-7	2	3-7	1	2-10	2	2-5	2
	2-2 × 8	5-0	2	4-0	2	3-5	2	4-10	2	3-10	2	3-3	2	4-7	2	3-7	2	3-1	2
	2-2 × 10	6-0	2	4-9	2	4-0	2	5-8	2	4-6	2	3-10	3	5-5	2	4-3	2	3-8	3
	2-2 × 12	7-0	2	5-7	2	4-9	3	6-8	2	5-4	3	4-6	3	6-4	2	5-0	3	4-3	3
	3-2 × 8	6-4	1	5-0	2	4-3	2	6-0	1	4-9	2	4-1	2	5-8	2	4-6	2	3-10	2
	3-2 × 10	7-6	2	5-11	2	5-1	2	7-1	2	5-8	2	4-10	2	6-9	2	5-4	2	4-7	2
	3-2 × 12	8-10	2	7-0	2	5-11	2	8-5	2	6-8	2	5-8	3	8-0	2	6-4	2	5-4	3
	4-2 × 8	7-3	1	5-9	1	4-11	2	6-11	1	5-6	2	4-8	2	6-7	1	5-2	2	4-5	2
	4-2 × 10	8-8	1	6-10	2	5-10	2	8-3	2	6-6	2	5-7	2	7-10	2	6-2	2	5-3	2
	4-2 × 12	10-2	2	8-1	2	6-10	2	9-8	2	7-8	2	6-7	2	9-2	2	7-3	2	6-2	2
Roof, ceiling, and two clear- span floors 	1-2 × 6	2-3	2	1-9	2	1-5	2	2-3	2	1-9	2	1-5	3	2-2	2	1-8	2	1-5	3
	1-2 × 8	2-10	2	2-2	3	1-10	3	2-10	2	2-2	3	1-10	3	2-9	2	2-1	3	1-10	3
	1-2 × 10	3-4	2	2-7	3	2-2	3	3-4	3	2-7	3	2-2	4	3-3	3	2-6	3	2-2	4
	1-2 × 12	4-0	3	3-0	3	2-7	4	4-0	3	3-0	4	2-7	4	3-10	3	3-0	4	2-6	4
	2-2 × 4	2-3	1	1-8	1	1-4	1	2-3	1	1-8	1	1-4	1	2-2	1	1-8	1	1-4	2
	2-2 × 6	3-4	1	2-6	2	2-2	2	3-4	2	2-6	2	2-2	2	3-3	2	2-6	2	2-1	2
	2-2 × 8	4-3	2	3-3	2	2-8	2	4-3	2	3-3	2	2-8	2	4-1	2	3-2	2	2-8	3
	2-2 × 10	5-0	2	3-10	2	3-2	3	5-0	2	3-10	2	3-2	3	4-10	2	3-9	3	3-2	3
	2-2 × 12	5-11	2	4-6	3	3-9	3	5-11	2	4-6	3	3-9	3	5-8	2	4-5	3	3-9	3
	3-2 × 8	5-3	1	4-0	2	3-5	2	5-3	2	4-0	2	3-5	2	5-1	2	3-11	2	3-4	2
	3-2 × 10	6-3	2	4-9	2	4-0	2	6-3	2	4-9	2	4-0	2	6-1	2	4-8	2	4-0	3
	3-2 × 12	7-5	2	5-8	2	4-9	3	7-5	2	5-8	2	4-9	3	7-2	2	5-6	3	4-8	3
	4-2 × 8	6-1	1	4-8	2	3-11	2	6-1	1	4-8	2	3-11	2	5-11	1	4-7	2	3-10	2
	4-2 × 10	7-3	2	5-6	2	4-8	2	7-3	2	5-6	2	4-8	2	7-0	2	5-5	2	4-7	2
	4-2 × 12	8-6	2	6-6	2	5-6	2	8-6	2	6-6	2	5-6	2	8-3	2	6-4	2	5-4	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Spans are given in feet and inches.
b. Spans are based on minimum design properties for No. 2 grade lumber of Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, Southern pine, and spruce-pine-fir.
c. Building width is measured perpendicular to the ridge. For widths between those shown, spans are permitted to be interpolated.
d. NJ = Number of jack studs required to support each end. Where the number of required jack studs equals one, the header is permitted to be supported by an approved framing anchor attached to the full-height wall stud and to the header.
e. Use 30 psf ground snow load for cases in which ground snow load is less than 30 psf and the roof live load is equal to or less than 20 psf.
f. Spans are calculated assuming the top of the header or girder is laterally braced by perpendicular framing. Where the top of the header or girder is not laterally braced (for example, cripple studs bearing on the header), tabulated spans for headers consisting of 2 × 8, 2 × 10, or 2 × 12 sizes shall be multiplied by 0.70 or the header or girder shall be designed.

TABLE 602.7(2)
GIRDER SPANS [a] AND HEADER SPANS [a] FOR INTERIOR BEARING WALLS
(Maximum spans for Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, southern pine and spruce-pine-fir [b] and required number of jack studs)

HEADERS AND GIRDERS SUPPORTING	SIZE	BUILDING Width [c] (feet)					
		12		24		36	
		Span [e]	NJ [d]	Span [e]	NJ [d]	Span [e]	NJ [d]
One floor only	2-2 × 4	4-1	1	2-10	1	2-4	1
	2-2 × 6	6-1	1	4-4	1	3-6	1
	2-2 × 8	7-9	1	5-5	1	4-5	2
	2-2 × 10	9-2	1	6-6	2	5-3	2
	2-2 × 12	10-9	1	7-7	2	6-3	2
	3-2 × 8	9-8	1	6-10	1	5-7	1
	3-2 × 10	11-5	1	8-1	1	6-7	2
	3-2 × 12	13-6	1	9-6	2	7-9	2
	4-2 × 8	11-2	1	7-11	1	6-5	1
	4-2 × 10	13-3	1	9-4	1	7-8	1
	4-2 × 12	15-7	1	11-0	1	9-0	2
Two floors	2-2 × 4	2-7	1	1-11	1	1-7	1
	2-2 × 6	3-11	1	2-11	2	2-5	2
	2-2 × 8	5-0	1	3-8	2	3-1	2
	2-2 × 10	5-11	2	4-4	2	3-7	2
	2-2 × 12	6-11	2	5-2	2	4-3	3
	3-2 × 8	6-3	1	4-7	2	3-10	2
	3-2 × 10	7-5	1	5-6	2	4-6	2
	3-2 × 12	8-8	2	6-5	2	5-4	2
	4-2 × 8	7-2	1	5-4	1	4-5	2
	4-2 × 10	8-6	1	6-4	2	5-3	2
	4-2 × 12	10-1	1	7-5	2	6-2	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Spans are given in feet and inches.
b. Spans are based on minimum design properties for No. 2 grade lumber of Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, Southern pine, and spruce-pine-fir.
c. Building width is measured perpendicular to the ridge. For widths between those shown, spans are permitted to be interpolated.
d. NJ = Number of jack studs required to support each end. Where the number of required jack studs equals one, the header is permitted to be supported by an approved framing anchor attached to the full-height wall stud and to the header.

e. Spans are calculated assuming the top of the header or girder is laterally braced by perpendicular framing. Where the top of the header or girder is not laterally braced (for example, cripple studs bearing on the header), tabulated spans for headers consisting of 2 × 8, 2 × 10, or 2 × 12 sizes shall be multiplied by 0.70 or the header or girder shall be designed.

TABLE 602.7(3)
GIRDER AND HEADER SPANS [a] FOR OPEN PORCHES
(Maximum span for Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, Southern pine and spruce-pine-fir [b])

SIZE	SUPPORTING ROOF						SUPPORTING FLOOR	
	GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf)							
	30		50		70			
	DEPTH OF PORCH [c] (feet)							
	8	14	8	14	8	14	8	14
2-2 × 6	7-6	5-8	6-2	4-8	5-4	4-0	6-4	4-9
2-2 × 8	10-1	7-7	8-3	6-2	7-1	5-4	8-5	6-4
2-2 × 10	12-4	9-4	10-1	7-7	8-9	6-7	10-4	7-9
2-2 × 12	14-4	10-10	11-8	8-10	10-1	7-8	11-11	9-0

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Spans are given in feet and inches.
b. Tabulated values assume No. 2 grade lumber, wet service and incising for refractory species. Use 30 psf ground snow load for cases in which ground snow load is less than 30 psf and the roof live load is equal to or less than 20 psf.
c. Porch depth is measured horizontally from building face to centerline of the header. For depths between those shown, spans are permitted to be interpolated.

602.7.1 Single member headers. Single headers shall be framed with a single flat 2-inch-nominal (51 mm) member or wall plate not less in width than the wall studs on the top and bottom of the header in accordance with Figures 602.7.1(1) and 602.7.1(2) and face nailed to the top and bottom of the header with 10d box nails (3 inches × 0.128 inches) spaced 12 inches on center.

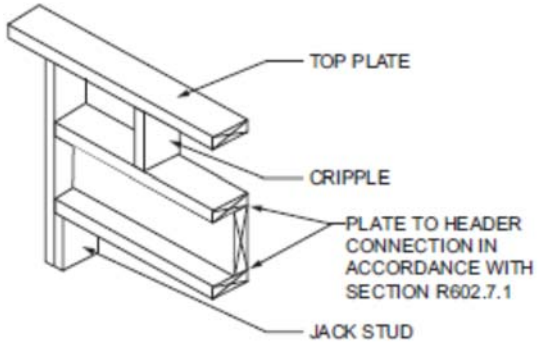


FIGURE 602.7.1(1)
SINGLE-MEMBER HEADER IN EXTERIOR BEARING WALL

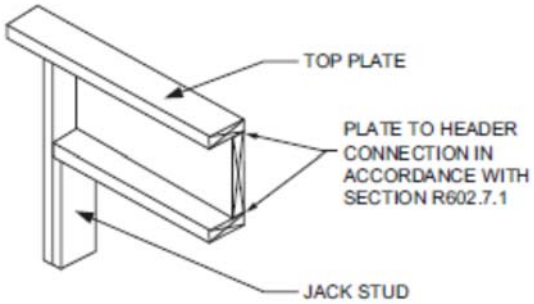
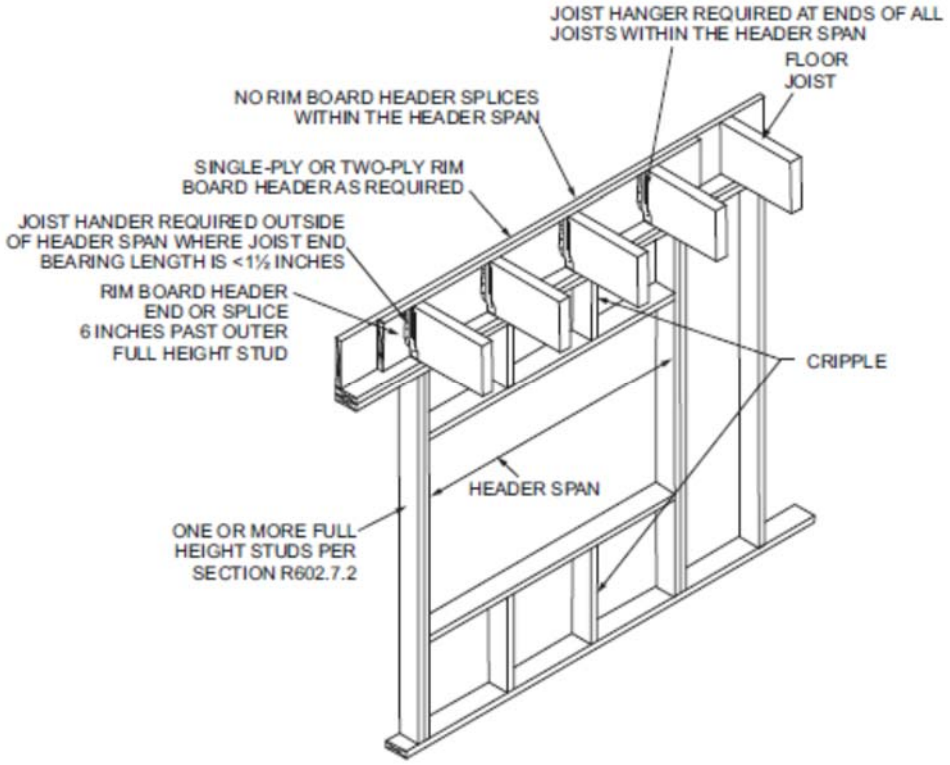


FIGURE 602.7.1(2)
ALTERNATIVE SINGLE-MEMBER HEADER WITHOUT CRIPPLE

602.7.2 Rim board headers. Rim board header size, material and span shall be in accordance with Table 602.7(1). Rim board headers shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 602.7.2 and shall be supported at each end by full-height studs. The number of full-height studs at each end shall be not less than the number of studs displaced by half of the header span based on the maximum stud spacing in accordance with Table 602.3(5). Rim board headers supporting concentrated loads shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.



For SI: 25.4 mm = 1 inch.

FIGURE 602.7.2
RIM BOARD HEADER CONSTRUCTION

602.7.3 Wood structural panel box headers. Wood structural panel box headers shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 602.7.3 and Table 602.7.3.

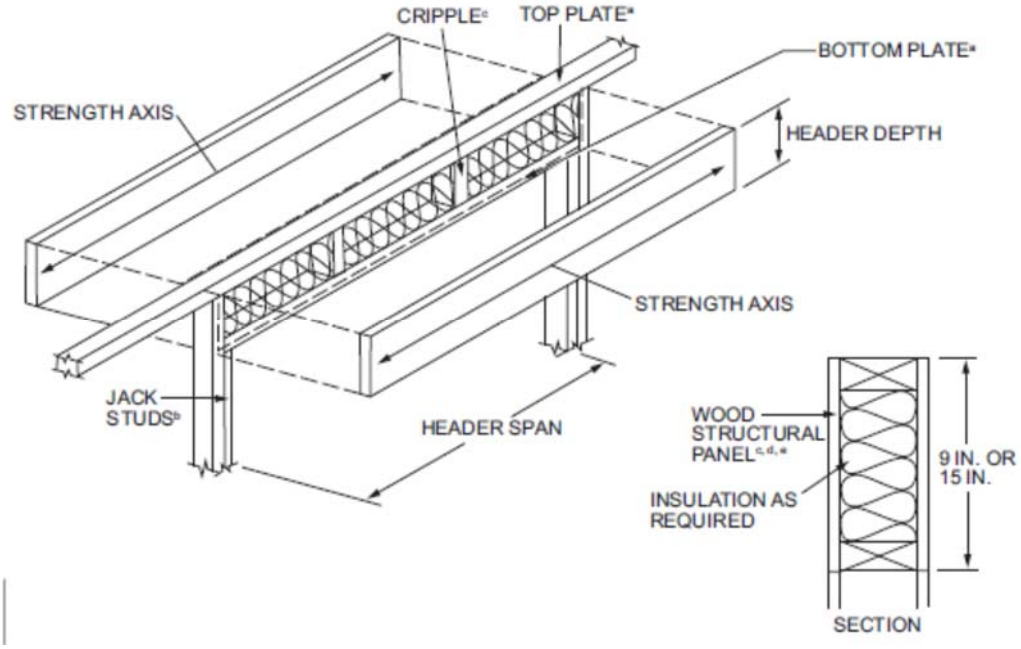
TABLE 602.7.3
MAXIMUM SPANS FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL BOX HEADERS [a]

HEADER CONSTRUCTION [b]	HEADER DEPTH (inches)	HOUSE DEPTH (feet)				
		24	26	28	30	32
Wood structural panel–one side	9 15	4 5	4 5	3 4	3 3	— 3
Wood structural panel–both sides	9 15	7 8	5 8	5 7	4 7	3 6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Spans are based on single story with clear-span trussed roof or two story with floor and roof supported by interior-bearing walls.

b. See Figure 602.7.3 for construction details.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NOTES:

a. The top and bottom plates shall be continuous at header location.

b. Jack studs shall be used for spans over 4 feet.

c. Cripple spacing shall be the same as for studs.

d. Wood structural panel faces shall be single pieces of $^{15}/_{32}$ -inch-thick Exposure 1 (exterior glue) or thicker, installed on the interior or exterior or both sides of the header.

e. Wood structural panel faces shall be nailed to framing and cripples with 8d common or galvanized box nails spaced 3 inches on center, staggering alternate nails ½ -inch. Galvanized nails shall be hot-dipped or tumbled.

FIGURE 602.7.3
TYPICAL WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL BOX HEADER CONSTRUCTION

602.7.4 Nonbearing walls. Load-bearing headers are not required in interior or exterior nonbearing walls. A single flat 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) member shall be permitted to be used as a header in interior or exterior non-bearing walls for openings up to 8 feet (2438 mm) in width if the vertical distance to the parallel nailing surface above is not more than 24 inches (610 mm). For such nonbearing headers, cripples or blocking are not required above the header.

602.7.5 Supports for headers. Headers shall be supported on each end with one or more jack studs or with approved framing anchors in accordance with Table 602.7(1) or 602.7(2). The full-height stud adjacent to each end of the header shall be end nailed to each end of the header with four-16d nails (3.5

inches × 0.135 inches). The minimum number of full-height studs at each end of a header shall be in accordance with Table 602.7.5.

TABLE 602.7.5
MINIMUM NUMBER OF FULL-HEIGHT STUDS AT EACH END OF HEADERS IN EXTERIOR WALLS [a]

MAXIMUM HEADER SPAN (feet)	ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY	
	≤ 140 mph, Exposure B or ≤ 130 mph, Exposure C	≤115 mph, Exposure B[b]
4	1	1
6	2	1
8	2	1
10	3	2
12	3	2
14	3	2
16	4	2
18	4	2

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. For header spans between those given, use the minimum number of full-height studs associated with the larger header span.

b. The tabulated minimum number of full-height studs is applicable where jack studs are provided to support the header at each end in accordance with Table 602.7(1). Where a framing anchor is used to support the header in lieu of a jack stud in accordance with Note d of Table 602.7(1), the minimum number of full-height studs at each end of a header shall be in accordance with requirements for wind speed < 140 mph, Exposure B.

602.8 Fireblocking required. Fireblocking shall be provided in accordance with Section 302.11.

602.9 Cripple walls. Foundation cripple walls shall be framed of studs not smaller than the studding above. Where exceeding 4 feet (1219 mm) in height, such walls shall be framed of studs having the size required for an additional story.

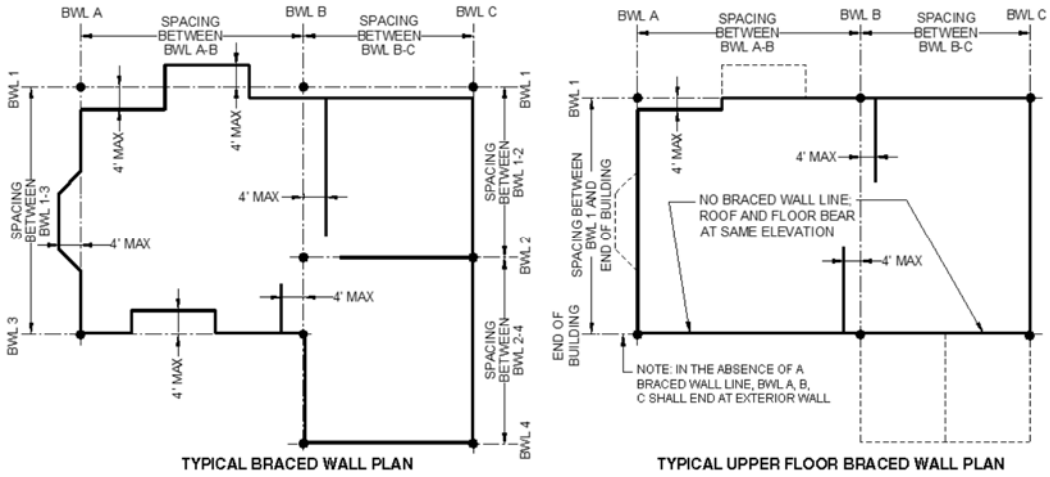
Cripple walls with a stud height less than 14 inches (356 mm) shall be continuously sheathed on one side with wood structural panels fastened to both the top and bottom plates in accordance with Table 602.3(1), or the cripple walls shall be constructed of solid blocking.

Cripple walls shall be supported on continuous foundations.

602.10 Wall bracing. Buildings shall be braced in accordance with this section or, when applicable, Section 602.12. Where a building, or portion thereof, does not comply with one or more of the bracing requirements in this section, those portions shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 301.1.

602.10.1 Braced wall lines. For the purpose of deter- mining the amount and location of bracing required in each story level of a building, braced wall lines shall be designated as straight lines in the building plan placed in accordance with this section.

602.10.1.1 Length of a braced wall line. The length of a braced wall line shall be the distance between its ends. The end of a braced wall line shall be the intersection with a perpendicular braced wall line, an angled braced wall line as permitted in Section 602.10.1.4 or an exterior wall as shown in Figure 602.10.1.1.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 602.10.1.1
BRACED WALL LINES

602.10.1.2 Offsets along a braced wall line. Exterior walls parallel to a braced wall line shall be offset not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) from the designated braced wall line location as shown in Figure 602.10.1.1. Interior walls used as bracing shall be off- set not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) from a braced wall line through the interior of the building as shown in Figure 602.10.1.1.

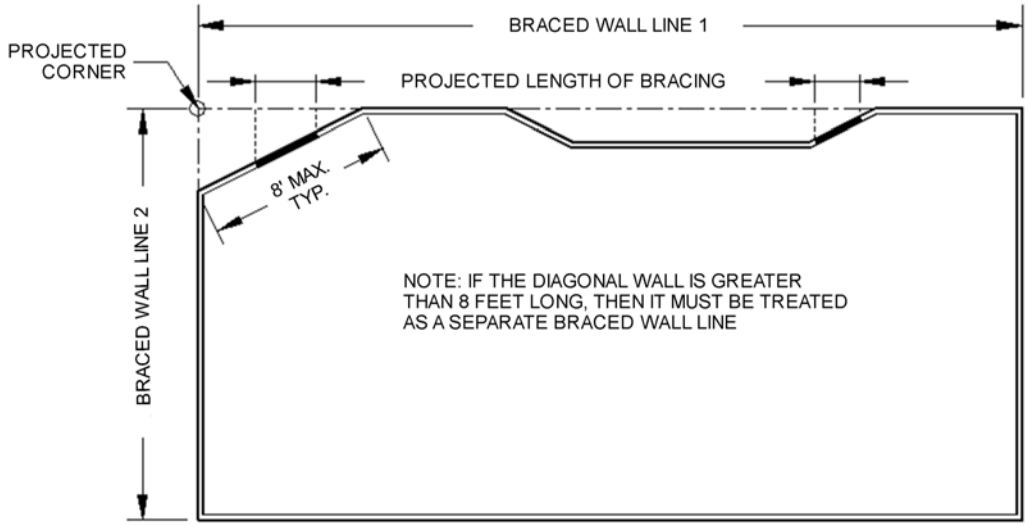
602.10.1.3 Spacing of braced wall lines. The spacing between parallel braced wall lines shall be in accordance with Table 602.10.1.3. Intermediate braced wall lines through the interior of the building shall be permitted.

TABLE 602.10.1.3
BRACED WALL LINE SPACING

APPLICATION	CONDITION	BUILDING TYPE	BRACED WALL LINE SPACING CRITERIA	
			Maximum	Exception to Maximum Spacing
Wind bracing	Ultimate design wind speed 100 mph to < 140 mph	*Dwellings or buildings with four or more dwelling units*	60 feet	None
Seismic bracing	SDC A – C	Detached *dwellings*	Use wind bracing	
	SDC A – B	*Buildings with four or more dwelling units*		
	SDC C	*Buildings with four or more dwelling units*	35 feet	Up to 50 feet when length of required bracing per Table 602.10.3(3) is adjusted in accordance with Table 602.10.3(4).

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

602.10.1.4 Angled walls. Any portion of a wall along a braced wall line shall be permitted to angle out of plane for a maximum diagonal length of 8 feet (2438 mm). Where the angled wall occurs at a corner, the length of the braced wall line shall be measured from the projected corner as shown in Figure 602.10.1.4. Where the diagonal length is greater than 8 feet (2438 mm), it shall be considered to be a separate braced wall line and shall be braced in accordance with Section 602.10.1.



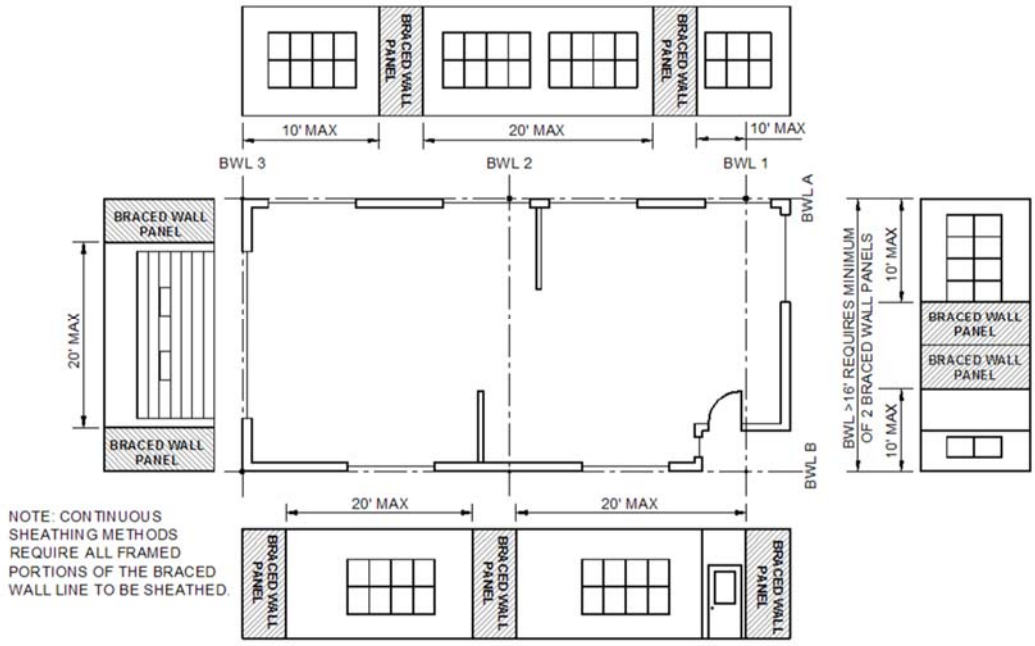
For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 602.10.1.4
ANGLED WALLS

602.10.2 Braced wall panels. Braced wall panels shall be full-height sections of wall that shall not have vertical or horizontal offsets. Braced wall panels shall be constructed and placed along a braced wall line in accordance with this section and the bracing methods specified in Section 602.10.4.

602.10.2.1 Braced wall panel uplift load path. The bracing lengths in Table 602.10.3(1) apply only when uplift loads are resisted in accordance with Section 602.3.5.

602.10.2.2 Locations of braced wall panels. A braced wall panel shall begin within 10 feet (3810 mm) from each end of a braced wall line as determined in Section 602.10.1.1. The distance between adjacent edges of braced wall panels along a braced wall line shall be not greater than 20 feet (6096 mm) as shown in Figure 602.10.2.2.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 602.10.2.2
LOCATION OF BRACED WALL PANELS

602.10.2.2.1 Location of braced wall panels in Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2. *Deleted*

602.10.2.3 Minimum number of braced wall panels. Braced wall lines

with a length of 16 feet (4877 mm) or less shall have not less than two braced wall panels of any length or one braced wall panel equal to 48 inches (1219 mm) or more. Braced wall lines greater than 16 feet (4877 mm) shall have not less than two braced wall panels.

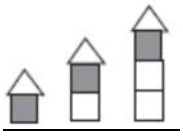
602.10.3 Required length of bracing. The required length of bracing along each braced wall line shall be determined as follows:

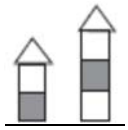
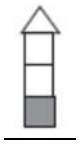
1. All buildings in Seismic Design Categories A and B shall use Table 602.10.3(1) and the applicable adjustment factors in Table 602.10.3(2).
2. Detached buildings in Seismic Design Category C shall use Table 602.10.3(1) and the applicable adjustment factors in Table 602.10.3(2).
3. *Building with four or more dwelling units* in Seismic Design Category C shall use the greater value determined from Table 602.10.3(1) or 602.10.3(3) and the applicable adjustment factors in Table 602.10.3(2) or 602.10.3(4), respectively.
4. *Deleted*

Only braced wall panels parallel to the braced wall line shall contribute toward the required length of bracing of that braced wall line. Braced wall panels along an angled wall meeting the minimum length requirements of Tables 602.10.5 and 602.10.5.2 shall be permitted to contribute its projected length toward the minimum required length of bracing for the braced wall line as shown in Figure 602.10.1.4. Any braced wall panel on an angled wall at the end of a braced wall line shall contribute its projected length for only one of the braced wall lines at the projected corner.

Exception: *Deleted*

TABLE 602.10.3(1)
BRACING REQUIREMENTS BASED ON WIND SPEED

• EXPOSURE CATEGORY B • 30-FOOT MEAN ROOF HEIGHT • 10-FOOT WALL HEIGHT • 2 BRACED WALL LINES			MINIMUM TOTAL LENGTH (FEET) OF BRACED WALL PANELS REQUIRED ALONG EACH BRACED WALL LINE [a]			
Ultimate Design Wind Speed (mph)	Story Location	Braced Wall Line Spacing [c] (feet)	Method LIB [b]	Method GB	Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS, BV-WSP, ABW, PFH, PFG, CS-SFB	Methods CS-WSP, CS-G, CS-PF
≤115		10	3.5	3.5	2.0	2.0
		20	6.5	6.5	3.5	3.5
		30	9.5	9.5	5.5	4.5
		40	12.5	12.5	7.0	6.0
		50	15.0	15.0	9.0	7.5
		60	18.0	18.0	10.5	9.0
		10	7.0	7.0	4.0	3.5

• EXPOSURE CATEGORY B • 30-FOOT MEAN ROOF HEIGHT • 10-FOOT WALL HEIGHT • 2 BRACED WALL LINES			MINIMUM TOTAL LENGTH (FEET) OF BRACED WALL PANELS REQUIRED ALONG EACH BRACED WALL LINE [a]			
Ultimate Design Wind Speed (mph)	**Story Location**	**Braced Wall Line Spacing [c] (feet)**	**Method LIB [b]**	**Method GB**	**Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS, BV-WSP, ABW, PFH, PFG, CS-SFB**	**Methods CS-WSP, CS-G, CS-PF**
≤115		20	12.5	12.5	7.5	6.5
		30	18.0	18.0	10.5	9.0
		40	23.5	23.5	13.5	11.5
		50	29.0	29.0	16.5	14.0
		60	34.5	34.5	20.0	17.0
		10	NP	10.0	6.0	5.0
		20	NP	18.5	11.0	9.0
		30	NP	27.0	15.5	13.0
		40	NP	35.0	20.0	17.0
		50	NP	43.0	24.5	21.0
		60	NP	51.0	29.0	25.0

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s. NP = Not Permitted.

a. Linear interpolation shall be permitted.

b. Method LIB shall have gypsum board fastened to not less than one side with nails or screws in accordance with Table 602.3(1) for exterior sheathing or Table 702.3.5 for interior gypsum board. Spacing of fasteners at panel edges shall not exceed 8 inches.

c. Where three or more parallel braced wall lines are present and the distances between adjacent braced wall lines are different, the average dimension shall be permitted to be used for braced wall line spacing.

TABLE 602.10.3(2)
WIND ADJUSTMENT FACTORS TO THE REQUIRED LENGTH OF WALL BRACING

ITEM NUMBER	ADJUSTMENT BASED ON	STORY/ SUPPORTING	CONDITION	ADJUSTMENT FACTOR [a, b] [multiply length from Table 602.10.3(1) by this factor]	APPLICABLE METHODS
1	Exposure category[d]	One-story structure	B	1.00	All methods
			C	1.20	
			D	1.50	
		Two-story structure	B	1.00	
			C	1.30	
			D	1.60	
		Three-story structure	B	1.00	
			C	1.40	
			D	1.70	
2	Roof eave-to-ridge height	Roof only	≤ 5 feet	0.70	
			10 feet	1.00	
			15 feet	1.30	
			20 feet	1.60	
		Roof + 1 floor	≤ 5 feet	0.85	

ITEM NUMBER	ADJUSTMENT BASED ON	STORY/ SUPPORTING	CONDITION	ADJUSTMENT FACTOR [a, b] [multiply length from Table 602.10.3(1) by this factor]	APPLICABLE METHODS
			10 feet 15 feet 20 feet	1.00 1.15 1.30	
		Roof + 2 floors	≤ 5 feet 10 feet 15 feet 20 feet	0.90 1.00 1.10 Not permitted	
3	Story height (Section R301.3)	Any story	8 feet 9 feet 10 feet 11 feet 12 feet	0.90 0.95 1.00 1.05 1.10	
4	Number of braced wall lines (per plan direction)[c]	Any story	2 3 4 ≥ 5	1.00 1.30 1.45 1.60	
5	Additional 800-pound hold-down device	Top story only	Fastened to the end studs of each braced wall panel and to the foundation or framing below	0.80	DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS
6	Interior gypsum board finish (or equivalent)	Any story	Omitted from inside face of braced wall panels	1.40	DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS, CS-WSP, CS-G, CS-SFB
7	Gypsum board fastening	Any story	4 inches o.c. at panel edges, including top and bottom plates, and all horizontal joints blocked	0.7	GB
8	Horizontal blocking	Any story	Horizontal block is omitted	2.0	WSP, CS-WSP

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.48 N.

a. Linear interpolation shall be permitted.

b. The total adjustment factor is the product of all applicable adjustment factors.

c. The adjustment factor is permitted to be 1.0 when determining bracing amounts for intermediate braced wall lines provided the bracing amounts on adjacent braced wall lines are based on a spacing and number that neglects the intermediate braced wall line.

d. The same adjustment factor shall be applied to all braced wall lines on all floors of the structure, based on the worst-case exposure category.

TABLE 602.10.3(3)
BRACING REQUIREMENTS BASED ON SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY

· SOIL CLASS D [b] · WALL HEIGHT = 10 FEET · 10 PSF FLOOR DEAD LOAD · 15 PSF ROOF/CEILING DEAD LOAD · BRACED WALL LINE SPACING £ 25 FEET			MINIMUM TOTAL LENGTH (FEET) OF BRACED WALL PANELS REQUIRED ALONG EACH BRACED WALL LINE [a, f]				
Seismic Design Category	**Story Location**	**Braced Wall Line Length (feet)[c]**	**Method LIB[d]**	**Method GB**	**Methods DWB, SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS, CS-SFB[e]**	**Method WSP**	**Methods CS-WSP, CS-G, CS-PF**
C (building with four or more dwelling units only)		10	2.5	2.5	2.5	1.6	1.4
		20	5.0	5.0	5.0	3.2	2.7
		30	7.5	7.5	7.5	4.8	4.1
		40	10.0	10.0	10.0	6.4	5.4
		50	12.5	12.5	12.5	8.0	6.8
		10	NP	4.5	4.5	3.0	2.6
		20	NP	9.0	9.0	6.0	5.1
		30	NP	13.5	13.5	9.0	7.7
		40	NP	18.0	18.0	12.0	10.2
		50	NP	22.5	22.5	15.0	12.8
		10	NP	6.0	6.0	4.5	3.8
		20	NP	12.0	12.0	9.0	7.7
		30	NP	18.0	18.0	13.5	11.5
		40	NP	24.0	24.0	18.0	15.3
		50	NP	30.0	30.0	22.5	19.1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

NP = Not Permitted.

a. Linear interpolation shall be permitted.

b. Wall bracing lengths are based on a soil site class "D." Interpolation of bracing length between the S_{ds} values associated with the seismic design categories shall be permitted when a site-specific S_{ds} value is determined in accordance with Section 1613.3 of the *Ohio Building Code*.

c. Where the braced wall line length is greater than 50 feet, braced wall lines shall be permitted to be divided into shorter segments having lengths of 50 feet or less, and the amount of bracing within each segment shall be in accordance with this table.

d. Method LIB shall have gypsum board fastened to not less than one side with nails or screws in accordance with Table 602.3(1) for exterior sheathing or Table 702.3.5 for interior gypsum board. Spacing of fasteners at panel edges shall not exceed 8 inches.

e. *Deleted*

f. Where more than one bracing method is used, mixing methods shall be in accordance with Section 602.10.4.1.

TABLE 602.10.3(4)
SEISMIC ADJUSTMENT FACTORS TO THE REQUIRED LENGTH OF WALL BRACING

ITEM NUMBER	ADJUSTMENT BASED ON	STORY	CONDITION	ADJUSTMENT FACTOR [a, b] [Multiply length from Table 602.10.3(3) by this factor]	APPLICABLE METHODS
1	Story height (Section 301.3)	Any story	≤ 10 feet > 10 feet and ≤ 12 feet	1.0 1.2	All methods
2	Braced wall line spacing, *building with*	Any story	≤ 35 feet	1.0	

ITEM NUMBER	ADJUSTMENT BASED ON	STORY	CONDITION	ADJUSTMENT FACTOR [a, b] [Multiply length from Table 602.10.3(3) by this factor]	APPLICABLE METHODS
	four or more dwelling units in SDC C		> 35 feet and ≤ 50 feet	1.43	
3	*Deleted*				
4	Wall dead load	Any story	> 8 psf and < 15 psf < 8 psf	1.0 0.85	
5	Roof/ceiling dead load for wall supporting	1-, 2- or 3-story building	≤15 psf	1.0	
		2- or 3-story building	> 15 psf and ≤ 25 psf	1.1	
		1-story building or top story	> 15 psf and ≤ 25 psf	1.2	
6	Walls with stone or masonry veneer, *buildings with four or more dwelling units* in SDC C[d, e]			1.0	
				1.5	
				1.5	
7	*Deleted*				
8	*Deleted*				
9	Interior gypsum board finish (or equivalent)	Any story	Omitted from inside face of braced wall panels	1.5	DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS, CS-WSP, CS-G, CS-SFB
10	Horizontal blocking	Any story	Horizontal blocking omitted	2.0	WSP, CS-WSP

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Linear interpolation shall be permitted.

b. The total length of bracing required for a given wall line is the product of all applicable adjustment factors.

c. The length-to-width ratio for the floor/roof diaphragm shall not exceed 3:1.

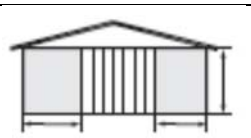
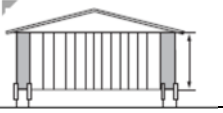
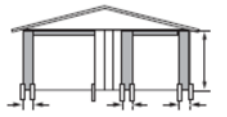
d. Applies to stone or masonry veneer exceeding the first story height.

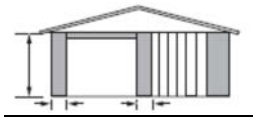
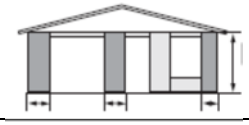
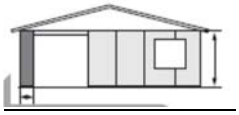
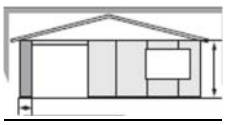
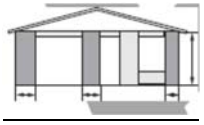
e. The adjustment factor for stone or masonry veneer shall be applied to all exterior braced wall lines and all braced wall lines on the interior of the building, backing or perpendicular to and laterally supporting veneered walls.

f. See Section 602.10.6.5 for requirements where stone or masonry veneer does not exceed the first-story height.

TABLE 602.10.4
BRACING METHODS

METHODS, MATERIAL		MINIMUM THICKNESS	FIGURE	CONNECTION CRITERIA [a]	
				Fasteners	Spacing
	LIB Let-in-bracing	1 × 4 wood or approved metal straps at 45° to 60° angles		Wood: 2-8d common nails or 3-8d (2 1/2 ″ long x 0.113″ dia.) nails	Wood: per stud and top and bottom plates

METHODS, MATERIAL		MINIMUM THICKNESS for maximum 16″ stud spacing	FIGURE	CONNECTION CRITERIA [a] Fasteners	Spacing
				Metal strap: per manufacturer	Metal: per manufacturer
Intermittent Bracing Methods	**DWB** Diagonal wood boards	3/4″ (1″ nominal) for maximum 24″ stud spacing		2-8d (2 1/2″ long × 0.113″ dia.) nails or 2 – 1 3/4″ long staples	Per stud
	WSP Wood structural panel (See Section 604)	3/8"		Exterior sheathing per Table 602.3(3)	6″ edges 12″ field
				Interior sheathing per Table 602.3(1) or 602.3(2)	Varies by fastener
	BV-WSP [e] Wood structural panels with stone or masonry veneer (See Section 602.10.6.5)	*Deleted*			
	SFB Structural fiberboard sheathing	1/2″ or 25/32″ for maximum 16″ stud spacing		1 1/2″ long × 0.12″ dia. (for 1/2″ thick sheathing) 1 3/4″ long × 0.12″ dia. (for 25/32″ thick sheathing) galvanized roofing nails	3″ edges 6″ field
	GB Gypsum board	1/2″		Nails or screws per Table 602.3(1) for exterior locations	For all braced wall panel locations: 7″ edges (including top and bottom plates) 7″ field
				Nails or screws per Table 702.3.5 for interior locations	
	PBS Particleboard sheathing (See Section 605)	3/8″ or 1/2″ for maximum 16″ stud spacing		For 3/8″, 6d common (2″ long × 0.113″ dia.) nails For 1/2″, 8d common (2 1/2″ long × 0.131″ dia.) nails	3″ edges 6″ field
	PCP Portland cement plaster	See Section 703.7 for maximum 16″ stud spacing		1 1/2″ long, 11 gage, 7/16″ dia. head nails or 7/8″ long, 16 gage staples	6″ o.c. on all framing members
	HPS Hardboard panel siding	7/16″ for minimum 16″ stud spacing		0.092″ dia., 0.225″ dia. head nails with length to accommodate 1 1/2″ penetration into studs	4″ edges 8″ field
	ABW Alternate braced wall	3/8″		See Section 602.10.6.1	See Section 602.10.6.1
	PFH Portal frame with hold-downs	3/8″		See Section 602.10.6.2	See Section 602.10.6.2

METHODS, MATERIAL		MINIMUM THICKNESS	FIGURE	CONNECTION CRITERIA [a]	
				Fasteners	Spacing
Intermittent Bracing	**PFG** Portal frame at garage	7/16″		See Section 602.10.6.3	See Section 602.10.6.3
Continuous Sheathing Methods	**CS-WSP** Continuously sheathed wood structural panel	3/8″		Exterior sheathing per Table 602.3(3)	6″ edges 12″ field
				Interior sheathing per Table 602.3(1) or 602.3(2)	Varies by fastener
	CS-G [b, c] Continuously sheathed wood structural panel adjacent to garage openings	3/8″		See Method CS-WSP	See Method CS-WSP
	CS-PF Continuously sheathed portal frame	7/16″		See Section 602.10.6.4	See Section 602.10.6.4
	CS-SFB[d] Continuously sheathed structural fiberboard	1/2″ or 25/32″ for maximum 16" stud spacing		1 1/2″ long × 0.12″ dia. (for 1/2″ thick sheathing) 1 3/4″ long × 0.12″ dia. (for 25/32″ thick sheathing) galvanized roofing nails	3″ edges 6″ field

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad, 1 pound per square foot = 47.8 N/m^2, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Adhesive attachment of wall sheathing, including Method GB, shall not be permitted in Seismic Design Categories C

b. Applies to panels next to garage door opening where supporting gable end wall or roof load only. Shall only be used on one wall of the garage.

c. Garage openings adjacent to a Method CS-G panel shall be provided with a header in accordance with Table 602.7(1). A full-height clear opening shall not be permitted adjacent to a Method CS-G panel.

d. Deleted

e. Deleted

602.10.4 Construction methods for braced wall panels. Intermittent and continuously sheathed braced wall panels shall be constructed in accordance with this section and the methods listed in Table 602.10.4.

602.10.4.1 Mixing methods. Mixing of bracing methods shall be permitted as follows:

1. Mixing intermittent bracing and continuous sheathing methods from story to story shall be permitted.
2. Mixing intermittent bracing methods from braced wall line to braced wall line within a story shall be permitted. In regions within Seismic Design Categories A, B and C where the ultimate design wind speed is less than or equal to 130 mph (58m/s), mixing of intermittent

bracing and continuous sheathing methods from braced wall line to braced wall line within a story shall be permitted.

3. Mixing intermittent bracing methods along a braced wall line shall be permitted in Seismic Design Categories A and B, and detached dwellings in Seismic Design Category C, provided that the length of required bracing in accordance with Table 602.10.3(1) or 602.10.3(3) is the highest value of all intermittent bracing methods used.
4. Mixing of continuous sheathing methods CS- WSP, CS-G and CS-PF along a braced wall line shall be permitted. Intermittent methods ABW, PFH and PFG shall be permitted to be used along a braced wall line with continuous sheathed methods, provided that the length of required bracing for that braced wall line is determined in accordance with Table 602.10.3(1) or 602.10.3(3) using the highest value of the bracing methods used.
5. In Seismic Design Categories A and B, and for detached dwellings in Seismic Design Category C, mixing of intermittent bracing methods along the interior portion of a braced wall line with continuous sheathing methods CS-WSP, CS-G and CS-PF along the exterior portion of the same braced wall line shall be permitted. The length of required bracing shall be the highest value of all intermittent bracing methods used in accordance with Table 602.10.3(1) or 602.10.3(3) as adjusted by Tables 602.10.3(2) and 602.10.3(4), respectively. The requirements of Section 602.10.7 shall apply to each end of the continuously sheathed portion of the braced wall line.

602.10.4.2 Continuous sheathing methods. Continuous sheathing methods require structural panel sheathing to be used on all sheathable surfaces on one side of a braced wall line including areas above and below openings and gable end walls and shall meet the requirements of Section 602.10.7.

602.10.4.3 Braced wall panel interior finish material. Braced wall panels shall have gypsum wall board installed on the side of the wall opposite the bracing material. Gypsum wall board shall be not less than ½ -inch (12.7 mm) in thickness and be fastened with nails or screws in accordance with Table 602.3(1) for exterior sheathing or Table 702.3.5 for interior gypsum wall board. Spacing of fasteners at panel edges for gypsum wall board opposite Method LIB bracing shall not exceed 8 inches (203 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Interior finish material is not required opposite wall panels that are braced in accordance with Methods GB, ABW, PFH, PFG and CS-PF, unless otherwise required by Section 302.6.
2. An approved interior finish material with an in-plane shear resistance equivalent to gypsum board shall be permitted to be substituted, unless otherwise required by Section 302.6.
3. Except for Method LIB, gypsum wall board is permitted to be omitted provided that the required length of bracing in Tables 602.10.3(1) and 602.10.3(3) is multiplied by the appropriate adjustment factor in Tables 602.10.3(2) and 602.10.3(4), respectively, unless otherwise required by Section 302.6.

602.10.4.4 Panel joints. Vertical joints of panel sheathing shall occur over and be fastened to common studs. Horizontal joints of panel sheathing in braced wall panels shall occur over and be fastened to common blocking of a thickness of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) or greater.

Exceptions:

1. For methods WSP and CS-WSP, blocking of horizontal joints is permitted to be omitted when adjustment factor No. 8 of Table 602.10.3(2) or No. 9 of Table 602.10.3(4) is applied.
2. Vertical joints of panel sheathing shall be permitted to occur over double studs, where adjoining panel edges are attached to separate studs with the required panel edge fastening schedule, and the adjacent studs are attached together with two rows of 10d box nails [3 inches by 0.128 inch (76.2 mm by 3.25 mm)] at 10 inches o.c. (254 mm).
3. Blocking at horizontal joints shall not be required in wall segments that are not counted as braced wall panels.
4. Where Method GB panels are installed horizontally, blocking of horizontal joints is not required.

602.10.5 Minimum length of a braced wall panel. The minimum length of a braced wall panel shall comply with Table 602.10.5. For Methods CS-WSP and CS-SFB, the minimum panel length shall be based on the adjacent clear opening height in accordance with Table 602.10.5 and Figure 602.10.5. Where a panel has an opening on either side of differing heights, the taller opening height shall be used to determine the panel length.

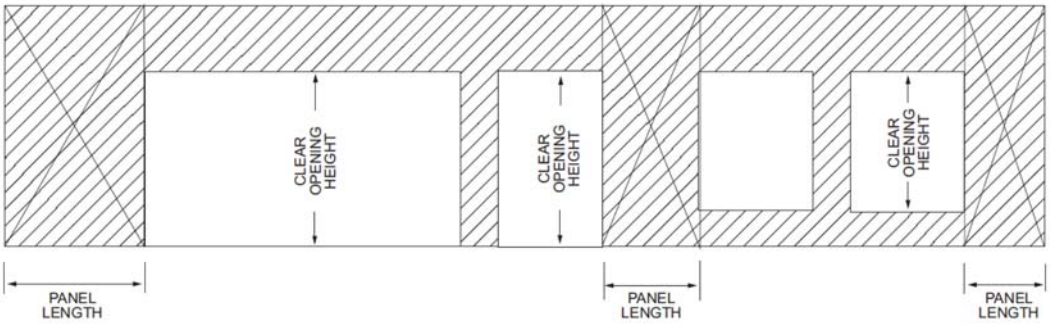


FIGURE 602.10.5
BRACED WALL PANELS WITH CONTINUOUS SHEATHING

TABLE 602.10.5
MINIMUM LENGTH OF BRACED WALL PANELS

METHOD (See Table 602.10.4)		MINIMUM LENGTH[a] (inches) Wall Height					CONTRIBUTING LENGTH (inches)
		8 feet	9 feet	10 feet	11 feet	12 feet	
DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS, BV-WSP		48	48	48	53	58	Actual [b]
GB		48	48	48	53	58	Double sided = Actual Single sided = 0.5 × Actual
LIB		55	62	69	NP	NP	Actual [b]
ABW	SDC A, B and C ultimate design wind speed < 140 mph	28	32	34	38	42	48
	Deleted						
CS-G		24	27	30	33	36	Actual [b]
CS-WSP, CS-SFB	Adjacent clear opening height (inches)						
	≤ 64	24	27	30	33	36	Actual [b]
	68	26	27	30	33	36	
	72	27	27	30	33	36	
	76	30	29	30	33	36	
	80	32	30	30	33	36	
	84	35	32	32	33	36	
	88	38	35	33	33	36	
	92	43	37	35	35	36	
	96	48	41	38	36	36	
	100	—	44	40	38	38	
	104	—	49	43	40	39	
	108	—	54	46	43	41	
	112	—	—	50	45	43	
	116	—	—	55	48	45	
	120	—	—	60	52	48	

METHOD (See Table 602.10.4)		MINIMUM LENGTH[a] (inches) Wall Height					CONTRIBUTING LENGTH (inches)
		8 feet	9 feet	10 feet	11 feet	12 feet	
	124	—	—	—	56	51	
	128	—	—	—	61	54	
	132	—	—	—	66	58	
	136	—	—	—	—	62	
	140	—	—	—	—	66	
	144	—	—	—	—	72	
METHOD (See Table 602.10.4)		Portal header height 8 feet	9 feet	10 feet	11 feet	12 feet	
PFH	Supporting roof only	16	16	16	Note c	Note c	48
	Supporting one story and roof	24	24	24	Note c	Note c	
PFG		24	27	30	Note d	Note d	1.5 × Actual [b]
CS-PF	SDC A, B and C	16	18	20	Note e	Note e	1.5 × Actual [b]
	Deleted						

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s. NP = Not Permitted.

a. Linear interpolation shall be permitted.

b. Use the actual length where it is greater than or equal to the minimum length.

c. Maximum header height for PFH is 10 feet in accordance with Figure 602.10.6.2, but wall height shall be permitted to be increased to 12 feet with pony wall.

d. Maximum header height for PFG is 10 feet in accordance with Figure 602.10.6.3, but wall height shall be permitted to be increased to 12 feet with pony wall.

e. Maximum header height for CS-PF is 10 feet in accordance with Figure 602.10.6.4, but wall height shall be permitted to be increased to 12 feet with pony wall.

602.10.5.1 Contributing length. For purposes of computing the required length of bracing in Tables 602.10.3(1) and 602.10.3(3), the contributing length of each braced wall panel shall be as specified in Table 602.10.5.

602.10.5.2 Partial credit. For Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP and HPS in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C, panels between 36 inches and 48 inches (914 mm and 1219 mm) in length shall be considered a braced wall panel and shall be permitted to partially contribute toward the required length of bracing in Tables 602.10.3(1) and 602.10.3(3), and the contributing length shall be determined from Table 602.10.5.2.

TABLE 602.10.5.2
PARTIAL CREDIT FOR BRACED WALL PANELS LESS THAN 48 INCHES IN ACTUAL LENGTH

ACTUAL LENGTH OF BRACED WALL PANEL (inches)	CONTRIBUTING LENGTH OF BRACED WALL PANEL (inches) [a]	
	8-foot Wall Height	9-foot Wall Height
48	48	48
42	36	36

36	27	NA

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm. NA = Not Applicable.

a. Linear interpolation shall be permitted.

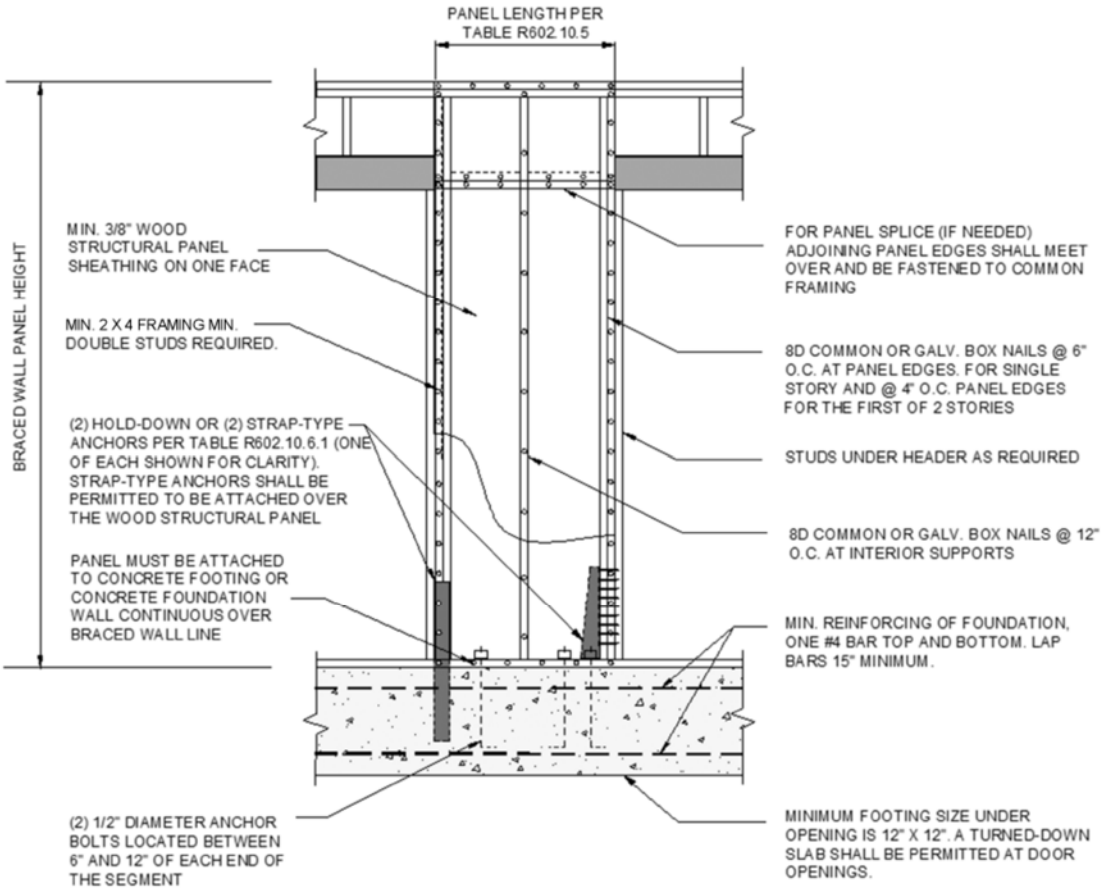
602.10.6 Construction of Methods ABW, PFH, PFG, *and CS-PF*. Methods ABW, PFH, PFG, *and CS-PF* shall be constructed as specified in Sections 602.10.6.1 through 602.10.6.5.

602.10.6.1 Method ABW: Alternate braced wall panels. Method ABW braced wall panels shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 602.10.6.1. The hold-down force shall be in accordance with Table 602.10.6.1.

TABLE 602.10.6.1
MINIMUM HOLD-DOWN FORCES FOR METHOD ABW BRACED WALL PANELS

SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY AND WIND SPEED	SUPPORTING/ STORY	HOLD-DOWN FORCE (pounds)				
		Height of Braced Wall Panel				
		8 feet	9 feet	10 feet	11 feet	12 feet
SDC A, B and C Ultimate design wind speed < 140 mph	One story	1,800	1,800	1,800	2,000	2,200
	First of two stories	3,000	3,000	3,000	3,300	3,600
Deleted						

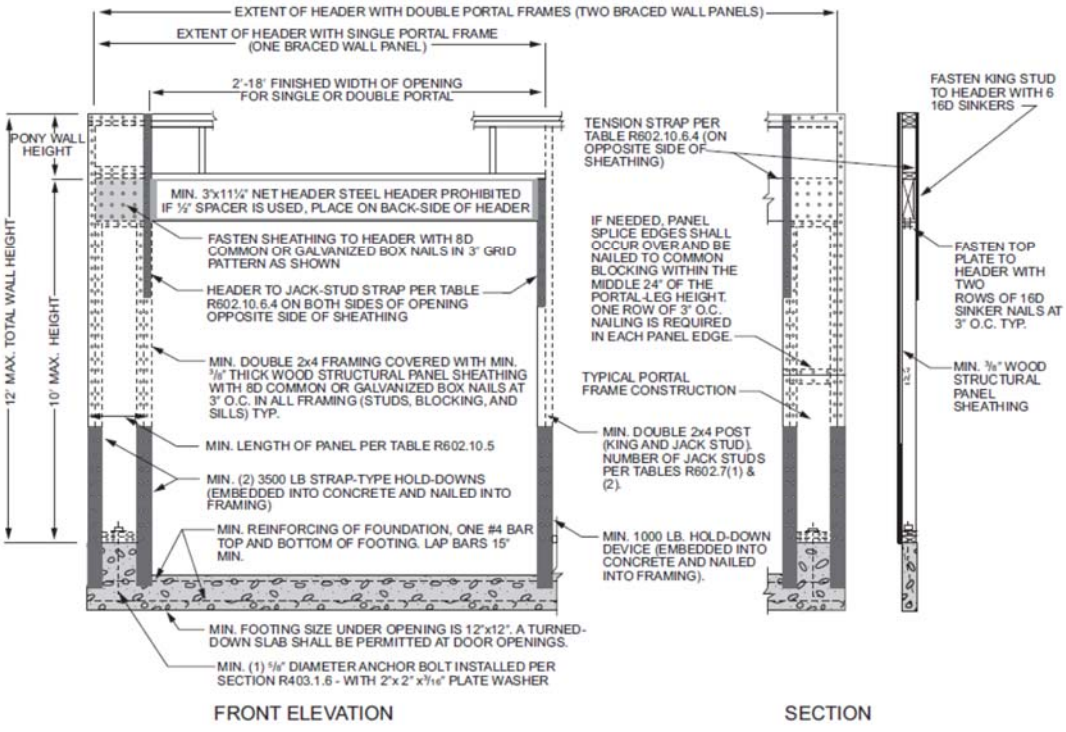
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.45 N, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s. NP = Not Permitted.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 602.10.6.1
METHOD ABW—ALTERNATE BRACED WALL PANEL

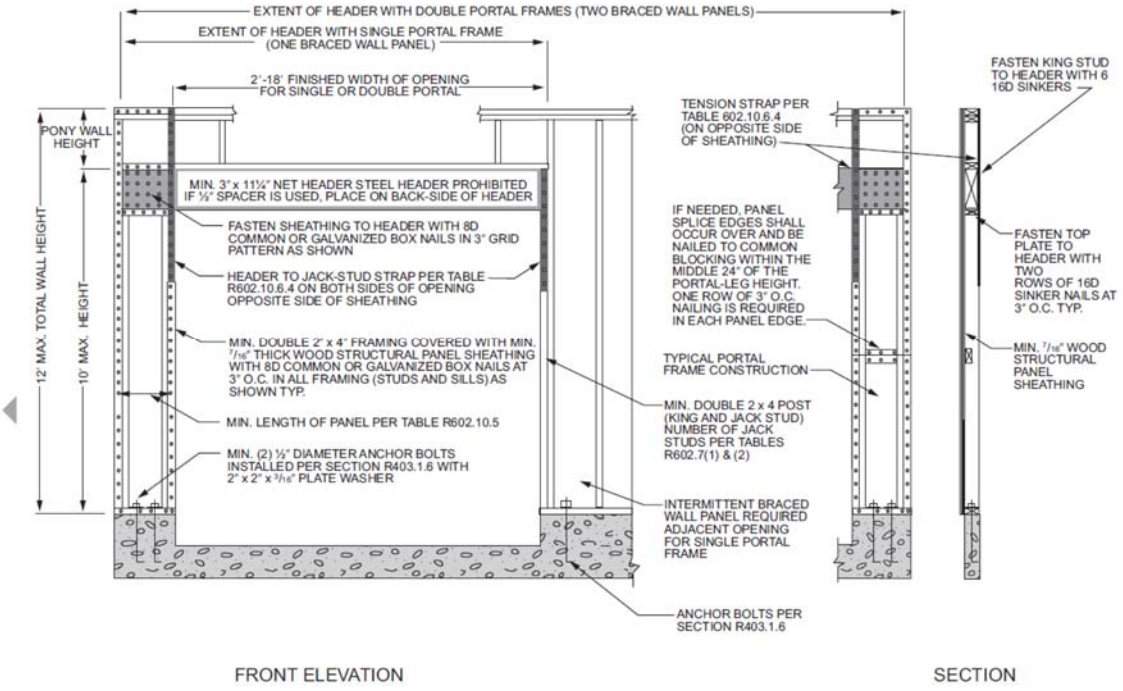
602.10.6.2 Method PFH: Portal frame with hold-downs. Method PFH braced wall panels shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 602.10.6.2.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 602.10.6.2
METHOD PFH—PORTAL FRAME WITH HOLD-DOWNS

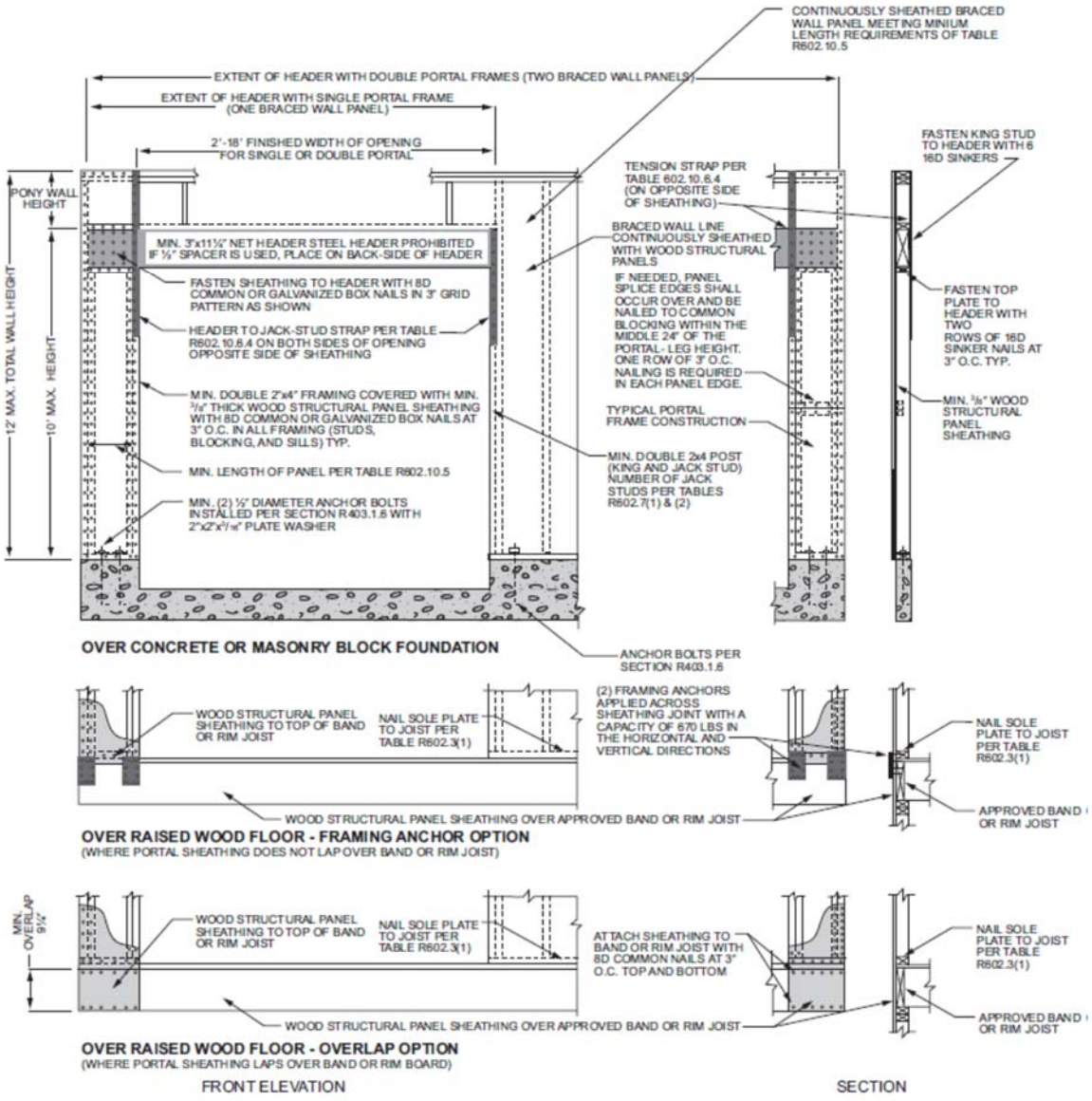
602.10.6.3 Method PFG: Portal frame at garage door openings in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C. Where supporting a roof or one story and a roof, a Method PFG braced wall panel constructed in accordance with Figure 602.10.6.3 shall be permitted on either side of garage door openings.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 602.10.6.3
METHOD PFG—PORTAL FRAME AT GARAGE DOOR OPENINGS IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES A, B and C

602.10.6.4 Method CS-PF: Continuously sheathed portal frame. Continuously sheathed portal frame braced wall panels shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 602.10.6.4 and Table 602.10.6.4. The number of continuously sheathed portal frame panels in a single braced wall line shall not exceed four.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 602.10.6.4
METHOD CS-PF—CONTINUOUSLY SHEATHED PORTAL FRAME PANEL CONSTRUCTION

TABLE 602.10.6.4
TENSION STRAP CAPACITY FOR RESISTING WIND PRESSURES PERPENDICULAR TO METHODS PFH, PFG AND CS-PF BRACED WALL PANELS [a]

MINIMUM WALL STUD FRAMING NOMINAL SIZE AND GRADE	MAXIMUM PONY WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM TOTAL WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM OPENING WIDTH (feet)	TENSION STRAP CAPACITY REQUIRED (pounds)a					
				Ultimate Design Wind Speed V_{ult} (mph)					
				110	115	130	110	115	130
				Exposure B			Exposure C		
2 × 4 No. 2 Grade	0	10	18	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,050
	1	10	9	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,750
			16	1,000	1,025	2,050	2,075	2,500	3,950
			18	1,000	1,275	2,375	2,400	2,850	DR
	2	10	9	1,000	1,000	1,475	1,500	1,875	3,125
			16	1,775	2,175	3,525	3,550	4,125	DR
			18	2,075	2,500	3,950	3,975	DR	DR
	2	12	9	1,150	1,500	2,650	2,675	3,175	DR
			16	2,875	3,375	DR	DR	DR	DR
			18	3,425	3,975	DR	DR	DR	DR
	4	12	9	2,275	2,750	DR	DR	DR	DR
			12	3,225	3,775	DR	DR	DR	DR
2 × 6 Stud Grade	2	12	9	1,000	1,000	1,700	1,700	2,025	3,050
			16	1,825	2,150	3,225	3,225	3,675	DR
			18	2,200	2,550	3,725	3,750	DR	DR
	4	12	9	1,450	1,750	2,700	2,725	3,125	DR
			16	2,050	2,400	DR	DR	DR	DR
			18	3,350	3,800	DR	DR	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s. DR = Design Required.
a. Straps shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

602.10.6.5 Wall bracing for dwellings with stone and masonry veneer in Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2. *Deleted*

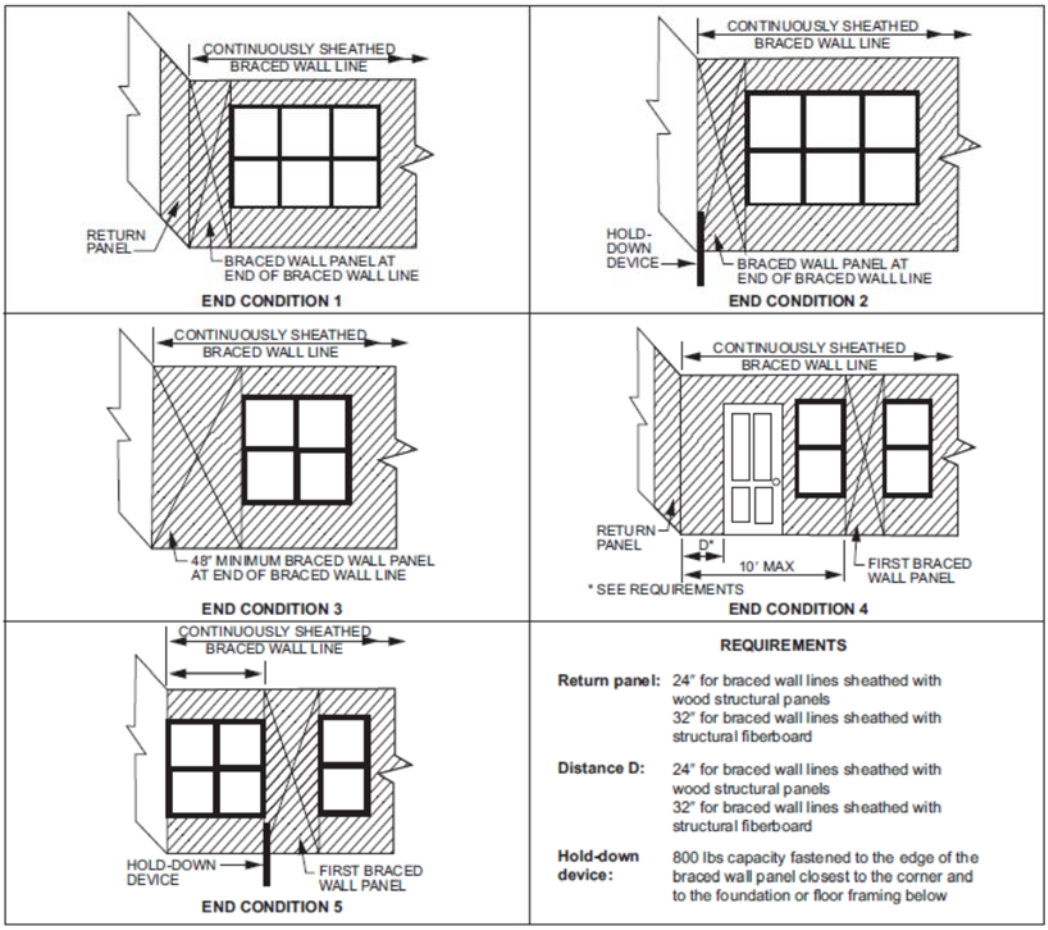
Figure Deleted

FIGURE 602.10.6.5
METHOD BV-WSP—WALL BRACING FOR DWELLINGS WITH STONE AND MASONRY VENEER IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES D_0, D_1 and D_2

TABLE 602.10.6.5
METHOD BV-WSP WALL BRACING REQUIREMENTS
Delete Table

602.10.6.5.1 Length of bracing. *Deleted*

602.10.7 Ends of braced wall lines with continuous sheathing. Each end of a braced wall line with continuous sheathing shall have one of the conditions shown in Figure 602.10.7.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.45 N.

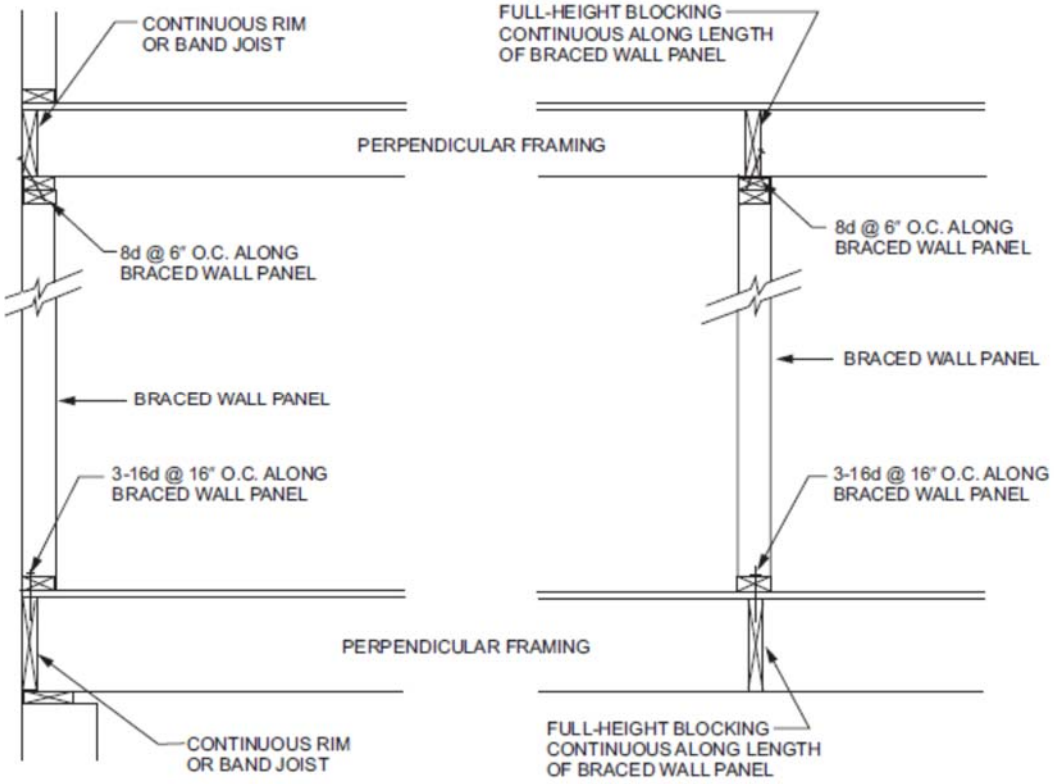
FIGURE 602.10.7
END CONDITIONS FOR BRACED WALL LINES WITH CONTINUOUS SHEATHING

602.10.8 Braced wall panel connections. Braced wall panels shall be connected to floor framing or foundations as follows:

1. Where joists are perpendicular to a braced wall panel above or below, a rim joist, band joist or blocking shall be provided along the entire length

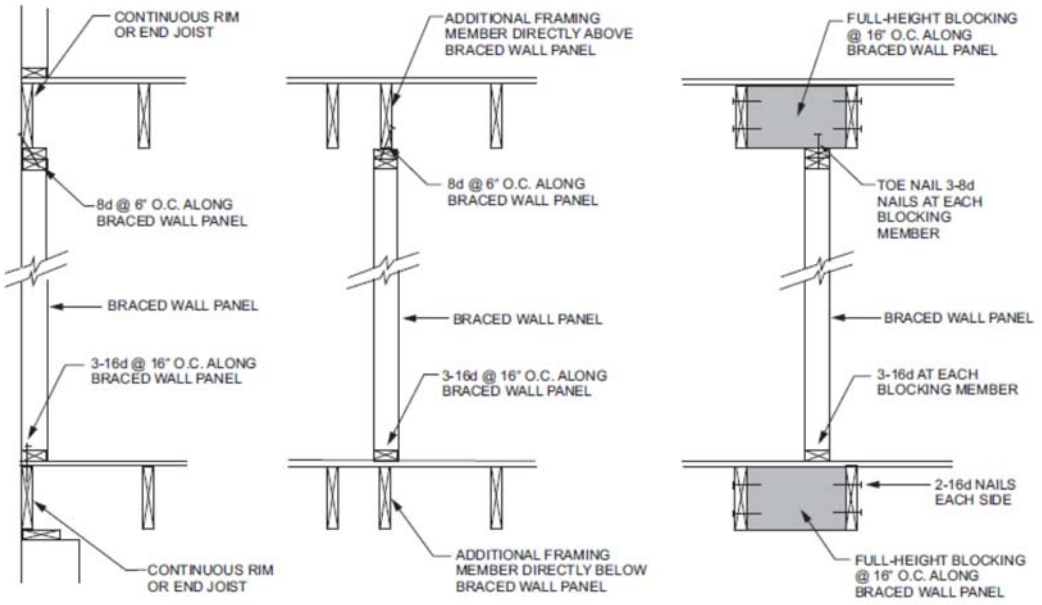
of the braced wall panel in accordance with Figure 602.10.8(1). Fastening of top and bottom wall plates to framing, rim joist, band joist or blocking shall be in accordance with Table 602.3(1).

2. Where joists are parallel to a braced wall panel above or below, a rim joist, end joist or other parallel framing member shall be provided directly above and below the braced wall panel in accordance with Figure 602.10.8(2). Where a parallel framing member cannot be located directly above and below the panel, full-depth blocking at 16-inch (406 mm) spacing shall be provided between the parallel framing members to each side of the braced wall panel in accordance with Figure 602.10.8(2). Fastening of blocking and wall plates shall be in accordance with Table 602.3(1) and Figure 602.10.8(2).
3. Connections of braced wall panels to concrete or masonry shall be in accordance with Section 403.1.6.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 602.10.8(1)
BRACED WALL PANEL CONNECTION WHEN PERPENDICULAR TO FLOOR/CEILING FRAMING



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 602.10.8(2)
BRACED WALL PANEL CONNECTION WHEN PARALLEL TO FLOOR/CEILING FRAMING

602.10.8.1 Braced wall panel connections for Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2. *Deleted*

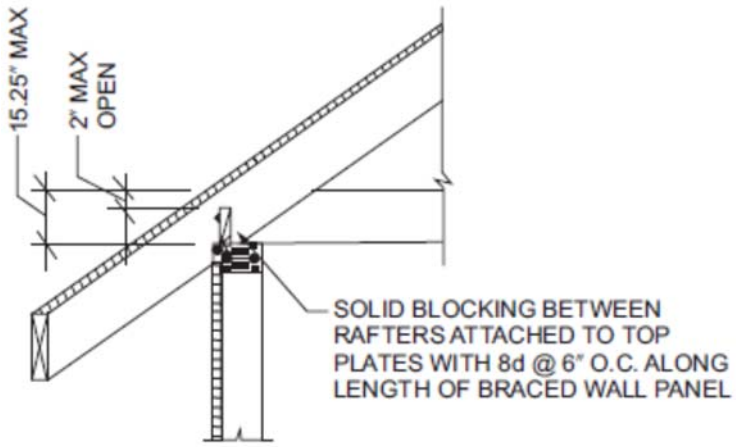
602.10.8.2 Connections to roof framing. Top plates of exterior braced wall panels shall be attached to rafters or roof trusses above in accordance with Table 602.3(1) and this section. Where required by this section, blocking between rafters or roof trusses shall be attached to top plates of braced wall panels and to rafters and roof trusses in accordance with Table 602.3(1). A continuous band, rim or header joist or roof truss parallel to the braced wall panels shall be permitted to replace the blocking required by this section. Blocking shall not be required over openings in continuously sheathed braced wall lines. In addition to the requirements of this section, lateral support shall be provided for rafters and ceiling joists in accordance with Section 802.8 and for trusses in accordance with Section 802.10.3. Roof ventilation shall be provided in accordance with Section 806.1.

1. For Seismic Design Categories A, B and C, where the distance from the top of the braced wall panel to the top of the rafters or roof trusses above is $9^1/_4$ -inches (235 mm) or less, blocking between

rafters or roof trusses shall not be required. Where the distance from the top of the braced wall panel to the top of the rafters or roof trusses above is between $9^1/_4$ -inches (235 mm) and $15^1/_4$ -inches (387 mm), blocking between rafters or roof trusses shall be provided above the braced wall panel in accordance with Figure 602.10.8.2(1).

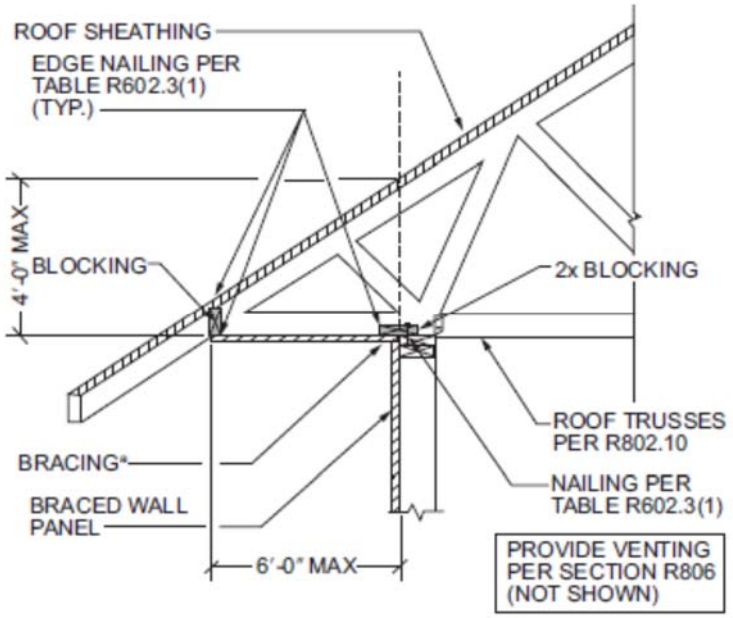
Exception: Where the outside edge of truss vertical web members aligns with the outside face of the wall studs below, wood structural panel sheathing extending above the top plate as shown in Figure 602.10.8.2(3) shall be permitted to be fastened to each truss web with three-8d nails ($2^1/_2$ -inches x 0.131 inch) and blocking between the trusses shall not be required.

2. *Deleted*
3. Where the distance from the top of the braced wall panel to the top of rafters or roof trusses exceeds $15^1/_4$ -inches (387 mm), the top plates of the braced wall panel shall be connected to perpendicular rafters or roof trusses above in accordance with one or more of the following methods:
   - 3.1. Soffit blocking panels constructed in accordance with Figure 602.10.8.2(2).
   - 3.2. Vertical blocking panels constructed in accordance with Figure 602.10.8.2(3).
   - 3.3. Blocking panels provided by the roof truss manufacturer and designed in accordance with Section 802.
   - 3.4. Blocking, blocking panels or other methods of lateral load transfer designed in accordance with the AWC WFCM or accepted engineering practice.



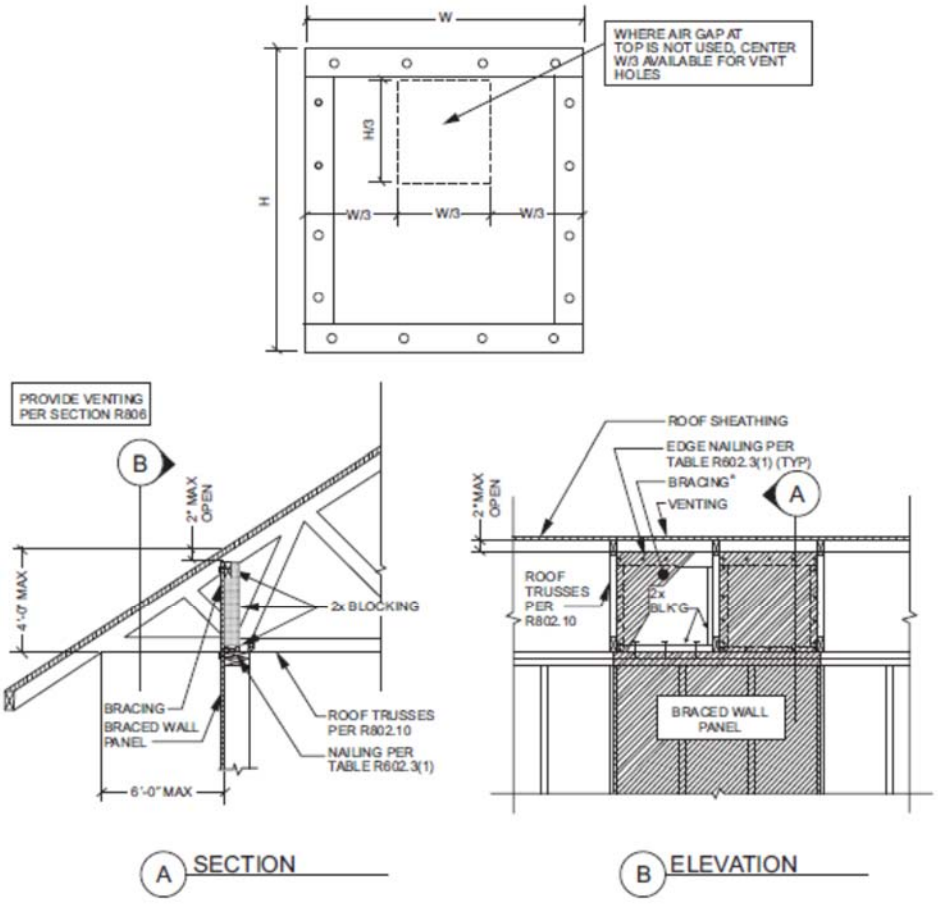
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 602.10.8.2(1)
BRACED WALL PANEL CONNECTION TO PERPENDICULAR RAFTERS



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Methods of bracing shall be as described in Section 602.10.4.

FIGURE 602.10.8.2(2)
BRACED WALL PANEL CONNECTION OPTION TO PERPENDICULAR RAFTERS OR ROOF TRUSSES



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot =304.8 mm

a. Methods of bracing shall be as described in Section 602.10.4.

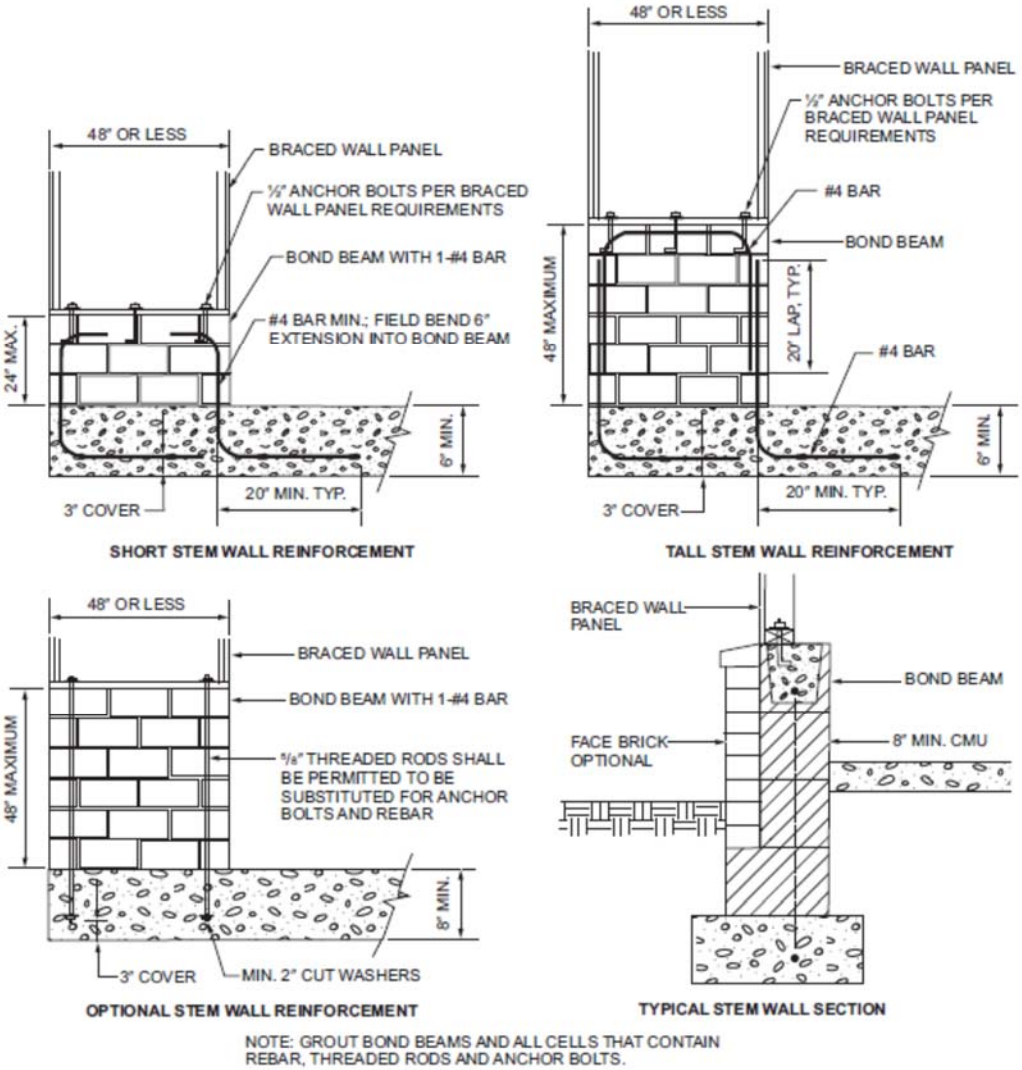
FIGURE 602.10.8.2(3)
BRACED WALL PANEL CONNECTION OPTION TO PERPENDICULAR RAFTERS OR ROOF TRUSSES

602.10.9 Braced wall panel support. Braced wall panel support shall be provided as follows:

1. Cantilevered floor joists complying with Section 502.3.3 shall be permitted to support braced wall panels.
2. Raised floor system post or pier foundations supporting braced wall panels shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.
3. Masonry stem walls with a length of 48 inches (1219 mm) or less supporting braced wall panels shall be reinforced in accordance with

Figure 602.10.9. Masonry stem walls with a length greater than 48 inches (1219 mm) supporting braced wall panels shall be constructed in accordance with Section 403.1 Methods ABW and PFH shall not be permitted to attach to masonry stem walls.

4. Concrete stem walls with a length of 48 inches (1219 mm) or less, greater than 12 inches (305 mm) tall and less than 6 inches (152 mm) thick shall have reinforcement sized and located in accordance with Figure 602.10.9.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 602.10.9
MASONRY STEM WALLS SUPPORTING BRACED WALL PANELS

602.10.9.1 Braced wall panel support for Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2. *Deleted*

602.10.10 Cripple wall bracing. Cripple walls shall be constructed in accordance with Section 602.9 and braced in accordance with this section. Cripple walls shall be braced with the length and method of bracing used for the wall above in accordance with Tables 602.10.3(1) and 602.10.3(3), and the applicable adjustment factors in Table 602.10.3(2) or 602.10.3(4), respectively, except that the length of cripple wall bracing shall be multiplied by a factor of 1.15. Where gypsum wall board is not used on the inside of the cripple wall bracing, the length adjustments for the elimination of the gypsum wallboard, or equivalent, shall be applied as directed in Tables 602.10.3(2) and 602.10.3(4) to the length of cripple wall bracing required. This adjustment shall be taken in addition to the 1.15 increase.

602.10.10.1 Cripple wall bracing for *buildings with four or more dwelling units* in Seismic Design Category C. In addition to the requirements in Section 602.10.10, the distance between adjacent edges of braced wall panels for cripple walls along a braced wall line shall be 14 feet (4267 mm) maximum.

Where braced wall lines at interior walls are not supported on a continuous foundation below, the adjacent parallel cripple walls, where provided, shall be braced with Method WSP or Method CS-WSP in accordance with Section 602.10.4. The length of bracing required in accordance with Table 602.10.3(3) for the cripple walls shall be multiplied by 1.5. Where the cripple walls do not have sufficient length to provide the required bracing, the spacing of panel edge fasteners shall be reduced to 4 inches (102 mm) on center and the required bracing length adjusted by 0.7. If the required length can still not be provided, the cripple wall shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

602.10.10.2 Cripple wall bracing for Seismic Design Category D_2. *Deleted.*

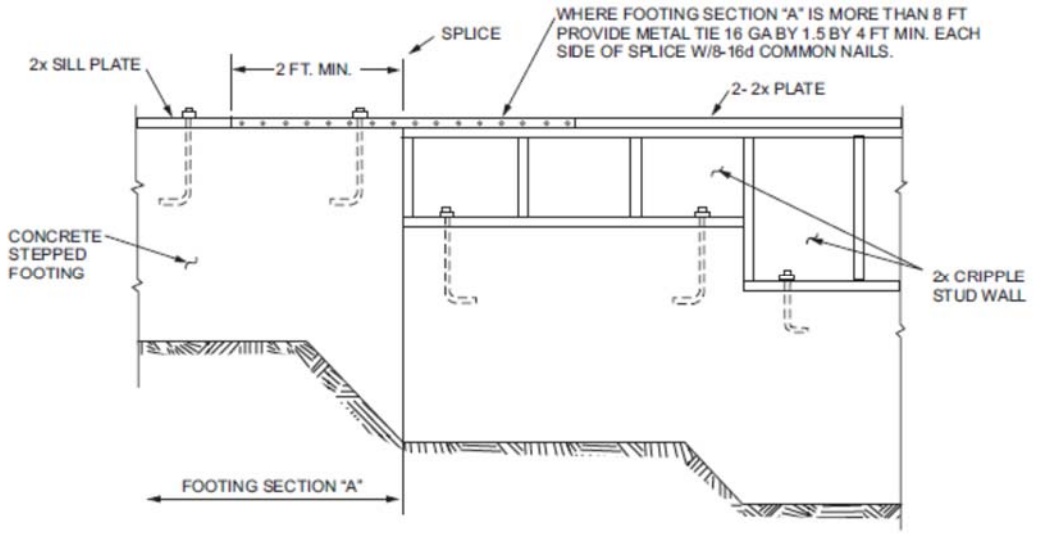
602.10.10.3 Redesignation of cripple walls. Where all cripple wall segments along a braced wall line do not exceed 48 inches (1219 mm) in height, the cripple walls shall be permitted to be redesignated as a first-story wall for purposes of determining wall bracing requirements. Where any

cripple wall segment in a braced wall line exceeds 48 inches (1219 mm) in height, the entire cripple wall shall be counted as an additional story. If the cripple walls are redesignated, the stories above the redesignated story shall be counted as the second and third stories, respectively.

602.11 Wall anchorage. Braced wall line sills shall be anchored to concrete or masonry foundations in accordance with Sections 403.1.6 and 602.11.1.

602.11.1 Wall anchorage for *buildings with four or more dwelling units* in Seismic Design Category C. Plate washers, not less than 0.229 inch by 3 inches by 3 inches (5.8 mm by 76 mm by 76 mm) in size, shall be provided between the foundation sill plate and the nut except where approved anchor straps are used. The hole in the plate washer is permitted to be diagonally slotted with a width of up to $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (5 mm) larger than the bolt diameter and a slot length not to exceed $1^{3}/_{4}$ inches (44 mm), provided a standard cut washer is placed between the plate washer and the nut.

602.11.2 Stepped foundations in Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2. *Deleted*



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
Note: Where footing Section "A" is less than 8 feet long in a 25-foot-long wall, install bracing at cripple stud wall.

FIGURE 602.11.2
STEPPED FOUNDATION CONSTRUCTION

602.12 Simplified wall bracing. Buildings meeting all of the following conditions shall be permitted to be braced in accordance with this section as an alternative to the requirements of Section 602.10. The entire building shall be braced in accordance with this section; the use of other bracing provisions of Section 602.10, except as specified herein, shall not be permitted.

1. There shall be not more than three stories above the top of a concrete or masonry foundation or basement wall. Permanent wood foundations shall not be permitted.
2. Floors shall not cantilever more than 24 inches (607 mm) beyond the foundation or bearing wall below.
3. Wall height shall not be greater than 10 feet (3048 mm).
4. The building shall have a roof eave-to-ridge height of 15 feet (4572 mm) or less.
5. Exterior walls shall have gypsum board with a minimum thickness of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) installed on the interior side fastened in accordance with Table 702.3.5.
6. The structure shall be located where the ultimate design wind speed is less than or equal to 130 mph (58 m/s), and the exposure category is B or C.
7. The structure shall be located in Seismic Design Category A, B or C for detached one-, two- *and three*-family dwellings or Seismic Design Category A or B for *buildings with four or more dwelling units*.
8. Cripple walls shall not be permitted in three-story buildings.

602.12.1 Circumscribed rectangle. The bracing required for each building shall be determined by circumscribing a rectangle around the entire building on each floor as shown in Figure 602.12.1. The rectangle shall surround all enclosed offsets and projections such as sunrooms and attached garages. Open structures, such as carports and decks, shall be permitted to be excluded. The rectangle shall not have a side greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm), and the ratio between the long side and short side shall be not greater than 3:1.

602.12.2 Sheathing materials. The following sheathing materials installed on the exterior side of exterior walls shall be used to construct a bracing unit as defined in Section 602.12.3. Mixing materials is prohibited.

1. Wood structural panels with a minimum thickness of $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) fastened in accordance with Table 602.3(3).
2. Structural fiberboard sheathing with a minimum thickness of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) fastened in accordance with Table 602.3(1).

602.12.3 Bracing unit. A bracing unit shall be a full-height sheathed segment

of the exterior wall without openings or vertical or horizontal offsets and a minimum length as specified herein. Interior walls shall not contribute toward the amount of required bracing. Mixing of Items 1 and 2 is prohibited on the same story.

1. Where all framed portions of all exterior walls are sheathed in accordance with Section 602.12.2, including wall areas between bracing units, above and below openings and on gable end walls, the minimum length of a bracing unit shall be 3 feet (914 mm).
2. Where the exterior walls are braced with sheathing panels in accordance with Section 602.12.2 and areas between bracing units are covered with other materials, the minimum length of a bracing unit shall be 4 feet (1219 mm).

602.12.3.1 Multiple bracing units. Segments of wall compliant with Section 602.12.3 and longer than the minimum bracing unit length shall be considered as multiple bracing units. The number of bracing units shall be determined by dividing the wall segment length by the minimum bracing unit length. Full-height sheathed segments of wall narrower than the minimum bracing unit length shall not contribute toward a bracing unit except as specified in Section 602.12.6.

602.12.4 Number of bracing units. Each side of the circumscribed rectangle, as shown in Figure 602.12.1, shall have, at a minimum, the number of bracing units in accordance with Table 602.12.4 placed on the parallel exterior walls facing the side of the rectangle. Bracing units shall then be placed using the distribution requirements specified in Section 602.12.5.

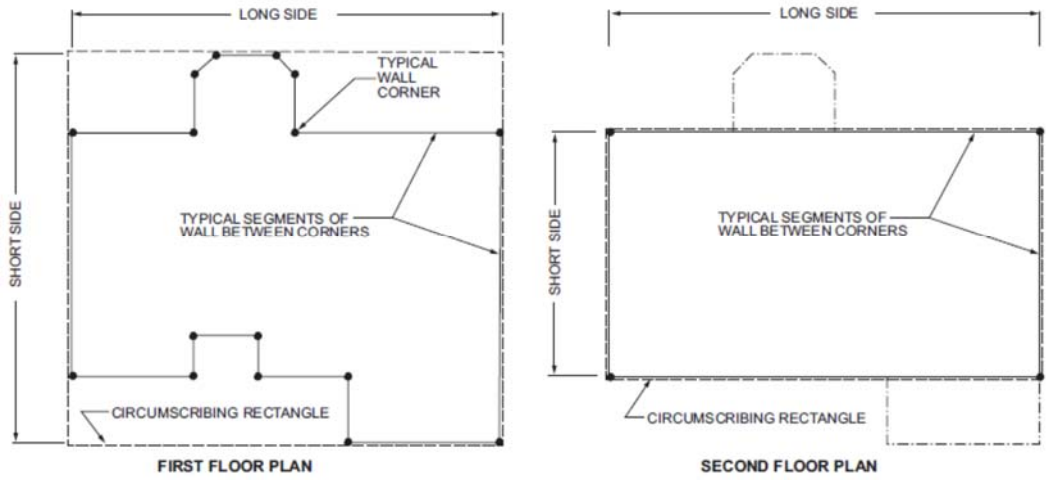
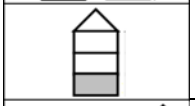
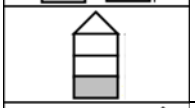
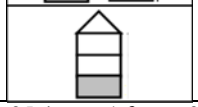


FIGURE 602.12.1
RECTANGLE CIRCUMSCRIBING AN ENCLOSED BUILDING

TABLE 602.12.4
MINIMUM NUMBER OF BRACING UNITS ON EACH SIDE OF THE CIRCUMSCRIBED RECTANGLE

ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED (mph)	STORY LEVEL	EAVE-TO-RIDGE HEIGHT (feet)	MINIMUM NUMBER OF BRACING UNITS ON EACH LONG SIDE[a, b, d] Length of short side (feet)[c]						MINIMUM NUMBER OF BRACING UNITS ON EACH SHORT SIDE[a, b, d] Length of long side (feet)[c]					
			10	20	30	40	50	60	10	20	30	40	50	60
115		10	1	2	2	2	3	3	1	2	2	2	3	3
			2	3	3	4	5	6	2	3	3	4	5	6
			2	3	4	6	7	8	2	3	4	6	7	8
		15	1	2	3	3	4	4	1	2	3	3	4	4
			2	3	4	5	6	7	2	3	4	5	6	7
			2	4	5	6	7	9	2	4	5	6	7	9

130		10	1	2	2	3	3	4	1	2	2	3	3	4
			2	3	4	5	6	7	2	3	4	5	6	7
			2	4	5	7	8	10	2	4	5	7	8	10
		15	2	3	3	4	4	6	2	3	3	4	4	6
			3	4	6	7	8	10	3	4	6	7	8	10
			3	6	7	10	11	13	3	6	7	10	11	13

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447m/s.

a. Interpolation shall not be permitted.

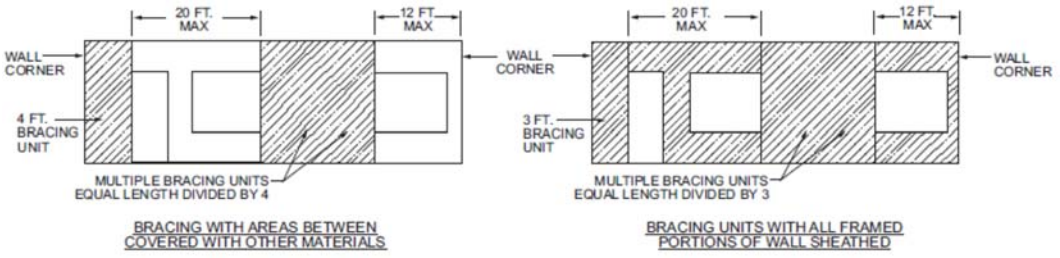
b. Cripple walls or wood-framed basement walls in a walk-out condition shall be designated as the first story and the stories above shall be redesignated as the second and third stories, respectively, and shall be prohibited in a three-story structure.

c. Actual lengths of the sides of the circumscribed rectangle shall be rounded to the next highest unit of 10 when using this table.

d. For Exposure Category C, multiply bracing units by a factor of 1.20 for a one-story building, 1.30 for a two-story building and 1.40 for a three-story building.

602.12.5 Distribution of bracing units. The placement of bracing units on exterior walls shall meet all of the following requirements as shown in Figure 602.12.5.

1. A bracing unit shall begin not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) from any wall corner.
2. The distance between adjacent edges of bracing units shall be not greater than 20 feet (6096 mm).
3. Segments of wall greater than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length shall have not less than one bracing unit.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 602.12.5

BRACING UNIT DISTRIBUTION

602.12.6 Narrow panels. The bracing methods referenced in Section 602.10 and specified in Sections 602.12.6.1 through 602.12.6.3 shall be permitted where using simplified wall bracing.

602.12.6.1 Method CS-G. Braced wall panels constructed as Method CS-G in accordance with Tables 602.10.4 and 602.10.5 shall be permitted for one-story garages where all framed portions of all exterior walls are sheathed with wood structural panels. Each CS-G panel shall be equivalent to 0.5 of a bracing unit. Segments of wall that include a Method CS-G panel shall meet the requirements of Section 602.10.4.2.

602.12.6.2 Method CS-PF. Braced wall panels constructed as Method CS-PF in accordance with Section 602.10.6.4 shall be permitted where all framed portions of all exterior walls are sheathed with wood structural panels. Each CS-PF panel shall equal 0.75 bracing units. Not more than four CS-PF panels shall be permitted on all segments of walls parallel to each side of the circumscribed rectangle. Segments of wall that include a Method CS-PF panel shall meet the requirements of Section 602.10.4.2.

602.12.6.3 Methods ABW, PFH and PFG. Braced wall panels constructed as Method ABW, PFH and PFG shall be permitted where bracing units are con- structed using wood structural panels applied either continuously or intermittently. Each ABW and PFH panel shall equal one bracing unit and each PFG panel shall be equal to 0.75 bracing unit.

602.12.7 Lateral support. For bracing units located along the eaves, the vertical distance from the outside edge of the top wall plate to the roof sheathing above shall not exceed 9.25 inches (235 mm) at the location of a bracing unit unless lateral support is provided in accordance with Section 602.10.8.2.

602.12.8 Stem walls. Masonry stem walls with a height and length of 48 inches (1219 mm) or less supporting a bracing unit or a Method CS-G, CS-PF or PFG braced wall panel shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 602.10.9. Concrete stem walls with a length of 48 inches (1219 mm) or less, greater than 12 inches (305 mm) tall and less than 6 inches (152 mm) thick shall be reinforced sized and located in accordance with Figure 602.10.9.

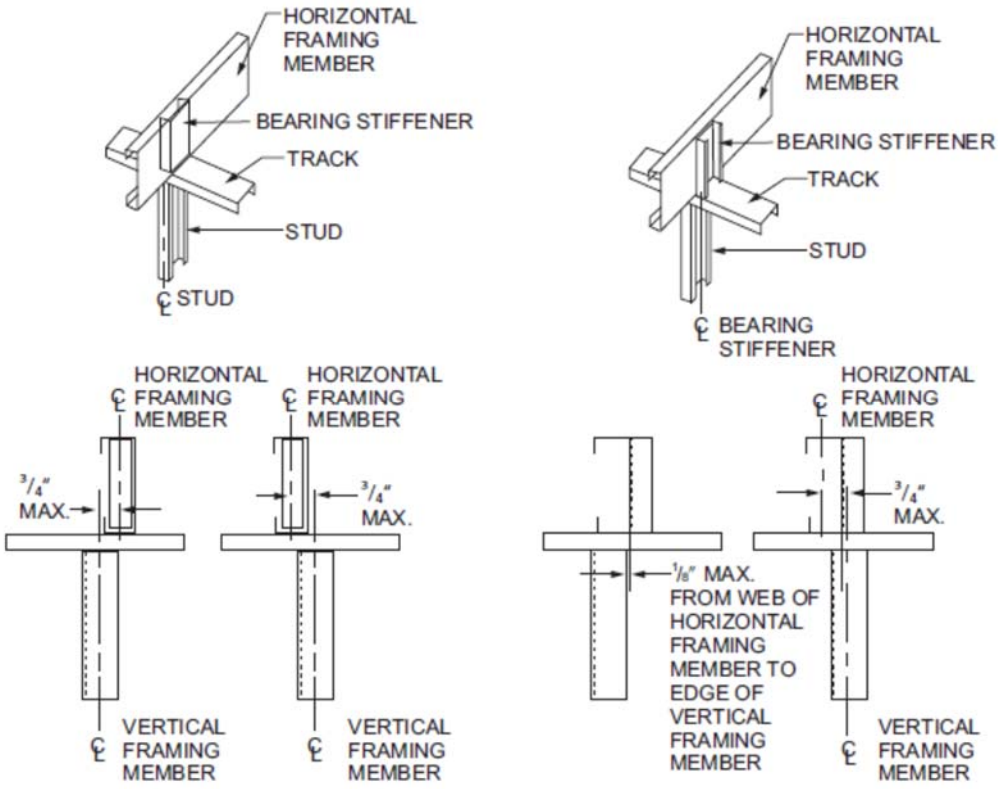
SECTION 603
COLD-FORMED STEEL WALL FRAMING

603.1 General. Elements shall be straight and free of any defects that would significantly affect structural performance. Cold-formed steel wall framing members shall be in accordance with the requirements of this section.

603.1.1 Applicability limits. The provisions of this section shall control the construction of exterior cold-formed steel wall framing and interior load-bearing cold-formed steel wall framing for buildings not more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) long perpendicular to the joist or truss span, not more than 40 feet (12 192 mm) wide parallel to the joist or truss span, and less than or equal to three stories above grade plane. Exterior walls installed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be considered as load-bearing walls. Cold-formed steel walls constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to sites where the ultimate design wind speed is less than 140 miles per hour (63 m/s), exposure category B or C, and the ground snow load is less than or equal to 70 pounds per square foot (3.35 kPa).

603.1.2 In-line framing. Load-bearing cold-formed steel studs constructed in accordance with Section 603 shall be located in-line with joists, trusses and rafters in accordance with Figure 603.1.2 and the tolerances specified as follows:

1. The maximum tolerance shall be $^{3}/_{4}$ -inch (19 mm) between the centerline of the horizontal framing member and the centerline of the vertical framing member.
2. Where the centerline of the horizontal framing member and bearing stiffener is located to one side of the centerline of the vertical framing member, the maximum tolerance shall be $^{1}/_{8}$ inch (3 mm) between the web of the horizontal framing member and the edge of the vertical framing member.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 603.1.2
IN-LINE FRAMING

603.2 Structural framing. Load-bearing cold-formed steel wall framing members shall be in accordance with this section.

603.2.1 Material. Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall be cold formed to shape from structural quality sheet steel complying with the requirements of ASTM A1003: Structural Grades 33 Type H and 50 Type H.

603.2.2 Corrosion protection. Load-bearing cold- formed steel framing shall have a metallic coating complying with ASTM A1003 and one of the following:

1. Not less than G 60 in accordance with ASTM A653.
2. Not less than AZ 50 in accordance with ASTM A792.

603.2.3 Dimension, thickness and material grade. Load-bearing cold-formed

steel wall framing members shall comply with Figure 603.2.3(1) and with the dimensional and thickness requirements specified in Table 603.2.3. Additionally, C-shaped sections shall have a minimum flange width of 1 5/8 -inches (41 mm) and a maximum flange width of 2 inches (51 mm). The minimum lip size for C-shaped sections shall be 1/2 -inch (12.7 mm). Track sections shall comply with Figure 603.2.3(2) and shall have a minimum flange width of 1 1/4 -inches (32 mm). Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used wherever 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses are specified. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used wherever 54 and 68 mil thicknesses are specified.

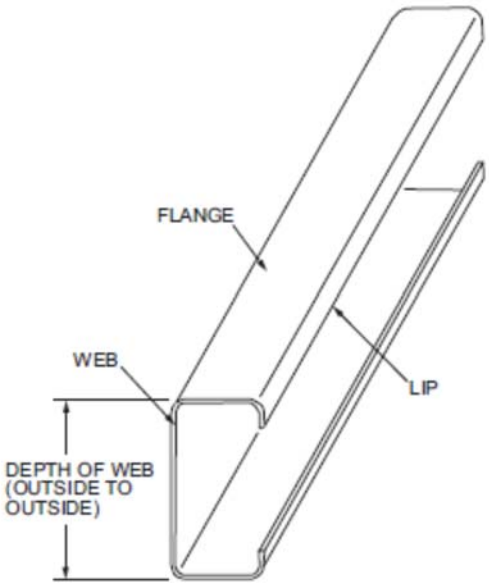


FIGURE 603.2.3(1)
C-SHAPED SECTION

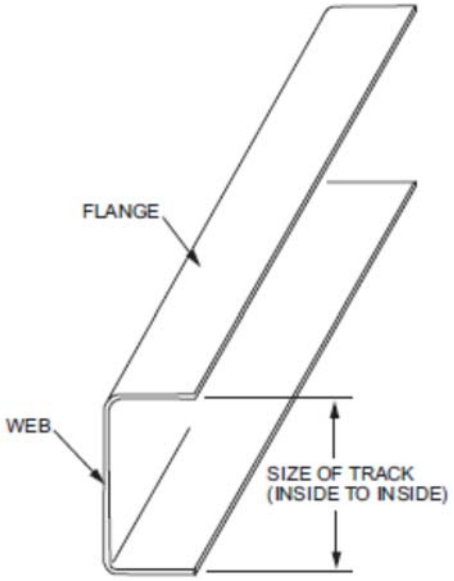


FIGURE 603.2.3(2)
TRACK SECTION

TABLE 603.2.3
LOAD-BEARING COLD-FORMED STEEL STUD SIZES AND THICKNESSES

MEMBER DESIGNATION [a]	WEB DEPTH (inches)	MINIMUM BASE STEEL THICKNESS mil (inches)
350S162-t	3.5	33 (0.0329), 43 (0.0428), 54 (0.0538)
550S162-t	5.5	33 (0.0329), 43 (0.0428), 54 (0.0538), 68 (0.0677)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

a. The member designation is defined by the first number representing the member depth in hundredths of an inch, "S" representing a stud or joist member, the second number representing the flange width in hundredths of an inch, and the letter "t" shall be a number representing the minimum base metal thickness in mils.

603.2.4 Identification. Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall have a legible label, stencil, stamp or embossment with the following information as a minimum:

1. Manufacturer's identification.
2. Minimum base steel thickness in inches (mm).
3. Minimum coating designation.
4. Minimum yield strength, in kips per square inch (ksi) (MPa).

603.2.5 Fastening. Screws for steel-to-steel connections shall be installed with a minimum edge distance and center-to-center spacing of $^{1}/_{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm), shall be self-drilling tapping and shall conform to ASTM C1513. Structural sheathing shall be attached to cold-formed steel studs with minimum No. 8 self-drilling tapping screws that conform to ASTM C1513. Screws for attaching structural sheathing to cold-formed steel wall framing shall have a minimum head diameter of 0.292 inch (7.4 mm) with countersunk heads and shall be installed with a minimum edge distance of $^{3}/_{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm). Gypsum board shall be attached to cold-formed steel wall framing with minimum No. 6 screws conforming to ASTM C954 or ASTM C1513 with a bugle-head style and shall be installed in accordance with Section 702. For connections, screws shall extend through the steel not fewer than three exposed threads. Fasteners shall have rust-inhibitive coating suitable for the installation in which they are being used, or be manufactured from material not susceptible to corrosion.

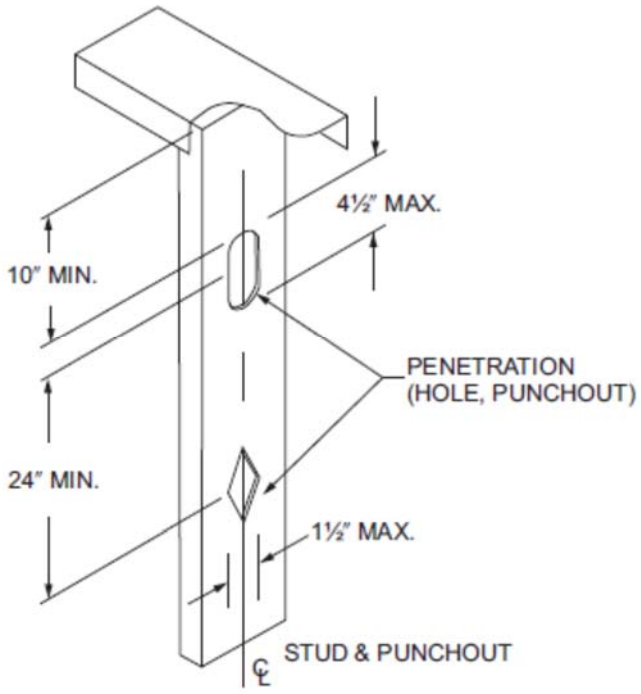
603.2.6 Web holes, web hole reinforcing and web hole patching. Web holes, web hole reinforcing and web hole patching shall be in accordance with this section.

603.2.6.1 Web holes. Web holes in wall studs and other structural members shall comply with all of the following conditions:

1. Holes shall conform to Figure 603.2.6.1.
2. Holes shall be permitted only along the centerline of the web of the framing member.
3. Holes shall have a center-to-center spacing of not less than 24 inches (610 mm).
4. Holes shall have a web hole width not greater than 0.5 times the member depth, or $1^{1}/_{2}$ -inches (38 mm).
5. Holes shall have a web hole length not exceeding $4^{1}/_{2}$ -inches (114 mm).
6. Holes shall have a minimum distance between the edge of the bearing surface and the edge of the web hole of not less than 10

inches (254 mm).

Framing members with web holes not conforming to the above requirements shall be reinforced in accordance with Section 603.2.6.2, patched in accordance with Section 603.2.6.3 or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

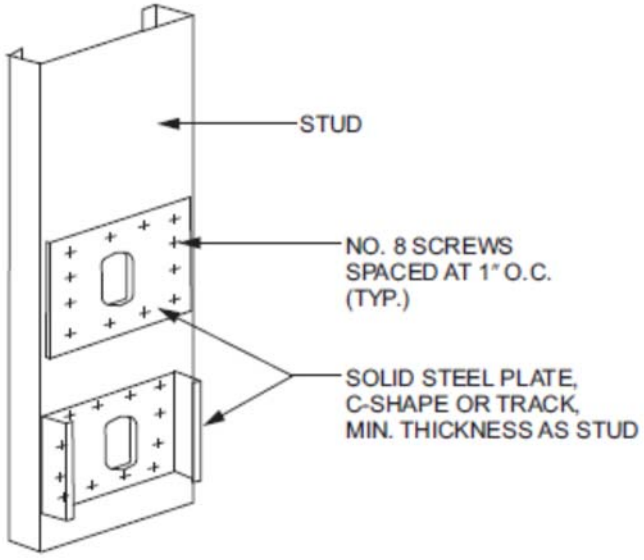
FIGURE 603.2.6.1
WALL STUD WEB HOLES

603.2.6.2 Web hole reinforcing. Web holes in gable endwall studs not conforming to the requirements of Section 603.2.6.1 shall be permitted to be reinforced if the hole is located fully within the center 40 percent of the span and the depth and length of the hole does not exceed 65 percent of the flat width of the web. The reinforcing shall be a steel plate or C-shaped section with a hole that does not exceed the web hole size limitations of Section 603.2.6.1 for the member being reinforced. The steel reinforcing shall be the same thickness as the receiving member and shall extend not less than 1 inch (25 mm) beyond all edges of the hole. The steel rein-

forcing shall be fastened to the web of the receiving member with No. 8 screws spaced not more than 1 inch (25 mm) center-to-center along the edges of the patch with minimum edge distance of $^1/_2$ -inch (12.7 mm).

603.2.6.3 Hole patching. Web holes in wall studs and other structural members not conforming to the requirements in Section 603.2.6.1 shall be permitted to be patched in accordance with either of the following methods:

1. Framing members shall be replaced or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice where web holes exceed the following size limits:
   1.1. The depth of the hole, measured across the web, exceeds 70 percent of the flat width of the web.
   1.2. The length of the hole measured along the web exceeds 10 inches (254 mm) or the depth of the web, whichever is greater.
2. Web holes not exceeding the dimensional requirements in Section 603.2.6.3, Item 1, shall be patched with a solid steel plate, stud section or track section in accordance with Figure 603.2.6.3. The steel patch shall, as a minimum, be the same thickness as the receiving member and shall extend not less than 1 inch (25 mm) beyond all edges of the hole. The steel patch shall be fastened to the web of the receiving member with No. 8 screws spaced not more than 1 inch (25 mm) center-to-center along the edges of the patch with a minimum edge distance of $^1/_2$ -inch (12.7 mm).



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 603.2.6.3
WALL STUD WEB HOLE PATCH

603.3 Wall construction. Exterior cold-formed steel framed walls and interior load-bearing cold-formed steel framed walls shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section.

603.3.1 Wall to foundation or floor connection. Cold-formed steel framed walls shall be anchored to foundations or floors in accordance with Table 603.3.1 and Figure 603.3.1(1), 603.3.1(2), 603.3.1(3) or 603.3.1(4). Anchor bolts shall be located not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from corners or the termination of bottom tracks. Anchor bolts shall extend not less than 15 inches (381 mm) into masonry or 7 inches (178 mm) into concrete. Foundation anchor straps shall be permitted, in lieu of anchor bolts, if spaced as required to provide equivalent anchorage to the required anchor bolts and installed in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

TABLE 603.3.1
WALL TO FOUNDATION OR FLOOR CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS [a, b]

FRAMING CONDITION			ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)					
			115 B	120 B	130 B or 115 C	< 140 B or 120 C	130 C	< 140 C
Wall bottom track to floor per Figure 603.3.1(1)			1-No. 8 screw at 12″ o.c.	1-No. 8 screw at 8″ o.c.	2-No. 8 screws at 8″ o.c.	2-No. 8 screws at 6″ o.c.	3-No. 8 screws at 8″ o.c.	3-No. 8 screws at 6″ o.c.
Wall bottom track to foundation per Figure 603.3.1(2) [d]			1/2 ″ minimum diameter anchor bolt at 6′ o.c.	1/2 ″ minimum diameter anchor bolt at 6′ o.c.	1/2 ″ minimum diameter anchor bolt at 4′ o.c.	1/2 ″ minimum diameter anchor bolt at 4′ o.c.	1/2 ″ minimum diameter anchor bolt at 3′-4″ o.c.	1/2 ″ minimum diameter anchor bolt at 2′-8″ o.c.
Wall bottom track to wood sill per Figure 603.3.1(3)			Steel plate spaced at 4′ o.c., with 4-No. 8 screws and 4- 10d or 6- 8d common nails	Steel plate spaced at 4′ o.c., with 4-No. 8 screws and 4- 10d or 6- 8d common nails	Steel plate spaced at 3′ o.c., with 4-No. 8 screws and 4- 10d or 6- 8d common nails	Steel plate spaced at 3′ o.c., with 4-No. 8 screws and 4- 10d or 6- 8d common nails	Steel plate spaced at 2′ o.c., with 4-No. 8 screws and 4- 10d or 6- 8d common nails	Steel plate spaced at 1′-4″ o.c., with 4-No. 8 screws and 4- 10d or 6- 8d common nails
Wind uplift connector strength (lbs) [c,e]	Stud Spacing (inches)	Roof Span (feet)						
	16	24	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
		28	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	339
		32	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	382
		36	NR	NR	NR	NR	333	426
		40	NR	NR	NR	NR	368	470
	24	24	NR	NR	NR	NR	343	443
		28	NR	NR	NR	NR	395	508
		32	NR	NR	NR	330	447	573

FRAMING CONDITION			ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)					
			115 B	120 B	130 B or 115 C	< 140 B or 120 C	130 C	< 140 C
		36	NR	NR	NR	371	500	639
		40	NR	NR	345	411	552	704

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.45 N.

a. Anchor bolts are to be located not more than 12 inches from corners or the termination of bottom tracks, such as at door openings or corners. Bolts are to extend not less than 15 inches into masonry or 7 inches into concrete.
b. All screw sizes shown are minimum.
c. NR = Uplift connector not required.
d. Foundation anchor straps are permitted in place of anchor bolts, if spaced as required to provide equivalent anchorage to the required anchor bolts and installed in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.
e. See Figure 603.3.1(4) for details.

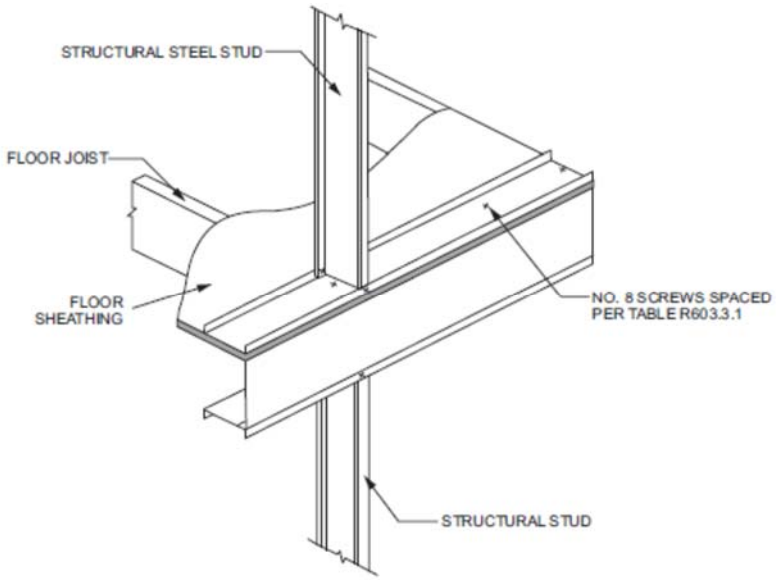
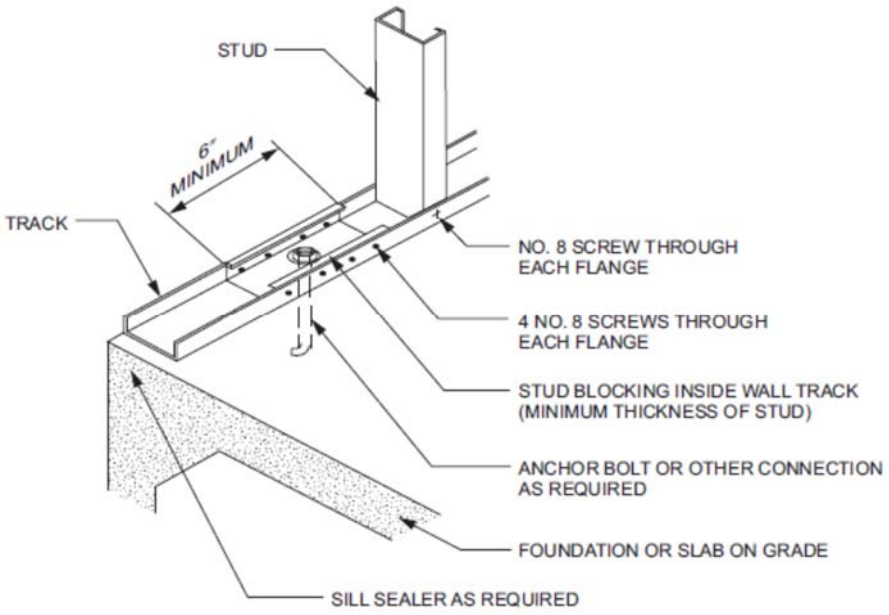
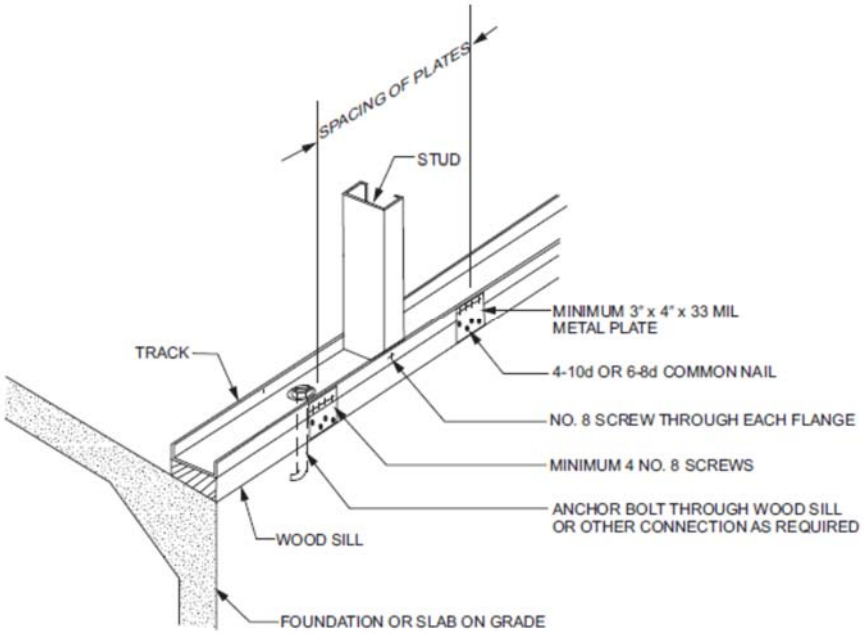


FIGURE 603.3.1(1)
WALL TO FLOOR CONNECTION



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

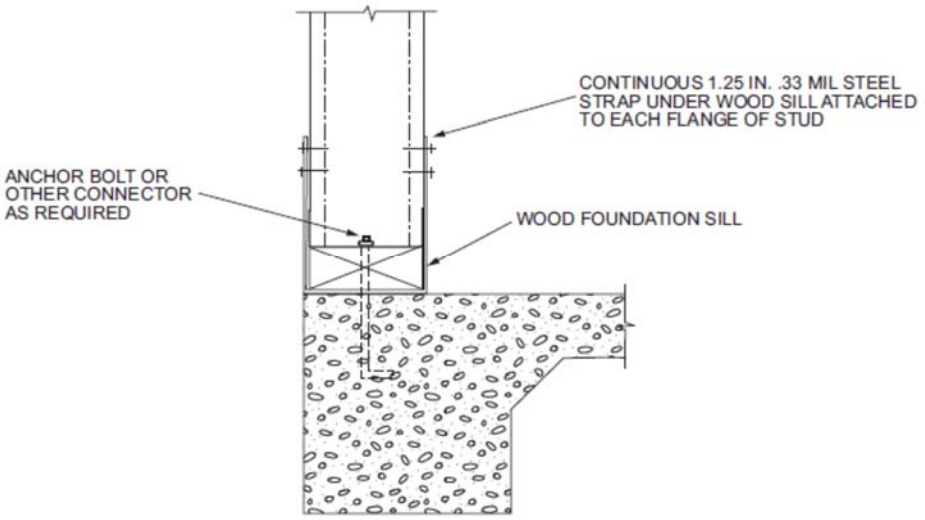
FIGURE 603.3.1(2)
WALL TO FOUNDATION CONNECTION



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 603.3.1(3)

WALL TO WOOD SILL CONNECTION



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 603.3.1(4)
WIND UPLIFT CONNECTOR

603.3.1.1 Gable endwalls. Gable endwalls with heights greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be anchored to foundations or floors in accordance with Table 603.3.1.1(1) or 603.3.1.1(2).

TABLE 603.3.1.1(1)
GABLE ENDWALL TO FLOOR CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS [a, b, c]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED (mph)		WALL BOTTOM TRACK TO FLOOR JOIST OR TRACK CONNECTION		
Exposure Category		Stud height, *h* (feet)		
B	C	$10 < h \leq 14$	$14 < h \leq 18$	$18 < h \leq 22$
115	—	1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c.	1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c.	1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c.
120	—	1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c.	1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c.	1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c.
130	115	1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c.	1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c.	2-No. 8 screws @ 12″ o.c.
< 140	120	1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c.	1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c.	2-No. 8 screws @ 12″ o.c.
—	130	2-No. 8 screws @ 12″ o.c.	1-No. 8 screw @ 8″ o.c.	2-No. 8 screws @ 8″ o.c.
—	< 140	2-No. 8 screws @ 12″ o.c.	1-No. 8 screw @ 8″ o.c.	2-No. 8 screws @ 8″ o.c.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Refer to Table 603.3.1.1(2) for gable endwall bottom track to foundation connections.
b. Where attachment is not given, special design is required.
c. Stud height, *h*, is measured from wall bottom track to wall top track or brace connection height.

TABLE 603.3.1.1(2)

GABLE ENDWALL BOTTOM TRACK TO FOUNDATION CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS [a, b, c]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED (mph)		MINIMUM SPACING FOR 1/2 -INCH-DIAMETER ANCHOR BOLTS [d]		
Exposure Category		Stud height, *h* (feet)		
B	C	$10 < h \leq 14$	$14 < h \leq 18$	$18 < h \leq 22$
115	—	6′- 0″ o.c.	6′- 0″ o.c.	6′- 0″ o.c.
120	—	6′- 0″ o.c.	5′- 7″ o.c.	6′- 0″ o.c.
130	115	5′- 0″ o.c.	6′- 0″ o.c.	6′- 0″ o.c.
≤ 140	120	6′- 0″ o.c.	5′- 6″ o.c.	6′- 0″ o.c.
—	130	5′- 3″ o.c.	6′- 0″ o.c.	6′- 0″ o.c.
—	≤ 140	3′- 0″ o.c.	3′- 0″ o.c.	3′- 0″ o.c.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Refer to Table 603.3.1.1(1) for gable endwall bottom track to floor joist or track connection connections.

b. Where attachment is not given, special design is required.

c. Stud height, *h*, is measured from wall bottom track to wall top track or brace connection height.

d. Foundation anchor straps are permitted in place of anchor bolts if spaced as required to provide equivalent anchorage to the required anchor bolts and installed in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

603.3.2 Minimum stud sizes. Cold-formed steel walls shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 603.3.1(1), 603.3.1(2) or 603.3.1(3), as applicable. Exterior wall stud size and thickness shall be determined in accordance with the limits set forth in Tables 603.3.2(2) through 603.3.2(16). Interior load-bearing wall stud size and thickness shall be determined in accordance with the limits set forth in Tables 603.3.2(2) through 603.3.2(16) based on an ultimate design wind speed of 115 miles per hour (51 m/s), Exposure Category B, and the building width, stud spacing and snow load, as appropriate. Fastening requirements shall be in accordance with Section 603.2.5 and Table 603.3.2(1). Top and bottom tracks shall have the same minimum thickness as the wall studs.

Exterior wall studs shall be permitted to be reduced to the next thinner size, as shown in Tables 603.3.2(2) through 603.3.2(16), but not less than 33 mils (0.84 mm), where both of the following conditions exist:

1. Minimum of 1/2 -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board is installed and fastened on the interior surface in accordance with Section 702.
2. Wood structural sheathing panels of minimum 7/16 inch-thick (11.1 mm) oriented strand board or 15/32 - inch-thick (12 mm) plywood are installed and fastened in accordance with Section 603.9.1 and Table 603.3.2(1) on the outside surface.

Interior load-bearing walls shall be permitted to be reduced to the next thinner size, as shown in Tables 603.3.2(2) through 603.3.2(16), but not less than 33 mils (0.84 mm), where not less than 1/2 -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board is installed and fastened in accordance with Section 702 on both sides of the wall.

The tabulated stud thickness for load-bearing walls shall be used where the attic load is 10 pounds per square foot (480 Pa) or less. A limited attic storage load of 20 pounds per square foot (960 Pa) shall be permitted provided that the next higher snow load column is used to select the stud size from Tables 603.3.2(2) through 603.3.2(16).

For two-story buildings, the tabulated stud thickness for walls supporting one floor, roof and ceiling shall be used where the second-floor live load is 30 pounds per square foot (1440 Pa). Second-floor live loads of 40 psf (1920 Pa) shall be permitted provided that the next higher snow load column is used to select the stud size from Tables 603.3.2(2) through 603.3.2(11).

For three-story buildings, the tabulated stud thickness for walls supporting one or two floors, roof and ceiling shall be used where the third-floor live load is 30 pounds per square foot (1440 Pa). Third-floor live loads of 40 pounds per square foot (1920 Pa) shall be permitted provided that the next higher snow load column is used to select the stud size from Tables 603.3.2(12) through 603.3.2(16).

TABLE 603.3.2(1)
WALL FASTENING SCHEDULE [a]

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENT	NUMBER AND SIZE OF FASTENERS[a]	SPACING OF FASTENERS
Wall stud to top or bottom track	2-No. 8 screws	Each end of stud, one per flange
Structural sheathing to wall studs	No. 8 screws[b]	6″ o.c. on edges and 12″ o.c. at intermediate supports
1/2 ″ gypsum board to framing	No. 6 screws	12″ o.c.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. All screw sizes shown are minimum.

b. Screws for attachment of structural sheathing panels are to be bugle-head, flat-head, or similar head styles with a minimum head diameter of 0.29 inch.

TABLE 603.3.2(2)
24-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
120	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43

		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
130	115	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
< 140	120	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43
—	130	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
—	< 140	350S 162	16	33	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S 162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   - Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   - Second-floor live load is 30 psf.
   - Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   - Attic live load is 10 psf.
   - Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

c. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(3)
28-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
120	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
130	115	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54
			16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33

		550S162	24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
< 140	120	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43
—	130	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
—	< 140	350S 162	16	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
Second-floor live load is 30 psf.
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(4)
32-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	33	33	43	54	43	43	43	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
120	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	33	33	43	54	43	43	43	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
130	115	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
< 140	120	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
			16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33

		550S162	24	33	33	43	43	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43
—	130	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
—	< 140	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
Second-floor live load is 30 psf.
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(5)
36-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	33	33	43	54	43	43	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43
120	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	33	33	43	54	43	43	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43
130	115	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
			24	33	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43
≤ 140	120	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	54
—	130	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
—	≤ 140	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
			24	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
Second-floor live load is 30 psf.
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(6)
40-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
			24	33	33	43	54	33	43	43	54	43	43	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	54	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	54
120	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
			24	33	43	43	54	33	43	43	54	43	43	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	54
130	115	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	54	54	43	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	33	33	43	54	33	33	43	54
≤ 140	120	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	33	33	43	54	43	43	43	54
—	130	350S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	54
			24	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54
—	≤ 140	350S162	16	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
			24	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second-floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(7)
24-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
120	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
130	115	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
≤ 140	120	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43
—	130	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
			24	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
—	≤ 140	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second-floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(8)
28-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43
120	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43
130	115	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43
< 140	120	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43
—	130	350S162	16	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
—	< 140	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: $L/240$.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second-floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(9)
32-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	43	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	43	43	54	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43
120	—	350S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	43	43	54	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	54
130	115	350S162	16	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	33	43	43	54	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	54
< 140	120	350S162	16	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
			24	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	33	43	43	54	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
—	130	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54
—	< 140	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:

Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.

Second-floor live load is 30 psf.

Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.

Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(10)
36-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54
120	—	350S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54
130	115	350S162	16	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
			24	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54
< 140	120	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54
—	130	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54
—	< 140	350S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
			24	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	54	54

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second-floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(11)
40-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	54
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54
120	—	350S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	54
			24	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54
130	115	350S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	54	54
< 140	120	350S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	54	54
—	130	350S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	54	54	54	68	68
		550S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	33	43	33	33	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	54	54
—	< 140	350S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	68	54	54	68	68
		550S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	43	43	33	43	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	43	54	43	43	54	54

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second-floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(12)
24-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	33	33	33	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
120	—	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	33	33	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
130	115	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
< 140	120	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
—	130	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68	68
		550S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
—	< 140	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68	68
		550S162	16	33	33	43	43	33	33	33	33	33	33	43	43
			24	43	43	54	54	43	43	43	43	54	54	54	54

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   - Top- and middle-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   - Top-floor live load is 30 psf.
   - Middle-floor live load is 40 psf.
   - Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   - Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(13)
28-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
120	—	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
		550S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
130	115	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
< 140	120	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
—	130	350S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
—	< 140	350S162	16	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   - Top- and middle-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   - Top-floor live load is 30 psf.
   - Middle-floor live load is 40 psf.
   - Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   - Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(14)
32-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
120	—	350S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
130	115	350S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	43	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	54	54	68	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
< 140	120	350S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	54	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
—	130	350S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
—	< 140	350S162	16	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	68	68	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   - Top- and middle-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   - Top-floor live load is 30 psf.
   - Middle-floor live load is 40 psf.
   - Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   - Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(15)
36-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	54	54	54	54	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
			24	68	68	68	68	54	54	54	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
120	—	350S162	16	54	54	54	54	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
			24	68	68	68	68	54	54	54	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
130	115	350S162	16	54	54	54	54	43	43	43	54	54	54	54	54
			24	68	68	68	68	54	54	54	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
< 140	120	350S162	16	54	54	54	54	43	43	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	68	68	68	68	54	54	54	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
—	130	350S162	16	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	68	68	68	68	54	54	68	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
—	< 140	350S162	16	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	43	43	43	54	43	43	43	43	43	43	43	43
			24	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   - Top- and middle-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   - Top-floor live load is 30 psf.
   - Middle-floor live load is 40 psf.
   - Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   - Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2(16)
40-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)											
				8-foot Studs				9-foot Studs				10-foot Studs			
				Ground Snow Load (psf)											
Exp. B	Exp. C			20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
115	—	350S162	16	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	54	54	54	54	43	43	54	54	43	43	54	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
120	—	350S162	16	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	54	54	54	54	43	43	54	54	43	43	54	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
130	115	350S162	16	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	54	54	54	54	43	43	54	54	43	43	54	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
< 140	120	350S162	16	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	54	54	54	54	43	43	54	54	43	43	54	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
—	130	350S162	16	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	54	54	54	54	43	43	54	54	43	43	54	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
—	< 140	350S162	16	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54
			24	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68	68
		550S162	16	54	54	54	54	43	43	54	54	43	43	54	54
			24	54	54	54	68	54	54	54	54	54	54	54	54

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
- Top- and middle-floor dead load is 10 psf.
- Top-floor live load is 30 psf.
- Middle-floor live load is 40 psf.
- Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
- Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

603.3.2.1 Gable endwalls. The size and thickness of gable endwall studs

with heights less than or equal to 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be permitted in accordance with the limits set forth in Table 603.3.2.1(1). The size and thickness of gable endwall studs with heights greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be determined in accordance with the limits set forth in Table 603.3.2.1(2).

TABLE 603.3.2.1(1)
ALL BUILDING WIDTHS GABLE ENDWALLS
8, 9 OR 10 FEET IN HEIGHT [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)		
Exp. B	Exp. C			8-foot Studs	9-foot Studs	10-foot Studs
115	—	350S162	16	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33
		550S162	16	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33
120	—	350S162	16	33	33	33
			24	33	33	43
		550S162	16	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33
130	115	350S162	16	33	33	33
			24	33	43	43
		550S162	16	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33
< 140	120	350S162	16	33	33	43
			24	33	43	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33
			24	33	33	33
—	130	350S162	16	33	33	43
			24	43	43	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33
			24	33	43	43
—	< 140	350S162	16	33	43	43
			24	43	54	54
		550S162	16	33	33	33
			24	43	43	43

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
Ground snow load is 70 psf.
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Floor dead load is 10 psf.
Floor live load is 40 psf.
Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel

shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.3.2.1(2)
ALL BUILDING WIDTHS GABLE ENDWALLS OVER 10 FEET IN HEIGHT [a, b, c, d]

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		MEMBER SIZE	STUD SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils)					
				Stud Height, *h* (feet)					
Exp. B	Exp. C			$10 < h \leq 12$	$12 < h \leq 14$	$14 < h \leq 16$	$16 < h \leq 18$	$18 < h \leq 20$	$20 < h \leq 22$
115	—	350S162	16	33	43	68	97	—	—
			24	43	68	—	—	—	—
		550S162	16	33	33	33	43	43	54
			24	33	43	43	54	68	97
120	—	350S162	16	43	54	97	—	—	—
			24	54	97	—	—	—	—
		550S162	16	33	33	43	43	54	68
			24	33	43	54	54	68	97
130	115	350S162	16	43	54	97	—	—	—
			24	54	97	—	—	—	—
		550S162	16	33	33	43	54	54	97
			24	43	43	54	68	97	97
< 140	120	350S162	16	43	68	—	—	—	—
			24	68	—	—	—	—	—
		550S162	16	33	43	43	54	68	97
			24	43	54	54	68	97	—
—	130	350S162	16	54	97	—	—	—	—
			24	97	—	—	—	—	—
		550S162	16	33	43	54	68	97	—
			24	43	54	54	97	—	—
—	< 140	350S162	16	54	97	—	—	—	—
			24	97	—	—	—	—	—
		550S162	16	43	43	54	97	97	—
			24	54	54	68	—	—	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion $L/240$.

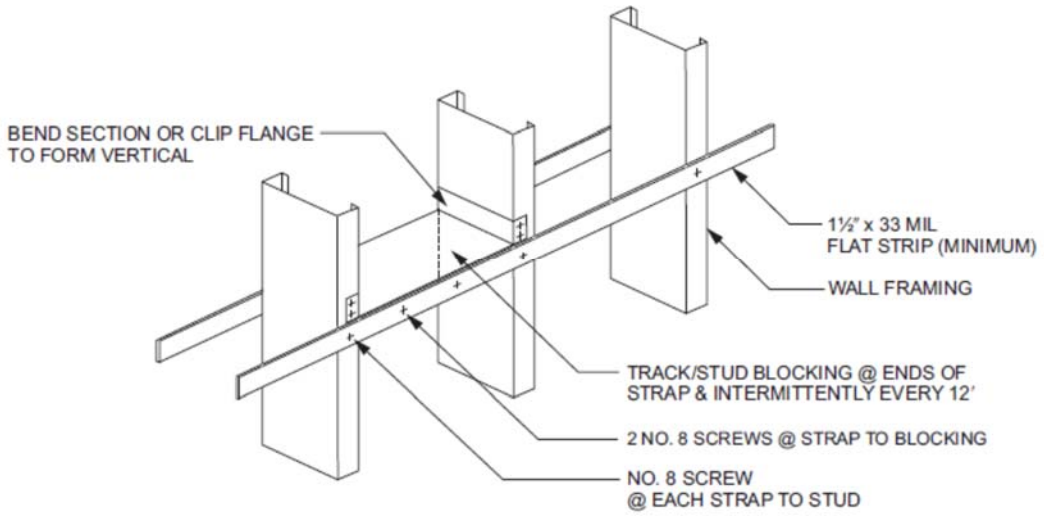
b. Design load assumptions:
   - Ground snow load is 70 psf.
   - Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   - Floor dead load is 10 psf.
   - Floor live load is 40 psf.
   - Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

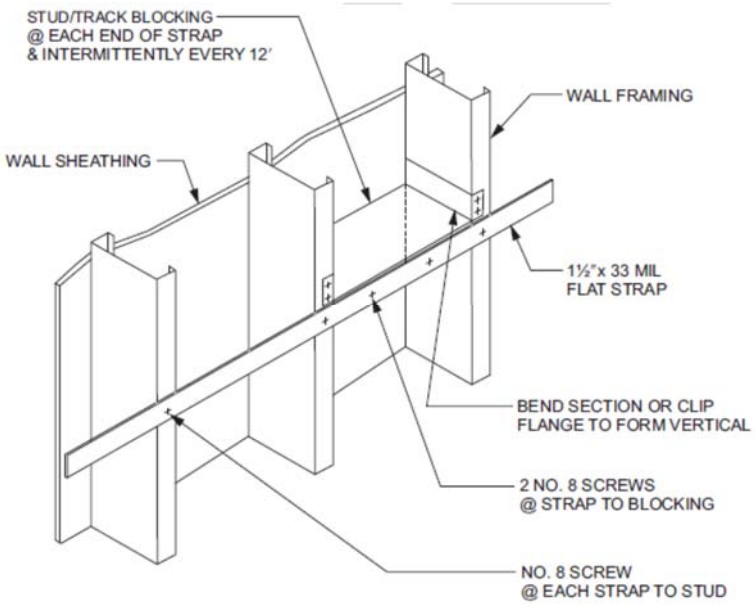
603.3.3 Stud bracing. The flanges of cold-formed steel studs shall be laterally braced in accordance with one of the following:

1. Gypsum board on both sides, structural sheathing on both sides, or gypsum board on one side and structural sheathing on the other side of load-bearing walls with gypsum board installed with minimum No. 6 screws in accordance with Section 702 and structural sheathing installed in accordance with Section 603.9 and Table 603.3.2(1).
2. Horizontal steel straps fastened in accordance with Figure 603.3.3(1) on both sides at mid-height for 8-foot (2438 mm) walls, and at one-third points for 9-foot and 10-foot (2743 mm and 3048 mm) walls. Horizontal steel straps shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ inches in width and 33 mils in thickness (38 mm by 0.84 mm). Straps shall be attached to the flanges of studs with one No. 8 screw. In-line blocking shall be installed between studs at the termination of straps and at 12-foot (3658 mm) intervals along the strap. Straps shall be fastened to the blocking with two No. 8 screws.
3. Sheathing on one side and strapping on the other side fastened in accordance with Figure 603.3.3(2). Sheathing shall be installed in accordance with Item 1. Steel straps shall be installed in accordance with Item 2.



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 603.3.3(1)
STUD BRACING WITH STRAPPING ONLY

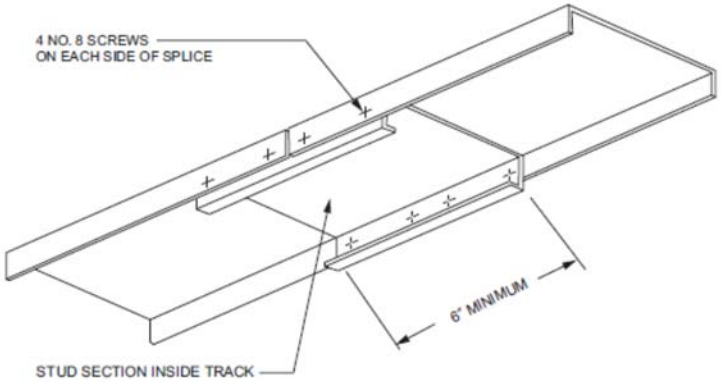


For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 603.3.3(2)
STUD BRACING WITH STRAPPING AND SHEATHING MATERIAL

603.3.4 Cutting and notching. Flanges and lips of cold-formed steel studs and headers shall not be cut or notched.

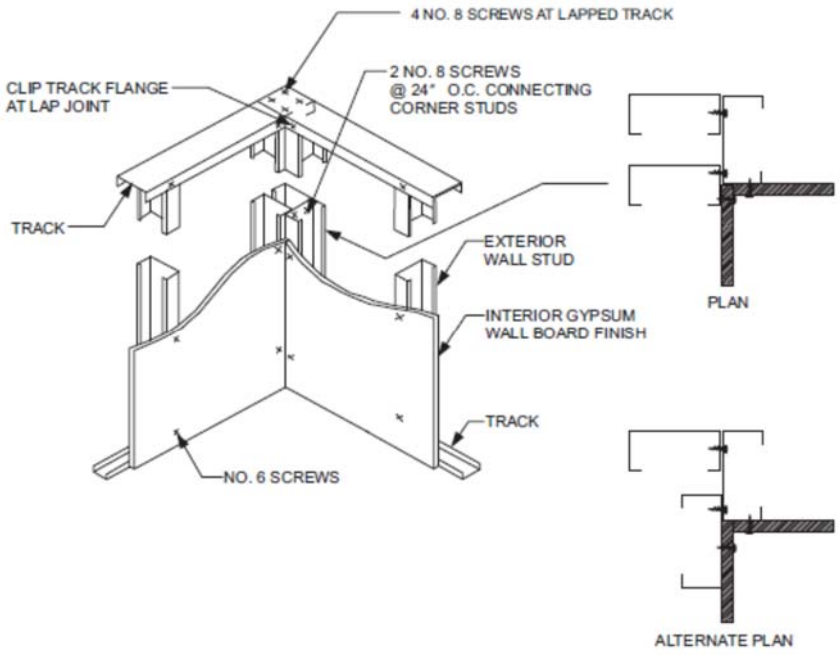
603.3.5 Splicing. Steel studs and other structural members shall not be spliced without an approved design. Tracks shall be spliced in accordance with Figure 603.3.5.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 603.3.5
TRACK SPLICE

603.4 Corner framing. In exterior walls, corner studs and the top tracks shall be installed in accordance with Figure 603.4.

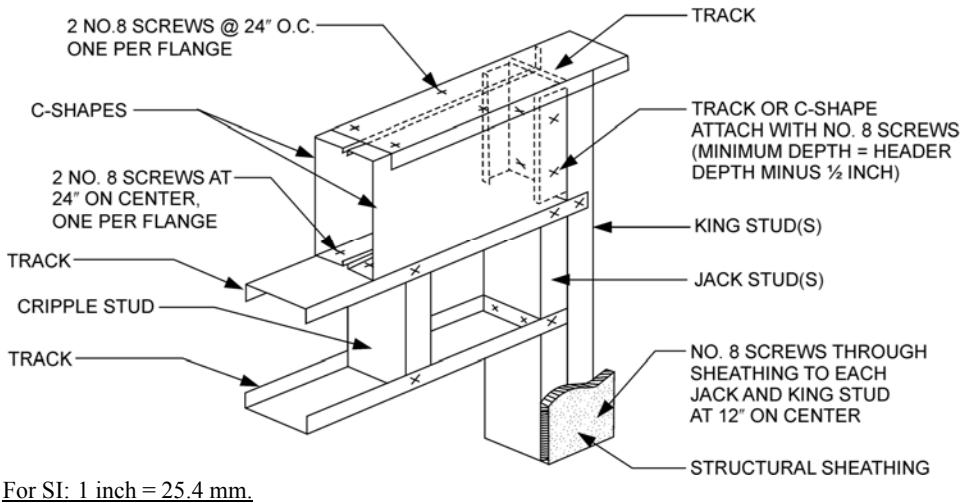


For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 603.4
CORNER FRAMING

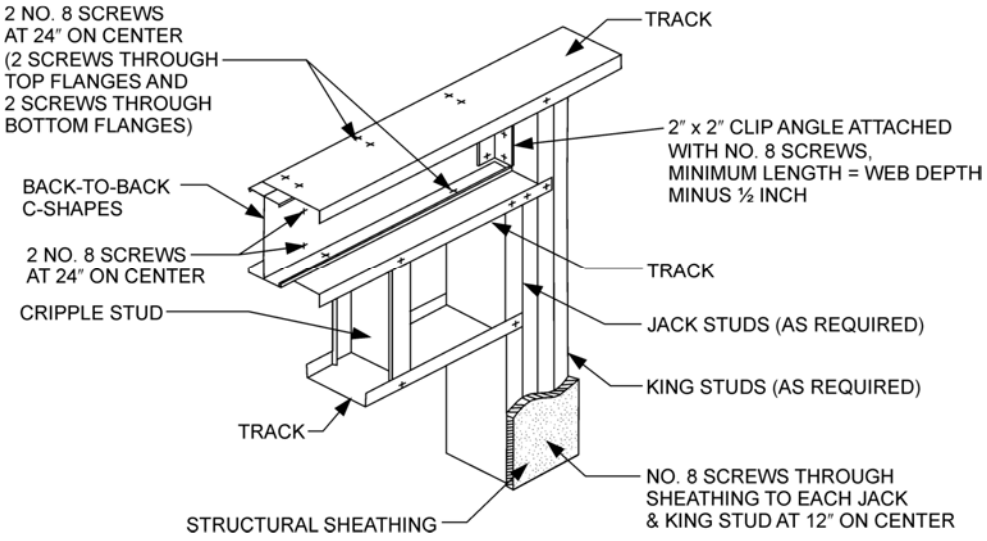
603.5 Exterior wall covering. The method of attachment of exterior wall covering materials to cold-formed steel stud wall framing shall conform to the manufacturer's installation instructions.

603.6 Headers. Headers shall be installed above all wall openings in exterior walls and interior load-bearing walls. Box beam headers and back-to-back headers each shall be formed from two equal sized C-shaped members in accordance with Figures 603.6(1) and 603.6(2), respectively, and Tables 603.6(1) through 603.6(6). L-shaped headers shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with AISI S230. Alternately, headers shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with AISI S240.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 603.6(1)
BOX BEAM HEADER



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 603.6(2)
BACK-TO-BACK HEADER

TABLE 603.6(1)
BOX-BEAM AND BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS
Headers Supporting Roof and Ceiling Only [a, b, d]

MEMBER DESIGNATION	GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf)					GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf)				
	Building width [c] (feet)					Building width [c] (feet)				
	24	28	32	36	40	24	28	32	36	40
2-350S162-33	3′-3″	2′-8″	2′-2″	—	—	2′-8″	2′-2″	—	—	—
2-350S162-43	4′-2″	3′-9″	3′-4″	2′-11″	2′-7″	3′-9″	3′-4″	2′-11″	2′-7″	2′-2″
2-350S162-54	6′-2″	5′-10″	5′-8″	5′-3″	4′-10″	5′-11″	5′-8″	5′-2″	4′-10″	4′-6″
2-350S162-68	6′-7″	6′-3″	6′-0″	5′-10″	5′-8″	6′-4″	6′-1″	5′-10″	5′-8″	5′-6″
2-550S162-33	4′-8″	4′-0″	3′-6″	3′-0″	2′-6″	4′-1″	3′-6″	3′-0″	2′-6″	—
2-550S162-43	6′-0″	5′-4″	4′-10″	4′-4″	3′-11″	5′-5″	4′-10″	4′-4″	3′-10″	3′-5″
2-550S162-54	8′-9″	8′-5″	8′-1″	7′-9″	7′-3″	8′-6″	8′-1″	7′-8″	7′-2″	6′-8″
2-550S162-68	9′-5″	9′-0″	8′-8″	8′-4″	8′-1″	9′-1″	8′-8″	8′-4″	8′-1″	7′-10″
2-800S162-33	4′-5″	3′-11″	3′-5″	3′-1″	2′-10″	3′-11″	3′-6″	3′-1″	2′-9″	2′-3″
2-800S162-43	7′-3″	6′-7″	5′-11″	5′-4″	4′-10″	6′-7″	5′-11″	5′-4″	4′-9″	4′-3″
2-800S162-54	10′-10″	10′-2″	9′-7″	9′-0″	8′-5″	10′-2″	9′-7″	8′-11″	8′-4″	7′-9″
2-800S162-68	12′-8″	11′-10″	11′-2″	10′-7″	10′-1″	11′-11″	11′-2″	10′-7″	10′-0″	9′-6″
2-1000S162-43	7′-10″	6′-10″	6′-1″	5′-6″	5′-0″	6′-11″	6′-1″	5′-5″	4′-11″	4′-6″
2-1000S162-54	12′-3″	11′-5″	10′-9″	10′-2″	9′-6″	11′-6″	10′-9″	10′-1″	9′-5″	8′-9″
2-1000S162-68	14′-5″	13′-5″	12′-8″	12′-0″	11′-6″	13′-6″	12′-8″	12′-0″	11′-5″	10′-10″
2-1200S162-54	12′-11″	11′-3″	10′-0″	9′-0″	8′-2″	11′-5″	10′-0″	9′-0″	8′-1″	7′-4″
2-1200S162-68	15′-11″	14′-10″	14′-0″	13′-4″	12′-8″	15′-0″	14′-0″	13′-3″	12′-7″	11′-11″

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm,
1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criteria: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.
b. Design load assumptions:
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic dead load is 10 psf.
c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.
d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.6(2)
BOX-BEAM AND BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS
Headers Supporting Roof and Ceiling Only [a, b, d]

MEMBER DESIGNATION	GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf)					GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf)				
	Building width [c] (feet)					Building width [c] (feet)				
	24	28	32	36	40	24	28	32	36	40
2-350S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-350S162-43	2′-4″	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-350S162-54	4′-8″	4′-2″	3′-9″	3′-5″	3′-1″	3′-7″	3′-2″	2′-9″	2′-5″	2′-0″

MEMBER DESIGNATION	GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf)					GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf)				
	Building width [c] (feet)					Building width [c] (feet)				
	24	28	32	36	40	24	28	32	36	40
2-350S162-68	5′-7″	5′-2″	4′-9″	4′-4″	3′-11″	4′-7″	4′-1″	3′-7″	3′-2″	2′-10″
2-550S162-33	2′-2″	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-550S162-43	3′-8″	3′-1″	2′-6″	—	—	2′-3″	—	—	—	—
2-550S162-54	6′-11″	6′-3″	5′-9″	5′-3″	4′-9″	5′-6″	4′-11″	4′-5″	3′-11″	3′-5″
2-550S162-68	8′-0″	7′-6″	6′-11″	6′-5″	5′-11″	6′-9″	6′-1″	5′-6″	5′-0″	4′-7″
2-800S162-33	2′-7″	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-800S162-43	4′-6″	3′-9″	3′-1″	2′-5″	—	2′-10″	—	—	—	—
2-800S162-54	8′-0″	7′-3″	6′-8″	6′-1″	5′-7″	6′-5″	5′-9″	5′-1″	4′-7″	4′-0″
2-800S162-68	9′-9″	9′-0″	8′-3″	7′-8″	7′-1″	8′-0″	7′-3″	6′-7″	6′-0″	5′-6″
2-1000S162-43	4′-8″	4′-1″	3′-6″	2′-9″	—	3′-3″	2′-2″	—	—	—
2-1000S162-54	9′-1″	8′-2″	7′-3″	6′-7″	6′-0″	7′-0″	6′-2″	5′-6″	5′-0″	4′-6″
2-1000S162-68	11′-1″	10′-2″	9′-5″	8′-8″	8′-1″	9′-1″	8′-3″	7′-6″	6′-10″	6′-3″
2-1200S162-54	7′-8″	6′-9″	6′-1″	5′-6″	5′-0″	5′-10″	5′-1″	4′-7″	4′-1″	3′-9″
2-1200S162-68	12′-3″	11′-3″	10′-4″	9′-7″	8′-11″	10′-1″	9′-1″	8′-3″	7′-6″	6′-10″

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm,
1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criteria: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.6(3)
BOX-BEAM AND BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS
Headers Supporting One Floor, Roof and Ceiling [a, b, d]

MEMBER DESIGNATION	GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf)					GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf)				
	Building width[c] (feet)					Building width[c] (feet)				
	24	28	32	36	40	24	28	32	36	40
2-350S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-350S162-43	2′-2″	—	—	—	—	2′-1″	—	—	—	—
2-350S162-54	4′-4″	3′-10″	3′-5″	3′-1″	2′-9″	4′-3″	2′-9″	3′-4″	3′-0″	2′-8″
2-350S162-68	5′-0″	4′-9″	4′-7″	4′-2″	3′-9″	4′-11″	4′-8″	4′-6″	4′-1″	3′-9″
2-550S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-550S162-43	3′-5″	2′-9″	2′-1″	—	—	3′-3″	2′-7″	—	—	—
2-550S162-54	6′-6″	5′-10″	5′-3″	4′-9″	4′-4″	6′-4″	5′-9″	5′-2″	4′-8″	4′-3″
2-550S162-68	7′-2″	6′-10″	6′-5″	5′-11″	5′-6″	7′-0″	6′-9″	6′-4″	5′-10″	5′-4″

MEMBER DESIGNATION	GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf)					GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf)				
	Building width[c] (feet)					Building width[c] (feet)				
	24	28	32	36	40	24	28	32	36	40
2-800S162-33	2′-1″	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-800S162-43	4′-2″	3′-4″	2′-7″	—	—	4′-0″	3′-3″	2′-5″	—	—
2-800S162-54	7′-6″	6′-9″	6′-2″	5′-7″	5′-0″	7′-5″	6′-8″	6′-0″	5′-5″	4′-11″
2-800S162-68	9′-3″	8′-5″	7′-8″	7′-1″	6′-6″	9′-1″	8′-3″	7′-7″	7′-0″	6′-5″
2-1000S162-43	4′-4″	3′-9″	2′-11″	—	—	4′-3″	3′-8″	2′-9″	—	—
2-1000S162-54	8′-6″	7′-6″	6′-8″	6′-0″	5′-5″	8′-4″	7′-4″	6′-6″	5′-10″	5′-4″
2-1000S162-68	10′-6″	9′-7″	8′-9″	8′-0″	7′-5″	10′-4″	9′-5″	8′-7″	7′-11″	7′-3″
2-1200S162-54	7′-1″	6′-2″	5′-6″	5′-0″	4′-6″	6′-11″	6′-1″	5′-5″	4′-10″	4′-5″
2-1200S162-68	11′-7″	10′-7″	9′-8″	8′-11″	8′-2″	11′-5″	10′-5″	9′-6″	8′-9″	8′-0″

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criteria: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
   - Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   - Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   - Second-floor live load is 30 psf.
   - Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.6(4)
BOX-BEAM AND BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS
Headers Supporting One Floor, Roof and Ceiling [a, b, d]

MEMBER DESIGNATION	GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf)					GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf)				
	Building width[c] (feet)					Building width[c] (feet)				
	24	28	32	36	40	24	28	32	36	40
2-350S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-350S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-350S162-54	3′-5″	3′-0″	2′-7″	2′-2″	—	2′-8″	2′-2″	—	—	—
2-350S162-68	4′-6″	4′-1″	3′-8″	3′-3″	2′-11″	3′-9″	3′-3″	2′-10″	2′-5″	2′-1″
2-550S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-550S162-43	2′-0″	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-550S162-54	5′-3″	3′-8″	4′-1″	3′-8″	3′-2″	4′-3″	3′-8″	3′-1″	2′-7″	2′-0″
2-550S162-68	6′-5″	5′-10″	5′-3″	4′-9″	4′-4″	5′-5″	4′-9″	4′-3″	3′-9″	3′-4″
2-800S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-800S162-43	2′-6″	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-800S162-54	6′-1″	5′-5″	4′-10″	4′-3″	3′-9″	4′-11″	4′-3″	3′-8″	3′-0″	2′-5″

MEMBER DESIGNATION	GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf)					GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf)				
	Building width[c] (feet)					Building width[c] (feet)				
	24	28	32	36	40	24	28	32	36	40
2-800S162-68	7′-8″	6′-11″	6′-3″	5′-9″	5′-2″	6′-5″	5′-9″	5′-1″	4′-6″	4′-0″
2-1000S162-43	2′-10″	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-1000S162-54	6′-7″	5′-10″	5′-3″	4′-9″	4′-3″	5′-4″	4′-9″	4′-1″	3′-5″	2′-9″
2-1000S162-68	8′-8″	7′-10″	7′-2″	6′-6″	5′-11″	7′-4″	6′-6″	5′-9″	5′-1″	4′-6″
2-1200S162-54	5′-6″	4′-10″	4′-4″	3′-11″	3′-7″	4′-5″	3′-11″	3′-6″	3′-2″	2′-11″
2-1200S162-68	9′-7″	8′-8″	7′-11″	7′-2″	6′-6″	8′-1″	7′-2″	6′-4″	5′-8″	5′-0″

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm,
1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criteria: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Second-floor live load is 30 psf.
   Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.6(5)
BOX-BEAM AND BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS
Headers Supporting Two Floors, Roof and Ceiling [a, b, d]

MEMBER DESIGNATION	GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf)					GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf)				
	Building width[c] (feet)					Building width[c] (feet)				
	24	28	32	36	40	24	28	32	36	40
2-350S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-350S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-350S162-54	2′-5″	—	—	—	—	2′-4″	—	—	—	—
2-350S162-68	3′-6″	3′-0″	2′-6″	2′-1″	—	3′-5″	2′-11″	2′-6″	2′-0″	—
2-550S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-550S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-550S162-54	3′-11″	3′-3″	2′-8″	2′-0″	—	3′-10″	3′-3″	2′-7″	—	—
2-550S162-68	5′-1″	4′-5″	3′-10″	3′-3″	2′-9″	5′-0″	4′-4″	3′-9″	3′-3″	2′-9″
2-800S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-800S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-800S162-54	4′-7″	3′-10″	3′-1″	2′-5″	—	4′-6″	3′-9″	3′-0″	2′-4″	—
2-800S162-68	6′-0″	5′-3″	4′-7″	3′-11″	3′-4″	6′-0″	5′-2″	4′-6″	3′-11″	3′-3″
2-1000S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-1000S162-54	5′-0″	4′-4″	3′-6″	2′-9″	—	4′-11″	4′-3″	3′-5″	2′-7″	—
2-1000S162-68	6′-10″	6′-0″	5′-3″	4′-6″	3′-10″	6′-9″	5′-11″	5′-2″	4′-5″	3′-9″

MEMBER DESIGNATION	GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf)					GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf)				
	Building width[c] (feet)					Building width[c] (feet)				
	24	28	32	36	40	24	28	32	36	40
2-1200S162-54	4′-2″	3′-7″	3′-3″	2′-11″	—	4′-1″	3′-7″	3′-2″	2′-10″	—
2-1200S162-68	7′-7″	6′-7″	5′-9″	5′-0″	4′-2″	7′-6″	6′-6″	5′-8″	4′-10″	4′-1″

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm,
1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criteria: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.
b. Design load assumptions:
Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Second-floor live load is 40 psf
Third-floor live load is 30 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.
c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.
d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

TABLE 603.6(6)
BOX-BEAM AND BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS
Headers Supporting Two Floors, Roof and Ceiling [a, b, d]

MEMBER DESIGNATION	GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf)					GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf)				
	Building width[c] (feet)					Building width[c] (feet)				
	24	28	32	36	40	24	28	32	36	40
2-350S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-350S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-350S162-54	2′-2″	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-350S162-68	3′-3″	2′-9″	2′-3″	—	—	2′-11″	2′-5″	—	—	—
2-550S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-550S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-550S162-54	3′-7″	2′-11″	2′-3″	—	—	3′-3″	2′-7″	—	—	—
2-550S162-68	4′-9″	2′-1″	3′-6″	3′-0″	2′-5″	4′-4″	3′-9″	3′-2″	2′-8″	2′-1″
2-800S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-800S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-800S162-54	4′-3″	3′-5″	2′-8″	—	—	3′-9″	3′-0″	2′-3″	—	—
2-800S162-68	5′-8″	4′-11″	4′-2″	3′-7″	2′-11″	5′-3″	4′-6″	3′-10″	3′-3″	2′-7″
2-1000S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2-1000S162-54	4′-8″	3′-11″	3′-1″	2′-2″	—	4′-3″	3′-5″	2′-7″	—	—
2-1000S162-68	6′-5″	5′-7″	4′-9″	4′-1″	3′-4″	5′-11″	5′-1″	4′-5″	3′-8″	2′-11″
2-1200S162-54	3′-11″	3′-5″	3′-0″	2′-4″	—	3′-7″	3′-2″	2′-10″	—	—
2-1200S162-68	7′-1″	6′-2″	5′-3″	4′-6″	3′-8″	6′-6″	5′-8″	4′-10″	4′-0″	3′-3″

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm,
1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criteria: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.
b. Design load assumptions:
   Second-floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Second-floor live load is 40 psf
   Third-floor live load is 30 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.
c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.
d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

603.6.1 Headers in gable endwalls. Box beam and back-to-back headers in gable endwalls shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with Section 603.6 or with the header directly above the opening in accordance with Figures 603.6.1(1) and 603.6.1(2) and the following provisions:

1. Two 362S162-33 for openings less than or equal to 4 feet (1219 mm).
2. Two 600S162-43 for openings greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) but less than or equal to 6 feet (1829 mm).
3. Two 800S162-54 for openings greater than 6 feet (1829 mm) but less than or equal to 9 feet (2743 mm).

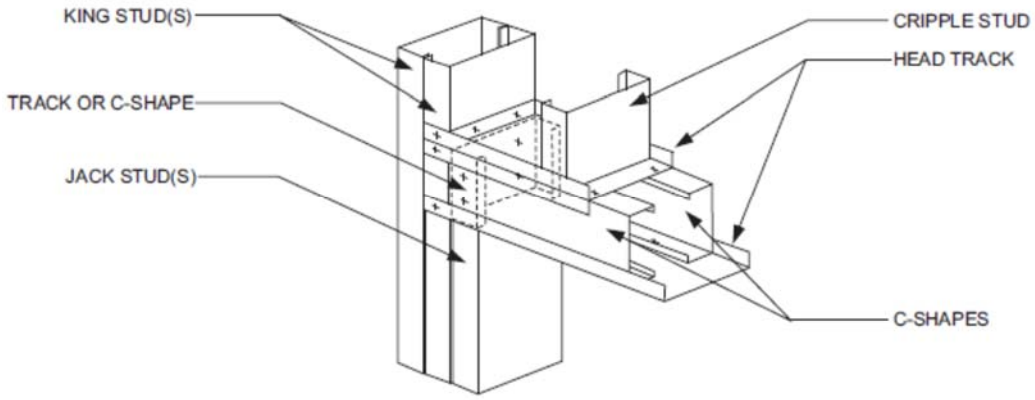
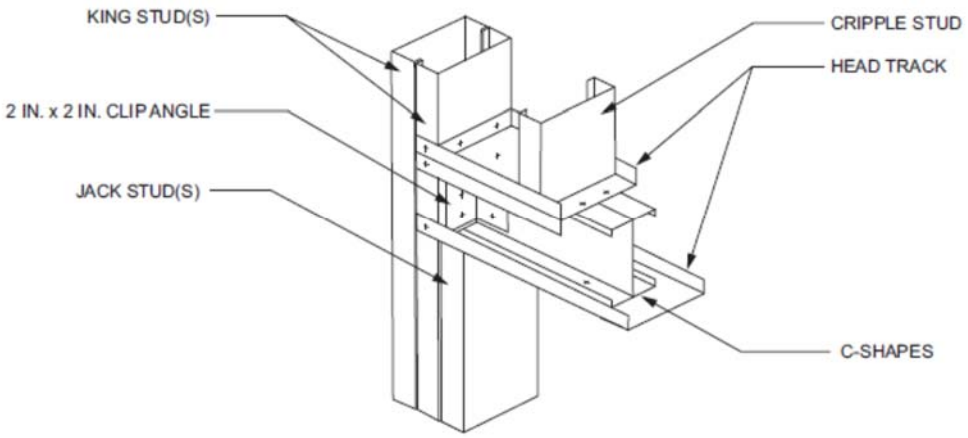


FIGURE 603.6.1(1)
BOX BEAM HEADER IN GABLE ENDWALL



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 603.6.1(2)
BACK-TO-BACK HEADER IN GABLE ENDWALL

603.7 Jack and king studs. The number of jack and king studs installed on each side of a header shall comply with Table 603.7(1). King, jack and cripple studs shall be of the same dimension and thickness as the adjacent wall studs. Headers shall be connected to king studs in accordance with Table 603.7(2) and the following provisions:

1. For box beam headers, one-half of the total number of required screws shall be applied to the header and one-half to the king stud by use of C-shaped or track member in accordance with Figure 603.6(1). The track or C-shaped sections shall extend the depth of the header minus $^1/_2$ -inch (12.7 mm) and shall have a minimum thickness not less than that of the wall studs.
2. For back-to-back headers, one-half the total number of screws shall be applied to the header and one-half to the king stud by use of a minimum 2-inch by 2-inch (51 mm by 51 mm) clip angle in accordance with Figure 603.6(2). The clip angle shall extend the depth of the header minus $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) and shall have a minimum thickness not less than that of the wall studs. Jack and king studs shall be interconnected with structural sheathing in accordance with Figures 603.6(1) and 603.6(2).

TABLE 603.7(1)
TOTAL NUMBER OF JACK AND KING STUDS REQUIRED AT EACH END OF AN OPENING

SIZE OF OPENING (feet-inches)	24-INCH O.C. STUD SPACING		16-INCH O.C. STUD SPACING	
	No. of jack studs	No. of king studs	No. of jack studs	No. of king studs
Up to 3′-6″	1	1	1	1
> 3′-6″ to 5′-0″	1	2	1	2
> 5′-0″ to 5′-6″	1	2	2	2
> 5′-6″ to 8′-0″	1	2	2	2
> 8′-0″ to 10′-6″	2	2	2	3
> 10′-6″ to 12′-0″	2	2	3	3
> 12′-0″ to 13′-0″	2	3	3	3
> 13′-0″ to 14′-0″	2	3	3	4
> 14′-0″ to 16′-0″	2	3	3	4
> 16′-0″ to 18′-0″	3	3	4	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

TABLE 603.7(2)
HEADER TO KING STUD CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS [a, b, c, d]

HEADER SPAN (feet)	ULTIMATE WIND SPEED (mph), EXPOSURE CATEGORY					
	115 B	120 B	130 B / 115 C	≤140 B / 120 C	130 C	≤140 C
≤ 4	4-No. 8 screws	4-No. 8 screws	4-No. 8 screws	4-No. 8 screws	6-No. 8 screws	6-No. 8 screws
> 4 to 8	4-No. 8 screws	4-No. 8 screws	4-No. 8 screws	6-No. 8 screws	8-No. 8 screws	8-No. 8 screws
> 8 to 12	4-No. 8 screws	6-No. 8 screws	6-No. 8 screws	8-No. 8 screws	10-No. 8 screws	12-No. 8 screws
> 12 to 16	4-No. 8 screws	6-No. 8 screws	8-No. 8 screws	10-No. 8 screws	12-No. 8 screws	14-No. 8 screws

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound = 4.448 N.

a. All screw sizes shown are minimum.
b. For headers located on the first floor of a two-story building or the first or second floor of a three-story building, the total number of screws is permitted to be reduced by 2 screws, but the total number of screws shall be not less than four.
c. For roof slopes of 6:12 or greater, the required number of screws shall be permitted to be reduced by half, but the total number of screws shall be not less than four.
d. Screws can be replaced by an uplift connector that has a capacity of the number of screws multiplied by 164 pounds.

603.8 Head and sill track. Head track spans above door and window openings and sill track spans beneath window openings shall comply with Table 603.8. For openings less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in height that have both a head track and a sill track, multiplying the spans by 1.75 shall be permitted in Table 603.8. For openings less than or equal to 6 feet (1829 mm) in height that have both a head track and a sill track, multiplying the spans in Table 603.8 by 1.50 shall be permitted.

603.9 Structural sheathing. Structural sheathing shall be installed in accordance with Figure 603.9 and this section on all sheathable exterior wall surfaces, including areas above and below openings.

TABLE 603.8
HEAD AND SILL TRACK SPAN

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE CATEGORY (mph)		ALLOWABLE HEAD AND SILL TRACK SPAN [a, b, c] (feet-inches)					
		TRACK DESIGNATION [d]					
B	C	350T125-33	350T125-43	350T125-54	550T125-33	550T125-43	550T125-54
115	—	5′-9″	6′-9″	9′-3″	7′-3″	9′-1″	12′-5″
120	—	5′-6″	6′-6″	8′-11″	7′-0″	8′-9″	11′-11″
130	115	4′-10″	5′-9″	7′-10″	6′-2″	7′-8″	10′-6″
< 140	120	4′-8″	5′-6″	7′-6″	5′-11″	7′-4″	10′-1″
—	130	4′-3″	5′-1″	6′-11″	5′-6″	6′-9″	9′-4″
—	< 140	4′-0″	4′-9″	6′-5″	5′-1″	6′-4″	8′-8″

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 ksi = 1,000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection limit: $L/240$.

b. Head and sill track spans are based on components and cladding wind pressures and 48-inch tributary span.

c. For openings less than 4 feet in height that have both a head track and sill track, the spans are permitted to be multiplied by 1.75. For openings less than or equal to 6 feet in height that have both a head track and a sill track, the spans are permitted to be multiplied by a factor of 1.5.

d. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

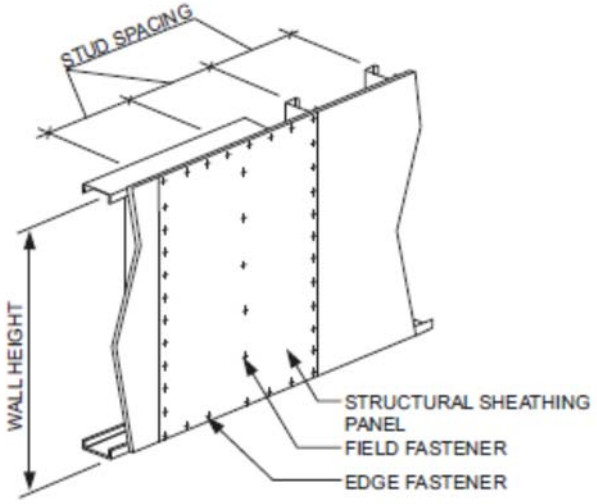


FIGURE 603.9
STRUCTURAL SHEATHING FASTENING PATTERN

603.9.1 Sheathing materials. Structural sheathing panels shall consist of minimum $^{7}/_{16}$-inch-thick (11 mm) oriented strand board or $^{15}/_{32}$-inch-thick (12 mm) plywood.

603.9.2 Determination of minimum length of full-height sheathing. The minimum length of full-height sheathing on each braced wall line shall be determined by multiplying the length of the braced wall line by the percentage obtained from Table 603.9.2(1) and by the plan aspect-ratio adjustment factors obtained from Table 603.9.2(2). The minimum length of full-height sheathing shall be not less than 20 percent of the braced wall line length.

To be considered full-height sheathing, structural sheathing shall extend from the bottom to the top of the wall without interruption by openings. Only sheathed, full- height wall sections, uninterrupted by openings, which are not less than 48 inches (1219 mm) wide, shall be counted toward meeting the minimum percentages in Table 603.9.2(1). In addition, structural sheathing shall comply with all of the following requirements:

1. Be installed with the long dimension parallel to the stud framing and shall cover the full vertical height of wall from the bottom of the bottom track to the top of the top track of each story. Installing the long dimension perpendicular to the stud framing or using shorter segments shall be permitted provided that the horizontal joint is blocked as described in Item 2.
2. Be blocked where the long dimension is installed perpendicular to the stud framing. Blocking shall be not less than 33 mil (0.84 mm) thickness. Each horizontal structural sheathing panel shall be fastened with No. 8 screws spaced at 6 inches (152 mm) on center to the blocking at the joint.
3. Be applied to each end (corners) of each of the exterior walls with a minimum 48-inch-wide (1219 mm) panel.

Exception: Where stone or masonry veneer is installed, the required length of full-height sheathing and over-turning anchorage required shall be determined in accordance with Section 603.9.5.

TABLE 603.9.2(1)
MINIMUM PERCENTAGE OF FULL-HEIGHT STRUCTURAL SHEATHING ON EXTERIOR WALLS [a, b]

WALL SUPPORTING	ROOF SLOPE	ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE (mph)					
		115 B	120 B	130 B 115 C	≤ 140 120 C	≤ 130 C	≤ 140 C
Roof and ceiling only (one story or top floor of two- or three-story building)	3:12	9	11	11	13	17	20
	6:12	13	15	17	22	28	35
	9:12	23	27	29	33	53	59
	12:12	32	39	40	44	70	76

WALL SUPPORTING	ROOF SLOPE	ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE (mph)					
		115 B	120 B	130 B 115 C	≤ 140 120 C	≤ 130 C	≤ 140 C
One story, roof and ceiling (first floor of a two-story building or second floor of a three-story building)	3:12	26	32	34	39	53	67
	6:12	27	33	34	44	61	75
	9:12	38	45	46	61	78	92
	12:12	43	53	57	72	106	116
Two stories, roof and ceiling (first floor of a three-story building)	3:12	43	53	57	64	89	113
	6:12	41	51	51	67	95	114
	9:12	53	63	63	89	104	126
	12:12	54	67	74	100	142	157

For SI: 1 mph = 0.447 m/s.

a. Linear interpolation is permitted.

b. For hip-roofed homes the minimum percentage of full-height sheathing, based on wind, is permitted to be multiplied by a factor of 0.95 for roof slopes not exceeding 7:12 and a factor of 0.9 for roof slopes greater than 7:12.

TABLE 603.9.2(2)
FULL-HEIGHT SHEATHING LENGTH ADJUSTMENT FACTORS

PLAN ASPECT RATIO	LENGTH ADJUSTMENT FACTORS	
	Short wall	Long wall
1:1	1.0	1.0
1.5:1	1.5	0.67
2:1	2.0	0.50
3:1	3.0	0.33
4:1	4.0	0.25

603.9.2.1 Full height sheathing. The minimum percentage of full-height structural sheathing shall be multiplied by 1.10 for 9-foot-high (2743 mm) walls and multiplied by 1.20 for 10-foot-high (3048 mm) walls.

603.9.2.2 Full-height sheathing in lowest story. In the lowest story of a dwelling, multiplying the percentage of full-height sheathing required in Table 603.9.2(1) by 0.6 shall be permitted where hold-down anchors are provided in accordance with Section 603.9.4.2.

603.9.3 Structural sheathing fastening. Edges and interior areas of structural sheathing panels shall be fastened to framing members and tracks in accordance with Figure 603.9 and Table 603.3.2(1). Screws for attachment of structural sheathing panels shall be bugle-head, flat-head, or similar head style with a minimum head diameter of 0.29 inch (8 mm).

For continuously sheathed braced wall lines using wood structural panels

installed with No. 8 screws spaced 4 inches (102 mm) on center at all panel edges and 12inches (304.8 mm) on center on intermediate framing members, the following shall apply:

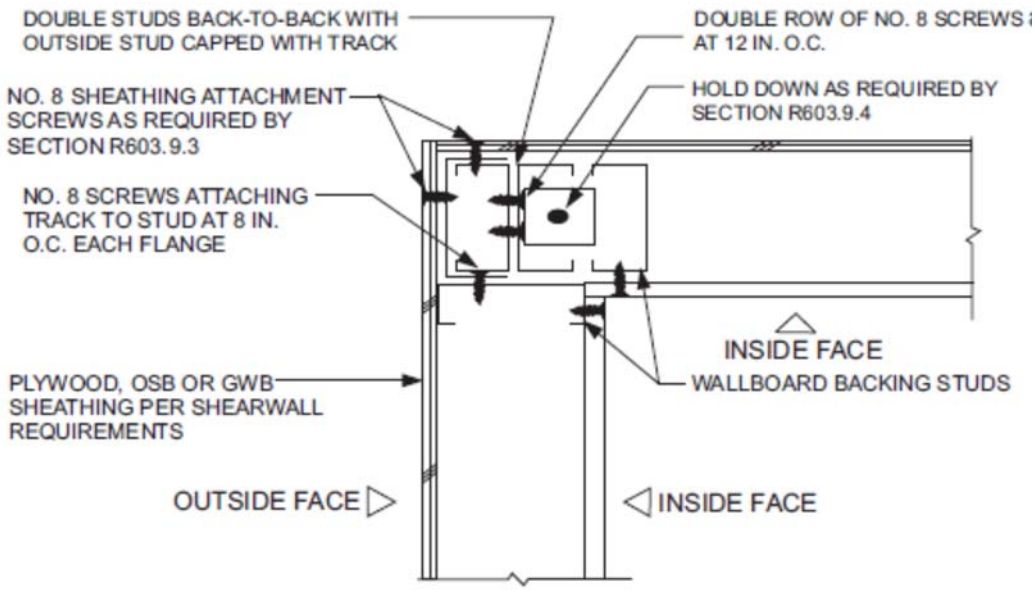
1. Multiplying the percentages of full-height sheathing in Table 603.9.2(1) by 0.72 shall be permitted.
2. For bottom track attached to foundations or framing below, the bottom track anchor or screw connection spacing in Tables 505.3.1(1) and 603.3.1 shall be multiplied by two-thirds

603.9.4 Uplift connection requirements. Uplift connections shall be provided in accordance with this section.

603.9.4.1 Ultimate design wind speeds greater than 130 mph. Where ultimate design wind speeds exceed 130 miles per hour (58 m/s), Exposure Category C walls shall be provided with direct uplift connections in accordance with AISI S230, Section E13.3, and AISI S230, Section F8.2, as required for 140 miles per hour (63 m/s), Exposure Category C.

603.9.4.2 Hold-down anchor. Where the percentage of full-height sheathing is adjusted in accordance with Section 603.9.2.2, a hold-down anchor, with a strength of 4,300 pounds (19 kN), shall be provided at each end of each full-height sheathed wall section used to meet the minimum percent sheathing requirements of Section 603.9.2. Hold-down anchors shall be attached to back-to-back studs; structural sheathing panels shall have edge fastening to the studs, in accordance with Section 603.9.3 and AISI S230, Table E11-1.

A single hold-down anchor, installed in accordance with Figure 603.9.4.2, shall be permitted at the corners of buildings.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 603.9.4.2
CORNER STUD HOLD-DOWN DETAIL

603.9.5 Structural sheathing for stone and masonry veneer. Where stone and masonry veneer are installed in accordance with Section 703.8, the length of full-height sheathing for exterior and interior wall lines backing or perpendicular to and laterally supporting walls with veneer shall comply with this section.

603.9.5.1 Seismic Design Category C. In Seismic Design Category C, the length of structural sheathing for walls supporting one story, roof and ceiling shall be the greater of the amounts required by Section 603.9.2, except Section 603.9.2.2 shall be permitted.

603.9.5.2 Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2. *Deleted*

TABLE 603.9.5(1)
REQUIRED LENGTH OF FULL-HEIGHT SHEATHING AND ASSOCIATED OVERTURNING ANCHORAGE FOR WALLS SUPPORTING WALLS WITH STONE OR MASONRY VENEER AND USING 33-MIL COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING AND 6-INCH SCREW SPACING ON THE PERIMETER OF EACH PANEL OF STRUCTURAL SHEATHING
Delete Table

TABLE 603.9.5(2)
REQUIRED LENGTH OF FULL-HEIGHT SHEATHING AND ASSOCIATED OVERTURNING ANCHORAGE FOR WALLS SUPPORTING WALLS WITH STONE OR MASONRY VENEER AND USING 43-MIL COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING AND 6-INCH SCREW SPACING ON THE PERIMETER OF EACH PANEL OF STRUCTURAL SHEATHING

Delete Table

TABLE 603.9.5(3)
REQUIRED LENGTH OF FULL-HEIGHT SHEATHING AND ASSOCIATED OVERTURNING ANCHORAGE FOR WALLS SUPPORTING WALLS WITH STONE OR MASONRY VENEER AND USING 33-MIL COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING AND 4-INCH SCREW SPACING ON THE PERIMETER OF EACH PANEL OF STRUCTURAL SHEATHING

Delete Table

TABLE 603.9.5(4)
REQUIRED LENGTH OF FULL-HEIGHT SHEATHING AND ASSOCIATED OVERTURNING ANCHORAGE FOR WALLS SUPPORTING WALLS WITH STONE OR MASONRY VENEER AND USING 43-MIL COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING AND 4-INCH SCREW SPACING ON THE PERIMETER OF EACH PANEL OF STRUCTURAL SHEATHING

Delete Table

SECTION 604
WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS

604.1 Identification and grade. Wood structural panels shall conform to DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2 or ANSI/APA PRP 210, CSA O325 or CSA O437. Panels shall be identified by a grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an approved agency.

604.2 Allowable spans. The maximum allowable spans for wood structural panel wall sheathing shall not exceed the values set forth in Table 602.3(3).

604.3 Installation. Wood structural panel wall sheathing shall be attached to framing in accordance with Table 602.3(1) or 602.3(3).

SECTION 605
PARTICLEBOARD

605.1 Identification and grade. Particleboard shall conform to ANSI A208.1 and shall be so identified by a grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an approved agency. Particleboard shall comply with the grades specified in Table 602.3(4).

SECTION 606
GENERAL MASONRY CONSTRUCTION

606.1 General. Masonry construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section, TMS 402, TMS 403, or TMS 404.

606.1.1 Professional registration not required. Where the empirical design provisions of Appendix A of TMS 402, the provisions of TMS 403, or the provisions of this section are used to design masonry, project drawings, typical details and specifications are not required to bear the seal of the architect or engineer responsible for design, unless otherwise required by the state law of the jurisdiction having authority.

606.2 Masonry construction materials.

606.2.1 Concrete masonry units. Concrete masonry units shall conform to the following standards: ASTM C55 for concrete brick; ASTM C73 for calcium silicate face brick; ASTM C90 for load-bearing concrete masonry units; ASTM C744 for prefaced concrete and calcium silicate masonry units; or ASTM C1634 for concrete facing brick.

606.2.2 Clay or shale masonry units. Clay or shale masonry units shall conform to the following standards: ASTM C34 for structural clay load-bearing wall tile; ASTM C56 for structural clay nonload-bearing wall tile; ASTM C62 for building brick (solid masonry units made from clay or shale); ASTM C126 for ceramic-glazed structural clay facing tile, facing brick and solid masonry units; ASTM C212 for structural clay facing tile; ASTM C216 for facing brick (solid masonry units made from clay or shale); ASTM C652 for hollow brick (hollow masonry units made from clay or shale); ASTM C1088 for solid units of thin veneer brick; or ASTM C1405 for glazed brick (single-fired solid brick units).

Exception: Structural clay tile for nonstructural use in fireproofing of structural members and in wall furring shall not be required to meet the compressive strength specifications. The fire-resistance rating shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and shall comply with the requirements of Section 302.

606.2.3 AAC masonry. AAC masonry units shall conform to ASTM C1691 and ASTM C1693 for the strength class specified.

606.2.4 Stone masonry units. Stone masonry units shall conform to the following standards: ASTM C503 for marble building stone (exterior); ASTM C568 for limestone building stone; ASTM C615 for granite building stone; ASTM C616 for sandstone building stone; or ASTM C629 for slate building

stone.

606.2.5 Architectural cast stone. Architectural cast stone shall conform to ASTM C1364.

606.2.6 Adhered manufactured stone masonry veneer units. Adhered manufactured stone masonry veneer units shall conform to ASTM C1670.

606.2.7 Second-hand units. Second-hand masonry units shall not be reused unless they conform to the requirements of new units. The units shall be of whole, sound materials and free from cracks and other defects that will interfere with proper laying or use. Old mortar shall be cleaned from the unit before reuse.

606.2.8 Mortar. Except for mortars listed in Sections 606.2.9, 606.2.10 and 606.2.11, mortar for use in masonry construction shall meet the proportion specifications of Table 606.2.8 or the property specifications of ASTM C270. The type of mortar shall be in accordance with Sections 606.2.8.1, 606.2.8.2 and 606.2.8.3.

606.2.8.1 Foundation walls. Mortar for masonry foundation walls constructed as set forth in Tables 404.1.1(1) through 404.1.1(4) shall be Type M or S mortar.

606.2.8.2 Masonry in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C. Mortar for masonry serving as the lateral force-resisting system in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C shall be Type M, S or N mortar.

TABLE 606.2.8
MORTAR PROPORTIONS [a, b]

MORTAR	TYPE	PROPORTIONS BY VOLUME (cementitious materials)								Aggregate ratio (measured in damp, loose conditions)
		Portland cement or blended cement	Mortar cement			Masonry cement			Hydrated lime [c] or lime putty	
			M	S	N	M	S	N		
Cement-lime	M	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	1/4	Not less than 2 1/4 and not more than 3 times the sum of separate volumes of lime, if used, and cement
	S	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	over 1/4 to 1/2	
	N	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	over 1/2 to 1 1/4	
	O	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	over 1 1/4 to	
Mortar cement	M	1	—	—	1	—	—	—	—	
	M	—	1	—	—	—	—	—		
	S	1/2	—	—	1	—	—	—		
	S	—	—	1	—	—	—	—		
	N	—	—	—	1	—	—	—		
	O	—	—	—	1	—	—	—		

Masonry cement	M	1	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	
	M	—	—	—	—	1	—	—		
	S	1/2	—	—	—	—	—	1		
	S	—	—	—	—	—	1	—		
	N	—	—	—	—	—	—	1		
	O	—	—	—	—	—	—	1		

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m^3, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. For the purpose of these specifications, the weight of 1 cubic foot of the respective materials shall be considered to be as follows:

Portland cement	94 pounds	**Masonry cement**	Weight printed on bag
Mortar cement	Weight printed on bag	**Hydrated lime**	40 pounds
Lime putty (Quicklime)	80 pounds	**Sand, damp and loose**	80 pounds of dry sand

b. Two air-entraining materials shall not be combined in mortar.

c. Hydrated lime conforming to the requirements of ASTM C207.

606.2.8.3 Masonry in Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2. *Deleted*

606.2.9 Surface-bonding mortar. Surface-bonding mortar shall comply with ASTM C887. Surface bonding of concrete masonry units shall comply with ASTM C946.

606.2.10 Mortar for AAC masonry. Thin-bed mortar for AAC masonry shall comply with Article 2.1 C.1 of TMS 602. Mortar used for the leveling courses of AAC masonry shall comply with Article 2.1 C.2 of TMS 602.

606.2.11 Mortar for adhered masonry veneer. Mortar for use with adhered masonry veneer shall conform to ASTM C270 Type S or Type N or shall comply with ANSI A118.4 for latex-modified Portland cement mortar.

606.2.12 Grout. Grout shall consist of cementitious material and aggregate in accordance with ASTM C476 or the proportion specifications of Table 606.2.12. Type M or Type S mortar to which sufficient water has been added to produce pouring consistency shall be permitted to be used as grout.

TABLE 606.2.12
GROUT PROPORTIONS BY VOLUME FOR MASONRY CONSTRUCTION

TYPE	PORTLAND CEMENT OR BLENDED CEMENT SLAG	HYDRATED LIME OR LIME PUTTY	AGGREGATE MEASURED IN A DAMP, LOOSE CONDITION	
			Fine	Coarse
Fine	1	0 to 1/10	2 1/4 to 3 times the sum of the volume of the cementitious materials	—

Coarse	1	0 to 1/10	$2^1/_4$ to 3 times the sum of the volume of the cementitious materials	1 to 2 times the sum of the volumes of the cementitious materials

606.2.13 Metal reinforcement and accessories. Metal reinforcement and accessories shall conform to Article 2.4 of TMS 602.

606.3 Construction requirements.

606.3.1 Bed and head joints. Unless otherwise required or indicated on the project drawings, head and bed joints shall be $^3/_8$ -inch (9.5 mm) thick, except that the thickness of the bed joint of the starting course placed over foundations shall be not less than ¼ -inch (6.4 mm) and not more than $^3/_4$ -inch (19.1 mm). Mortar joint thickness for load- bearing masonry shall be within the following tolerances from the specified dimensions:

1. Bed joint: + $^1/_8$ -inch (3.2 mm).
2. Head joint: - $^1/_4$ -inch (6.4 mm), + $^3/_8$ -inch (9.5 mm).
3. Collar joints: - $^1/_4$ -inch (6.4 mm), + $^3/_8$ -inch (9.5 mm).

606.3.2 Masonry unit placement. The mortar shall be sufficiently plastic and units shall be placed with sufficient pressure to extrude mortar from the joint and produce a tight joint. Deep furrowing of bed joints that produces voids shall not be permitted. Any units disturbed to the extent that initial bond is broken after initial placement shall be removed and re-laid in fresh mortar. Surfaces to be in contact with mortar shall be clean and free of deleterious materials.

606.3.2.1 Solid masonry. Solid masonry units shall be laid with full head and bed joints and all interior vertical joints that are designed to receive mortar shall be filled.

606.3.2.2 Hollow masonry. For hollow masonry units, head and bed joints shall be filled solidly with mortar for a distance in from the face of the unit not less than the thickness of the face shell.

606.3.3 Installation of wall ties. The installation of wall ties shall be as follows:

1. The ends of wall ties shall be embedded in mortar joints. Wall ties shall have not less than $^5/_8$ -inch (15.9 mm) mortar coverage from the exposed face.
2. Wall ties shall not be bent after being embedded in grout or mortar.
3. For solid masonry units, solid grouted hollow units, or hollow units in anchored masonry veneer, wall ties shall be embedded in mortar bed not

less than 1 1/2 -inches (38 mm).

4. For hollow masonry units in other than anchored masonry veneer, wall ties shall engage outer face shells by not less than 1/2 -inch (13 mm).

606.3.4 Protection for reinforcement. Bars shall be completely embedded in mortar or grout. Joint reinforcement embedded in horizontal mortar joints shall not have less than 5/8 -inch (15.9 mm) mortar coverage from the exposed face. Other reinforcement shall have a minimum coverage of one bar diameter over all bars, but not less than 3/4 -inch (19 mm), except where exposed to weather or soil, in which case the minimum coverage shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

606.3.4.1 Corrosion protection. Minimum corrosion protection of joint reinforcement, anchor ties and wire fabric for use in masonry wall construction shall con- form to Table 606.3.4.1.

TABLE 606.3.4.1
MINIMUM CORROSION PROTECTION

MASONRY METAL ACCESSORY	STANDARD
Joint reinforcement, interior walls	ASTM A641, Class 1
Wire ties or anchors in exterior walls completely embedded in mortar or grout	ASTM A641, Class 3
Wire ties or anchors in exterior walls not completely embedded in mortar or grout	ASTM A153, Class B-2
Joint reinforcement in exterior walls or interior walls exposed to moist environment	ASTM A153, Class B-2
Sheet metal ties or anchors exposed to weather	ASTM A153, Class B-2
Sheet metal ties or anchors completely embedded in mortar or grout	ASTM A653, Coating Designation G60
Stainless steel hardware for any exposure	ASTM A167, Type 304

606.3.5 Grouting requirements.

606.3.5.1 Grout placement. Grout shall be a plastic mix suitable for pumping without segregation of the constituents and shall be mixed thoroughly. Grout shall be placed by pumping or by an approved alternate method and shall be placed before any initial set occurs and not more than 1 1/2 hours after water has been added. Grout shall be consolidated by puddling or mechanical vibrating during placing and reconsolidated after excess moisture has been absorbed but before plasticity is lost. Grout shall not be pumped through aluminum pipes.

Maximum pour heights and the minimum dimensions of spaces provided for grout placement shall conform to Table 606.3.5.1. Grout shall

be poured in lifts with a maximum height of 8 feet (2438 mm). Where a total grout pour exceeds 8 feet (2438 mm) in height, the grout shall be placed in lifts not exceeding 64 inches (1626 mm) and special inspection during grouting shall be required. If the work is stopped for 1 hour or longer, the horizontal construction joints shall be formed by stopping all tiers at the same elevation and with the grout 1 inch (25 mm) below the top.

TABLE 606.3.5.1
GROUT SPACE DIMENSIONS AND POUR HEIGHTS

GROUT TYPE	GROUT POUR MAXIMUM HEIGHT (feet)	MINIMUM WIDTH OF GROUT SPACES [a, b] (inches)	MINIMUM GROUT [b, c] SPACE DIMENSIONS FOR GROUTING CELLS OF HOLLOW UNITS (inches x inches)
Fine	1	0.75	1.5 × 2
	5	2	2 × 3
	12	2.5	2.5 × 3
	24	3	3 × 3
Coarse	1	1.5	1.5 × 3
	5	2	2.5 × 3
	12	2.5	3 × 3
	24	3	3 × 4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. For grouting between masonry wythes.

b. Grout space dimension is the clear dimension between any masonry protrusion and shall be increased by the horizontal projection of the diameters of the horizontal bars within the cross section of the grout space.

c. Area of vertical reinforcement shall not exceed 6 percent of the area of the grout space.

606.3.5.2 Cleanouts. Provisions shall be made for cleaning the space to be grouted. Mortar that projects more than $^1/_2$ -inch (12.7 mm) into the grout space and any other foreign matter shall be removed from the grout space prior to inspection and grouting. Where required by the building official, cleanouts shall be provided in the bottom course of masonry for each grout pour where the grout pour height exceeds 64 inches (1626 mm). In solid grouted masonry, cleanouts shall be spaced horizontally not more than 32 inches (813 mm) on center. The cleanouts shall be sealed before grouting and after inspection.

606.3.5.3 Construction. Requirements for grouted masonry construction shall be as follows:

1. Masonry shall be built to preserve the unobstructed vertical continuity of the cells or spaces to be filled. In partially grouted construction, cross webs forming cells to be filled shall be full-bedded in mortar to prevent leakage of grout. Head and end

joints shall be solidly filled with mortar for a distance in from the face of the wall or unit not less than the thickness of the longitudinal face shells.

2. Vertical reinforcement shall be held in position at top and bottom and at intervals not exceeding 200 diameters of the reinforcement.
3. Cells containing reinforcement shall be filled solidly with grout.
4. The thickness of grout or mortar between masonry units and reinforcement shall be not less than 1/4 -inch (6.4 mm), except that 1/4 -inch (6.4 mm) bars shall be permitted to be laid in horizontal mortar joints not less than 1/2 -inch (12.7 mm) thick, and steel wire reinforcement shall be permitted to be laid in horizontal mortar joints not less than twice the thickness of the wire diameter.

606.3.6 Grouted multiple-wythe masonry. Grouted multiple-wythe masonry shall conform to all the requirements specified in Section 606.3.5 and the requirements of this section.

606.3.6.1 Bonding of backup wythe. Where all interior vertical spaces are filled with grout in multiple-wythe construction, masonry headers shall not be permitted. Metal wall ties shall be used in accordance with Section 606.13.2 to prevent spreading of the wythes and to maintain the vertical alignment of the wall. Wall ties shall be installed in accordance with Section 606.13.2 where the backup wythe in multiple-wythe construction is fully grouted.

606.3.6.2 Grout barriers. Vertical grout barriers or dams shall be built of solid masonry across the grout space the entire height of the wall to control the flow of the grout horizontally. Grout barriers shall be not more than 25 feet (7620 mm) apart. The grouting of any section of a wall between control barriers shall be completed in one day without interruptions greater than 1 hour.

606.3.7 Masonry bonding pattern. Masonry laid in running and stack bond shall conform to Sections 606.3.7.1 and 606.3.7.2.

606.3.7.1 Masonry laid in running bond. In each wythe of masonry laid in running bond, head joints in successive courses shall be offset by not less than one-fourth the unit length, or the masonry walls shall be reinforced longitudinally as required in Section 606.3.7.2.

606.3.7.2 Masonry laid in stack bond. Where unit masonry is laid with

less head joint offset than in Section 606.3.7.1, the minimum area of horizontal reinforcement placed in mortar bed joints or in bond beams spaced not more than 48 inches (1219 mm) apart shall be 0.0007 times the vertical cross-sectional area of the wall.

606.4 Thickness of masonry. The nominal thickness of masonry walls shall conform to the requirements of Sections 606.4.1 through 606.4.4.

606.4.1 Minimum thickness. The minimum thickness of masonry bearing walls more than one story high shall be 8 inches (203 mm). Solid masonry walls of one-story dwellings and garages shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in thickness where not greater than 9 feet (2743 mm) in height, provided that where gable construction is used, an additional 6 feet (1829 mm) is permitted to the peak of the gable. Masonry walls shall be laterally supported in either the horizontal or vertical direction at intervals as required by Section 606.6.4.

606.4.2 Rubble stone masonry wall. The minimum thickness of rough, random or coursed rubble stone masonry walls shall be 16 inches (406 mm).

606.4.3 Change in thickness. Where walls of masonry of hollow units or masonry-bonded hollow walls are decreased in thickness, a course of solid masonry or masonry units filled with mortar or grout shall be constructed between the wall below and the thinner wall above, or special units or construction shall be used to transmit the loads from face shells or wythes above to those below.

606.4.4 Parapet walls. Unreinforced solid masonry parapet walls shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick and their height shall not exceed four times their thickness. Unreinforced hollow unit masonry parapet walls shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick, and their height shall not exceed three times their thickness.

606.5 Corbeled masonry. Corbeled masonry shall be in accordance with Sections 606.5.1 through 606.5.3.

606.5.1 Units. Solid masonry units or masonry units filled with mortar or grout shall be used for corbeling.

606.5.2 Corbel projection. The maximum projection of one unit shall not exceed one-half the height of the unit or one-third the thickness at right angles

to the wall. The maximum corbeled projection beyond the face of the wall shall not exceed:

1. One-half of the wall thickness for multiple-wythe walls bonded by mortar or grout and wall ties or masonry headers.
2. One-half the wythe thickness for single wythe walls, masonry-bonded hollow walls, multiple-wythe walls with open collar joints and veneer walls.

606.5.3 Corbeled masonry supporting floor or roof framing members. Where corbeled masonry is used to support floor or roof-framing members, the top course of the corbel shall be a header course or the top course bed joint shall have ties to the vertical wall.

606.6 Support conditions. Bearing and support conditions shall be in accordance with Sections 606.6.1 through 606.6.4.

606.6.1 Bearing on support. Each masonry wythe shall be supported by not less than two-thirds of the wythe thickness.

606.6.2 Support at foundation. Cavity wall or masonry veneer construction shall be permitted to be supported on an 8-inch (203 mm) foundation wall, provided the 8-inch (203 mm) wall is corbeled to the width of the wall system above with masonry constructed of solid masonry units or masonry units filled with mortar or grout. The total horizontal projection of the corbel shall not exceed 2-inches (51 mm) with individual corbels projecting not more than one-third the thickness of the unit or one-half the height of the unit. The hollow space behind the corbeled masonry shall be filled with mortar or grout.

606.6.3 Beam supports. Beams, girders or other concentrated loads supported by a wall or column shall have a bearing of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in length measured parallel to the beam on solid masonry not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness, or on a metal bearing plate of adequate design and dimensions to distribute the load safely, or on a continuous reinforced masonry member projecting not less than 4 inches (102 mm) from the face of the wall.

606.6.3.1 Joist bearing. Joists shall have a bearing of not less than $1^1/_2$ - inches (38 mm), except as provided in Section 606.6.3, and shall be supported in accordance with Figure 606.11(1).

606.6.4 Lateral support. Masonry walls shall be laterally supported in either

the horizontal or the vertical direction. The maximum spacing between lateral supports shall not exceed the distances in Table 606.6.4. Lateral support shall be provided by cross walls, pilasters, buttresses or structural frame members where the limiting distance is taken horizontally, or by floors or roofs where the limiting distance is taken vertically.

TABLE 606.6.4
SPACING OF LATERAL SUPPORT FOR MASONRY WALLS

CONSTRUCTION	MAXIMUM WALL LENGTH TO THICKNESS OR WALL HEIGHT TO THICKNESS [a, b]
Bearing walls:	
Solid or solid grouted	20
All other	18
Nonbearing walls:	
Exterior	18
Interior	36

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Except for cavity walls and cantilevered walls, the thickness of a wall shall be its nominal thickness measured perpendicular to the face of the wall. For cavity walls, the thickness shall be determined as the sum of the nominal thicknesses of the individual wythes. For cantilever walls, except for parapets, the ratio of height to nominal thickness shall not exceed 6 for solid masonry, or 4 for hollow masonry. For parapets, see Section 606.4.4.

b. An additional unsupported height of 6 feet is permitted for gable end walls.

606.6.4.1 Horizontal lateral support. Lateral support in the horizontal direction provided by intersecting masonry walls shall be provided by one of the methods in Section 606.6.4.1.1 or 606.6.4.1.2.

606.6.4.1.1 Bonding pattern. Fifty percent of the units at the intersection shall be laid in an overlapping masonry bonding pattern, with alternate units having a bearing of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) on the unit below.

606.6.4.1.2 Metal reinforcement. Interior non-load-bearing walls shall be anchored at their intersections, at vertical intervals of not more than 16 inches (406 mm) with joint reinforcement of not less than 9 gage [0.148 inch (4 mm)], or $^1/_4$ -inch (6 mm) galvanized mesh hardware cloth. Intersecting masonry walls, other than interior nonload-bearing walls, shall be anchored at vertical intervals of not more than 8 inches (203 mm) with joint reinforcement of not less than 9 gage (4 mm) and shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in each direction at the intersection. Other metal ties, joint reinforcement or anchors, if used, shall be spaced to provide equivalent area of anchorage to that required by this section.

606.6.4.2 Vertical lateral support. Vertical lateral support of masonry walls in Seismic Design Category A, B and C shall be provided in accordance with one of the methods in Section 606.6.4.2.1 or 606.6.4.2.2.

606.6.4.2.1 Roof structures. Masonry walls shall be anchored to roof structures with metal strap anchors spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, $^1/_2$ -inch (13 mm) bolts spaced not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) on center, or other approved anchors. Anchors shall be embedded not less than 16 inches (406 mm) into the masonry, or be hooked or welded to bond beam reinforcement placed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from the top of the wall.

606.6.4.2.2 Floor diaphragms. Masonry walls shall be anchored to floor diaphragm framing by metal strap anchors spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, $^1/_2$ -inch-diameter (13 mm) bolts spaced at intervals not to exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) and installed as shown in Figure 606.11(1), or by other approved methods.

606.7 Piers. The unsupported height of masonry piers shall not exceed 10 times their least dimension. Where structural clay tile or hollow concrete masonry units are used for isolated piers to support beams and girders, the cellular spaces shall be filled solidly with grout or Type M or S mortar, except that unfilled hollow piers shall be permitted to be used if their unsupported height is not more than four times their least dimension. Where hollow masonry units are solidly filled with grout or Type M, S or N mortar, the allowable compressive stress shall be permitted to be increased as provided in Table 606.9.

606.7.1 Pier cap. Hollow piers shall be capped with 4 inches (102 mm) of solid masonry or concrete, a masonry cap block, or shall have cavities of the top course filled with concrete or grout.

606.8 Chases. Chases and recesses in masonry walls shall not be deeper than one-third the wall thickness. The maximum length of a horizontal chase or horizontal projection shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) and shall have not less than 8 inches (203 mm) of masonry in back of the chases and recesses and between adjacent chases or recesses and the jambs of openings. Chases and recesses in masonry walls shall be designed and constructed so as not to reduce the required strength or required fire resistance of the wall and shall not be permitted within the required area of a pier. Masonry directly above chases or recesses wider than 12 inches (305 mm) shall be supported on noncombustible lintels.

606.9 Allowable stresses. Allowable compressive stresses in masonry shall not exceed the values prescribed in Table 606.9. In determining the stresses in masonry, the effects of all loads and conditions of loading and the influence of all forces affecting the design and strength of the several parts shall be taken into account.

606.9.1 Combined units. In walls or other structural members composed of different kinds or grades of units, materials or mortars, the maximum stress shall not exceed the allowable stress for the weakest of the combination of units, materials and mortars of which the member is composed. The net thickness of any facing unit that is used to resist stress shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm).

TABLE 606.9
ALLOWABLE COMPRESSIVE STRESSES FOR EMPIRICAL DESIGN OF MASONRY

CONSTRUCTION; COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF UNIT, GROSS AREA	ALLOWABLE COMPRESSIVE STRESSES [a] GROSS CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA [b]	
	Type M or S mortar	Type N mortar
Solid masonry of brick and other solid units of clay or shale; sand-lime or concrete brick:		
8,000 + psi	350	300
4,500 psi	225	200
2,500 psi	160	140
1,500 psi	115	100
Grouted[c] masonry, of clay or shale; sand-lime or concrete-		
4,500 + psi	225	200
2,500 psi	160	140
1,500 psi	115	100
Solid masonry of solid concrete masonry units:		
3,000 + psi	225	200
2,000 psi	160	140
1,200 psi	115	100
Masonry of hollow load- bearing units:		
2,000 + psi	140	120
1,500 psi	115	100
1,000 psi	75	70
700 psi	60	55
Hollow walls (cavity or masonry bonded[d]) solid units:		
2,500 + psi	160	140
1,500 psi	115	100
Hollow units	75	70
Stone ashlar masonry:		
Granite	720	640
Limestone or marble	450	400
Sandstone or cast stone	360	320

Rubble stone masonry: Coarse, rough or random	120	100

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Linear interpolation shall be used for determining allowable stresses for masonry units having compressive strengths that are intermediate between those given in the table.

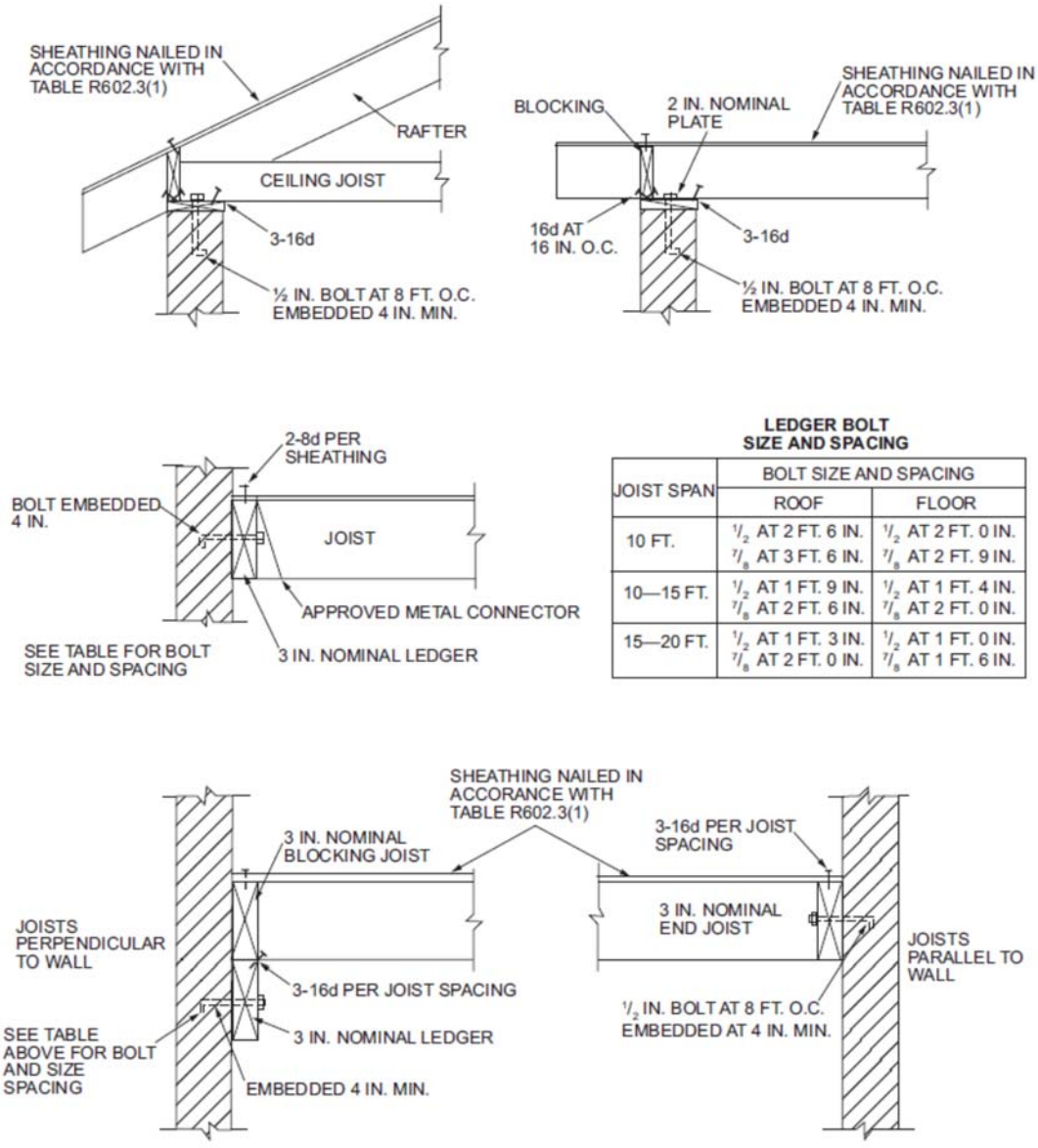
b. Gross cross-sectional area shall be calculated on the actual rather than nominal dimensions.

c. See Section 606.13.

d. Where floor and roof loads are carried on one wythe, the gross cross-sectional area is that of the wythe under load; if both wythes are loaded, the gross cross-sectional area is that of the wall minus the area of the cavity between the wythes. Walls bonded with metal ties shall be considered as cavity walls unless the collar joints are filled with mortar or grout.

606.10 Lintels. Masonry over openings shall be supported by steel lintels, reinforced concrete or masonry lintels or masonry arches, designed to support load imposed.

606.11 Anchorage. Masonry walls shall be anchored to floor and roof systems in accordance with the details shown in Figure 606.11(1). Footings shall be permitted to be considered as points of lateral support.



LEDGER BOLT SIZE AND SPACING

JOIST SPAN	BOLT SIZE AND SPACING	
	ROOF	FLOOR
10 FT.	½ AT 2 FT. 6 IN. ⅞ AT 3 FT. 6 IN.	½ AT 2 FT. 0 IN. ⅞ AT 2 FT. 9 IN.
10—15 FT.	½ AT 1 FT. 9 IN. ⅞ AT 2 FT. 6 IN.	½ AT 1 FT. 4 IN. ⅞ AT 2 FT. 0 IN.
15—20 FT.	½ AT 1 FT. 3 IN. ⅞ AT 2 FT. 0 IN.	½ AT 1 FT. 0 IN. ⅞ AT 1 FT. 6 IN.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

Note: Where bolts are located in hollow masonry, the cells in the courses receiving the bolt shall be grouted solid.

FIGURE 606.11(1)
ANCHORAGE REQUIREMENTS FOR MASONRY WALLS LOCATED IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY A, B OR C AND WHERE WIND LOADS ARE LESS THAN 30 PSF

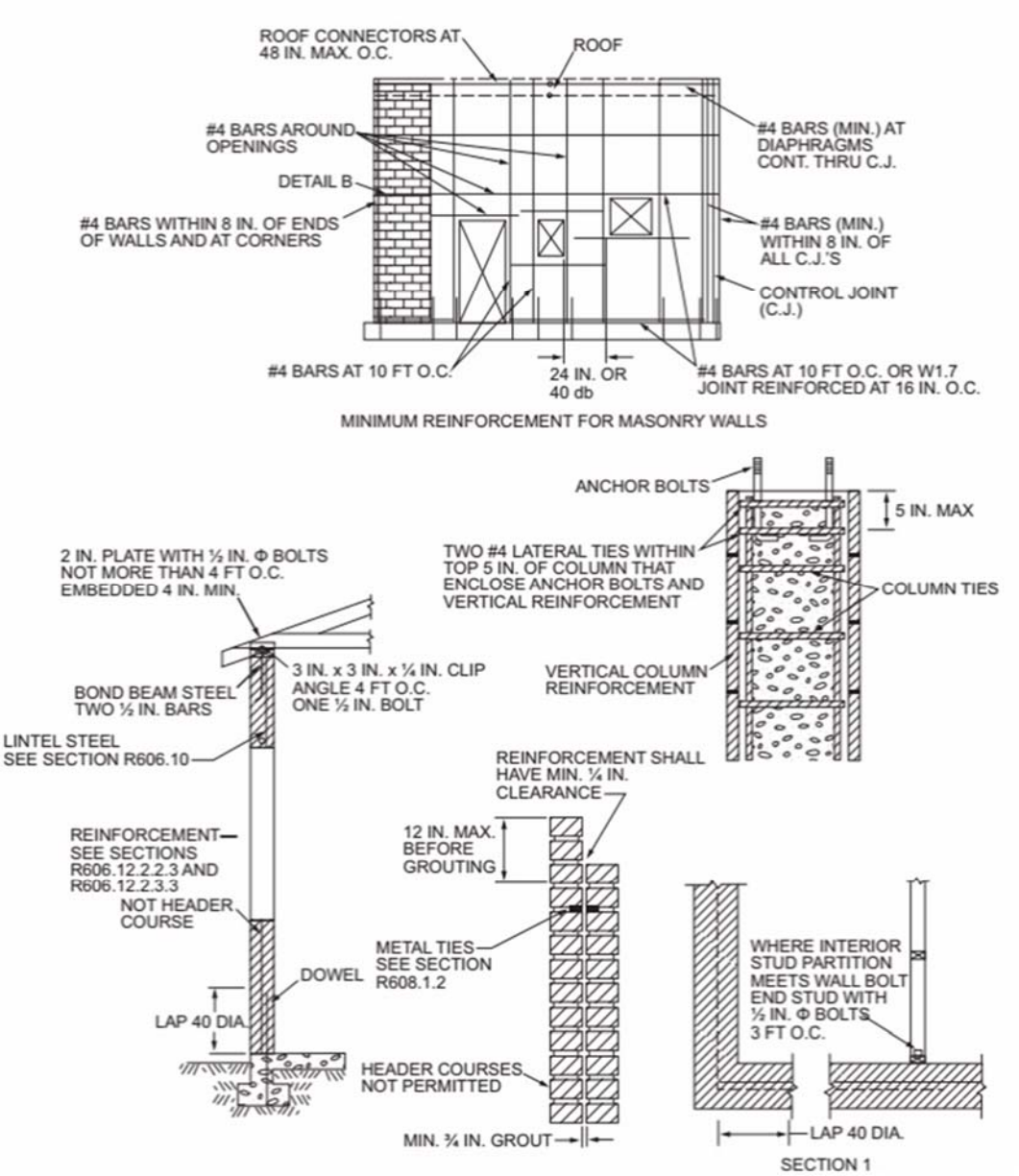


FIGURE 606.11(2)
REQUIREMENTS FOR REINFORCED GROUTED MASONRY CONSTRUCTION IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY C

Figure deleted

FIGURE 606.11(3)
REQUIREMENTS FOR REINFORCED MASONRY CONSTRUCTION IN

SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY D_0, D_1 OR D_2

606.12 Seismic requirements. The seismic requirements of this section shall apply to the design of masonry and the construction of masonry building elements located in Seismic Design Category C. *Buildings with four or more dwelling units* shall comply with the requirements of Section 606.12.2. These requirements shall not apply to glass unit masonry conforming to Section 610, anchored masonry veneer conforming to Section 703.8 or adhered masonry veneer conforming to Section 703.12.

606.12.1 General. Masonry structures and masonry elements shall comply with the requirements of Sections 606.12.2 through 606.12.4 based on the seismic design category established in Table 301.2(2). Masonry structures and masonry elements shall comply with the requirements of Section 606.12 and Figures 606.11(1), 606.11(2) and 606.11(3) or shall be designed in accordance with TMS 402 or TMS 403

606.12.1.1 Floor and roof diaphragm construction. Floor and roof diaphragms shall be constructed of wood structural panels attached to wood framing in accordance with Table 602.3(1) or to cold-formed steel floor framing in accordance with Table 505.3.1(2) or to cold-formed steel roof framing in accordance with Table 804.3. Additionally, sheathing panel edges perpendicular to framing members shall be backed by blocking, and sheathing shall be connected to the blocking with fasteners at the edge spacing. For Seismic Design Categories C, where the width-to-thickness dimension of the diaphragm exceeds 2-to-1, edge spacing of fasteners shall be 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

606.12.2 Seismic Design Category C. *Buildings with four or more dwelling units* located in Seismic Design Category C shall comply with the requirements of this section.

606.12.2.1 Minimum length of wall without openings. Table 606.12.2.1 shall be used to determine the minimum required solid wall length without openings at each masonry exterior wall. The provided percentage of solid wall length shall include only those wall segments that are 3 feet (914 mm) or longer. The maximum clear distance between wall segments included in determining the solid wall length shall not exceed 18 feet (5486 mm). Shear wall segments required to meet the minimum wall length shall be in accordance with Section 606.12.2.2.3.

TABLE 606.12.2.1
MINIMUM SOLID WALL LENGTH ALONG EXTERIOR WALL LINES

SESIMIC DESIGN CATEGORY	MINIMUM SOLID WALL LENGTH (percent)[a]		
	One story or top story of two story	Wall supporting light-framed second story and roof	Wall supporting masonry second story and roof
Buildings with four or more dwelling units in C	20	25	35
D_0 or D_1	*Deleted*		
D_2	*Deleted*		

a. For all walls, the minimum required length of solid walls shall be based on the table percent multiplied by the dimension, parallel to the wall direction under consideration, of a rectangle inscribing the overall building plan.

606.12.2.2 Design of elements not part of the lateral force-resisting system.

606.12.2.2.1 Load-bearing frames or columns. Elements not part of the lateral force-resisting system shall be analyzed to determine their effect on the response of the system. The frames or columns shall be adequate for vertical load-carrying capacity and induced moment caused by the design story drift.

606.12.2.2.2 Masonry partition walls. Masonry partition walls, masonry screen walls and other masonry elements that are not designed to resist vertical or lateral loads, other than those induced by their own weight, shall be isolated from the structure so that vertical and lateral forces are not imparted to these elements. Isolation joints and connectors between these elements and the structure shall be designed to accommodate the design story drift.

606.12.2.2.3 Reinforcement requirements for masonry elements. Masonry elements listed in Section 606.12.2.2.2 shall be reinforced in either the horizontal or vertical direction as shown in Figure 606.11(2) and in accordance with the following:

1. Horizontal reinforcement. Horizontal joint reinforcement shall consist of not less than two longitudinal W1.7 wires spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) for walls greater than 4 inches (102 mm) in width and not less than one longitudinal W1.7 wire

spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) for walls not exceeding 4 inches (102 mm) in width; or not less than one No. 4 bar spaced not more than 48 inches (1219 mm). Where two longitudinal wires of joint reinforcement are used, the space between these wires shall be the widest that the mortar joint will accommodate. Horizontal reinforcement shall be provided within 16 inches (406 mm) of the top and bottom of these masonry elements.

2. Vertical reinforcement. Vertical reinforcement shall consist of not less than one No. 4 bar spaced not more than 48 inches (1219 mm). Vertical reinforcement shall be located within 16 inches (406 mm) of the ends of masonry walls.

606.12.2.3 Design of elements part of the lateral force-resisting system.

606.12.2.3.1 Connections to masonry shear walls. Connectors shall be provided to transfer forces between masonry walls and horizontal elements in accordance with the requirements of Section 4.1.4 of TMS 402. Connectors shall be designed to transfer horizontal design forces acting either perpendicular or parallel to the wall, but not less than 200 pounds per linear foot (2919 N/m) of wall. The maximum spacing between connectors shall be 4 feet (1219 mm). Such anchorage mechanisms shall not induce tension stresses perpendicular to grain in ledgers or nailers.

606.12.2.3.2 Connections to masonry columns. Connectors shall be provided to transfer forces between masonry columns and horizontal elements in accordance with the requirements of Section 4.1.4 of TMS 402. Where anchor bolts are used to connect horizontal elements to the tops of columns, the bolts shall be placed within lateral ties. Lateral ties shall enclose both the vertical bars in the column and the anchor bolts. There shall be not less than two No. 4 lateral ties provided in the top 5 inches (127 mm) of the column.

606.12.2.3.3 Minimum reinforcement requirements for masonry shear walls. Vertical reinforcement of not less than one No. 4 bar shall be provided at corners, within 16 inches (406 mm) of each side of openings, within 8 inches (203 mm) of each side of movement joints, within 8 inches (203 mm) of the ends of walls, and at a maximum spacing of 10 feet (3048 mm).

Horizontal joint reinforcement shall consist of not less than two wires

of W1.7 spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm); or bond beam reinforcement of not less than one No. 4 bar spaced not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be provided. Horizontal reinforcement shall be provided at the bottom and top of wall openings and shall extend not less than 24 inches (610 mm) nor less than 40 bar diameters past the opening; continuously at structurally connected roof and floor levels; and within 16 inches (406 mm) of the top of walls.

606.12.3 Seismic Design Category D_0 or D_1. *Deleted*

606.12.3.1 Design requirements. *Deleted*

606.12.3.2 Minimum reinforcement requirements for masonry walls. *Deleted*

TABLE.12.3.2
MINIMUM DISTRIBUTED WALL REINFORCEMENT FOR BUILDINGS ASSIGNED TO SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY D_0 or D_1
Table deleted

606.12.3.2.1 Shear wall reinforcement requirements. *Deleted*

606.12.3.3 Minimum reinforcement for masonry columns. *Deleted*

606.12.3.4 Material restrictions. *Deleted*

606.12.3.5 Lateral tie anchorage. *Deleted*

606.12.4 Seismic Design Category D_2. *Deleted*

606.12.4.1 Design of elements not part of the lateral force-resisting system. *Deleted*

TABLE 606.12.4.1
MINIMUM REINFORCING FOR STACKED BONDED MASONRY WALLS IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY D_2
Table deleted

606.12.4.2 Design of elements part of the lateral force-resisting system. *Deleted*

TABLE 606.12.4.2
MINIMUM RE INFORCING FOR STACKED BONDED
MASONRY WALLS IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY D2

Table deleted

606.13 Multiple-wythe masonry. The facing and backing of multiple-wythe masonry walls shall be bonded in accordance with Section 606.13.1, 606.13.2 or 606.13.3. In cavity walls, neither the facing nor the backing shall be less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness and the cavity shall be not more than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in width. The backing shall not be less than the thickness of the facing.

Exception: Cavities shall be permitted to exceed the 4- inch (102 mm) nominal dimension provided that tie size and tie spacing have been established by calculation.

606.13.1 Bonding with masonry headers. Bonding with solid or hollow masonry headers shall comply with Sections 606.13.1.1 and 606.13.1.2.

606.13.1.1 Solid units. Where the facing and backing (adjacent wythes) of solid masonry construction are bonded by means of masonry headers, not less than 4 percent of the wall surface of each face shall be composed of headers extending not less than 3 inches (76 mm) into the backing. The distance between adjacent full-length headers shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) either vertically or horizontally. In walls in which a single header does not extend through the wall, headers from the opposite sides shall overlap not less than 3 inches (76 mm), or headers from opposite sides shall be covered with another header course overlapping the header below not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

606.13.1.2 Hollow units. Where two or more hollow units are used to make up the thickness of a wall, the stretcher courses shall be bonded at vertical intervals not exceeding 34 inches (864 mm) by lapping not less than 3 inches (76 mm) over the unit below, or by lapping at vertical intervals not exceeding 17 inches (432 mm) with units that are not less than 50 percent thicker than the units below.

606.13.2 Bonding with wall ties or joint reinforcement. Bonding with wall ties or joint reinforcement shall comply with Section 606.13.2.3.

606.13.2.1 Bonding with wall ties. Bonding with wall ties, except as required by Section 607, where the facing and backing (adjacent wythes) of

masonry walls are bonded with $^{3}/_{16}$-inch-diameter (5 mm) wall ties embedded in the horizontal mortar joints, there shall be not less than one metal tie for each $4^{1}/_{2}$ square feet (0.418 m^2) of wall area. Ties in alternate courses shall be staggered. The maximum vertical distance between ties shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm), and the maximum horizontal distance shall not exceed 36 inches (914 mm). Rods or ties bent to rectangular shape shall be used with hollow masonry units laid with the cells vertical. In other walls, the ends of ties shall be bent to 90-degree (0.79 rad) angles to provide hooks not less than 2 inches (51 mm) long. Additional bonding ties shall be provided at all openings, spaced not more than 3 feet (914 mm) apart around the perimeter and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the opening.

606.13.2.2 Bonding with adjustable wall ties. Where the facing and backing (adjacent wythes) of masonry are bonded with adjustable wall ties, there shall be not less than one tie for each 2.67 square feet (0.248 m^2) of wall area. Neither the vertical nor the horizontal spacing of the adjustable wall ties shall exceed 24 inches (610 mm). The maximum vertical offset of bed joints from one wythe to the other shall be 1.25 inches (32 mm). The maximum clearance between connecting parts of the ties shall be $^{1}/_{16}$ -inch (2 mm). Where pintle legs are used, ties shall have not less than two $^{3}/_{16}$ -inch-diameter (5 mm) legs.

606.13.2.3 Bonding with prefabricated joint reinforcement. Where the facing and backing (adjacent wythes) of masonry are bonded with prefabricated joint reinforcement, there shall be not less than one cross wire serving as a tie for each 2.67 square feet (0.248 m^2) of wall area. The vertical spacing of the joint reinforcement shall not exceed 16 inches (406 mm). Cross wires on prefabricated joint reinforcement shall not be smaller than No. 9 gage. The longitudinal wires shall be embedded in the mortar.

606.13.3 Bonding with natural or cast stone. Bonding with natural and cast stone shall conform to Sections 606.13.3.1 and 606.13.3.2.

606.13.3.1 Ashlar masonry. In ashlar masonry, bonder units, uniformly distributed, shall be provided to the extent of not less than 10 percent of the wall area. Such bonder units shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) into the backing wall.

606.13.3.2 Rubble stone masonry. Rubble stone masonry 24 inches (610 mm) or less in thickness shall have bonder units with a maximum spacing of 3 feet (914 mm) vertically and 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally, and if the

masonry is of greater thickness than 24 inches (610 mm), shall have one bonder unit for each 6 square feet (0.557 m^2) of wall surface on both sides.

606.14 Anchored and adhered masonry veneer.

606.14.1 Anchored veneer. Anchored masonry veneer installed over a backing of wood or cold-formed steel shall meet the requirements of Section 703.8.

606.14.2 Adhered veneer. Adhered masonry veneer shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of Section 703.12.

SECTION 607
GLASS UNIT MASONRY

607.1 General. Panels of glass unit masonry located in load-bearing and nonload-bearing exterior and interior walls shall be constructed in accordance with this section.

607.2 Materials. Hollow glass units shall be partially evacuated and have a minimum average glass face thickness of $^3/_{16}$ inch (5 mm). The surface of units in contact with mortar shall be treated with a polyvinyl butyral coating or latex-based paint. The use of reclaimed units is prohibited.

607.3 Units. Hollow or solid glass block units shall be standard or thin units.

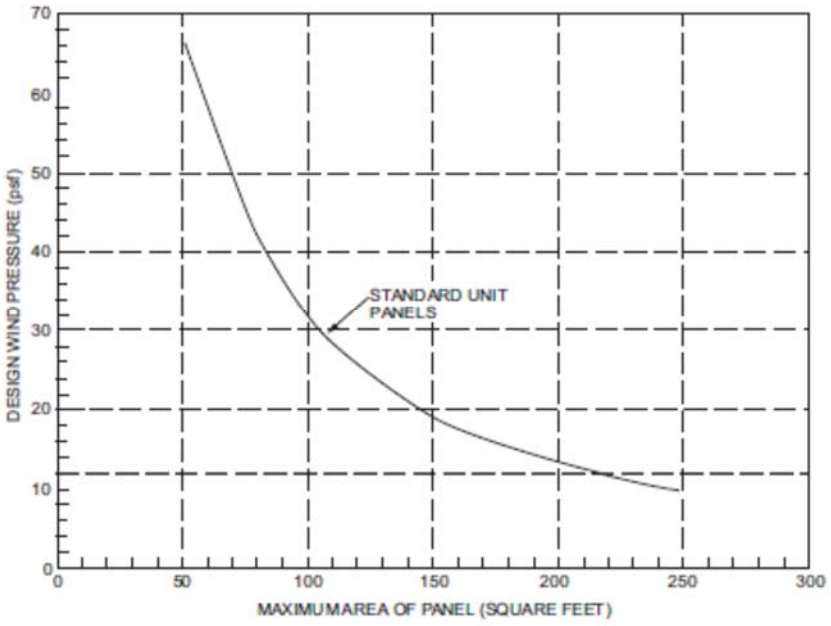
607.3.1 Standard units. The specified thickness of standard units shall be not less than $3^7/_8$ -inches (98 mm).

607.3.2 Thin units. The specified thickness of thin units shall be not less than $3^1/_8$ inches (79 mm) for hollow units and not less than 3 inches (76 mm) for solid units.

607.4 Isolated panels. Isolated panels of glass unit masonry shall conform to the requirements of this section.

607.4.1 Exterior standard-unit panels. The maximum area of each individual standard-unit panel shall be 144 square feet (13.4 m^2) where the design wind pressure is 20 pounds per square foot (958 Pa). The maximum area of such panels subjected to design wind pressures other than20 pounds per square foot (958 Pa) shall be in accordance with Figure 607.4.1. The maximum panel

dimension between structural supports shall be 25 feet (7620 mm) in width or 20 feet (6096 mm) in height.



For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

FIGURE 607.4.1
GLASS UNIT MASONRY DESIGN WIND LOAD RESISTANCE

607.4.3 Interior panels. The maximum area of each individual standard-unit panel shall be 250 square feet (23.2 m^2). The maximum area of each thin-unit panel shall be 150 square feet (13.9 m^2). The maximum dimension between structural supports shall be 25 feet (7620 mm) in width or 20 feet (6096 mm) in height.

607.4.4 Curved panels. The width of curved panels shall conform to the requirements of Sections 607.4.1, 607.4.2 and 607.4.3, except additional structural supports shall be provided at locations where a curved section joins a straight section, and at inflection points in multiple-curve walls.

607.5 Panel support. Glass unit masonry panels shall conform to the support requirements of this section.

607.5.1 Deflection. The maximum total deflection of structural members that support glass unit masonry shall not exceed l/600.

607.5.2 Lateral support. Glass unit masonry panels shall be laterally supported along the top and sides of the panel. Lateral supports for glass unit masonry panels shall be designed to resist not less than 200 pounds per lineal feet (2918 N/m) of panel, or the actual applied loads, whichever is greater. Except for single-unit panels, lateral support shall be provided by panel anchors along the top and sides spaced not greater than 16 inches (406 mm) on center or by channel-type restraints. Single-unit panels shall be supported by channel-type restraints.

Exceptions:

1. Lateral support is not required at the top of panels that are one unit wide.
2. Lateral support is not required at the sides of panels that are one unit high.

607.5.2.1 Panel anchor restraints. Panel anchors shall be spaced not greater than 16 inches (406 mm) on center in both jambs and across the head. Panel anchors shall be embedded not less than 12 inches (305 mm) and shall be provided with two fasteners so as to resist the loads specified in Section 607.5.2.

607.5.2.2 Channel-type restraints. Glass unit masonry panels shall be recessed not less than 1 inch (25 mm) within channels and chases. Channel-type restraints shall be oversized to accommodate expansion material in the opening, packing and sealant between the framing restraints, and the glass unit masonry perimeter units.

607.6 Sills. Before the bedding of glass units, the sill area shall be covered with a water-base asphaltic emulsion coating. The coating shall be not less than $^{1}/_{8}$ -inch (3 mm) thick.

607.7 Expansion joints. Glass unit masonry panels shall be provided with expansion joints along the top and sides at all structural supports. Expansion joints shall be not less than $^{3}/_{8}$ -inch (10 mm) in thickness and shall have sufficient thickness to accommodate displacements of the supporting structure. Expansion joints shall be entirely free of mortar and other debris and shall be filled with resilient material.

607.8 Mortar. Glass unit masonry shall be laid with Type S or N mortar. Mortar shall not be retempered after initial set. Mortar unused within $1^{1}/_{2}$ hours after initial mixing shall be discarded.

607.9 Reinforcement. Glass unit masonry panels shall have horizontal joint

reinforcement spaced not greater than 16 inches (406 mm) on center located in the mortar bed joint. Horizontal joint reinforcement shall extend the entire length of the panel but shall not extend across expansion joints. Longitudinal wires shall be lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) at splices. Joint reinforcement shall be placed in the bed joint immediately below and above openings in the panel. The reinforcement shall have not less than two parallel longitudinal wires of size W1.7 or greater, and have welded cross wires of size W1.7 or greater.

607.10 Placement. Glass units shall be placed so head and bed joints are filled solidly. Mortar shall not be furrowed. Head and bed joints of glass unit masonry shall be $^1/_4$ -inch (6.4 mm) thick, except that vertical joint thickness of radial panels shall be not less than $^1/_8$ -inch (3 mm) or greater than $^5/_8$ -inch (16 mm). The bed joint thickness tolerance shall be minus $^1/_{16}$ -inch (1.6 mm) and plus $^1/_8$ -inch (3 mm). The head joint thickness tolerance shall be plus or minus $^1/_8$ -inch (3 mm).

SECTION 608
EXTERIOR CONCRETE WALL CONSTRUCTION

608.1 General. Exterior concrete walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section or in accordance with the provisions of PCA 100 or ACI 318. Where PCA 100, ACI 318 or the provisions of this section are used to design concrete walls, project drawings, typical details and specifications are not required to bear the seal of the architect or engineer responsible for design, unless otherwise required by the state law of the jurisdiction having authority.

608.1.1 Interior construction. These provisions are based on the assumption that interior walls and partitions, both load-bearing and nonload-bearing, floors and roof/ceiling assemblies are constructed of light-framed construction complying with the limitations of this code and the additional limitations of Section 608.2. Design and construction of light-framed assemblies shall be in accordance with the applicable provisions of this code. Where second- story exterior walls are of light-framed construction, they shall be designed and constructed as required by this code.

Aspects of concrete construction not specifically addressed by this code, including interior concrete walls, shall comply with ACI 318.

608.1.2 Other concrete walls. Exterior concrete walls constructed in accordance with this code shall comply with the shapes and minimum concrete cross-sectional dimensions of Table 608.3. Other types of forming systems resulting in concrete walls not in compliance with this section shall be designed

in accordance with ACI 318.

608.2 Applicability limits. The provisions of this section shall apply to the construction of exterior concrete walls for buildings not greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in plan dimensions, floors with clear spans not greater than 32 feet (9754 mm) and roofs with clear spans not greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm). Buildings shall not exceed 35 feet (10 668 mm) in mean roof height or two stories in height above grade. Floor/ceiling dead loads shall not exceed 10 pounds per square foot (479 Pa), roof/ceiling dead loads shall not exceed 15 pounds per square foot (718 Pa) and attic live loads shall not exceed 20 pounds per square foot (958 Pa). Roof overhangs shall not exceed 2 feet (610 mm) of horizontal projection beyond the exterior wall and the dead load of the overhangs shall not exceed 8 pounds per square foot (383 Pa).

Walls constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to buildings subjected to a maximum design wind speed of 160 mph (72 m/s) Exposure B, 136 mph (61 m/s) Exposure C and 125 mph (56 m/s) Exposure D. Walls constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to detached one-, *two- and three*-family dwellings and *dwelling units* assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B.

Buildings that are not within the scope of this section shall be designed in accordance with PCA 100 or ACI 318.

608.3 Concrete wall systems. Concrete walls constructed in accordance with these provisions shall comply with the shapes and minimum concrete cross-sectional dimensions of Table 608.3.

TABLE 608.3
DIMENSIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR WALLS [a]

WALL TYPE AND NOMINAL THICKNESS	MAXIMUM WALL WEIGHT[b] (psf)	MINIMUM WIDTH, *W*, OF VERTICAL CORES (inches)	MINIMUM THICKNESS, *T*, OF VERTICAL CORES (inches)	MAXIMUM SPACING OF VERTICAL CORES (inches)	MAXIMUM SPACING OF HORIZONTAL CORES (inches)	MINIMUM WEB THICKNESS (inches)
4″ Flat [c]	50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
6″ Flat [c]	75	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
8″ Flat [c]	100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
10″ Flat [c]	125	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
6″ Waffle-grid	56	8 [d]	5.5 [d]	12	16	2
8″ Waffle-grid	76	8 [e]	8 [e]	12	16	2
6″ Screen-grid	53	6.25 [f]	6.25 [f]	12	12	NA

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per cubic foot = 2402.77 kg/m^3, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2, 1 inch^4 = 42 cm^4. NA = Not Applicable.

a. Width "*W*," thickness "*T*," spacing and web thickness, refer to Figures 608.3(2) and 608.3(3).

b. Wall weight is based on a unit weight of concrete of 150 pcf. For flat walls the weight is based on the nominal thickness. The tabulated

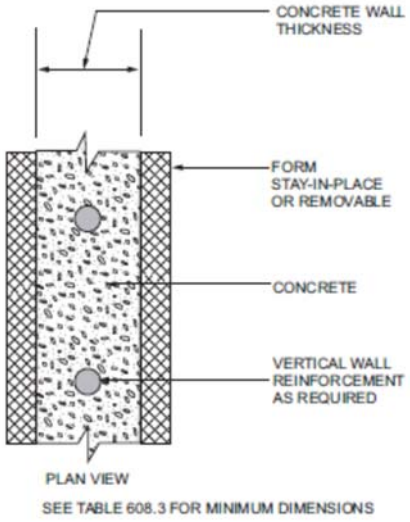
values do not include any allowance for interior and exterior finishes.

c. Nominal wall thickness. The actual as-built thickness of a flat wall shall not be more than ½ inch less or more than ¼ inch more than the nominal dimension indicated.

d. Vertical core is assumed to be elliptical-shaped. Another shape of core is permitted provided the minimum thickness is 5 inches, the moment of inertia, *I*, about the centerline of the wall (ignoring the web) is not less than 65 inch^4, and the area, *A*, is not less than 31.25 square inches. The width used to calculate *A* and *I* shall not exceed 8 inches.

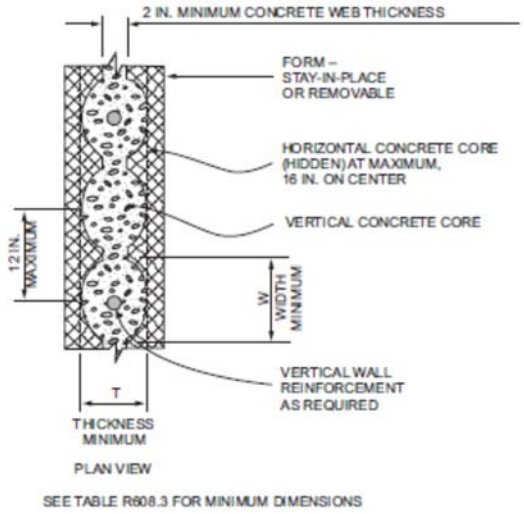
e. Vertical core is assumed to be circular. Another shape of core is permitted provided the minimum thickness is 7 inches, the moment of inertia, *I*, about the centerline of the wall (ignoring the web) is not less than 200 inch^4, and the area, *A*, is not less than 49 square inches. The width used to calculate *A* and *I* shall not exceed 8 inches.

f. Vertical core is assumed to be circular. Another shape of core is permitted provided the minimum thickness is 5.5 inches, the moment of inertia, *I*, about the centerline of the wall is not less than 76 inch^4, and the area, *A*, is not less than 30.25 square inches. The width used to calculate *A* and *I* shall not exceed 6.25 inches.



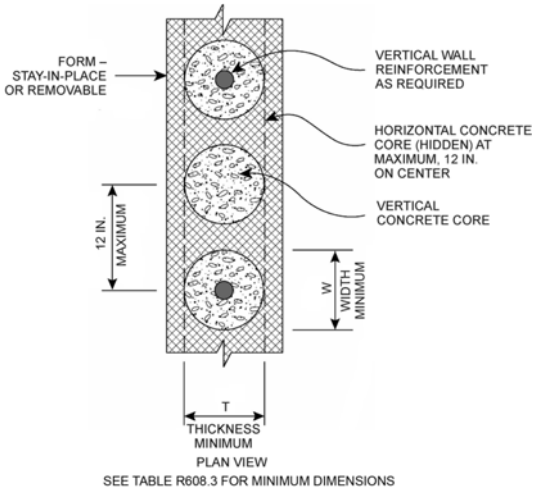
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 608.3(1)
FLAT WALL SYSTEM



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 608.3(2)
WAFFLE-GRID WALL SYSTEM



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 608.3(3)
SCREEN-GRID WALL SYSTEM

608.3.1 Flat wall systems. Flat concrete wall systems shall comply with Table 608.3 and Figure 608.3(1) and have a minimum nominal thickness of 4 inches (102 mm).

608.3.2 Waffle-grid wall systems. Waffle-grid wall systems shall comply

with Table 608.3 and Figure 608.3(2) and shall have a minimum nominal thickness of 6 inches (152 mm) for the horizontal and vertical concrete members (cores). The core and web dimensions shall comply with Table 608. 3. The maximum weight of waffle-grid walls shall comply with Table 608.3.

608.3.3 Screen-grid wall systems. Screen-grid wall systems shall comply with Table 608.3 and Figure 608.3(3) and shall have a minimum nominal thickness of 6 inches (152 mm) for the horizontal and vertical concrete members (cores). The core dimensions shall comply with Table 608.3. The maximum weight of screen-grid walls shall comply with Table 608.3.

608.4 Stay-in-place forms. Stay-in-place concrete forms shall comply with this section.

608.4.1 Surface burning characteristics. The flame spread index and smoke-developed index of forming material, other than foam plastic, left exposed on the interior shall comply with Section 302.9. The surface burning characteristics of foam plastic used in insulating concrete forms shall comply with Section 316.3.

608.4.2 Interior covering. Stay-in-place forms con- structed of rigid foam plastic shall be protected on the interior of the building as required by Sections 316.4 and 702.3.4. Where gypsum board is used to protect the foam plastic, it shall be installed with a mechanical fastening system. Use of adhesives is permitted in addition to mechanical fasteners.

608.4.3 Exterior wall covering. Stay-in-place forms constructed of rigid foam plastics shall be protected from sunlight and physical damage by the application of an approved exterior wall covering complying with this code. Exterior surfaces of other stay-in-place forming systems shall be protected in accordance with this code.

Requirements for installation of masonry veneer, stucco and other finishes on the exterior of concrete walls and other construction details not covered in this section shall comply with the requirements of this code.

608.4.4 Flat ICF wall systems. Flat ICF wall system forms shall conform to ASTM E2634.

608.5 Materials. Materials used in the construction of concrete walls shall comply with this section.

608.5.1 Concrete and materials for concrete. Materials used in concrete, and the concrete itself, shall conform to requirements of this section, PCA 100 or ACI 318.

608.5.1.1 Cements. The following standards as referenced in Chapter 44 shall be permitted to be used.

1. ASTM C150
2. ASTM C595
3. ASTM C1157

608.5.1.2 Concrete mixing and delivery. Mixing and delivery of concrete shall comply with ASTM C94 or ASTM C685.

608.5.1.3 Maximum aggregate size. The nominal maximum size of coarse aggregate shall not exceed one-fifth the narrowest distance between sides of forms, or three-fourths the clear spacing between reinforcing bars or between a bar and the side of the form.

Exception: When approved, these limitations shall not apply where removable forms are used and workability and methods of consolidation permit concrete to be placed without honeycombs or voids.

608.5.1.4 Proportioning and slump of concrete. Proportions of materials for concrete shall be established to provide workability and consistency to permit concrete to be worked readily into forms and around reinforcement under conditions of placement to be employed, without segregation or excessive bleeding. Slump of concrete placed in removable forms shall not exceed 6 inches (152 mm).

Exception: When approved, the slump is permitted to exceed 6 inches (152 mm) for concrete mixtures that are resistant to segregation, and are in accordance with the form manufacturer's recommendations.

Slump of concrete placed in stay-in-place forms shall exceed 6 inches (152 mm). Slump of concrete shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C143.

608.5.1.5 Compressive strength. The minimum specified compressive strength of concrete, f'_c, shall comply with Section 402.2 and shall be not less than 2,500 pounds per square inch (17.2 MPa) at 28 days.

608.5.1.6 Consolidation of concrete. Concrete shall be consolidated by

suitable means during placement and shall be worked around embedded items and reinforcement and into corners of forms. Where stay-in-place forms are used, concrete shall be consolidated by internal vibration.

Exception: When approved, self-consolidating concrete mixtures with slumps equal to or greater than 8 inches (203 mm) that are specifically designed for placement without internal vibration need not be internally vibrated.

608.5.2 Steel reinforcement and anchor bolts.

608.5.2.1 Steel reinforcement. Steel reinforcement shall comply with ASTM A615, ASTM A706, or ASTM A996. ASTM A996 bars produced from rail steel shall be Type R.

608.5.2.2 Anchor bolts. Anchor bolts for use with connection details in accordance with Figures 608.9(1) through 608.9(12) shall be bolts with heads complying with ASTM A307 or ASTM F1554. ASTM A307 bolts shall be Grade A with heads. ASTM F1554 bolts shall be Grade 36 minimum. Instead of bolts with heads, it is permissible to use rods with threads on both ends fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A36. The threaded end of the rod to be embedded in the concrete shall be provided with a hex or square nut.

608.5.2.3 Sheet steel angles and tension tie straps. Angles and tension tie straps for use with connection details in accordance with Figures 608.9(1) through 608.9(12) shall be fabricated from sheet steel complying with ASTM A653 SS, ASTM A792 SS, or ASTM A875 SS. The steel shall be minimum Grade 33 unless a higher grade is required by the applicable figure.

608.5.3 Form materials and form ties. Forms shall be made of wood, steel, aluminum, plastic, a composite of cement and foam insulation, a composite of cement and wood chips, or other approved material suitable for supporting and containing concrete. Forms shall provide sufficient strength to contain concrete during the concrete placement operation.

Form ties shall be steel, solid plastic, foam plastic, a composite of cement and wood chips, a composite of cement and foam plastic, or other suitable material capable of resisting the forces created by fluid pressure of fresh concrete.

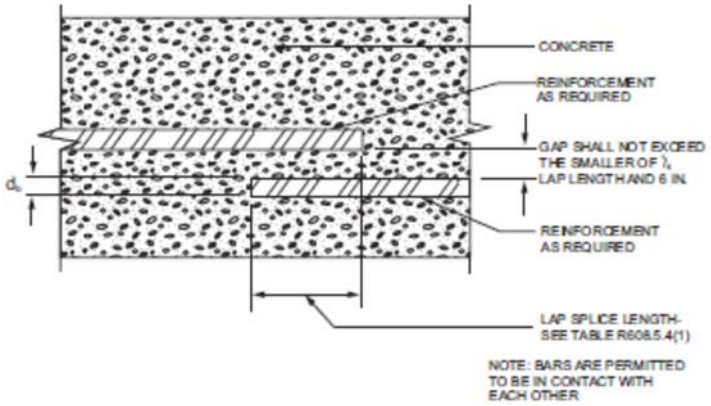
608.5.4 Reinforcement installation details.

608.5.4.1 Support and cover. Reinforcement shall be secured in the proper location in the forms with tie wire or other bar support system such that displacement will not occur during the concrete placement operation. Steel reinforcement in concrete cast against the earth shall have a minimum cover of 3 inches (76 mm). Minimum cover for reinforcement in concrete cast in removable forms that will be exposed to the earth or weather shall be $1^1/_2$ -inches (38 mm) for No. 5 bars and smaller, and 2 inches (50 mm) for No. 6 bars and larger. For concrete cast in removable forms that will not be exposed to the earth or weather, and for concrete cast in stay-in-place forms, minimum cover shall be $^3/_4$ -inch (19 mm). The minus tolerance for cover shall not exceed the smaller of one-third the required cover and $^3/_8$ -inch (10 mm). See Section 608.5.4.4 for cover requirements for hooks of bars developed in tension.

TABLE 608.5.4(1)
LAP SPLICE AND TENSION DEVELOPMENT LENGTHS

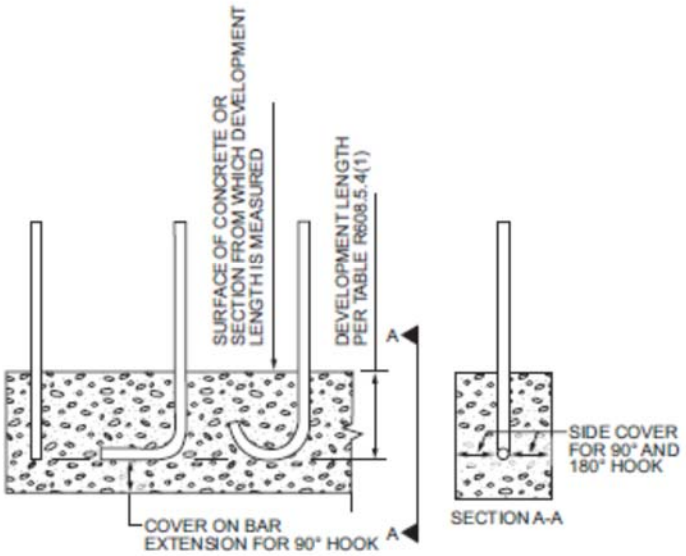
	BAR SIZE NO.	YIELD STRENGTH OF STEEL, f_y psi (MPa)	
		40,000 (280)	60,000 (420)
		Splice length or tension development length (inches)	
Lap splice length-tension	4	20	30
	5	25	38
	6	30	45
Tension development length for straight bar	4	15	23
	5	19	28
	6	23	34
Tension development length for: a. 90-degree and 180-degree standard hooks with not less than $2^1/_2$ -inches of side cover perpendicular to plane of hook, and	4	6	9
	5	7	11
b. 90-degree standard hooks with not less than 2 inches of cover on the bar extension beyond the hook.	6	8	13
Tension development length for bar with 90-degree or 180-degree standard hook having less cover than required in Items a and b.	4	8	12
	5	10	15
	6	12	18

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.



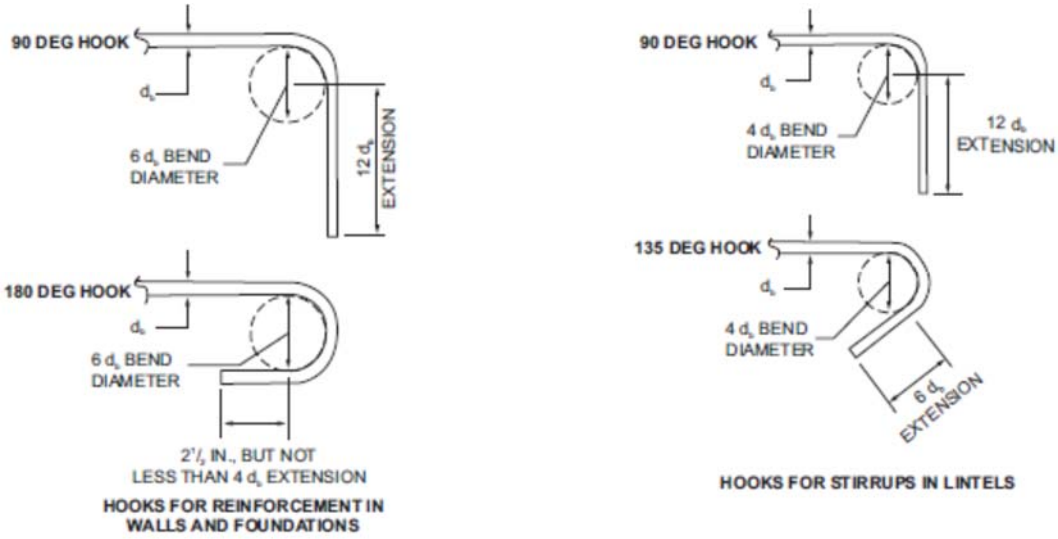
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 608.5.4(1)
LAP SPLICES



For SI: 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

FIGURE 608.5.4(2)
DEVELOPMENT LENGTH AND COVER FOR HOOKS AND BAR EXTENSION



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

FIGURE 608.5.4(3)
STANDARD HOOKS

TABLE 608.5.4(2)
MAXIMUM SPACING FOR ALTERNATIVE BAR SIZE AND ALTERNATIVE GRADE OF STEEL [a, b, c]

BAR SPACING FROM APPLICABLE TABLE IN SECTION 608.6 (inches)	BAR SIZE FROM APPLICABLE TABLE IN SECTION 608.6															
	#4					#5					#6					
	Alternate bar size and alternate grade of steel desired															
	Grade 60		Grade 40			Grade 60		Grade 40			Grade 60		Grade 40			
	#5	#6	#4	#5	#6	#4	#6	#4	#5	#6	#4	#5	#4	#5	#6	
	Maximum spacing for alternate bar size and alternate grade of steel (inches)															
8	12	18	5	8	12	5	11	3	5	8	4	6	2	4	5	
9	14	20	6	9	13	6	13	4	6	9	4	6	3	4	6	
10	16	22	7	10	15	6	14	4	7	9	5	7	3	5	7	
11	17	24	7	11	16	7	16	5	7	10	5	8	3	5	7	
12	19	26	8	12	18	8	17	5	8	11	5	8	4	6	8	
13	20	29	9	13	19	8	18	6	9	12	6	9	4	6	9	
14	22	31	9	14	21	9	20	6	9	13	6	10	4	7	9	
15	23	33	10	16	22	10	21	6	10	14	7	11	5	7	10	
16	25	35	11	17	23	10	23	7	11	15	7	11	5	8	11	
17	26	37	11	18	25	11	24	7	11	16	8	12	5	8	11	
18	28	40	12	19	26	12	26	8	12	17	8	13	5	8	12	
19	29	42	13	20	28	12	27	8	13	18	9	13	6	9	13	
20	31	44	13	21	29	13	28	9	13	19	9	14	6	9	13	

BAR SPACING FROM APPLICABLE TABLE IN SECTION 608.6 (inches)	BAR SIZE FROM APPLICABLE TABLE IN SECTION 608.6														
	#4					#5					#6				
	Alternate bar size and alternate grade of steel desired														
	Grade 60		Grade 40			Grade 60		Grade 40			Grade 60		Grade 40		
	#5	#6	#4	#5	#6	#4	#6	#4	#5	#6	#4	#5	#4	#5	#6
	Maximum spacing for alternate bar size and alternate grade of steel (inches)														
21	33	46	14	22	31	14	30	9	14	20	10	15	6	10	14
22	34	48	15	23	32	14	31	9	15	21	10	16	7	10	15
23	36	48	15	24	34	15	33	10	15	22	10	16	7	11	15
24	37	48	16	25	35	15	34	10	16	23	11	17	7	11	16
25	39	48	17	26	37	16	35	11	17	24	11	18	8	12	17
26	40	48	17	27	38	17	37	11	17	25	12	18	8	12	17
27	42	48	18	28	40	17	38	12	18	26	12	19	8	13	18
28	43	48	19	29	41	18	40	12	19	26	13	20	8	13	19
29	45	48	19	30	43	19	41	12	19	27	13	20	9	14	19
30	47	48	20	31	44	19	43	13	20	28	14	21	9	14	20
31	48	48	21	32	45	20	44	13	21	29	14	22	9	15	21
32	48	48	21	33	47	21	45	14	21	30	15	23	10	15	21
33	48	48	22	34	48	21	47	14	22	31	15	23	10	16	22
34	48	48	23	35	48	22	48	15	23	32	15	24	10	16	23
35	48	48	23	36	48	23	48	15	23	33	16	25	11	16	23
36	48	48	24	37	48	23	48	15	24	34	16	25	11	17	24
37	48	48	25	38	48	24	48	16	25	35	17	26	11	17	25
38	48	48	25	39	48	25	48	16	25	36	17	27	12	18	25
39	48	48	26	40	48	25	48	17	26	37	18	27	12	18	26
40	48	48	27	41	48	26	48	17	27	38	18	28	12	19	27
41	48	48	27	42	48	26	48	18	27	39	19	29	12	19	27
42	48	48	28	43	48	27	48	18	28	40	19	30	13	20	28
43	48	48	29	44	48	28	48	18	29	41	20	30	13	20	29
44	48	48	29	45	48	28	48	19	29	42	20	31	13	21	29
45	48	48	30	47	48	29	48	19	30	43	20	32	14	21	30
46	48	48	31	48	48	30	48	20	31	44	21	32	14	22	31
47	48	48	31	48	48	30	48	20	31	44	21	33	14	22	31
48	48	48	32	48	48	31	48	21	32	45	22	34	15	23	32

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. This table is for use with tables in Section 608.6 that specify the minimum bar size and maximum spacing of vertical wall reinforcement for foundation walls and above-grade walls. Reinforcement specified in tables in Section 608.6 is based on Grade 60 (420 MPa) steel reinforcement.

b. Bar spacing shall not exceed 48 inches on center and shall be not less than one-half the nominal wall thickness.

c. For Grade 50 (350 MPa) steel bars (ASTM A996, Type R), use spacing for Grade 40 (280 MPa) bars or interpolate between Grade 40 (280 MPa) and Grade 60 (420 MPa).

608.5.4.2 Location of reinforcement in walls. For location of reinforcement in foundation walls and above-grade walls, see Sections 404.1.3.3.7.2 and 608.6.5, respectively.

608.5.4.3 Lap splices. Vertical and horizontal wall reinforcement required by Sections 608.6 and 608.7 shall be the longest lengths practical. Where splices are necessary in reinforcement, the length of lap splices shall be in accordance with Table 608.5.4(1) and Figure 608.5.4(1). The maximum gap between noncontact parallel bars at a lap splice shall not exceed the smaller of one-fifth the required lap length and 6 inches (152 mm). See Figure 608.5.4(1).

608.5.4.4 Development of bars in tension. Where bars are required to be developed in tension by other provisions of this code, development lengths and cover for hooks and bar extensions shall comply with Table 608.5.4(1) and Figure 608.5.4(2). The development lengths shown in Table 608.5.4(1) shall apply to bundled bars in lintels installed in accordance with Section 608.8.2.2.

608.5.4.5 Standard hooks. Where reinforcement is required by this code to terminate with a standard hook, the hook shall comply with Figure 608.5.4(3).

608.5.4.6 Webs of waffle-grid walls. Reinforcement, including stirrups, shall not be placed in webs of waffle-grid walls, including lintels. Webs are permitted to have form ties.

608.5.4.7 Alternate grade of reinforcement and spacing. Where tables in Sections 404.1.3 and 608.6 specify vertical wall reinforcement based on minimum bar size and maximum spacing, which are based on Grade 60 (420 MPa) steel reinforcement, different size bars or bars made from a different grade of steel are permitted provided an equivalent area of steel per linear foot of wall is provided. Use of Table 608.5.4(2) is permitted to determine the maximum bar spacing for different bar sizes than specified in the tables and bars made from a different grade of steel. Bars shall not be spaced less than one-half the wall thickness, or more than 48 inches (1219 mm) on center.

608.5.5 Construction joints in walls. Construction joints shall be made and located to not impair the strength of the wall. Construction joints in plain concrete walls, including walls required to have not less than No. 4 bars at 48 inches (1219 mm) on center by Section 608.6, shall be located at points of lateral support, and not less than one No. 4 bar shall extend across the construction joint at a spacing not to exceed 24 inches (610 mm) on center. Construction joint reinforcement shall have not less than 12 inches (305 mm)

of embedment on both sides of the joint. Construction joints in reinforced concrete walls shall be located in the middle third of the span between lateral supports, or located and constructed as required for joints in plain concrete walls.

Exception: Vertical wall reinforcement required by this code is permitted to be used in lieu of construction joint reinforcement, provided the spacing does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm), or the combination of wall reinforcement and No. 4 bars described in Section 608.5.5 does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm).

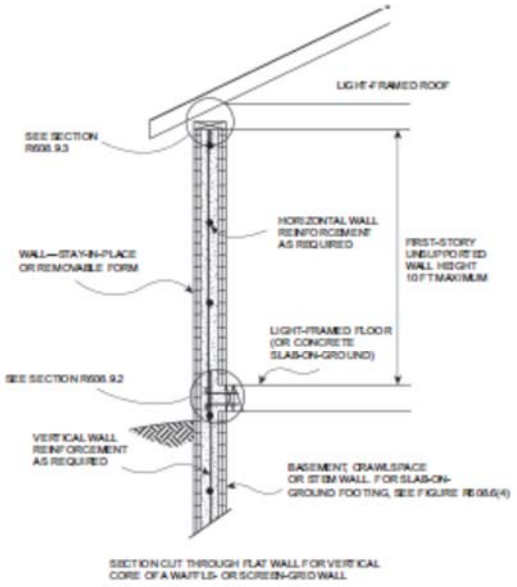
608.6 Above-grade wall requirements.

608.6.1 General. The minimum thickness of load-bearing and nonload-bearing above-grade walls and reinforcement shall be as set forth in the appropriate table in this section based on the type of wall form to be used. The wall shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318 where the wall or building is not within the limitations of Section 608.2, where design is required by the tables in this section or where the wall is not within the scope of the tables in this section.

Above-grade concrete walls shall be constructed in accordance with this section and Figure 608.6(1), 608.6(2), 608.6(3) or 608.6(4). Above-grade concrete walls that are continuous with stem walls and not laterally supported by the slab-on-ground shall be designed and constructed in accordance with this section. Concrete walls shall be supported on continuous foundation walls or slabs-on-ground that are monolithic with the footing in accordance with Section 403. The minimum length of solid wall without openings shall be in accordance with Section 608.7. Reinforcement around openings, including lintels, shall be in accordance with Section 608.8. Lateral support for above-grade walls in the out-of-plane direction shall be provided by connections to the floor framing system, if applicable, and to ceiling and roof framing systems in accordance with Section 608.9. The wall thickness shall be equal to or greater than the thickness of the wall in the story above.

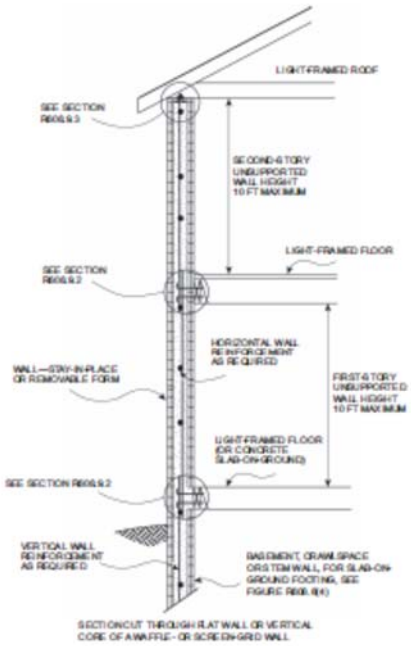
608.6.2 Wall reinforcement for wind. Vertical wall reinforcement for resistance to out-of-plane wind forces shall be determined from Table 608.6(1), 608.6(2), 608.6(3) or 608.6(4). For the design of nonload-bearing walls, in Tables 608.6(1), 608.6(2) and 608.6(3) use the appropriate column labeled "Top." (see Sections 608.7.2.2.2 and 608.7.2.2.3). There shall be a vertical bar at corners of exterior walls. Unless more horizontal reinforcement is required by Section 608.7.2.2.1, the minimum horizontal reinforcement shall be four No. 4 bars [Grade 40 (280 MPa)] placed as follows: top bar within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top of the wall, bottom bar within 12 inches (305 mm) of the finish

floor and one bar each at approximately one-third and two-thirds of the wall height.



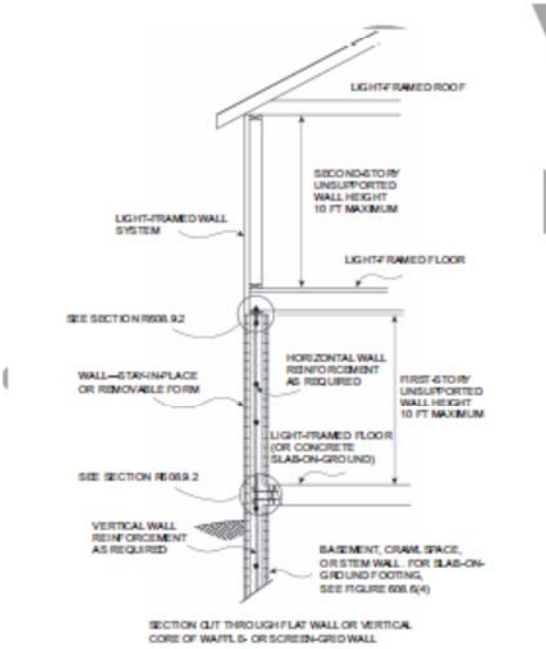
For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE R608.6(1)
ABOVE-GRADE CONCRETE WALL CONSTRUCTION ONE STORY



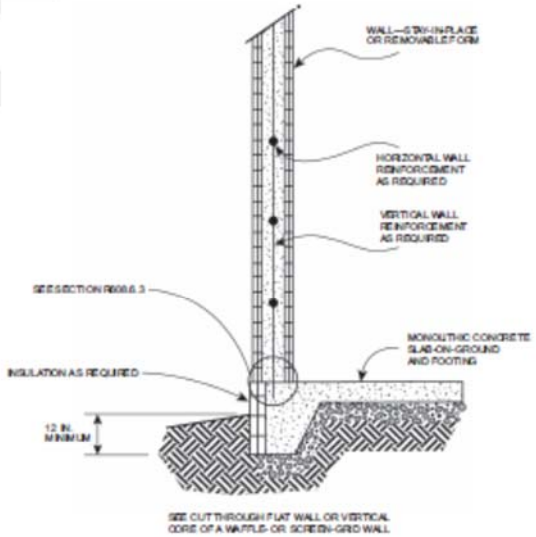
For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE R608.6(3)
ABOVE-GRADE CONCRETE WALL CONSTRUCTION TWO-STORY



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE R608.6(2)
ABOVE-GRADE CONCRETE WALL CONSTRUCTION CONCRETE FIRST STORY AND LIGHT-FRAMED SECOND STORY



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE R608.6(4)
ABOVE-GRADE CONCRETE WALL SUPPORTED ON MONOLITHIC SLAB-ON-GROUND FOOTING

TABLE 608.6(1)
MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR FLAT ABOVE-GRADE WALLS [a, b, c, d, e]

MAXIMUM WIND SPEED (mph)			MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT PER STORY (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT- BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches) [f, g]							
				Nominal [h] wall thickness (inches)							
Exposure Category				4		6		8		10	
B	C	D		Top [i]	Side [i]	Top [i]	Side [i]	Top [i]	Side [i]	Top [i]	Side [i]
115			8	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			9	4@48	4@39	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			10	4@41	4@34	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
120			8	4@48	4@43	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			9	4@48	4@36	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			10	4@37	4@34	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
130	110		8	4@48	4@38	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			9	4@39	4@34	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			10	4@34	4@34	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
140	119	110	8	4@43	4@34	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			9	4@34	4@34	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			10	4@34	4@31	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
150	127	117	8	4@37	4@34	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			9	4@34	4@33	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			10	4@31	4@27	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
160	136	125	8	4@34	4@34	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			9	4@34	4@29	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			10	4@27	4@24	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square inch = 1.895 kPa, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

a. Table is based on ASCE 7 components and cladding wind pressures for an enclosed building using a mean roof height of 35 feet, interior wall area 4, an effective wind area of 10 square feet, topographic factor, *Kzt*, equal to 1.0, and Risk Category II.

b. Table is based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi.

c. See Section 608.6.5 for location of reinforcement in wall.

d. Deflection criterion is *L*/240, where *L* is the unsupported height of the wall in inches.

e. Interpolation is not permitted.

f. Where No. 4 reinforcing bars at a spacing of 48 inches are specified in the table as indicated by shaded cells, use of bars with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi or 60,000 psi is permitted.

g. Other than for No. 4 bars spaced at 48 inches on center, table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section 608.5.4.7 and Table 608.5.4(2).

h. See Table 608.3 for tolerances on nominal thicknesses.

i. "Top" means gravity load from roof or floor construction bears on top of wall. "Side" means gravity load from floor construction is transferred to wall from a wood ledger or cold-formed steel track bolted to side of wall. For nonload-bearing walls where floor framing members span parallel to the wall, use of the "Top" bearing condition is permitted.

TABLE 608.6(2)
MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR WAFFLE-GRID ABOVE-GRADE WALLS [a, b, c, d, e]

MAXIMUM WIND SPEED (mph)			MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT PER STORY (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT- BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches) [f, g]			
				Nominal [h] wall thickness (inches)			
Exposure Category				6		8	
B	C	D		Top [i]	Side [i]	Top [i]	Side [i]
115			8	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@48
			9	4@48	5@43	4@48	4@48
			10	5@47	5@37	4@48	4@48
120			8	4@48	5@48	4@48	4@48
			9	4@48	5@40	4@48	4@48
			10	5@43	5@37	4@48	4@48
130	110		8	4@48	5@42	4@48	4@48
			9	5@45	5@37	4@48	4@48
			10	5@37	5@37	4@48	4@48
140	119	110	8	4@48	5@38	4@48	4@48
			9	5@39	5@37	4@48	4@48
			10	5@37	5@35	4@48	4@48
150	127	117	8	5@43	5@37	4@48	4@48
			9	5@37	5@37	4@48	4@48
			10	5@36	6@44	4@48	4@48
160	136	125	8	5@38	5@37	4@48	4@48
			9	5@37	6@47	4@48	4@48
			10	6@45	6@39	4@48	6@46

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

a. Table is based on ASCE 7 components and cladding wind pressures for an enclosed building using a mean roof height of 35 feet, interior wall area 4, an effective wind area of 10 square feet, topographic factor, K_{zt}, equal to 1.0, and Risk Category II.

b. Table is based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi.

c. See Section 608.6.5 for location of reinforcement in wall.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the unsupported height of the wall in inches.

e. Interpolation is not permitted.

f. Where No. 4 reinforcing bars at a spacing of 48 inches are specified in the table as indicated by shaded cells, use of bars with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi or 60,000 psi is permitted.

g. Other than for No. 4 bars spaced at 48 inches on center, table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi. Maximum spacings shown are the values calculated for the specified bar size. Where the bar used is Grade 60 and the size specified in the table, the actual spacing in the wall shall not exceed a whole-number multiple of 12 inches such as, 12, 24, 36 and 48, that is less than or equal to the tabulated spacing. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section 608.5.4.7 and Table 608.5.4(2).

h. See Table 608.3 for minimum core dimensions and maximum spacing of horizontal and vertical cores.

i. "Top" means gravity load from roof or floor construction bears on top of wall. "Side" means gravity load from floor construction is transferred to wall from a wood ledger or cold-formed steel track bolted to side of wall. For nonload-bearing walls and where floor framing members span parallel to the wall, the "top" bearing condition is permitted to be used.

TABLE 608.6(3)
MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 6-INCH SCREEN-GRID ABOVE-GRADE WALLS [a, b, c, d, e]

MAXIMUM WIND SPEED (mph)			MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT PER STORY (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT- BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches) [f, g]	
				Nominal [h] wall thickness (inches)	
Exposure Category				6	
B	C	D		Top [i]	Side [i]
115			8	4@48	4@48
			9	4@48	5@41
			10	4@48	6@48
120			8	4@48	4@48
			9	4@48	5@38
			10	5@42	6@48
130	110		8	4@48	5@41
			9	5@44	6@48
			10	5@35	6@48
140	119	110	8	4@48	5@36
			9	5@38	6@48
			10	6@48	6@48
150	127	117	8	5@42	6@48
			9	6@48	6@48
			10	6@48	6@42
160	136	125	8	5@37	6@48
			9	6@48	6@45
			10	6@44	6@38

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

a. Table is based on ASCE 7 components and cladding wind pressures for an enclosed building using a mean roof height of 35 feet, interior wall area 4, an effective wind area of 10 square feet, topographic factor, K_{Zt}, equal to 1.0, and Risk Category II.

b. Table is based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi.

c. See Section 608.6.5 for location of reinforcement in wall.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the unsupported height of the wall in inches.

e. Interpolation is not permitted.

f. Where No. 4 reinforcing bars at a spacing of 48 inches are specified in the table as indicated by shaded cells, use of bars with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi or 60,000 psi is permitted.

g. Other than for No. 4 bars spaced at 48 inches on center, table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi. Maximum spacings shown are the values calculated for the specified bar size. Where the bar used is Grade 60 and the size specified in the table, the actual spacing in the wall shall not exceed a whole-number multiple of 12 inches such as, 12, 24, 36 and 48, that is less than or equal to the tabulated spacing. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section 608.5.4.7 and Table 608.5.4(2).

h. See Table 608.3 for minimum core dimensions and maximum spacing of horizontal and vertical cores.

i. "Top" means gravity load from roof or floor construction bears on top of wall. "Side" means gravity load from floor construction is transferred to wall from a wood ledger or cold-formed steel track bolted to side of wall. For nonload-bearing wall and where floor framing members span parallel to the wall, use of the "Top" bearing condition is permitted.

TABLE 608.6(4)
MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR FLAT, WAFFLE- AND SCREEN-GRID ABOVE-GRADE WALLS DESIGNED CONTINUOUS WITH FOUNDATION STEM WALLS [a, b, c, d, e, k]

MAXIMUM WIND SPEED (mph)			HEIGHT OF STEM WALL [h, i] (feet)	MAXIMUM DESIGN LATERAL SOIL LOAD (psf/ft)	MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED HEIGHT OF ABOVE-GRADE WALL (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches) [f, g]						
						Wall type and nominal thickness [j] (inches)						
Exposure Category						Flat				Waffle		Screen
B	C	D				4	6	8	10	6	8	6
115			3	30	8	4@30	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@22	4@26	4@21
					10	4@23	5@43	4@48	4@48	4@17	4@20	4@16
				60	10	4@19	5@37	4@48	4@48	4@14	4@17	4@14
			6	30	10	DR	5@21	6@35	4@48	DR	4@10	DR
				60	10	DR	5@12	6@25	6@28	DR	DR	DR
120			3	30	8	4@28	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@21	4@48	4@20
					10	4@22	5@41	4@48	4@48	4@16	4@19	4@15
				60	10	4@18	5@35	4@48	4@48	4@14	4@17	4@13
			6	30	10	DR	5@21	6@35	4@48	DR	4@10	DR
				60	10	DR	5@12	6@25	6@28	DR	DR	DR
130	110		3	30	8	4@25	4@48	4@48	4@48	4@18	4@22	4@18
					10	4@19	5@36	4@48	4@48	4@14	4@17	4@13
			6	60	10	4@16	5@34	4@48	4@48	4@12	4@17	4@12
				30	10	DR	5@19	6@35	4@48	DR	4@9	DR
				60	10	DR	5@12	6@24	6@28	DR	DR	DR
140	119	110	3	30	8	4@22	5@42	4@48	4@48	4@16	4@20	4@16
					10	4@17	5@34	4@48	4@48	4@21	4@17	4@12
				60	10	4@15	5@34	4@48	4@48	4@11	4@17	4@10
			6	30	10	DR	5@18	6@35	6@35	DR	4@48	DR
				60	10	DR	5@11	6@23	6@28	DR	DR	DR
150	127	117	3	30	8	4@20	5@37	4@48	4@48	4@15	4@18	4@14
					10	4@15	5@34	4@48	4@48	4@11	4@17	4@11
				60	10	4@13	5@34	4@48	4@48	4@10	4@16	4@9
			6	30	10	DR	5@17	6@33	6@32	DR	4@8	DR
				60	10	DR	DR	6@22	6@28	DR	DR	DR
160	136	125	3	30	8	4@18	5@34	4@48	4@48	4@13	4@17	4@13
					10	4@13	5@34	4@48	4@48	4@10	4@16	4@9
				60	10	4@11	5@31	6@45	4@48	4@9	4@14	4@8
			6	30	10	DR	5@15	6@31	6@30	DR	4@7	DR
				60	10	DR	DR	6@21	6@27	DR	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2. DR = Design Required.

a. Table is based on ASCE 7 components and cladding wind pressures for an enclosed building using a mean roof height of 35 feet, interior wall area 4, an effective wind area of 10 square feet, topographic factor, *Kzt*, equal to 1.0, and Risk Category II.

b. Table is based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi.

c. See Section 608.6.5 for location of reinforcement in wall.

d. Deflection criterion is *L*/240, where *L* is the height of the wall in inches from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the above-

grade wall.

e. Interpolation is not permitted. For intermediate values of basic wind speed, heights of stem wall and above-grade wall, and design lateral soil load, use next higher value.

f. Where No. 4 reinforcing bars at a spacing of 48 inches are specified in the table as indicated by shaded cells, use of bars with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi or 60,000 psi is permitted.

g. Other than for No. 4 bars spaced at 48 inches on center, table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi. Maximum spacings shown are the values calculated for the specified bar size. In waffle and screen-grid walls where the bar used is Grade 60 and the size specified in the table, the actual spacing in the wall shall not exceed a whole-number multiple of 12 inches such as, 12, 24, 36 and 48, that is less than or equal to the tabulated spacing. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section 608.5.4.7 and Table 608.5.4(2).

h. Height of stem wall is the distance from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the slab-on-ground.

i. Where the distance from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the slab-on-ground is equal to or greater than 4 feet, the stem wall shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling. Where the wall is designed and constructed to be continuous with the above-grade wall, temporary supports bracing the top of the stem wall shall remain in place until the above-grade wall is laterally supported at the top by floor or roof construction.

j. See Table 608.3 for tolerances on nominal thicknesses, and minimum core dimensions and maximum spacing of horizontal and vertical cores for waffle- and screen-grid walls.

k. Tabulated values are applicable to construction where gravity loads bear on top of wall, and conditions where gravity loads from floor construction are transferred to wall from a wood ledger or cold-formed steel track bolted to side of wall. See Tables 608.6(1), 608.6(2) and 608.6(3).

608.6.3 Continuity of wall reinforcement between stories. Vertical reinforcement required by this section shall be continuous between elements providing lateral support for the wall. Reinforcement in the wall of the story above shall be continuous with the reinforcement in the wall of the story below, or the foundation wall, if applicable. Lap splices, where required, shall comply with Section 608.5.4.3 and Figure 608.5.4(1). Where the above-grade wall is supported by a monolithic slab-on-ground and footing, dowel bars with a size and spacing to match the vertical above-grade concrete wall reinforcement shall be embedded in the monolithic slab-on-ground and footing the distance required to develop the dowel bar in tension in accordance with Section 608.5.4.4 and Figure 608.5.4(2) and lap-spliced with the above-grade wall reinforcement in accordance with Section 608.5.4.3 and Figure 608.5.4(1).

Where a construction joint in the wall is located below the level of the floor and less than the distance required to develop the bar in tension, the distance required to develop the bar in tension shall be measured from the top of the concrete below the joint. See Section 608.5.5.

Exception: Where reinforcement in the wall above cannot be made continuous with the reinforcement in the wall below, the bottom of the reinforcement in the wall above shall be terminated in accordance with one of the following:

1. Extend below the top of the floor the distance required to develop the bar in tension in accordance with Section 608.5.4.4 and Figure 608.5.4(2).
2. Lap-spliced in accordance with Section 608.5.4.3 and Figure

608.5.4(1) with a dowel bar that extends into the wall below the distance required to develop the bar in tension in accordance with Section 608.5.4.4 and Figure 608.5.4(2).

608.6.4 Termination of reinforcement. Where indicated in Items 1 through 3, vertical wall reinforcement in the top-most story with concrete walls shall be terminated with a 90-degree (1.57 rad) standard hook complying with Section 608.5.4.5 and Figure 608.5.4(3).

1. Vertical bars adjacent to door and window openings required by Section 608.8.1.2.
2. Vertical bars at the ends of required solid wall segments (see Section 608.7.2.2.2).
3. Vertical bars (other than end bars, see Item 2) used as shear reinforcement in required solid wall segments where the reduction factor for design strength, R_3, used is based on the wall having horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement (see Section 608.7.2.2.3).

The bar extension of the hook shall be oriented parallel to the horizontal wall reinforcement and be within 4 inches (102 mm) of the top of the wall.

Horizontal reinforcement shall be continuous around the building corners by bending one of the bars and lap-splicing it with the bar in the other wall in accordance with Section 608.5.4.3 and Figure 608.5.4(1).

In required solid wall segments where the reduction factor for design strength, R_3, is based on the wall having horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement in accordance with Section 608.7.2.2.1, horizontal wall reinforcement shall be terminated with a standard hook complying with Section 608.5.4.5 and Figure 608.5.4(3) or in a lap-splice, except at corners where the reinforcement shall be continuous as required.

Exception: In lieu of bending horizontal reinforcement at corners, separate bent reinforcing bars shall be permitted provided that the bent bar is lap-spliced with the horizontal reinforcement in both walls in accordance with Section 608.5.4.3 and Figure 608.5.4(1).

608.6.5 Location of reinforcement in wall. Except for vertical reinforcement at the ends of required solid wall segments, which shall be located as required by Section 608.7.2.2.2, the location of the vertical reinforcement shall not vary from the center of the wall by more than the greater of 10 percent of the wall thickness and $^3/_8$ -inch (10 mm). Horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be located to provide not less than the minimum cover required by Section 608.5.4.1.

608.7 Solid walls for resistance to lateral forces.

608.7.1 Length of solid wall. Each exterior wall line in each story shall have a total length of solid wall required by Section 608.7.1.1. A solid wall is a section of flat, waffle-grid or screen-grid wall, extending the full story height without openings or penetrations, except those permitted by Section 608.7.2. Solid wall segments that contribute to the total length of solid wall shall comply with Section 608.7.2.

608.7.1.1 Length of solid wall for wind. Buildings shall have solid walls in each exterior endwall line (the side of a building that is parallel to the span of the roof or floor framing) and sidewall line (the side of a building that is perpendicular to the span of the roof or floor framing) to resist lateral in-plane wind forces. The site-appropriate basic wind speed and exposure category shall be used in Tables 608.7(1A) through (1C) to determine the unreduced total length, *UR*, of solid wall required in each exterior endwall line and sidewall line. For buildings with a mean roof height of less than 35 feet (10 668 mm), the unreduced values determined from Tables 608.7(1A) though (1C) are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the applicable factor, R_1, from Table 608.7(2); however, reduced values shall be not less than the minimum values in Tables 608.7(1A) through (1C). Where the floor-to-ceiling height of a story is less than 10 feet (3048 mm), the unreduced values determined from Tables 608.7(1A) through (1C), including minimum values, are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the applicable factor, R_2, from Table 608.7(3). To account for different design strengths than assumed in determining the values in Tables 608.7(1A) through (1C), the unreduced lengths determined from Tables 608.7(1A) through (1C), including minimum values, are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the applicable factor, R_3, from Table 608.7(4). The reductions permitted by Tables 608.7(2), 608.7(3) and 608.7(4) are cumulative.

The total length of solid wall segments, *TL*, in a wall line that comply with the minimum length requirements of Section 608.7.2.1 [see Figure 608.7(1)] shall be equal to or greater than the product of the unreduced length of solid wall from Tables 608.7(1A) through (1C), *UR* and the applicable reduction factors, if any, from Tables 608.7(2), 608.7(3) and 608.7(4) as indicated by Equation 6-1.

$$TL = R_1 \times R_2 \times R_3 \times UR \qquad \textbf{(Equation 6-1)}$$

where:

TL = Total length of solid wall segments in a wall line that comply with

Section 608.7.2.1 [see Figure 608.7(1)].

R_1 = 1.0 or reduction factor for mean roof height from Table 608.7(2).

R_2 = 1.0 or reduction factor for floor-to-ceiling wall height from Table 608.7(3).

R_3 = 1.0 or reduction factor for design strength from Table 608.7(4).

UR = Unreduced length of solid wall from Tables 608.7(1A) through (1C).

The total length of solid wall in a wall line, TL, shall be not less than that provided by two solid wall segments complying with the minimum length requirements of Section 608.7.2.1.

To facilitate determining the required wall thickness, wall type, number and grade of vertical bars at each end of each solid wall segment, and whether shear reinforcement is required, use of Equation 6-2 is permitted.

$$R \leq \frac{TL}{R_1 \times R_2 \times UR}$$

(Equation 6-2)

After determining the maximum permitted value of the reduction factor for design strength, R_3, in accordance with Equation 6-2, select a wall type from Table 608.7(4) with R_3 less than or equal to the value calculated.

608.7.2 Solid wall segments. Solid wall segments that contribute to the required length of solid wall shall comply with this section. Reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section 608.7.2.2 and Table 608.7(4). Solid wall segments shall extend the full story-height without openings, other than openings for the utilities and other building services passing through the wall. In flat walls and waffle-grid walls, such openings shall have an area of less than 30 square inches (19 355 mm^2) without any dimension exceeding $6^1/_4$ - inches (159 mm), and shall not be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the side edges of the solid wall segment. In screen-grid walls, such openings shall be located in the portion of the solid wall segment between horizontal and vertical cores of concrete and opening size and location are not restricted provided there is not any concrete removed.

608.7.2.1 Minimum length of solid wall segment and maximum spacing. Only solid wall segments equal to or greater than 24 inches (610 mm) in length shall be included in the total length of solid wall required by Section 608.7.1. In addition, not more than two solid wall segments equal to or greater than 24 inches (610 mm) in length and less than 48 inches (1219

mm) in length shall be included in the required total length of solid wall. The maximum clear opening width shall be 18 feet (5486 mm). See Figure 608.7(1).

608.7.2.2 Reinforcement in solid wall segments.

608.7.2.2.1 Horizontal shear reinforcement. Where reduction factors for design strength, R_3, from Table 608.7(4) based on horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement being provided are used, solid wall segments shall have horizontal reinforcement consisting of minimum No. 4 bars. Horizontal shear reinforcement shall be the same grade of steel required for the vertical reinforcement at the ends of solid wall segments by Section 608.7.2.2.2.

The spacing of horizontal reinforcement shall not exceed the smaller of one-half the length of the solid wall segment, minus 2 inches (51 mm), and 18 inches (457 mm). Horizontal shear reinforcement shall terminate in accordance with Section 608.6.4.

608.7.2.2.2 Vertical reinforcement. Vertical reinforcement applicable to the reduction factor(s) for design strength, R_3, from Table 608.7(4) that is used, shall be located at each end of each solid wall segment in accordance with the applicable detail in Figure 608.7(2). The No. 4 vertical bar required on each side of an opening by Section 608.8.1.2 is permitted to be used as reinforcement at the ends of solid wall segments where installed in accordance with the applicable detail in Figure 608.7(2). There shall be not less than two No. 4 bars at each end of solid wall segments located as required by the applicable detail in Figure 608.7(2). One of the bars at each end of solid wall segments shall be deemed to meet the requirements for vertical wall reinforcement required by Section 608.6.

The vertical wall reinforcement at each end of each solid wall segment shall be developed below the bottom of the adjacent wall opening [see Figure 608.7(3)] by one of the following methods:

1. Where the wall height below the bottom of the adjacent opening is equal to or greater than 22 inches (559 mm) for No. 4 or 28 inches (711 mm) for No. 5 vertical wall reinforcement, reinforcement around openings in accordance with Section 608.8.1 shall be sufficient.
2. Where the wall height below the bottom of the adjacent opening is less than required by Item 1, the vertical wall reinforcement adjacent to the opening shall extend into the footing far enough

to develop the bar in tension in accordance with Section 608.5.4.4 and Figure 608.5.4(2), or shall be lap-spliced with a dowel that is embedded in the footing far enough to develop the dowel-bar in tension.

TABLE 608.7(1A)
UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN EACH EXTERIOR ENDWALL FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE ONE STORY OR TOP STORY OF TWO STORY [a, c, d, e, f, g]

SIDEWALL LENGTH (feet)	ENDWALL LENGTH (feet)	ROOF SLOPE	UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN ENDWALLS FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE (feet)						
			Basic Wind Speed (mph) Exposure						
			115B — —	120B — —	130B 110C —	140B 119C 110D	150B 127C 117D	160B 136C 125D	Minimum [b]
15	15	< 1:12	1.03	1.12	1.32	1.53	1.76	2.00	0.92
		5:12	1.43	1.56	1.83	2.12	2.43	2.77	1.15
		7:12	2.00	2.18	2.56	2.97	3.41	3.88	1.25
		12:12	3.20	3.48	4.09	4.74	5.44	6.19	1.54
	30	< 1:12	1.03	1.12	1.32	1.53	1.76	2.00	0.98
		5:12	1.43	1.56	1.83	2.12	2.43	2.77	1.43
		7:12	2.78	3.03	3.56	4.13	4.74	5.39	1.64
		12:12	5.17	5.63	6.61	7.67	8.80	10.01	2.21
	45	< 1:12	1.03	1.12	1.32	1.53	1.76	2.00	1.04
		5:12	1.43	1.56	1.83	2.12	2.43	2.77	1.72
		7:12	3.57	3.88	4.56	5.28	6.07	6.90	2.03
		12:12	7.15	7.78	9.13	10.59	12.16	13.84	2.89
	60	< 1:12	1.03	1.12	1.32	1.53	1.76	2.00	1.09
		5:12	1.43	1.56	1.83	2.12	2.43	2.77	2.01
		7:12	4.35	4.73	5.55	6.44	7.39	8.41	2.42
		12:12	9.12	9.93	11.66	13.52	15.52	17.66	3.57
30	15	< 1:12	1.84	2.01	2.35	2.73	3.13	3.57	1.82
		5:12	2.56	2.78	3.27	3.79	4.35	4.95	2.23
		7:12	3.61	3.93	4.61	5.34	6.13	6.98	2.42
		12:12	5.61	6.10	7.16	8.31	9.54	10.85	2.93
	30	< 1:12	1.84	2.01	2.35	2.73	3.13	3.57	1.93
		5:12	2.56	2.78	3.27	3.79	4.35	4.95	2.75
		7:12	4.92	5.35	6.28	7.29	8.37	9.52	3.12
		12:12	8.92	9.71	11.39	13.22	15.17	17.26	4.14
	45	< 1:12	1.84	2.01	2.35	2.73	3.13	3.57	2.03
		5:12	2.56	2.78	3.27	3.79	4.35	4.95	3.26
		7:12	6.23	6.78	7.96	9.23	10.60	12.06	3.82
		12:12	12.23	13.31	15.63	18.12	20.80	23.67	5.36

SIDEWALL LENGTH (feet)	ENDWALL LENGTH (feet)	ROOF SLOPE	UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN ENDWALLS FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE (feet)						
			Basic Wind Speed (mph) Exposure						
			115B — —	120B — —	130B 110C —	140B 119C 110D	150B 127C 117D	160B 136C 125D	Minimum [b]
	60	< 1:12	1.84	2.01	2.35	2.73	3.13	3.57	2.14
		5:12	2.56	2.78	3.27	3.79	4.35	4.95	3.78
		7:12	7.54	8.21	9.64	11.17	12.83	14.60	4.52
		12:12	15.54	16.92	19.86	23.03	26.44	30.08	6.57
60	15	< 1:12	3.42	3.72	4.36	5.06	5.81	6.61	3.63
		5:12	4.75	5.17	6.06	7.03	8.07	9.19	4.40
		7:12	6.76	7.36	8.64	10.02	11.51	13.09	4.75
		12:12	10.35	11.27	13.23	15.34	17.61	20.04	5.71
	30	< 1:12	3.42	3.72	4.36	5.06	5.81	6.61	3.83
		5:12	4.75	5.17	6.06	7.03	8.07	9.19	5.37
		7:12	9.12	9.93	11.66	13.52	15.52	17.66	6.07
		12:12	16.30	17.75	20.83	24.16	27.73	31.55	8.00
	45	< 1:12	3.55	3.87	4.54	5.27	6.05	6.88	4.03
		5:12	4.94	5.37	6.31	7.31	8.40	9.55	6.34
		7:12	11.71	12.75	14.97	17.36	19.93	22.67	7.39
		12:12	22.70	24.71	29.00	33.64	38.62	43.94	10.29
	60	< 1:12	3.68	4.01	4.71	5.46	6.27	7.13	4.23
		5:12	5.11	5.57	6.54	7.58	8.70	9.90	7.31
		7:12	14.38	15.66	18.37	21.31	24.46	27.83	8.71
		12:12	29.30	31.90	37.44	43.42	49.85	56.72	12.57

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s,
1 pound-force per linear foot = 0.146 kN/m, 1 pound per square foot = 47.88 Pa.

a. Tabulated lengths were derived by calculating design wind pressures in accordance with Figure 28.4-1 of ASCE 7 for a building with a mean roof height of 35 feet, topographic factor, *Kzt*, equal to 1.0, and Risk Category II. For wind perpendicular to the ridge, the effects of a 2-foot overhang on each endwall are included. The design pressures were used to calculate forces to be resisted by solid wall segments in each. The forces to be resisted by each wall line were then divided by the default design strength of 840 pounds per linear foot of length to determine the unreduced length, *UR*, of solid wall length required in each endwall. The actual mean roof height of the building shall not exceed the least horizontal dimension of the building.

b. Tabulated lengths in the "minimum" column are based on the requirement of Section 28.4.4 of ASCE 7 that the main windforce-resisting system be designed for a minimum pressure of 16 psf multiplied by the wall area of the building and 8 psf multiplied by the roof area of the building projected onto a vertical plane normal to the assumed wind direction. Tabulated lengths in shaded cells are less than the "minimum" value. Where the minimum controls, it is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Notes c, d and e. See Section 608.7.1.1.

c. For buildings with a mean roof height of less than 35 feet, tabulated lengths are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the appropriate factor, R_1, from Table 608.7(2). The reduced length shall be not less than the "minimum" value shown in the table.

d. Tabulated lengths for "one story or top story of two story" are based on a floor-to-ceiling height of 10 feet. Tabulated lengths for "first story of two story" are based on floor-to-ceiling heights of 10 feet each for the first and second story. For floor-to-ceiling heights less than assumed, use the lengths in this table or Table 608.7 (1B) or (1C), or multiply the value in the table by the reduction factor, R_2, from Table 608.7(3).

e. Tabulated lengths are based on the default design shear strength of 840 pounds per linear foot of solid wall segment. The tabulated lengths are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the applicable reduction factor for design strength, R_3, from Table 608.7(4).

f. The reduction factors, R_1, R_2 and R_3, in Tables 608.7(2), 608.7(3), and 608.7(4), respectively, are permitted to be compounded, subject to the limitations of Note b. However, the minimum number and minimum length of solid wall segments in each wall line shall comply with Sections 608.7.1 and 608.7.2.1, respectively.

g. For intermediate values of sidewall length, endwall length, roof slope and basic wind speed, use the next higher value, or determine by interpolation.

TABLE 608.7(1B)
UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN EACH EXTERIOR ENDWALL FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE FIRST STORY OF TWO STORY [a, c, d, e, f, g]

SIDEWALL LENGTH (feet)	ENDWALL LENGTH (feet)	ROOF SLOPE	UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN ENDWALLS FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE (feet)						
			Basic Wind Speed (mph) Exposure						
			115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B	Minimum [b]
			—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C	
			—	—	—	110D	117D	125D	
15	15	< 1:12	2.98	3.25	3.81	4.42	5.07	5.77	2.54
		5:12	4.13	4.50	5.28	6.12	7.03	8.00	2.76
		7:12	4.31	4.70	5.51	6.39	7.34	8.35	2.87
		12:12	5.51	6.00	7.04	8.16	9.37	10.66	3.15
	30	< 1:12	2.98	3.25	3.81	4.42	5.07	5.77	2.59
		5:12	4.13	4.50	5.28	6.12	7.03	8.00	3.05
		7:12	5.09	5.55	6.51	7.55	8.67	9.86	3.26
		12:12	7.48	8.15	9.56	11.09	12.73	14.49	3.83
	45	< 1:12	2.98	3.25	3.81	4.42	5.07	5.77	2.65
		5:12	4.13	4.50	5.28	6.12	7.03	8.00	3.34
		7:12	5.88	6.40	7.51	8.71	10.00	11.37	3.65
		12:12	9.46	10.30	12.09	14.02	16.09	18.31	4.51
	60	< 1:12	2.98	3.25	3.81	4.42	5.07	5.77	2.71
		5:12	4.13	4.50	5.28	6.12	7.03	8.00	3.63
		7:12	6.66	7.25	8.51	9.87	11.32	12.89	4.04
		12:12	11.43	12.45	14.61	16.94	19.45	22.13	5.19
30	15	< 1:12	5.32	5.79	6.80	7.89	9.05	10.30	5.06
		5:12	7.39	8.04	9.44	10.95	12.57	14.30	5.47
		7:12	7.94	8.65	10.15	11.77	13.51	15.37	5.65
		12:12	9.94	10.82	12.70	14.73	16.91	19.24	6.17
	30	< 1:12	5.32	5.79	6.80	7.89	9.05	10.30	5.16
		5:12	7.39	8.04	9.44	10.95	12.57	14.30	5.98
		7:12	9.25	10.07	11.82	13.71	15.74	17.91	6.35
		12:12	13.25	14.43	16.93	19.64	22.54	25.65	7.38
	45	< 1:12	5.32	5.79	6.80	7.89	9.05	10.30	5.27
		5:12	7.39	8.04	9.44	10.95	12.57	14.30	6.50
		7:12	10.56	11.50	13.50	15.65	17.97	20.45	7.06
		12:12	16.56	18.03	21.16	24.55	28.18	32.06	8.60
	60	< 1:12	5.32	5.79	6.80	7.89	9.05	10.30	5.38
		5:12	7.39	8.04	9.44	10.95	12.57	14.30	7.01

SIDEWALL LENGTH (feet)	ENDWALL LENGTH (feet)	ROOF SLOPE	UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN ENDWALLS FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE (feet)						
			Basic Wind Speed (mph) Exposure						
			115B — —	120B — —	130B 110C —	140B 119C 110D	150B 127C 117D	160B 136C 125D	Minimum [b]
		7:12	11.87	12.93	15.17	17.60	20.20	22.98	7.76
		12:12	19.87	21.64	25.40	29.45	33.81	38.47	9.81
60	15	< 1:12	9.87	10.74	12.61	14.62	16.79	19.10	10.10
		5:12	13.71	14.93	17.52	20.32	23.33	26.54	10.87
		7:12	15.08	16.42	19.27	22.35	25.66	29.20	11.22
		12:12	18.67	20.33	23.86	27.67	31.77	36.14	12.19
	30	< 1:12	9.87	10.74	12.61	14.62	16.79	19.10	10.30
		5:12	13.71	14.93	17.52	20.32	23.33	26.54	11.85
		7:12	17.44	18.99	22.29	25.85	29.67	33.76	12.54
		12:12	24.62	26.81	31.46	36.49	41.89	47.66	14.48
	45	< 1:12	10.27	11.18	13.12	15.21	17.47	19.87	10.50
		5:12	14.26	15.52	18.22	21.13	24.26	27.60	12.82
		7:12	20.21	22.01	25.83	29.95	34.39	39.12	13.86
		12:12	31.20	33.97	39.87	46.23	53.07	60.39	16.76
	60	< 1:12	10.64	11.59	13.60	15.77	18.11	20.60	10.70
		5:12	14.77	16.09	18.88	21.90	25.14	28.60	13.79
		7:12	23.05	25.09	29.45	34.15	39.21	44.61	15.18
		12:12	37.97	41.34	48.52	56.27	64.60	73.49	19.05

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound force per linear foot = 0.146 kN/m, 1 pound per square foot = 47.88 Pa.

a. Tabulated lengths were derived by calculating design wind pressures in accordance with Figure 28.4-1 of ASCE 7 for a building with a mean roof height of 35 feet, topographic factor, *Kzt*, equal to 1.0, and Risk Category II. For wind perpendicular to the ridge, the effects of a 2-foot overhang on each endwall are included. The design pressures were used to calculate forces to be resisted by solid wall segments in each endwall. The forces to be resisted by each wall line were then divided by the default design strength of 840 pounds per linear foot of length to determine the unreduced length, *UR*, of solid wall length required in each endwall. The actual mean roof height of the building shall not exceed the least horizontal dimension of the building.

b. Tabulated lengths in the "minimum" column are based on the requirement of Section 28.4.4 of ASCE 7 that the main windforce-resisting system be designed for a minimum pressure of 1016 psf multiplied by the wall area of the building and 8 psf multiplied by the roof area of the building projected onto a vertical plane normal to the assumed wind direction. Tabulated lengths in shaded cells are less than the "minimum" value. Where the minimum controls, it is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Notes c, d and e. See Section 608.7.1.1.

c. For buildings with a mean roof height of less than 35 feet, tabulated lengths are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the appropriate factor, *R*1, from Table 608.7(2). The reduced length shall be not less than the "minimum" value shown in the table.

d. Tabulated lengths for "one story or top story of two story" are based on a floor-to-ceiling height of 10 feet. Tabulated lengths for "first story of two story" are based on floor-to-ceiling heights of 10 feet each for the first and second story. For floor-to-ceiling heights less than assumed, use the lengths in this table or Table 608.7(1A) or (1C), or multiply the value in the table by the reduction factor, *R*2, from Table 608.7(3).

e. Tabulated lengths are based on the default design shear strength of 840 pounds per linear foot of solid wall segment. The tabulated lengths are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the applicable reduction factor for design strength, *R*3, from Table 608.7(4).

f. The reduction factors, *R*1, *R*2 and *R*3, in Tables 608.7(2), 608.7(3), and 608.7(4), respectively, are permitted to be compounded, subject to the limitations of Note b. However, the minimum number and minimum length of solid wall segments in each wall line shall comply with Sections 608.7.1 and 608.7.2.1, respectively.

g. For intermediate values of sidewall length, endwall length, roof slope and basic wind speed, use the next higher value, or determine by interpolation.

TABLE 608.7(1C)
UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN EACH EXTERIOR SIDEWALL FOR WIND PARALLEL TO RIDGE [a, c, d, e, f, g]

SIDEWALL LENGTH (feet)	ENDWALL LENGTH (feet)	ROOF SLOPE	UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN SIDEWALLS FOR WIND PARALLEL TO RIDGE (feet)						
			Basic Wind Speed (mph) Exposure						
			115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B	Minimum[b]
			—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C	
			—	—	—	110D	117D	125D	
			One story or top story of two story						
< 30	15	< 1:12	1.08	1.18	1.39	161	1.84	2.10	0.90
		5:12	1.29	1.40	1.65	1.91	2.19	2.49	1.08
		7:12	1.38	1.50	1.76	2.04	2.35	2.67	1.17
		12:12	1.63	1.78	2.09	2.42	2.78	3.16	1.39
	30	< 1:12	2.02	2.20	2.59	3.00	3.44	3.92	1.90
		5:12	2.73	2.97	3.48	4.04	4.64	5.28	2.62
		7:12	3.05	3.32	3.89	4.51	5.18	5.89	2.95
		12:12	3.93	4.27	5.02	5.82	6.68	7.60	3.86
	45	< 1:12	3.03	3.30	3.87	4.49	5.15	5.86	2.99
		5:12	4.55	4.96	5.82	6.75	7.74	8.81	4.62
		7:12	5.24	5.71	6.70	7.77	8.92	10.15	5.36
		12:12	7.16	7.79	9.14	10.61	12.17	13.85	7.39
	60	< 1:12	4.11	4.47	5.25	6.09	6.99	7.96	4.18
		5:12	6.78	7.39	8.67	10.05	11.54	13.13	7.07
		7:12	8.00	8.71	10.22	11.85	13.61	15.48	8.38
		12:12	11.35	12.36	14.51	16.82	19.31	21.97	12.00
60	45	< 1:12	3.17	3.46	4.06	4.70	5.40	6.14	2.99
		5:12	4.75	5.18	6.07	7.04	8.09	9.20	4.62
		7:12	5.47	5.96	6.99	8.11	9.31	10.59	5.36
		12:12	7.45	8.11	9.52	11.04	12.68	14.43	7.39
	60	< 1:12	4.41	4.81	5.64	6.54	7.51	8.54	4.18
		5:12	7.22	7.86	9.23	10.70	12.29	13.98	7.07
		7:12	8.50	9.25	10.86	12.59	14.46	16.45	8.38
		12:12	12.02	13.09	15.36	17.81	20.45	23.27	12.00
< 30	15	< 1:12	3.03	3.30	3.88	4.49	5.16	5.87	2.52
		5:12	3.24	3.52	4.14	4.80	5.51	6.26	2.70
		7:12	3.33	3.62	4.25	4.93	5.66	6.44	2.79
		12:12	3.58	3.90	4.58	5.31	6.10	6.94	3.01
	30	< 1:12	5.50	5.99	7.03	8.16	9.36	10.65	5.14
		5:12	6.21	6.76	7.93	9.20	10.56	12.01	5.86
		7:12	6.52	7.10	8.34	9.67	11.10	12.63	6.19
		12:12	7.41	8.06	9.46	10.97	12.60	14.33	7.10

SIDEWALL LENGTH (feet)	ENDWALL LENGTH (feet)	ROOF SLOPE	UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN SIDEWALLS FOR WIND PARALLEL TO RIDGE (feet)						
			Basic Wind Speed (mph) Exposure						
			115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B	Minimum[b]
			—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C	
			—	—	—	110D	117D	125D	
			One story or top story of two story						
	45	< 1:12	8.00	8.71	10.22	11.85	13.61	15.48	7.85
		5:12	9.52	10.37	12.17	14.11	16.20	18.43	9.48
		7:12	10.21	11.12	13.05	15.14	17.38	19.77	10.21
		12:12	12.13	13.20	15.50	17.97	20.63	23.47	12.25
	60	< 1:12	10.56	11.50	13.50	15.65	17.97	20.44	10.65
		5:12	13.24	14.41	16.91	19.62	22.52	25.62	13.54
		7:12	14.45	15.73	18.46	21.41	24.58	27.97	14.85
		12:12	17.80	19.38	22.75	26.38	30.29	34.46	18.48
60	45	< 1:12	8.39	9.14	10.72	12.44	14.28	16.25	7.85
		5:12	9.97	10.86	12.74	14.78	16.97	19.30	9.48
		7:12	10.69	11.64	13.66	15.84	18.19	20.69	10.21
		12:12	12.67	13.80	16.19	18.78	21.56	24.53	12.25
	60	< 1:12	11.37	12.38	14.53	16.85	19.35	22.01	10.65
		5:12	14.18	15.44	18.12	21.02	24.13	27.45	13.54
		7:12	15.46	16.83	19.75	22.91	26.29	29.92	14.85
		12:12	18.98	20.66	24.25	28.13	32.29	36.74	18.48

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s,
1 pound-force per linear foot = 0.146 kN/m, 1 pound per square foot = 47.88 Pa.

a. Tabulated lengths were derived by calculating design wind pressures in accordance with Figure 28.4-1 of ASCE 7 for a building with a mean roof height of 35 feet, topographic factor, *Kzt*, equal to 1.0, and Risk Category II. The design pressures were used to calculate forces to be resisted by solid wall segments in each sidewall. The forces to be resisted by each wall line were then divided by the default design strength of 840 pounds per linear foot of length to determine the unreduced length, *UR*, of solid wall length required in each sidewall. The actual mean roof height of the building shall not exceed the least horizontal dimension of the building.

b. Tabulated lengths in the "minimum" column are based on the requirement of Section 28.4.4 of ASCE 7 that the main windforce-resisting system be designed for a minimum pressure of 16 psf multiplied by the wall area of the building and 8 psf multiplied by the roof area of the building projected onto a vertical plane normal to the assumed wind direction. Tabulated lengths in shaded cells are less than the "minimum" value. Where the minimum controls, it is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Notes c, d and e. See Section 608.7.1.1.

c. For buildings with a mean roof height of less than 35 feet, tabulated lengths are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the appropriate factor, *R*1, from Table 608.7(2). The reduced length shall be not less than the "minimum" value shown in the table.

d. Tabulated lengths for "one story or top story of two story" are based on a floor-to-ceiling height of 10 feet. Tabulated lengths for "first story of two story" are based on floor-to-ceiling heights of 10 feet each for the first and second story. For floor-to-ceiling heights less than assumed, use the lengths in this table or Table 608.7(1A) or (1B), or multiply the value in the table by the reduction factor, *R*2, from Table 608.7(3).

e. Tabulated lengths are based on the default design shear strength of 840 pounds per linear foot of solid wall segment. The tabulated lengths are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the applicable reduction factor for design strength, *R*3, from Table 608.7(4).

f. The reduction factors, *R*1, *R*2 and *R*3, in Tables 608.7(2), 608.7(3), and 608.7(4), respectively, are permitted to be compounded, subject to the limitations of Note b. However, the minimum number and minimum length of solid walls segments in each wall line shall comply with Sections 608.7.1 and 608.7.2.1, respectively.

g. For intermediate values of sidewall length, endwall length, roof slope and basic wind speed, use the next higher value, or determine by interpolation.

TABLE 608.7(2)
REDUCTION FACTOR, R_1, FOR BUILDINGS WITH MEAN ROOF HEIGHT LESS THAN 35 FEET

MEAN ROOF HEIGHT [b, c] (feet)	REDUCTION FACTOR R_1, FOR MEAN ROOF HEIGHT		
	Exposure category		
	B	C	D
≤ 15	0.96	0.84	0.87
20	0.96	0.89	0.91
25	0.96	0.93	0.94
30	0.96	0.97	0.98
35	1.00	1.00	1.00

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

a. See Section 608.7.1.1 and Note c to Table 608.7(1A) for application of reduction factors in this table. This reduction is not permitted for "minimum" values.

b. For intermediate values of mean roof height, use the factor for the next greater height, or determine by interpolation.

c. Mean roof height is the average of the roof eave height and height of the highest point on the roof surface, except that for roof slopes of less than or equal to $2^1/_2$: 12 (10 degrees), the mean roof height is permitted to be taken as the roof eave height.

TABLE 608.7(3) [a, b]
REDUCTION FACTOR, R_2, FOR FLOOR-TO-CEILING WALL HEIGHTS LESS THAN 10 FEET

STORY UNDER CONSIDERATION	FLOOR-TO-CEILING HEIGHT [c] (feet)	ENDWALL LENGTH (feet)	ROOF SLOPE	REDUCTION FACTOR, R_2
Endwalls—for wind perpendicular to ridge				
One story or top story of two story	8	15	≤ 5:12	0.83
			7:12	0.90
			12:12	0.94
		60	≤ 5:12	0.83
			7:12	0.95
			12:12	0.98
First story of two story	16 combined first and second story	15	≤ 5:12	0.83
			7:12	0.86
			12:12	0.89
		60	≤ 5:12	0.83
			7:12	0.91
			12:12	0.95
Sidewalls—for wind parallel to ridge				
One story or top story of two story	8	15	≤ 1:12	0.84
			5:12	0.87
			7:12	0.88
			12:12	0.89
		60	≤ 1:12	0.86
			5:12	0.92
			7:12	0.93
			12:12	0.95

STORY UNDER CONSIDERATION	FLOOR-TO-CEILING HEIGHT [c] (feet)	ENDWALL LENGTH (feet)	ROOF SLOPE	REDUCTION FACTOR, R_2
First story of two story	16 combined first and second story	15	≤ 1:12	0.83
			5:12	0.84
			7:12	0.85
			12:12	0.86
		60	≤ 1:12	0.84
			5:12	0.87
			7:12	0.88
			12:12	0.90

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. See Section 608.7.1.1 and Note d to Table 608.7(1A) for application of reduction factors in this table.

b. For intermediate values of endwall length and roof slope, use the next higher value or determine by interpolation.

c. Tabulated values in Table 608.7(1A) and (1C) for "one story or top story of two story" are based on a floor-to-ceiling height of 10 feet. Tabulated values in Table 608.7(1B) and (1C) for "first story of two story" are based on floor-to-ceiling heights of 10 feet each for the first and second story. For floor-to-ceiling heights between those shown in this table and those assumed in Table 608.7(1A), (1B) or (1C), use the solid wall lengths in Table 608.7(1A), (1B) or (1C), or determine the reduction factor by interpolating between 1.0 and the factor shown in this table.

TABLE 608.7(4) [a, c]
REDUCTION FACTOR FOR DESIGN STRENGTH, R_3, FOR FLAT, WAFFLE- AND SCREEN-GRID WALLS

NOMINAL THICKNESS OF WALL (inches)	VERTICAL BARS AT EACH END OF SOLID WALL SEGMENT		VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT LAYOUT DETAIL [see Figure 608.7(2)]	REDUCTION FACTOR, R_3, FOR LENGTH OF SOLID WALL			
				Horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement provided			
				No		Yes[d]	
	Number of bars	Bar size		40,000[b]	60,000[b]	40,000[b]	60,000[b]
Flat walls							
4	2	4	1	0.74	0.61	0.74	0.50
	3	4	2	0.61	0.61	0.52	0.27
	2	5	1	0.61	0.61	0.48	0.25
	3	5	2	0.61	0.61	0.26	0.18
6	2	4	3	0.70	0.48	0.70	0.48
	3	4	4	0.49	0.38	0.49	0.33
	2	5	3	0.46	0.38	0.46	0.31
	3	5	4	0.38	0.38	0.32	0.16
8	2	4	3	0.70	0.47	0.70	0.47
	3	4	5	0.47	0.32	0.47	0.32
	2	5	3	0.45	0.31	0.45	0.31
	4	4	6	0.36	0.28	0.36	0.25
	3	5	5	0.31	0.28	0.31	0.16
	4	5	6	0.28	0.28	0.24	0.12
10	2	4	3	0.70	0.47	0.70	0.47
	2	5	3	0.45	0.30	0.45	0.30
	4	4	7	0.36	0.25	0.36	0.25
	6	4	8	0.25	0.22	0.25	0.13

NOMINAL THICKNESS OF WALL (inches)	VERTICAL BARS AT EACH END OF SOLID WALL SEGMENT		VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT LAYOUT DETAIL [see Figure 608.7(2)]	REDUCTION FACTOR, R_3, FOR LENGTH OF SOLID WALL			
				Horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement provided			
	Number of bars	Bar size		No		Yes[d]	
				40,000[b]	60,000[b]	40,000[b]	60,000[b]
	4	5	7	0.24	0.22	0.24	0.12
	6	5	8	0.22	0.22	0.12	0.08
Waffle-grid walls[e]							
6	2	4	3	0.78	0.78	0.70	0.48
	3	4	4	0.78	0.78	0.49	0.25
	2	5	3	0.78	0.78	0.46	0.23
	3	5	4	0.78	0.78	0.24	0.16
8	2	4	3	0.78	0.78	0.70	0.47
	3	4	5	0.78	0.78	0.47	0.24
	2	5	3	0.78	0.78	0.45	0.23
	4	4	6	0.78	0.78	0.36	0.18
	3	5	5	0.78	0.78	0.23	0.16
	4	5	6	0.78	0.78	0.18	0.13
Screen-grid walls[e]							
6	2	4	3	0.93	0.93	0.70	0.48
	3	4	4	0.93	0.93	0.49	0.25
	2	5	3	0.93	0.93	0.46	0.23
	3	5	4	0.93	0.93	0.24	0.16

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1,000 pounds per square inch = 6.895 MPa.

a. See Note e to Table 608.7(1A) for application of adjustment factors in this table.

b. Yield strength in pounds per square inch of vertical wall reinforcement at ends of solid wall segments.

c. Values are based on concrete with a specified compressive strength, $f'c$, of 2,500 psi. Where concrete with $f'c$ of not less than 3,000 psi is used, values in shaded cells are permitted to be decreased by multiplying by 0.91.

d. Horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section 608.7.2.2.

e. Each end of each solid wall segment shall have rectangular flanges. In the through-the-wall dimension, the flange shall be not less than $5\frac{1}{2}$ inches for 6-inch- nominal waffle- and screen-grid walls, and not less than $7\frac{1}{2}$ inches for 8-inch-nominal waffle-grid walls. In the in-plane dimension, flanges shall be long enough to accommodate the vertical reinforcement required by the layout detail selected from Figure 608.7(2) and provide the cover required by Section 608.5.4.1. If necessary to achieve the required dimensions, form material shall be removed or use of flat wall forms is permitted.

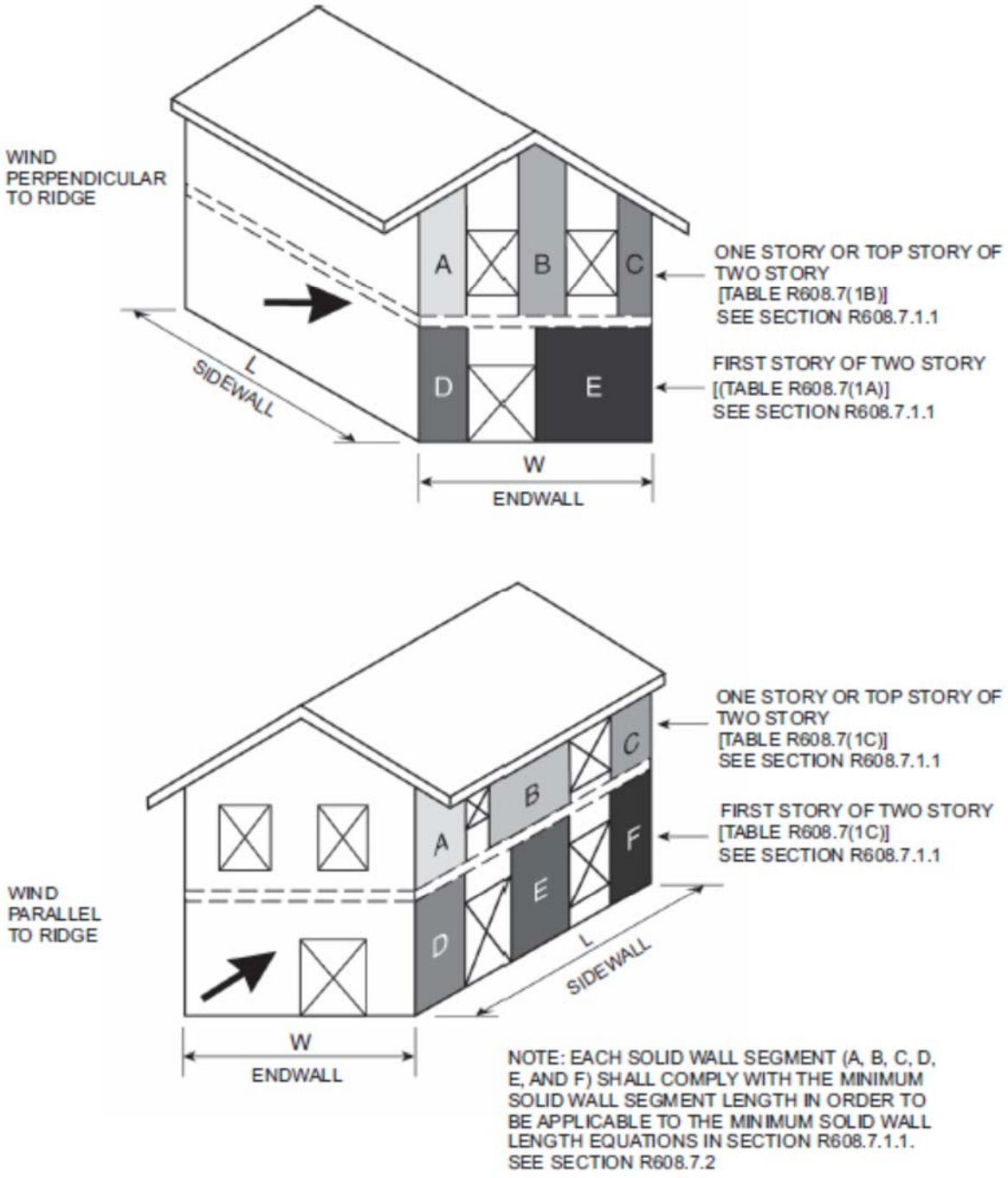


FIGURE 608.7(1)
MINIMUM SOLID WALL LENGTH

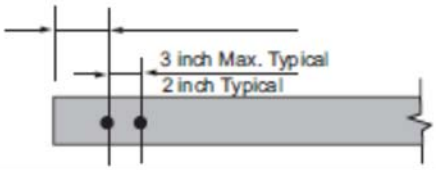
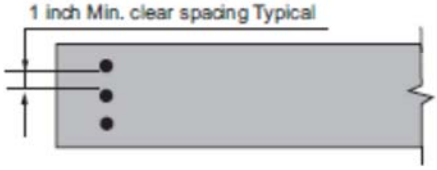
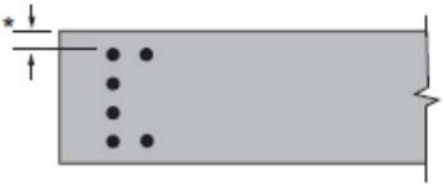
DETAIL NO.	NOM. WALL THICKNESS, IN.	REINFORCEMENT LAYOUT AT ENDS OF SOLID WALL SEGMENTS	NOTES
1	4		For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm. 1. See Table R608.7(4) for use of details. 2. Minimum length of solid wall segment and size and grade of reinforcement in each end of each solid wall segment shall be determined from Table R608.7(4). 3.. For minimum cover requirements, see Section R608.5.4.1. 4.. For details 3 - 8 where two or more bars are in the same row parallel to the end of the segment, place bars so that corner bars are as close to the sides of the wall segments as minimum cover requirements of Section R608.5.4.1 will permit. 5.. For waffle- and screen-grid walls, each end of each solid wall segment shall have rectangular flanges. In the through-the-wall dimension, the flange shall be not less than 5½ inches for 6-inch nominal waffle- and screen-grid forms, and not less than 7½ inches for 8-inch nominal waffle-grid forms. In the in-plane dimension, flanges shall be long enough to accommodate the vertical reinforcement required by the layout detail selected and provide the cover required by Section R608.5.4.1. If necessary to achieve the required dimensions, form material shall be removed or flat wall forms are permitted. See Table R608.7(4), Note e.
2	4		
3	6 8 10		
4	6		
5	8		
6	8		
7	10		
8	10	 * For minimum cover see Section R608.5.4.1	

FIGURE 608.7(2)
VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT LAYOUT DETAIL

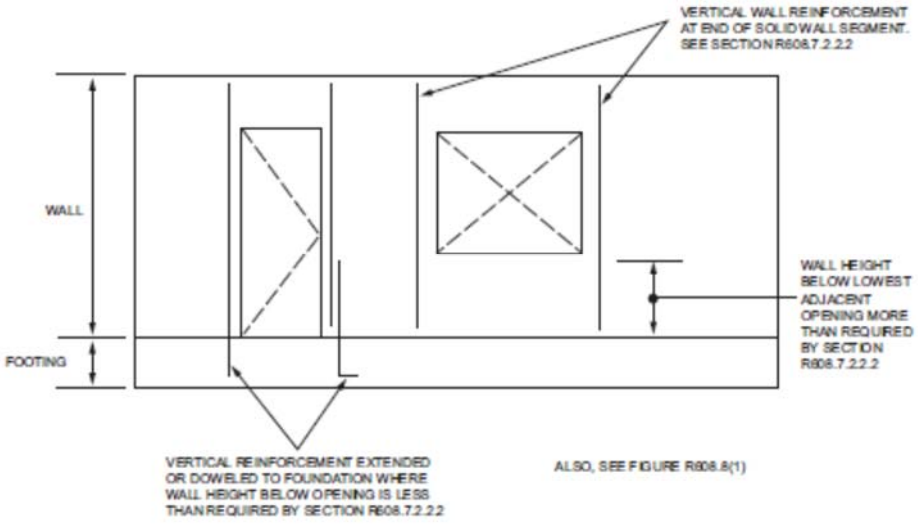


FIGURE 608.7(3)
VERTICAL WALL REINFORCEMENT ADJACENT TO WALL OPENINGS

608.7.2.2.3 Vertical shear reinforcement. Where reduction factors for design strength, R_3, from Table 608.7(4) based on horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement being provided are used, solid wall segments shall have vertical reinforcement consisting of minimum No. 4 bars. Vertical shear reinforcement shall be the same grade of steel required by Section 608.7.2.2.2 for the vertical reinforcement at the ends of solid wall segments. The spacing of vertical reinforcement throughout the length of the segment shall not exceed the smaller of one third the length of the segment, and 18 inches (457 mm). Vertical shear reinforcement shall be continuous between stories in accordance with Section 608.6.3, and shall terminate in accordance with Section 608.6.4. Vertical shear reinforcement required by this section is permitted to be used for vertical reinforcement required by Table 608.6(1), 608.6(2), 608.6(3) or 608.6(4), whichever is applicable.

608.7.2.3 Solid wall segments at corners. At all interior and exterior corners of exterior walls, a solid wall segment shall extend the full height of each wall story. The segment shall have the length required to develop the horizontal reinforcement above and below the adjacent opening in tension in accordance with Section 608.5.4.4. For an exterior corner, the limiting dimension is measured on the outside of the wall, and for an interior corner the limiting dimension is measured on the inside of the wall. See

Section 608.8.1. The length of a segment contributing to the required length of solid wall shall comply with Section 608.7.2.1.

The end of a solid wall segment complying with the minimum length requirements of Section 608.7.2.1 shall be located not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) from each corner.

608.8 Requirements for lintels and reinforcement around openings.

608.8.1 Reinforcement around openings. Reinforcement shall be provided around openings in walls equal to or greater than 2 feet (610 mm) in width in accordance with this section and Figure 608.8(1), in addition to the minimum wall reinforcement required by Sections 404.1.3, 608.6 and 608.7. Vertical wall reinforcement required by this section is permitted to be used as reinforcement at the ends of solid wall segments required by Section 608.7.2.2.2 provided it is located in accordance with Section 608.8.1.2. Wall openings shall have a mini- mum depth of concrete over the width of the opening of 8 inches (203 mm) in flat walls and waffle-grid walls, and 12 inches (305 mm) in screen-grid walls. Wall openings in waffle-grid and screen-grid walls shall be located such that not less than one-half of a vertical core occurs along each side of the opening.

608.8.1.1 Horizontal reinforcement. Lintels complying with Section 608.8.2 shall be provided above wall openings equal to or greater than 2 feet (610 mm) in width.

Openings equal to or greater than 2 feet (610 mm) in width shall have not less than one No. 4 bar placed within 12 inches (305 mm) of the bottom of the opening. See Figure 608.8(1).

Horizontal reinforcement placed above and below an opening shall extend beyond the edges of the opening the dimension required to develop the bar in tension in accordance with Section 608.5.4.4.

Exception: Continuous horizontal wall reinforcement placed within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top of the wall story as required in Sections 404.1.3.2 and 608.6.2 is permitted in lieu of top or bottom lintel reinforcement required by Section 608.8.2 provided that the continuous horizontal wall reinforcement meets the location requirements specified in Figures 608.8(2), 608.8(3), and 608.8(4) and the size requirements specified in Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(10).

608.8.1.2 Vertical reinforcement. Not less than one No. 4 bar [Grade 40 (280 MPa)] shall be provided on each side of openings equal to or greater than 2 feet (610 mm) in width. The vertical reinforcement required by this

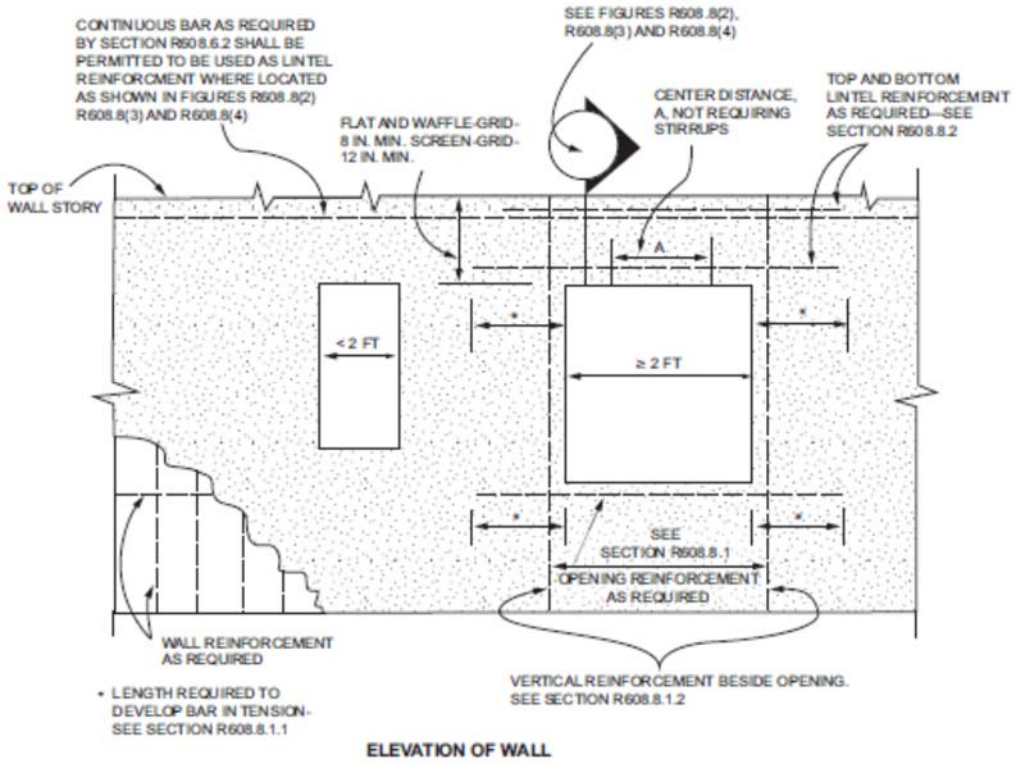
section shall extend the full height of the wall story and shall be located within 12 inches (305 mm) of each side of the opening. The vertical reinforcement required on each side of an opening by this section is permitted to serve as reinforcement at the ends of solid wall segments in accordance with Section 608.7.2.2.2, provided it is located as required by the applicable detail in Figure 608.7(2). Where the vertical reinforcement required by this section is used to satisfy the requirements of Section 608.7.2.2.2 in waffle- and screen-grid walls, a concrete flange shall be created at the ends of the solid wall segments in accordance with Table 608.7(4), Note e. In the top-most story, the reinforcement shall terminate in accordance with Section 608.6.4.

608.8.2 Lintels. Lintels shall be provided over all openings equal to or greater than 2 feet (610 mm) in width. Lintels with uniform loading shall conform to Sections 608.8.2.1 and 608.8.2.2, or Section 608.8.2.3. Lintels supporting concentrated loads, such as from roof or floor beams or girders, shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318.

608.8.2.1 Lintels designed for gravity load-bearing conditions. Where a lintel will be subjected to gravity load conditions 1 through 5 of Table 608.8(1), the clear span of the lintel shall not exceed that permitted by Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(8). The maximum clear span of lintels with and without stirrups in flat walls shall be determined in accordance with Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(5), and constructed in accordance with Figure 608.8(2). The maximum clear span of lintels with and without stirrups in waffle-grid walls shall be determined in accordance with Tables 608.8(6) and 608.8(7), and constructed in accordance with Figure 608.8(3). The maximum clear span of lintels with and without stirrups in screen-grid walls shall be determined in accordance with Table 608.8(8), and constructed in accordance with Figure 608.8(4).

Where required by the applicable table, No. 3 stirrups shall be installed in lintels at a maximum spacing of $d/2$ where d equals the depth of the lintel, D, less the cover of the concrete as shown in Figures 608.8(2) through 608.8(4). The smaller value of d computed for the top and bottom bar shall be used to determine the maximum stirrup spacing. Where stirrups are required in a lintel with a single bar or two bundled bars in the top and bottom, they shall be fabricated like the letter "c" or "s" with 135-degree (2.36 rad) standard hooks at each end that comply with Section 608.5.4.5 and Figure 608.5.4(3) and installed as shown in Figures 608.8(2) through 608.8(4). Where two bars are required in the top and bottom of the lintel and the bars are not bundled, the bars shall be separated by not less than 1

inch (25 mm). The free end of the stirrups shall be fabricated with 90- or 135-degree (1.57 or 2.36 rad) standard hooks that comply with Section 608.5.4.5 and Figure 608.5.4(3) and installed as shown in Figures 608.8(2) and 608.8(3). For flat, waffle-grid and screen-grid lintels, stirrups are not required in the center distance, A, portion of spans in accordance with Figure 608.8(1) and Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(8). See Section 608.8.2.2, Item 5, for requirement for stirrups throughout lintels with bundled bars.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 608.8(1)
REINFORCEMENT OF OPENINGS

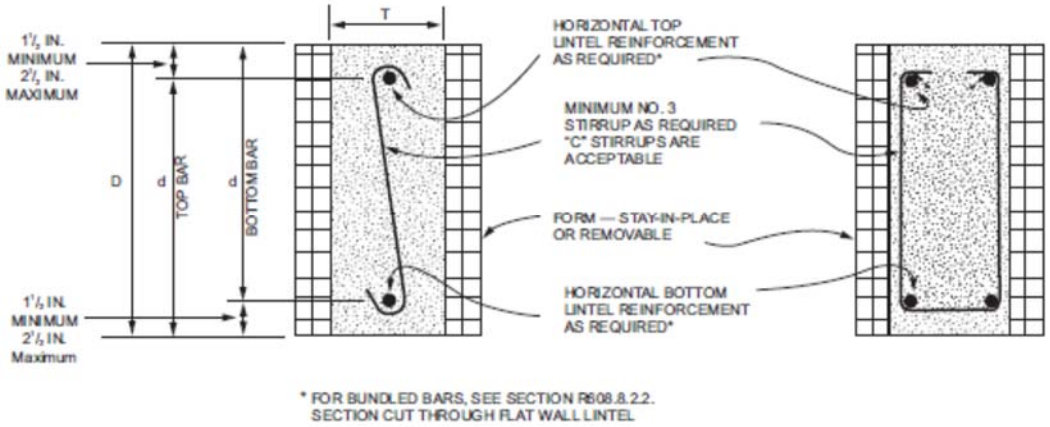
608.8.2.2 Bundled bars in lintels. It is permitted to bundle two bars in contact with each other in lintels if all of the following are observed:

1. Bars equal to or less than No. 6 are bundled.
2. Where the wall thickness is not sufficient to provide not less than 3 inches (76 mm) of clear space beside bars (total on both sides) oriented horizontally in a bundle, the bundled bars shall be oriented

in a vertical plane.

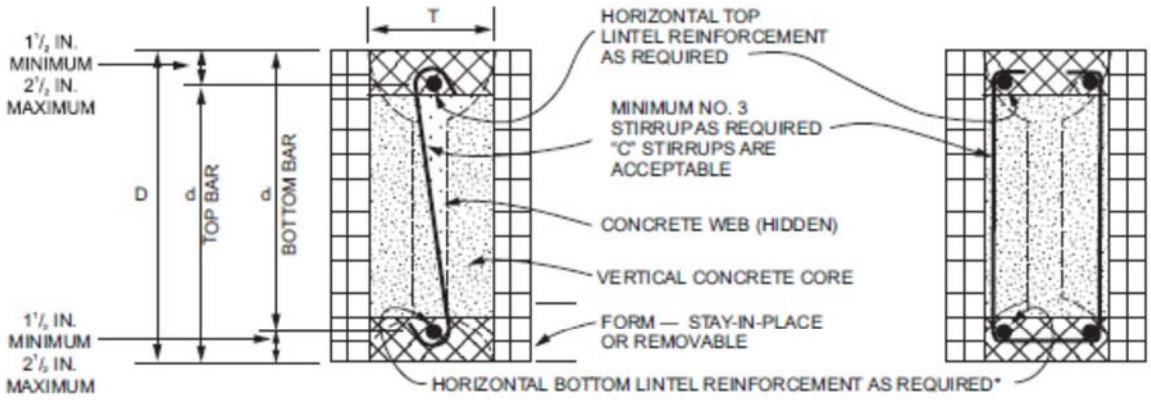
3. Where vertically oriented bundled bars terminate with standard hooks to develop the bars in tension beyond the support (see Section 608.5.4.4), the hook extensions shall be staggered to provide not less than 1 inch (25 mm) clear spacing between the extensions.
4. Bundled bars shall not be lap spliced within the lintel span and the length on each end of the lintel that is required to develop the bars in tension.
5. Bundled bars shall be enclosed within stirrups throughout the length of the lintel. Stirrups and the installation thereof shall comply with Section 608.8.2.1.

608.8.2.3 Lintels without stirrups designed for nonload-bearing conditions. The maximum clear span of lintels without stirrups designed for nonload-bearing conditions of Table 608.8(1).1 shall be determined in accordance with this section. The maximum clear span of lintels without stirrups in flat walls shall be determined in accordance with Table 608.8(9), and the maximum clear span of lintels without stirrups in walls of waffle-grid or screen-grid construction shall be determined in accordance with Table 608.8(10).

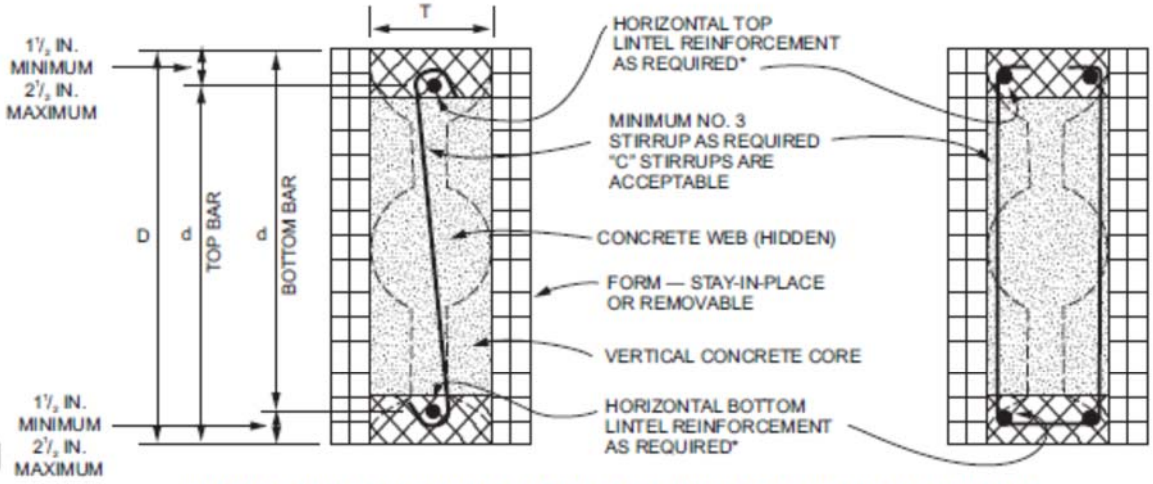


For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 608.8(2)
LINTEL FOR FLAT WALLS



(a) SINGLE FORM HEIGHT SECTION CUT THROUGH VERTICAL CORE OF A WAFFLE-GRID LINTEL



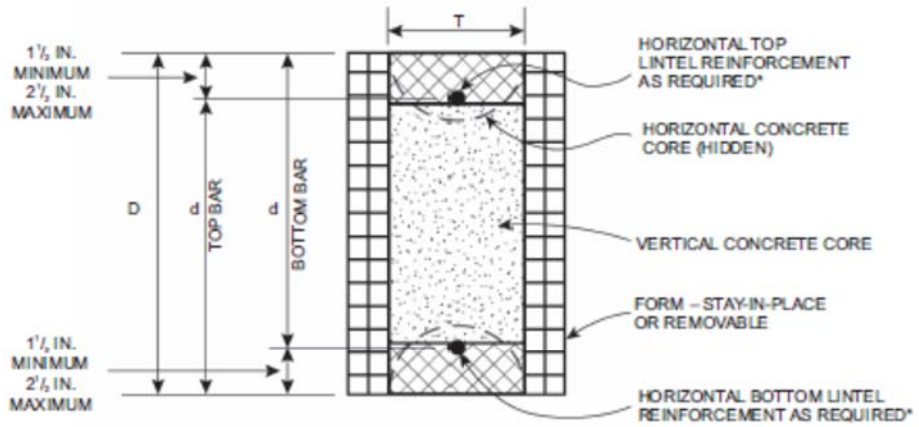
(b) DOUBLE FORM HEIGHT SECTION CUT THROUGH VERTICAL CORE OF A WAFFLE-GRID LINTEL

*FOR BUNDLED BARS, SEE SECTION R608.8.2.2.

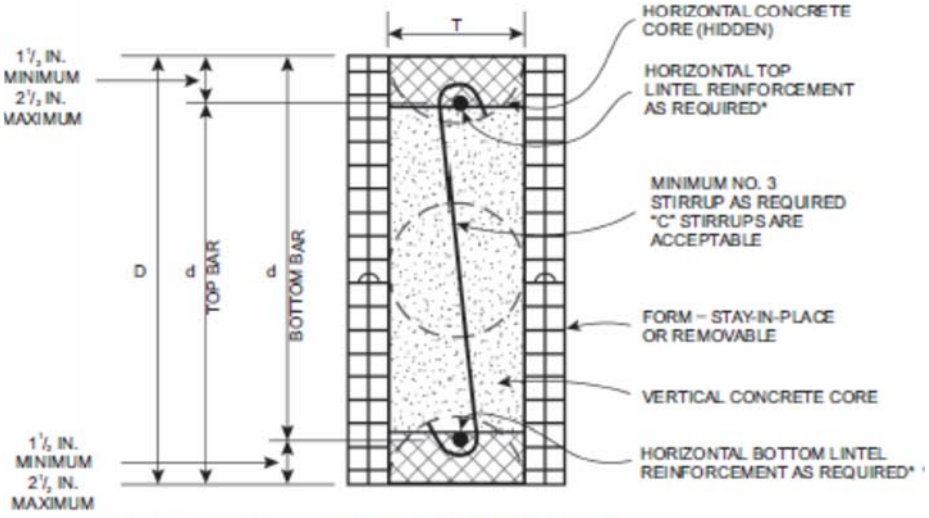
NOTE: CROSS HATCHING REPRESENTS THE AREA IN WHICH FORM MATERIAL SHALL BE REMOVED, IF NECESSARY, TO CREATE FLANGES CONTINUOUS THE LENGTH OF THE LINTEL. FLANGES SHALL HAVE A MINIMUM THICKNESS OF 3 IN., AND A MINIMUM WIDTH OF 5 IN. AND 7 IN. IN 6 IN. NOMINAL AND 8 IN. NOMINAL WAFFLE-GRID WALLS, RESPECTIVELY. SEE NOTE a TO TABLES R608.8(6) AND R608.8(10).

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 608.8(3)
LINTELS FOR WAFFLE-GRID WALLS



(a) SINGLE FORM HEIGHT SECTION CUT THROUGH VERTICAL CORE OF A SCREEN-GRID LINTEL



(b) DOUBLE FORM HEIGHT SECTION CUT THROUGH VERTICAL CORE OF A SCREEN-GRID LINTEL

*FOR BUNDLED BARS, SEE SECTION R608.8.2.2

NOTE: CROSS HATCHING REPRESENTS THE AREA IN WHICH FORM MATERIAL SHALL BE REMOVED, IF NECESSARY, TO CREATE FLANGES CONTINUOUS THE LENGTH OF THE LINTEL. FLANGES SHALL HAVE A MINIMUM THICKNESS OF 2.5 IN. AND A MINIMUM WIDTH OF 5 IN. SEE NOTE a TO TABLES R608.8(8) AND R608.8(10).

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 608.8(4)
LINTELS FOR SCREEN-GRID WALLS

TABLE 608.8(1)
LINTEL DESIGN LOADING CONDITIONS [a, b, d]

DESCRIPTION OF LOADS AND OPENINGS ABOVE INFLUENCING DESIGN OF LINTEL			DESIGN LOAD CONDITION [c]
Opening in wall of top story of two-story building, or first story of one-story building			
Wall supporting loads from roof, including attic floor, if applicable, and	Top of lintel equal to or less than W/2 below top of wall		2
	Top of lintel greater than W/2 below top of wall		NLB
Wall not supporting loads from roof or attic floor			NLB
Opening in wall of first story of two-story building where wall immediately above is of concrete construction, or opening in basement wall of one-story building where wall immediately above is of concrete construction			
LB ledger board mounted to side of wall with bottom of ledger less than or equal to W/2 above top of lintel, and	Top of lintel greater than W/2 below bottom of opening in story above		1
	Top of lintel less than or equal to W/2 below bottom of opening in story above, and	Opening is entirely within the footprint of the opening in the story above	1
		Opening is partially within the footprint of the opening in the story above	4
LB ledger board mounted to side of wall with bottom of ledger more than W/2 above top of lintel			NLB
NLB ledger board mounted to side of wall with bottom of ledger less than or equal to W/2 above top of lintel, or no ledger board, and	Top of lintel greater than W/2 below bottom of opening in story above		NLB
	Top of lintel less than or equal to W/2 below bottom of opening in story above, and	Opening is entirely within the footprint of the opening in the story above	NLB
		Opening is partially within the footprint of the opening in the story above	1
Opening in basement wall of two-story building where walls of two stories above are of concrete construction			
LB ledger board mounted to side of wall with bottom of ledger less than or equal to W/2 above top of lintel, and	Top of lintel greater than W/2 below bottom of opening in story above		1
	Top of lintel less than or equal to W/2 below bottom of opening in story above, and	Opening is entirely within the footprint of the opening in the story above	1
		Opening is partially within the footprint of the opening in the story above	5
LB ledger board mounted to side of wall with bottom of ledger more than W/2 above top of lintel			NLB
NLB ledger board mounted to side of wall with bottom of ledger less than or equal to W/2 above top of lintel, or no ledger board, and	Top of lintel greater than W/2 below bottom of opening in story above		NLB
	Top of lintel less than or equal to W/2 below bottom of opening in story above, and	Opening is entirely within the footprint of the opening in the story above	NLB
		Opening is partially within the footprint of the opening in the story above	1
Opening in wall of first story of two-story building where wall immediately above is of light-framed construction, or opening in basement wall of one-story building where wall immediately above is of light-framed construction			
Wall supporting loads from roof, second floor and top-story wall of light-framed construction, and	Top of lintel equal to or less than W/2 below top of wall		3
	Top of lintel greater than W/2 below top of wall		NLB
Wall not supporting loads from roof or second floor			NLB

a. LB means load bearing, NLB means nonload bearing, and W means width of opening.

b. Footprint is the area of the wall below an opening in the story above, bounded by the bottom of the opening and vertical lines extending downward from the edges of the opening.

c. For design loading condition "NLB" see Tables 608.8(9) and 608.8(10). For all other design loading conditions, see Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(8).

d. An NLB ledger board is a ledger attached to a wall that is parallel to the span of the floor, roof or ceiling framing that supports the edge of the floor, ceiling or roof.

TABLE 608.8(2)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 4-INCH-NOMINAL THICK FLAT LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS [a, b, c, d, e, f, m]
ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET

LINTEL DEPTH, *D* [g] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH [h], f_y (psi)	DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE 608.8(1)								
			1	2		3		4		5	
			Maximum ground snow load (psf)								
			—	30	70	30	70	30	70	30	70
			Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches)								
8	Span without stirrups[i, j]		3-2	3-4	2-4	2-6	2-2	2-1	2-0	2-0	2-0
	1-#4	40,000	5-2	5-5	4-1	4-3	3-10	3-7	3-4	2-9	2-9
		60,000	6-2	6-5	4-11	5-1	4-6	4-2	3-8	2-11	2-10
	1-#5	40,000	6-3	6-7	5-0	5-2	4-6	4-2	3-8	2-11	2-10
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance $A^{k, l}$		1-1	1-2	0-8	0-9	0-7	0-6	0-5	0-4	0-4
12	Span without stirrups[i, j]		3-4	3-7	2-9	2-11	2-8	2-6	2-5	2-2	2-2
	1-#4	40,000	6-7	7-0	5-4	5-7	5-0	4-9	4-4	3-8	3-7
		60,000	7-11	8-6	6-6	6-9	6-0	5-9	5-3	4-5	4-4
	1-#5	40,000	8-1	8-8	6-7	6-10	6-2	5-10	5-4	4-6	4-5
		60,000	9-8	10-4	7-11	8-2	7-4	6-11	6-2	4-10	4-8
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	9-1	9-8	7-4	7-8	6-10	6-6	6-0	4-10	4-8
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance $A^{k, l}$		1-8	1-11	1-1	1-3	1-0	0-11	0-9	0-6	0-6
16	Span without stirrups[i, j]		4-7	5-0	3-11	4-0	3-8	3-7	3-4	3-1	3-0
	1-#4	40,000	6-8	7-3	5-6	5-9	5-2	4-11	4-6	3-10	3-8
		60,000	9-3	10-1	7-9	8-0	7-2	6-10	6-3	5-4	5-2
	1-#4	40,000	9-6	10-4	7-10	8-2	7-4	6-11	6-5	5-5	5-3
		60,000	11-5	12-5	9-6	9-10	8-10	8-4	7-9	6-6	6-4
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	10-7	11-7	8-10	9-2	8-3	7-9	7-2	6-1	5-11
		60,000	12-9	13-10	10-7	11-0	9-10	9-4	8-7	6-9	6-6
	2-#5	40,000	13-0	14-1	10-9	11-2	9-11	9-2	8-2	6-6	6-3
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance $A^{k, l}$		2-3	2-8	1-7	1-8	1-4	1-3	1-0	0-9	0-8
20	Span without stirrups $A^{i, j}$		5-9	6-5	5-0	5-2	4-9	4-7	4-4	3-11	3-11
	1-#4	40,000	7-5	8-2	6-3	6-6	5-10	5-7	5-1	4-4	4-2
		60,000	9-0	10-0	7-8	7-11	7-1	6-9	6-3	5-3	5-1
	1-#5	40,000	9-2	10-2	7-9	8-1	7-3	6-11	6-4	5-4	5-2
		60,000	12-9	14-2	10-10	11-3	10-1	9-7	8-10	7-5	7-3
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	11-10	13-2	10-1	10-5	9-4	8-11	8-2	6-11	6-9
		60,000	14-4	15-10	12-1	12-7	11-3	10-9	9-11	8-4	8-1
	2-#5	40,000	14-7	16-2	12-4	12-9	11-4	10-6	9-5	7-7	7-3

LINTEL DEPTH, *D* [g] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH [h], f_y (psi)	DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE 608.8(1)								
			1	2		3		4		5	
			Maximum ground snow load (psf)								
			—	30	70	30	70	30	70	30	70
			Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches)								
		60,000	17-5	19-2	14-9	15-3	13-5	12-4	11-0	8-8	8-4
	2-#6	40,000	16-4	18-11	12-7	13-3	11-4	10-6	9-5	7-7	7-3
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance A [k, l]		2-9	3-5	2-0	2-2	1-9	1-7	1-4	0-11	0-11
24	Span without stirrups [i, j]		6-11	7-9	6-1	6-3	5-9	5-7	5-3	4-9	4-8
	1-#4	40,000	8-0	9-0	6-11	7-2	6-5	6-2	5-8	4-9	4-8
		60,000	9-9	11-0	8-5	8-9	7-10	7-6	6-11	5-10	5-8
	1-#5	40,000	10-0	11-3	8-7	8-11	8-0	7-7	7-0	5-11	5-9
		60,000	13-11	15-8	12-0	12-5	11-2	10-7	9-10	8-3	8-0
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	12-11	14-6	11-2	11-6	10-5	9-10	9-1	7-8	7-5
		60,000	15-7	17-7	13-6	13-11	12-7	11-11	11-0	9-3	9-0
	2-#5	40,000	15-11	17-11	13-7	14-3	12-8	11-9	10-8	8-7	8-4
		60,000	19-1	21-6	16-5	17-1	15-1	14-0	12-6	9-11	9-7
	2-#6	40,000	17-7	21-1	14-1	14-10	12-8	11-9	10-8	8-7	8-4
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance A [k, l]		3-3	4-1	2-5	2-7	2-1	1-11	1-7	1-2	1-1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, Grade 40 = 280 MPa, Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

a. See Table 608.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness.

b. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Note j.

c. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section 608.8.2 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$ -inch, whichever is less.

e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads and between lintel depths.

f. DR indicates design required.

g. Lintel depth, D, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.

h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.

i. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, D. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall be not less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than $d/2$.

j. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.

k. Center distance, A, is the center portion of the clear span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.

l. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, A, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.

m. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet. See Section 608.7.2.1. Lintel clear spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

TABLE 608.8(3)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 6-INCH-NOMINAL THICK FLAT LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS [a, b, c, d, e, f, m]
ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET

LINTEL DEPTH, D [g] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH [h], f_y (psi)	DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE 608.8(1)								
			1	2		3		4		5	
			Maximum ground snow load (psf)								
			—	30	70	30	70	30	70	30	70
			Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches)								
8	Span without stirrups [i, j]		4-2	4-8	3-1	3-3	2-10	2-6	2-3	2-0	2-0
	1-#4	40,000	5-1	5-5	4-2	4-3	3-10	3-6	3-3	2-8	2-7
		60,000	6-2	6-7	5-0	5-2	4-8	4-2	3-11	3-3	3-2
	1-#5	40,000	6-3	6-8	5-1	5-3	4-9	4-3	4-0	3-3	3-2
		60,000	7-6	8-0	6-1	6-4	5-8	5-1	4-9	3-8	3-6
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	7-0	7-6	5-8	5-11	5-3	4-9	4-5	3-8	3-6
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance A [k, l]		1-7	1-10	1-1	1-2	0-11	0-9	0-8	0-5	0-5
12	Span without stirrups [i, j]		4-2	4-8	3-5	3-6	3-2	2-11	2-9	2-5	2-4
	1-#4	40,000	5-7	6-1	4-8	4-10	4-4	3-11	3-8	3-0	2-11
		60,000	7-9	8-6	6-6	6-9	6-1	5-6	5-1	4-3	4-1
	1-#5	40,000	7-11	8-8	6-8	6-11	6-2	5-7	5-2	4-4	4-2
		60,000	9-7	10-6	8-0	8-4	7-6	6-9	6-3	5-2	5-1
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	8-11	9-9	7-6	7-9	6-11	6-3	5-10	4-10	4-8
		60,000	10-8	11-9	8-12	9-4	8-4	7-6	7-0	5-10	5-8
	2-#5	40,000	10-11	12-0	9-2	9-6	8-6	7-8	7-2	5-6	5-3
		60,000	12-11	14-3	10-10	11-3	10-1	9-0	8-1	6-1	5-10
	2-#6	40,000	12-9	14-0	10-8	11-1	9-7	8-1	7-3	5-6	5-3
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance A [k, l]		2-6	3-0	1-9	1-10	1-6	1-3	1-1	0-9	0-8
16	Span without stirrups [i, j]		5-7	6-5	4-9	4-11	4-5	4-0	3-10	3-4	3-4
	1-#4	40,000	6-5	7-2	5-6	5-9	5-2	4-8	4-4	3-7	3-6
		60,000	7-10	8-9	6-9	7-0	6-3	5-8	5-3	4-4	4-3
	1-#5	40,000	7-11	8-11	6-10	7-1	6-5	5-9	5-4	4-5	4-4
		60,000	11-1	12-6	9-7	9-11	8-11	8-0	7-6	6-2	6-0
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	10-3	11-7	8-10	9-2	8-3	7-6	6-11	5-9	5-7
		60,000	12-5	14-0	10-9	11-1	10-0	9-0	8-5	7-0	6-9
	2-#5	40,000	12-8	14-3	10-11	11-4	10-2	9-2	8-7	6-9	6-6
		60,000	15-2	17-1	13-1	13-7	12-3	11-0	10-3	7-11	7-7
	2-#6	40,000	14-11	16-9	12-8	13-4	11-4	9-8	8-8	6-9	6-6
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR

LINTEL DEPTH, *D* [g] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH [h], f_y (psi)	DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE 608.8(1)								
			1	2		3		4		5	
			Maximum ground snow load (psf)								
			—	30	70	30	70	30	70	30	70
			Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches)								
	Center distance A [k, l]		3-3	4-1	2-5	2-7	2-1	1-9	1-6	1-0	1-0
20	Span without stirrups [i, j]		6-11	8-2	6-1	6-3	5-8	5-2	4-11	4-4	4-3
	1-#5	40,000	8-9	10-1	7-9	8-0	7-3	6-6	6-1	5-1	4-11
		60,000	10-8	12-3	9-5	9-9	8-10	8-0	7-5	6-2	6-0
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	9-11	11-4	8-9	9-1	8-2	7-4	6-10	5-8	5-7
		60,000	13-9	15-10	12-2	12-8	11-5	10-3	9-7	7-11	7-9
	2-#5	40,000	14-0	16-2	12-5	12-11	11-7	10-6	9-9	7-11	7-8
		60,000	16-11	19-6	15-0	15-6	14-0	12-7	11-9	9-1	8-9
	2-#6	40,000	16-7	19-1	14-7	15-3	13-1	11-3	10-2	7-11	7-8
		60,000	19-11	22-10	17-4	18-3	15-6	13-2	11-10	9-1	8-9
	Center distance A [k, l]		3-11	5-2	3-1	3-3	2-8	2-2	1-11	1-4	1-3
24	Span without stirrups [i, j]		8-2	9-10	7-4	7-8	6-11	6-4	5-11	5-3	5-2
	1-#5	40,000	9-5	11-1	8-7	8-10	8-0	7-3	6-9	5-7	5-5
		60,000	11-6	13-6	10-5	10-9	9-9	8-9	8-2	6-10	6-8
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	10-8	12-6	9-8	10-0	9-0	8-2	7-7	6-4	6-2
		60,000	12-11	15-2	11-9	12-2	11-0	9-11	9-3	7-8	7-6
	2-#5	40,000	15-2	17-9	13-9	14-3	12-10	11-7	10-10	9-0	8-9
		60,000	18-4	21-6	16-7	17-3	15-6	14-0	13-1	10-4	10-0
	2-#6	40,000	18-0	21-1	16-4	16-11	14-10	12-9	11-8	9-2	8-11
		60,000	21-7	25-4	19-2	20-4	17-2	14-9	13-4	10-4	10-0
	Center distance A [k, l]		4-6	6-2	3-8	4-0	3-3	2-8	2-3	1-7	1-6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, Grade 40 = 280 MPa, Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

a. See Table 608.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness.

b. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Note j.

c. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section 608.8.2 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$ -inch, whichever is less.

e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads and between lintel depths.

f. DR indicates design required.

g. Lintel depth, D, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.

h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.

i. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, D. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall be not less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than $d/2$.

j. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.

k. Center distance, A, is the center portion of the clear span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.

l. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, A, shall be permitted to be

multiplied by 1.10.

m. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet. See Section 608.7.2.1. Lintel clear spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

TABLE 608.8(4)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 8-INCH-NOMINAL THICK FLAT LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS [a, b, c, d, e, f, m]
ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET

LINTEL DEPTH, D [g] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH [h], f_y (psi)	DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE 608.8(1)								
			1	2		3		4		5	
			Maximum ground snow load (psf)								
			—	30	70	30	70	30	70	30	70
			Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches)								
8	Span without stirrups[i, j]		4-4	4-9	3-7	3-9	3-4	2-10	2-7	2-1	2-0
	1-#4	40,000	4-4	4-9	3-7	3-9	3-4	2-11	2-9	2-3	2-2
		60,000	6-1	6-7	5-0	5-3	4-8	4-0	3-9	3-1	3-0
	1-#5	40,000	6-2	6-9	5-2	5-4	4-9	4-1	3-10	3-2	3-1
		60,000	7-5	8-1	6-2	6-5	5-9	4-11	4-7	3-9	3-8
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	6-11	7-6	5-9	6-0	5-4	4-7	4-4	3-6	3-5
		60,000	8-3	9-0	6-11	7-2	6-5	5-6	5-2	4-2	4-1
	2-#5	40,000	8-5	9-2	7-0	7-3	6-6	5-7	5-3	4-2	4-0
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance A[k, l]		2-1	2-6	1-5	1-6	1-3	0-11	0-10	0-6	0-6
12	Span without stirrups[i, j]		4-10	5-8	4-0	4-2	3-9	3-2	3-0	2-7	2-6
	1-#4	40,000	5-5	6-1	4-8	4-10	4-4	3-9	3-6	2-10	2-10
		60,000	6-7	7-5	5-8	5-11	5-4	4-7	4-3	3-6	3-5
	1-#5	40,000	6-9	7-7	5-9	6-0	5-5	4-8	4-4	3-7	3-6
		60,000	9-4	10-6	8-1	8-4	7-6	6-6	6-1	5-0	4-10
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	8-8	9-9	7-6	7-9	7-0	6-0	5-8	4-7	4-6
		60,000	10-6	11-9	9-1	9-5	8-5	7-3	6-10	5-7	5-5
	2-#5	40,000	10-8	12-0	9-3	9-7	8-7	7-5	6-11	5-6	5-4
		60,000	12-10	14-5	11-1	11-6	10-4	8-11	8-4	6-7	6-4
	2-#6	40,000	12-7	14-2	10-10	11-3	10-2	8-3	7-6	5-6	5-4
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance A[k, l]		3-2	4-0	2-4	2-6	2-0	1-6	1-4	0-11	0-10
16	Span without stirrups[i, j]		6-5	7-9	5-7	5-10	5-2	4-5	4-2	3-7	3-6
	1-#4	40,000	6-2	7-1	5-6	5-8	5-1	4-5	4-2	3-5	3-4
		60,000	7-6	8-8	6-8	6-11	6-3	5-5	5-1	4-2	4-0
	1-#5	40,000	7-8	8-10	6-10	7-1	6-4	5-6	5-2	4-3	4-1
		60,000	9-4	10-9	8-4	8-7	7-9	6-8	6-3	5-2	5-0
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	8-8	10-0	7-8	8-0	7-2	6-2	5-10	4-9	4-8
		60,000	12-0	13-11	10-9	11-2	10-0	8-8	8-1	6-8	6-6

LINTEL DEPTH, D [g] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH [h], f_y (psi)	DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE 608.8(1)								
			1	2		3		4		5	
			Maximum ground snow load (psf)								
			—	30	70	30	70	30	70	30	70
			Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches)								
	2-#5	40,000	12-3	14-2	11-0	11-4	10-3	8-10	8-3	6-9	6-7
		60,000	14-10	17-2	13-3	13-8	12-4	10-8	10-0	7-11	7-8
	2-#6	40,000	14-6	16-10	13-0	13-5	12-1	10-1	9-2	6-11	6-8
		60,000	17-5	20-2	15-7	16-1	14-6	11-10	10-8	7-11	7-8
	Center distance A [k, l]		4-1	5-5	3-3	3-6	2-10	2-1	1-10	1-3	1-2
20	Span without stirrups [i, j]		7-10	9-10	7-1	7-5	6-7	5-8	5-4	4-7	4-6
	1-#5	40,000	8-4	9-11	7-8	8-0	7-2	6-3	5-10	4-9	4-8
		60,000	10-2	12-1	9-5	9-9	8-9	7-7	7-1	5-10	5-8
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	9-5	11-3	8-8	9-0	8-1	7-0	6-7	5-5	5-3
		60,000	11-6	13-8	10-7	11-0	9-11	8-7	8-0	6-7	6-5
	2-#5	40,000	11-9	13-11	10-10	11-2	10-1	8-9	8-2	6-8	6-7
		60,000	16-4	19-5	15-0	15-7	14-0	12-2	11-4	9-3	9-0
	2-#6	40,000	16-0	19-0	14-9	15-3	13-9	11-10	10-10	8-3	8-0
		60,000	19-3	22-11	17-9	18-5	16-7	13-7	12-4	9-3	9-0
	Center distance A [k, l]		4-10	6-10	4-1	4-5	3-7	2-8	2-4	1-7	1-6
24	Span without stirrups [i, j]		9-2	11-9	8-7	8-11	8-0	6-11	6-6	5-7	5-6
	1-#5	40,000	8-11	10-10	8-6	8-9	7-11	6-10	6-5	5-3	5-2
		60,000	10-11	13-3	10-4	10-8	9-8	8-4	7-10	6-5	6-3
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	10-1	12-3	9-7	9-11	8-11	7-9	7-3	6-0	5-10
		60,000	12-3	15-0	11-8	12-1	10-11	9-5	8-10	7-3	7-1
	2-#5	40,000	12-6	15-3	11-11	12-4	11-1	9-7	9-0	7-5	7-3
		60,000	17-6	21-3	16-7	17-2	15-6	13-5	12-7	10-4	10-1
	2-#6	40,000	17-2	20-11	16-3	16-10	15-3	13-2	12-4	9-7	9-4
		60,000	20-9	25-3	19-8	20-4	18-5	15-4	14-0	10-7	10-3
	Center distance A [k, l]		5-6	8-1	4-11	5-3	4-4	3-3	2-10	1-11	1-10

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, Grade 40 = 280 MPa; Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

Note: Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups, as shown in shaded cells, shall be equal to or greater than that required for lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups.

a. See Table 608.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness.

b. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Note j.

c. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section 608.8.2 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$ -inch, whichever is less.

e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads and between lintel depths.

f. DR indicates design required.

g. Lintel depth, D, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.

h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.

i. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, D. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without

stirrups shall be not less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than *d/2*.

j. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.

k. Center distance, *A*, is the center portion of the clear span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.

l. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, *A*, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.

m. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet. See Section 608.7.2.1. Lintel clear spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

TABLE 608.8(5)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 10-INCH-NOMINAL THICK FLAT LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS [a, b, c, d, e, f, m]
ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET

LINTEL DEPTH, *D* [g] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH [h], f_y (psi)	DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE 608.8(1)								
			1	2		3		4		5	
			Maximum ground snow load (psf)								
			—	30	70	30	70	30	70	30	70
			Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches)								
8	Span without stirrups [i, j]		6-0	7-2	4-7	4-10	4-1	3-1	2-11	2-3	2-2
	1-#4	40,000	4-3	4-9	3-7	3-9	3-4	2-9	2-7	2-1	2-1
		60,000	5-11	6-7	5-0	5-3	4-8	3-10	3-8	2-11	2-11
	1-#5	40,000	6-1	6-9	5-2	5-4	4-9	3-11	3-9	3-0	2-11
		60,000	7-4	8-1	6-3	6-5	5-9	4-9	4-6	3-7	3-7
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	6-10	7-6	5-9	6-0	5-5	4-5	4-2	3-4	3-4
		60,000	8-2	9-1	6-11	7-2	6-6	5-4	5-0	4-1	4-0
	2-#5	40,000	8-4	9-3	7-1	7-4	6-7	5-5	5-1	4-1	4-0
		60,000	9-11	11-0	8-5	8-9	7-10	6-6	6-1	4-8	4-6
	2-#6	40,000	9-9	10-10	8-3	8-7	7-9	6-4	5-10	4-1	4-0
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance *A* [k, l]		2-6	3-1	1-10	1-11	1-7	1-1	0-11	0-7	0-7
12	Span without stirrups [i, j]		5-5	6-7	4-7	4-10	4-3	3-5	3-3	2-8	2-8
	1-#4	40,000	5-3	6-0	4-8	4-10	4-4	3-7	3-4	2-9	2-8
		60,000	6-5	7-4	5-8	5-10	5-3	4-4	4-1	3-4	3-3
	1-#5	40,000	6-6	7-6	5-9	6-0	5-5	4-5	4-2	3-5	3-4
		60,000	7-11	9-1	7-0	7-3	6-7	5-5	5-1	4-2	4-0
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	7-4	8-5	6-6	6-9	6-1	5-0	4-9	3-10	3-9
		60,000	10-3	11-9	9-1	9-5	8-6	7-0	6-7	5-4	5-3
	2-#5	40,000	10-5	12-0	9-3	9-7	8-8	7-2	6-9	5-5	5-4
		60,000	12-7	14-5	11-2	11-6	10-5	8-7	8-1	6-6	6-4
	2-#6	40,000	12-4	14-2	10-11	11-4	10-2	8-5	7-8	5-7	5-5
		60,000	14-9	17-0	13-1	13-6	12-2	10-0	9-1	6-6	6-4

	Center distance $A^{k,l}$		3-9	4-11	2-11	3-2	2-7	1-9	1-7	1-0	1-0
16	Span without stirrups[i,j]		7-1	9-0	6-4	6-8	5-10	4-9	4-6	3-9	3-8
	1-#4	40,000	5-11	7-0	5-5	5-8	5-1	4-3	4-0	3-3	3-2
		60,000	7-3	8-7	6-8	6-11	6-3	5-2	4-10	3-11	3-10
	1-#5	40,000	7-4	8-9	6-9	7-0	6-4	5-3	4-11	4-0	3-11
		60,000	9-0	10-8	8-3	8-7	7-9	6-5	6-0	4-11	4-9
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	8-4	9-11	7-8	7-11	7-2	5-11	5-7	4-6	4-5
		60,000	10-2	12-0	9-4	9-8	8-9	7-3	6-10	5-6	5-5
	2-#5	40,000	10-4	12-3	9-6	9-10	8-11	7-4	6-11	5-8	5-6
		60,000	14-4	17-1	13-3	13-8	12-4	10-3	9-8	7-10	7-8
	2-#6	40,000	14-1	16-9	13-0	13-5	12-2	10-1	9-6	7-0	6-10
		60,000	17-0	20-2	15-8	16-2	14-7	12-0	10-11	8-0	7-9
	Center distance $A^{k,l}$		4-9	6-8	4-0	4-4	3-6	2-5	2-2	1-5	1-4
20	Span without stirrups[i,j]		8-7	11-4	8-1	8-5	7-5	6-1	5-9	4-10	4-9
	1-#4	40,000	6-5	7-10	6-2	6-4	5-9	4-9	4-6	3-8	3-7
		60,000	7-10	9-7	7-6	7-9	7-0	5-10	5-6	4-5	4-4
	1-#5	40,000	8-0	9-9	7-8	7-11	7-2	5-11	5-7	4-6	4-5
		60,000	9-9	11-11	9-4	9-8	8-9	7-3	6-10	5-6	5-5
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	9-0	11-1	8-8	8-11	8-1	6-9	6-4	5-2	5-0
		60,000	11-0	13-6	10-6	10-11	9-10	8-2	7-9	6-3	6-2
	2-#5	40,000	11-3	13-9	10-9	11-1	10-0	8-4	7-10	6-5	6-3
		60,000	15-8	19-2	15-0	15-6	14-0	11-8	11-0	8-11	8-9
	2-#6	40,000	15-5	18-10	14-8	15-2	13-9	11-5	10-9	8-6	8-3
		60,000	18-7	22-9	17-9	18-5	16-7	13-10	12-9	9-5	9-2
	Center distance $A^{k,l}$		5-7	8-4	5-1	5-5	4-5	3-1	2-9	1-10	1-9
24	Span without stirrups[i,j]		9-11	13-7	9-9	10-2	9-0	7-5	7-0	5-10	5-9
	1-#5	40,000	8-6	10-8	8-5	8-8	7-10	6-6	6-2	5-0	4-11
		60,000	10-5	13-0	10-3	10-7	9-7	8-0	7-6	6-1	6-0
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	9-7	12-1	9-6	9-9	8-10	7-5	7-0	5-8	5-6
		60,000	11-9	14-9	11-7	11-11	10-10	9-0	8-6	6-11	6-9
	2-#5	40,000	12-0	15-0	11-9	12-2	11-0	9-2	8-8	7-1	6-11
		60,000	14-7	18-3	14-4	14-10	13-5	11-2	10-7	8-7	8-5
	2-#6	40,000	14-3	17-11	14-1	14-7	13-2	11-0	10-4	8-5	8-3
		60,000	19-11	25-0	19-7	20-3	18-4	15-3	14-5	10-10	10-7
	Center distance $A^{k,l}$		6-3	9-11	6-1	6-6	5-4	3-9	3-4	2-2	2-1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, Grade 40 = 280 MPa, Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

Note: Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups, as shown in shaded cells, shall be equal to or greater than that required for lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups.

a. See Table 608.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness.

b. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Note j.

c. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section 608.8.2 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$ inch, whichever is less.
e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads and between lintel depths.
f. DR indicates design required.
g. Lintel depth, D, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.
h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.
i. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, D. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall be not less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than $d/2$.
j. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.
k. Center distance, A, is the center portion of the clear span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.
l. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, A, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.
m. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet. See Section 608.7.2.1. Lintel clear spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

TABLE 608.8(6)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 6-INCH-THICK WAFFLE-GRID LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS [a, b, c, d, e, f, o]
MAXIMUM ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND MAXIMUM FLOOR SPAN 32 FEET

LINTEL DEPTH, D [g] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH [h], f_y (psi)	DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE 608.8(1)								
			1	2		3		4		5	
			Maximum ground snow load (psf)								
			—	30	70	30	70	30	70	30	70
			Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches)								
8[i]	Span without stirrups[k, l]		2-7	2-9	2-0	2-1	2-0	2-0	2-0	2-0	2-0
	1-#4	40,000	5-2	5-5	4-0	4-3	3-7	3-3	2-11	2-4	2-3
		60,000	5-9	6-3	4-0	4-3	3-7	3-3	2-11	2-4	2-3
	1-#5	40,000	5-9	6-3	4-0	4-3	3-7	3-3	2-11	2-4	2-3
		60,000	5-9	6-3	4-0	4-3	3-7	3-3	2-11	2-4	2-3
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	5-9	6-3	4-0	4-3	3-7	3-3	2-11	2-4	2-3
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance A[m, n]		0-9	0-10	0-6	0-6	0-5	0-5	0-4	STL	STL
12[i]	Span without stirrups[k, l]		2-11	3-1	2-6	2-7	2-5	2-4	2-3	2-1	2-0
	1-#4	40,000	5-9	6-2	4-8	4-10	4-4	4-1	3-9	3-2	3-1
		60,000	8-0	8-7	6-6	6-9	6-0	5-5	4-11	3-11	3-10
	1-#5	40,000	8-1	8-9	6-8	6-11	6-0	5-5	4-11	3-11	3-10
		60,000	9-1	10-3	6-8	7-0	6-0	5-5	4-11	3-11	3-10
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	9-1	9-9	6-8	7-0	6-0	5-5	4-11	3-11	3-10
	Center distance A[m, n]		1-3	1-5	0-10	0-11	0-9	0-8	0-6	STL	STL
	Span without stirrups[k, l]		4-0	4-4	3-6	3-7	3-4	3-3	3-1	2-10	2-10

LINTEL DEPTH, D [g] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH [h], f_y (psi)	DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE 608.8(1)								
			1	2		3		4		5	
			Maximum ground snow load (psf)								
			—	30	70	30	70	30	70	30	70
			Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches)								
16[i]	1-#4	40,000	6-7	7-3	5-6	5-9	5-2	4-10	4-6	3-9	3-8
		60,000	8-0	8-10	6-9	7-0	6-3	5-11	5-5	4-7	4-5
	1-#5	40,000	8-2	9-0	6-11	7-2	6-5	6-0	5-7	4-8	4-6
		60,000	11-5	12-6	9-3	9-9	8-4	7-7	6-10	5-6	5-4
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	10-7	11-7	8-11	9-3	8-3	7-7	6-10	5-6	5-4
		60,000	12-2	14-0	9-3	9-9	8-4	7-7	6-10	5-6	5-4
	2-#5	40,000	12-2	14-2	9-3	9-9	8-4	7-7	6-10	5-6	5-4
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance A[m, n]		1-8	2-0	1-2	1-3	1-0	0-11	0-9	STL	STL
20[i]	Span without stirrups[k, l]		5-0	5-6	4-6	4-7	4-3	4-1	4-0	3-8	3-8
	1-#4	40,000	7-2	8-2	6-3	6-6	5-10	5-6	5-1	4-3	4-2
		60,000	8-11	9-11	7-8	7-11	7-1	6-8	6-2	5-2	5-0
	1-#5	40,000	9-1	10-2	7-9	8-1	7-3	6-10	6-4	5-4	5-2
		60,000	12-8	14-2	10-11	11-3	10-2	9-6	8-9	7-1	6-10
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	10-3	11-5	8-9	9-1	8-2	7-8	7-1	6-0	5-10
		60,000	14-3	15-11	11-9	12-5	10-8	9-9	8-9	7-1	6-10
	2-#5	40,000	14-6	16-3	11-6	12-1	10-4	9-6	8-6	6-11	6-8
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance A[m, n]		2-0	2-6	1-6	1-7	1-3	1-1	1-0	STL	STL
24w[j]	Span without stirrups[k, l]		6-0	6-8	5-5	5-7	5-3	5-0	4-10	4-6	4-5
	1-#4	40,000	7-11	9-0	6-11	7-2	6-5	6-0	5-7	4-8	4-7
		60,000	9-8	10-11	8-5	8-9	7-10	7-4	6-10	5-9	5-7
	1-#5	40,000	9-10	11-2	8-7	8-11	8-0	7-6	7-0	5-10	5-8
		60,000	12-0	13-7	10-6	10-10	9-9	9-2	8-6	7-2	6-11
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	11-1	12-7	9-8	10-1	9-1	8-6	7-10	6-7	6-5
		60,000	15-6	17-7	13-6	14-0	12-8	11-10	10-8	8-7	8-4
	2-#5	40,000	15-6	17-11	12-8	13-4	11-6	10-7	9-7	7-10	7-7
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance A[m, n]		2-4	3-0	1-9	1-11	1-6	1-4	1-2	STL	STL

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, Grade 40 = 280 MPa, Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

a. Where lintels are formed with waffle-grid forms, form material shall be removed, if necessary, to create top and bottom flanges of the lintel that are not less than 3 inches in depth (in the vertical direction), are not less than 5 inches in width for 6-inch-nominal waffle-grid forms and not less than 7 inches in width for 8-inch-nominal waffle-grid forms. See Figure 608.8(3). Flat form lintels shall be permitted in place of waffle-grid lintels. See Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(5).

b. See Table 608.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thicknesses and minimum dimensions and spacing of cores.

c. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Notes l and n. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section 608.8.2 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$ -inch, whichever is less.
e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads.
f. DR indicates design required. STL indicates stirrups required throughout lintel.
g. Lintel depth, D, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.
h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.
i. Lintels less than 24 inches in depth with stirrups shall be formed from flat-wall forms [see Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(5)], or, if necessary, form material shall be removed from waffle-grid forms so as to provide the required cover for stirrups. Allowable spans for lintels formed with flat-wall forms shall be determined from Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(5).
j. Where stirrups are required for 24-inch-deep lintels, the spacing shall not exceed 12 inches on center.
k. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, D. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall be not less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than $d/2$.
l. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.
m. Center distance, A, is the center portion of the span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.
n. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, A, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.
o. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet. See Section 608.7.2.1. Lintel spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

TABLE 608.8(7)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 8-INCH-THICK WAFFLE-GRID LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS [a, b, c, d, e, f, o]
MAXIMUM ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND MAXIMUM FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET

LINTEL DEPTH, D [g] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], f_y (psi)	DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE 608.8(1)								
			1	2		3		4		5	
			Maximum ground snow load (psf)								
			—	30	70	30	70	30	70	30	70
			Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches)								
8[i]	Span without stirrups[k, l]		2-6	2-9	2-0	2-1	2-0	2-0	2-0	2-0	2-0
	1-#4	40,000	4-5	4-9	3-7	3-9	3-4	3-0	2-10	2-3	2-2
		60,000	5-6	6-2	4-0	4-3	3-7	3-1	2-10	2-3	2-2
	1-#5	40,000	5-6	6-2	4-0	4-3	3-7	3-1	2-10	2-3	2-2
	Center distance A[m, n]		0-9	0-10	0-6	0-6	0-5	0-4	0-4	STL	STL
12[i]	Span without stirrups[k, l]		2-10	3-1	2-6	2-7	2-5	2-3	2-2	2-0	2-0
	1-#4	40,000	5-7	6-1	4-8	4-10	4-4	3-11	3-8	3-0	2-11
		60,000	6-9	7-5	5-8	5-11	5-4	4-9	4-5	3-8	3-7
	1-#5	40,000	6-11	7-7	5-10	6-0	5-5	4-10	4-6	3-9	3-7
		60,000	8-8	10-1	6-7	7-0	5-11	5-2	4-8	3-9	3-7
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	8-8	9-10	6-7	7-0	5-11	5-2	4-8	3-9	3-7
		60,000	8-8	10-1	6-7	7-0	5-11	5-2	4-8	3-9	3-7
	Center distance A[m, n]		1-2	1-5	0-10	0-11	0-9	0-7	0-6	STL	STL
	Span without stirrups[k, l]		3-10	4-3	3-6	3-7	3-4	3-2	3-0	2-10	2-9

LINTEL DEPTH, D[g] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], f_y (psi)	DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE 608.8(1)								
			1	2		3		4		5	
			Maximum ground snow load (psf)								
			—	30	70	30	70	30	70	30	70
			Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches)								
16[i]	1-#4	40,000	6-5	7-2	5-6	5-9	5-2	4-8	4-4	3-7	3-6
		60,000	7-9	8-9	6-9	7-0	6-3	5-8	5-3	4-4	4-3
	1-#5	40,000	7-11	8-11	6-10	7-1	6-5	5-9	5-4	4-5	4-4
		60,000	9-8	10-11	8-4	8-8	7-10	7-0	6-6	5-2	5-1
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	9-0	10-1	7-9	8-0	7-3	6-6	6-1	5-0	4-11
		60,000	11-5	13-10	9-2	9-8	8-3	7-2	6-6	5-2	5-1
	Center distance A[m, n]		1-6	1-11	1-2	1-3	1-0	0-10	0-8	STL	STL
20[i]	Span without stirrups[k, l]		4-10	5-5	4-5	4-7	4-3	4-0	3-11	3-7	3-7
	1-#4	40,000	7-0	8-1	6-3	6-5	5-10	5-3	4-11	4-1	3-11
		60,000	8-7	9-10	7-7	7-10	7-1	6-5	6-0	4-11	4-10
	1-#5	40,000	8-9	10-1	7-9	8-0	7-3	6-6	6-1	5-1	4-11
		60,000	10-8	12-3	9-6	9-10	8-10	8-0	7-5	6-2	6-0
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	9-10	11-4	8-9	9-1	8-2	7-4	6-10	5-8	5-7
		60,000	12-0	13-10	10-8	11-0	9-11	9-0	8-4	6-8	6-6
	2-#5	40,000	12-3	14-1	10-10	11-3	10-2	8-11	8-1	6-6	6-4
		60,000	14-0	17-6	11-8	12-3	10-6	9-1	8-4	6-8	6-6
	Center distance A[m, n]		1-10	2-5	1-5	1-7	1-3	1-0	0-11	STL	STL
24[j]	Span without stirrups[k, l]		5-9	6-7	5-5	5-6	5-2	4-11	4-9	4-5	4-4
	1-#4	40,000	7-6	8-10	6-10	7-1	6-5	5-9	5-5	4-6	4-4
		60,000	9-2	10-9	8-4	8-8	7-10	7-1	6-7	5-6	5-4
	1-#5	40,000	9-5	11-0	8-6	8-10	8-0	7-2	6-8	5-7	5-5
		60,000	11-5	13-5	10-5	10-9	9-9	8-9	8-2	6-10	6-8
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	10-7	12-5	9-8	10-0	9-0	8-1	7-7	6-3	6-2
		60,000	12-11	15-2	11-9	12-2	11-0	9-11	9-3	7-8	7-6
	2-#5	40,000	13-2	15-6	12-0	12-5	11-2	9-11	9-2	7-5	7-3
		60,000	16-3	21-0	14-1	14-10	12-9	11-1	10-1	8-1	7-11
	2-#6	40,000	14-4	18-5	12-6	13-2	11-5	9-11	9-2	7-5	7-3
	Center distance A[m, n]		2-1	2-11	1-9	1-10	1-6	1-3	1-1	STL	STL

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, Grade 40 = 280 MPa, Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

a. Where lintels are formed with waffle-grid forms, form material shall be removed, if necessary, to create top and bottom flanges of the lintel that are not less than 3 inches in depth (in the vertical direction), are not less than 5 inches in width for 6-inch-nominal waffle-grid forms and not less than 7 inches in width for 8-inch-nominal waffle-grid forms. See Figure 608.8(3). Flat-form lintels shall be permitted in lieu of waffle-grid lintels. See Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(5).

b. See Table 608.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thicknesses and minimum dimensions and spacing of cores.

c. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Notes l and n. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section 608.8.2 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$ -inch, whichever is less.

e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads.

f. STL indicates stirrups required throughout lintel.
g. Lintel depth, *D*, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.
h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.
i. Lintels less than 24 inches in depth with stirrups shall be formed from flat-wall forms [see Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(5)], or, if necessary, form material shall be removed from waffle-grid forms so as to provide the required cover for stirrups. Allowable spans for lintels formed with flat-wall forms shall be determined from Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(5).
j. Where stirrups are required for 24-inch-deep lintels, the spacing shall not exceed 12 inches on center.
k. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, *D*. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall be not less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than *d/2*.
l. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.
m. Center distance, *A*, is the center portion of the span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.
n. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, *A*, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.
o. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet. See Section 608.7.2.1. Lintel spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

TABLE 608.8(8)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 6-INCH-THICK SCREEN-GRID LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS [a, b, c, d, e, f, p]
ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET

LINTEL DEPTH, *D* [g] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH [h], f_y (psi)	DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE 608.8(1)								
			1	2		3		4		5	
			Maximum ground snow load (psf)								
			—	30	70	30	70	30	70	30	70
			Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches)								
12[i,j]	Span without stirrups		2-9	2-11	2-4	2-5	2-3	2-3	2-2	2-0	2-0
16[i,j]	Span without stirrups		3-9	4-0	3-4	3-5	3-2	3-1	3-0	2-9	2-9
20[i,j]	Span without stirrups		4-9	5-1	4-3	4-4	4-1	4-0	3-10	3-7	3-7
24[k]	Span without stirrups[l, m]		5-8	6-3	5-2	5-3	5-0	4-10	4-8	4-4	4-4
	1-#4	40,000	7-11	9-0	6-11	7-2	6-5	6-1	5-8	4-9	4-7
		60,000	9-9	11-0	8-5	8-9	7-10	7-5	6-10	5-9	5-7
	1-#5	40,000	9-11	11-2	8-7	8-11	8-0	7-7	7-0	5-11	5-9
		60,000	12-1	13-8	10-6	10-10	9-9	9-3	8-6	7-2	7-0
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	11-2	12-8	9-9	10-1	9-1	8-7	7-11	6-8	6-6
		60,000	15-7	17-7	12-8	13-4	11-6	10-8	9-8	7-11	7-8
	2-#5	40,000	14-11	18-0	12-2	12-10	11-1	10-3	9-4	7-8	7-5
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
	Center distance *A*[n, o]		2-0	2-6	1-6	1-7	1-4	1-2	1-0	STL	STL

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, Grade 40 = 280 MPa, Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

a. Where lintels are formed with screen-grid forms, form material shall be removed if necessary to create top and bottom flanges of the lintel that are not less than 5 inches in width and not less than 2.5 inches in depth (in the vertical direction). See Figure 608.8(4). Flat-

form lintels shall be permitted in lieu of screen-grid lintels. See Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(5).

b. See Table 608.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness and minimum dimensions and spacings of cores.

c. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Notes m and o. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section 608.7.2.1 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$ inch, whichever is less.

e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads.

f. DR indicates design required. STL indicates stirrups required throughout lintel.

g. Lintel depth, D, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.

h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.

i. Stirrups are not required for lintels less than 24 inches in depth fabricated from screen-grid forms. Top and bottom reinforcement shall consist of a No. 4 bar having a yield strength of 40,000 psi or 60,000 psi.

j. Lintels between 12 and 24 inches in depth with stirrups shall be formed from flat-wall forms [see Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(5)], or form material shall be removed from screen-grid forms to provide a concrete section comparable to that required for a flat wall. Allowable spans for flat lintels with stirrups shall be determined from Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(5).

k. Where stirrups are required for 24-inch-deep lintels, the spacing shall not exceed 12 inches on center.

l. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, D. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall be not less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than 12 inches.

m. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.

n. Center distance, A, is the center portion of the span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.

o. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, A, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.

p. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet. See Section 608.7.2.1. Lintel spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

TABLE 608.8(9)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR FLAT LINTELS WITHOUT STIRRUPS IN NONLOAD-BEARING WALLS [a, b, c, d, e, g]

LINTEL DEPTH, D [f] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH, f_y (psi)	NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches)							
			4		6		8		10	
			Lintel Supporting							
			Concrete Wall	Light-framed Gable	Concrete Wall	Light-framed Gable	Concrete Wall	Light-framed Gable	Concrete Wall	Light-framed Gable
			Maximum Clear Span of Lintel (feet - inches)							
8	1-#4	40,000	10-11	11-5	9-7	11-2	7-10	9-5	7-3	9-2
		60,000	12-5	11-7	10-11	13-5	9-11	13-2	9-3	12-10
	1-#5	40,000	12-7	11-7	11-1	13-8	10-1	13-5	9-4	13-1
		60,000	DR	DR	12-7	16-4	11-6	14-7	10-9	14-6
	2-#4 or 1-#6	40,000	DR	DR	12-0	15-3	10-11	15-0	10-2	14-8
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	12-2	15-3	11-7	15-3
	2-#5	40,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	12-7	16-7	11-9	16-7
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	13-3	16-7
	2-#6	40,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	13-2	17-8
		60,000	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR

LINTEL DEPTH, D [f] (inches)	NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE	STEEL YIELD STRENGTH, f_y (psi)	NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches)							
			4		6		8		10	
			Lintel Supporting							
			Concrete Wall	Light-framed Gable	Concrete Wall	Light-framed Gable	Concrete Wall	Light-framed Gable	Concrete Wall	Light-framed Gable
			Maximum Clear Span of Lintel (feet - inches)							
12	1-#4	40,000	11-5	9-10	10-6	12-0	9-6	11-6	8-9	11-1
		60,000	11-5	9-10	11-8	13-3	10-11	14-0	10-1	13-6
	1-#5	40,000	11-5	9-10	11-8	13-3	11-1	14-4	10-3	13-9
		60,000	11-5	9-10	11-8	13-3	11-10	16-0	11-9	16-9
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	DR	DR	11-8	13-3	11-10	16-0	11-2	15-6
		60,000	DR	DR	11-8	13-3	11-10	16-0	11-11	18-4
	2-#5	40,000	DR	DR	11-8	13-3	11-10	16-0	11-11	18-4
		60,000	DR	DR	11-8	13-3	11-10	16-0	11-11	18-4
16	1-#4	40,000	13-6	13-0	11-10	13-8	10-7	12-11	9-11	12-4
		60,000	13-6	13-0	13-8	16-7	12-4	15-9	11-5	15-0
	1-#5	40,000	13-6	13-0	13-10	17-0	12-6	16-1	11-7	15-4
		60,000	13-6	13-0	13-10	17-1	14-0	19-7	13-4	18-8
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	13-6	13-0	13-10	17-1	13-8	18-2	12-8	17-4
		60,000	13-6	13-0	13-10	17-1	14-0	20-3	14-1	—
	2-#5	40,000	13-6	13-0	13-10	17-1	14-0	20-3	14-1	—
		60,000	DR	DR	13-10	17-1	14-0	20-3	14-1	—
20	1-#4	40,000	14-11	15-10	13-0	14-10	11-9	13-11	10-10	13-2
		60,000	15-3	15-10	14-11	18-1	13-6	17-0	12-6	16-2
	1-#5	40,000	15-3	15-10	15-2	18-6	13-9	17-5	12-8	16-6
		60,000	15-3	15-10	15-8	20-5	15-9	—	14-7	20-1
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	15-3	15-10	15-8	20-5	14-11	—	13-10	—
		60,000	15-3	15-10	15-8	20-5	15-10	—	15-11	—
	2-#5	40,000	15-3	15-10	15-8	20-5	15-10	—	15-11	—
		60,000	15-3	15-10	15-8	20-5	15-10	—	15-11	—
24	1-#4	40,000	16-1	17-1	13-11	15-10	12-7	14-9	11-8	13-10
		60,000	16-11	18-5	16-1	19-3	14-6	18-0	13-5	17-0
	1-#5	40,000	16-11	18-5	16-3	19-8	14-9	18-5	13-8	17-4
		60,000	16-11	18-5	17-4	—	17-0	—	15-8	—
	2-#4 1-#6	40,000	16-11	18-5	17-4	—	16-1	—	14-10	—
		60,000	16-11	18-5	17-4	—	17-6	—	17-1	—
	2-#5	40,000	16-11	18-5	17-4	—	17-6	—	17-4	—
		60,000	16-11	18-5	17-4	—	17-6	—	17-8	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, Grade 40 = 280 MPa, Grade 60 = 420 MPa. DR = Design Required.

a. See Table 608.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness.

b. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Note e.

c. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$ -inch, whichever is less.
d. Linear interpolation between lintels depths, D, is permitted provided the two cells being used to interpolate are shaded.
e. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, spans in cells that are shaded shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05.
f. Lintel depth, D, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.
g. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet. See Section 608.7.2.1. Lintel spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information purposes only.

TABLE 608.8(10)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR WAFFLE-GRID AND SCREEN-GRID LINTELS WITHOUT STIRRUPS IN NONLOAD- BEARING WALLS [c, d, e, f, g]

LINTEL DEPTH [h], *D* (inches)	FORM TYPE AND NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches)					
	6-inch Waffle-grid [a]		8-inch Waffle-grid [a]		6-inch Screen-grid [b]	
	Lintel supporting					
	Concrete Wall	Light-framed Gable	Concrete Wall	Light-framed Gable	Concrete Wall	Light-framed Gable
	Maximum Clear Span of Lintel (feet - inches)					
8	10-3	8-8	8-8	8-3	—	—
12	9-2	7-6	7-10	7-1	8-8	6-9
16	10-11	10-0	9-4	9-3	—	—
20	12-5	12-2	10-7	11-2	—	—
24	13-9	14-2	11-10	12-11	13-0	12-9

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, Grade 40 = 280 MPa, Grade 60 = 420 MPa.
a. Where lintels are formed with waffle-grid forms, form material shall be removed, if necessary, to create top and bottom flanges of the lintel that are not less than 3 inches in depth (in the vertical direction), are not less than 5 inches in width for 6-inch waffle-grid forms and not less than 7 inches in width for 8-inch waffle-grid forms. See Figure 608.8(3). Flat-form lintels shall be permitted in lieu of waffle-grid lintels. See Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(5).
b. Where lintels are formed with screen-grid forms, form material shall be removed if necessary to create top and bottom flanges of the lintel that are not less than 5 inches in width and not less than 2.5 inches in depth (in the vertical direction). See Figure 608.8(4). Flat-form lintels shall be permitted in lieu of screen-grid lintels. See Tables 608.8(2) through 608.8(5).
c. See Table 608.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness and minimum dimensions and spacing of cores.
d. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Note g.
e. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where L is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$ -inch, whichever is less.
f. Top and bottom reinforcement shall consist of a No. 4 bar having a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi.
g. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, spans in shaded cells shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05.
h. Lintel depth, D, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.

608.9 Requirements for connections–general. Concrete walls shall be connected to footings, floors, ceilings and roofs in accordance with this section.

608.9.1 Connections between concrete walls and light-framed floor, ceiling and roof systems. Connections between concrete walls and light-framed floor, ceiling and roof systems using the prescriptive details of Figures 608.9(1) through 608.9(12) shall comply with this section and Sections 608.9.2 and 608.9.3.

608.9.1.1 Anchor bolts. Anchor bolts used to connect light-framed floor, ceiling and roof systems to concrete walls in accordance with Figures 608.9(1) through 608.9(12) shall have heads, or shall be rods with threads on both ends with a hex or square nut on the end embedded in the concrete. Bolts and threaded rods shall comply with Section 608.5.2.2. Anchor bolts with J- or L-hooks shall not be used where the connection details in these figures are used.

608.9.1.2 Removal of stay-in-place form material at bolts. Holes in stay-in-place forms for installing bolts for attaching face-mounted wood ledger boards to the wall shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter for forms not greater than $1^1/_2$ -inches (38 mm) in thickness, and increased 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter for each $^1/_2$ -inch (12.7 mm) increase in form thickness. Holes in stay-in-place forms for installing bolts for attaching face-mounted cold-formed steel tracks to the wall shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) square. The wood ledger board or steel track shall be in direct contact with the concrete at each bolt location.

Exception: A vapor retarder or other material less than or equal to $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) in thickness is permitted to be installed between the wood ledger or cold-formed track and the concrete.

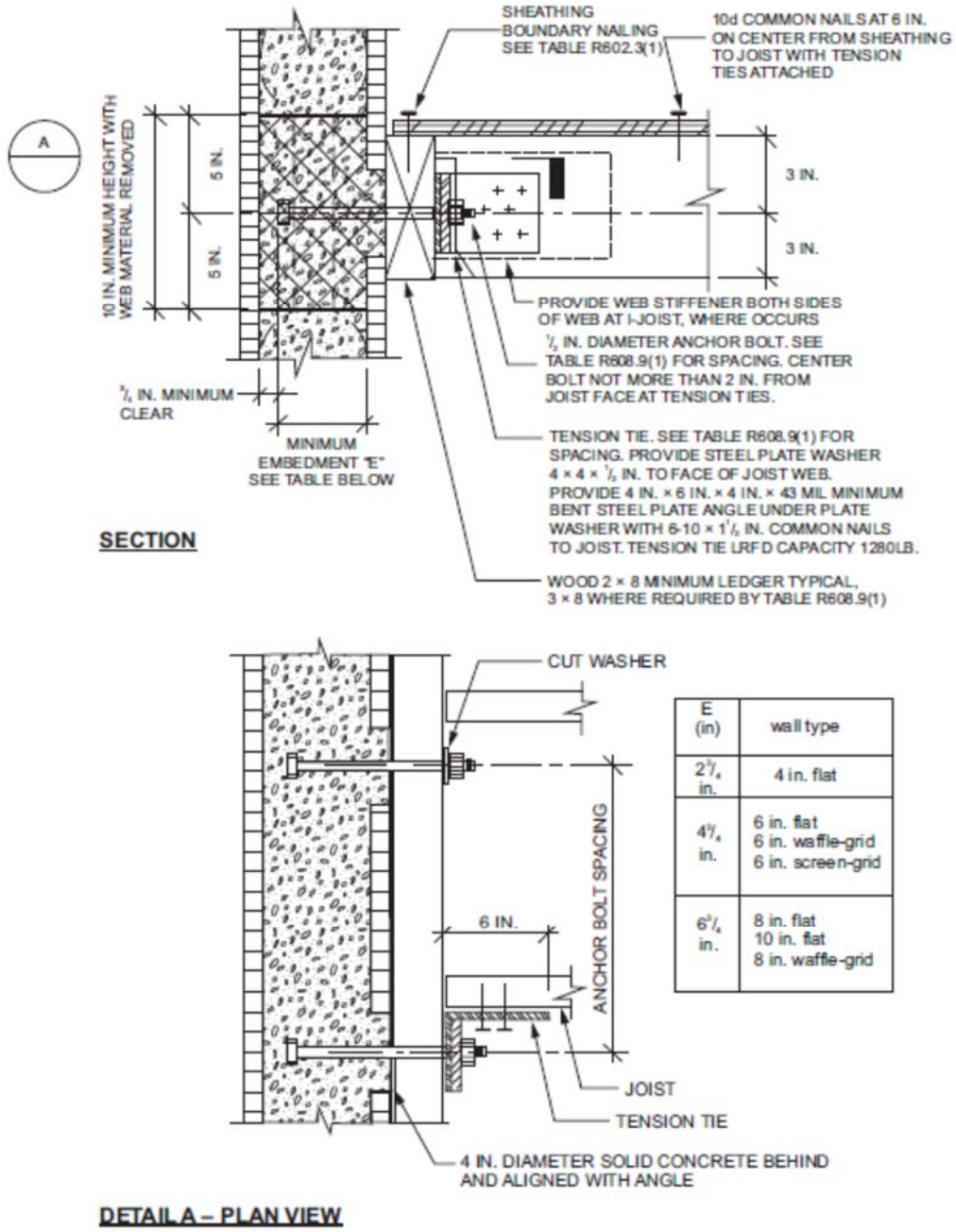
608.9.2 Connections between concrete walls and light-framed floor systems. Connections between concrete walls and light-framed floor systems shall be in accordance with one of the following:

1. For floor systems of wood-framed construction, the provisions of Section 608.9.1 and the prescriptive details of Figures 608.9(1) through 608.9(4), where permitted by the tables accompanying those figures. Portions of connections of wood-framed floor systems not noted in the figures shall be in accordance with Section 502, or AWC WFCM, if applicable. Wood framing members shall be of a species having a specific gravity equal to or greater than 0.42.
2. For floor systems of cold-formed steel construction, the provisions of Section 608.9.1 and the prescriptive details of Figures 608.9(5) through 608.9(8), where permitted by the tables accompanying those figures. Portions of connections of cold-formed steel-framed floor systems not noted in the figures shall be in accordance with Section 505, or AISI S230, if applicable.
3. Proprietary connectors selected to resist loads and load combinations in accordance with Appendix A (ASD) or Appendix B (LRFD) of PCA 100.

4. An engineered design using loads and load combinations in accordance with Appendix A (ASD) or Appendix B (LRFD) of PCA 100.
5. An engineered design using loads and material design provisions in accordance with this code, or in accordance with ASCE 7, ACI 318, and AWC NDS for wood-framed construction or AISI S100 for cold-formed steel frame construction.

608.9.3 Connections between concrete walls and light-framed ceiling and roof systems. Connections between concrete walls and light-framed ceiling and roof systems shall be in accordance with one of the following:

1. For ceiling and roof systems of wood-framed construction, the provisions of Section 608.9.1 and the prescriptive details of Figures 608.9(9) and 608.9(10), where permitted by the tables accompanying those figures. Portions of connections of wood-framed ceiling and roof systems not noted in the figures shall be in accordance with Section 802, or AWC WFCM, if applicable. Wood framing members shall be of a species having a specific gravity equal to or greater than 0.42.
2. For ceiling and roof systems of cold-formed steel construction, the provisions of Section 608.9.1 and the prescriptive details of Figures 608.9(11) and 608.9(12), where permitted by the tables accompanying those figures. Portions of connections of cold-formed-steel framed ceiling and roof systems not noted in the figures shall be in accordance with Section 804, or AISI S230, if applicable.
3. Proprietary connectors selected to resist loads and load combinations in accordance with Appendix A (ASD) or Appendix B (LRFD) of PCA 100.
4. An engineered design using loads and load combinations in accordance with Appendix A (ASD) or Appendix B (LRFD) of PCA 100.
5. An engineered design using loads and material design provisions in accordance with this code, or in accordance with ASCE 7, ACI 318, and AWC NDS for wood-framed construction or AISI S100 for cold-formed steel-framed construction



E (in)	wall type
2 3/4 in.	4 in. flat
4 3/4 in.	6 in. flat 6 in. waffle-grid 6 in. screen-grid
6 3/4 in.	8 in. flat 10 in. flat 8 in. waffle-grid

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

FIGURE 608.9(1)
WOOD-FRAMED FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR

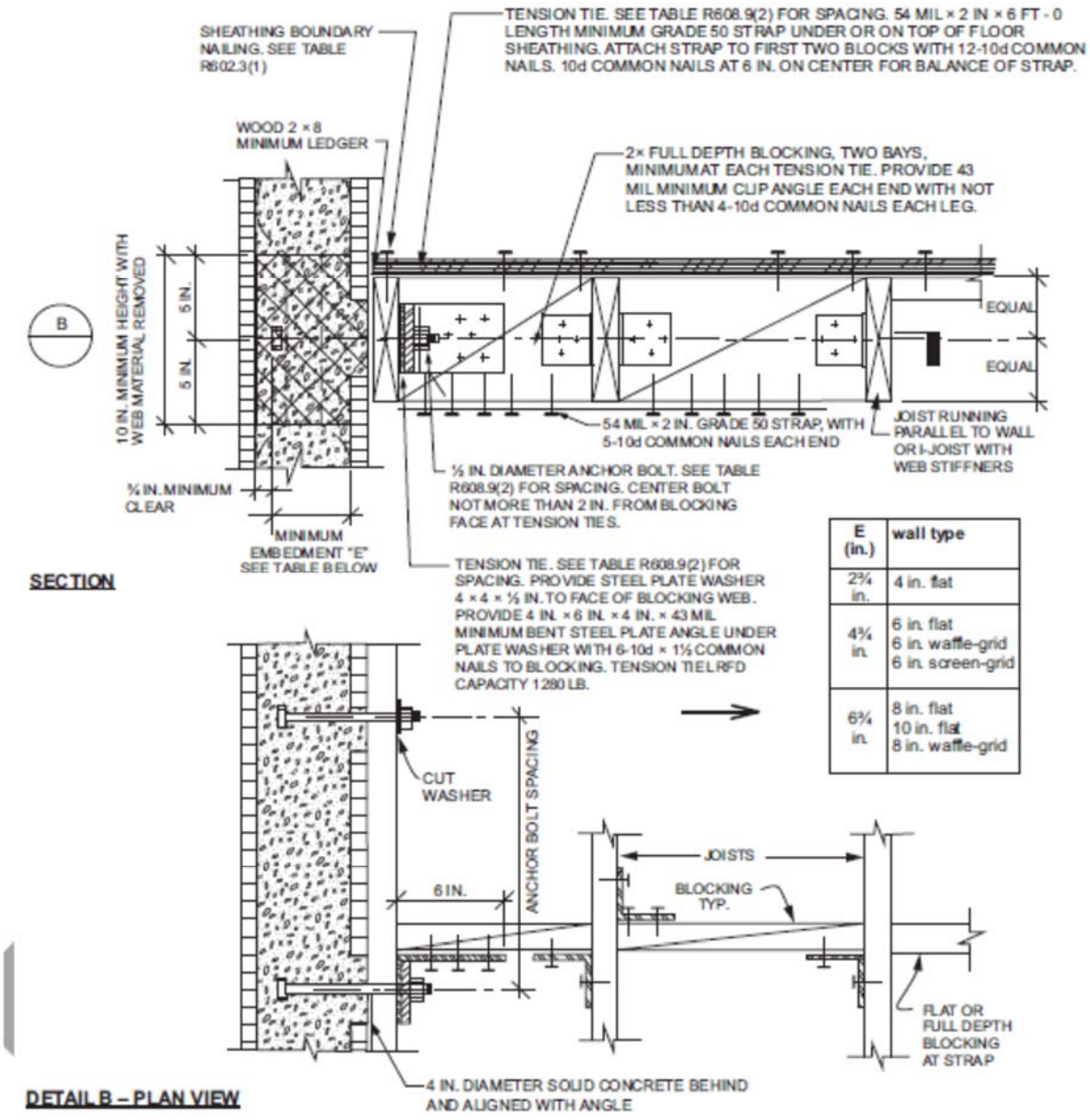
TABLE 608.9(1)
WOOD-FRAMED FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR [a, b]

ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches)	TENSION TIE SPACING (inches)	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph)					
		115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B
		—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C
		—	—	—	110D	117D	125D
12	12						
12	24						
12	36						
12	48						
16	16						
16	32						
16	48						
19.2	19.2						
19.2	38.4						

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure 608.9(1). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded and prohibited where shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section 608 is required. For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.



E (in.)	wall type
2¾ in.	4 in. flat
4¾ in.	6 in. flat 6 in. waffle-grid 6 in. screen-grid
6¾ in.	8 in. flat 10 in. flat 8 in. waffle-grid

FIGURE 608.9(2)
WOOD-FRAMED FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL

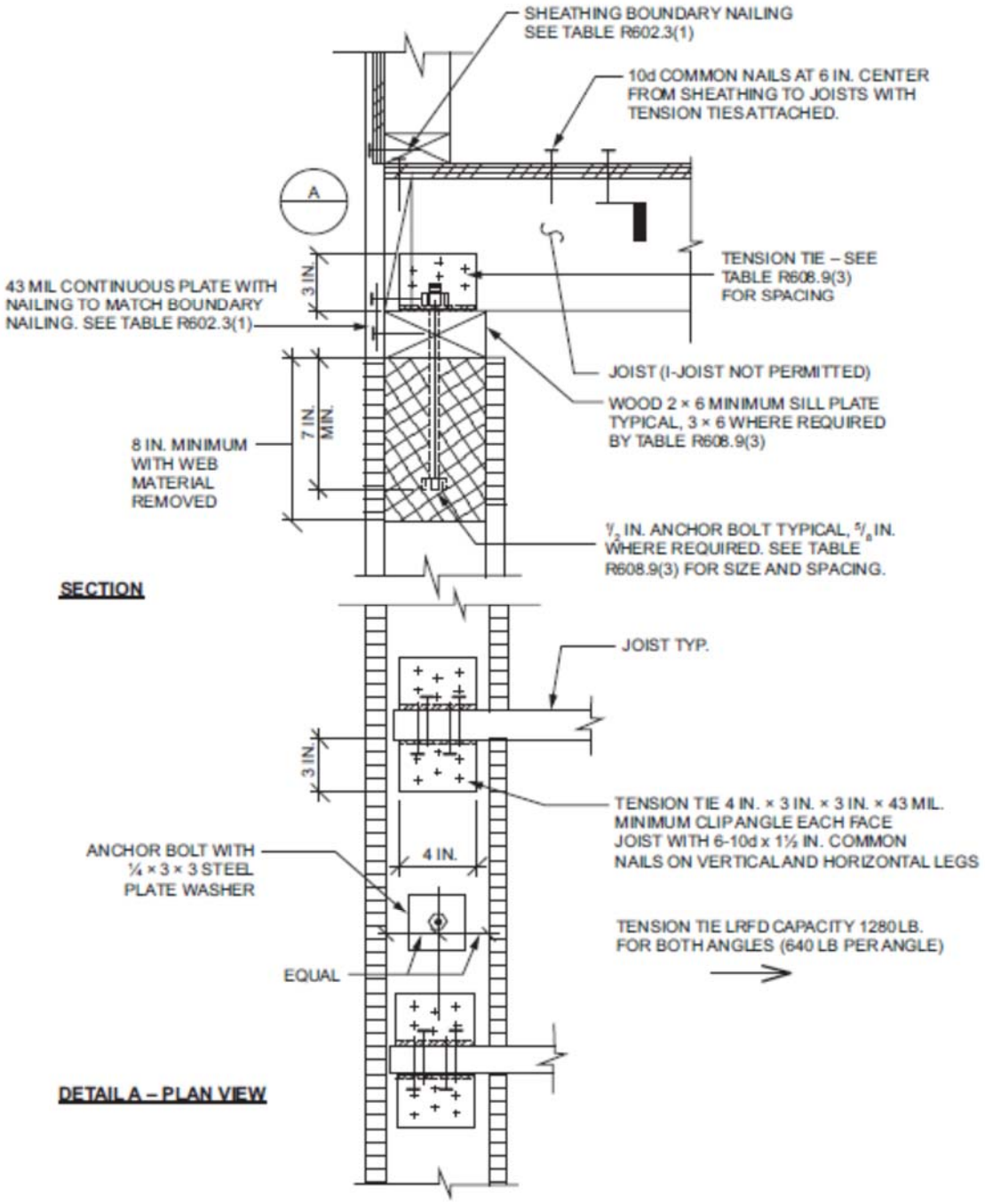
TABLE 608.9(2)
WOOD-FRAMED FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL[a, b]

ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches)	TENSION TIE SPACING (inches)	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY					
		115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B
		—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C
		—	—	—	110D	117D	125D
12	12						
12	24						
12	36						
12	48						
16	16						
16	32						
16	48						
19.2	19.2						
19.2	38.4						
24	24						
24	48						

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure 608.9(2). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded and prohibited where shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section 608 is required.



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

FIGURE 608.9(3)
WOOD-FRAMED FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR

TABLE 608.9(3)
WOOD-FRAMED FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR [a, b, c, d, e]

ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches)	TENSION TIE SPACING (inches)	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY					
		115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B
		—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C
		—	—	—	110D	117D	125D
12	12						6
12	24					6	6
12	36					6	6
12	48				6	6	6
16	16					6	6A
16	32				6	6	6A
16	48			6	6	6	6A
19.2	19.2				6A	6A	6B
19.2	38.4			6	6A	6A	6B
24	24			6A	6B	6B	6B
24	48		6	6A	6B	6B	8B

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

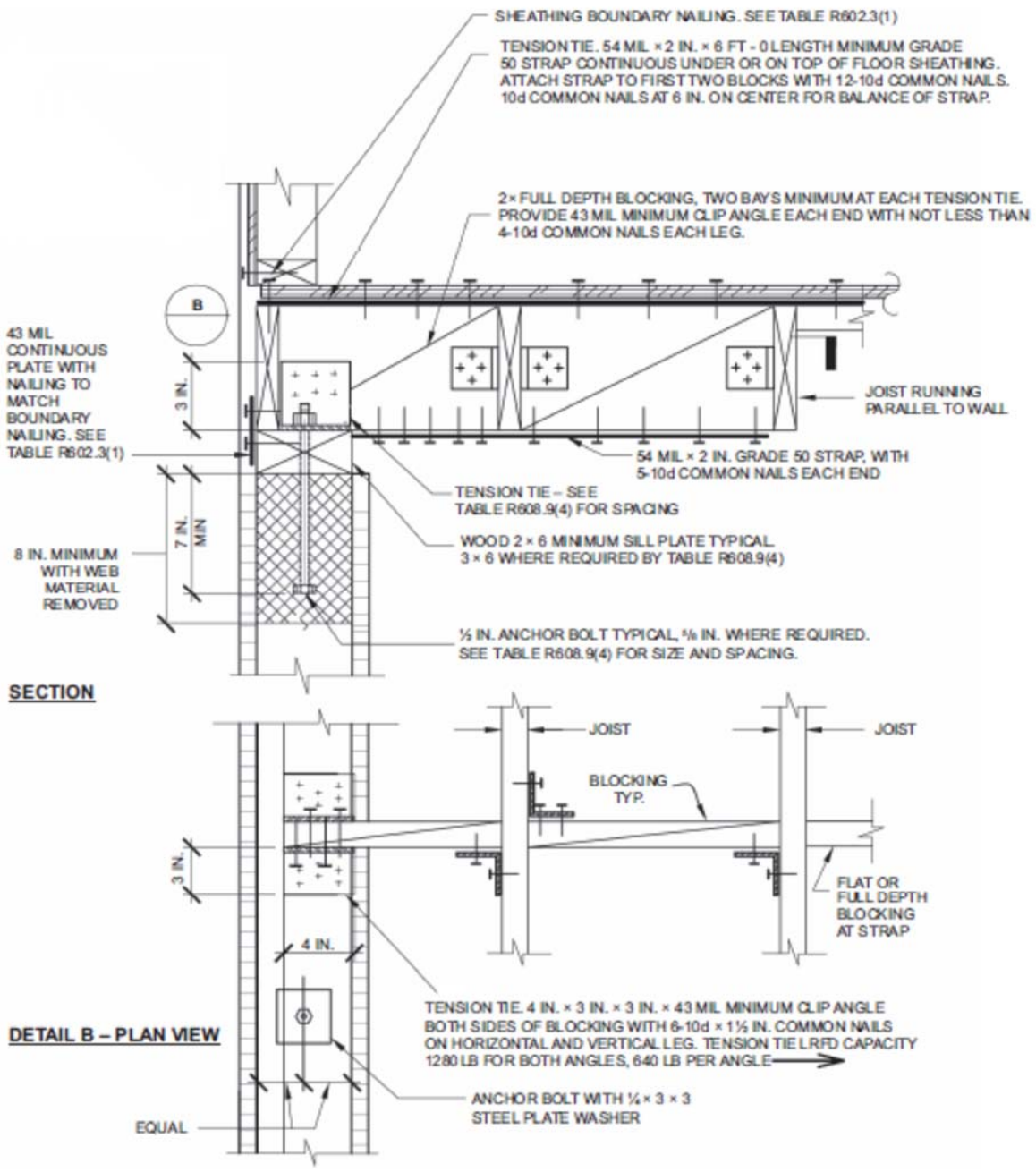
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure 608.9(3). Use of this detail is permitted where cell is not shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions in Section 608 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch-nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells that do not contain a number.

d. Numbers 6 and 8 indicate minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross hatching in Figure 608.9(3). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "A" indicates that a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate is required. Letter "B" indicates that a $^5/_8$-inch-diameter anchor bolt and a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

FIGURE 608.9(4)
WOOD-FRAMED FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL

TABLE 608.9(4)
WOOD-FRAMED FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL [a, b, c, d, e]

ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches)	TENSION TIE SPACING (inches)	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY					
		115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B
		—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C
		—	—	—	110D	117D	125D
12	12						6
12	24					6	6
12	36					6	6
12	48				6	6	6
16	16					6	6A
16	32				6	6	6A
16	48			6	6	6	6A
19.2	19.2				6A	6A	6B
19.2	38.4			6	6A	6A	6B
24	24			6A	6B	6B	6B
24	48		6	6A	6B	6B	8B

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

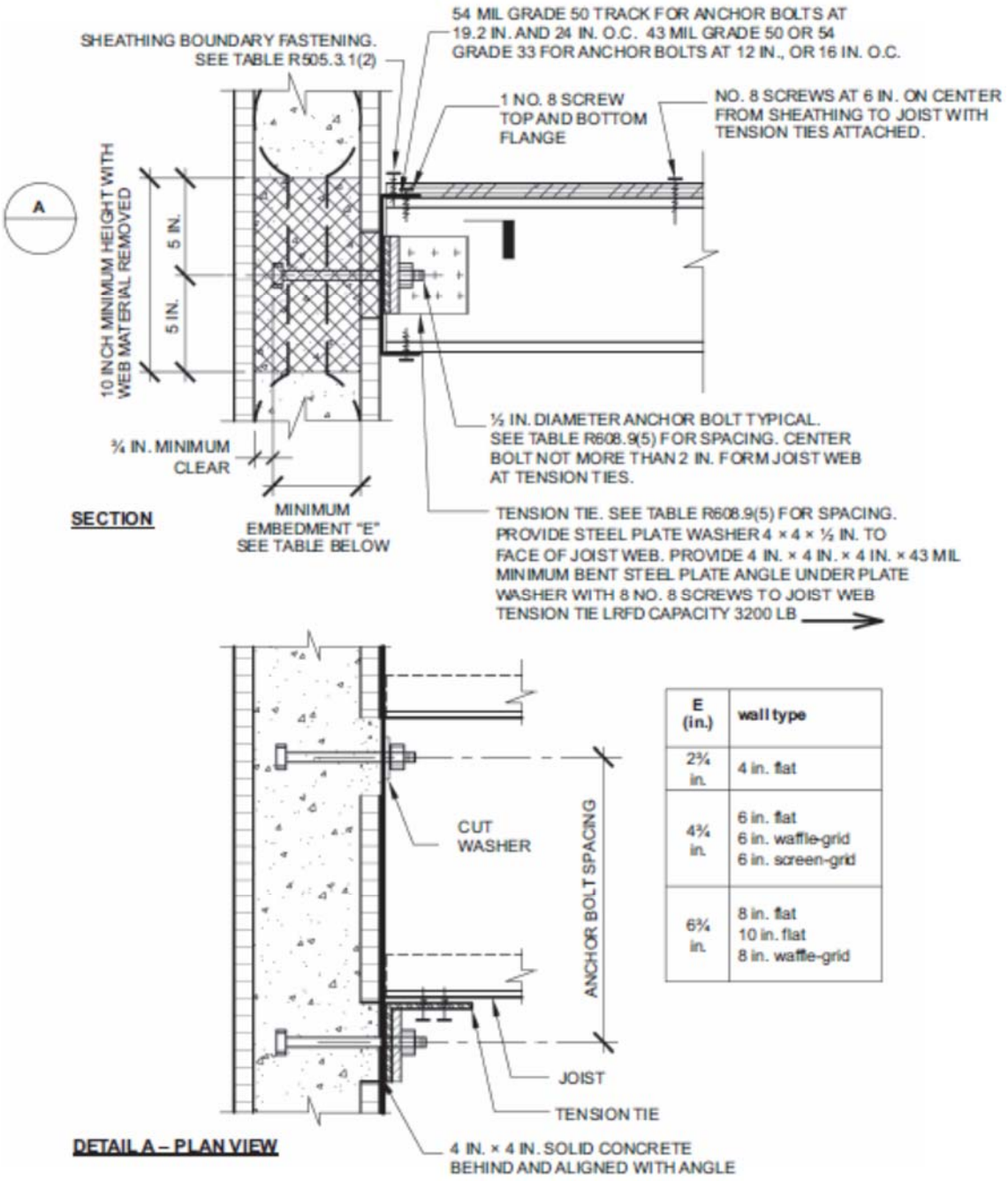
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure 608.9(4). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section 608 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch-nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells that do not contain a number.

d. Numbers 6 and 8 indicate minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross hatching in Figure 608.9(4). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "A" indicates that a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate is required. Letter "B" indicates that a $^5/_8$-inch-diameter anchor bolt and a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.



E (in.)	wall type
2¾ in.	4 in. flat
4¾ in.	6 in. flat 6 in. waffle-grid 6 in. screen-grid
6¾ in.	8 in. flat 10 in. flat 8 in. waffle-grid

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

FIGURE 608.9(5)
COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR

TABLE 608.9(5)
COLD-FORMED STEEL-FRAMED FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR [a, b, c]

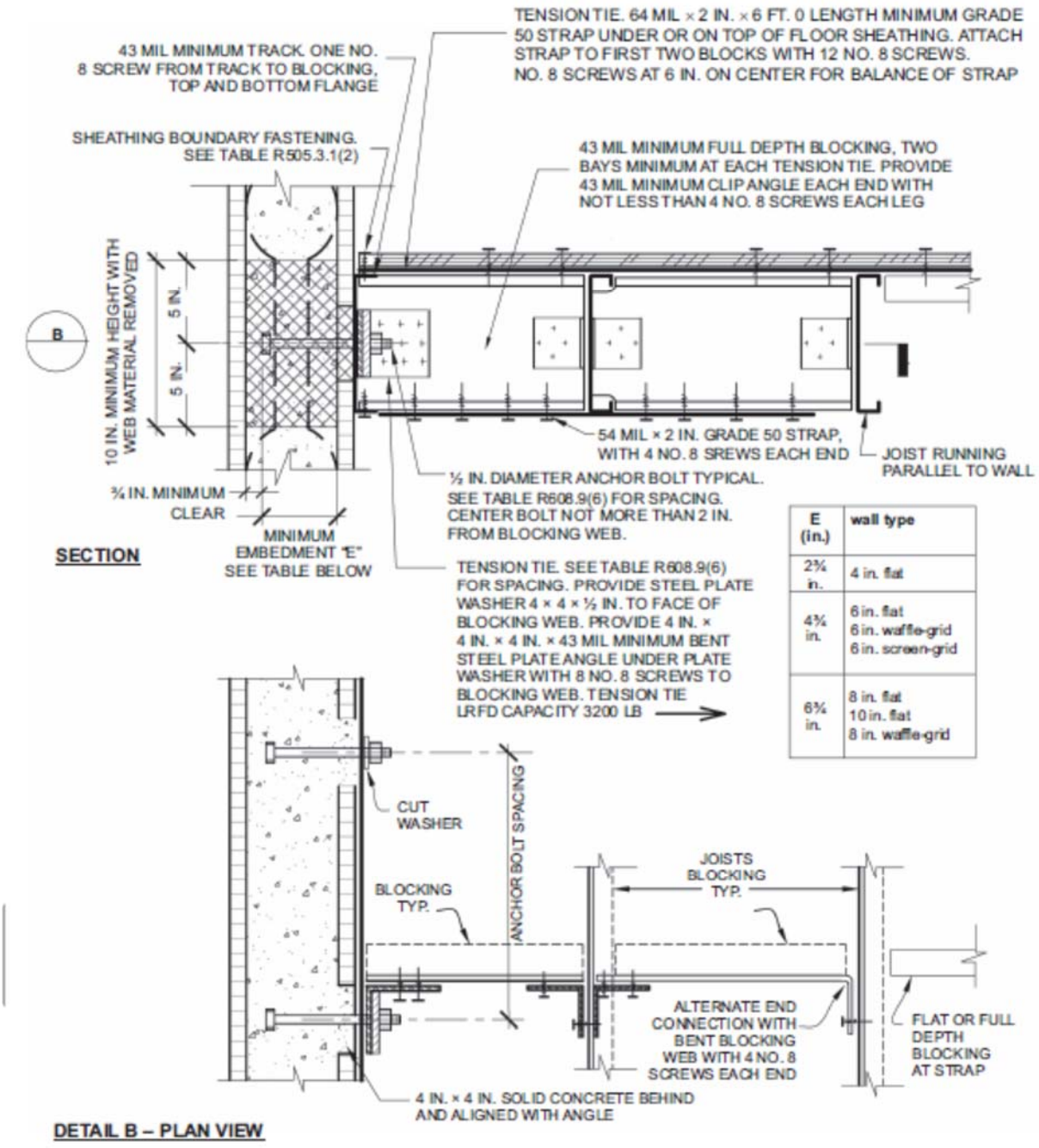
ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches)	TENSION TIE SPACING (inches)	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE					
		115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B
		—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C
		—	—	—	110D	117D	125D
12	12						
12	24						
12	36						
12	48						
16	16						
16	32						
16	48						
19.2	19.2						
19.2	38.4						
24	24						
24	48						

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.4470 m/s.

a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure 608.9(5). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section 608 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch-nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells that do not contain a number.



E (in.)	wall type
2¾ in.	4 in. flat
4¾ in.	6 in. flat 6 in. waffle-grid 6 in. screen-grid
6¾ in.	8 in. flat 10 in. flat 8 in. waffle-grid

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

FIGURE 608.9(6)
COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL

TABLE 608.9(6)
COLD-FORMED STEEL-FRAMED FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL [a, b, c]

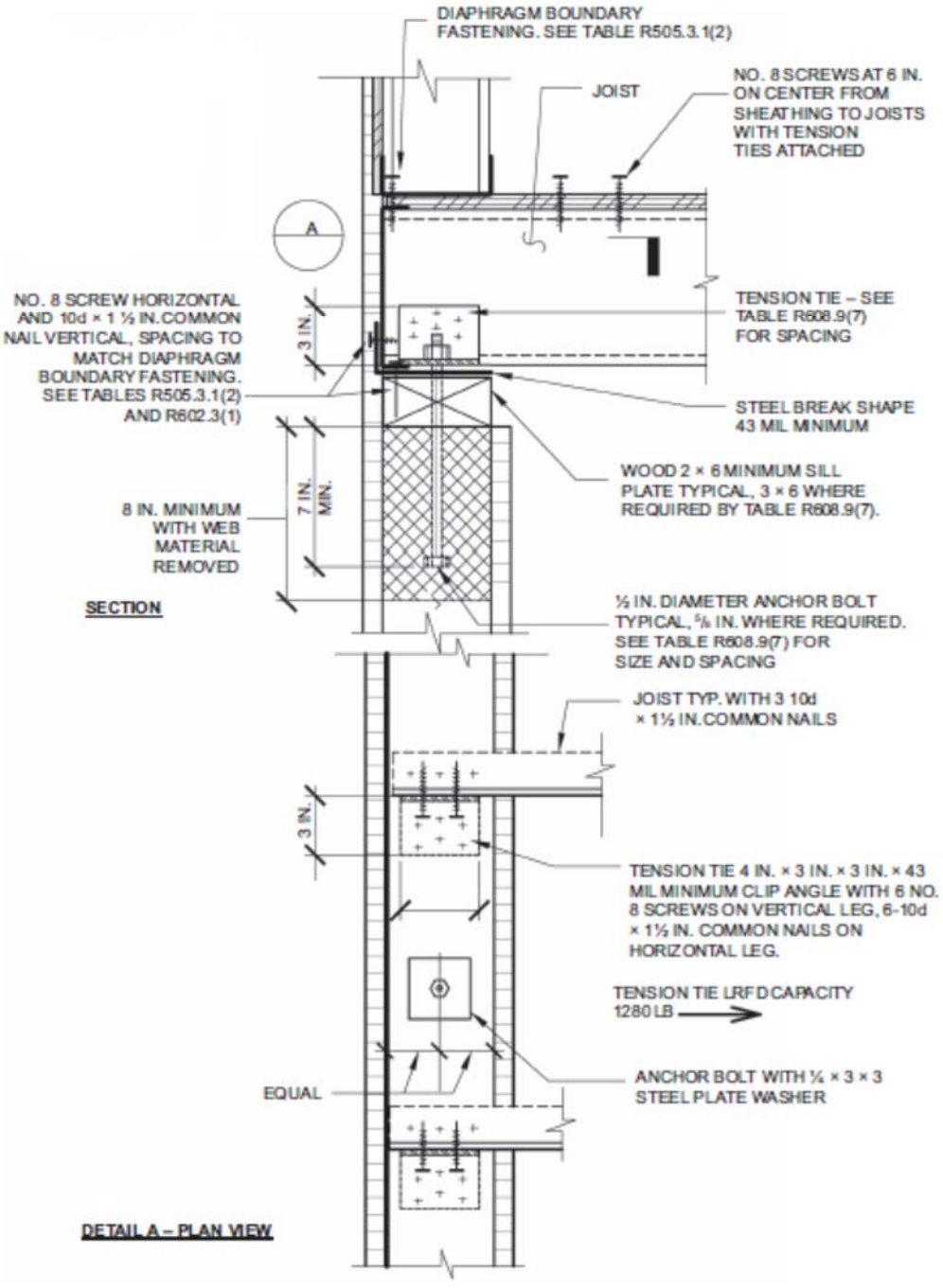
ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches)	TENSION TIE SPACING (inches)	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY					
		115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B
		—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C
		—	—	—	110D	117D	125D
12	12						
12	24						
12	36						
12	48						
16	16						
16	32						
16	48						
19.2	19.2						
19.2	38.4						
24	24						
24	48						

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure 608.9(6). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section 608 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch-nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells that do not contain a number.



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

FIGURE 608.9(7)
COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR

TABLE 608.9(7)
COLD-FORMED STEEL-FRAMED FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR [a, b, c, d, e]

ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches)	TENSION TIE SPACING (inches)	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY					
		115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B
		—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C
		—	—	—	110D	117D	125D
12	12						6
12	24					6	6
16	16					6	6A
16	32				6	6	6A
19.2	19.2				6A	6A	6B
19.2	38.4			6	6A	6A	6B
24	24			6A	6B	6B	6B

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

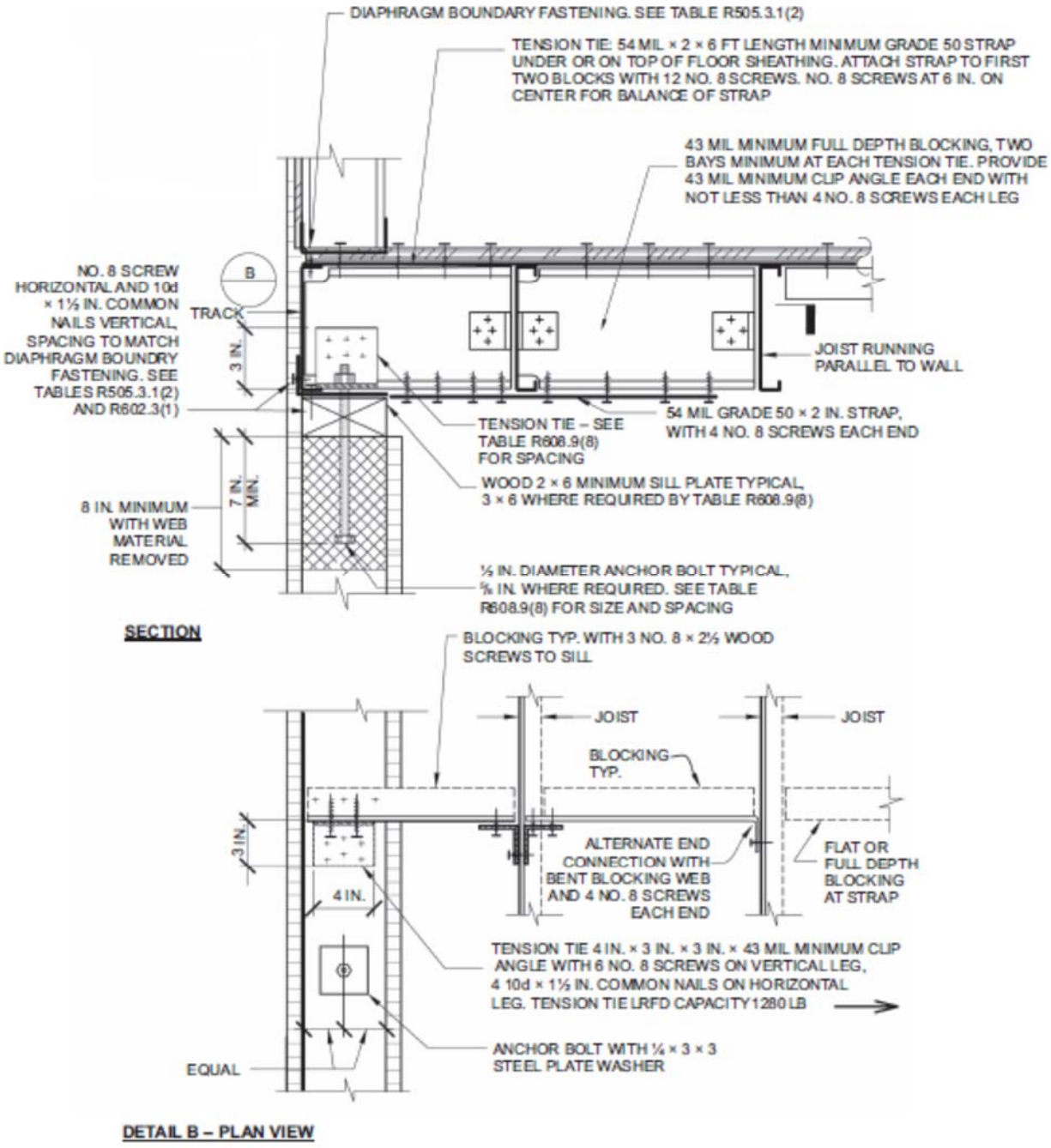
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure 608.9(7). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section 608 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch-nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells that do not contain a number.

d. Number 6 indicates minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross hatching in Figure 608.9(7). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "A" indicates that a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate is required. Letter "B" indicates that a $^5/_8$-inch-diameter anchor bolt and a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

FIGURE 608.9(8)
COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL

TABLE 608.9(8)
COLD-FORMED STEEL-FRAMED FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL [a, b, c, d, e]

ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches)	TENSION TIE SPACING (inches)	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY					
		115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B
		—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C
		—	—	—	110D	117D	125D
12	12						6
12	24					6	6
16	16					6	6A
16	32				6	6	6A
19.2	19.2				6A	6A	6B
19.2	38.4			6	6A	6A	6B
24	24			6A	6B	6B	6B

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

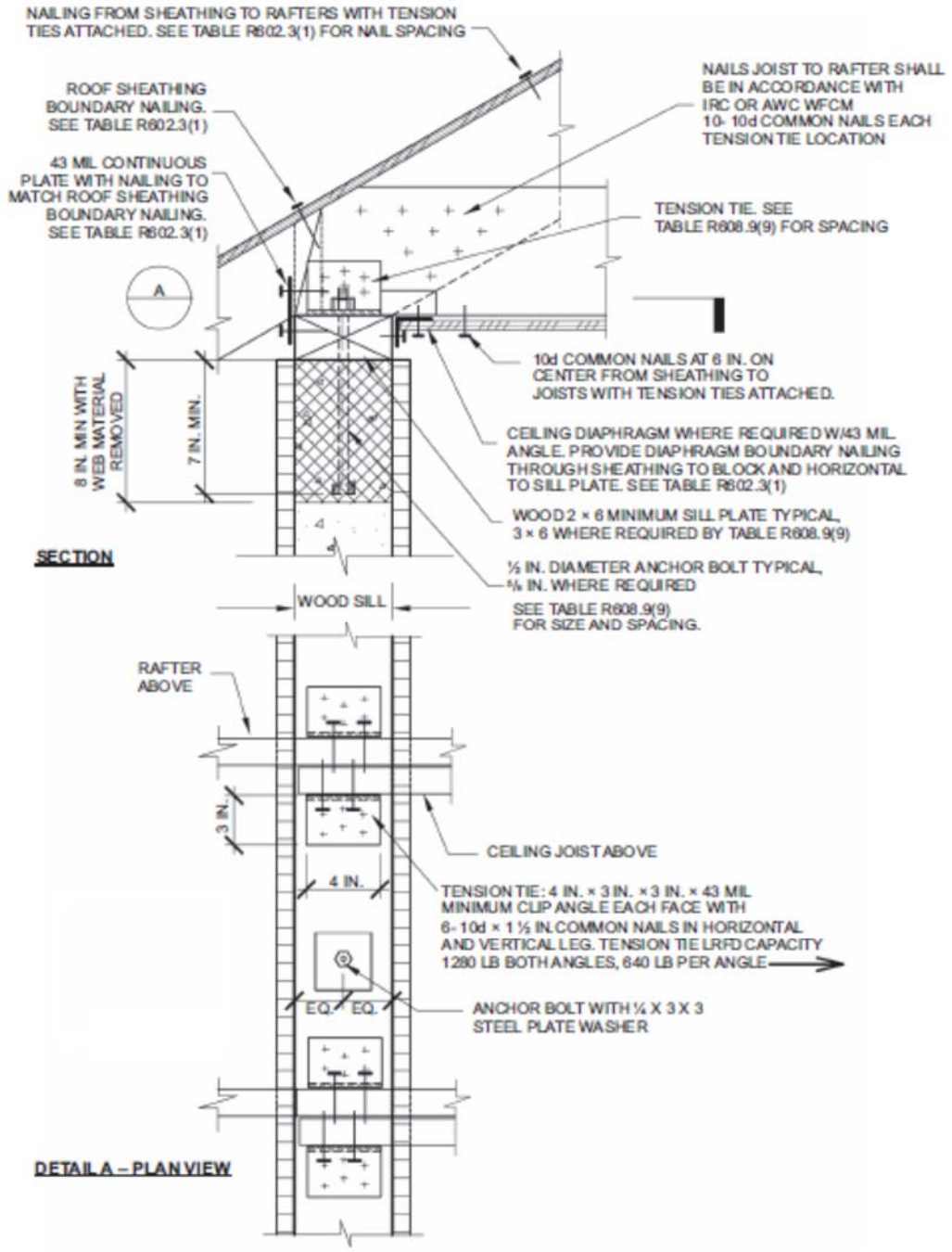
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure 608.9(8). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section 608 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch-nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells that do not contain a number.

d. Number 6 indicates minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross hatching in Figure 608.9(8). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "A" indicates that a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate is required. Letter "B" indicates that a $^5/_8$-inch-diameter anchor bolt and a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

FIGURE 608.9(9)
WOOD-FRAMED ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR

TABLE 608.9(9)
WOOD-FRAMED ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR [a, b, c, d, e]

ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches)	TENSION TIE SPACING (inches)	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY					
		115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B
		—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C
		—	—	—	110D	117D	125D
12	12						6
12	24						6
12	36					6	6
12	48				6	6	6
16	16					6	6
16	32					6	6
16	48				6	6	6
19.2	19.2					6	6
19.2	38.4				6	6	
24	24				6		
24	48			6	8B		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

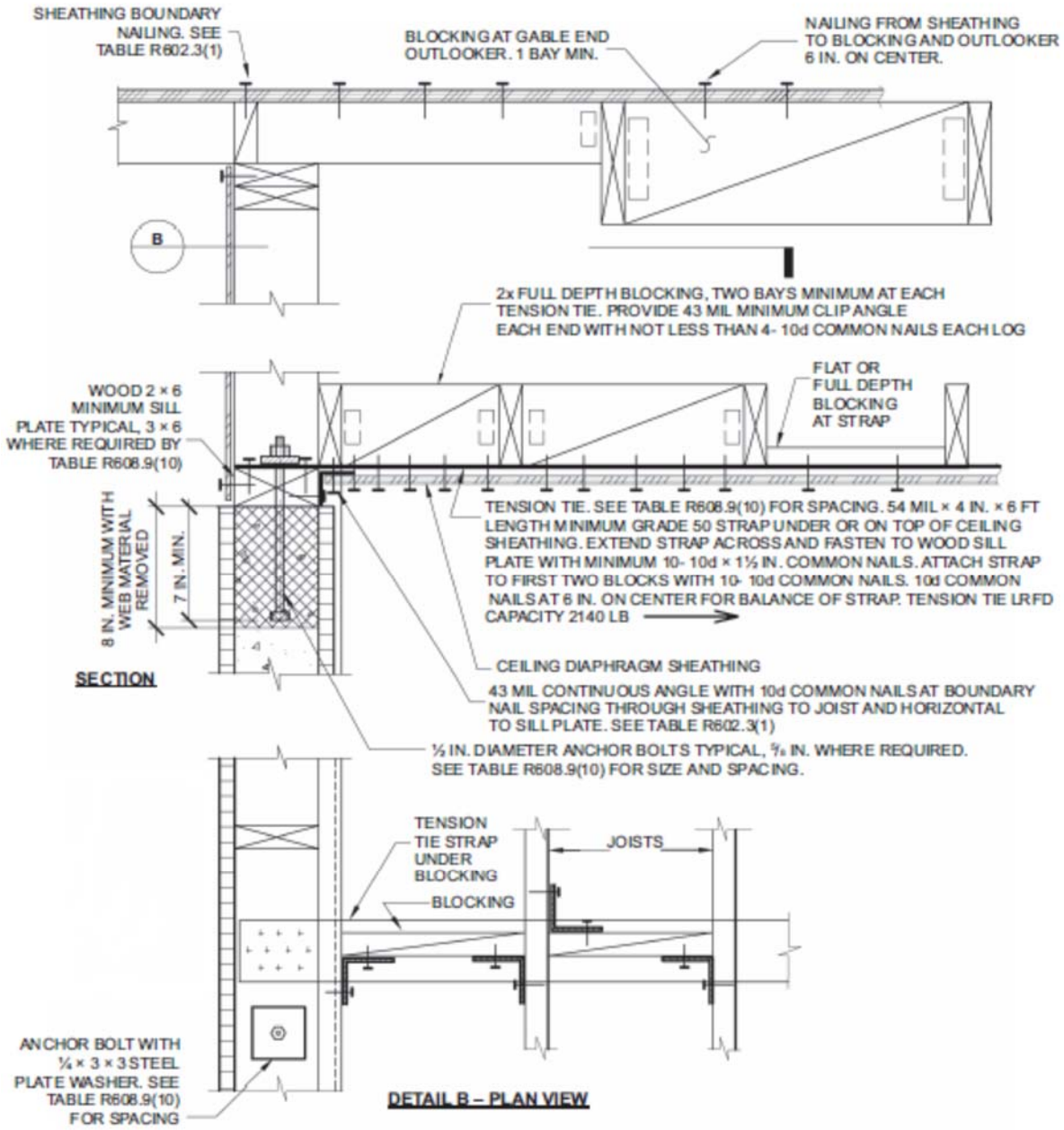
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure 608.9(9). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded, and prohibited where shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section 608 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch-nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells that do not contain a number.

d. Numbers 6 and 8 indicate minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross hatching in Figure 608.9(9). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "B" indicates that a $^5/_8$ -inch-diameter anchor bolt and a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

FIGURE 608.9(10)
WOOD-FRAMED ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL

TABLE 608.9(10)
WOOD-FRAMED ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL [a, b, c, d, e]

ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches)	TENSION TIE SPACING (inches)	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY					
		115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B
		—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C
		—	—	—	110D	117D	125D
12	12						6
12	24						6
12	36					6	6
12	48				6	6	6
16	16					6	6
16	32					6	6
16	48				6	6	6
19.2	19.2					6	6
19.2	38.4				6	6	
24	24				6		
24	48			6	8B		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

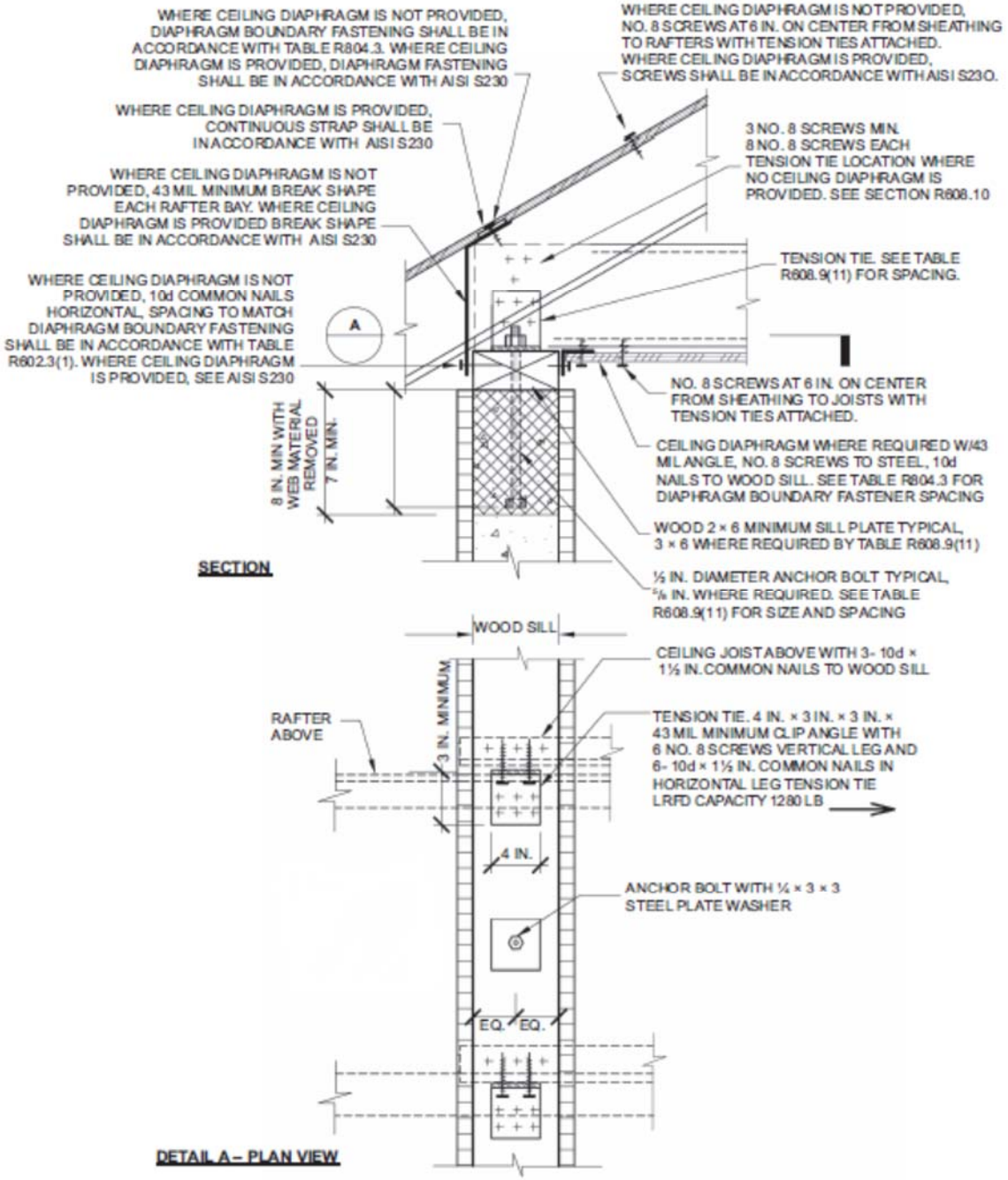
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure 608.9(10). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded, and prohibited where shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section 608 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch-nominal wall is permitted in cells that do not contain a number.

d. Numbers 6 and 8 indicate minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross hatching in Figure 608.9(10). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "B" indicates that a $^5/_8$ -inch-diameter anchor bolt and a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

FIGURE 608.9(11)
COLD-FORMED STEEL ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR

TABLE 608.9(11)
WOOD-FRAMED ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR [a, b, c, d, e]

ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches)	TENSION TIE SPACING (inches)	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY					
		115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B
		—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C
		—	—	—	110D	117D	125D
12	12						6
12	24						6
16	16					6	6
16	32					6	6
19.2	19.2					6	6
19.2	38.4				6	6	6
24	24				6	6A	6B

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

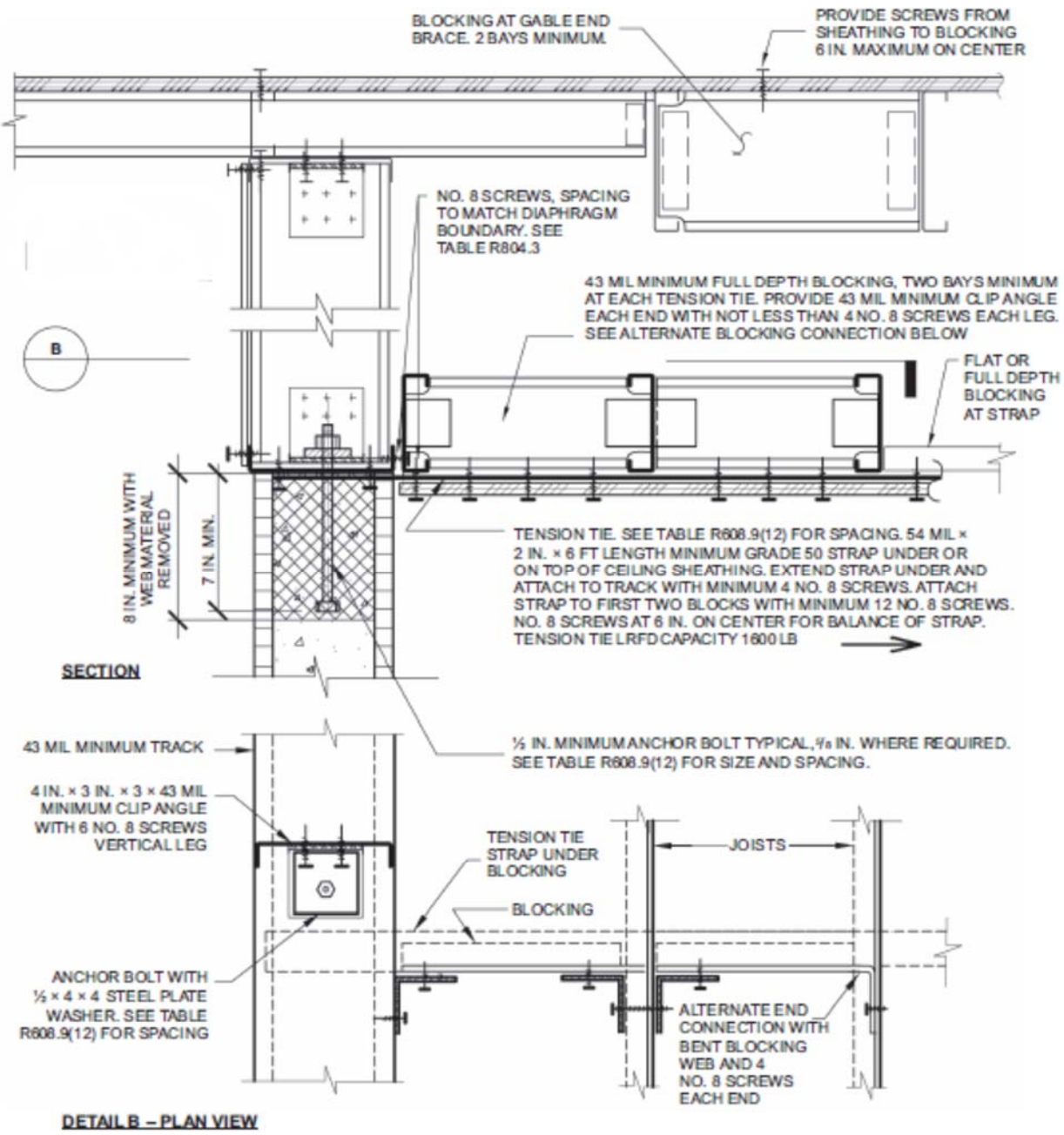
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure 608.9(11). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section 608 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch-nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells that do not contain a number.

d. Number 6 indicates minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross hatching in Figure 608.9(11). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "A" indicates that a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate is required. Letter "B" indicates that a $^5/_8$-inch-diameter anchor bolt and a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

FIGURE 608.9(12)
COLD-FORMED STEEL ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL

TABLE 608.9(12)
COLD-FORMED STEEL ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL [a, b, c, d, e]

ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches)	TENSION TIE SPACING (inches)	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY					
		115B	120B	130B	140B	150B	160B
		—	—	110C	119C	127C	136C
		—	—	—	110D	117D	125D
12	12						6
12	24						6
16	16					6	6
16	32					6	6
19.2	19.2					6	6
19.2	38.4				6	6	6
24	24				6	6	6B

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure 608.9(12). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section 608 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch-nominal wall is permitted in cells that do not contain a number.

d. Number 6 indicates minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross hatching in Figure 608.9(12). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "B" indicates that a $^5/_8$ -inch-diameter anchor bolt is required.

608.10 Floor, roof and ceiling diaphragms. Floors and roofs in buildings with exterior walls of concrete shall be designed and constructed as diaphragms. Where gable-end walls occur, ceilings shall be designed and constructed as diaphragms. The design and construction of floors, roofs and ceilings of wood framing or cold-formed-steel framing serving as diaphragms shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code, or AWC WFCM or AISI S230, if applicable. Wood framing members shall be of a species having a specific gravity equal to or greater than 0.42.

SECTION 609
EXTERIOR WINDOWS AND DOORS

609.1 General. This section prescribes performance and construction requirements for exterior windows and doors installed in walls. Windows and doors shall be installed and flashed in accordance with the fenestration manufacturer's written instructions. Window and door openings shall be flashed in accordance with Section 703.4. Written installation instructions shall be provided by the fenestration manufacturer for each window or door.

609.2 Performance. Exterior windows and doors shall be capable of resisting the design wind loads specified in Table 301.2(2) adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table 301.2(3) or determined in accordance with ASCE 7 using the allowable stress design load combinations of ASCE 7. For exterior windows and doors tested in accordance with Sections 609.3 and 609.5, required design wind pressures determined from ASCE 7 using the ultimate strength design (USD) are permitted to be multiplied by 0.6. Design wind loads for exterior glazing not part of a labeled assembly shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with Chapter 24 of the *Ohio building code*.

609.3 Testing and labeling. Exterior windows and sliding doors shall be tested by an approved independent laboratory, and bear a label identifying manufacturer, performance characteristics and approved inspection agency to indicate compliance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440. Exterior side-hinged doors shall be tested and labeled as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 or AMD 100, or comply with Section 609.5.

Exception: Decorative glazed openings.

609.3.1 Comparative analysis. Structural wind load design pressures for window and door units different than the size tested in accordance with Section 609.3 shall be permitted to be different than the design value of the tested unit where determined in accordance with one of the following comparative analysis methods:

1. Structural wind load design pressures for window and door units smaller than the size tested in accordance with Section 609.3 shall be permitted to be higher than the design value of the tested unit provided such higher pressures are determined by accepted engineering analysis. Components of the smaller unit shall be the same as those of the tested unit. Where such calculated design pressures are used, they shall be validated by an additional test of the window or door unit having the highest allowable design pressure.
2. In accordance with WDMA I.S.11.

609.4 Garage doors. Garage doors shall be tested in accordance with either ASTM E330 or ANSI/DASMA 108, and shall meet the acceptance criteria of ANSI/DASMA 108.

609.5 Other exterior window and door assemblies. Exterior windows and door assemblies not included within the scope of Section 609.3 or 609.4 shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E330. Glass in assemblies covered by this section shall comply with Section 308.5.

609.6 Windborne debris protection. *Deleted*

609.6.1 Fenestration testing and labeling. *Deleted*

609.6.2 Impact protective systems-testing and labeling. *Deleted*

609.7 Anchorage methods. The methods cited in this section apply only to anchorage of window and glass door assemblies to the main force-resisting system.

609.7.1 Anchoring requirements. Window and glass door assemblies shall be anchored in accordance with the published manufacturer's recommendations to achieve the design pressure specified. Substitute anchoring systems used for substrates not specified by the fenestration manufacturer shall provide equal or greater anchoring performance as demonstrated by accepted engineering practice.

609.7.2 Anchorage details. Products shall be anchored in accordance with the minimum requirements illustrated in Figures 609.7.2(1), 609.7.2(2), 609.7.2(3), 609.7.2(4), 609.7.2(5), 609.7.2(6), 609.7.2(7) and 609.7.2(8).

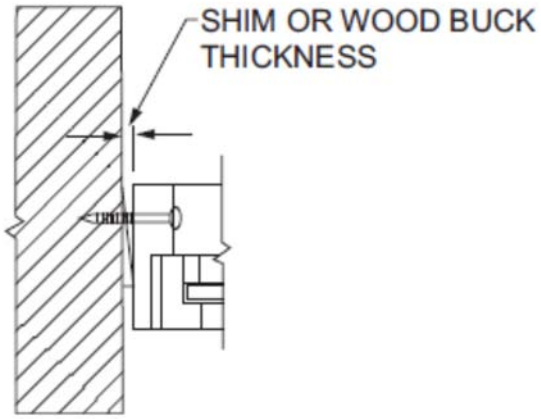


FIGURE 609.7.2(1)
THROUGH THE FRAME

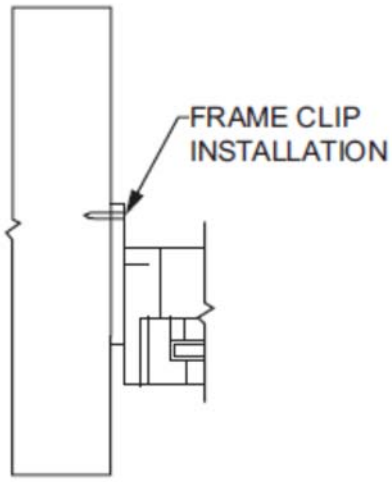


FIGURE 609.7.2(2)
FRAME CLIP

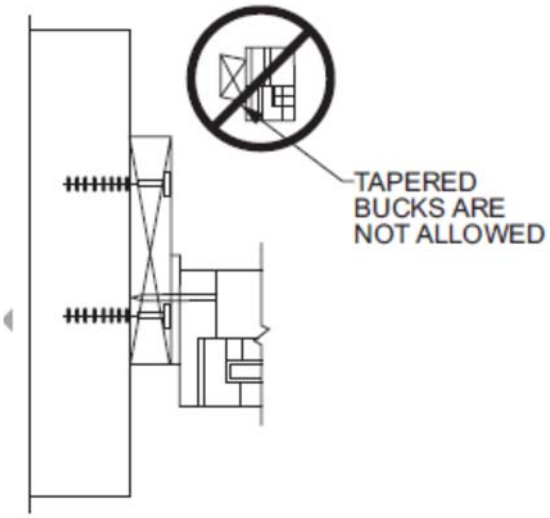


FIGURE 609.7.2(3)
THROUGH THE FRAME

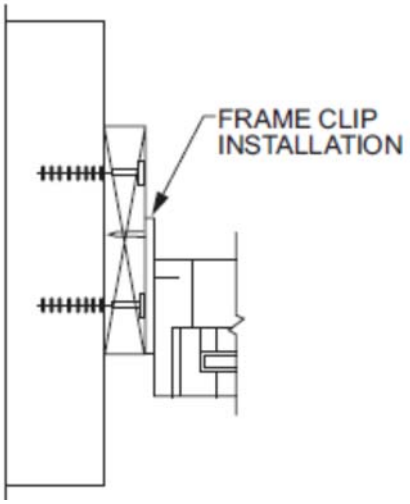


FIGURE 609.7.2(4)
FRAME CLIP

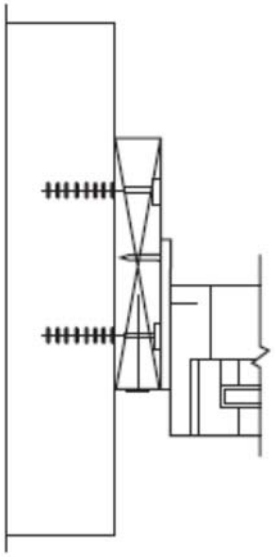


FIGURE 609.7.2(5)
THROUGH THE FLANGE

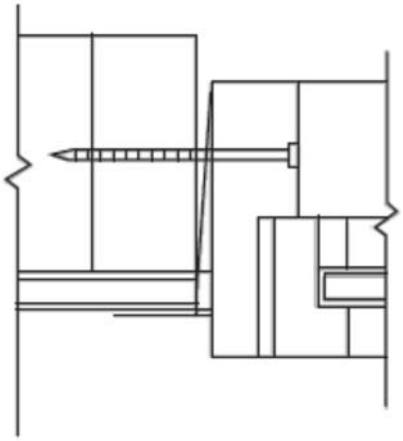


FIGURE 609.7.2(6)
THROUGH THE FLANGE

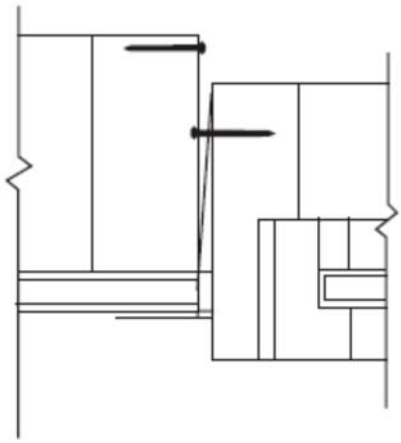


FIGURE 609.7.2(7)
FRAME CLIP

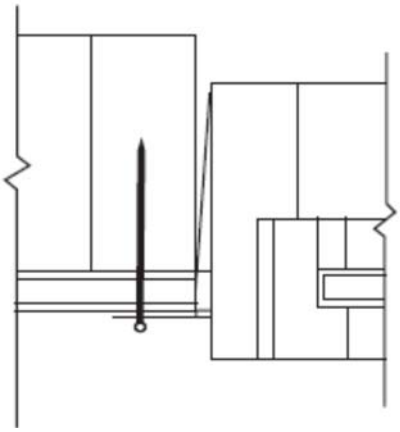


FIGURE 609.7.2(8)
THROUGH THE FLANGE

609.7.2.1 Masonry, concrete or other structural substrate. Where the wood shim or buck thickness is less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm), window and glass door assemblies shall be anchored through the jamb, or by jamb clip and anchors shall be embedded directly into the masonry, concrete or other substantial substrate material. Anchors shall adequately transfer load from the window or door frame into the rough opening substrate [see Figures 609.7.2(1) and 609.7.2(2)].

Where the wood shim or buck thickness is $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) or more, the buck is securely fastened to the masonry, concrete or other substantial substrate, and the buck extends beyond the interior face of the window or door frame, window and glass door assemblies shall be anchored through the jamb, or by jamb clip, or through the flange to the secured wood buck. Anchors shall be embedded into the secured wood buck to adequately transfer load from the window or door frame assembly [see Figures 609.7.2(3), 609.7.2(4) and 609.7.2(5)].

609.7.2.2 Wood or other approved framing material. Where the framing material is wood or other approved framing material, window and glass door assemblies shall be anchored through the frame, or by frame clip, or through the flange. Anchors shall be embedded into the frame construction to adequately transfer load [see Figures 609.7.2(6), 609.7.2(7) and 609.7.2(8)].

609.8 Mullions. Mullions shall be tested by an approved testing laboratory in accordance with AAMA 450, or be engineered in accordance with accepted engineering practice. Mullions tested as stand-alone units or qualified by engineering shall use performance criteria cited in Sections 609.8.1, 609.8.2 and

609.8.3. Mullions qualified by an actual test of an entire assembly shall comply with Sections 609.8.1 and 609.8.3.

609.8.1 Load transfer. Mullions shall be designed to transfer the design pressure loads applied by the window and door assemblies to the rough opening substrate.

609.8.2 Deflection. Mullions shall be capable of resisting the design pressure loads applied by the window and door assemblies to be supported without deflecting more than $L/175$, where L is the span of the mullion in inches.

609.8.3 Structural safety factor. Mullions shall be capable of resisting a load of 1.5 times the design pressure loads applied by the window and door assemblies to be supported without exceeding the appropriate material stress levels. If tested by an approved laboratory, the 1.5 times the design pressure load shall be sustained for 10 seconds, and the permanent deformation shall not exceed 0.4 percent of the mullion span after the 1.5 times design pressure load is removed.

SECTION 610 STRUCTURAL INSULATED PANEL WALL CONSTRUCTION

610.1 General. Structural insulated panel (SIP) walls shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of this section. Where the provisions of this section are used to design structural insulated panel walls, project drawings, typical details and specifications are not required to bear the seal of the architect or engineer responsible for design, unless otherwise required by the state law of the jurisdiction having authority.

610.2 Applicability limits. The provisions of this section shall control the construction of exterior structural insulated panel walls and interior load-bearing structural insulated panel walls for buildings not greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length perpendicular to the joist or truss span, not greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in width parallel to the joist or truss span and not greater than two stories in height with each wall not greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) high. Exterior walls installed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be considered as load-bearing walls. Structural insulated panel walls constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to sites where the ultimate design wind speed (V_{ult}) is not greater than 155 miles per hour (69 m/s) in Exposure B or 140 miles per hour (63 m/s) in Exposure C, the ground snow load is not greater than 70 pounds per square foot (3.35 kPa), and the seismic design category is A, B or C.

610.3 Materials. SIPs shall comply with the requirements of ANSI/APA PRS 610.1.

610.3.1 Lumber. The minimum lumber framing material used for SIPs prescribed in this document is NLGA graded No. 2 Spruce-pine-fir. Substitution of other wood species/grades that meet or exceed the mechanical properties and specific gravity of No. 2 Spruce-pine-fir shall be permitted.

610.3.2 SIP screws. Screws used for the erection of SIPs as specified in Section 610.5 shall be fabricated from steel, shall be provided by the SIP manufacturer and shall be sized to penetrate the wood member to which the assembly is being attached by not less than 1 inch (25 mm). The screws shall be corrosion resistant and have a minimum shank diameter of 0.188 inch (4.7 mm) and a minimum head diameter of 0.620 inch (15.5 mm).

610.3.3 Nails. Nails specified in Section 610 shall be common or galvanized box unless otherwise stated.

610.4 SIP wall panels. SIPs shall comply with Figure 610.4 and shall have minimum panel thickness in accordance with Tables 610.5(1) and 610.5(2) for above-grade walls. SIPs shall be identified by grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an approved agency in accordance with ANSI/APA PRS 610.1.

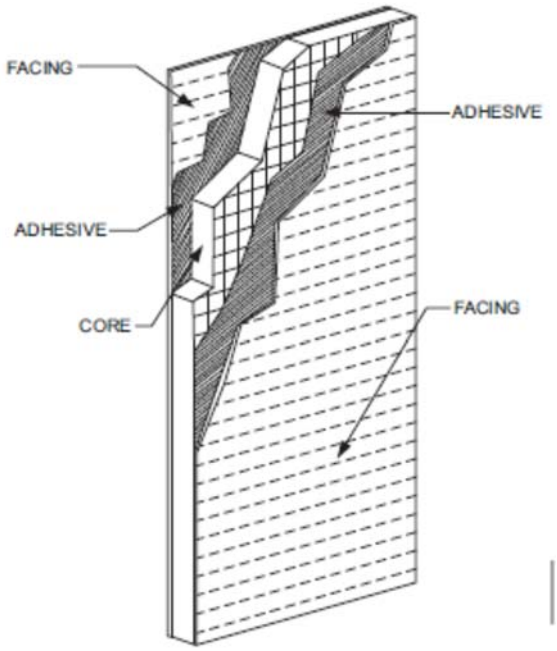


FIGURE 610.4
SIP WALL PANEL

610.5 Wall construction. Exterior walls of SIP construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section and Tables 610.5(1) and 610.5(2) and Figures 610.5(1) through 610.5(5). SIP walls shall be fastened to other wood building components in accordance with Tables 602.3(1) through 602.3(4).

Framing shall be attached in accordance with Table 602.3(1) unless otherwise provided for in Section 610.

TABLE 610.5(1)
MINIMUM THICKNESS FOR SIP WALL
SUPPORTING SIP OR LIGHT-FRAME ROOF ONLY (inches) [a]

BUILDING WIDTH (ft)																		
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED V_{ult} (mph)		SNOW LOAD (psf)	24			28			32			36			40		
Exp. B	Exp. C		Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)		
			8	9	10	8	9	10	8	9	10	8	9	10	8	9	10
110	—	20	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5
		30	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5
		50	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5

BUILDING WIDTH (ft)																		
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED *Vult* (mph)		SNOW LOAD (psf)	24			28			32			36			40			
Exp. B	Exp. C		Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			
			8	9	10	8	9	10	8	9	10	8	9	10	8	9	10	
		70	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	6.5	
115	—	20	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	
		30	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	
		50	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	6.5	
		70	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	4.5	DR	
130	110	20	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	4.5	DR	
		30	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	4.5	DR	
		50	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	6.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	
		70	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	
140	120	20	4.5	6.5	DR	4.5	6.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	
		30	4.5	6.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	
		50	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	
		70	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s. DR = Design Required.

a. Design assumptions:
Maximum deflection criteria: *L*/240.
Maximum roof dead load: 10 psf.
Maximum roof live load: 70 psf.
Maximum ceiling dead load: 5 psf.
Maximum ceiling live load: 20 psf.
Wind loads based on Table R301.2 (2).
Strength axis of facing material applied vertically.

TABLE 610.5(2)
MINIMUM THICKNESS FOR SIP WALL SUPPORTING SIP OR LIGHT-FRAME ONE STORY AND ROOF ONLY (inches) [a]

BUILDING WIDTH (ft)																		
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED *Vult* (mph)		SNOW LOAD (psf)	24			28			32			36			40			
Exp. B	Exp. C		Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			
			8	9	10	8	9	10	8	9	10	8	9	10	8	9	10	
110	—	20	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	4.5	DR	
		30	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	6.5	DR	
		50	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	
		70	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	
115	—	20	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	

BUILDING WIDTH (ft)																	
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED *Vult* (mph)		SNOW LOAD (psf)	24			28			32			36			40		
Exp. B	Exp. C		Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)			Wall Height (feet)		
			8	9	10	8	9	10	8	9	10	8	9	10	8	9	10
		30	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	6.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR
		50	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
		70	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
120	—	20	4.5	4.5	6.5	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR
		30	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	6.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
		50	4.5	4.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
		70	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
130	110	20	4.5	6.5	DR	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
		30	4.5	DR	DR	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
		50	4.5	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR
		70	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR

For SI: 1 Inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

DR = Design Required.

a. Design assumptions:

Maximum deflection criteria: *L*/240.

Maximum roof dead load: 10 psf.

Maximum roof live load: 70 psf.

Maximum ceiling dead load: 5 psf.

Maximum ceiling live load: 20 psf.

Maximum second-floor dead load: 10 psf.

Maximum second-floor live load: 30 psf.

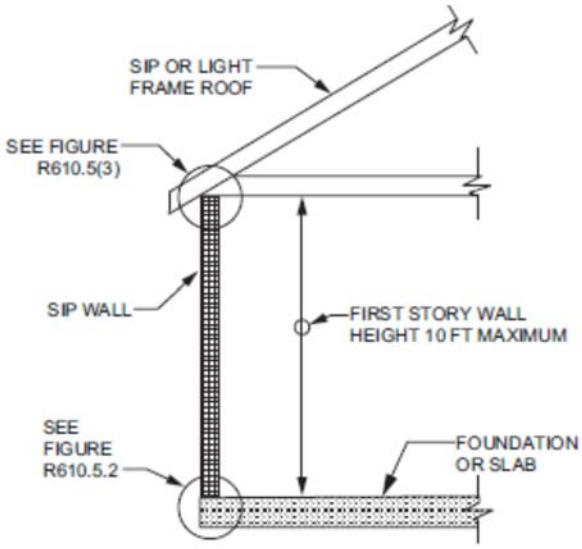
Maximum second-floor dead load from walls: 10 psf.

Maximum first-floor dead load: 10 psf.

Maximum first-floor live load: 40 psf.

Wind loads based on Table 301.2 (2).

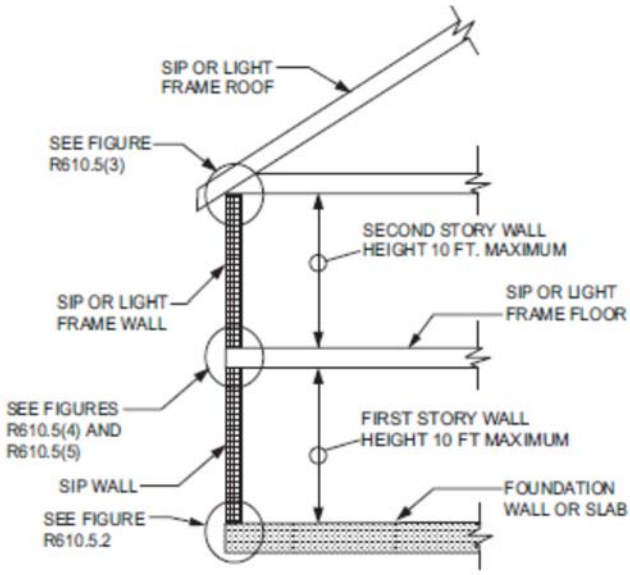
Strength axis of facing material applied vertically.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

Note: Figure illustrates SIP-specific attachment requirements. Other connections shall be made in accordance with Tables 602.3(1) and (2), as appropriate.

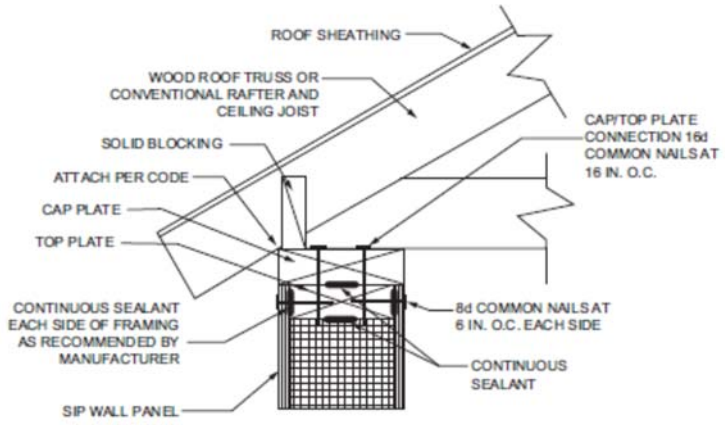
FIGURE 610.5(1)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HEIGHT OF SIP WALLS



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

Note: Figure illustrates SIP-specific attachment requirements. Other connections shall be made in accordance with Tables 602.3(1) and (2), as appropriate.

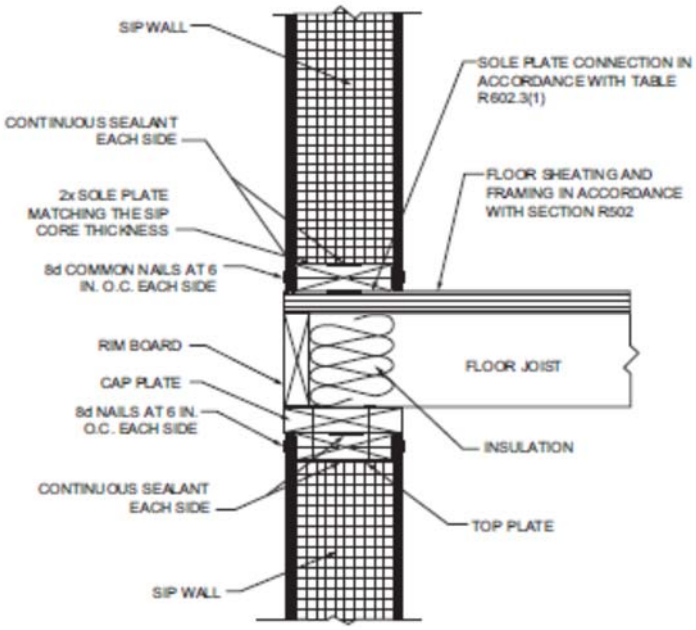
FIGURE 610.5(2)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HEIGHT OF SIP WALLS



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Note: Figure illustrates SIP-specific attachment requirements. Other connections shall be made in accordance with Tables 602.3(1) and (2), as appropriate.

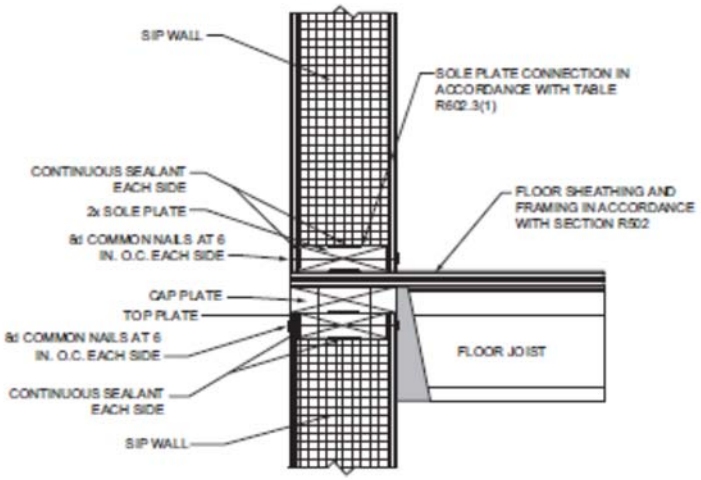
FIGURE 610.5(3)
TRUSSED ROOF TO TOP PLATE CONNECTION



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Note: Figure illustrates SIP-specific attachment requirements. Other connections shall be made in accordance with Tables 602.3(1) and (2), as appropriate.

FIGURE 610.5(4)
SIP WALL-TO-WALL PLATFORM FRAME CONNECTION

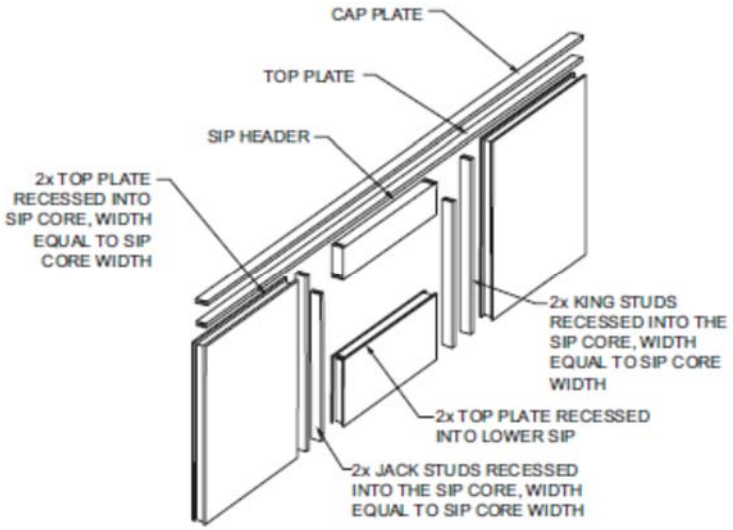


For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Note: Figure illustrates SIP-specific attachment requirements. Other connections shall be made in accordance with Tables 602.3(1) and (2), as appropriate.

FIGURE 610.5(5)
SIP WALL-TO-WALL HANGING FLOOR FRAME CONNECTION
(I-Joist floor shown for Illustration only)

610.5.1 Top plate connection. SIP walls shall be capped with a double top plate installed to provide over-lapping at corner, intersections and splines in accordance with Figure 610.5.1. The double top plates shall be made up of a single 2-by (nominal 2-inch) top plate having a width equal to the width of the panel core, and shall be recessed into the SIP below. Over this top plate a cap plate shall be placed. The cap plate width shall match the SIP thickness and overlap the facers on both sides of the panel. End joints in top plates shall be offset not less than 24 inches (610 mm).



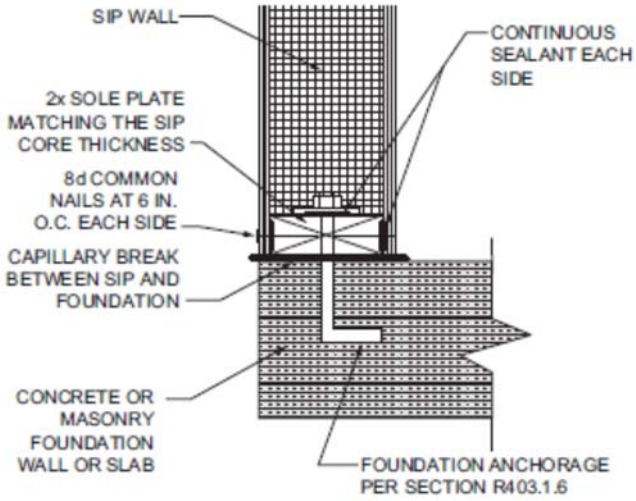
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Notes:

1. Top plates shall be continuous over header.
2. Lower 2x top plate shall have a width equal to the SIP core width and shall be recessed into the top edge of the panel. Cap plate shall be placed over the recessed top plate and shall have a width equal to the SIPs width.
3. SIP facing surfaces shall be nailed to framing and cripples with 8d common or galvanized box nails spaced 6 inches on center.

FIGURE 610.5.1
SIP WALL FRAMING CONFIGURATION

610.5.2 Bottom (sole) plate connection. SIP walls shall have full bearing on a sole plate having a width equal to the nominal width of the foam core. Where SIP walls are supported directly on continuous foundations, the wall wood sill plate shall be anchored to the foundation in accordance with Figure 610.5.2 and Section 403.1.

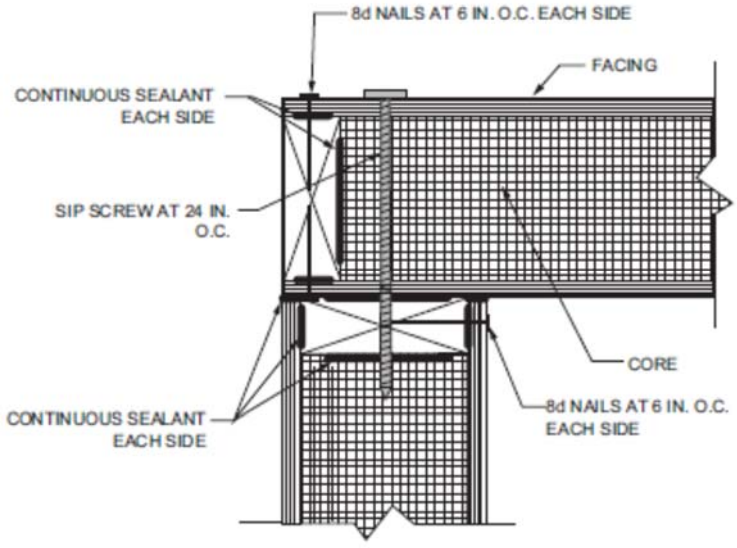


For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 610.5.2
SIP WALL TO CONCRETE SLAB FOR FOUNDATION WALL ATTACHMENT

610.5.3 Panel-to-panel connection. SIPs shall be connected at vertical in-plane joints in accordance with Figure 610.8 or by other approved methods.

610.5.4 Corner framing. Corner framing of SIP walls shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 610.5.4.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 610.5.4
SIP CORNER FRAMING DETAIL

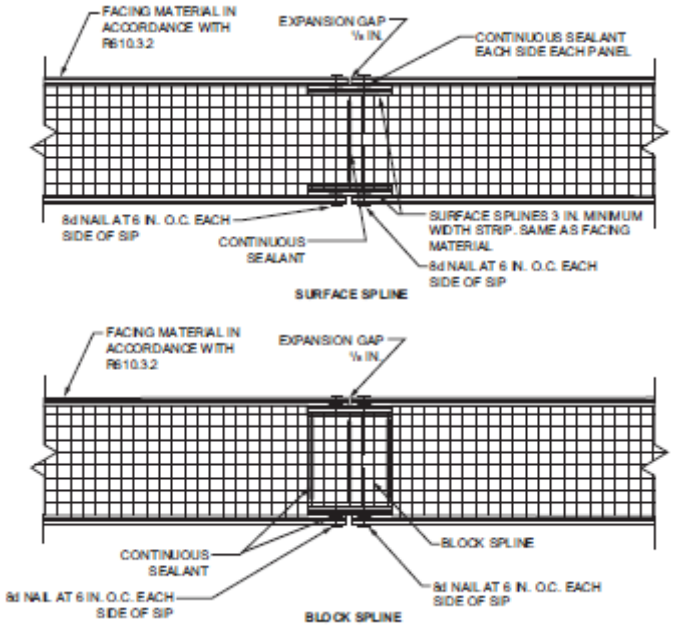
610.5.5 Wall bracing. SIP walls shall be braced in accordance with Section 602.10. SIP walls shall be considered continuous wood structural panel sheathing (bracing Method CS-WSP) for purposes of computing required bracing. SIP walls shall meet the requirements of Section 602.10.4.2 except that SIP corners shall be fabricated as shown in Figure 610.9. Where SIP walls are used for wall bracing, the SIP bottom plate shall be attached to wood framing below in accordance with Table 602.3(1).

610.5.6 Thermal barrier. SIP walls shall be separated from the interior of a building by an approved thermal barrier in accordance with Section 316.4.

610.6 Interior load-bearing walls. Interior load-bearing walls shall be constructed as specified for exterior walls.

610.7 Drilling and notching. The maximum vertical chase penetration in SIPs shall have a maximum side dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) centered in the panel. Vertical chases shall have a minimum spacing of 24 inches (610 mm) on center. Not more than two horizontal chases shall be permitted in each wall panel, one at 14 inches (360 mm) plus or minus 2 inches (51 mm) from the bottom of the panel and one at 48 inches (1220 mm) plus or minus 2 inches (51 mm) from the bottom edge of the SIP's panel. Additional penetrations are permitted where justified by analysis.

610.8 Headers. SIP headers shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Table 610.8 and Figure 610.5.1. SIP headers shall be continuous sections without splines. Headers shall be not less than $11^{7}/_{8}$ inches (302 mm) deep. Headers longer than 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be constructed in accordance with Section 602.7. The strength axis of the factors on the header shall be oriented horizontally.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 610.8
TYPICAL SIP WALL PANEL-TO-PANEL CONNECTION DETAILS

TABLE 610.8
MAXIMUM SPANS FOR 11 7/8-INCH OR DEEPER SIP HEADERS (feet) [a, c, d]

LOAD CONDITION	SNOW LOAD (psf)	BUILDING [b] Width (feet)				
		24	28	32	36	40
Supporting roof only	20	4	4	4	4	2
	30	4	4	4	2	2
	50	2	2	2	2	2
	70	2	2	2	DR	DR
Supporting roof and one-story	20	2	2	DR	DR	DR
	30	2	2	DR	DR	DR
	50	2	DR	DR	DR	DR
	70	DR	DR	DR	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa. DR = Design Required.

a. Design assumptions:
Maximum deflection criterion: *L*/240.
Maximum roof dead load: 10 psf.
Maximum ceiling load: 5 psf.
Maximum ceiling live load: 20 psf
Maximum second-floor live load: 30 psf.
Maximum second-floor dead load: 10 psf.
Maximum second-floor dead load from walls: 10 psf.
Maximum first floor dead load: 10 psf.
Wind loads based on Table 301.2(2).

Strength axis of facing material applied horizontally.

b. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

c. The table provides for roof slopes between 3:12 and 12:12.

d. The maximum roof overhang is 24 inches (610 mm).

610.8.1 Wood structural panel box headers. Wood structural panel box headers shall be allowed where SIP headers are not applicable. Wood structural panel box headers shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 602.7.3 and Table 602.7.3.

Replaces:	4101:8-6-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.10, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.06, 3781.01, 3781.11
Prior Effective Dates:	05/27/2006, 01/01/2013, 07/01/2014, 01/01/2018

4101:8-7-01 Wall covering.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 701
GENERAL

701.1 Application. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of the interior and exterior wall covering for buildings.

701.2 Installation. Products sensitive to adverse weather shall not be installed until adequate weather protection for the installation is provided. Exterior sheathing shall be dry before applying exterior cover.

SECTION 702
INTERIOR COVERING

702.1 General. Interior coverings or wall finishes shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and Table 702.1(1), Table 702.1(2), Table 702.1(3) and Table 702.3.5. Interior masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Section 703.7.1 for support and Section 703.7.4 for anchorage, except an airspace is not required. Interior finishes and materials shall conform to the flame spread and smoke-development requirements of Section 302.9.

TABLE 702.1(1)
THICKNESS OF PLASTER

PLASTER BASE	FINISHED THICKNESS OF PLASTER FROM FACE OF LATH, MASONRY, CONCRETE (inches)	
	Gypsum Plaster	Cement Plaster
Expanded metal lath	5/8, minimum [a]	5/8, minimum [a]
Wire lath	5/8, minimum [a]	3/4, minimum (interior) [b] 7/8, minimum (exterior) [b]
Gypsum lath [g]	1/2, minimum	3/4, minimum (interior) [b]
Masonry walls[c]	1/2, minimum	1/2, minimum
Monolithic concrete walls [c, d]	5/8, maximum	7/8, maximum
Monolithic concrete ceilings [c, d]	3/8, maximum [e]	1/2, maximum
Gypsum veneer base [f, g]	1/16, minimum	3/4, minimum (interior) [b]
Gypsum sheathing [g]	—	3/4, minimum (interior) [b] 7/8, minimum (exterior) [b]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Where measured from back plane of expanded metal lath, exclusive of ribs, or self-furring lath, plaster

thickness shall be 3/4 inch minimum.

b. Where measured from face of support or backing.

c. Because masonry and concrete surfaces vary in plane, thickness of plaster need not be uniform.

d. Where applied over a liquid bonding agent, finish coat shall be permitted to be applied directly to concrete surface.

e. Approved acoustical plaster shall be permitted to be applied directly to concrete or over base coat plaster, beyond the maximum plaster thickness shown.

f. Attachment shall be in accordance with Table 702.3.5.

g. Where gypsum board is used as a base for cement plaster, a water-resistive barrier complying with Section 703.2 shall be provided.

TABLE 702.1(2)
GYPSUM PLASTER PROPORTIONS[a]

NUMBER	COAT	PLASTER BASE OR LATH	MAXIMUM VOLUME AGGREGATE PER 100 POUNDS NEAT PLASTER[b] (cubic feet)	
			Damp Loose Sand[a]	Perlite or Vermiculite[c]
Two-coat work	Base coat	Gypsum lath	2.5	2
	Base coat	Masonry	3	3
Three-coat work	First coat	Lath	2[d]	2
	Second coat	Lath	3[d]	2[e]
	First and second coats	Masonry	3	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m^3, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. Wood-fibered gypsum plaster shall be mixed in the proportions of 100 pounds of gypsum to not more than 1 cubic foot of sand where applied on masonry or concrete.

b. Where determining the amount of aggregate in set plaster, a tolerance of 10 percent shall be allowed.

c. Combinations of sand and lightweight aggregate shall be permitted to be used, provided the volume and weight relationship of the combined aggregate to gypsum plaster is maintained.

d. If used for both first and second coats, the volume of aggregate shall be permitted to be 2.5 cubic feet.

e. Where plaster is 1 inch or more in total thickness, the proportions for the second coat may be increased to 3 cubic feet.

TABLE 702.1(3)
CEMENT PLASTER PROPORTIONS, PARTS BY VOLUME

COAT	CEMENT PLASTER TYPE	CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS				VOLUME OF AGGREGATE PER SUM OF SEPARATE VOLUMES OF CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS[b]
		Portland Cement Type I, II or III; Blended Hydraulic Cement Type IP, I (S < 70), IL, or IT (S < 70); or Hydraulic Cement Type GU, HE, MS, HS or MH	Plastic Cement	Masonry Cement Type M, S or N	Lime	
First	Portland or blended	1	—	—	3/4 - 1 1/2[a]	2 1/2 - 4
	Masonry	—		1	—	2 1/2 - 4
	Plastic	—	1	—	—	2 1/2 - 4
Second	Portland or blended	1	—	—	3/4 - 1 1/2	3 - 5
	Masonry	—		1	—	3 - 5
	Plastic	—	1	—	—	3 - 5
Finish	Portland or blended	1	—	—	1 1/2 - 2	1 1/2 - 3
	Masonry	—	—	1	—	1 1/2 - 3
	Plastic	—	1		—	1 1/2 - 3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. Lime by volume of 0 to 3/4 shall be used where the plaster will be placed over low-absorption surfaces such as dense clay tile or brick.
b. The same or greater sand proportion shall be used in the second coat than used in the first coat.

702.2 Interior plaster.

702.2.1 Gypsum plaster. Gypsum plaster materials shall conform to ASTM C5, C22, C28, C35, C59, C61, C587, C631, C847, C933, C1032 and C1047, and shall be installed or applied in compliance with ASTM C841, C842 and C843. Gypsum lath or gypsum base for veneer plaster shall conform to ASTM C1396 and shall be installed in compliance with ASTM C844. Plaster shall be not less than three coats where applied over metal lath and not less than two coats where applied over other bases permitted by this section, except that veneer plaster shall be applied in one coat not to exceed 3/16 inch (4.76 mm) thickness, provided the total thickness is in accordance with Table 702.1(1).

702.2.2 Cement plaster. Cement plaster materials shall conform to ASTM C91 (Type M, S or N), C150 (Types I, II and III), C595 [Types IP, I (PM), IS and I (SM), C847, C897, C933, C1032, C1047 and C1328, and shall be installed or applied in compliance with ASTM C926 and C1063. Gypsum lath shall conform to ASTM C1396. Plaster shall be not less than three coats where applied over metal lath and not less than two coats where applied over other bases permitted by this section.

702.2.2.1 Application. Each coat shall be kept in a moist condition for not less than 24 hours prior to application of the next coat.

Exception: Applications installed in accordance with ASTM C926.

702.2.2.2 Curing. The finish coat for two-coat cement plaster shall not be applied sooner than 48 hours after application of the first coat. For three-coat cement plaster, the second coat shall not be applied sooner than 24 hours after application of the first coat. The finish coat for three-coat cement plaster shall not be applied sooner than 48 hours after application of the second coat.

702.2.3 Support. Support spacing for gypsum or metal lath on walls or ceilings shall not exceed 16 inches (406 mm) for 3/8 -inch-thick (9.5 mm) or 24 inches (610 mm) for 1/2 -inch-thick (12.7 mm) plain gypsum lath. Gypsum lath shall be installed at right angles to support framing with end joints in adjacent courses staggered by not less than one framing space.

702.3 Gypsum board and gypsum panel products.

702.3.1 Materials. Gypsum board and gypsum panel product materials and accessories shall conform to ASTM C22, C475, C514, C1002, C1047, C1177, C1178, C1278, C1396, C1658 or C1766 and shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this section. Adhesives for the installation of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall conform to ASTM C557.

02.3.1.1 Adhesives. Expandable foam adhesives for the installation of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall conform to ASTM C6464. Other adhesives for the installation of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall conform to ASTM C557. Supports and fasteners used to attach gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall comply with Table 702.3.5 or other approved method.

702.3.2 Wood framing. Wood framing supporting gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be not less than 2 -inches (51 mm) nominal thickness in the least dimension except that wood furring strips not less than 1 -inch by 2-inch (25 mm by 51 mm) nominal dimension shall be permitted to be used over solid backing or framing spaced not more than 24 -inches (610 mm) on center.

702.3.3 Cold-formed steel framing. Cold-formed steel framing supporting gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be not less than $1^1/_4$ -inches (32 mm) wide in the least dimension. Nonload-bearing cold-formed steel framing shall comply with AISI S220. Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing shall comply with AISI S240.

702.3.4 Insulating concrete form walls. Foam plastics for insulating concrete form walls constructed in accordance with Sections 404.1.2 and 608 on the interior of habitable spaces shall be protected in accordance with Section 316.4. Use of adhesives in conjunction with mechanical fasteners is permitted. Adhesives used for interior and exterior finishes shall be compatible with the insulating form materials.

702.3.5 Application. Supports and fasteners used to attach gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall comply with Table 702.3.5. Gypsum sheathing shall be attached to exterior walls in accordance with Table 602.3(1). Gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be applied at right angles or parallel to framing members. All edges and ends of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall occur on the framing members, except those edges and ends that are perpendicular to the framing members. Interior gypsum board shall not be installed where it is directly exposed to the weather or to water.

TABLE 702.3.5

MINIMUM THICKNESS AND APPLICATION OF GYPSUM BOARD AND GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS

THICKNESS OF GYPSUM BOARD OR GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS (inches)	APPLICATION	ORIENTATION OF GYPSUM BOARD OR GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS TO FRAMING	MAXIMUM SPACING OF FRAMING MEMBERS (inches o.c.)	MAXIMUM SPACING OF FASTENERS (inches)		SIZE OF NAILS FOR APPLICATION TO WOOD FRAMING [c]
				Nails [a]	Screws [b]	
Application without adhesive						
3/8	Ceiling[d]	Perpendicular	16	7	12	13 gage, 1 1/4″ long, 19/64″ head; 0.098″ diameter, 1 1/4 ″ long, annular-ringed; or 4d cooler nail, 0.080″ diameter, 1 3/8 ″ long, 7/32″ head.
	Wall	Either direction	16	8	16	
1/2	Ceiling	Either direction	16	7	12	13 gage, 1 3/8″ long, 19/64″ head; 0.098″ diameter, 1 1/4″ long, annular-ringed; 5d cooler nail, 0.086″ diameter, 1 5/8″ long, 15/64″ head; or gypsum board nail, 0.086″ diameter, 1 5/8″ long, 9/32″ head.
	Ceiling[d]	Perpendicular	24	7	12	
	Wall	Either direction	24	8	12	
	Wall	Either direction	16	8	16	
5/8	Ceiling	Either direction	16	7	12	13 gage, 1 5/8″ long, 19/64″ head; 0.098″ diameter, 1 3/8″ long, annular-ringed; 6d cooler nail, 0.092″ diameter, 1 7/8″ long, 1/4″ head; or gypsum board nail, 0.0915″ diameter, 1 7/8″ long, 19/64″ head.
	Ceiling	Perpendicular	24	7	12	
	Type X at garage ceiling beneath habitable rooms	Perpendicular	24	6	6	1 7/8″ long 6d coated nails or equivalent drywall screws. Screws shall comply with Section 702.3.5.1
	Wall	Either direction	24	8	12	13 gage, 1 5/8″ long, 19/64″ head; 0.098″ diameter, 1 3/8″ long, annular-ringed; 6d cooler nail, 0.092″ diameter, 1 7/8″ long, 1/4″ head; or gypsum board nail, 0.0915″ diameter, 1 7/8″ long, 19/64″ head.
	Wall	Either direction	16	8	16	
Application with adhesive						
3/8	Ceiling[d]	Perpendicular	16	16	16	Same as above for 3/8″ gypsum board and gypsum panel products.
	Wall	Either direction	16	16	24	
1/2 or 5/8	Ceiling	Either direction	16	16	16	Same as above for 1/2″ and 5/8″ gypsum board and gypsum panel products, respectively.
	Ceiling[d]	Perpendicular	24	12	16	
	Wall	Either direction	24	16	24	
Two 3/8 layers	Ceiling	Perpendicular	16	16	16	Base ply nailed as above for 1/2″ gypsum board and gypsum panel products; face ply installed with adhesive.
	Wall	Either direction	24	24	24	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For application without adhesive, a pair of nails spaced not less than 2 inches apart or more than 2 1/2 inches apart shall be permitted to be used with the pair of nails spaced 12 inches on center.

b. Screws shall be in accordance with Section 702.3.5.1. Screws for attaching gypsum board or gypsum panel products to structural insulated panels shall penetrate the wood structural panel facing not less than 7/16 inch.

c. Where cold-formed steel framing is used with a clinching design to receive nails by two edges of metal, the nails shall be not less than 5/8 inch longer than the gypsum board or gypsum panel product thickness and shall have ringed shanks. Where the cold-formed steel framing has a nailing groove formed to receive the nails, the nails shall have barbed shanks or be 5d, 13 1/2 gage, 1 5/8 inches long, 15/64-inch head for 1/2-inch gypsum board or gypsum panel product; and 6d, 13 gage, 1 7/8 inches long, 15/64-inch head for 5/8-inch gypsum

board or gypsum panel product.

d. Three-eighths-inch-thick single-ply gypsum board or gypsum panel product shall not be used on a ceiling where a water-based textured finish is to be applied, or where it will be required to support insulation above a ceiling. On ceiling applications to receive a water-based texture material, either hand or spray applied, the gypsum board or gypsum panel product shall be applied perpendicular to framing. Where applying a water-based texture material, the minimum gypsum board thickness shall be increased from $^{3}/_{8}$ inch to $^{1}/_{2}$ inch for 16-inch on center framing, and from $^{1}/_{2}$ inch to $^{5}/_{8}$ inch for 24-inch on center framing or $^{1}/_{2}$-inch sag-resistant gypsum ceiling board shall be used.

702.3.5.1 Screw fastening. Screws for attaching gypsum board and gypsum panel products to wood framing shall be Type W or Type S in accordance with ASTM C1002 and shall penetrate the wood not less than $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (15.9 mm). Gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be attached to cold-formed steel framing with minimum No. 6 screws. Screws for attaching gypsum board and gypsum panel products to cold-formed steel framing less than 0.033 inch (1 mm) thick shall be Type S in accordance with ASTM C1002 or bugle head style in accordance with ASTM C1513 and shall penetrate the steel not less than $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm). Screws for attaching gypsum board and gypsum panel products to cold-formed steel framing 0.033 inch to 0.112 inch (1 mm to 3 mm) thick shall be in accordance with ASTM C954 or bugle head style in accordance with ASTM C1513. Screws for attaching gypsum board and gypsum panel products to structural insulated panels shall penetrate the wood structural panel facing not less than $^{7}/_{16}$ inch (11.1 mm).

702.3.6 Horizontal gypsum board diaphragm ceilings. Gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be permitted on wood joists to create a horizontal diaphragm in accordance with Table 702.3.6. Gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be installed perpendicular to ceiling framing members. End joints of adjacent courses of board and panels shall not occur on the same joist. The maximum allowable diaphragm proportions shall be $1^{1}/_{2}$:1 between shear resisting elements. Rotation or cantilever conditions shall not be permitted. Gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall not be used in diaphragm ceilings to resist lateral forces imposed by masonry or concrete construction. Perimeter edges shall be blocked using wood members not less than 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) nominal dimension. Blocking material shall be installed flat over the top plate of the wall to provide a nailing surface not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in width for the attachment of the gypsum board or gypsum panel product.

TABLE 702.3.6
SHEAR CAPACITY FOR HORIZONTAL WOOD-FRAMED GYPSUM BOARD DIAPHRAGM CEILING ASSEMBLIES

MATERIAL	THICKNESS OF MATERIAL (min.) (inch)	SPACING OF FRAMING MEMBERS (max.) (inch)	SHEAR VALUE[a, b] (plf of ceiling)	MINIMUM FASTENER SIZE [c, d]
Gypsum board or gypsum panel product	1/2	16 o.c.	90	5d cooler or wallboard nail; 15/8-inch long; 0.086-inch shank; 15/64-inch head
Gypsum board or gypsum panel product	1/2	24 o.c.	70	5d cooler or wallboard nail; 15/8-inch long; 0.086-inch shank; 15/64-inch head

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per linear foot = 1.488 kg/m.

a. Values are not cumulative with other horizontal diaphragm values and are for short-term loading caused by wind or seismic loading. Values shall be reduced 25 percent for normal loading.

b. *Deleted*

c. $1^1/_4$-inch, No. 6 Type S or W screws shall be permitted to be substituted for the listed nails.

d. Fasteners shall be spaced not more than 7 inches on center at all supports, including perimeter blocking, and not less than $^3/_8$ inch from the edges and ends of the gypsum board.

702.3.7 Water-resistant gypsum backing board. Gypsum board used as the base or backer for adhesive application of ceramic tile or other required nonabsorbent finish material shall conform to ASTM C1178, C1278 or C1396. Use of water-resistant gypsum backing board shall be permitted on ceilings. Water-resistant gypsum board shall not be installed over a Class I or II vapor retarder in a shower or tub compartment. Cut or exposed edges, including those at wall intersections, shall be sealed as recommended by the manufacturer.

702.3.7.1 Limitations. Water-resistant gypsum backing board shall not be used where there will be direct exposure to water, or in areas subject to continuous high humidity.

702.4 Ceramic tile.

702.4.1 General. Ceramic tile surfaces shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.1, A108.4, A108.5, A108.6, A108.11, A118.1, A118.3, A136.1 and A137.1.

702.4.2 Backer boards. Materials used as backers for wall tile in tub and shower areas and wall panels in shower areas shall be of materials listed in Table 702.4.2, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

TABLE 702.4.2
BACKER BOARD MATERIALS

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Glass mat gypsum backing panel	ASTM C1178

Fiber-reinforced gypsum panels	ASTM C1278
Nonasbestos fiber-cement backer board	ASTM C1288 or ISO 8336, Category C
Nonasbestos fiber mat-reinforced cementitious backer units	ASTM C1325

702.5 Other finishes. Wood veneer paneling and hardboard paneling shall be placed on wood or cold-formed steel framing spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center. Wood veneer and hard board paneling less than $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6 mm) nominal thickness shall not have less than a $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (10 mm) gypsum board or gypsum panel product backer. Wood veneer paneling not less than $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6 mm) nominal thickness shall conform to ANSI/HPVA HP-1. Hardboard paneling shall conform to CPA/ANSI A135.5.

702.6 Wood shakes and shingles. Wood shakes and shingles shall conform to CSSB *Grading Rules for Wood Shakes and Shingles* and shall be permitted to be installed directly to the studs with maximum 24 inches (610 mm) on-center spacing.

702.6.1 Attachment. Nails, staples or glue are permitted for attaching shakes or shingles to the wall, and attachment of the shakes or shingles directly to the surface shall be permitted provided the fasteners are appropriate for the type of wall surface material. Where nails or staples are used, two fasteners shall be provided and shall be placed so that they are covered by the course above.

702.6.2 Furring strips. Where furring strips are used, they shall be 1 inch by 2 inches or 1 inch by 3 inches (25 mm by 51 mm or 25 mm by 76 mm), spaced a distance on center equal to the desired exposure, and shall be attached to the wall by nailing through other wall material into the studs.

702.7 Vapor retarders. Class I or II vapor retarders are required on the interior side of frame walls in Climate Zones 5, 6, 7, 8 and Marine 4.

Exceptions:

1. Basement walls.
2. Below-grade portion of any wall.
3. Construction where moisture or its freezing will not damage the materials.

702.7.1 Class III vapor retarders. Class III vapor retarders shall be permitted where any one of the conditions in Table 702.7.1 is met.

TABLE 702.7.1
CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS

CLIMATE ZONE	CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS PERMITTED FOR:[a]
5	Vented cladding over wood structural panels. Vented cladding over fiberboard. Vented cladding over gypsum.

CLIMATE ZONE	CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS PERMITTED FOR:[a]
	Continuous insulation with *R*-value ≥ 5 over 2 × 4 wall. Continuous insulation with *R*-value ≥ 7.5 over 2 × 6 wall.
6	Vented cladding over fiberboard. Vented cladding over gypsum. Continuous insulation with *R*-value ≥ 7.5 over 2 × 4 wall. Continuous insulation with *R*-value ≥ 11.25 over 2 × 6 wall.

For SI: 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m3.

a. Spray foam with a maximum permeance of 1.5 perms at the installed thickness, applied to the interior cavity side of wood structural panels, fiberboard, insulating sheathing or gypsum is deemed to meet the continuous insulation requirement where the spray foam *R*-value meets or exceeds the specified continuous insulation *R*-value.

702.7.2 Material vapor retarder class. The vapor retarder class shall be based on the manufacturer's certified testing or a tested assembly.

The following shall be deemed to meet the class specified:

1. Class I: Sheet polyethylene, on perforated aluminum foil.
2. Class II: Kraft-faced fiberglass batts.
3. Class III: Latex or enamel paint.

702.7.3 Minimum clear airspaces and vented openings for vented cladding. For the purposes of this section, vented cladding shall include the following minimum clear airspaces. Other openings with the equivalent vent area shall be permitted.

1. Vinyl polypropylene or horizontal aluminum siding applied over a weather-resistive barrier as specified in Table 703.3(1).
2. Brick veneer with a clear airspace as specified in Table 703.8.4.
3. Other approved vented claddings.

SECTION 703
EXTERIOR COVERING

703.1 General. Exterior walls shall provide the building with a weather-resistant exterior wall envelope. The exterior wall envelope shall include flashing as described in Section 703.4.

Exception: Log walls designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of ICC 400.

703.1.1 Water resistance. The exterior wall envelope shall be designed and constructed in a manner that prevents the accumulation of water within the wall assembly by providing a water-resistant barrier behind the exterior cladding as required by Section 703.2 and a means of draining to the exterior water that penetrates the exterior cladding.

Exceptions:

1. A weather-resistant exterior wall envelope shall not be required over

concrete or masonry walls designed in accordance with Chapter 6 and flashed in accordance with Section 703.4 or 703.8.

2. Compliance with the requirements for a means of drainage, and the requirements of Sections 703.2 and 703.4, shall not be required for an exterior wall envelope that has been demonstrated to resist wind-driven rain through testing of the exterior wall envelope, including joints, penetrations and intersections with dissimilar materials, in accordance with ASTM E331 under the following conditions:
   2.1. Exterior wall envelope test assemblies shall include at least one opening, one control joint, one wall/eave interface and one wall sill. All tested openings and penetrations shall be representative of the intended end-use configuration.
   2.2. Exterior wall envelope test assemblies shall be at least 4 feet by 8 feet (1219 mm by 2438 mm) in size.
   2.3. Exterior wall assemblies shall be tested at a minimum differential pressure of 6.24 pounds per square foot (299 Pa).
   2.4. Exterior wall envelope assemblies shall be subjected to the minimum test exposure for a minimum of 2 hours.

The exterior wall envelope design shall be considered to resist wind-driven rain where the results of testing indicate that water did not penetrate control joints in the exterior wall envelope, joints at the perimeter of openings penetration or intersections of terminations with dissimilar materials.

703.1.2 Wind resistance. Wall coverings, backing materials and their attachments shall be capable of resisting wind loads in accordance with Tables 301.2(2) and 301.2(3). Wind-pressure resistance of the siding, soffit and backing materials shall be determined by ASTM E330 or other applicable standard test methods. Where wind-pressure resistance is determined by design analysis, data from approved design standards and analysis conforming to generally accepted engineering practice shall be used to evaluate the siding, soffit and backing material and its fastening. All applicable failure modes including bending rupture of siding, fastener withdrawal and fastener head pull-through shall be considered in the testing or design analysis. Where the wall covering, soffit and backing material resist wind load as an assembly, use of the design capacity of the assembly shall be permitted.

703.2 Water-resistive barrier. One layer of No. 15 asphalt felt, free from holes and breaks, complying with ASTM D226 for Type 1 felt or other approved water-resistive barrier shall be applied over studs or sheathing of all exterior walls. No.15 asphalt felt shall be applied horizontally, with the upper layer lapped over the lower

layer not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Where joints occur, felt shall be lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm). Other approved materials shall be installed in accordance with the water-resistive barrier manufacturer's installation instructions. The No. 15 asphalt felt or other approved water-resistive barrier material shall be continuous to the top of walls and terminated at penetrations and building appendages in a manner to meet the requirements of the exterior wall envelope as described in Section 703.1.

703.3 Wall covering nominal thickness and attachments. The nominal thickness and attachment of exterior wall coverings shall be in accordance with Table 703.3(1), the wall covering material requirements of this section, and the wall covering manufacturer's installation instructions. Cladding attachment over foam sheathing shall comply with the additional requirements and limitations of Sections 703.15 through 703.17. Nominal material thicknesses in Table 703.3(1) are based on a maximum stud spacing of 16 inches (406 mm) on center. Where specified by the siding manufacturer's instructions and supported by a test report or other documentation, attachment to studs with greater spacing is permitted. Fasteners for exterior wall coverings attached to wood framing shall be in accordance with Section 703.3.3 and Table 703.3(1). Exterior wall coverings shall be attached to cold-formed steel light frame construction in accordance with the cladding manufacturer's installation instructions, the requirements of Table 703.3(1) using screw fasteners substituted for the nails specified in accordance with Table 703.3(2), or an approved design.

TABLE 703.3(1)
SIDING MINIMUM ATTACHMENT AND MINIMUM THICKNESS

SIDING MATERIAL		NOMINAL THICKNESS (inches)	JOINT TREATMENT	TYPE OF SUPPORTS FOR THE SIDING MATERIAL AND FASTENERS					
				Wood or wood structural panel sheathing into stud	Fiberboard sheathing into stud	Gypsum sheathing into stud	Foam plastic sheathing into stud [1]	Direct to studs	Number or spacing of fasteners
Anchored veneer: brick, concrete, masonry or stone (see Section 703.8)		2	Section 703.8	Section 703.8					
Adhered veneer: concrete, stone or masonry (see Section 703.12)		—	Section 703.12	Section 703.12					
Fiber cement siding	Panel siding (see Section 703.10.1)	5/16	Section 703.10.1	6d common (2″× 0.113″)	6d common (2″× 0.113″)	6d common (2″× 0.113″)	6d common (2″× 0.113″)	4d common ($1\frac{1}{2}$″ x 0.099″)	6″ panel edges 12″ inter. sup.
	Lap siding (see Section 703.10.2)	5/16	Section 703.10.2	6d common (2″× 0.113″)	6d common (2″× 0.113″)	6d common (2″× 0.113″)	6d common (2″× 0.113″)	6d common (2″× 0.113″) or 11 gage roofing nail	Note f
Hardboard panel siding (see Section 703.5)		7/16	—	0.120″ nail (shank) with 0.225″ head	0.120″ nail (shank) with 0.225″ head	0.120″ nail (shank) with 0.225″ head	0.120″ nail (shank) with 0.225″ head	0.120″ nail (shank) with 0.225″ head	6″ panel edges 12″ inter. sup. [d]

SIDING MATERIAL		NOMINAL THICKNESS (inches)	JOINT TREATMENT	TYPE OF SUPPORTS FOR THE SIDING MATERIAL AND FASTENERS					
				Wood or wood structural panel sheathing into stud	Fiberboard sheathing into stud	Gypsum sheathing into stud	Foam plastic sheathing into stud [l]	Direct to studs	Number or spacing of fasteners
Hardboard lap siding (see Section 703.5)		7/16	Note e	0.099″ nail (shank) with 0.240″ head	0.099″ nail (shank) with 0.240″ head	0.099″ nail (shank) with 0.240″ head	0.099″ nail (shank) with 0.240″ head	0.099″ nail (shank) with 0.240″ head	Same as stud spacing 2 per bearing
Horizontal aluminum[a]	Without insulation	0.019 [b]	Lap	Siding nail $1\frac{1}{2}$″x 0.120″	Siding nail 2″ × 0.120″	Siding nail 2″ × 0.120″	Siding nail [h] $1\frac{1}{2}$″ x 0.120″	Not allowed	Same as stud spacing
		0.024	Lap	Siding nail $1\frac{1}{2}$″ x 0.120″	Siding nail 2″ × 0.120″	Siding nail 2″ × 0.120″	Siding nail [h] $1\frac{1}{2}$″ x 0.120″	Not allowed	
	With insulation	0.019	Lap	Siding nail $1\frac{1}{2}$″ x 0.120″	Siding nail $2\frac{1}{2}$″ x 0.120″	Siding nail $2\frac{1}{2}$″ x 0.120″	Siding nail [h] $1\frac{1}{2}$″ x 0.120″	Siding nail $1\frac{1}{2}$″ x 0.120″	
Insulated vinyl siding [j]		0.035 (vinyl siding layer only)	Lap	0.120 nail (shank) with a 0.313 head or 16-gage Crown [h, i]	0.120 nail (shank) with a 0.313 head or 16-gage Crown [h]	0.120 nail (shank) with a 0.313 head or 16-gage Crown [h]	0.120 nail (shank) with a 0.313 head Section 703.11.2	Not allowed	16 inches on center or specified by manufacturer instructions, test report or other sections of this code
Particleboard panels		3/8	—	6d box nail (2″× 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″× 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″× 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″× 0.099″)	Not allowed	6″ panel edges 12″ inter. sup.
		1/2	—	6d box nail (2″× 0.099□)	6d box nail (2″× 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″× 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″× 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″× 0.099□)	
		5/8	—	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	8d box nail ($2\frac{1}{2}$× 0.113″)	8d box nail ($2\frac{1}{2}$× 0.113″)	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″)	
Polypropylene siding [k]		Not applicable	Lap	Section 703.14.1	Section 703.14.1	Section 703.14.1	Section 703.14.1	Not allowed	As specified by the manufacturer instructions, test report or other sections of this code
Steel [c]		29 ga.	Lap	Siding nail ($1\frac{3}{4}$″× 0.113″) Staple–$1\frac{3}{4}$″	Siding nail ($2\frac{3}{4}$″× 0.113″) Staple–$2\frac{1}{2}$″	Siding nail ($2\frac{1}{2}$″× 0.113″) Staple–$2\frac{1}{4}$″	Siding nail ($1\frac{3}{4}$″x 0.113″) Staple–$1\frac{3}{4}$″	Not allowed	Same as stud spacing
Vinyl siding (see Section 703.11)		0.035	Lap	0.120″ nail (shank) with a 0.313″ head or 16-gage staple with $\frac{3}{8}$- to $\frac{1}{2}$-inch crown [h, i]	0.120″ nail (shank) with a 0.313″ head or 16-gage staple with $\frac{3}{8}$- to $\frac{1}{2}$-inch crown [h]	0.120″ nail (shank) with a 0.313″ head or 16-gage staple with $\frac{3}{8}$- to $\frac{1}{2}$-inch crown [h]	0.120″nail (shank) with a 0.313 head Section 703.11.2	Not allowed	16 inches on center or as specified by the manufacturer instructions or test report
Wood siding (see Section 703.5)	Wood rustic, drop	$\frac{3}{8}$ min.	Lap	6d box or siding nail (2″× 0.099″)	6d box or siding nail (2″× 0.099″)	6d box or siding nail (2″× 0.099″)	6d box or siding nail (2″× 0.099″)	8d box or siding nail (21/2″× 0.113″) Staple–2″	Face nailing up to 6″ widths, 1 nail per bearing; 8″ widths and over, 2 nails per bearing
	Shiplap	$\frac{19}{32}$ average	Lap						
	Bevel	$\frac{7}{16}$							
	Butt tip	$\frac{3}{16}$	Lap						

SIDING MATERIAL	NOMINAL THICKNESS (inches)	JOINT TREATMENT	TYPE OF SUPPORTS FOR THE SIDING MATERIAL AND FASTENERS					
			Wood or wood structural panel sheathing into stud	Fiberboard sheathing into stud	Gypsum sheathing into stud	Foam plastic sheathing into stud [1]	Direct to studs	Number or spacing of fasteners
Wood structural panel ANSI/APA PRP-210 siding (exterior grade) (see Section 703.5)	3/8 – 1/2	Note e	2″× 0.099″ siding nail	2 1/2″× 0.113″ siding nail	2 1/2″× 0.113″ siding nail	2 1/2″× 0.113″ siding nail	2″× 0.099″ siding nail	6″ panel edges 12″ inter. sup.
Wood structural panel lap siding (see Section 703.5)	3/8 – 1/2	Note e Note g	2″× 0.099″ siding nail	2 1/2″× 0.113″ siding nail	2 1/2″× 0.113″ siding nail	2 1/2″× 0.113″ siding nail	2″× 0.099″ siding nail	8″ along bottom edge

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Aluminum nails shall be used to attach aluminum siding.
b. Aluminum (0.019 inch) shall be unbacked only where the maximum panel width is 10 inches and the maximum flat area is 8 inches. The tolerance for aluminum siding shall be +0.002 inch of the nominal dimension.
c. Shall be of approved type.
d. Where used to resist shear forces, the spacing must be 4 inches at panel edges and 8 inches on interior supports.
e. Vertical end joints shall occur at studs and shall be covered with a joint cover or shall be caulked.
f. Face nailing: one 6d common nail through the overlapping planks at each stud. Concealed nailing: one 11-gage 1 1/2 -inch-long galv. roofing nail through the top edge of each plank at each stud in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
g. Vertical joints, if staggered, shall be permitted to be away from studs if applied over wood structural panel sheathing.
h. Minimum fastener length must be sufficient to penetrate sheathing other nailable substrate and framing a total of a minimum of 1 1/4 inches or in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
i. Where specified by the manufacturer's instructions and supported by a test report, fasteners are permitted to penetrate into or fully through nailable sheathing or other nailable substrate of minimum thickness specified by the instructions or test report, without penetrating into framing.
j. Insulated vinyl siding shall comply with ASTM D7793.
k. Polypropylene siding shall comply with ASTM D7254.
l. Cladding attachment over foam sheathing shall comply with the additional requirements and limitations of Sections 703.15, 703.16 and 703.17.

TABLE 703.3(2)
SCREW FASTENER SUBSTITUTION FOR SIDING ATTACHMENT TO COLD-FORMED STEEL LIGHT FRAME CONSTRUCTION [a, b, c, d, e]

NAIL DIAMETER PER TABLE 703.3(1)	MINIMUM SCREW FASTENER SIZE
0.099"	No. 6
0.113"	No. 7
0.120"	No. 8

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm

a. Screws shall comply with ASTM C1513 and shall penetrate a minimum of three threads through minimum 33 mil (20 gage) cold-formed steel frame construction.
b. Screw head diameter shall be not less than the nail head diameter required by Table 703.3(1).
c. Number and spacing of screw fasteners shall comply with Table 703.3(1).
d. Pan head, hex washer head, modified truss head or other screw head types with a flat attachment surface under the head shall be used for vinyl siding attachment.
e. Aluminum siding shall not be fastened directly to cold-formed steel light frame construction.

703.3.1 Soffit installation. Soffits shall comply with Section 703.3.1.1, Section 703.3.1.2 or the manufacturer's installation instructions.

703.3.1.1 Wood structural panel soffit. The minimum nominal thickness for wood structural panel soffits shall be 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) and shall be

fastened to framing or nailing strips with 2-inch by 0.099-inch (51 mm × 2.5 mm) nails. Fasteners shall be in spaced not less than 6 inches (152 mm) on center at panel edges and 12 inches (305 mm) on center at intermediate supports.

703.3.1.2 Vinyl soffit panels. Soffit panels shall be fastened at fascia and wall ends and to intermediate nailing strips as necessary to ensure that there is no unsupported span greater than 16 inches (406 mm), or as specified by the manufacturer's instructions.

703.3.2 Wind limitations. Where the design wind pressure exceeds 30 psf or where the limits of Table 703.3.2 are exceeded, the attachment of wall coverings and soffits shall be designed to resist the component and cladding loads specified in Table 301.2(2) for walls, adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table 301.2(3). For the determination of wall covering and soffit attachment, component and cladding loads shall be determined using an effective wind area of 10 square feet (0.93 m2).

TABLE 703.3.2
LIMITS FOR ATTACHMENT PER TABLE 703.3(1)

MAXIMUM MEAN ROOF HEIGHT *(feet)*			
Ultimate Wind Speed (mph 3-second gust)	**Exposure**		
	B	**C**	**D**
115	NL	50'	20'
120	NL	30'	DR
130	60'	15'	DR
140	35'	DR	DR

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.
NL = Not Limited by Table 703.3.2, DR = Design Required.

703.3.3 Fasteners. Exterior wall coverings and roof overhang soffits shall be securely fastened with aluminum, galvanized, stainless steel or rust-preventative coated nails or staples in accordance with Table 703.3(1) or with other approved corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the wall covering manufacturer's installation instructions. Nails and staples shall comply with ASTM F1667. Nails shall be T-head, modified round head, or round head with smooth or deformed shanks. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of $^{7}/_{16}$ inch (11.1 mm) outside diameter and be manufactured of minimum 16-gage wire. Where fiberboard, gypsum, or foam plastic sheathing backing is used, nails or staples shall be driven into the studs. Where wood or wood structural panel sheathing is used, fasteners shall be driven into studs unless otherwise permitted to be driven into sheathing in accordance with either the siding manufacturer's installation instructions or Table 703.3.3.

TABLE 703.3.3
OPTIONAL SIDING ATTACHMENT SCHEDULE FOR FASTENERS WHERE NO STUD PENETRATION NECESSARY

APPLICATION	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER	SPACING OF FASTENERS [b]
Exterior wall covering (weighing 3 psf or less) attachment to wood structural panel sheathing, either direct or over foam sheathing a maximum of 2 inches thick.[a] Note: Does not apply to vertical siding.	Ring shank roofing nail (0.120" min. dia.)	12" o.c.
	Ring shank nail (0.148" min. dia.)	15" o.c.
	No. 6 screw (0.138" min. dia.)	12" o.c.
	No. 8 screw (0.164" min. dia.)	16" o.c.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.479 kPa.

a. Fastener length shall be sufficient to penetrate the back side of the wood structural panel sheathing by at least $^1/_4$ inch. The wood structural panel sheathing shall be not less than $^7/_{16}$ inch in thickness.

b. Spacing of fasteners is per 12 inches of siding width. For other siding widths, multiply "Spacing of Fasteners" above by a factor of 12/s, where "s" is the siding width in inches. Fastener spacing shall never be greater than the manufacturer's minimum recommendations.

703.3.4 Minimum fastener length and penetration. Fasteners shall have the greater of the minimum length specified in Table 703.3(1) or as required to provide a minimum penetration into framing as follows:

1. Fasteners for horizontal aluminum siding, steel siding, particleboard panel siding, wood structural panel siding in accordance with ANSI/APA-PRP 210, fiber-cement panel siding and fiber-cement lap siding installed over foam plastic sheathing shall penetrate not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) into framing or shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Fasteners for hardboard panel and lap siding shall penetrate not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) into framing.
3. Fasteners for vinyl siding and insulated vinyl siding installed over wood or wood structural panel sheathing shall penetrate not less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) into sheathing and framing combined. Vinyl siding and insulated vinyl siding shall be permitted to be installed with fasteners penetrating into or through wood or wood structural sheathing of minimum thickness as specified by the manufacturer's instructions or test report, with or without penetration into the framing. Where the fastener penetrates fully through the sheathing, the end of the fastener shall extend not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) beyond the opposite face of the sheathing. Fasteners for vinyl siding and insulated vinyl siding installed over foam plastic sheathing shall be in accordance with Section 703.11.2. Fasteners for vinyl siding and insulated vinyl siding installed over fiberboard or gypsum sheathing shall penetrate not less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) into framing.
4. Fasteners for vertical or horizontal wood siding shall penetrate not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) into studs, studs and wood sheathing combined, or blocking.

5. Fasteners for siding material installed over foam plastic sheathing shall have sufficient length to accommodate foam plastic sheathing thickness and to penetrate framing or sheathing and framing combined, as specified in Items 1 through 4.

703.4 Flashing. Approved corrosion-resistant flashing shall be applied shingle-fashion in a manner to prevent entry of water into the wall cavity or penetration of water to the building structural framing components. Self-adhered membranes used as flashing shall comply with AAMA 711. Fluid-applied membranes used as flashing in exterior walls shall comply with AAMA 714. The flashing shall extend to the surface of the exterior wall finish. Approved corrosion-resistant flashings shall be installed at the following locations:

1. Exterior window and door openings. Flashing at exterior window and door openings shall extend to the surface of the exterior wall finish or to the water-resistive barrier complying with Section 703.2 for subsequent drainage. Mechanically attached flexible flashings shall comply with AAMA 712. Flashing at exterior window and door openings shall be installed in accordance with one or more of the following:
   1.1. The fenestration manufacturer's installation and flashing instructions, or for applications not addressed in the fenestration manufacturer's instructions, in accordance with the flashing manufacturer's instructions. Where flashing instructions or details are not provided, pan flashing shall be installed at the sill of exterior window and door openings. Pan flashing shall be sealed or sloped in such a manner as to direct water to the surface of the exterior wall finish or to the water-resistive barrier for subsequent drainage. Openings using pan flashing shall incorporate flashing or protection at the head and sides.
   1.2. In accordance with the flashing design or method of a registered design professional.
   1.3. In accordance with other approved methods.
2. At the intersection of chimneys or other masonry construction with frame or stucco walls, with projecting lips on both sides under stucco copings.
3. Under and at the ends of masonry, wood or metal copings and sills.
4. Continuously above all projecting wood trim.
5. Where exterior porches, decks or stairs attach to a wall or floor assembly of wood-frame construction.
6. At wall and roof intersections.
7. At built-in gutters.

703.5 Wood, hardboard and wood structural panel siding. Wood, hardboard, and wood structural panel siding shall be installed in accordance with this section and Table 703.3(1). Hardboard siding shall comply with CPA/ANSI A135.6.

Hardboard siding used as architectural trim shall comply with CPA/ANSI A 135.7.

703.5.1 Vertical wood siding. Wood siding applied vertically shall be nailed to horizontal nailing strips or blocking set not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center.

703.5.2 Panel siding. Three-eighths-inch (9.5 mm) wood structural panel siding shall not be applied directly to studs spaced more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center where long dimension is parallel to studs. Wood structural panel siding $^{7}/_{16}$ inch (11.1 mm) or thinner shall not be applied directly to studs spaced more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center. The stud spacing shall not exceed the panel span rating provided by the manufacturer unless the panels are installed with the face grain perpendicular to the studs or over sheathing approved for that stud spacing.

Joints in wood, hardboard or wood structural panel siding shall be made as follows unless otherwise approved. Vertical joints in panel siding shall occur over framing members, unless wood or wood structural panel sheathing is used, and shall be shiplapped or covered with a batten. Horizontal joints in panel siding shall be lapped not less than 1 inch (25 mm) or shall be shiplapped or flashed with Z-flashing and occur over solid blocking, wood or wood structural panel sheathing.

703.5.3 Horizontal wood siding. Horizontal lap siding shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Where there are no recommendations the siding shall be lapped not less than 1 inch (25 mm), or $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) if rabbeted, and shall have the ends caulked, covered with a batten or sealed and installed over a strip of flashing.

703.6 Wood shakes and shingles. Wood shakes and shingles shall conform to CSSB *Grading Rules for Wood Shakes and Shingles*.

703.6.1 Application. Wood shakes or shingles shall be applied either single course or double course over nominal $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) wood-based sheathing or to furring strips over $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) nominal nonwood sheathing. A water-resistive barrier shall be provided over all sheathing, with horizontal overlaps in the membrane of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) and vertical overlaps of not less than 6 inches (152 mm). Where horizontal furring strips are used, they shall be 1 inch by 3 inches or 1 inch by 4 inches (25 mm by 76 mm or 25 mm by 102 mm) and shall be fastened to the studs with minimum 7d or 8d box nails and shall be spaced a distance on center equal to the actual weather exposure of the shakes or shingles, not to exceed the maximum exposure

specified in Table 703.6.1. When installing shakes or shingles over a nonpermeable water-resistive barrier, furring strips shall be placed first vertically over the barrier and in addition, horizontal furring strips shall be fastened to the vertical furring strips prior to attaching the shakes or shingles to the horizontal furring strips. The spacing between adjacent shingles to allow for expansion shall be $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) to $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) apart, and between adjacent shakes shall be $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) to $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) apart. The offset spacing between joints in adjacent courses shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm).

TABLE 703.6.1
MAXIMUM WEATHER EXPOSURE FOR
WOOD SHAKES AND SHINGLES ON EXTERIOR WALLS[a, b, c]
(Dimensions are in inches)

LENGTH	EXPOSURE FOR SINGLE COURSE	EXPOSURE FOR DOUBLE COURSE
Shingles[a]		
16	7	12[b]
18	8	14[c]
24	$10^1/_2$	16[d]
Shakes[a]		
18	8	14
24	$10^1/_2$	18

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Dimensions given are for No. 1 grade.
b. A maximum 9-inch exposure is permitted for No. 2 grade.
c. A maximum 10-inch exposure is permitted for No. 2 grade.
d. A maximum 14-inch exposure is permitted for No. 2 grade.

703.6.2 Weather exposure. The maximum weather exposure for shakes and shingles shall not exceed that specified in Table 703.6.1.

703.6.3 Attachment. Wood shakes or shingles shall be installed according to this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions. Each shake or shingle shall be held in place by two stainless steel Type 304, Type 316 or hot-dipped zinc-coated galvanized corrosion-resistant box nails in accordance with Table 703.6.3(1) or 703.6.3(2). The hot-dipped zinc-coated galvanizing shall be in compliance with ASTM A153, 1.0 ounce per square foot. Alternatively, 16-gage stainless steel Type 304 or Type 316 staples with crown widths $^7/_{16}$ inch (11 mm) minimum, $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) maximum, shall be used and the crown of the staple shall be placed parallel with the butt of the shake or the shingle. In single-course application, the fasteners shall be concealed by the course above and shall be driven approximately 1 inch (25 mm) above the butt line of the succeeding course and $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) from the edge. In double-course applications, the exposed shake or shingle shall be face-nailed with two

fasteners, driven approximately 2 inches (51 mm) above the butt line and 3/4 inch (19 mm) from each edge. Fasteners installed within 15 miles (24 km) of salt water coastal areas shall be stainless steel Type 316. Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated shakes or shingles in accordance with Section 902 or pressure-impregnated-preservative-treated shakes or shingles in accordance with AWPA U1 shall be stainless steel Type 316. The fasteners shall penetrate the sheathing or furring strips by not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) and shall not be overdriven. Fasteners for untreated (natural) and treated products shall comply with ASTM F1667.

TABLE 703.6.3(1)
SINGLE-COURSE SIDEWALL FASTENERS

SINGLE-COURSE SIDEWALL FASTENERS			
Product type	**Nail type and minimum length (inches)**	**Minimum head diameter (inches)**	**Minimum shank thickness (inches)**
R & R and sanded shingles			
16" and 18" shingles	3d box 11/4	0.19	0.08
24" shingles	4d box 11/2	0.19	0.08
Grooved shingles			
16" and 18" shingles	3d box 11/4	0.19	0.08
24" shingles	4d box 11/2	0.19	0.08
Split and sawn shakes			
18" straight-split shakes	5d box 13/4	0.19	0.08
18" and 24" handsplit shakes	6d box 2	0.19	0.0915
24" tapersplit shakes	5d box 13/4	0.19	0.08
18" and 24" tapersawn shakes	6d box 2	0.19	0.0915

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE 703.6.3(2)
DOUBLE-COURSE SIDEWALL FASTENERS

DOUBLE-COURSE SIDEWALL FASTENERS			
Product type	**Nail type and minimum length (inches)**	**Minimum head diameter (inches)**	**Minimum shank thickness (inches)**
R & R and sanded shingles			
16", 18" and 24" shingles	5d box 1 3/4 or same size casing nails	0.19	0.08
Grooved shingles			
16", 18" and 24" shingles	5d box 1 3/4	0.19	0.08
Split and sawn shakes			
18" straight-split shakes	7d box 2 1/4 or 8d 2 1/2	0.19	0.099
18" and 24" handsplit shakes	7d box 2 1/4 or 8d 2 1/2	0.19	0.099
24" tapersplit shakes	7d box 2 1/4 or 8d 2 1/2	0.19	0.099
18" and 24" tapersawn shakes	7d box 2 1/4 or 8d 2 1/2	0.19	0.099

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

703.6.4 Bottom courses. The bottom courses shall be doubled.

703.7 Exterior plaster (stucco). Installation of exterior plaster shall be in compliance with ASTM C926, ASTM C1063 and the provisions of this code.

703.7.1 Lath. Lath and lath attachments shall be of corrosion-resistant materials. Expanded metal or woven wire lath shall be attached with $1^1/_2$-inch-long (38 mm), 11-gage nails having a $^7/_{16}$-inch (11.1 mm) head, or $^7/_8$-inch-long (22.2 mm), 16-gage staples, spaced not more than 6 inches (152 mm) or as otherwise approved.

Exception: Lath is not required over masonry, cast-in-place concrete, precast concrete or stone substrates prepared in accordance with ASTM C1063.

703.7.2 Plaster. Plastering with cement plaster shall be in accordance with ASTM C926. Cement materials shall be in accordance with one of the following:

1. Masonry cement conforming to ASTM C91 Type M, S or N.
2. Portland cement conforming to ASTM C150 Type I, II, or III.
3. Blended hydraulic cement conforming to ASTM C595 Type IP, IS (< 70), IL, or IT (S < 70).
4. Hydraulic cement conforming to ASTM C1157 Type GU, HE, MS, HS, or MH.
5. Plastic (stucco) cement conforming to ASTM C1328.

Plaster shall be not less than three coats where applied over metal lath or wire lath and shall be not less than two coats where applied over masonry, concrete, pressure-preservative-treated wood or decay-resistant wood as specified in Section 317.1 or gypsum backing. If the plaster surface is completely covered by veneer or other facing material or is completely concealed, plaster application need be only two coats, provided the total thickness is as set forth in Table 702.1(1).

On wood-frame construction with an on-grade floor slab system, exterior plaster shall be applied to cover, but not extend below, lath, paper and screed.

The proportion of aggregate to cementitious materials shall be as set forth in Table 702.1(3).

703.7.2.1 Weep screeds. A minimum 0.019-inch (0.5 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage), corrosion-resistant weep screed or plastic weep screed, with a minimum vertical attachment flange of $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm), shall be provided at or below the foundation plate line on exterior stud walls

in accordance with ASTM C926. The weep screed shall be placed not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the earth or 2 inches (51 mm) above paved areas and shall be of a type that will allow trapped water to drain to the exterior of the building. The weather-resistant barrier shall lap the attachment flange. The exterior lath shall cover and terminate on the attachment flange of the weep screed.

703.7.3 Water-resistive barriers. Water-resistive barriers shall be installed as required in Section 703.2 and, where applied over wood-based sheathing, shall include a water-resistive, vapor-permeable barrier with a performance at least equivalent to two layers of Grade D paper. The individual layers shall be installed independently such that each layer provides a separate continuous plane and any flashing, installed in accordance with Section 703.4 and intended to drain to the water-resistive barrier, is directed between the layers.

Exception: Where the water-resistive barrier that is applied over wood-based sheathing has a water resistance equal to or greater than that of 60-minute Grade D paper and is separated from the stucco by an intervening, substantially nonwater-absorbing layer or designed drainage space.

703.7.4 Application. Each coat shall be kept in a moist condition for at least 48 hours prior to application of the next coat.

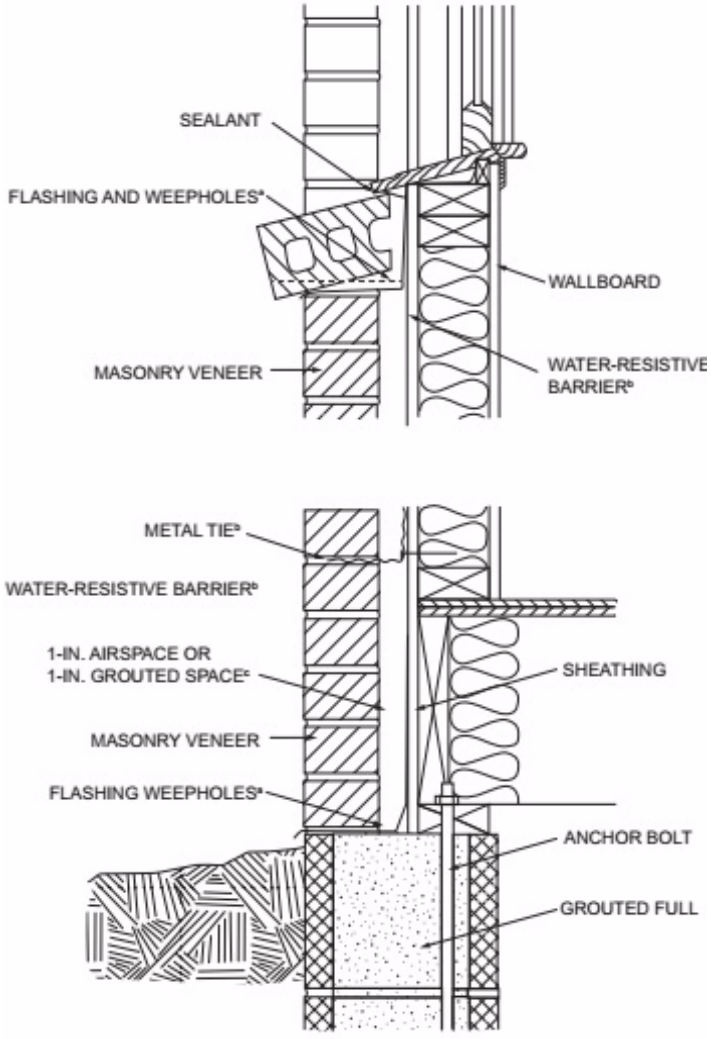
Exception: Applications installed in accordance with ASTM C926.

703.7.5 Curing. The finish coat for two-coat cement plaster shall not be applied sooner than seven days after application of the first coat. For three-coat cement plaster, the second coat shall not be applied sooner than 48 hours after application of the first coat. The finish coat for three-coat cement plaster shall not be applied sooner than seven days after application of the second coat.

703.8 Anchored stone and masonry veneer, general. Anchored stone and masonry veneer shall be installed in accordance with this chapter, Table 703.3(1) and Figure 703.8. These veneers installed over a backing of wood or cold-formed steel shall be limited to the first story above grade plane and shall not exceed 5 inches (127 mm) in thickness. See Section 602.10 for wall bracing requirements for masonry veneer for wood-framed construction and Section 603.9.5 for wall bracing requirements for masonry veneer for cold-formed steel construction.

Exceptions:

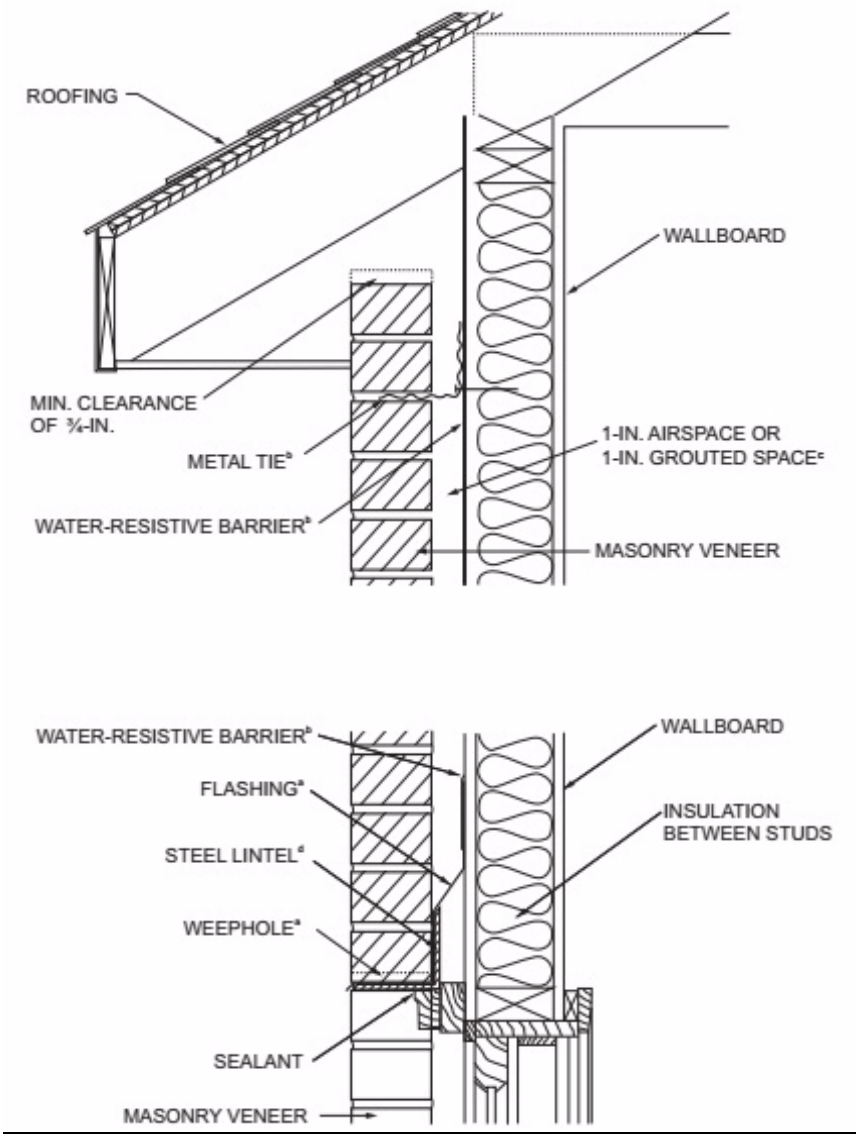
1. For buildings in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C, exterior stone or masonry veneer, as specified in Table 703.8(1), with a backing of wood or steel framing shall be permitted to the height specified in Table 703.8(1) above a noncombustible foundation.
2. *Deleted*



For SI: 1 inch = 24.5 mm.

FIGURE 703.8
TYPICAL MASONRY VENEER WALL DETAILS[e]

(continued)



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. See Sections 703.4, 703.8.5 and 703.8.6.

b. See Sections 703.2 and 703.8.4.

c. See Table 703.8.4 and Section 703.8.4.2.

d. See Section 703.8.3.

e. Figure 703.8 illustrates typical construction details for a masonry veneer wall. For the actual mandatory requirements of this code, see the indicated sections of text. Other details of masonry veneer wall construction shall be permitted provided the requirements of the indicated sections of text are met.

FIGURE 703.8—continued
TYPICAL MASONRY VENEER WALL DETAILS[e]

TABLE 703.8(1)
STONE OR MASONRY VENEER LIMITATIONS AND REQUIREMENTS, WOOD OR STEEL FRAMING, SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES A, B and C

SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY	NUMBER OF WOOD- OR STEEL-FRAMED STORIES	MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF VENEER ABOVE NONCOMBUSTIBLE FOUNDATION [a] (feet)	MAXIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS OF VENEER (inches)	MAXIMUM WEIGHT OF VENEER (psf) [b]	WOOD- OR STEEL-FRAMED STORY
A or B	Steel: 1 or 2 Wood: 1, 2 or 3	30	5	50	all
C	1	30	5	50	1 only
	2	30	5	50	top
					bottom
	Wood only: 3	30	5	50	top
					middle
					bottom

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.479 kPa.

a. An additional 8 feet is permitted for gable end walls. See also story height limitations of Section 301.3.

b. Maximum weight is installed weight and includes weight of mortar, grout, lath and other materials used for installation. Where veneer is placed on both faces of a wall, the combined weight shall not exceed that specified in this table.

TABLE 703.8(2)
Deleted

703.8.1 Interior veneer support. Veneers used as interior wall finishes shall be permitted to be supported on wood or cold-formed steel floors that are designed to support the loads imposed.

703.8.2 Exterior veneer support. Except in Seismic Design Categories D_0, D_1 and D_2, exterior masonry veneers having an installed weight of 40 pounds per square foot (195 kg/m^2) or less shall be permitted to be supported on wood or cold-formed steel construction. Where masonry veneer supported by wood or cold-formed steel construction adjoins masonry veneer supported by the foundation, there shall be a movement joint between the veneer supported by the wood or cold-formed steel construction and the veneer supported by the foundation. The wood or cold-formed steel construction supporting the masonry veneer shall be designed to limit the deflection to $^1/_{600}$ of the span for the supporting members. The design of the wood or cold-formed steel construction shall consider the weight of the veneer and any other loads.

703.8.2.1 Support by steel angle. A minimum 6-inch by 4-inch by $^5/_{16}$-inch (152 mm by 102 mm by 8 mm) steel angle, with the long leg placed vertically, shall be anchored to double 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) wood studs or double 350S162 cold-formed steel studs at a maximum on-center spacing of 16 inches (406 mm). Anchorage of the steel angle at every double stud spacing shall be not less than two $^7/_{16}$-inch-diameter (11 mm) by 4-inch (102 mm) lag screws for wood construction or two $^7/_{16}$-inch (11.1

mm) bolts with washers for cold-formed steel construction. The steel angle shall have a minimum clearance to underlying construction of $^{1}/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm). Not less than two-thirds the width of the masonry veneer thickness shall bear on the steel angle. Flashing and weep holes shall be located in the masonry veneer in accordance with Figure 703.8.2.1. The maximum height of masonry veneer above the steel angle support shall be 12 feet 8 inches (3861 mm). The airspace separating the masonry veneer from the wood backing shall be in accordance with Sections 703.8.4 and 703.8.4.2. The method of support for the masonry veneer on wood construction shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 703.8.2.1.

The maximum slope of the roof construction without stops shall be 7:12. Roof construction with slopes greater than 7:12 but not more than 12:12 shall have stops of a minimum 3-inch by 3-inch by $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (76 mm by 76 mm by 6.4 mm) steel plate welded to the angle at 24 inches (610 mm) on center along the angle or as approved by the building official.

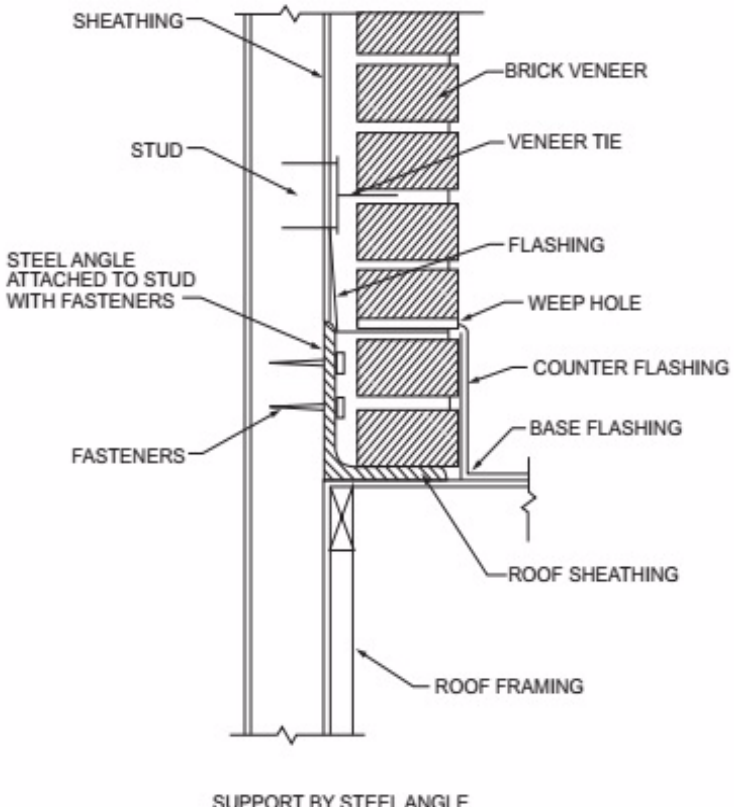


FIGURE 703.8.2.1
EXTERIOR MASONRY VENEER SUPPORT BY STEEL ANGLES

703.8.2.2 Support by roof construction. A steel angle shall be placed directly on top of the roof construction. The roof supporting construction for the steel angle shall consist of not fewer than three 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) wood members for wood construction or three 550S162 cold-formed steel members for cold-formed steel light frame construction. A wood member abutting the vertical wall stud construction shall be anchored with not fewer than three $^{5}/_{8}$-inch (15.9 mm) diameter by 5-inch (127 mm) lag screws to every wood stud spacing. Each additional wood roof member shall be anchored by the use of two 10d nails at every wood stud spacing. A cold-formed steel member abutting the vertical wall stud shall be anchored with not fewer than nine No. 8 screws to every cold-formed steel stud. Each additional cold-formed steel roof member shall be anchored to the adjoining roof member using two No. 8 screws at every stud spacing. Not less than two-thirds the width of the masonry veneer thickness shall bear on the steel angle. Flashing and weep holes shall be located in the masonry veneer wythe in accordance with Figure 703.8.2.2. The maximum height of the masonry veneer above the steel angle support shall be 12 feet 8 inches (3861 mm). The airspace separating the masonry veneer from the wood backing shall be in accordance with Sections 703.8.4 and 703.8.4.2. The support for the masonry veneer shall be constructed in accordance with Figure 703.8.2.2.

The maximum slope of the roof construction without stops shall be 7:12. Roof construction with slopes greater than 7:12 but not more than 12:12 shall have stops of a minimum 3-inch by 3-inch by $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (76 mm by 76 mm by 6.4 mm) steel plate welded to the angle at 24 inches (610 mm) on center along the angle or as approved by the building official.

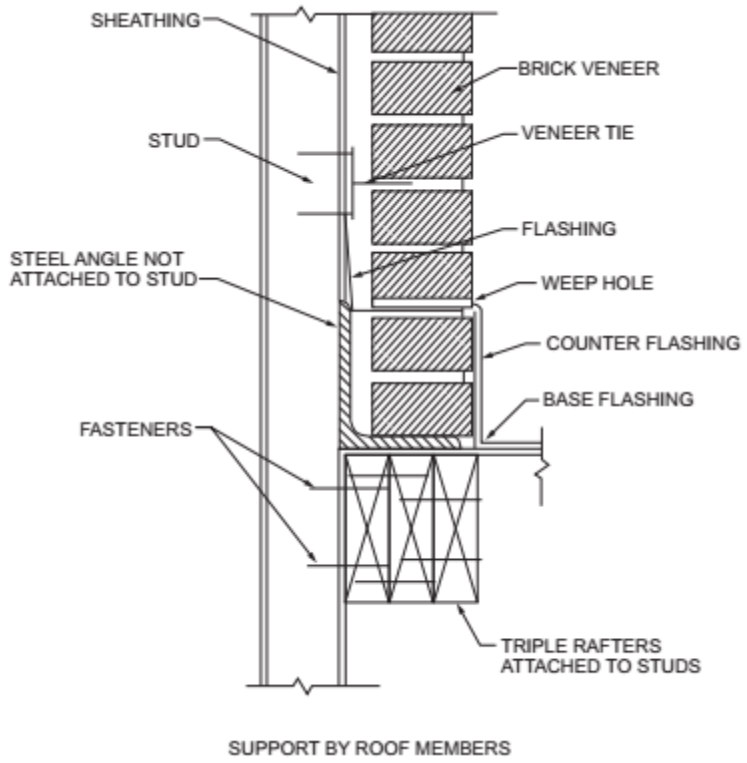


FIGURE 703.8.2.2
EXTERIOR MASONRY VENEER SUPPORT BY ROOF MEMBERS

703.8.3 Lintels. Masonry veneer shall not support any vertical load other than the dead load of the veneer above. Veneer above openings shall be supported on lintels of noncombustible materials. The lintels shall have a length of bearing not less than 4 inches (102 mm). Steel lintels shall be shop coated with a rust-inhibitive paint, except for lintels made of corrosion-resistant steel or steel treated with coatings to provide corrosion resistance. Construction of openings shall comply with either Section 703.8.3.1 or 703.8.3.2.

703.8.3.1 Allowable span. The allowable span shall not exceed the values set forth in Table 703.8.3.1.

TABLE 703.8.3.1
ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR
LINTELS SUPPORTING MASONRY VENEER [a, b, c, d]

SIZE OF STEEL ANGLE [a, c, d] (inches)	NO STORY ABOVE	ONE STORY ABOVE	TWO STORIES ABOVE	NO. OF 1/2-INCH OR EQUIVALENT REINFORCING BARS IN REINFORCED LINTEL [b, d]
3 × 3 × 1/4	6'-0"	4'-6"	3'-0"	1
4 × 3 × 1/4	8'-0"	6'-0"	4'-6"	1
5 × 3 1/2 × 5/16	10'-0"	8'-0"	6'-0"	2
6 × 3 1/2 × 5/16	14'-0"	9'-6"	7'-0"	2
2-6 × 3 1/2 × 5/16	20'-0"	12'-0"	9'-6"	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Long leg of the angle shall be placed in a vertical position.

b. Depth of reinforced lintels shall be not less than 8 inches and all cells of hollow masonry lintels shall be grouted solid. Reinforcing bars shall extend not less than 8 inches into the support.

c. Steel members indicated are adequate typical examples; other steel members meeting structural design requirements shall be permitted to be used.

d. Either steel angle or reinforced lintel shall span opening.

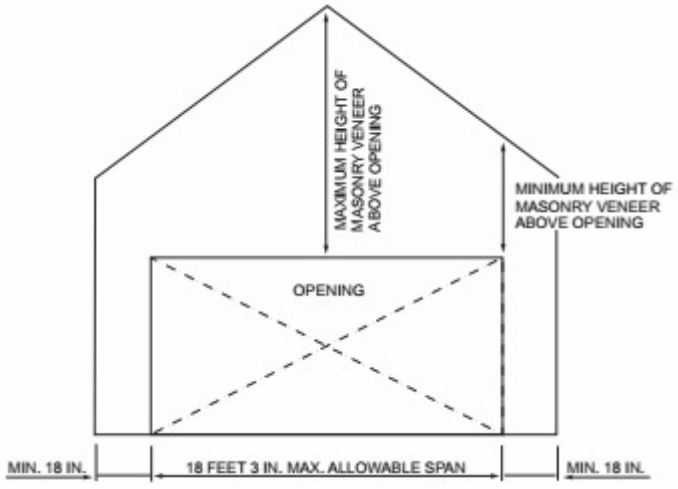
703.8.3.2 Maximum span. The allowable span shall not exceed 18 feet 3 inches (5562 mm) and shall be constructed to comply with Figure 703.8.3.2, *Table 703.8.3.2* and the following:

1. Provide a minimum length of 18 inches (457 mm) of masonry veneer on each side of opening as shown in Figure 703.8.3.2.
2. Provide a minimum 5-inch by 3 1/2-inch by 5/16-inch (127 mm by 89 mm by 7.9 mm) steel angle above the opening and shore for a minimum of 7 days after installation.
3. Provide double-wire joint reinforcement extending 12 inches (305 mm) beyond each side of the opening. Lap splices of joint reinforcement not less than 12 inches (305 mm). Comply with one of the following:
   3.1. Double-wire joint reinforcement shall be 3/16-inch (4.8 mm) diameter and shall be placed in the first two bed joints above the opening.
   3.2. Double-wire joint reinforcement shall be 9 gauge (0.144 inch or 3.66 mm diameter) and shall be placed in the first three bed joints above the opening.
4. Provide the height of masonry veneer above opening, in accordance with Table 703.8.3.2.

TABLE 703.8.3.2
HEIGHT OF MASONRY VENEER ABOVE OPENING

MINIMUM HEIGHT OF MASONRY VENEER ABOVE OPENING (INCH)	MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF MASONRY VENEER ABOVE OPENING (FEET)
13	< 5
24	5 to < 12
60	12 to height above support allowed by Section 703.8

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 703.8.3.2
MASONRY VENEER OPENING

703.8.4 Anchorage. Masonry veneer shall be anchored to the supporting wall studs with corrosion-resistant metal ties embedded in mortar or grout and extending into the veneer a minimum of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm), with not less than $^5/_8$-inch (15.9 mm) mortar or grout cover to outside face. Masonry veneer shall conform to Table 703.8.4(1). For masonry veneer tie attachment through insulating sheathing not greater than 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness to not less than $^7/_{16}$ performance category wood structural panel, see Table 703.8.4(2).

TABLE 703.8.4(1)
TIE ATTACHMENT AND AIRSPACE REQUIREMENTS

BACKING AND TIE	MINIMUM TIE	MINIMUM TIE FASTENER[a]	AIRSPACE[c]	
Wood stud backing with corrugated sheet metal	22 U.S. gage (0.0299 in.)× $^7/_8$ in. wide	8d common nail [b] ($2^1/_2$ in.× 0.131 in.)	Nominal 1 in. between sheathing and veneer	
Wood stud backing with metal strand wire	W1.7 (No. 9 U.S. gage; 0.148 in.) with hook embedded in mortar joint	8d common nail [b] ($2^1/_2$ in.× 0.131 in.)	Minimum nominal 1 in. between sheathing and veneer	Maximum $4^1/_2$ in. between backing and veneer
Cold-formed steel stud backing with adjustable metal strand wire	W1.7 (No. 9 U.S. gage; 0.148 in.) with hook embedded in mortar joint	No. 10 screw extending through the steel framing a minimum of three exposed threads	Minimum nominal 1 in. between sheathing and veneer	Maximum $4^1/_2$ in. between backing and veneer

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. *Deleted.*

b. All fasteners shall have rust-inhibitive coating suitable for the installation in which they are being used, or be manufactured from material not susceptible to corrosion.

c. An airspace that provides drainage shall be permitted to contain mortar from construction.

TABLE 703.8.4(2)
REQUIRED BRICK TIE SPACING FOR DIRECT APPLICATION TO WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEATHING [a, b, c]

FASTENER TYPE [d]	SIZE (DIA. OR SCREW #)	REQUIRED BRICK-TIE SPACING (VERTICAL-TIE SPACING/HORIZONTAL-TIE SPACING) (inches/inches)		
		115 mph V Ultimate		
		Zone 5, Exposure B	Zone 5, Exposure C	Zone 5, Exposure D
Ring Shank Nails	0.091	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/12, 12/16, 12/12	12/12
	0.148	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12
Screws	#6	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12
	#8	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12
	#10	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12
	#14	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12	24/16, 16/24, 16/16, 16/12, 12/16, 12/12

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mph = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is based on attachment of brick ties directly to wood structural panel sheathing only. Additional attachment of the brick tie to lumber framing is not required. The brick ties shall be permitted to be placed over any insulating sheathing, not to exceed 2 inches in thickness. Wood structural panel sheathing shall be a minimum $^{7}/_{16}$ performance category. The table is based on a building height of 30 feet or less.

b. Wood structural panels shall have a specific gravity of 0.42 or greater in accordance with NDS.

c. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 psi in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.

d. Fasteners shall be sized such that the tip of the fastener passes completely through the wood structural panel sheathing by not less than $^{1}/_{4}$ inch.

703.8.4.1 Size and spacing. Veneer ties, if strand wire, shall be not less in thickness than No. 9 U.S. gage [(0.148 inch) (4 mm)] wire and shall have a hook embedded in the mortar joint, or if sheet metal, shall be not less than No. 22 U.S. gage by [(0.0299 inch) (0.76 mm)] $^{7}/_{8}$ inch (22 mm) corrugated. Each tie shall support not more than 2.67 square feet (0.25 m^2) of wall area and shall be spaced not more than 32 inches (813 mm) on center horizontally and 24 inches (635 mm) on center vertically.

Exception: *Deleted*

703.8.4.1.1 Veneer ties around wall openings. Additional metal ties shall be provided around wall openings greater than 16 inches (406 mm) in either dimension. Metal ties around the perimeter of openings shall be spaced not more than 3 feet (9144 mm) on center and placed within 12 inches (305 mm) of the wall opening.

703.8.4.2 Grout fill. As an alternative to the airspace required by Table 703.8.4, grout shall be permitted to fill the airspace. Where the airspace is filled with grout, a water-resistive barrier is required over studs or sheathing. Where the airspace is filled, replacing the sheathing and water-resistive barrier with a wire mesh and approved water-resistive barrier or an approved water-resistive barrier-backed reinforcement attached directly to the studs is permitted.

703.8.5 Flashing. Flashing shall be located beneath the first course of masonry above finished ground level above the foundation wall or slab and at other points of support, including structural floors, shelf angles and lintels where masonry veneers are designed in accordance with Section 703.8. See Section 703.4 for additional requirements.

703.8.6 Weepholes. Weepholes shall be provided in the outside wythe of masonry walls at a maximum spacing of 33 inches (838 mm) on center. Weepholes shall be not less than $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (5 mm) in diameter. Weepholes shall be located immediately above the flashing.

703.9 Exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS)/EIFS with drainage. Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) shall comply with this chapter and Section 703.9.1. EIFS with drainage shall comply with this chapter and Section 703.9.2.

703.9.1 Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS). EIFS shall comply

with the following:

1. ASTM E2568.
2. EIFS shall be limited to applications over substrates of concrete or masonry wall assemblies.
3. Flashing of EIFS shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Section 703.4.
4. EIFS shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
5. EIFS shall terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the finished ground level.
6. Decorative trim shall not be face-nailed through the EIFS.

703.9.2 Exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS) with drainage. EIFS with drainage shall comply with the following:

1. ASTM E2568.
2. EIFS with drainage shall be required over all wall assemblies with the exception of substrates of concrete or masonry wall assemblies.
3. EIFS with drainage shall have an average minimum drainage efficiency of 90 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM E2273.
4. The water-resistive barrier shall comply with Section 703.2 or ASTM E2570.
5. The water-resistive barrier shall be applied between the EIFS and the wall sheathing.
6. Flashing of EIFS with drainage shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Section 703.4.
7. EIFS with drainage shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
8. EIFS with drainage shall terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the finished ground level.
9. Decorative trim shall not be face-nailed through the EIFS with drainage.

703.10 Fiber cement siding.

703.10.1 Panel siding. Fiber-cement panels shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II or ISO 8336, Category A, minimum Class 2. Panels shall be installed with the long dimension either parallel or perpendicular to framing. Vertical and horizontal joints shall occur over framing members and shall be protected with caulking, or with battens or flashing, or be vertical or horizontal shiplap, or otherwise designed to comply with Section 703.1. Panel siding shall be installed with fasteners in accordance with Table 703.3(1) or the approved manufacturer's instructions.

703.10.2 Lap siding. Fiber-cement lap siding having a maximum width of 12 inches (305 mm) shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II or ISO 8336, Category A, minimum Class 2. Lap siding shall be lapped a minimum of $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) and lap siding not having tongue-and-groove end joints shall have the ends protected with caulking, covered with an H-section joint cover, located over a strip of flashing, or shall be designed to comply with Section 703.1. Lap siding courses shall be installed with the fastener heads exposed or concealed, in accordance with Table 703.3(1) or approved manufacturer's instructions.

703.11 Vinyl siding. Vinyl siding shall be certified and labeled as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D3679 by an approved quality control agency.

703.11.1 Installation. Vinyl siding, soffit and accessories shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

703.11.1.1 Fasteners. Unless specified otherwise by the manufacturer's instructions, fasteners for vinyl siding shall be 0.120-inch (3 mm) shank diameter nail with a 0.313-inch (8 mm) head or 16-gage staple with a 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) to $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) crown.

703.11.1.2 Penetration depth. Unless specified otherwise by the manufacturer's instructions, fasteners shall penetrate into building framing. The total penetration into sheathing, furring framing or other nailable substrate shall be a minimum $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm). Where specified by the manufacturer's instructions and supported by a test report, fasteners are permitted to penetrate into or fully through nailable sheathing or other nailable substrate of minimum thickness specified by the instructions or test report without penetrating into framing. Where the fastener penetrates fully through the sheathing, the end of the fastener shall extend a minimum of $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) beyond the opposite face of the sheathing or nailable substrate.

703.11.1.3 Spacing. Unless specified otherwise by the manufacturer's instructions, the maximum spacing between fasteners for horizontal siding shall be 16 inches (406 mm), and for vertical siding 12 inches (305 mm) both horizontally and vertically. Where specified by the manufacturer's instructions and supported by a test report, greater fastener spacing is permitted.

703.11.2 Installation over foam plastic sheathing. Where vinyl siding or insulated vinyl siding is installed over foam plastic sheathing, the vinyl siding shall comply with Section 703.11 and shall have a design wind pressure resistance in accordance with Table 703.11.2.

Exceptions:

1. Where the foam plastic sheathing is applied directly over wood structural panels, fiberboard, gypsum sheathing or other approved backing capable of independently resisting the design wind pressure, the vinyl siding shall be installed in accordance with Sections 703.3.3 and 703.11.1.
2. Where the vinyl siding manufacturer's product specifications provide an approved design wind pressure rating for installation over foam plastic sheathing, use of this design wind pressure rating shall be permitted and the siding shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. Where the foam plastic sheathing and its attachment have a design wind pressure resistance complying with Sections 316.8 and 301.2.1, the vinyl siding shall be installed in accordance with Sections 703.3.3 and 703.11.1.

TABLE 703.11.2
ADJUSTED MINIMUM DESIGN WIND PRESSURE REQUIREMENT FOR VINYL SIDING

ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED (MPH)	ADJUSTED MINIMUM DESIGN WIND PRESSURE (ASD) (PSF) [a, b]					
	Case 1: With interior gypsum wallboard [c]			Case 2: Without interior gypsum wallboard [c]		
	Exposure			Exposure		
	B	C	D	B	C	D
110	-44.0	-61.6	-73.1	-62.9	-88.1	-104.4
115	-49.2	-68.9	-81.7	-70.3	-98.4	-116.7
120	-51.8	-72.5	-86.0	-74.0	-103.6	-122.8

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m2, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Linear interpolation is permitted.

b. The table values are based on a maximum 30-foot mean roof height, and effective wind area of 10 square feet Wall Zone 5 (corner), and the ASD design wind pressure from Table 301.2(2) multiplied by the following adjustment factors: 2.6 (Case 1) and 3.7 (Case 2) for wind speeds less than 130 mph and 3.7 (Case 2) for wind speeds greater than 130 mph.

c. Gypsum wallboard, gypsum panel product or equivalent.

d. For the indicated wind speed condition, foam sheathing only on the exterior of frame walls with vinyl siding is not allowed unless the vinyl siding complies with an adjusted minimum design wind pressure requirement as determined in accordance with Note b and the wall assembly is capable of resisting an impact without puncture at least equivalent to that of a wood frame wall with minimum 7/16-inch OSB sheathing as tested in accordance with ASTM E1886.

703.12 Adhered masonry veneer installation. Adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Section 703.7.3 and the requirements in Sections

12.1 and 12.3 of TMS 402. Adhered masonry veneer shall be installed in accordance with Section 703.7.1, Article 3.3C of TMS 602 or the manufacturer's instructions.

703.12.1 Clearances. On exterior stud walls, adhered masonry veneer shall be installed:

1. Minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above the earth;
2. Minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above paved areas; or
3. Minimum of $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) above exterior walking surfaces that are supported by the same foundation that supports the exterior wall.

703.12.2 Flashing at foundation. A corrosion-resistant screed or flashing of a minimum 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) or 26-gage galvanized or plastic with a minimum vertical attachment flange of 31/2 inches (89 mm) shall be installed to extend a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) below the foundation plate line on exterior stud walls in accordance with Section 703.4.

703.12.3 Water-resistive barrier. A water-resistive barrier shall be installed as required by Section 703.2 and shall comply with the requirements of Section 703.7.3. The water-resistive barrier shall lap over the exterior of the attachment flange of the screed or flashing provided in accordance with Section 703.12.2.

703.13 Insulated vinyl siding. Insulated vinyl siding shall be certified and labeled as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D7793 by an approved quality control agency.

703.13.1 Insulated vinyl siding and accessories. Insulated vinyl siding and accessories shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

703.14 Polypropylene siding. Polypropylene siding shall be certified and labeled as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D7254, and those of Section 703.14.2 or Section 703.14.3, by an approved quality control agency.

703.14.1 Polypropylene siding and accessories. Polypropylene siding and accessories shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

703.14.1.1 Installation. Polypropylene siding shall be installed over and attached to wood structural panel sheathing with minimum thickness of $^{7}/_{16}$ inch (11.1 mm), or other substrate, composed of wood or wood-based

material and fasteners having equivalent withdrawal resistance.

703.14.1.2 Fastener requirements. Unless otherwise specified in the approved manufacturer's instructions, nails shall be corrosion resistant, with a minimum 0.120-inch (3 mm) shank and minimum 0.313-inch (8 mm) head diameter. Nails shall be a minimum of $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) long or as necessary to penetrate sheathing or substrate not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm). Where the nail fully penetrates the sheathing or nailable substrate, the end of the fastener shall extend not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) beyond the opposite face of the sheathing or substrate. Staples are not permitted.

703.14.2 Fire separation. Polypropylene siding shall not be installed on walls with a fire separation distance of less than 5 feet (1524 mm) and walls closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) to a building on another lot.

Exception: Walls perpendicular to the line used to determine the fire separation distance.

703.14.3 Flame spread index. The certification of the flame spread index shall be accompanied by a test report stating that all portions of the test specimen ahead of the flame front remained in position during the test in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

703.15 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to wood framing. Cladding shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section 703, the cladding manufacturer's approved instructions, including any limitations for use over foam plastic sheathing, or an approved design. In addition, the cladding or furring attachments through foam sheathing to framing shall meet or exceed the minimum fastening requirements of Section 703.15.1, Section 703.15.2, or an approved design for support of cladding weight.

Exceptions:

1. Where the cladding manufacturer has provided approved installation instructions for application over foam sheathing, those requirements shall apply.
2. For exterior insulation and finish systems, refer to Section 703.9.
3. For anchored masonry or stone veneer installed over foam sheathing, refer to Section 703.8.

703.15.1 Direct attachment. Where cladding is installed directly over foam sheathing without the use of furring, cladding minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table 703.15.1.

TABLE 703.15.1
CLADDING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR DIRECT ATTACHMENT OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT [a]

CLADDING FASTENER THROUGH FOAM SHEATHING	CLADDING FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE [b]	CLADDING FASTENER VERTICAL SPACING (inches)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING [c] (inches)							
			16" o.c. Fastener Horizontal Spacing				24" o.c. Fastener Horizontal Spacing			
			Cladding Weight:				Cladding Weight:			
			3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf	3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf
Wood framing (minimum $1^1/_4$-inch penetration)	0.113" diameter nail	6	2.00	1.45	0.75	DR	2.00	0.85	DR	DR
		8	2.00	1.00	DR	DR	2.00	0.55	DR	DR
		12	2.00	0.55	DR	DR	1.85	DR	DR	DR
	0.120" diameter nail	6	3.00	1.70	0.90	0.55	3.00	1.05	0.50	DR
		8	3.00	1.20	0.60	DR	3.00	0.70	DR	DR
		12	3.00	0.70	DR	DR	2.15	DR	DR	DR
	0.131" diameter nail	6	4.00	2.15	1.20	0.75	4.00	1.35	0.70	DR
		8	4.00	1.55	0.80	DR	4.00	0.90	DR	DR
		12	4.00	0.90	DR	DR	2.70	0.50	DR	DR
	0.162" diameter nail	6	4.00	3.55	2.05	1.40	4.00	2.25	1.25	0.80
		8	4.00	2.55	1.45	0.95	4.00	1.60	0.85	0.50
		12	4.00	1.60	0.85	0.50	4.00	0.95	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.
DR = Design Required.
o.c. = On Center.
a. Wood framing shall be Spruce-pine-fir or any wood species with a specific gravity of 0.42 or greater in accordance with AWC NDS.
b. Nail fasteners shall comply with ASTM F1667, except nail length shall be permitted to exceed ASTM F1667 standard lengths.
c. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 psi in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.

703.15.2 Furred cladding attachment. Where wood furring is used to attach cladding over foam sheathing, furring minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table 703.15.2. Where placed horizontally, wood furring shall be preservative-treated wood in accordance with Section 317.1 or naturally durable wood and fasteners shall be corrosion resistant in accordance Section 317.3.

TABLE 703.15.2
FURRING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR APPLICATION OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT [a, b]

FURRING MATERIAL	FRAMING MEMBER	FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE	MINIMUM PENETRATION INTO WALL FRAMING (inches)	FASTENER SPACING IN FURRING (inches)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING [d] (inches)							
					16″ o.c. Furring [e] Siding Weight;				24″ o.c. Furring [e] Siding Weight;			
					3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf	3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf
Minimum 1X wood furring [c]	Minimum 2X wood stud	0.131" diameter nail	$1^1/_4$	8	4.00	2.45	1.45	0.95	4.00	1.60	0.85	DR
				12	4.00	1.60	0.85	DR	4.00	0.95	DR	DR
				16	4.00	1.10	DR	DR	3.05	0.60	DR	DR
		0.162" diameter nail	$1^1/_4$	8	4.00	4.00	2.45	1.60	4.00	2.75	1.45	0.85
				12	4.00	2.75	1.45	0.85	4.00	1.65	0.75	DR
				16	4.00	1.90	0.95	DR	4.00	1.05	DR	DR
		No.10 wood screw	1	12	4.00	2.30	1.20	0.70	4.00	1.40	0.60	DR
				16	4.00	1.65	0.75	DR	4.00	0.90	DR	DR
				24	4.00	0.90	DR	DR	2.85	DR	DR	DR
		¼" lag screw	$1^1/_2$	12	4.00	2.65	1.50	0.90	4.00	1.65	0.80	DR
				16	4.00	1.95	0.95	0.50	4.00	1.10	DR	DR
				24	4.00	1.10	DR	DR	3.25	0.50	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.
DR = Design Required.
o.c. = On Center.

a. Wood framing and furring shall be Spruce-pine-fir or any wood species with a specific gravity of 0.42 or greater in accordance with AWC NDS.
b. Nail fasteners shall comply with ASTM F1667, except nail length shall be permitted to exceed ASTM F1667 standard lengths.
c. Where the required cladding fastener penetration into wood material exceeds $^3/_4$ inch and is not more than $1^1/_2$ inches, a minimum 2″ wood furring or an approved design shall be used.
d. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 psi in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.
e. Furring shall be spaced not more than 24 inches on center, in a vertical or horizontal orientation. In a vertical orientation, furring shall be located over wall studs and attached with the required fastener spacing. In a horizontal orientation, the indicated 8-inch and 12-inch fastener spacing in furring shall be achieved by use of two fasteners into studs at 16 inches and 24 inches on center, respectively.

703.16 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to cold-formed steel framing. Cladding shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section 703, the cladding manufacturer's approved instructions, including any limitations for use over foam plastic sheathing, or an approved design. In addition, the cladding or furring attachments through foam sheathing to framing shall meet or exceed the minimum fastening requirements of Section 703.16.1, Section 703.16.2 or an approved design for support of cladding weight.

Exceptions:

1. Where the cladding manufacturer has provided approved installation instructions for application over foam sheathing, those requirements shall apply.
2. For exterior insulation and finish systems, refer to Section 703.9.
3. For anchored masonry or stone veneer installed over foam sheathing, refer to Section 703.8.

703.16.1 Direct attachment. Where cladding is installed directly over foam sheathing without the use of furring, cladding minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table 703.16.1.

TABLE 703.16.1
CLADDING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR DIRECT ATTACHMENT OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT [a]

CLADDING FASTENER THROUGH FOAM SHEATHING INTO:	CLADDING FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE [b]	CLADDING FASTENER VERTICAL SPACING (inches)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING [c] (inches)							
			16□ o.c. Fastener Horizontal Spacing				24" o.c. Fastener Horizontal Spacing			
			Cladding Weight:				Cladding Weight:			
			3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf	3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf
Steel framing (minimum penetration of steel thickness + 3 threads)	No. 8 screw into 33-mil steel or thicker	6	3.00	2.95	2.20	1.45	3.00	2.35	1.25	DR
		8	3.00	2.55	1.60	0.60	3.00	1.80	DR	DR
		12	3.00	1.80	DR	DR	3.00	0.65	DR	DR
	No. 10 screw into 33-mil steel	6	4.00	3.50	2.70	1.95	4.00	2.90	1.70	0.55
		8	4.00	3.10	2.05	1.00	4.00	2.25	0.70	DR
		12	4.00	2.25	0.70	DR	3.70	1.05	DR	DR
	No. 10 screw into 43-mil steel or thicker	6	4.00	4.00	4.00	3.60	4.00	4.00	3.45	2.70
		8	4.00	4.00	3.70	3.00	4.00	3.85	2.80	1.80
		12	4.00	3.85	2.80	1.80	4.00	3.05	1.50	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.
DR = Design Required.
o.c. = On Center.
a. Steel framing shall be minimum 33 ksi steel for 33 mil and 43 mil steel, and 50 ksi steel for 54 mil steel or thicker.
b. Screws shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1513.
c. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 psi in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.

703.16.2 Furred cladding attachment. Where steel or wood furring is used to attach cladding over foam sheathing, furring minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table 703.16.2. Where placed horizontally, wood furring shall be preservative-treated wood in accordance with Section 317.1 or naturally durable wood and fasteners shall be corrosion resistant in accordance with Section 317.3. Steel furring shall have a minimum G60 galvanized coating.

TABLE 703.16.2
FURRING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR APPLICATION OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT [a]

FURRING MATERIAL	FRAMING MEMBER	FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE [b]	MINIMUM PENETRATION INTO WALL FRAMING (inches)	FASTENER SPACING IN FURRING (inches)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING [d] (inches)							
					16□ o.c. Furring [e]				24□ o.c. Furring [e]			
					Cladding Weight:				Cladding Weight:			
					3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf	3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf
Minimum 33-mil steel furring or minimum 1x wood furring [c]	33-mil steel stud	No. 8 screw	Steel thickness + 3 threads	12	3.00	1.80	DR	DR	3.00	0.65	DR	DR
				16	3.00	1.00	DR	DR	2.85	DR	DR	DR
				24	2.85	DR	DR	DR	2.20	DR	DR	DR
		No. 10 screw	Steel thickness + 3 threads	12	4.00	2.25	0.70	DR	3.70	1.05	DR	DR
				16	3.85	1.45	DR	DR	3.40	DR	DR	DR
				24	3.40	DR	DR	DR	2.70	DR	DR	DR
	43-mil or thicker steel stud	No. 8 Screw	Steel thickness + 3 threads	12	3.00	1.80	DR	DR	3.00	0.65	DR	DR
				16	3.00	1.00	DR	DR	2.85	DR	DR	DR
				24	2.85	DR	DR	DR	2.20	DR	DR	DR
		No. 10 screw	Steel thickness + 3 threads	12	4.00	3.85	2.80	1.80	4.00	3.05	1.50	DR
				16	4.00	3.30	1.95	0.60	4.00	2.25	DR	DR
				24	4.00	2.25	DR	DR	4.00	0.65	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.
DR = Design Required.
o.c. = On Center.

a. Wood furring shall be Spruce-pine-fir or any softwood species with a specific gravity of 0.42 or greater. Steel furring shall be minimum 33-ksi steel. Steel studs shall be minimum 33-ksi steel for 33-mil and 43-mil thickness, and 50-ksi steel for 54-mil steel or thicker.

b. Screws shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1513.

c. Where the required cladding fastener penetration into wood material exceeds $^3/_4$ inch and is not more than $1^1/_2$ inches, a minimum 2-inch nominal wood furring or an approved design shall be used.

d. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 psi in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.

e. Furring shall be spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center, in a vertical or horizontal orientation. In a vertical orientation, furring shall be located over wall studs and attached with the required fastener spacing. In a horizontal orientation, the indicated 8-inch and 12-inch fastener spacing in furring shall be achieved by use of two fasteners into studs at 16 inches and 24 inches on center, respectively.

703.17 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to masonry or concrete wall construction. Cladding shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section 703.3 and the cladding manufacturer's instructions or an approved design. Foam sheathing shall be attached to masonry or concrete construction in accordance with the insulation manufacturer's installation instructions or an approved design. Furring and furring attachments through foam sheathing into concrete or masonry substrate shall be designed to resist design loads determined in accordance with Section 301, including support of cladding weight as applicable. Fasteners used to attach cladding or furring through foam sheathing to masonry or concrete substrates shall be approved for application into masonry or concrete material and shall be installed in accordance with the fastener manufacturer's instructions.

Exceptions:

1. Where the cladding manufacturer has provided approved installation instructions for application over foam sheathing and connection to a masonry or concrete substrate, those requirements shall apply.
2. For exterior insulation and finish systems, refer to Section 703.9.

3. For anchored masonry or stone veneer installed over foam sheathing, refer to Section 703.8.

Replaces:	4101:8-7-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013

4101:8-8-01 Roof-ceiling construction.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 801
GENERAL

801.1 Application. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of the roof-ceiling system for buildings.

801.2 Requirements. Roof and ceiling construction shall be capable of accommodating all loads imposed in accordance with Section 301 and of transmitting the resulting loads to the supporting structural elements.

801.3 Roof drainage. In areas where expansive soils or collapsible soils are known to exist, all dwellings shall have a controlled method of water disposal from roofs that will collect and discharge roof drainage to the ground surface not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from foundation walls or to an *approved* drainage system.

Exception: *The minimum distance shall not apply when the discharge occurs on the exterior side of walls where the building official determines such drainage will not be detrimental to the building performance.*

SECTION 802
WOOD ROOF FRAMING

802.1 General. Wood and wood-based products used for load-supporting purposes shall conform to the applicable provisions of this section.

802.1.1 Sawn lumber. Sawn lumber shall be identified by a grade mark of an accredited lumber grading or inspection agency and have design values certified by an accreditation body that complies with DOC PS 20. In lieu of a grade mark, a certificate of inspection issued by a lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be accepted.

802.1.1.1 End-jointed lumber. Approved end-jointed lumber identified by a grade mark conforming to Section 802.1.1 shall be permitted to be used interchangeably with solid-sawn members of the same species and grade. End-jointed lumber used in an assembly required elsewhere in this code to have a fire-resistance rating shall have the designation "Heat-Resistant Adhesive" or "HRA" included in its grade mark.

802.1.2 Structural glued-laminated timbers. Glued-laminated timbers shall be manufactured and identified as required in ANSI A190.1, ANSI 117 and ASTM D3737.

802.1.3 Structural log members. Structural log members shall comply with the provisions of ICC 400.

802.1.4 Structural composite lumber. Structural capacities for structural composite lumber shall be established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D5456.

802.1.5 Fire-retardant-treated wood. Fire-retardant-treated wood (FRTW) is any wood product that, when impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process or other means during manufacture, shall have, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, a listed flame spread index of 25 or less and does not show evidence of significant progressive combustion where the test is continued for an additional 20-minute period. In addition, the flame front shall not progress more than 10.5 feet (3200 mm) beyond the center line of the burners at any time during the test.

802.1.5.1 Pressure process. For wood products impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process, the process shall be performed in closed vessels under pressures not less than 50 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (344.7 kPa).

802.1.5.2 Other means during manufacture. For wood products produced by other means during manufacture the treatment shall be an integral part of the manufacturing process of the wood product. The treatment shall provide permanent protection to all surfaces of the wood product.

802.1.5.3 Testing. For wood products produced by other means during manufacture, other than a pressure process, all sides of the wood product shall be tested in accordance with and produce the results required in

Section 802.1.5. Testing of only the front and back faces of wood structural panels shall be permitted.

802.1.5.4 Labeling. In addition to the labels required by Section 802.1.1 for sawn lumber and Section 803.2.1 for wood structural panels, each piece of fire-retardant-treated lumber and wood structural panel shall be labeled. The label shall contain:

1. The identification mark of an approved agency in accordance with Section 1703.5 of the *Ohio building code*.
2. Identification of the treating manufacturer.
3. The name of the fire-retardant treatment.
4. The species of wood treated.
5. Flame spread index and smoke-developed index.
6. Method of drying after treatment.
7. Conformance to applicable standards in accordance with Sections 802.1.5.5 through 802.1.5.10.
8. For FRTW exposed to weather, or a damp or wet location, the words "No increase in the listed classification when subjected to the Standard Rain Test" (ASTM D2898).

802.1.5.5 Strength adjustments. Design values for untreated lumber and wood structural panels as specified in Section 802.1 shall be adjusted for fire-retardant-treated wood. Adjustments to design values shall be based on an approved method of investigation that takes into consideration the effects of the anticipated temperature and humidity to which the fire-retardant-treated wood will be subjected, the type of treatment and redrying procedures.

802.1.5.6 Wood structural panels. The effect of treatment and the method of redrying after treatment, and exposure to high temperatures and high humidities on the flexure properties of fire-retardant-treated softwood plywood shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D5516. The test data developed by ASTM D5516 shall be used to develop adjustment factors, maximum loads and spans, or both for untreated plywood design values in accordance with ASTM D6305. Each manufacturer shall publish the allowable maximum loads and spans for service as floor and roof sheathing for their treatment.

802.1.5.7 Lumber. For each species of wood treated, the effect of the treatment and the method of redrying after treatment and exposure to high

temperatures and high humidities on the allowable design properties of fire-retardant-treated lumber shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D5664. The test data developed by ASTM D5664 shall be used to develop modification factors for use at or near room temperature and at elevated temperatures and humidity in accordance with ASTM D6841. Each manufacturer shall publish the modification factors for service at temperatures of not less than 80°F (27°C) and for roof framing. The roof framing modification factors shall take into consideration the climatological location.

802.1.5.8 Exposure to weather. Where fire-retardant-treated wood is exposed to weather or damp or wet locations, it shall be identified as "Exterior" to indicate there is not an increase in the listed flame spread index as defined in Section 802.1.5 when subjected to ASTM D2898.

802.1.5.9 Interior applications. Interior fire-retardant-treated wood shall have a moisture content of not over 28 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D3201 procedures at 92-percent relative humidity. Interior fire-retardant-treated wood shall be tested in accordance with Section 802.1.5.6 or 802.1.5.7. Interior fire-retardant-treated wood designated as Type A shall be tested in accordance with the provisions of this section.

802.1.5.10 Moisture content. Fire-retardant-treated wood shall be dried to a moisture content of 19 percent or less for lumber and 15 percent or less for wood structural panels before use. For wood kiln dried after treatment (KDAT) the kiln temperatures shall not exceed those used in kiln drying the lumber and plywood submitted for the tests described in Section 802.1.5.6 for plywood and 802.1.5.7 for lumber.

802.1.6 Cross-laminated timber. Cross-laminated timber shall be manufactured and identified as required by ANSI/APA PRG 320.

802.1.7 Engineered wood rim board. Engineered wood rim boards shall conform to ANSI/APA PRR 410 or shall be evaluated in accordance with ASTM D7672. Structural capacities shall be in accordance with ANSI/APA PRR 410 or established in accordance with ASTM D7672. Rim boards conforming to ANSI/APA PRR 410 shall be marked in accordance with that standard.

802.1.8 Prefabricated wood I-joists. Structural capacities and design provisions for prefabricated wood I-joists shall be established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D5055.

802.2 Design and construction. The roof and ceiling assembly shall provide continuous ties across the structure to prevent roof thrust from being applied to the supporting walls. The assembly shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this chapter and Figures 606.11(1), 606.11(2) and 606.11(3) or in accordance with AWC NDS.

802.3 Ridge. A ridge board used to connect opposing rafters shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) nominal thickness and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter. Where ceiling joist or rafter ties do not provide continuous ties across the structure, a ridge beam shall be provided and supported on each end by a wall or girder.

802.4 Rafters. Rafters shall be in accordance with this section.

802.4.1 Rafter size. Rafters shall be sized based on the rafter spans in Tables 802.4.1(1) through 802.4.1(8). Rafter spans shall be measured along the horizontal projection of the rafter. For other grades and species and for other loading conditions, refer to the AWC STJR.

TABLE 802.4.1(1)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Roof live load = 20 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	11-6	18-0	23-9	Note b	Note b	11-6	18-0	23-9	Note b	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	11-1	17-4	22-5	Note b	Note b	10-6	15-4	19-5	23-9	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	10-10	16-10	21-4	26-0	Note b	10-0	14-7	18-5	22-6	26-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	8-9	12-10	16-3	19-10	23-0	7-7	11-1	14-1	17-2	19-11
	Hem-fir	SS	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note b	Note b	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note b	Note b
	Hem-fir	#1	10 -7	16-8	22-0	Note b	Note b	10-4	15-2	19-2	23-5	Note b
	Hem-fir	#2	10-1	15-11	20-8	25-3	Note b	9-8	14-2	17-11	21-11	25-5
	Hem-fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Southern pine	SS	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note b	Note b	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note b	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note b	Note b	10-6	15-8	19-10	23-2	Note b
	Southern pine	#2	10-4	15-7	19-8	23-5	Note b	9-0	13-6	17-1	20-3	23-10
	Southern pine	#3	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-0	21-4	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	10-7	16-8	21-11	Note b	Note b	10-7	16-8	21-9	Note b	Note b
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	10-4	16-3	21-0	25-8	Note b	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	10-4	16-3	21-0	25-8	Note b	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note b	Note b	10-5	16-3	20-7	25-2	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-0	15-4	19-5	23-9	Note b	9-1	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-10	14-7	18-5	22-6	26-0	8-7	12-7	16-0	19-6	22-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-7	11-1	14-1	17-2	19-11	6-7	9-8	12-12	14-11	17-3
	Hem-fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	19-11	24-4	Note b
	Hem-fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-2	23-5	Note b	9-0	13-1	16-7	20-4	23-7
	Hem-fir	#2	9-2	14-2	17-11	21-11	25-5	8-5	12-3	15-6	18-11	22-0
	Hem-fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Southern pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note b	Note b	10-3	16-1	21-2	25-7	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	9-10	15-6	19-10	23-2	Note b	9-1	13-7	17-2	20-1	23-10
	Southern pine	#2	9-0	13-6	17-1	20-3	23-10	7-9	11-8	14-9	17-6	20-8
	Southern pine	#3	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-6	16-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	14-10	18-10	23-0	Note b
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-10	15-5	20-4	25-11	Note b	9-10	14-10	18-10	23-0	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	9-5	14-0	17-9	21-8	25-2	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-1	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10	7-10	11-6	14-7	17-10	20-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3	6-0	8-9	11-2	12-7	15-9
	Hem-fir	SS	9-3	14-7	19-2	24-6	Note b	9-3	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Hem-fir	#1	9-1	13-10	17-6	21-5	24-10	8-2	12-0	15-2	18-6	21-6
	Hem-fir	#2	8-8	12-11	16-4	20-0	23-2	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Hem-fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Southern pine	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	15-2	19-7	23-4	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	9-3	14-3	18-1	21-2	25-2	8-4	12-4	15-8	18-4	21-9
	Southern pine	#2	8-2	12-3	15-7	18-6	21-9	7-1	10-8	13-6	16-0	18-10
	Southern pine	#3	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-3	16-10	5-6	8-1	10-2	12-4	14-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-1	14-3	18-9	23-11	Note b	9-1	13-7	17-2	21-0	24-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-10	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-10	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5

(continued)

TABLE 802.4.1(1)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Roof live load = 20 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-1	14-4	18-10	23-9	Note b	9-1	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-4	7-0	10-4	13-0	15-11	18-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-2	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3	5-4	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Hem-fir	SS	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b	8-7	12-10	16-3	19-10	23-0
	Hem-fir	#1	8-5	12-4	15-8	19-2	22-2	7-4	10-9	13-7	16-7	19-3
	Hem-fir	#2	7-11	11-7	14-8	17-10	20-9	6-10	10-0	12-8	15-6	17-11
	Hem-fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Southern pine	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	13-10	17-6	20-10	24-8
	Southern pine	#1	8-7	12-9	16-2	18-11	22-6	7-5	11-1	14-0	16-5	19-6
	Southern pine	#2	7-4	11-0	13-11	16-6	19-6	6-4	9-6	12-1	14-4	16-10
	Southern pine	#3	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-9	15-1	4-11	7-3	9-1	11-0	13-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	21-8	25-2	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the following factors:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE 802.4.1(2)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Roof live load = 20 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note b	Note b	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note b	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-0	15-9	20-10	Note b	Note b	10-0	15-4	19-5	23-9	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-10	15-6	20-5	26-0	Note b	9-10	14-7	18-5	22-6	26-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	8-9	12-10	16-3	19-10	23-0	7-7	11-1	14-1	17-2	19-11
	Hem-fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b
	Hem-fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	15-2	19-2	23-5	Note b
	Hem-fir	#2	9-2	14-5	19-0	24-3	Note b	9-2	14-2	17-11	21-11	25-5
	Hem-fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Southern pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note b	Note b	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note b	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	19-10	23-2	Note b
	Southern pine	#2	9-5	14-9	19-6	23-5	Note b	9-0	13-6	17-1	20-3	23-10
	Southern pine	#3	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-0	21-4	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	9-5	14-9	19-6	24-10	Note b	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	9-5	14-9	19-6	24-10	Note b	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-6	14-11	19-7	25-0	Note b	9-6	14-11	19-7	25-0	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	9-1	14-4	18-11	23-9	Note b	9-1	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-11	14-1	18-5	22-6	26-0	8-7	12-7	16-0	19-6	22-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-7	11-1	14-1	17-2	19-11	6-7	9-8	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Hem-fir	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b
	Hem-fir	#1	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-1	Note b	8-9	13-1	16-7	20-4	23-7
	Hem-fir	#2	8-4	13-1	17-3	21-11	25-5	8-4	12-3	15-6	18-11	22-0
	Hem-fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Southern pine	SS	9-4	14-7	19-3	24-7	Note b	9-4	14-7	19-3	24-7	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-2	Note b	8-11	13-7	17-2	20-1	23-10
	Southern pine	#2	8-7	13-5	17-1	20-3	23-10	7-9	11-8	14-9	17-6	20-8
	Southern pine	#3	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-6	16-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-1	Note b	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-0	Note b
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-7	13-5	17-9	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-7	13-5	17-9	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-11	14-0	18-5	23-7	Note b	8-11	14-0	18-5	23-0	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-7	13-6	17-9	21-8	25-2	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-5	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10	7-10	11-6	14-7	17-10	20-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3	6-0	8-9	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Hem-fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	25-9
	Hem-fir	#1	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-5	24-10	8-2	12-0	15-2	18-6	21-6
	Hem-fir	#2	7-10	12-4	16-3	20-0	23-2	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Hem-fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5

(continued)

TABLE 802.4.1(2)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Roof live load = 20 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
19.2	Southern pine	SS	8-9	13-9	18-2	23-1	Note b	8-9	13-9	18-2	23-1	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	8-5	13-3	17-5	21-2	25-2	8-4	12-4	15-8	18-4	21-9
	Southern pine	#2	8-1	12-3	15-7	18-6	21-9	7-1	10-8	13-6	16-0	18-10
	Southern pine	#3	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-3	16-10	5-6	8-1	10-2	12-4	14-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-9	Note b	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-0	24-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-1	12-8	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-1	12-8	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-10	Note b	8-3	13-0	16-10	20-7	23-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-0	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-10	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-4	7-0	10-4	13-0	15-11	18-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-2	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3	5-4	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Hem-fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1	7-10	12-3	16-2	19-10	23-0
	Hem-fir	#1	7-8	12-0	15-8	19-2	22-2	7-4	10-9	13-7	16-7	19-3
	Hem-fir	#2	7-3	11-5	14-8	17-10	20-9	6-10	10-0	12-8	15-6	17-11
	Hem-fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Southern pine	SS	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6	Note b	8-1	12-9	16-10	20-10	24-8
	Southern pine	#1	7-10	12-3	16-2	18-11	22-6	7-5	11-1	14-0	16-5	19-6
	Southern pine	#2	7-4	11-0	13-11	16-6	19-6	6-4	9-6	12-1	14-4	16-10
	Southern pine	#3	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-9	15-1	4-11	7-3	9-1	11-0	13-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-2	24-7	7-8	12-0	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	7-6	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	7-6	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the following factors:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE 802.4.1(3)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground snow load = 30 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	10-0	15-9	20-9	Note b	Note b	10-0	15-9	20-5	24-11	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	9-8	14-9	18-8	22-9	Note b	9-0	13-2	16-8	20-4	23-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-6	14-0	17-8	21-7	25-1	8-6	12-6	15-10	19-4	22-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2	6-6	9-6	12-1	14-9	17-1
	Hem-fir	SS	9-6	14-10	19-7	25-0	Note b	9-6	14-10	19-7	24-1	Note b
	Hem-fir	#1	9-3	14-6	18-5	22-6	26-0	8-11	13-0	16-6	20-1	23-4
	Hem-fir	#2	8-10	13-7	17-2	21-0	24-4	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Hem-fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Southern pine	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	20-5	25-4	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	9-6	14-10	19-0	22-3	Note b	9-0	13-5	17-0	19-11	23-7
	Southern pine	#2	8-7	12-11	16-4	19-5	22-10	7-8	11-7	14-8	17-4	20-5
	Southern pine	#3	6-7	9-9	12-4	15-0	17-9	5-11	8-9	11-0	13-5	15-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-3	14-7	19-2	24-6	Note b	9-3	14-7	18-8	22-9	Note b
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-4	24-8	8-5	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-4	24-8	8-5	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-1	14-4	18-10	24-1	Note b	9-1	14-0	17-8	21-7	25-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-9	12-9	16-2	19-9	22-10	7-10	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-3	12-1	15-4	18-9	21-8	7-5	10-10	13-8	16-9	19-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-4	9-3	11-8	14-3	16-7	5-8	8-3	10-6	12-9	14-10
	Hem-fir	SS	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b	8-7	13-6	17-1	20-10	24-2
	Hem-fir	#1	8-5	12-7	15-11	19-6	22-7	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2
	Hem-fir	#2	8-0	11-9	14-11	18-2	21-1	7-2	10-6	13-4	16-3	18-10
	Hem-fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Southern pine	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	14-1	18-5	1-11	25-11
	Southern pine	#1	8-7	13-0	16-6	19-3	22-10	7-10	11-7	14-9	17-3	20-5
	Southern pine	#2	7-6	11-2	14-2	16-10	19-10	6-8	10-0	12-8	15-1	17-9
	Southern pine	#3	5-9	8-6	10-8	13-0	15-4	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-7	13-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-1	25-7	8-5	12-9	16-2	19-9	22-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-7	13-6	17-9	22-1	25-7	8-7	12-9	16-2	19-9	22-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-11	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-7	11-0	14-0	17-1	19-10	6-9	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-1	15-2	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6
	Hem-fir	SS	8-1	12-9	16-9	21-4	24-8	8-1	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Hem-fir	#1	7-10	11-6	14-7	17-9	20-7	7-0	10-3	13-0	15-11	18-5
	Hem-fir	#2	7-4	10-9	13-7	16-7	19-3	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3
	Hem-fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2

(continued)

TABLE 802.4.1(3)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground snow load = 30 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
19.2	Southern pine	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b	8-5	13-3	16-10	20-0	23-7
	Southern pine	#1	8-0	11-10	15-1	17-7	20-11	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8
	Southern pine	#2	6-10	10-2	12-11	15-4	18-1	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2
	Southern pine	#3	5-3	7-9	9-9	11-10	14-0	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-11	12-5	16-5	20-2	23-4	7-11	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	7-5	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	7-5	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-0	12-6	16-2	19-9	22-10	7-10	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-9	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-8	15-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6	4-7	6-9	8-7	10-5	12-1
	Hem-fir	SS	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-1	22-1	7-6	11-0	13-11	17-0	19-9
	Hem-fir	#1	7-0	10-3	13-0	15-11	18-5	6-3	9-2	11-8	14-3	16-6
	Hem-fir	#2	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Southern pine	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-0	23-7	7-10	11-10	15-0	17-11	21-2
	Southern pine	#1	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-1	16-8
	Southern pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-5	8-2	10-4	12-3	14-6
	Southern pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-2	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-4	11-7	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the following factors:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE 802.4.1(4)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground snow load = 30 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-1	14-4	18-10	24-1	Note b	9-1	14-4	18-10	24-1	Note b
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-9	13-9	18-2	22-9	Note b	8-9	13-2	16-8	20-4	23-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-7	13-6	17-8	21-7	25-1	8-6	12-6	15-10	19-4	22-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2	6-6	9-6	12-1	14-9	17-1
	Hem-fir	SS	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b
	Hem-fir	#1	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	26-0	8-5	13-0	16-6	20-1	23-4
	Hem-fir	#2	8-0	12-7	16-7	21-0	24-4	8-0	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Hem-fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Southern pine	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b
	Southern pine	#1	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-3	Note b	8-7	13-5	17-0	19-11	23-7
	Southern pine	#2	8-3	12-11	16-4	19-5	22-10	7-8	11-7	14-8	17-4	20-5
	Southern pine	#3	6-7	9-9	12-4	15-0	17-9	5-11	8-9	11-0	13-5	15-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-3	12-11	17-0	21-4	24-8	8-3	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-3	12-11	17-0	21-4	24-8	8-3	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-10	Note b	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-7	25-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-0	12-6	16-2	19-9	22-10	7-10	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-10	12-1	15-4	18-9	21-8	7-5	10-10	13-8	16-9	19-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-4	9-3	11-8	14-3	16-7	5-8	8-3	10-6	12-9	14-10
	Hem-fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	24-2
	Hem-fir	#1	7-8	12-0	15-10	19-6	22-7	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2
	Hem-fir	#2	7-3	11-5	14-11	18-2	21-1	7-2	10-6	13-4	16-3	18-10
	Hem-fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Southern pine	SS	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6	Note b	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6	25-11
	Southern pine	#1	7-10	12-3	16-2	19-3	22-10	7-10	11-7	14-9	17-3	20-5
	Southern pine	#2	7-6	11-2	14-2	16-10	19-10	6-8	10-0	12-8	15-1	17-9
	Southern pine	#3	5-9	8-6	10-8	13-0	15-4	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-7	13-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-2	24-7	7-8	12-0	15-10	19-9	22-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	7-6	11-9	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	7-6	11-9	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-9	12-3	16-1	20-7	25-0	7-9	12-3	16-1	19-9	22-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-6	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-4	11-0	14-0	17-1	19-10	6-9	9-1	12-6	15-3	17-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-1	15-2	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6
	Hem-fir	SS	7-4	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7	7-4	11-7	15-3	19-1	22-1
	Hem-fir	#1	7-2	11-4	14-7	17-9	20-7	7-0	16-3	13-0	15-11	18-5
	Hem-fir	#2	6-10	10-9	13-7	16-7	19-3	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3
	Hem-fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2

(continued)

TABLE 802.4.1(4)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground snow load = 30 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
19.2	Southern pine	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-2	24-7	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-0	23-7
	Southern pine	#1	7-4	11-7	15-1	17-7	20-11	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8
	Southern pine	#2	6-10	10-2	12-11	15-4	18-1	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2
	Southern pine	#3	5-3	7-9	9-9	11-10	14-0	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-2	11-4	14-11	19-0	23-1	7-2	11-4	14-9	18-0	20-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	7-0	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	7-0	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-3	11-4	15-0	19-1	22-10	7-3	11-4	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-0	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-9	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-8	15-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6	4-7	6-9	8-7	10-5	12-1
	Hem-fir	SS	6-10	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	6-10	10-9	13-11	17-0	19-9
	Hem-fir	#1	6-8	10-3	13-0	15-11	18-5	6-3	9-2	11-8	14-3	16-6
	Hem-fir	#2	6-4	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Southern pine	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	7-1	11-2	14-8	17-11	21-2
	Southern pine	#1	6-10	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-1	16-8
	Southern pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-5	8-2	10-4	12-3	14-6
	Southern pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-2	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-8	10-6	13-10	17-8	20-11	6-8	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-6	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-6	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the following factors:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE 802.4.1(5)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground snow load = 50 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-5	13-3	17-6	22-4	26-0	8-5	13-3	17-3	21-1	24-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-2	12-0	15-3	18-7	21-7	7-7	11-2	14-1	17-3	20-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-10	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5	7-3	10-7	13-4	16-4	18-11
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-0	8-9	11-0	13-6	15-7	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Hem-fir	SS	8-0	12-6	16-6	21-1	25-6	8-0	12-6	16-6	20-4	23-7
	Hem-fir	#1	7-10	11-10	15-0	18-4	21-3	7-6	11-0	13-11	17-0	19-9
	Hem-fir	#2	7-5	11-1	14-0	17-2	19-11	7-0	10-3	13-0	15-10	18-5
	Hem-fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Southern pine	SS	8-4	13-1	17-2	21-11	Note b	8-4	13-1	17-2	21-5	25-3
	Southern pine	#1	8-0	12-3	15-6	18-2	21-7	7-7	11-4	14-5	16-10	20-0
	Southern pine	#2	7-0	10-6	13-4	15-10	18-8	6-6	9-9	12-4	14-8	17-3
	Southern pine	#3	5-5	8-0	10-1	12-3	14-6	5-0	7-5	9-4	11-4	13-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	24-1	7-10	12-3	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-8	12-1	15-11	19-9	22-10	7-8	11-10	14-11	18-3	21-2
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-7	9-8	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-9	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9	6-3	9-2	11-7	14-2	16-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-18	13-6	4-9	7-0	8-10	10-10	12-6
	Hem-fir	SS	7-3	11-5	15-0	19-1	22-1	7-3	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Hem-fir	#1	7-0	10-3	13-0	15-11	18-5	6-6	9-6	12-1	14-9	17-1
	Hem-fir	#2	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11
	Hem-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
	Southern pine	SS	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-11	23-7	7-6	11-10	15-7	18-6	21-10
	Southern pine	#1	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-7	9-10	12-5	14-7	17-3
	Southern pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-8	8-5	10-9	12-9	15-0
	Southern pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-4	6-5	8-1	9-10	11-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-9	13-8	15-11	19-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-3	11-4	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-3	10-9	13-8	16-8	19-4
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	6-6	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-8	8-4	10-9	12-11	15-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-8	12-4	4-4	6-4	8-1	9-10	11-5
	Hem-fir	SS	6-10	10-9	14-2	17-5	20-2	6-10	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Hem-fir	#1	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10	8-11	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Hem-fir	#2	6-0	8-9	11-1	13-7	15-9	5-7	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Hem-fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2

(continued)

TABLE 802.4.1(5)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground snow load = 50 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
19.2	Southern pine	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-3	21-7	7-1	11-2	14-2	16-11	20-0
	Southern pine	#1	6-6	9-8	12-3	14-4	17-1	6-0	9-0	11-4	13-4	15-9
	Southern pine	#2	5-7	8-4	10-7	12-6	14-9	5-2	7-9	9-9	11-7	13-8
	Southern pine	#3	4-3	6-4	8-0	9-8	11-5	4-0	5-10	7-4	8-11	10-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-8	10-6	13-5	16-5	19-1	6-8	9-10	12-5	15-3	17-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-8	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-7	9-8	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6	5-1	7-6	9-5	11-7	13-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-3	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-1	3-11	5-8	7-3	8-10	10-3
	Hem-fir	SS	6-4	9-11	12-9	15-7	18-0	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Hem-fir	#1	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1	8-4	7-9	9-10	12-0	13-11
	Hem-fir	#2	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-1	4-11	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Hem-fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0
	Southern pine	SS	6-7	10-4	13-8	16-4	19-3	6-7	10-0	12-8	15-2	17-10
	Southern pine	#1	5-10	8-8	11-0	12-10	15-3	5-5	8-0	10-2	11-11	14-1
	Southern pine	#2	5-0	7-5	9-5	11-3	13-2	4-7	6-11	8-9	10-5	12-3
	Southern pine	#3	3-10	5-8	7-1	8-8	10-3	3-6	5-3	6-7	8-0	9-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-2	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the following factors:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE 802.4.1(6)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground snow load = 50 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-8	12-1	15-11	20-3	24-8	7-8	12-1	15-11	20-3	24-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-5	11-7	15-3	18-7	21-7	7-5	11-2	14-1	17-3	20-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-3	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5	7-3	10-7	13-4	16-4	18-11
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-0	8-9	11-0	13-6	15-7	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Hem-fir	SS	7-3	11-5	15-0	19-2	23-4	7-3	11-5	15-0	19-2	23-4
	Hem-fir	#1	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-4	21-3	7-1	11-0	13-11	17-0	19-9
	Hem-fir	#2	6-9	10-8	14-0	17-2	19-11	6-9	10-3	13-0	15-10	18-5
	Hem-fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Southern pine	SS	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-11	24-3	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-11	24-3
	Southern pine	#1	7-3	11-5	15-0	18-2	21-7	7-3	11-4	14-5	16-10	20-0
	Southern pine	#2	6-11	10-6	13-4	15-10	18-8	6-6	9-9	12-4	14-8	17-3
	Southern pine	#3	5-5	8-0	10-1	12-3	14-6	5-0	7-5	9-4	11-4	13-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-11	10-11	14-3	17-5	20-2	6-11	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-11	10-11	14-3	17-5	20-2	6-11	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-0	11-0	14-5	18-5	22-5	7-0	11-0	14-5	18-3	21-2
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	6-9	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-7	9-8	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-7	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9	6-3	9-2	11-7	14-2	16-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6	4-9	7-0	8-10	10-10	12-6
	Hem-fir	SS	6-7	10-4	13-8	17-5	21-2	6-7	10-4	13-8	17-5	20-5
	Hem-fir	#1	6-5	10-2	13-0	15-11	18-5	6-5	9-6	12-1	14-9	17-1
	Hem-fir	#2	6-2	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11
	Hem-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
	Southern pine	SS	6-10	10-9	14-2	18-1	22-0	6-10	10-9	14-2	18-1	21-10
	Southern pine	#1	6-7	10-4	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-7	9-10	12-5	14-7	17-3
	Southern pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-8	8-5	10-9	12-9	15-0
	Southern pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-4	6-5	8-1	9-10	11-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-5	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9	6-5	10-2	13-4	16-8	19-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-4	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-4	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-7	10-4	13-7	17-4	20-11	6-7	10-4	13-7	16-8	19-4
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-8	8-4	10-7	12-11	15-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-8	12-4	4-4	6-4	8-1	9-10	11-5
	Hem-fir	SS	6-2	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11	6-2	9-9	12-10	16-1	18-8
	Hem-fir	#1	6-1	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Hem-fir	#2	5-9	8-9	11-1	13-7	15-9	5-7	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Hem-fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2

(continued)

TABLE 802.4.1(6)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground snow load = 50 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
19.2	Southern pine	SS	6-5	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9	6-5	10-2	13-4	16-11	20-0
	Southern pine	#1	6-2	9-8	12-3	14-4	17-1	6-0	9-0	11-4	13-4	15-9
	Southern pine	#2	5-7	8-4	10-7	12-6	14-9	5-2	7-9	9-9	11-7	13-8
	Southern pine	#3	4-3	6-4	8-0	9-8	11-5	4-0	5-10	7-4	8-11	10-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-1	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-1	6-1	9-6	12-5	15-3	17-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-11	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-11	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-1	9-7	12-7	16-1	18-8	6-1	9-7	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6	5-1	7-6	9-5	11-7	13-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-3	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-1	3-11	5-8	7-3	8-10	10-3
	Hem-fir	SS	5-9	9-1	11-11	15-2	18-0	5-9	9-1	11-9	14-5	15-11
	Hem-fir	#1	5-8	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1	5-4	7-9	9-10	12-0	13-11
	Hem-fir	#2	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-1	4-11	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Hem-fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0
	Southern pine	SS	6-0	9-5	12-5	15-10	19-3	6-0	9-5	12-5	15-2	17-10
	Southern pine	#1	5-9	8-8	11-0	12-10	15-3	5-5	8-0	10-2	11-11	14-1
	Southern pine	#2	5-0	7-5	9-5	11-3	13-2	4-7	6-11	8-9	10-5	12-3
	Southern pine	#3	3-10	5-8	7-1	8-8	10-3	3-6	5-3	6-7	8-0	9-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	5-8	8-10	11-8	14-8	17-1	5-8	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the following factors:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

TABLE 802.4.1(7)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground snow load = 70 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum Rafter Spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	7-7	11-10	15-8	19-9	22-10	7-7	11-10	15-3	18-7	21-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-8	9-10	12-5	15-2	17-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-9	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6	4-10	7-1	9-0	11-0	12-9
	Hem-fir	SS	7-2	11-3	14-9	18-10	22-1	7-2	11-3	14-8	18-0	20-10
	Hem-fir	#1	7-0	10-3	13-0	15-11	18-5	6-7	9-8	12-3	15-0	17-5
	Hem-fir	#2	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	6-2	9-1	11-5	14-0	16-3
	Hem-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-9	6-11	8-9	10-9	12-5
	Southern pine	SS	7-5	11-8	15-4	19-7	23-7	7-5	11-8	15-4	18-10	22-3
	Southern pine	#1	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-9	10-0	12-8	14-10	17-7
	Southern pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-9	8-7	10-11	12-11	15-3
	Southern pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-5	6-6	8-3	10-0	11-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-0	11-0	14-6	18-0	20-11	7-0	11-0	13-11	17-0	19-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-3	9-2	11-8	14-2	16-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-3	9-2	11-8	14-2	16-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-9	6-11	8-9	10-9	12-5
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-10	10-9	14-0	17-1	19-10	6-10	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-4	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-6	6-6	8-3	10-1	11-9	4-3	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-1
	Hem-fir	SS	6-6	10-2	13-5	16-6	19-2	6-6	10-1	12-9	15-7	18-0
	Hem-fir	#1	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	16-0	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1
	Hem-fir	#2	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-10	14-11	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-1
	Hem-fir	#3	4-4	6-4	8-1	9-10	11-5	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9
	Southern pine	SS	6-9	10-7	14-0	17-4	20-5	6-9	10-7	13-9	16-4	19-3
	Southern pine	#1	6-2	9-2	11-8	13-8	16-2	5-10	8-8	11-0	12-10	15-3
	Southern pine	#2	5-3	7-11	10-0	11-11	14-0	5-0	7-5	9-5	11-3	13-2
	Southern pine	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-2	10-10	3-10	5-8	7-1	8-8	10-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-4	10-0	12-9	15-7	18-1	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-1	15-2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-1	15-2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-4	6-4	8-1	9-10	11-5	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-6	10-1	12-9	15-7	18-1	6-6	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-4	7-9	9-10	12-0	13-11
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-0	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-3	10-8	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-8	10-1
	Hem-fir	SS	6-1	9-7	12-4	15-1	17-4	6-1	9-2	11-8	14-2	15-5
	Hem-fir	#1	5-7	8-2	10-3	12-7	14-7	5-3	7-8	9-8	11-10	13-9
	Hem-fir	#2	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-9	13-7	4-11	7-2	9-1	11-1	12-10
	Hem-fir	#3	4-0	5-10	7-4	9-0	10-5	3-9	5-6	6-11	8-6	9-10

(continued)

TABLE 802.4.1(7)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground snow load = 70 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum Rafter Spans[a]									
			(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)	(feet-inches)
19.2	Southern pine	SS	6-4	10-0	13-2	15-10	18-8	6-4	9-10	12-6	14-11	17-7
	Southern pine	#1	5-8	8-5	10-8	12-5	14-9	5-4	7-11	10-0	11-9	13-11
	Southern pine	#2	4-10	7-3	9-2	10-10	12-9	4-6	6-10	8-8	10-3	12-1
	Southern pine	#3	3-8	5-6	6-11	8-4	9-11	3-6	5-2	6-6	7-11	9-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-0	9-2	11-8	14-3	16-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-11	13-10	5-0	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-11	13-10	5-0	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-0	5-10	7-4	9-0	10-5	3-9	5-6	6-11	8-6	9-10
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-0	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-9	6-11	8-9	10-9	12-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	4-9	7-0	8-10	10-10	12-6	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	3-8	5-4	6-9	8-3	9-7	3-5	5-0	6-4	7-9	9-10
	Hem-fir	SS	5-8	8-8	11-0	13-6	13-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-4	12-4
	Hem-fir	#1	5-0	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
	Hem-fir	#2	4-8	6-9	8-7	10-6	12-2	4-4	6-5	8-1	9-11	11-6
	Hem-fir	#3	3-7	5-2	6-7	8-1	9-4	3-4	4-11	6-3	7-7	8-10
	Southern pine	SS	5-11	9-3	11-11	14-2	16-8	5-11	8-10	11-2	13-4	15-9
	Southern pine	#1	5-0	7-6	9-6	11-1	13-2	4-9	7-1	9-0	10-6	12-5
	Southern pine	#2	4-4	6-5	8-2	9-9	11-5	4-1	6-1	7-9	9-2	10-9
	Southern pine	#3	3-4	4-11	6-2	7-6	8-10	3-1	4-7	5-10	7-1	8-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	5-6	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-4	7-9	9-10	12-0	12-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-8	12-4	4-5	6-6	8-3	10-0	11-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-8	12-4	4-5	6-6	8-3	10-0	11-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	3-7	5-2	6-7	8-1	9-4	3-4	4-11	6-3	7-7	8-10

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the following factors:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

TABLE 802.4.1(8)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground snow load = 70 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-10	10-9	14-3	18-2	22-1	6-10	10-9	14-3	18-2	21-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	6-7	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-7	9-10	12-5	15-2	17-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	6-6	9-10	12-6	15-3	17-9	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-8	13-6	4-10	7-1	9-0	11-0	12-9
	Hem-fir	SS	6-6	10-2	13-5	17-2	20-10	6-6	10-2	13-5	17-2	20-10
	Hem-fir	#1	6-4	10-0	13-0	15-11	18-5	6-4	9-8	12-3	15-0	17-5
	Hem-fir	#2	6-1	9-6	12-2	14-10	17-3	6-1	9-1	11-5	14-0	16-3
	Hem-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-9	6-11	8-9	10-9	12-5
	Southern pine	SS	6-9	10-7	14-0	17-10	21-8	6-9	10-7	14-0	17-10	21-8
	Southern pine	#1	6-6	10-2	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-6	10-0	12-8	14-10	17-7
	Southern pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-9	8-7	10-11	12-11	15-3
	Southern pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-5	6-6	8-3	10-0	11-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	6-4	10-0	13-2	16-9	20-5	6-4	10-0	13-2	16-9	19-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	6-2	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-2	11-8	14-2	16-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	6-2	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-2	11-8	14-2	16-6
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-9	6-11	8-9	10-9	12-5
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	6-3	9-10	12-11	16-6	19-10	6-3	9-10	12-11	16-1	18-8
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	6-0	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-4	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-6	6-6	8-3	10-1	11-9	4-3	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-1
	Hem-fir	SS	5-11	9-3	12-2	15-7	18-11	5-11	9-3	12-2	15-7	18-0
	Hem-fir	#1	5-9	8-11	11-3	13-9	16-0	5-9	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1
	Hem-fir	#2	5-6	8-4	10-6	12-10	14-11	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-1
	Hem-fir	#3	4-4	6-4	8-1	9-10	11-5	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9
	Southern pine	SS	6-1	9-7	12-8	16-2	19-8	6-1	9-7	12-8	16-2	19-3
	Southern pine	#1	5-11	9-2	11-8	13-8	16-2	5-10	8-8	11-0	12-10	15-3
	Southern pine	#2	5-3	7-11	10-0	11-11	14-0	5-0	7-5	9-5	11-3	13-2
	Southern pine	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-2	10-10	3-10	5-8	7-1	8-8	10-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	5-9	9-1	11-11	15-3	18-1	5-9	9-1	11-11	14-8	17-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-8	8-5	10-8	13-1	15-2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-8	8-5	10-8	13-1	15-2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-4	6-4	8-1	9-10	11-5	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	5-10	9-3	12-2	15-6	18-1	5-10	9-3	12-0	14-8	17-1
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-4	7-9	9-10	12-0	13-11
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-0	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-3	10-8	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-8	10-1
	Hem-fir	SS	5-6	8-8	11-6	14-8	17-4	5-6	8-8	11-6	14-2	15-5
	Hem-fir	#1	5-5	8-2	10-3	12-7	14-7	5-3	7-8	9-8	11-10	13-9
	Hem-fir	#2	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-9	13-7	4-11	7-2	9-1	11-1	12-10
	Hem-fir	#3	4-0	5-10	7-4	9-0	10-5	3-9	5-6	6-11	8-6	9-10

(continued)

TABLE 802.4.1(8)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground snow load = 70 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
19.2	Southern pine	SS	5-9	9-1	11-11	15-3	18-6	5-9	9-1	11-11	14-11	17-7
	Southern pine	#1	5-6	8-5	10-8	12-5	14-9	5-4	7-11	10-0	11-9	13-11
	Southern pine	#2	4-10	7-3	9-2	10-10	12-9	4-6	6-10	8-8	10-3	12-1
	Southern pine	#3	3-8	5-6	6-11	8-4	9-11	3-6	5-2	6-6	7-11	9-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	5-5	8-6	11-3	14-3	16-6	5-5	8-6	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-11	13-10	5-0	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-11	13-10	5-0	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	4-0	5-10	7-4	9-0	10-5	3-9	5-6	6-11	8-6	9-10
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	5-5	8-7	11-3	13-11	16-2	5-5	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-9	6-11	8-9	10-9	12-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	4-9	7-0	8-10	10-10	12-6	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	3-8	5-4	6-9	8-3	9-7	3-5	5-0	6-4	7-9	9-0
	Hem-fir	SS	5-2	8-1	10-8	13-6	13-11	5-2	8-1	10-5	12-4	12-4
	Hem-fir	#1	5-0	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
	Hem-fir	#2	4-8	6-9	8-7	10-6	12-2	4-4	6-5	8-1	9-11	11-6
	Hem-fir	#3	3-7	5-2	6-7	8-1	9-4	3-4	4-11	6-3	7-7	8-10
	Southern pine	SS	5-4	8-5	11-1	14-2	16-8	5-4	8-5	11-1	13-4	15-9
	Southern pine	#1	5-0	7-6	9-6	11-1	13-2	4-9	7-1	9-0	10-6	12-5
	Southern pine	#2	4-4	6-5	8-2	9-9	11-5	4-1	6-1	7-9	9-2	10-9
	Southern pine	#3	3-4	4-11	6-2	7-6	8-10	3-1	4-7	5-10	7-1	8-4
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	5-0	7-11	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-9	9-10	12-0	12-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-8	12-4	4-5	6-6	8-3	10-0	11-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-8	12-4	4-5	6-6	8-3	10-0	11-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	3-7	5-2	6-7	8-1	9-4	3-4	4-11	6-3	7-7	8-10

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the following factors:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

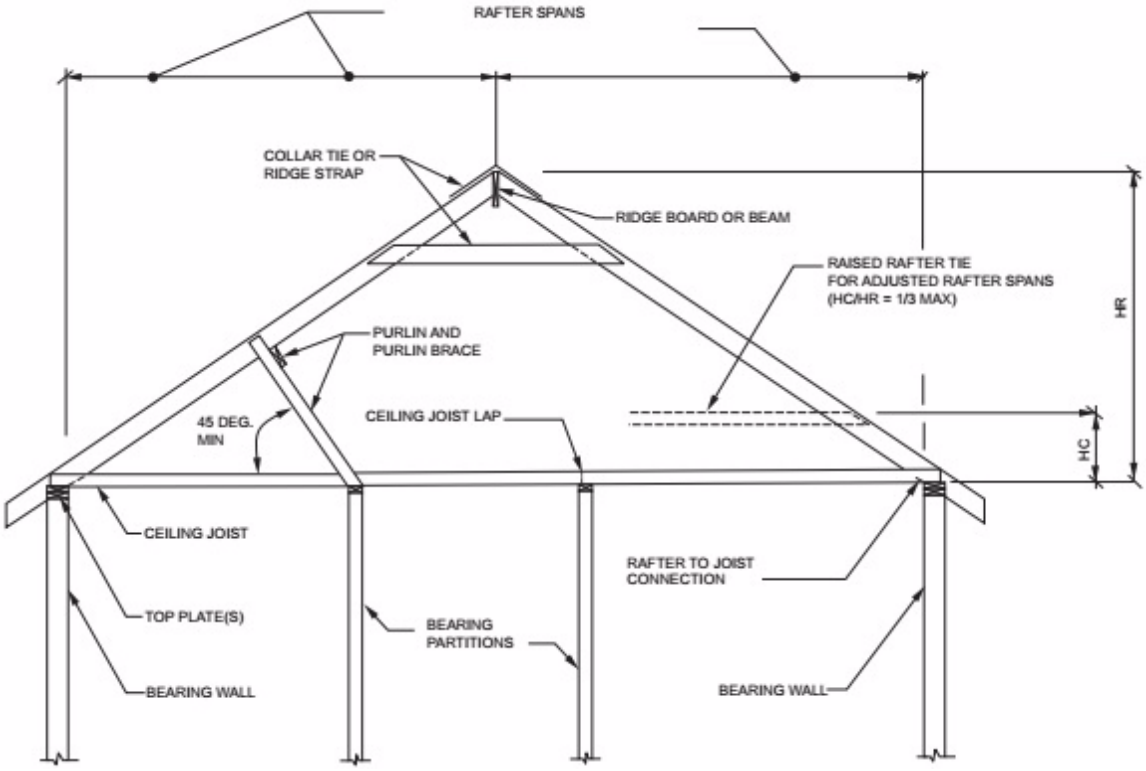
H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

802.4.2 Framing details. Rafters shall be framed not more than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) offset from each other to a ridge board or directly opposite from each other with a collar tie, gusset plate or ridge strap in accordance with Table 602.3(1). Rafters shall be nailed to the top wall plates in accordance with Table 602.3(1) unless the roof assembly is required to comply with the uplift requirements of Section 802.11.

802.4.3 Hips and valleys. Hip and valley rafters shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter. Hip and valley rafters shall be supported at the ridge by a brace to a bearing partition or be designed to carry and distribute the specific load at that point.

802.4.4 Rafter supports. Where the roof pitch is less than 3:12 (25-percent slope), structural members that support rafters, such as ridges, hips and valleys, shall be designed as beams, and bearing shall be provided for rafters in accordance with Section 802.6.

802.4.5 Purlins. Installation of purlins to reduce the span of rafters is permitted as shown in Figure 802.4.5. Purlins shall be sized not less than the required size of the rafters that they support. Purlins shall be continuous and shall be supported by 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) braces installed to bearing walls at a slope not less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal. The braces shall be spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center and the unbraced length of braces shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm).



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 degree = 0.018 rad.

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

FIGURE 802.4.5
BRACED RAFTER CONSTRUCTION

802.4.6 Collar ties. Where collar ties are used to connect opposing rafters, they shall be located in the upper third of the attic space and fastened in accordance with Table 602.3(1). Collar ties shall be not less than 1 inch by 4 inches (25 mm × 102 mm) nominal, spaced not more than 4 feet (1220 mm) on center. Ridge straps in accordance with Table 602.3(1) shall be permitted to replace collar ties.

802.5 Ceiling joists. Ceiling joists shall be continuous across the structure or securely joined where they meet over interior partitions in accordance with Table 802.5.2.

802.5.1 Ceiling joist size. Ceiling joists shall be sized based on the joist spans in Tables 802.5.1(1) and 802.5.1(2). For other grades and species and for other loading conditions, refer to the AWC STJR.

TABLE 802.5.1(1)
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Uninhabitable attics without storage, live load = 10 psf, L/Δ = 240)

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 5 psf			
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
			Maximum ceiling joist spans			
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	13-2	20-8	Note a	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	12-8	19-11	Note a	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	12-5	19-6	25-8	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	11-1	16-3	20-7	25-2
	Hem-fir	SS	12-5	19-6	25-8	Note a
	Hem-fir	#1	12-2	19-1	25-2	Note a
	Hem-fir	#2	11-7	18-2	24-0	Note a
	Hem-fir	#3	10-10	15-10	20-1	24-6
	Southern pine	SS	12-11	20-3	Note a	Note a
	Southern pine	#1	12-5	19-6	25-8	Note a
	Southern pine	#2	11-10	18-8	24-7	Note a
	Southern pine	#3	10-1	14-11	18-9	22-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	12-2	19-1	25-2	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	11-10	18-8	24-7	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	11-10	18-8	24-7	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	10-10	15-10	20-1	24-6
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	11-11	18-9	24-8	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	11-6	18-1	23-10	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	9-7	14-1	17-10	21-9
	Hem-fir	SS	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note a
	Hem-fir	#1	11-0	17-4	22-10	Note a
	Hem-fir	#2	10-6	16-6	21-9	Note a
	Hem-fir	#3	9-5	13-9	17-5	21-3
	Southern pine	SS	11-9	18-5	24-3	Note a
	Southern pine	#1	11-3	17-8	23-10	Note a
	Southern pine	#2	10-9	16-11	21-7	25-7
	Southern pine	#3	8-9	12-11	16-3	19-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	11-0	17-4	22-10	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	10-9	16-11	22-4	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	10-9	16-11	22-4	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	9-5	13-9	17-5	21-3

(continued)

TABLE 802.5.1(1)—continued
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Uninhabitable attics without storage, live load = 10 psf, L/Δ = 240)

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 5 psf			
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
			Maximum ceiling joist spans			
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	11-3	17-8	23-3	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	10-7	16-8	21-4	26-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	8-9	12-10	16-3	19-10
	Hem-fir	SS	10-7	16-8	21-11	Note a
	Hem-fir	#1	10-4	16-4	21-6	Note a
	Hem-fir	#2	9-11	15-7	20-6	25-3
	Hem-fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
	Southern -pine	SS	11-0	17-4	22-10	Note a
	Southern pine	#1	10-7	16-8	22-0	Note a
	Southern pine	#2	10-2	15-7	19-8	23-5
	Southern pine	#3	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	10-4	16-4	21-6	Note a
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	10-2	15-11	21-0	25-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	10-2	15-11	21-0	25-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-0	15-9	20-1	24-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-10	15-0	19-1	23-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-10	11-6	14-7	17-9
	Hem-fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note a
	Hem-fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-10	24-3
	Hem-fir	#2	9-2	14-5	18-6	22-7
	Hem-fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Southern pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note a
	Southern pine	#1	9-10	15-6	20-5	24-0
	Southern pine	#2	9-3	13-11	17-7	20-11
	Southern pine	#3	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE 802.5.1(2)
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Uninhabitable attics with limited storage, live load = 20 psf, L/Δ = 240)

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf			
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
			Maximum ceiling joist spans			
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
12	Douglas fir-larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note a
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	10-0	15-9	20-1	24-6
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	9-10	15-0	19-1	23-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	7-10	11-6	14-7	17-9
	Hem-fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note a
	Hem-fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-10	24-3
	Hem-fir	#2	9-2	14-5	18-6	22-7
	Hem-fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Southern pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note a
	Southern pine	#1	9-10	15-6	20-5	24-0
	Southern pine	#2	9-3	13-11	17-7	20-11
	Southern pine	#3	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
16	Douglas fir-larch	SS	9-6	14-11	19-7	25-0
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-11	13-0	16-6	20-2
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-10	9-11	12-7	15-5
	Hem-fir	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8
	Hem-fir	#1	8-9	13-7	17-2	21-0
	Hem-fir	#2	8-4	12-8	16-0	19-7
	Hem-fir	#3	6-8	9-8	12-4	15-0
	Southern pine	SS	9-4	14-7	19-3	24-7
	Southern pine	#1	8-11	14-0	17-9	20-9
	Southern pine	#2	8-0	12-0	15-3	18-1
	Southern pine	#3	6-2	9-2	11-6	14-0
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-1
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-7	12-10	16-3	19-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-7	12-10	16-3	19-10
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-8	9-8	12-4	15-0

(continued)

TABLE 802.5.1(2)—continued
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Uninhabitable attics with limited storage, live load = 20 psf, L/Δ = 240)

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf			
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
			Maximum ceiling joist spans			
			(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)	(feet - inches)
19.2	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-11	14-0	18-5	23-7
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	6-2	9-1	11-6	14-1
	Hem-fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3
	Hem-fir	#1	8-3	12-4	15-8	19-2
	Hem-fir	#2	7-10	11-7	14-8	17-10
	Hem-fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8
	Southern pine	SS	8-9	13-9	18-2	23-1
	Southern pine	#1	8-5	12-9	16-2	18-11
	Southern pine	#2	7-4	11-0	13-11	16-6
	Southern pine	#3	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-9
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-8
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8
24	Douglas fir-larch	SS	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-3
	Douglas fir-larch	#1	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Douglas fir-larch	#2	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-5
	Douglas fir-larch	#3	5-7	8-1	10-3	12-7
	Hem-fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-6
	Hem-fir	#1	7-7	11-1	14-0	17-1
	Hem-fir	#2	7-1	10-4	13-1	16-0
	Hem-fir	#3	5-5	7-11	10-0	12-3
	Southern pine	SS	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6
	Southern pine	#1	7-8	11-5	14-6	16-11
	Southern pine	#2	6-7	9-10	12-6	14-9
	Southern pine	#3	5-1	7-5	9-5	11-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	19-5
	Spruce-pine-fir	#1	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#2	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-3
	Spruce-pine-fir	#3	5-5	7-11	10-0	12-3

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

802.5.2 Ceiling joist and rafter connections. Where ceiling joists run parallel to rafters, they shall be connected to rafters at the top wall plate in accordance with Table 802.5.2. Where ceiling joists are not connected to the rafters at the top wall plate, they shall be installed in the bottom third of the rafter height in accordance with Figure 802.4.5 and Table 802.5.2. Where the ceiling joists are installed above the bottom third of the rafter height, the ridge shall be designed as a beam. Where ceiling joists do not run parallel to rafters, the ceiling joists shall be connected to top plates in accordance with Table 602.3(1). Each rafter

shall be tied across the structure with a rafter tie or a 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm × 102 mm) kicker connected to the ceiling diaphragm with nails equivalent in capacity to Table 802.5.2.

TABLE 802.5.2
RAFTER/CEILING JOIST HEEL JOINT CONNECTIONS[a, b, c, d, e, g]

RAFTER SLOPE	RAFTER SPACING (inches)	GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf)															
		20[f]				30				50				70			
		Roof span (feet)															
		12	20	28	36	12	20	28	36	12	20	28	36	12	20	28	36
		Required number of 16d common nails[a, b] per heel joint splices[c, d, e]															
3:12	12	4	6	8	10	4	6	8	11	5	8	12	15	6	11	15	20
	16	5	8	10	13	5	8	11	14	6	11	15	20	8	14	20	26
	24	7	11	15	19	7	11	16	21	9	16	23	30	12	21	30	39
4:12	12	3	5	6	8	3	5	6	8	4	6	9	11	5	8	12	15
	16	4	6	8	10	4	6	8	11	5	8	12	15	6	11	15	20
	24	5	8	12	15	5	9	12	16	7	12	17	22	9	16	23	29
5:12	12	3	4	5	6	3	4	5	7	3	5	7	9	4	7	9	12
	16	3	5	6	8	3	5	7	9	4	7	9	12	5	9	12	16
	24	4	7	9	12	4	7	10	13	6	10	14	18	7	13	18	23
7:12	12	3	4	4	5	3	3	4	5	3	4	5	7	3	5	7	9
	16	3	4	5	6	3	4	5	6	3	5	7	9	4	6	9	11
	24	3	5	7	9	3	5	7	9	4	7	10	13	5	9	13	17
9:12	12	3	3	4	4	3	3	3	4	3	3	4	5	3	4	5	7
	16	3	4	4	5	3	3	4	5	3	4	5	7	3	5	7	9
	24	3	4	6	7	3	4	6	7	3	6	8	10	4	7	10	13
12:12	12	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	4	3	3	4	5
	16	3	3	4	4	3	3	3	4	3	3	4	5	3	4	5	7
	24	3	4	4	5	3	3	4	6	3	4	6	8	3	6	8	10

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. 40d box nails shall be permitted to be substituted for 16d common nails.
b. Nailing requirements shall be permitted to be reduced 25 percent if nails are clinched.
c. Heel joint connections are not required where the ridge is supported by a load-bearing wall, header or ridge beam.
d. Where intermediate support of the rafter is provided by vertical struts or purlins to a load-bearing wall, the tabulated heel joint connection requirements shall be permitted to be reduced proportionally to the reduction in span.
e. Equivalent nailing patterns are required for ceiling joist to ceiling joist lap splices.
f. Applies to roof live load of 20 psf or less.
g. Tabulated heel joint connection requirements assume that ceiling joists or rafter ties are located at the bottom of the attic space. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic, heel joint connection requirements shall be increased by the following factors:

H_C/H_R	Heel Joint Connection Adjustment Factor
1/3	1.5
1/4	1.33
1/5	1.25
1/6	1.2
1/7.5 or less	1.11

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

802.5.2.1 Ceiling joists lapped. Ends of ceiling joists shall be lapped not less than 3 inches (76 mm) or butted over bearing partitions or beams and toenailed to the bearing member. Where ceiling joists are used to provide resistance to rafter thrust, lapped joists shall be nailed together in accordance with Table 802.5.2 and butted joists shall be tied together in a manner to resist such thrust. Joists that do not resist thrust shall be permitted to be nailed in accordance with Table 602.3(1). Wood structural panel roof sheathing, in accordance with Table 503.2.1.1(1), shall not cantilever more than 9 inches (229 mm) beyond the gable endwall unless supported by gable overhang framing.

802.5.2.2 Rafter ties. Wood rafter ties shall be not less than 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm × 102 mm) installed in accordance with Table 802.5.2 at each rafter. Other approved rafter tie methods shall be permitted.

802.5.2.3 Blocking. Blocking shall be not less than utility grade lumber.

802.6 Bearing. The ends of each rafter or ceiling joist shall have not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal and not less than 3 inches (76 mm) on masonry or concrete. The bearing on masonry or concrete shall be direct, or a sill plate of 2-inch (51 mm) minimum nominal thickness shall be provided under the rafter or ceiling joist. The sill plate shall provide a minimum nominal bearing area of 48 square inches (30 865 mm^2).

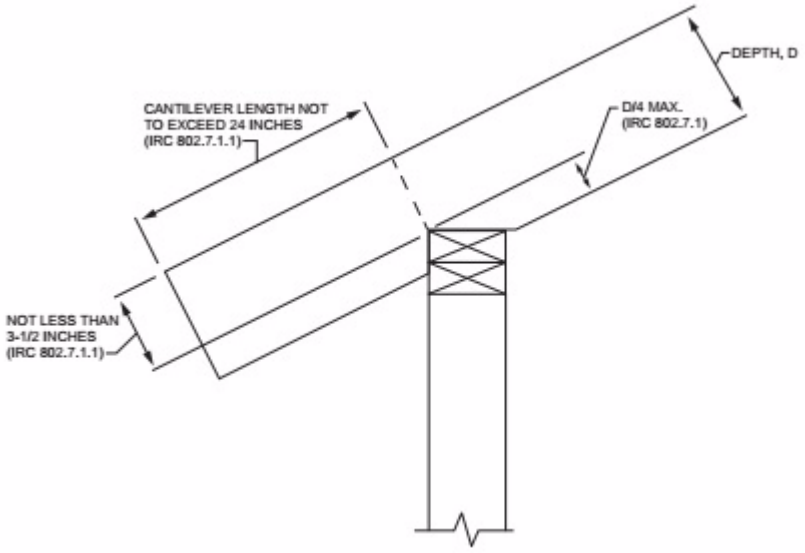
802.6.1 Finished ceiling material. If the finished ceiling material is installed on the ceiling prior to the attachment of the ceiling to the walls, such as in construction at a factory, a compression strip of the same thickness as the finished ceiling material shall be installed directly above the top plate of bearing walls if the compressive strength of the finished ceiling material is less than the loads it will be required to withstand. The compression strip shall cover the entire length of such top plate and shall be not less than one-half the width of the top plate. It shall be of material capable of transmitting the loads transferred through it.

802.7 Cutting, drilling and notching. Structural roof members shall not be cut, bored or notched in excess of the limitations specified in this section.

802.7.1 Sawn lumber. Cuts, notches and holes in solid lumber joists, rafters, blocking and beams shall comply with the provisions of Section 502.8.1 except

that cantilevered portions of rafters shall be permitted in accordance with Section 802.7.1.1.

802.7.1.1 Cantilevered portions of rafters. Notches on cantilevered portions of rafters are permitted provided the dimension of the remaining portion of the rafter is not less than $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) and the length of the cantilever does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) in accordance with Figure 802.7.1.1.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 802.7.1.1
RAFTER NOTCH

802.7.1.2 Ceiling joist taper cut. Taper cuts at the ends of the ceiling joist shall not exceed one-fourth the depth of the member in accordance with Figure 802.7.1.2.

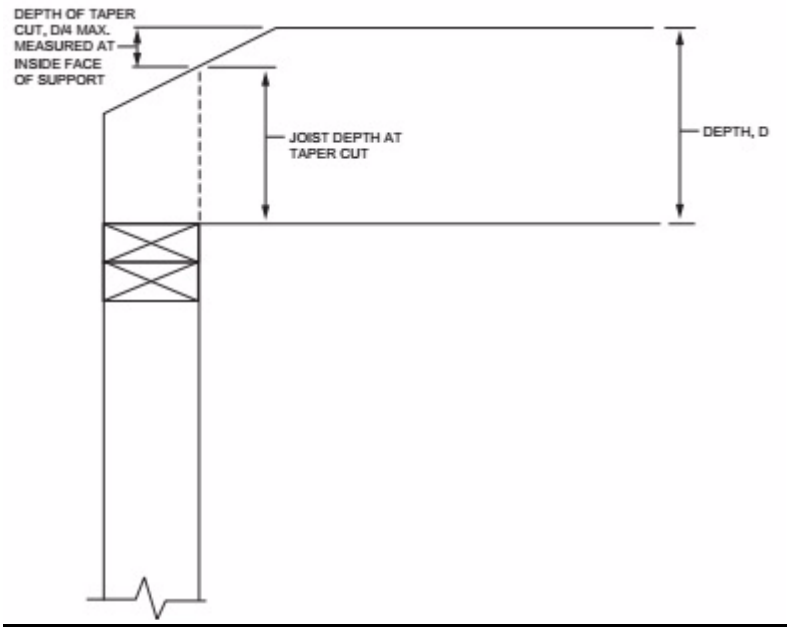


FIGURE 802.7.1.2
CEILING JOIST TAPER CUT

802.7.2 Engineered wood products. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glue-laminated members, cross-laminated timber members or I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.

802.8 Lateral support. Roof framing members and ceiling joists having a depth-to-thickness ratio exceeding 5 to 1 based on nominal dimensions shall be provided with lateral support at points of bearing to prevent rotation. For roof rafters with ceiling joists attached in accordance with Table 602.3(1), the depth-to-thickness ratio for the total assembly shall be determined using the combined thickness of the rafter plus the attached ceiling joist.

Exception: Roof trusses shall be braced in accordance with Section 802.10.3.

802.8.1 Bridging. Rafters and ceiling joists having a depth-to-thickness ratio exceeding 6 to 1 based on nominal dimensions shall be supported laterally by solid blocking, diagonal bridging (wood or metal) or a continuous 1-inch by 3-inch (25 mm by 76 mm) wood strip nailed across the rafters or ceiling joists at intervals not exceeding 8 feet (2438 mm).

802.9 Framing of openings. Openings in roof and ceiling framing shall be framed with header and trimmer joists. Where the header joist span does not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm), the header joist shall be permitted to be a single member the same size as the ceiling joist or rafter. Single trimmer joists shall be permitted to be used to carry a single header joist that is located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the trimmer joist bearing. Where the header joist span exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm), the trimmer joists and the header joist shall be doubled and of sufficient cross section to support the ceiling joists or rafter framing into the header. Approved hangers shall be used for the header joist to trimmer joist connections where the header joist span exceeds 6 feet (1829 mm). Tail joists over 12 feet (3658 mm) long shall be supported at the header by framing anchors or on ledger strips not less than 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm).

802.10 Wood trusses.

802.10.1 Truss design drawings. Truss design drawings, prepared in conformance to Section 802.10.1, shall be provided to the building official and approved prior to installation. Truss design drawings shall be provided with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. Truss design drawings shall include, at a minimum, the following information:

1. Slope or depth, span and spacing.
2. Location of all joints.
3. Required bearing widths.
4. Design loads as applicable.
   - 4.1. Top chord live load (as determined from Section 301.6).
   - 4.2. Top chord dead load.
   - 4.3. Bottom chord live load.
   - 4.4. Bottom chord dead load.
   - 4.5. Concentrated loads and their points of application.
   - 4.6. Controlling wind and earthquake loads.
5. Adjustments to lumber and joint connector design values for conditions of use.
6. Each reaction force and direction.
7. Joint connector type and description such as size, thickness or gage and the dimensioned location of each joint connector except where symmetrically located relative to the joint interface.
8. Lumber size, species and grade for each member.
9. Connection requirements for:
   - 9.1. Truss to girder-truss.
   - 9.2. Truss ply to ply.

9.3. Field splices.

10. Calculated deflection ratio or maximum description for live and total load.
11. Maximum axial compression forces in the truss members to enable the building designer to design the size, connections and anchorage of the permanent continuous lateral bracing. Forces shall be shown on the truss design drawing or on supplemental documents.
12. Required permanent truss member bracing location.

802.10.2 Design. Wood trusses shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. The design and manufacture of metal-plate-connected wood trusses shall comply with ANSI/TPI 1. The truss design drawings shall *bear the identification the person primarily responsible for their preparation and include all loads, reactions and calculations used in the design or* be prepared by a *registered design professional. The truss design drawings shall comply with the requirements of this Section and be* in accordance with Section 106.1.

802.10.2.1 Applicability limits. The provisions of this section shall control the design of truss roof framing where snow controls for buildings that are not greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length perpendicular to the joist, rafter or truss span, not greater than 36 feet (10 973 mm) in width parallel to the joist, rafter or truss span, not more than three stories above grade plane in height, and have roof slopes not smaller than 3:12 (25-percent slope) or greater than 12:12 (100-percent slope). Truss roof framing constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to sites subjected to a maximum design wind speed of 140 miles per hour (63 m/s), Exposure B or C, and a maximum ground snow load of 70 psf (3352 Pa). For consistent loading of all truss types, roof snow load is to be computed as: 0.7 p_g.

802.10.3 Bracing. Trusses shall be braced to prevent rotation and provide lateral stability in accordance with the requirements specified in the *construction documents* for the building and on the individual truss design drawings. In the absence of specific bracing requirements, trusses shall be braced in accordance with accepted industry practice such as the "SBCA *Building Component Safety Information (BCSI) Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing & Bracing of Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses".*

802.10.4 Alterations to trusses. Truss members shall not be cut, notched, drilled, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without the approval of a registered design professional. Alterations resulting in the addition of load such as HVAC equipment water heater that exceeds the design load for the truss shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

802.11 Roof tie-down.

TABLE 802.11
RAFTER OR TRUSS UPLIFT CONNECTION FORCES FROM WIND (ASD) (POUNDS PER CONNECTION)[a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h]

RAFTER OR TRUSS SPACING	ROOF SPAN (feet)	EXPOSURE B									
		Ultimate Design Wind Speed V_{ULT} (mph)									
		110		115		120		130		140	
		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch	
		< 5:12	≥ 5:12	< 5:12	≥ 5:12	< 5:12	≥5:12	< 5:12	≥5:12	< 5:12	≥5:12
12" o.c.	12	48	43	59	53	70	64	95	88	122	113
	18	59	52	74	66	89	81	122	112	157	146
	24	71	62	89	79	108	98	149	137	192	178
	28	79	69	99	88	121	109	167	153	216	200
	32	86	75	109	97	134	120	185	170	240	222
	36	94	82	120	106	146	132	203	186	264	244
	42	106	92	135	120	166	149	230	211	300	278
	48	118	102	151	134	185	166	258	236	336	311
16" o.c.	12	64	57	78	70	93	85	126	117	162	150
	18	78	69	98	88	118	108	162	149	209	194
	24	94	82	118	105	144	130	198	182	255	237
	28	105	92	132	117	161	145	222	203	287	266
	32	114	100	145	129	178	160	246	226	319	295
	36	125	109	160	141	194	176	270	247	351	325
	42	141	122	180	160	221	198	306	281	399	370
	48	157	136	201	178	246	221	343	314	447	414
24" o.c.	12	96	86	118	106	140	128	190	176	244	226
	18	118	104	148	132	178	162	244	224	314	292
	24	142	124	178	158	216	196	298	274	384	356
	28	158	138	198	176	242	218	334	306	432	400
	32	172	150	218	194	268	240	370	340	480	444
	36	188	164	240	212	292	264	406	372	528	488
	42	212	184	270	240	332	298	460	422	600	556
	48	236	204	302	268	370	332	516	472	672	622

(continued)

TABLE 802.11—continued
RAFTER OR TRUSS UPLIFT CONNECTION FORCES FROM WIND (ASD) (POUNDS PER CONNECTION)[a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h]

RAFTER OR TRUSS SPACING	ROOF SPAN (feet)	EXPOSURE C									
		Ultimate Design Wind Speed V_{ULT} (mph)									
		110		115		120		130		140	
		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch		Roof Pitch	
		< 5:12	≥5:12	< 5:12	≥5:12	< 5:12	≥5:12	< 5:12	≥5:12	< 5:12	≥5:12
12" o.c.	12	95	88	110	102	126	118	161	151	198	186
	18	121	111	141	131	163	151	208	195	257	242
	24	148	136	173	160	200	185	256	239	317	298
	28	166	152	195	179	225	208	289	269	358	335
	32	184	168	216	199	249	231	321	299	398	373
	36	202	185	237	219	274	254	353	329	438	411
	42	229	210	269	248	312	289	402	375	499	468
	48	256	234	302	278	349	323	450	420	560	524
16" o.c.	12	126	117	146	136	168	157	214	201	263	247
	18	161	148	188	174	217	201	277	259	342	322
	24	197	181	230	213	266	246	340	318	422	396
	28	221	202	259	238	299	277	384	358	476	446
	32	245	223	287	265	331	307	427	398	529	496
	36	269	246	315	291	364	338	469	438	583	547
	42	305	279	358	330	415	384	535	499	664	622
	48	340	311	402	370	464	430	599	559	745	697
24" o.c.	12	190	176	220	204	252	236	322	302	396	372
	18	242	222	282	262	326	302	416	390	514	484
	24	296	272	346	320	400	370	512	478	634	596
	28	332	304	390	358	450	416	578	538	716	670
	32	368	336	432	398	498	462	642	598	796	746
	36	404	370	474	438	548	508	706	658	876	822
	42	458	420	538	496	624	578	804	750	998	936
	48	512	468	604	556	698	646	900	840	1120	1048

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2, 1 pound per linear foot = 14.6 N/m.

a. The uplift connection forces are based on a maximum 33-foot mean roof height and Wind Exposure Category B or C. For Exposure D, the uplift connection force shall be selected from the Exposure C portion of the table using the next highest tabulated ultimate design wind speed. The adjustment coefficients in Table 301.2(3) shall not be used to multiply the tabulated forces for Exposures C and D or for other mean roof heights.

b. The uplift connection forces include an allowance for roof and ceiling assembly dead load of 15 psf.

c. The tabulated uplift connection forces are limited to a maximum roof overhang of 24 inches.

d. The tabulated uplift connection forces shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.75 for connections not located within 8 feet of building corners.

e. For buildings with hip roofs with 5:12 and greater pitch, the tabulated uplift connection forces shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.70. This reduction shall not be combined with any other reduction in tabulated forces.

f. For wall-to-wall and wall-to-foundation connections, the uplift connection force shall be permitted to be reduced by 60 plf for each full wall above.

g. Linear interpolation between tabulated roof spans and wind speeds shall be permitted.

h. The tabulated forces for a 12-inch on-center spacing shall be permitted to be used to determine the uplift load in pounds per linear foot.

802.11.1 Uplift resistance. Roof assemblies shall have uplift resistance in accordance with Sections 802.11.1.1 and 802.11.1.2.

Where the uplift force does not exceed 200 pounds (90.8 kg), rafters and trusses spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center shall be permitted to be attached to their supporting wall assemblies in accordance with Table 602.3(1).

Where the basic wind speed does not exceed 115 mph, the wind exposure category is B, the roof pitch is 5:12 (42-percent slope) or greater, and the roof span is 32 feet (9754 mm) or less, rafters and trusses spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center shall be permitted to be attached to their supporting wall assemblies in accordance with Table 602.3(1).

802.11.1.1 Truss uplift resistance. Trusses shall be attached to supporting wall assemblies by connections capable of resisting uplift forces as specified on the truss design drawings for the ultimate design wind speed as determined by Figure 301.2(5)A and listed in Table 301.2(1) or as shown on the construction documents. Uplift forces shall be permitted to be determined as specified by Table 802.11, if applicable, or as determined by accepted engineering practice.

802.11.1.2 Rafter uplift resistance. Individual rafters shall be attached to supporting wall assemblies by connections capable of resisting uplift forces as determined by Table 802.11 or as determined by accepted engineering practice. Connections for beams used in a roof system shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

SECTION 803
ROOF SHEATHING

803.1 Lumber sheathing. Allowable spans for lumber used as roof sheathing shall conform to Table 803.1. Spaced lumber sheathing for wood shingle and shake roofing shall conform to the requirements of Sections 905.7 and 905.8.

TABLE 803.1
MINIMUM THICKNESS OF LUMBER ROOF SHEATHING

RAFTER OR BEAM SPACING (inches)	MINIMUM NET THICKNESS (inches)
24	5/8
48[a]	1 1/2 T & G
60[b]	
72[c]	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Minimum 270 F_b, 340,000 E.
b. Minimum 420 F_b, 660,000 E.
c. Minimum 600 F_b, 1,150,000 E.

803.2 Wood structural panel sheathing.

803.2.1 Identification and grade. Wood structural panels shall conform to DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2, CSA O437 or CSA O325, and shall be identified for grade, bond classification and performance category by a grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an *approved* agency. Wood structural panels shall comply with the grades specified in Table 503.2.1.1(1).

803.2.1.1 Exposure durability. Wood structural panels, when designed to be permanently exposed in outdoor applications, shall be of an exterior exposure durability. Wood structural panel roof sheathing exposed to the underside shall be permitted to be of interior type bonded with exterior glue, identified as Exposure 1.

803.2.1.2 Fire-retardant-treated plywood. The allowable unit stresses for fire-retardant-treated plywood, including fastener values, shall be developed from an approved method of investigation that considers the effects of anticipated temperature and humidity to which the fire-retardant-treated plywood will be subjected, the type of treatment and redrying process. The fire-retardant-treated plywood shall be graded by an approved agency.

803.2.2 Allowable spans. The maximum allowable spans for wood structural panel roof sheathing shall not exceed the values set forth in Table 503.2.1.1(1), or APA E30.

803.2.3 Installation. Wood structural panel used as roof sheathing shall be installed with joints staggered or not staggered in accordance with Table 602.3(1), APA E30 for wood roof framing or with Table 804.3 for cold-formed steel roof framing. Wood structural panel roof sheathing in accordance with

Table 503.2.1.1(1) shall not cantilever more than 9 inches (229 mm) beyond the gable endwall unless supported by gable overhang framing.

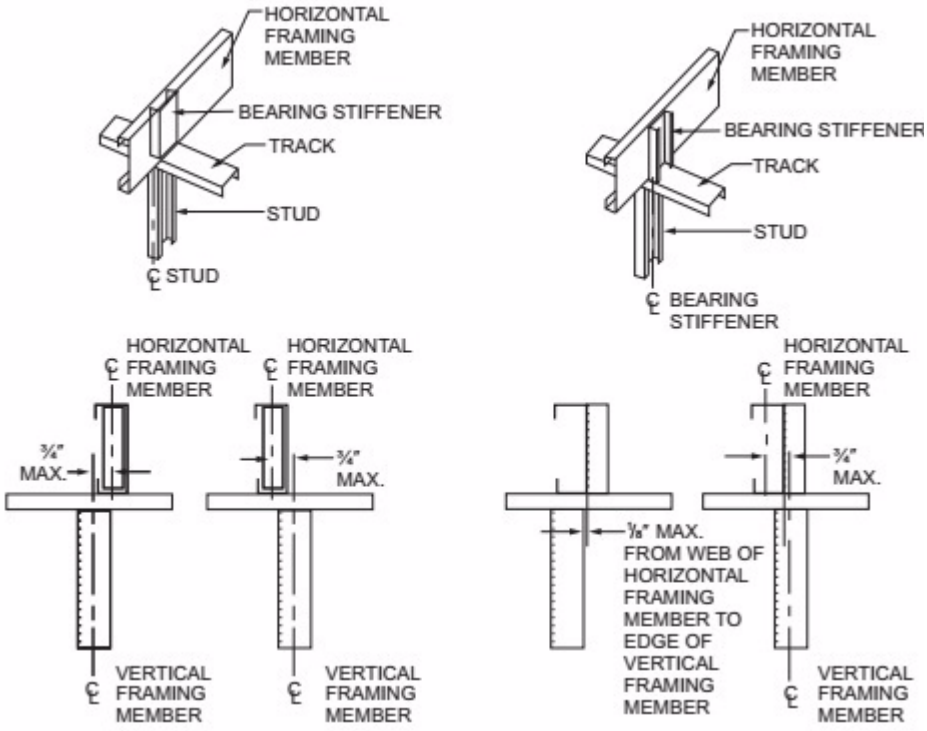
SECTION 804
COLD-FORMED STEEL ROOF FRAMING

804.1 General. Elements shall be straight and free of any defects that would significantly affect their structural performance. Cold-formed steel roof framing members shall be in accordance with the requirements of this section.

804.1.1 Applicability limits. The provisions of this section shall control the construction of cold-formed steel roof framing for buildings not greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) perpendicular to the joist, rafter or truss span, not greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in width parallel to the joist span or truss, less than or equal to three stories above grade plane and with roof slopes not less than 3:12 (25-percent slope) or greater than 12:12 (100-percent slope). Cold-formed steel roof framing constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to sites where the ultimate design wind speed is less than 140 miles per hour (63 m/s), Exposure Category B or C, and the ground snow load is less than or equal to 70 pounds per square foot (3350 Pa).

804.1.2 In-line framing. Cold-formed steel roof framing constructed in accordance with Section 804 shall be located in line with load-bearing studs in accordance with Figure 804.1.2 and the tolerances specified as follows:

1. The maximum tolerance shall be $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) between the centerline of the horizontal framing member and the centerline of the vertical framing member.
2. Where the centerline of the horizontal framing member and bearing stiffener are located to one side of the centerline of the vertical framing member, the maximum tolerance shall be $^{1}/_{8}$ inch (3.2 mm) between the web of the horizontal framing member and the edge of the vertical framing member.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 804.1.2
IN-LINE FRAMING

804.2 Structural framing. Load-bearing, cold-formed steel roof framing members shall be in accordance with this section.

804.2.1 Material. Load-bearing, cold-formed steel framing members shall be cold formed to shape from structural quality sheet steel complying with the requirements of ASTM A1003, Structural Grades 33 Type H and 50 Type H.

804.2.2 Corrosion protection. Load-bearing, cold-formed steel framing shall have a metallic coating complying with ASTM A1003 and one of the following:

1. Not less than G 60 in accordance with ASTM A653.
2. Not less than AZ 50 in accordance with ASTM A792.

804.2.3 Dimension, thickness and material grade. Load-bearing, cold-formed steel roof framing members shall comply with Figure 804.2.3(1) and with the dimensional and thickness requirements specified in Table 804.2.3. Additionally, C-shaped sections shall have a minimum flange width of 1.625 inches (41 mm) and a maximum flange width of 2 inches (51 mm). The minimum lip size for C-shaped sections shall be $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm). Tracks shall comply with Figure 804.2.3(2) and shall have a minimum flange width of $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm). Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used wherever 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses are specified. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used wherever 54 and 68 mil thicknesses are specified.

TABLE 804.2.3
LOAD-BEARING COLD-FORMED STEEL
ROOF FRAMING MEMBER SIZES AND THICKNESSES

MEMBER DESIGNATION[a]	WEB DEPTH (inches)	MINIMUM BASE STEEL THICKNESS mil (inches)
350S162-t	3.5	33 (0.0329), 43 (0.0428), 54 (0.0538)
550S162-t	5.5	33 (0.0329), 43 (0.0428), 54 (0.0538), 68 (0.0677)
800S162-t	8	33 (0.0329), 43 (0.0428), 54 (0.0538), 68 (0.0677)
1000S162-t	10	43 (0.0428), 54 (0.0538), 68 (0.0677)
1200S162-t	12	43 (0.0428), 54 (0.0538), 68 (0.0677)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm

a. The member designation is defined by the first number representing the member depth in hundredths of an inch, the letter "s" representing a stud or joist member, the second number representing the flange width in hundredths of an inch and the letter "t" shall be a number representing the minimum base metal thickness in mils.

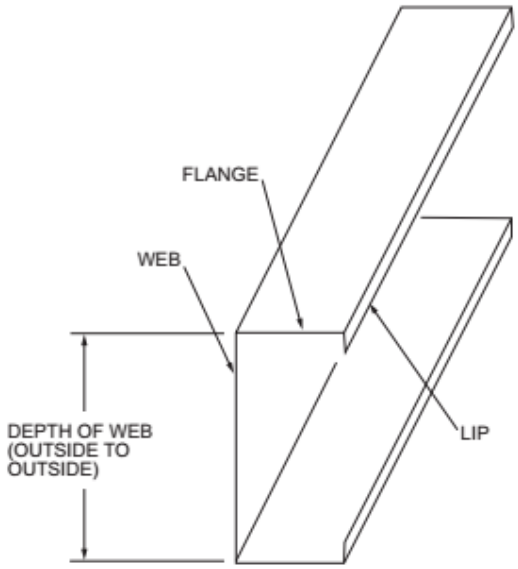


FIGURE 804.2.3(1)
C-SHAPED SECTION

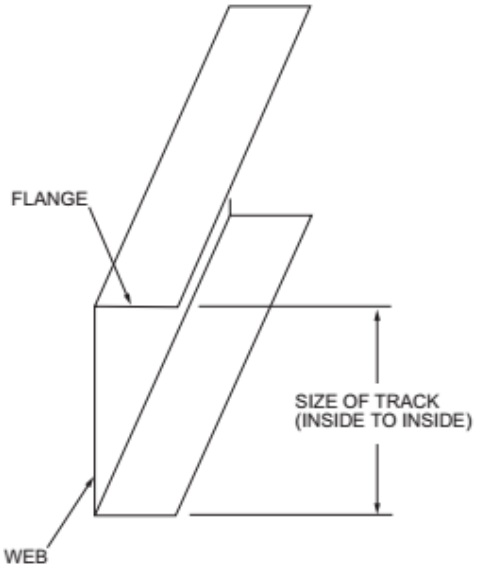


FIGURE 804.2.3(2)
TRACK SECTION

804.2.4 Identification. Load-bearing, cold-formed steel framing members shall have a legible label, stencil, stamp or embossment with the following information as a minimum:

1. Manufacturer's identification.
2. Minimum base steel thickness in inches (mm).
3. Minimum coating designation.
4. Minimum yield strength, in kips per square inch (ksi) (MPa).

804.2.5 Fastening requirements. Screws for steel-to-steel connections shall be installed with a minimum edge distance and center-to-center spacing of $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm), shall be self-drilling tapping and shall conform to ASTM C1513. Structural sheathing shall be attached to cold-formed steel roof rafters with minimum No. 8 self-drilling tapping screws that conform to ASTM C1513. Screws for attaching structural sheathing to cold-formed steel roof framing shall have a minimum head diameter of 0.292 inch (7.4 mm) with countersunk heads and shall be installed with a minimum edge distance of $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm). Gypsum board ceilings shall be attached to cold-formed steel joists with minimum No. 6 screws conforming to ASTM C954 or ASTM C1513 with a bugle-head style and shall be installed in accordance with Section 805.

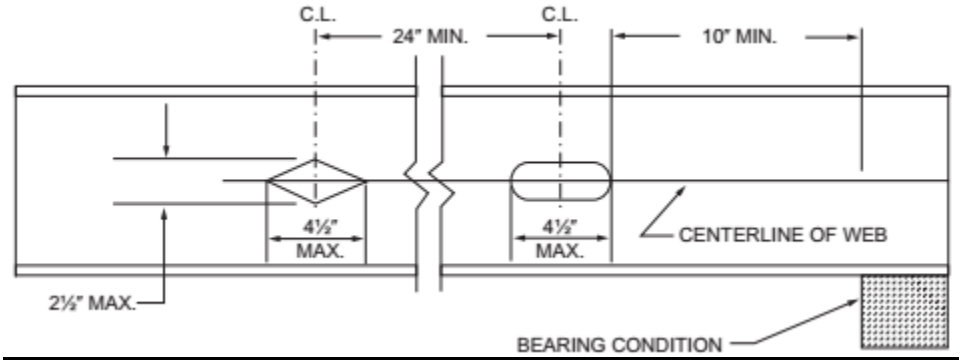
For all connections, screws shall extend through the steel not fewer than three exposed threads. Fasteners shall have rust-inhibitive coating suitable for the installation in which they are being used, or be manufactured from material not susceptible to corrosion.

804.2.6 Web holes, web hole reinforcing and web hole patching. Web holes, web hole reinforcing and web hole patching shall be in accordance with this section.

804.2.6.1 Web holes. Web holes in roof framing members shall comply with all of the following conditions:

1. Holes shall conform to Figure 804.2.6.1.
2. Holes shall be permitted only along the centerline of the web of the framing member.
3. Center-to-center spacing of holes shall be not less than 24 inches (610 mm).
4. The web hole width shall be not greater than one-half the member depth, or $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm).
5. Holes shall have a web hole length not exceeding $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm).
6. The minimum distance between the edge of the bearing surface and the edge of the web hole shall be not less than 10 inches (254 mm).

Framing members with web holes not conforming to Items 1 though 6 shall be reinforced in accordance with Section 804.2.6.2, patched in accordance with Section 804.2.6.3 or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practices.



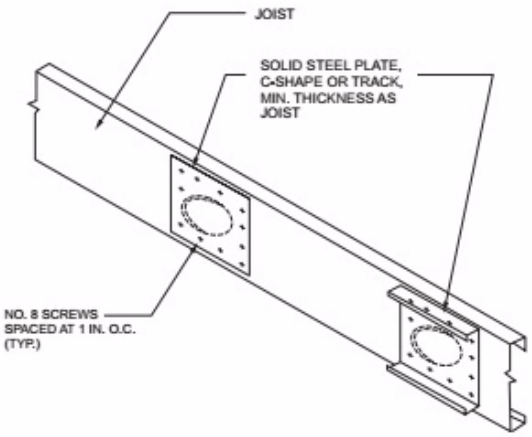
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 804.2.6.1
ROOF FRAMING MEMBER WEB HOLES

804.2.6.2 Web hole reinforcing. Reinforcement of web holes in ceiling joists not conforming to the requirements of Section 804.2.6.1 shall be permitted if the hole is located fully within the center 40 percent of the span and the depth and length of the hole do not exceed 65 percent of the flat width of the web. The reinforcing shall be a steel plate or C-shaped section with a hole that does not exceed the web hole size limitations of Section 804.2.6.1 for the member being reinforced. The steel reinforcing shall be the same thickness as the receiving member and shall extend not less than 1 inch (25 mm) beyond all edges of the hole. The steel reinforcing shall be fastened to the web of the receiving member with No. 8 screws spaced not greater than 1 inch (25 mm) center to center along the edges of the patch with minimum edge distance of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).

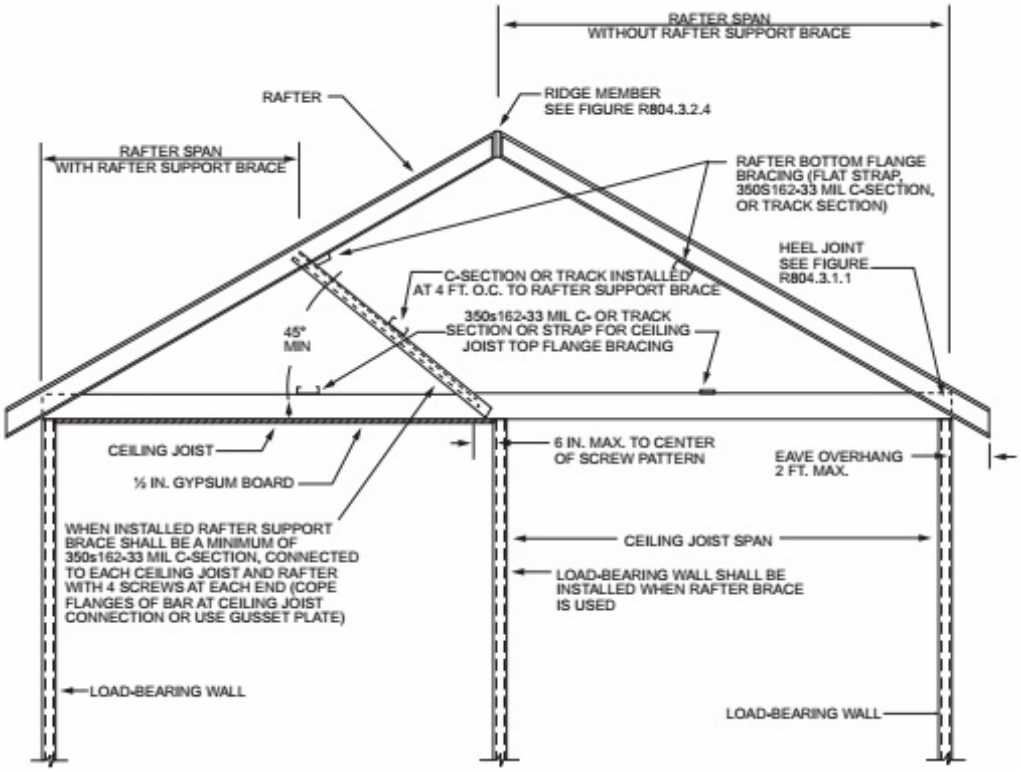
804.2.6.3 Hole patching. Patching of web holes in roof framing members not conforming to the requirements in Section 804.2.6.1 shall be permitted in accordance with either of the following methods:

1. Framing members shall be replaced or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practices where web holes exceed either of the following size limits:
    1.1. The depth of the hole, measured across the web, exceeds 70 percent of the flat width of the web.
    1.2. The length of the hole measured along the web, exceeds 10 inches (254 mm) or the depth of the web, whichever is greater.
2. Web holes not exceeding the dimensional requirements in Section 804.2.6.3, Item 1, shall be patched with a solid steel plate, stud section or track section in accordance with Figure 804.2.6.3. The steel patch shall, as a minimum, be the same thickness as the receiving member and shall extend not less than 1 inch (25 mm) beyond all edges of the hole. The steel patch shall be fastened to the web of the receiving member with No. 8 screws spaced not greater than 1 inch (25 mm) center-to-center along the edges of the patch with minimum edge distance of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 804.2.6.3
ROOF FRAMING MEMBER WEB HOLE PATCH



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

FIGURE 804.3
COLD-FORMED STEEL ROOF CONSTRUCTION

804.3 Roof construction. Cold-formed steel roof systems constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall consist of both ceiling joists and rafters in accordance with Figure 804.3 and fastened in accordance with Table 804.3.

TABLE 804.3
ROOF FRAMING FASTENING SCHEDULE[a, b]

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS			NUMBER AND SIZE OF FASTENERS[a]				SPACING OF FASTENERS
Roof sheathing (oriented strand board or plywood) to rafter			No. 8 screws				6" o.c. on edges and 12"o.c. at interior supports. 6"o.c. at gable end truss
Gable end truss to endwall top track			No. 10 screws				12" o.c.
Rafter to ceiling joist			Minimum No. 10 screws, in accordance with Table 804.3.1.1(3)				Evenly spaced, not less than 1/2" from all edges.
Ceiling joist or roof truss to top track of bearing wall[b]	Ceiling Joist Spacing (in.)	Roof Span (ft)	Ultimate Design Wind Speed (mph) and Exposure Category				Each ceiling joist or roof truss
			126 B 110 C	<139 B 115 C	126 C	<139 C	
	16	24	2	2	2	3	
		28	2	2	3	3	
		32	2	2	3	4	
		36	2	2	3	4	
		40	2	2	3	4	
	24	24	2	2	3	4	
		28	2	2	4	5	
		32	2	3	4	5	
		36	2	3	4	6	
		40	2	3	5	6	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

a. Screws are a minimum No. 10 unless noted otherwise.

b. Indicated number of screws shall be applied through the flanges of the truss or ceiling joist or through each leg of a 54 mil clip angle. See Section 804.3.8 for additional requirements to resist uplift forces.

804.3.1 Ceiling joists. Cold-formed steel ceiling joists shall be in accordance with this section.

804.3.1.1 Minimum ceiling joist size. Ceiling joist size and thickness shall be determined in accordance with the limits set forth in Tables 804.3.1.1(1) and 804.3.1.1(2). When determining the size of ceiling joists, the lateral support of the top flange shall be classified as unbraced, braced at midspan

or braced at third points in accordance with Section 804.3.1.3. Where sheathing material is attached to the top flange of ceiling joists or where the bracing is spaced closer than at third points of the joists, the "third point" values from Tables 804.3.1.1(1) and 804.3.1.1(2) shall be used.

Ceiling joists shall have a bearing support length of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) and shall be connected to roof rafters (heel joint) with No. 10 screws in accordance with Figure 804.3.1.1 and Table 804.3.1.1(3).

Where continuous joists are framed across interior bearing supports, the interior bearing supports shall be located within 24 inches (610 mm) of midspan of the ceiling joist, and the individual spans shall not exceed the applicable spans in Tables 804.3.1.1(1) and 804.3.1.1(2).

Where the attic is to be used as an occupied space, the ceiling joists shall be designed in accordance with Section 505.

TABLE 804.3.1.1(1)
CEILING JOIST SPANS
10 PSF LIVE LOAD (NO ATTIC STORAGE)[a, b, c, d]

MEMBER DESIGNATION	ALLOWABLE SPAN (feet - inches)					
	Lateral Support of Top (Compression) Flange					
	Unbraced		Midspan Bracing		Third-point Bracing	
	Ceiling Joist Spacing (inches)					
	16	24	16	24	16	24
350S162-33	9′-6″	8′-6″	11′-10″	9′-10″	11′-10″	10′-4″
350S162-43	10′-4″	9′-3″	12′-10″	11′-3″	12′-10″	11′-3″
350S162-54	11′-1″	9′-11″	13′-9″	12′-0″	13′-9″	12′-0″
350S162-68	12′-2″	10′-10″	14′-9″	12′-10″	14′-9″	12′-10″
550S162-33	10′-11″	9′-10″	15′-7″	12′-0″	16′-10″	12′-0″
550S162-43	11′-8″	10′-6″	16′-10″	14′-10″	18′-4″	16′-0″
550S162-54	12′-7″	11′-3″	18′-0″	16′-2″	19′-4″	17′-2″
550S162-68	13′-7″	12′-1″	19′-3″	17′-3″	20′-6″	18′-5″
800S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—
800S162-43	13′-1″	11′-9″	18′-9″	16′-9″	21′-2″	18′-7″
800S162-54	13′-11″	12′-6″	20′-1″	18′-1″	21′-5″	20′-5″
800S162-68	14′-11″	13′-4″	21′-4″	19′-2″	22′-9″	21′-9″
1000S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—
1000S162-54	14′-10″	13′-4″	21′-4″	19′-2″	22′-8″	21′-8″
1000S162-68	15′-10″	14′-3″	22′-9″	20′-5″	24′-3″	23′-3″
1200S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—
1200S162-54	—	—	—	—	—	—
1200S162-68	16′-8″	14′-11″	23′-11″	21′-7″	25′-5″	24′-5″

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240 for total loads.
b. Ceiling dead load = 5 psf.
c. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.
d. Listed allowable spans are not applicable for 350S162-33, 550S162-33, 550S162-43 and 800S162-43 continuous joist members.

TABLE 804.3.1.1(2)
CEILING JOIST SPANS
20 PSF LIVE LOAD (LIMITED ATTIC STORAGE)[a, b, c, d]

MEMBER DESIGNATION	ALLOWABLE SPAN (feet - inches)					
	Lateral Support of Top (Compression) Flange					
	Unbraced		Midspan Bracing		Third-point Bracing	
	Ceiling Joist Spacing (inches)					
	16	24	16	24	16	24
350S162-33	8′-0″	6′-5″	9′-2″	7′-5″	9′-11″	7′-5″
350S162-43	8′-11″	7′-8″	10′-9″	8′-9″	10′-0″	9′-6″
350S162-54	9′-7″	8′-7″	11′-7″	10′-2″	11′-7″	10′-2″
350S162-68	10′-4″	9′-3″	12′-5″	10′-10″	12′-5″	10′-10″
550S162-33	9′-5″	6′-11″	10′-5″	6′-11″	10′-5″	6′-11″
550S162-43	10′-2″	9′-2″	14′-2″	11′-8″	15′-2″	11′-8″
550S162-54	10′-10″	9′-9″	15′-7″	14′-0″	16′-7″	14′-5″
550S162-68	11′-8″	10′-5″	16′-7″	14′-10″	17′-9″	15′-6″
800S162-33	—	—	—	—	—	—
800S162-43	11′-4″	10′-2″	16′-1″	11′-0″	16′-6″	11′-0″
800S162-54	12′-0″	10′-10″	17′-4″	15′-7″	18′-7″	17′-7″
800S162-68	12′-10″	11′-6″	18′-6″	16′-7″	19′-11″	18′-11″
1000S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—
1000S162-54	12′-10″	11′-7″	18′-5″	16′-6″	19′-8″	18′-8″
1000S162-68	13′-8″	12′-3″	19′-8″	17′-9″	21′-1″	20′-1″
1200S162-43	—	—	—	—	—	—
1200S162-54	—	—	—	—	—	—
1200S162-68	14′-5″	12′-11″	20′-9″	18′-7″	22′-0″	21′-0″

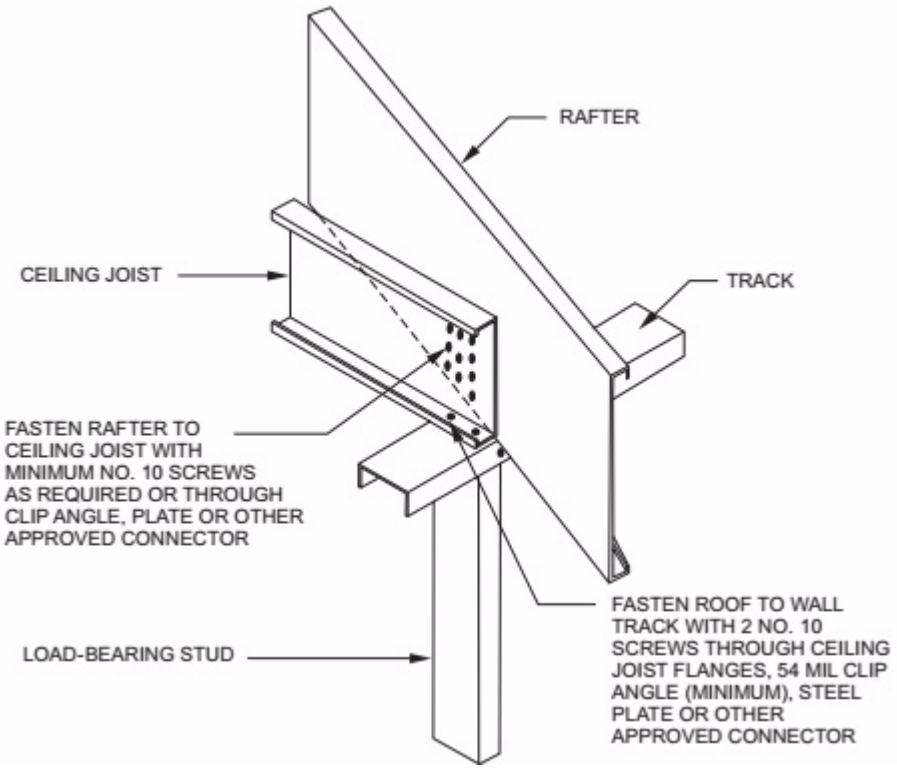
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: L/240 for total loads.
b. Ceiling deal load = 5 psf.
c. Minimum Grade 33 ksi steel shall be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Minimum Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.
d. Listed allowable spans are not applicable for 350S162-33, 350S162-43, 550S162-33, 550S162-43 and 800S162-43 continuous joist members.

TABLE 804.3.1.1(3)
NUMBER OF SCREWS REQUIRED FOR
CEILING JOIST TO ROOF RAFTER CONNECTION[a]

ROOF SLOPE	NUMBER OF SCREWS																			
	Building width (feet)																			
	24				28				32				36				40			
	Ground snow load (psf)																			
	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70	20	30	50	70
3/12	5	6	9	11	5	7	10	13	6	8	11	15	7	8	13	17	8	9	14	19
4/12	4	5	7	9	4	5	8	10	5	6	9	12	5	7	10	13	6	7	11	14
5/12	3	4	6	7	4	4	6	8	4	5	7	10	5	5	8	11	5	6	9	12
6/12	3	3	5	6	3	4	6	7	4	4	6	8	4	5	7	9	4	5	8	10
7/12	3	3	4	6	3	3	5	7	3	4	6	7	4	4	6	8	4	5	7	9
8/12	2	3	4	5	3	3	5	6	3	4	5	7	3	4	6	8	4	4	6	8
9/12	2	3	4	5	3	3	4	6	3	3	5	6	3	4	5	7	3	4	6	8
10/12	2	2	4	5	2	3	4	5	3	3	5	6	3	3	5	7	3	4	6	7
11/12	2	2	3	4	2	3	4	5	3	3	4	6	3	3	5	6	3	4	5	7
12/12	2	2	3	4	2	3	4	5	2	3	4	5	3	3	5	6	3	4	5	7

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa.
a. Screws shall be No. 10.



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

FIGURE 804.3.1.1
JOIST TO RAFTER CONNECTION

804.3.1.2 Ceiling joist bottom flange bracing. The bottom flanges of ceiling joists shall be laterally braced by the application of gypsum board or continuous steel straps installed perpendicular to the joist run in accordance with one of the following:

1. Gypsum board shall be fastened with No. 6 screws in accordance with Section 702.
2. Steel straps with a minimum size of $1^1/_2$ inches by 33 mils (38 mm by 0.84 mm) shall be installed at a maximum spacing of 4 feet (1219 mm). Straps shall be fastened to the bottom flange at each joist with one No. 8 screw and shall be fastened to blocking with two No. 8 screws. Blocking shall be installed between joists at a maximum spacing of 12 feet (3658 mm) measured along a line of continuous strapping (perpendicular to the joist run), and at the termination of all straps.

804.3.1.3 Ceiling joist top flange bracing. The top flanges of ceiling joists shall be laterally braced as required by Tables 804.3.1.1(1) and 804.3.1.1(2), in accordance with one of the following:

1. Minimum 33-mil (0.84 mm) C-shaped member in accordance with Figure 804.3.1.3(1).
2. Minimum 33-mil (0.84 mm) track section in accordance with Figure 804.3.1.3(1).
3. Minimum 33-mil (0.84 mm) hat section in accordance with Figure 804.3.1.3(1).
4. Minimum 54-mil (1.37 mm) $1^1/_2$-inch (38 mm) cold-rolled channel section in accordance with Figure 804.3.1.3(1).
5. Minimum $1^1/_2$-inch by 33-mil (38 mm by 0.84 mm) continuous steel strap in accordance with Figure 804.3.1.3(2).

Lateral bracing shall be installed perpendicular to the ceiling joists and shall be fastened to the top flange of each joist with one No. 8 screw. Blocking shall be installed between joists in line with bracing at a maximum spacing of 12 feet (3658 mm) measured perpendicular to the joists. Ends of lateral bracing shall be attached to blocking or anchored to a stable building component with two No. 8 screws.

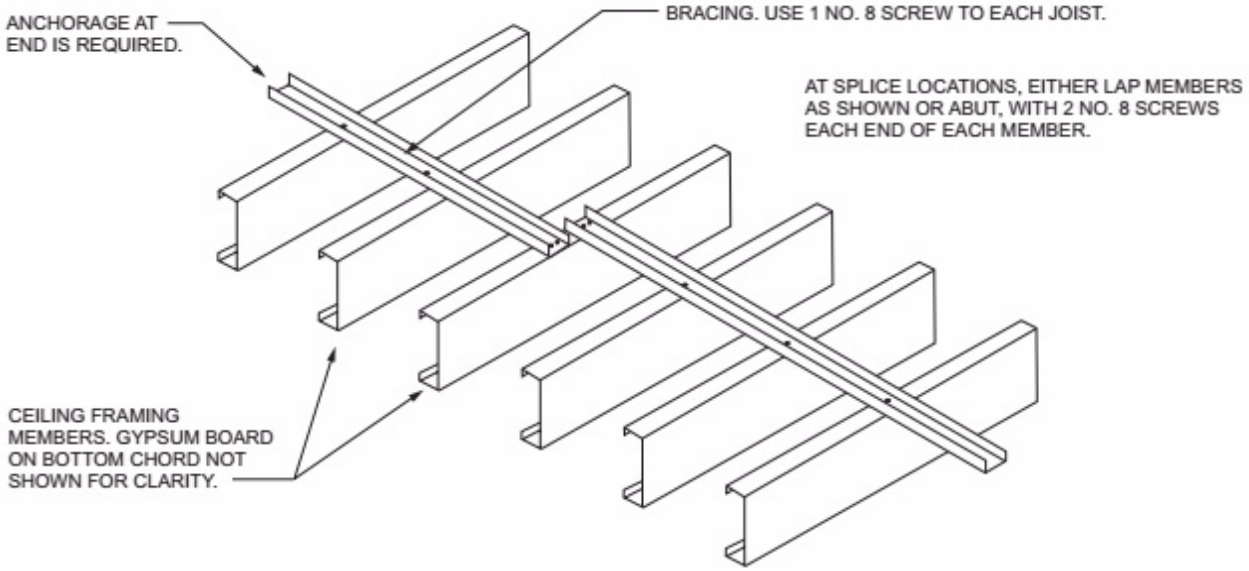
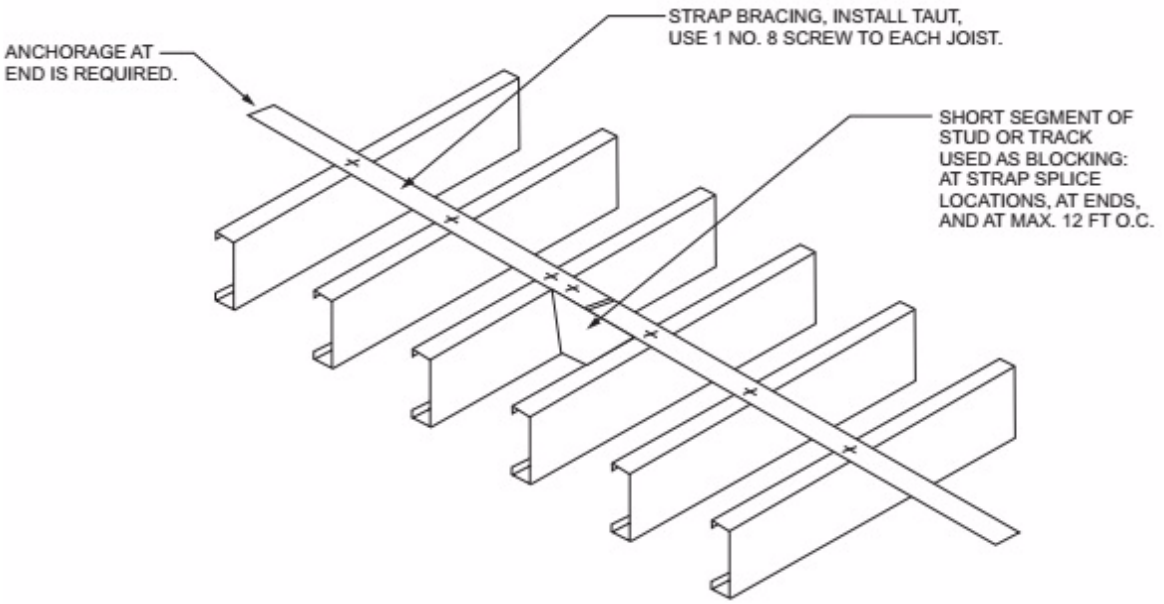


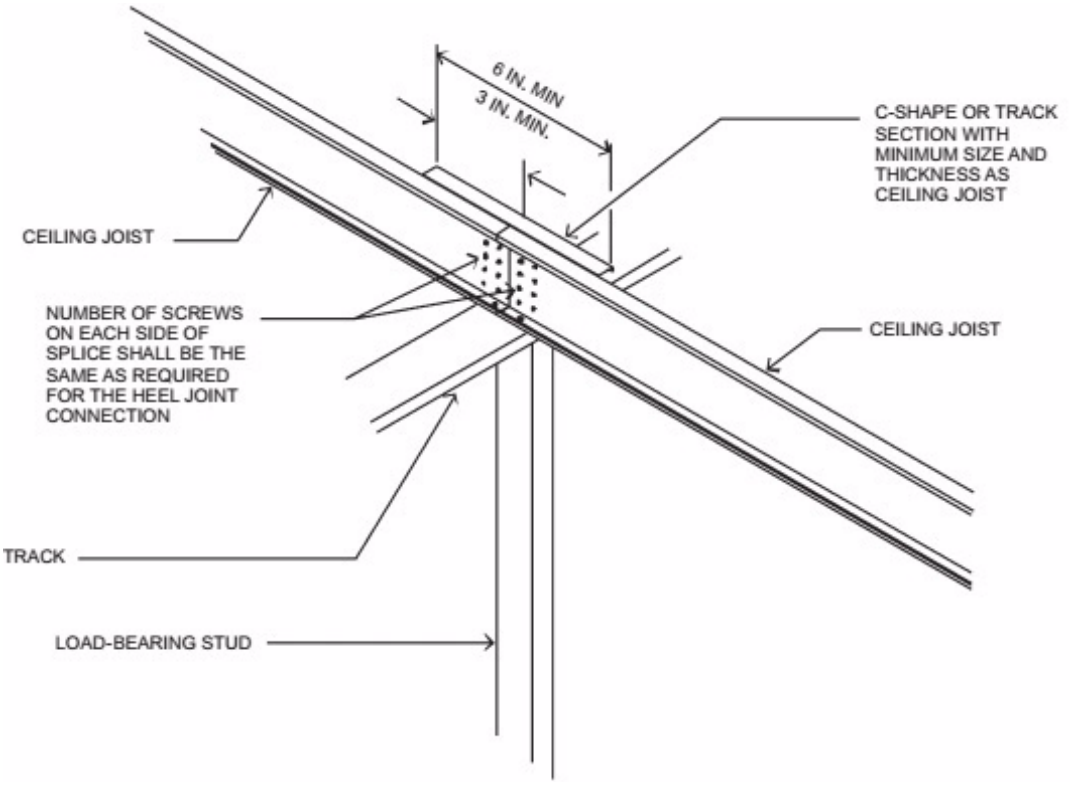
FIGURE 804.3.1.3(1)
CEILING JOIST TOP FLANGE BRACING WITH C-SHAPED, TRACK OR COLD-ROLLED CHANNEL



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 804.3.1.3(2)
CEILING JOIST TOP FLANGE BRACING WITH CONTINUOUS STEEL STRAP AND BLOCKING

804.3.1.4 Ceiling joist splicing. Splices in ceiling joists shall be permitted, if ceiling joist splices are supported at interior bearing points and are constructed in accordance with Figure 804.3.1.4. The number of screws on each side of the splice shall be the same as required for the heel joint connection in Table 804.3.1.1(3).



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 804.3.1.4
SPLICED CEILING JOISTS

804.3.2 Roof rafters. Cold-formed steel roof rafters shall be in accordance with this section.

804.3.2.1 Minimum roof rafter sizes. Roof rafter size and thickness shall be determined in accordance with the limits set forth in Table 804.3.2.1(1) based on the horizontal projection of the roof rafter span. For determination of roof rafter sizes, reduction of roof spans shall be permitted where a roof rafter support brace is installed in accordance with Section 804.3.2.2. The reduced roof rafter span shall be taken as the larger of the distances from the roof rafter support brace to the ridge or to the heel measured horizontally.

For the purpose of determining roof rafter sizes in Table 804.3.2.1(1), ultimate design wind speeds shall be converted to equivalent ground snow

loads in accordance with Table 804.3.2.1(2). Roof rafter sizes shall be based on the higher of the ground snow load or the equivalent snow load converted from the ultimate design wind speed.

TABLE 804.3.2.1(1)
ROOF RAFTER SPANS[a, b, c, d]

MEMBER DESIGNATION	ALLOWABLE SPAN MEASURED HORIZONTALLY (feet - inches)							
	Ground snow load (psf)							
	20		30		50		70	
	Rafter spacing (inches)							
	16	24	16	24	16	24	16	24
550S162-33	13’-11”	11’-4”	11’-9”	9’-7”	9’-5”	7’-8”	8’-1”	6’-7”
550S162-43	15’-9”	13’-8”	14’-3”	11’-8”	11’-4”	9’-3”	9’-9”	7’-11”
550S162-54	16’-11”	14’-10”	15’-3”	13’-4”	13’-3”	11’-7”	12’-0”	10’-6”
550S162-68	18’-2”	15’-10”	16’-5”	14’-4”	14’-3”	12’-5”	12’-11”	11’-3”
800S162-33	16’-4”	13’-4”	13’-11”	11’-4”	11’-1”	9’-0”	9’-6”	6’-7”
800S162-43	19’-7”	16’-0”	16’-8”	13’-7”	13’-4”	10’-10”	11’-5”	9’-4”
800S162-54	22’-9”	19’-11”	20’-7”	17’-11”	17’-10”	4’-9”	15’-6”	12’-7”
800S162-68	24’-7”	21’-6”	22’-2”	19’-5”	19’-3”	16’-10”	17’-5”	14’-8”
1000S162-43	22’-2”	18’-1”	18’-10”	15’-4”	15’-1”	12’-4”	12’-11”	10’-7”
1000S162-54	27’-1”	23’-8”	24’-6”	20’-9”	20’-5”	16’-8”	17’-6”	14’-3”
1000S162-68	29’-5”	25’-8”	26’-6”	23’-2”	23’-0”	19’-6”	20’-6”	16’-9”
1200S162-54	31’-3”	27’-0”	28’-1”	22’-11”	22’-6”	18’-4”	19’-4”	15’-9”
1200S162-68	34’-0”	29’-8”	30’-8”	26’-9”	26’-6”	21’-7”	22’-8”	18’-6”

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Table provides maximum horizontal rafter spans in feet and inches for slopes between 3:12 and 12:12.

b. Deflection criteria: L/240 for live loads and L/180 for total loads.

c. Roof dead load = 12 psf.

d. Grade 33 ksi steel is permitted to be used for 33 mil and 43 mil thicknesses. Grade 50 ksi steel shall be used for 54 and 68 mil thicknesses.

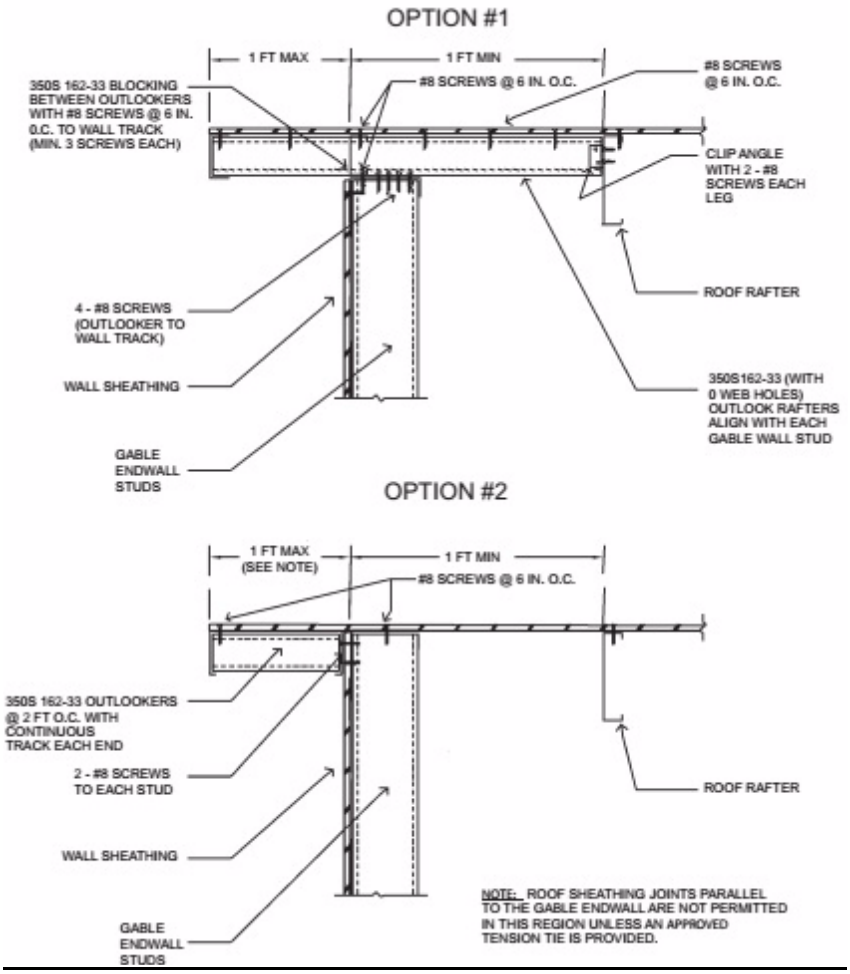
TABLE 804.3.2.1(2)
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED TO EQUIVALENT SNOW LOAD CONVERSION

ULTIMATE WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE		EQUIVALENT GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf)									
		Roof slope									
Exposure	Wind speed (mph)	3:12	4:12	5:12	6:12	7:12	8:12	9:12	10:12	11:12	12:12
B	115	20	20	20	20	30	20	30	30	30	50
	120	20	20	20	20	30	30	30	30	30	50
	130	20	20	20	20	30	30	30	50	50	50
	<140	20	20	20	20	30	50	50	50	50	50
C	115	20	20	20	20	30	30	30	50	50	50
	120	20	20	20	20	30	30	50	50	50	50
	130	20	20	20	30	30	50	50	50	50	70
	<140	30	30	30	50	50	50	70	70	70	—

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

804.3.2.1.1 Eave overhang. Eave overhangs shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) measured horizontally.

804.3.2.1.2 Rake overhangs. Rake overhangs shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) measured horizontally. Outlookers at gable endwalls shall be installed in accordance with Figure 804.3.2.1.2.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

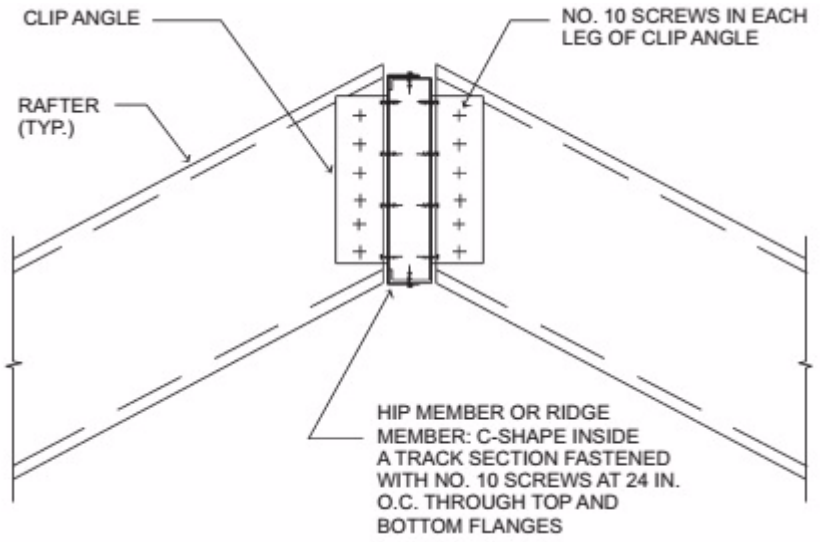
FIGURE 804.3.2.1.2
GABLE ENDWALL OVERHANG DETAILS

804.3.2.2 Roof rafter support brace. Where used to reduce roof rafter spans in determining roof rafter sizes, a roof rafter support brace shall meet all of the following conditions:

1. Minimum 350S162-33 C-shaped brace member with maximum length of 8 feet (2438 mm).
2. Minimum brace member slope of 45 degrees (0.785 rad) to the horizontal.
3. Minimum connection of brace to a roof rafter and ceiling joist with four No.10 screws at each end.
4. Maximum 6 inches (152 mm) between brace/ceiling joist connection and load-bearing wall below.
5. Each roof rafter support brace greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) in length, shall be braced with a supplemental brace having a minimum size of 350S162-33 or 350T162-33 such that the maximum unsupported length of the roof rafter support brace is 4 feet (1219 mm). The supplemental brace shall be continuous and shall be connected to each roof rafter support brace using two No. 8 screws.

804.3.2.3 Roof rafter splice. Roof rafters shall not be spliced.

804.3.2.4 Roof rafter to ceiling joist and ridge member connection. Roof rafters shall be connected to a parallel ceiling joist to form a continuous tie between exterior walls in accordance with Figure 804.3.1.1 and Table 804.3.1.1(3). Ceiling joists shall be connected to the top track of the load-bearing wall in accordance with Table 804.3, either with the required number of No. 10 screws applied through the flange of the ceiling joist or by using a 54-mil (1.37 mm) clip angle with the required number of No.10 screws in each leg. Roof rafters shall be connected to a ridge member with a minimum 2-inch by 2-inch (51 mm by 51 mm) clip angle fastened with No. 10 screws to the ridge member in accordance with Figure 804.3.2.4 and Table 804.3.2.4. The clip angle shall have a steel thickness equivalent to or greater than the roof rafter thickness and shall extend the depth of the roof rafter member to the extent possible. The ridge member shall be fabricated from a C-shaped member and a track section that shall have a minimum size and steel thickness equivalent to or greater than that of adjacent roof rafters and shall be installed in accordance with Figure 804.3.2.4. The ridge member shall extend the full depth of the sloped roof rafter cut.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 804.3.2.4
RIDGE MEMBER CONNECTION

TABLE 804.3.2.4
SCREWS REQUIRED AT EACH LEG OF CLIP ANGLE FOR ROOF RAFTER TO RIDGE MEMBER CONNECTION[a]

BUILDING WIDTH (feet)	NUMBER OF SCREWS Ground snow load (psf)			
	0 to 20	21 to 30	31 to 50	51 to 70
24	2	2	3	4
28	2	3	4	5
32	2	3	4	5
36	3	3	5	6
40	3	4	5	7

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Screws shall be No. 10 minimum.

804.3.2.5 Roof rafter bottom flange bracing. The bottom flanges of roof rafters shall be continuously braced, at a maximum spacing of 8 feet (2440 mm) as measured parallel to the roof rafters, with one of the following members:

1. Minimum 33-mil (0.84 mm) C-shaped member.
2. Minimum 33-mil (0.84 mm) track section.
3. Minimum $1^1/_2$-inch by 33-mil (38 mm by 0.84 mm) steel strap.

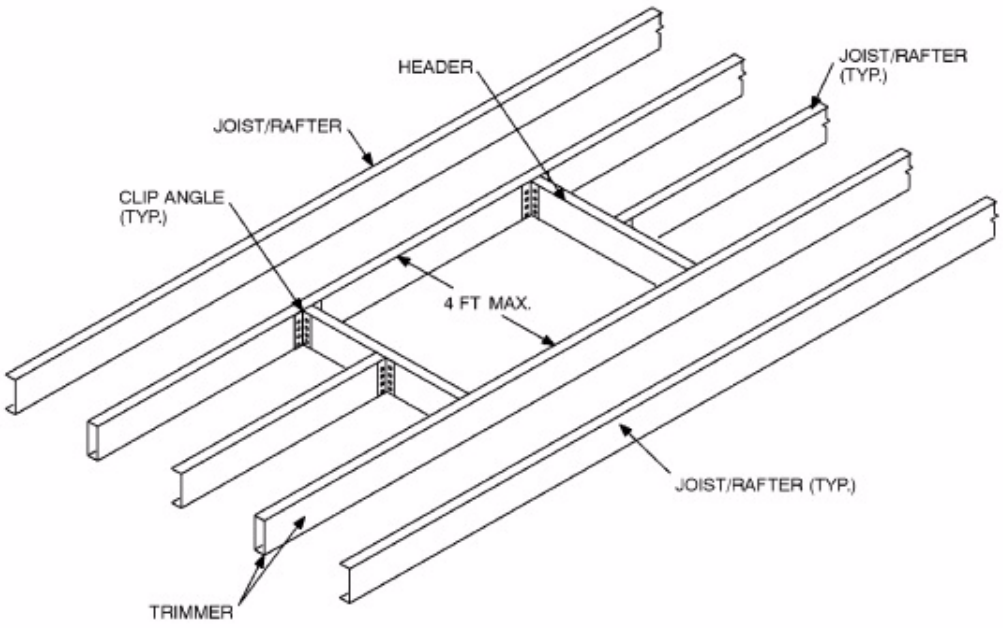
The bracing element shall be fastened to the bottom flange of each roof rafter with one No. 8 screw and shall be fastened to blocking with two No.

8 screws. Blocking shall be installed between roof rafters in-line with the continuous bracing at a maximum spacing of 12 feet (3658 mm) measured perpendicular to the roof rafters. The ends of continuous bracing shall be fastened to blocking or anchored to a stable building component with two No. 8 screws.

804.3.3 Cutting and notching. Flanges and lips of load-bearing, cold-formed steel roof framing members shall not be cut or notched.

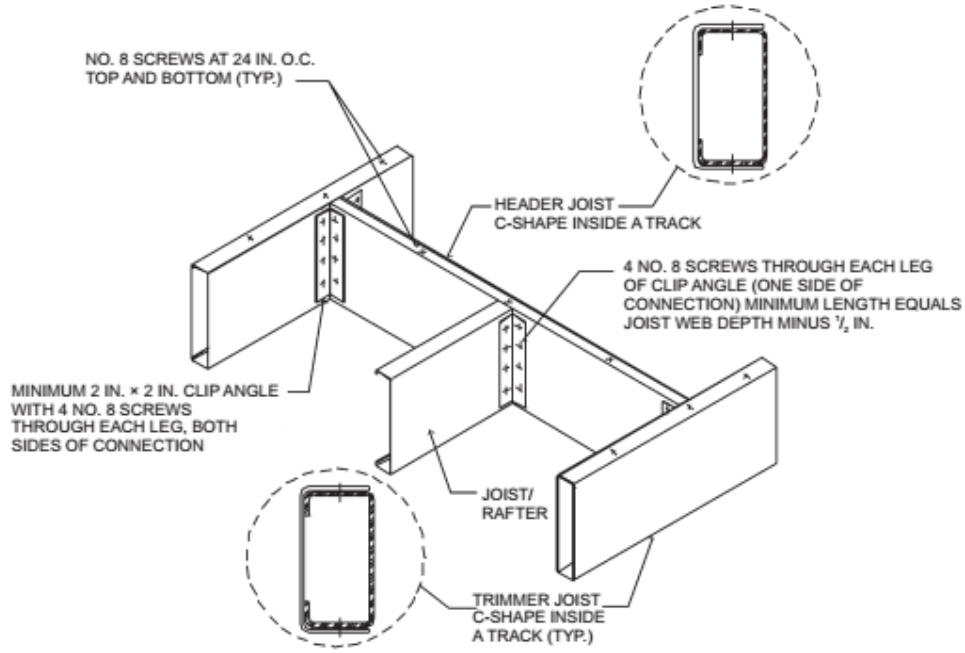
804.3.4 Headers. Roof-ceiling framing above wall openings shall be supported on headers. The allowable spans for headers in load-bearing walls shall not exceed the values set forth in Section 603.6 and Tables 603.6(1) through 603.6(6).

804.3.5 Framing of openings in roofs and ceilings. Openings in roofs and ceilings shall be framed with header and trimmer joists. Header joist spans shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) in length. Header and trimmer joists shall be fabricated from joist and track members having a minimum size and thickness equivalent to the adjacent ceiling joists or roof rafters and shall be installed in accordance with Figures 804.3.5(1) and 804.3.5(2). Each header joist shall be connected to trimmer joists with not less than four 2-inch by 2-inch (51 by 51 mm) clip angles. Each clip angle shall be fastened to both the header and trimmer joists with four No. 8 screws, evenly spaced, through each leg of the clip angle. The steel thickness of the clip angles shall be not less than that of the ceiling joist or roof rafter. Each track section for a built-up header or trimmer joist shall extend the full length of the joist (continuous).



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 804.3.5(1)
ROOF OR CEILING OPENING



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 804.3.5(2)
HEADER TO TRIMMER CONNECTION

804.3.6 Roof trusses. Cold-formed steel trusses shall be designed and installed in accordance with AISI S240. In the absence of specific bracing requirements, trusses shall be braced in accordance with accepted industry practices, such as the "SBCA *Cold-Formed Steel Building Component Safety Information (CFSBCSI) Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing & Bracing of Cold-Formed Steel Trusses"*. Trusses shall be connected to the top track of the load-bearing wall in accordance with Table 804.3, either with two No. 10 screws applied through the flange of the truss or by using a 54-mil (1.37 mm) clip angle with two No. 10 screws in each leg.

804.3.7 Ceiling and roof diaphragms. Ceiling and roof diaphragms shall be in accordance with this section.

804.3.7.1 Ceiling diaphragms. At gable endwalls a ceiling diaphragm shall be provided by attaching a minimum $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board or a minimum $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) wood structural panel sheathing, that complies with Section 803, to the bottom of ceiling joists or roof trusses and connected to wall framing in accordance with Figures 804.3.7.1(1) and 804.3.7.1(2), unless studs are designed as full height without bracing at the ceiling. Flat blocking shall consist of C-shaped or track section with a minimum thickness of 33 mils (0.84 mm). For a gypsum board sheathed ceiling, the diaphragm length shall be in accordance with Table 804.3.7.1. For a wood structural panel sheathed ceiling, the diaphragm length shall be not less than 12 feet (3658 mm) for building widths less than 36 feet (10 973 mm), or not less than 14 feet (4267 mm) for building widths greater than or equal to 36 feet (10 973 mm).

The ceiling diaphragm shall be secured with screws spaced at a maximum 6 inches (152 mm) o.c. at panel edges and a maximum 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. in the field. The required lengths in Table 804.3.7.1 for gypsum board sheathed ceiling diaphragms shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.35 if all panel edges are blocked. Multiplying the required lengths in Table 804.3.7.1 for gypsum board sheathed ceiling diaphragms by 0.9 shall be permitted if all panel edges are secured with screws spaced at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.

TABLE 804.3.7.1
REQUIRED LENGTHS FOR CEILING DIAPHRAGMS AT GABLE ENDWALLS
GYPSUM BOARD SHEATHED, CEILING HEIGHT = 8 FEET[a, b, c, d, e, f, g]

EXPOSURE CATEGORY		ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED (mph)					
B		115	120	130	< 140	—	—
C		—	—	115	120	130	< 140
Roof pitch	Building endwall width (feet)	Minimum diaphragm length (feet)					
3:12 to 6:12	24 - 28	16	18	24	26	30	34
	> 28 - 32	20	20	26	32	34	40
	> 32 - 36	24	26	30	36	42	46
	> 36 - 40	26	28	36	40	48	52
6:12 to 9:12	> 24 - 28	20	20	26	30	34	38
	> 28 - 32	24	26	30	36	42	46
	> 32 - 36	26	30	38	42	48	54
	> 36 - 40	30	34	40	50	56	62
9:12 to 12:12	> 24 - 28	22	24	30	34	38	44
	> 28 - 32	26	28	36	40	46	52
	> 32 - 36	30	32	40	48	54	62
	> 36 - 40	36	38	48	56	64	72

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

a. Ceiling diaphragm is composed of 1/2-inch gypsum board (min. thickness) secured with screws spaced at 6 inches o.c. at panel edges and 12 inches o.c. infield. Use No. 8 screws (min.) where framing members have a designation thickness of 54 mils or less and No. 10 screws (min.) where framing members have a designation thickness greater than 54 mils.

b. Maximum aspect ratio (length/width) of diaphragms is 2:1.

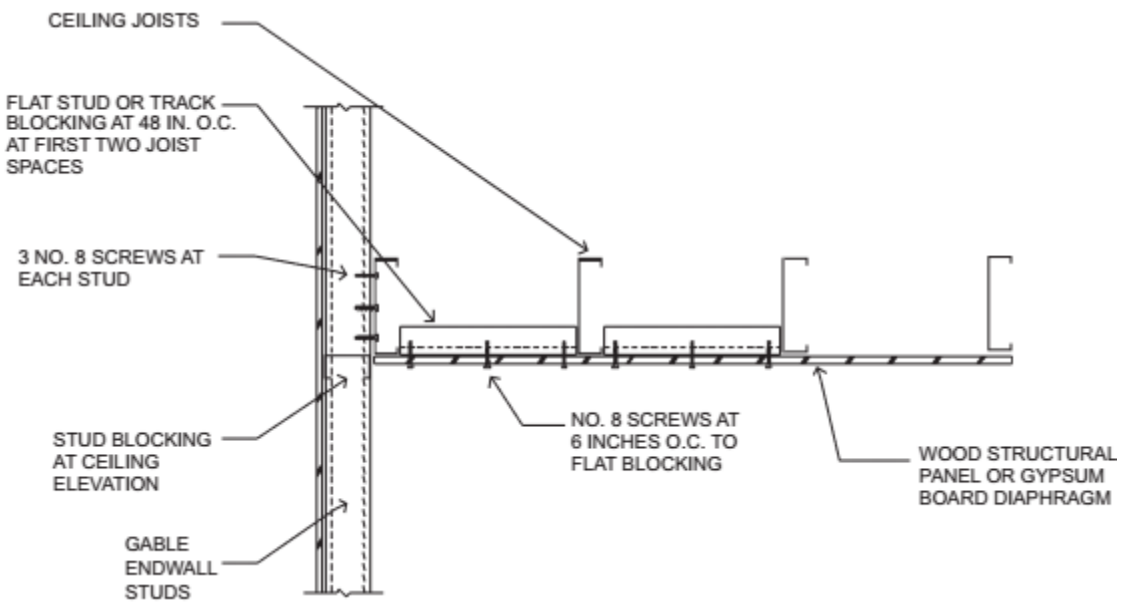
c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Required diaphragm lengths are to be provided at each end of the structure.

e. Multiplying required diaphragm lengths by 0.35 is permitted if all panel edges are blocked.

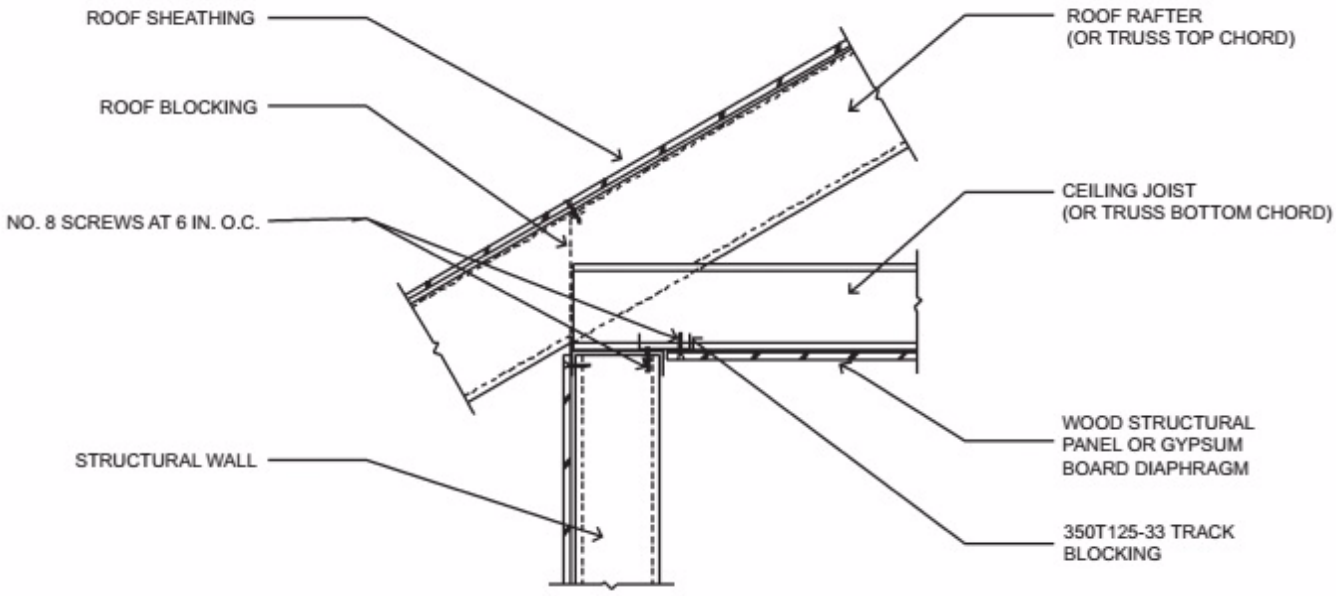
f. Multiplying required diaphragm lengths by 0.9 is permitted if all panel edges are secured with screws spaced at 4 inches o.c.

g. To determine the minimum diaphragm length for buildings with ceiling heights of 9 feet or 10 feet values in this table shall be multiplied by 1.15.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

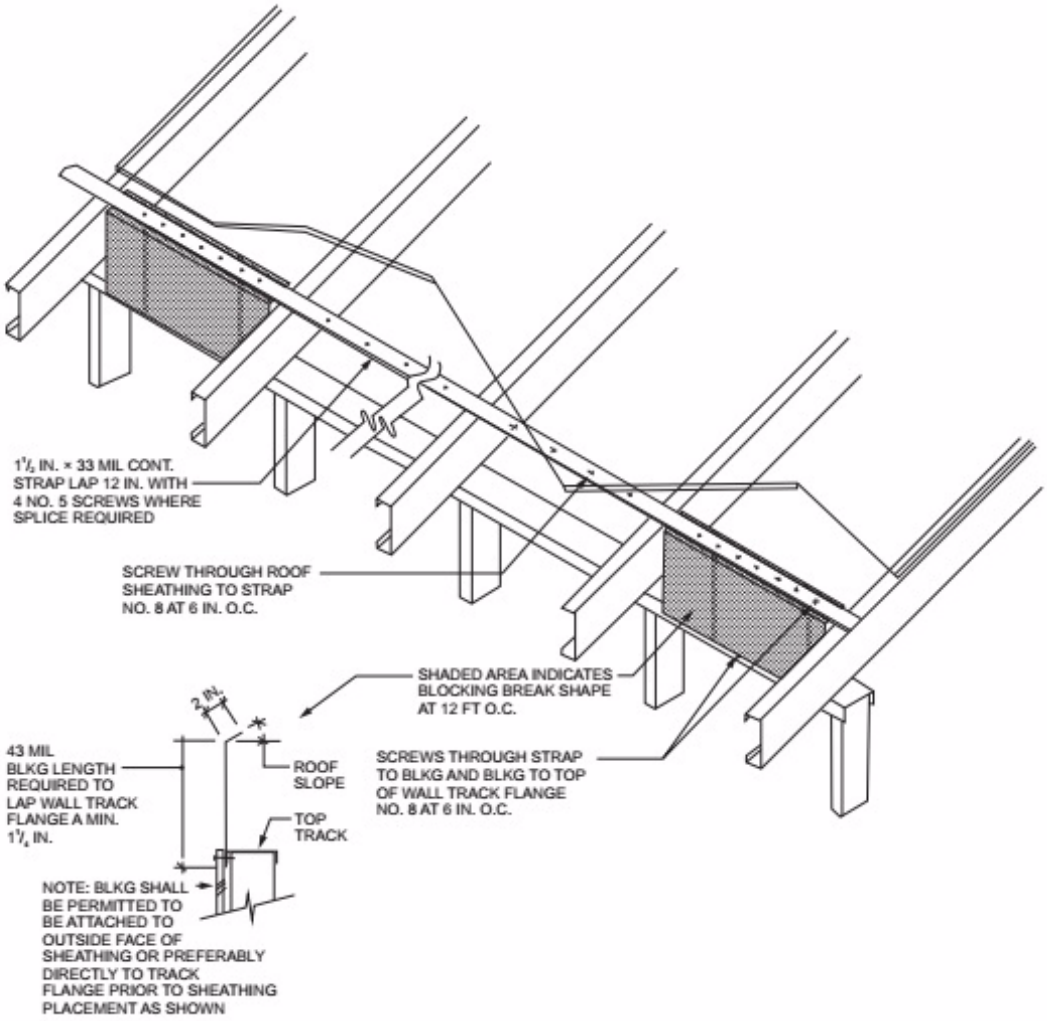
FIGURE 804.3.7.1(1)
CEILING DIAPHRAGM TO GABLE ENDWALL DETAIL



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 804.3.7.1(2)
CEILING DIAPHRAGM TO SIDEWALL DETAIL

804.3.7.2 Roof diaphragm. A roof diaphragm shall be provided by attaching not less than $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (9.5 mm) wood structural panel that complies with Section 803 to roof rafters or truss top chords in accordance with Table 804.3. Buildings with 3:1 or larger plan aspect ratio and with roof rafter slope (pitch) of 9:12 or larger shall have the roof rafters and ceiling joists blocked in accordance with Figure 804.3.7.2.



For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 804.3.7.2
ROOF BLOCKING DETAIL

804.3.8 Roof tie-down. Roof assemblies shall be connected to walls below in accordance with Table 804.3. A continuous load path shall be provided to transfer uplift loads to the foundation.

SECTION 805
CEILING FINISHES

805.1 Ceiling installation. Ceilings shall be installed in accordance with the requirements for interior wall finishes as provided in Section 702.

SECTION 806
ROOF VENTILATION

806.1 Ventilation required. Enclosed attics and enclosed rafter spaces formed where ceilings are applied directly to the underside of roof rafters shall have cross ventilation for each separate space by ventilating openings protected against the entrance of rain or snow. Ventilation openings shall have a least dimension of $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) minimum and $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) maximum. Ventilation openings having a least dimension larger than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) shall be provided with corrosion-resistant wire cloth screening, hardware cloth, perforated vinyl or similar material with openings having a least dimension of $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) minimum and $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) maximum. Openings in roof framing members shall conform to the requirements of Section 802.7. Required ventilation openings shall open directly to the outside air and shall be protected to prevent the entry of birds, rodents, snakes and other similar creatures.

806.2 Minimum vent area. The minimum net free ventilating area shall be $^1/_{150}$ of the area of the vented space.

Exception: The minimum net free ventilation area shall be $^1/_{300}$ of the vented space provided both of the following conditions are met:

1. *Deleted.*
2. Not less than 40 percent and not more than 50 percent of the required ventilating area is provided by ventilators located in the upper portion of the attic or rafter space. Upper ventilators shall be located not more than 3 feet (914 mm) below the ridge or highest point of the space, measured vertically. The balance of the required ventilation provided shall be located in the bottom one-third of the attic space. Where the location of wall or roof framing members conflicts with the installation of upper ventilators, installation more than 3 feet (914 mm) below the ridge or highest point of the space shall be permitted.

806.3 Vent and insulation clearance. Where eave or cornice vents are installed, blocking, bridging and insulation shall not block the free flow of air. Not less than a 1-inch (25 mm) space shall be provided between the insulation and the roof sheathing and at the location of the vent.

806.4 Installation and weather protection. Ventilators shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Installation of ventilators in roof systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 903. Installation of ventilators in wall systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 703.1.

806.5 Unvented attic and unvented enclosed rafter assemblies. Unvented attics and unvented enclosed roof framing assemblies created by ceilings that are applied directly to the underside of the roof framing members and structural roof sheathing applied directly to the top of the roof framing members/rafters, shall be permitted where all the following conditions are met:

1. The unvented attic space is completely within the building thermal envelope.
2. Interior Class I vapor retarders are not installed on the ceiling side (attic floor) of the unvented attic assembly or on the ceiling side of the unvented enclosed roof framing assembly.
3. Where wood shingles or shakes are used, a minimum $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) vented airspace separates the shingles or shakes and the roofing underlayment above the structural sheathing.
4. In Climate Zones 5, any air-impermeable insulation shall be a Class II vapor retarder, or shall have a Class II vapor retarder coating or covering in direct contact with the underside of the insulation.
5. Insulation shall comply with Item 5.3 and Item 5.1:
    - 5.1. Item 5.1.1, 5.1.2, 5.1.3 or 5.1.4 shall be met, depending on the air permeability of the insulation directly under the structural roof sheathing.
        - 5.1.1. Where only air-impermeable insulation is provided, it shall be applied in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing.
        - 5.1.2. Where air-permeable insulation is installed directly below the structural sheathing, rigid board or sheet insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing in accordance with the *R*-values in Table 806.5 for condensation control.

5.1.3. Where both air-impermeable and air-permeable insulation are provided, the air-impermeable insulation shall be applied in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing in accordance with Item 5.1.1 and shall be in accordance with the *R*-values in Table 806.5 for condensation control. The air-permeable insulation shall be installed directly under the air-impermeable insulation.

5.1.4. Alternatively, sufficient rigid board or sheet insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing to maintain the monthly average temperature of the underside of the structural roof sheathing above 45°F (7°C). For calculation purposes, an interior air temperature of 68°F (20°C) is assumed and the exterior air temperature is assumed to be the monthly average outside air temperature of the three coldest months.

5.2. *Deleted.*

5.2.1. *Deleted.*

5.2.2. *Deleted.*

5.2.3. *Deleted.*

5.2.4. *Deleted.*

5.2.5. *Deleted.*

5.2.6. *Deleted.*

5.2.7. *Deleted.*

5.2.8. *Deleted.*

5.2.9. *Deleted.*

5.2.10. *Deleted.*

5.3. Where preformed insulation board is used as the air-impermeable insulation layer, it shall be sealed at the perimeter of each individual sheet interior surface to form a continuous layer.

TABLE 806.5
INSULATION FOR CONDENSATION CONTROL

CLIMATE ZONE	MINIMUM RIGID BOARD ON AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION *R*-VALUE[a, b]
4	R-15
5	R-20

a. Contributes to but does not supersede the requirements in Section N1102.

b. Alternatively, sufficient continuous insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing to maintain the monthly average temperature of the underside of the structural roof sheathing above 45°F (7°C). For calculation purposes, an interior air temperature of 68°F (20°C) is assumed and the exterior air temperature is assumed to be the monthly average outside air temperature of the three coldest months.

SECTION 807
ATTIC ACCESS

807.1 Attic access. Buildings with combustible ceiling or roof construction shall have an attic access opening to attic areas that have a vertical height of 30 inches (762 mm) or greater over an area of not less than 30 square feet (2.8 m^2). The vertical height shall be measured from the top of the ceiling framing members to the underside of the roof framing members.

The rough-framed opening shall be not less than 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm) and shall be located in a hallway or other location with ready access. Where located in a wall, the opening shall be not less than 22 inches wide by 30 inches high (559 mm wide by 762 mm high). Where the access is located in a ceiling, minimum unobstructed headroom in the attic space shall be 30 inches (762 mm) at some point above the access measured vertically from the bottom of ceiling framing members. See Section 1305.1.3 for access requirements where mechanical equipment is located in attics.

Replaces:	4101:8-8-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013

4101:8-9-01 Roof assemblies.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 901
GENERAL

901.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the design, materials, construction and quality of roof assemblies.

SECTION 902
FIRE CLASSIFICATION

902.1 Roofing covering materials. Roofs shall be covered with materials as set forth in Sections 904 and 905. Class A, B or C roofing shall be installed in jurisdictions designated by law as requiring their use or where the edge of the roof is less than 3 feet (914 mm) from a lot line. Class A, B and C roofing required by this section to be listed shall be tested in accordance with UL 790 or ASTM E108.

Exceptions:

1. Class A roof assemblies include those with coverings of brick, masonry and exposed concrete roof deck.
2. Class A roof assemblies include ferrous or copper shingles or sheets, metal sheets and shingles, clay or concrete roof tile, or slate installed on noncombustible decks.
3. Class A roof assemblies include minimum 16 ounces per square foot copper sheets installed over combustible decks.
4. Class A roof assemblies include slate installed over underlayment over combustible decks.

902.2 Fire-retardant-treated shingles and shakes. Fire-retardant-treated wood shakes and shingles shall be treated by impregnation with chemicals by the full-cell vacuum-pressure process, in accordance with AWPA C1. Each bundle shall be marked to identify the manufactured unit and the manufacturer, and shall be labeled to identify the classification of the material in accordance with the testing required in Section 902.1, the treating company and the quality control agency.

902.3 Building-integrated photovoltaic product. Building-integrated photovoltaic products installed as the roof covering shall be tested, listed and labeled for fire classification in accordance with Section 902.1.

902.4 Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel systems. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel systems installed on or above the roof covering shall be tested, listed and identified with a fire classification in accordance with UL 1703 and UL 2703. Class A, B or C photovoltaic panel systems and modules shall be installed in jurisdictions designated by law as requiring their use or where the edge of the roof is less than 3 feet (914 mm) from a lot line.

SECTION 903
WEATHER PROTECTION

903.1 General. Roof decks shall be covered with approved roof coverings secured to the building or structure in accordance with the provisions of this chapter. Roof assemblies shall be designed and installed in accordance with this code and the approved manufacturer's instructions such that the roof assembly shall serve to protect the building or structure.

903.2 Flashing. Flashings shall be installed in a manner that prevents moisture from entering the wall and roof through joints in copings, through moisture permeable materials and at intersections with parapet walls and other penetrations through the roof plane.

903.2.1 Locations. Flashings shall be installed at wall and roof intersections, wherever there is a change in roof slope or direction and around roof openings. A flashing shall be installed to divert the water away from where the eave of a sloped roof intersects a vertical sidewall. Where flashing is of metal, the metal shall be corrosion resistant with a thickness of not less than 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet).

903.2.2 Crickets and saddles. A cricket or saddle shall be installed on the ridge side of any chimney or penetration more than 30 inches (762 mm) wide as measured perpendicular to the slope. Cricket or saddle coverings shall be sheet metal or of the same material as the roof covering.

Exception: Unit skylights installed in accordance with Section R308.6 and flashed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions shall be permitted to be installed without a cricket or saddle.

903.3 Coping. Parapet walls shall be properly coped with noncombustible, weatherproof materials of a width not less than the thickness of the parapet wall.

903.4 Roof drainage. Unless roofs are sloped to drain over roof edges, roof drains shall be installed at each low point of the roof.

903.4.1 Secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers. Where roof drains are required, secondary emergency overflow roof drains or scuppers shall be provided where the roof perimeter construction extends above the roof in such a manner that water will be entrapped if the primary drains allow buildup for any reason. Overflow drains having the same size as the roof drains shall be installed with the inlet flow line located 2 inches (51 mm) above the low point of the roof, or overflow scuppers having three times the size of the roof drains and having a minimum opening height of 4 inches (102 mm) shall be installed in the adjacent parapet walls with the inlet flow located 2 inches (51 mm) above the low point of the roof served. The installation and sizing of overflow drains, leaders and conductors shall comply with Sections 1106 and 1108 of the *plumbing code*, as applicable.

Overflow drains shall discharge to an approved location and shall not be connected to roof drain lines.

SECTION 904
MATERIALS

904.1 Scope. The requirements set forth in this section shall apply to the application of roof covering materials specified herein. Roof assemblies shall be applied in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Installation of roof assemblies shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 905.

904.2 Compatibility of materials. Roof assemblies shall be of materials that are compatible with each other and with the building or structure to which the materials are applied.

904.3 Material specifications and physical characteristics. Roof covering materials shall conform to the applicable standards listed in this chapter.

904.4 Product identification. Roof covering materials shall be delivered in packages bearing the manufacturer's identifying marks and approved testing agency labels required. Bulk shipments of materials shall be accompanied by the

same information issued in the form of a certificate or on a bill of lading by the manufacturer.

SECTION 905
REQUIREMENTS FOR ROOF COVERINGS

905.1 Roof covering application. Roof coverings shall be applied in accordance with the applicable provisions of this section and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Unless otherwise specified in this section, roof coverings shall be installed to resist the component and cladding loads specified in Table 301.2(2), adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table 301.2(3).

905.1.1 Underlayment. Underlayment for asphalt shingles, clay and concrete tile, metal roof shingles, mineral-surfaced roll roofing, slate and slate-type shingles, wood shingles, wood shakes, metal roof panels and photovoltaic shingles shall conform to the applicable standards listed in this chapter. Underlayment materials required to comply with ASTM D226, D1970, D4869 and D6757 shall bear a label indicating compliance to the standard designation and, if applicable, type classification indicated in Table 905.1.1(1). Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with Table 905.1.1(2). Underlayment shall be attached in accordance with Table 905.1.1(3).

Exceptions:

1. As an alternative, self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 installed in accordance with both the underlayment manufacturer's and roof covering manufacturer's instructions for the deck material, roof ventilation configuration and climate exposure for the roof covering to be installed, shall be permitted.
2. As an alternative, a minimum 4-inch-wide (102 mm) strip of self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen membrane complying with ASTM D1970, installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for the deck material, shall be applied over all joints in the roof decking. An approved underlayment for the applicable roof covering for maximum ultimate design wind speeds, V_{ult}, less than 140 miles per hour shall be applied over the entire roof over the 4-inch-wide (102 mm) membrane strips.
3. As an alternative, two layers of underlayment complying with ASTM D226 Type II or ASTM D4869 Type III or Type IV shall be permitted to be installed as follows in 3.1–3.4:
    3.1. Apply a 19-inch-wide (483 mm) strip of underlayment parallel with the eave. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide (914

mm) strips of underlayment felt, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches (483 mm). End laps shall be 4 inches (102 mm) and shall be offset by 6 feet (1829 mm).

3.2. The underlayment shall be attached with corrosion-resistant fasteners in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at side and end laps.

3.3. Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a nominal cap diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm). Metal caps shall have a thickness of not less than 32-gage sheet metal. Power-driven metal caps shall have a thickness of not less than 0.010 inch (0.25 mm). Minimum thickness of the outside edge of plastic caps shall be 0.035 inch (0.89 mm).

3.4. The cap nail shank shall be not less than 0.083 inch (2.11 mm) for ring shank cap nails and 0.091 inch (2.31 mm) for smooth shank cap nails. Cap nail shank shall have a length sufficient to penetrate through the roof sheathing or not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) into the roof sheathing.

TABLE 905.1.1(1)
UNDERLAYMENT TYPES

ROOF COVERING	SECTION	MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult} < 140 MPH	MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult} ≥ 140 MPH
Asphalt shingles	905.2	ASTM D226 Type I ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV ASTM D6757	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type III or Type IV ASTM D6757
Clay and concrete tile	905.3	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D2626 Type I ASTM D6380 Class M mineral-surfaced roll roofing	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D2626 Type I ASTM D6380 Class M mineral-surfaced roll roofing
Metal roof shingles	905.4	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type III or Type IV
Mineral-surfaced roll roofing	905.5	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type III or Type IV
Slate and slate-type shingles	905.6	ASTM D226 Type I ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type III or Type IV
Wood shingles	905.7	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type III or Type IV
Wood shakes	905.8	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type III or Type IV
Metal panels	905.10	Manufacturer's instructions	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type III or Type IV
Photovoltaic shingles	905.16	ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV ASTM D6757	ASTM D4869 Type III or Type IV ASTM D6757

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

TABLE R05.1.1(2)
UNDERLAYMENT APPLICATION

ROOF COVERING	SECTION	MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult} < 140 MPH	MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult} ≥140 MPH
Asphalt shingles	905.2	For roof slopes from two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12), up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), underlayment shall be two layers applied in the following manner: apply a 19-inch strip of underlayment felt parallel to and starting at the eaves. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide sheets of underlayment, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet. For roof slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater, underlayment shall be one layer applied in the following manner: underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave and lapped 2 inches, Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.	Same as Maximum Ultimate Design Wind Speed, V_{ult} < 140 mph except all laps shall be not less than 4 inches.
Clay and concrete tile	905.3	For roof slopes from two and one-half units vertical in 12 units horizontal ($2^1/_2$:12), up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), underlayment shall be not fewer than two layers applied as follows: starting at the eave, apply a 19-inch strip of underlayment parallel with the eave. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide strips of underlayment felt, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be off-set by 6 feet. For roof slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater, underlayment shall be not fewer than one layer of underlayment felt applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eaves and lapped 2 inches. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.	Same as Maximum Ultimate Design Wind Speed, Vult < 140 mph, except all laps shall be not less than 4 inches.

Metal roof shingles	905.4	Apply in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.	For roof slopes from two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12), up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), underlayment shall be two layers applied in the following manner: apply a 19-inch strip of underlayment felt parallel to and starting at the eaves. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide sheets of underlayment, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet. For roof slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater, underlayment shall be one layer applied in the following manner: under- layment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave and lapped 4 inches. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.
Mineral-surfaced roll roofing	905.5		
Slate and slate-type shingles	905.6		
Wood shingles	905.7		
Wood shakes	905.8		
Metal panels	905.10		
Photovoltaic shingles	905.16	For roof slopes from two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12), up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), underlayment shall be two layers applied in the following manner: apply a 19- inch strip of underlayment felt parallel to and starting at the eaves. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch- wide sheets of underlayment, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet. For roof slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater, underlayment shall be one layer applied in the following manner: underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave and lapped 2 inches. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.	Same as Maximum Ultimate Design Wind Speed, Vult < 140 mph, except all laps shall be not less than 4 inches.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

TABLE 905.1.1(3)
UNDERLAYMENT ATTACHMENT

ROOF COVERING	SECTION	MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult} < 140 MPH	MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult} > 140 MPH
Asphalt shingles	905.2	Fastened sufficiently to hold in place	The underlayment shall be attached with corrosion-resistant fasteners in a grid pattern of 12 inches between side laps with a 6-inch spacing at side and end laps. Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails or cap staples with a nominal cap diameter of not less than 1 inch. Metal caps shall have a thickness of not less than 32-gage sheet metal. Power-driven metal caps shall have a minimum thickness of 0.010 inch. Minimum thickness of the outside edge of plastic caps shall be 0.035 inch. The cap nail shank shall be not less than 0.083 inch for ring shank cap nails and 0.091 inch for smooth shank cap nails. Staples shall be not less than 21 gage. Cap nail shank and cap staple legs shall have a length sufficient to penetrate through the roof sheathing or not less than 3/ inch into the roof sheathing.
Clay and concrete tile	905.3		
Photovoltaic	905.16		
Metal roof shingles	905.4	Manufacturer's installation instructions.	The underlayment shall be attached with corrosion-resistant fasteners in a grid pattern of 12 inches between side laps with a 6-inch spacing at side and end laps. Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails or cap staples with a nominal cap diameter of not less than 1 inch. Metal caps shall have a thickness of not less than 32-gage sheet metal. Power-driven metal caps shall have a minimum thickness of 0.010 inch. Minimum thickness of the outside edge of plastic caps shall be 0.035 inch. The cap nail shank shall be not less than 0.083 inch for ring shank cap nails and 0.091 inch for smooth shank cap nails. Staples shall be not less than 21 gage. Cap nail shank and cap staple legs shall have a length sufficient to penetrate through the roof sheathing or not less than 3/ inch into the roof sheathing.
Mineral-surfaced roll roofing	905.5		
Slate and slate-type shingles	905.6		
Wood shingles	905.7		
Wood shakes	905.8		
Metal panels	905.10		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

905.1.2 Ice barriers. In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water as designated in Table 301.2(1), an ice barrier shall be installed for asphalt shingles, metal roof shingles, mineral-surfaced roll roofing, slate and slate-type shingles, wood shingles and wood shakes. The ice barrier shall consist of not fewer than two layers of underlayment cemented together, or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be used in place of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point not less than 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building. *The 24 inch measurement shall be along the slope of the roof from the point where the projected outside face of the wall intersects the roof deck.* On roofs with slope equal to or greater than eight units vertical in 12 units horizontal (67-percent slope), the ice barrier shall also be applied not less than 36 inches (914 mm) measured along the roof slope from the eave edge of the building.

Exception: Detached accessory structures *and roof assemblies terminating at a vertical wall over unconditioned floor areas*.

905.2 Asphalt shingles. The installation of asphalt shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

905.2.1 Sheathing requirements. Asphalt shingles shall be fastened to solidly sheathed decks.

905.2.2 Slope. Asphalt shingles shall be used only on roof slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) or greater. For roof slopes from two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), double underlayment application is required in accordance with Section 905.1.1.

905.2.3 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with Section 905.1.1.

905.2.4 Asphalt shingles. Asphalt shingles shall comply with ASTM D3462.

905.2.4.1 Wind resistance of asphalt shingles. Asphalt shingles shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D7158. Asphalt shingles shall meet the classification requirements of Table 905.2.4.1 for the appropriate ultimate design wind speed. Asphalt shingle packaging shall bear a label to indicate compliance with ASTM D7158 and the required classification in Table 905.2.4.1.

Exception: Asphalt shingles not included in the scope of ASTM D7158 shall be tested and labeled in accordance with ASTM D3161. Asphalt

shingle packaging shall bear a label to indicate compliance with ASTM D3161 and the required classification in Table 905.2.4.1.

TABLE 905.2.4.1
CLASSIFICATION OF ASPHALT ROOF SHINGLES

MAXIMUM ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{ult} FROM FIGURE 301.2(5)A (mph)	MAXIMUM BASIC WIND SPEED, V_{ASD} FROM TABLE 301.2.1.3 (mph)	ASTM D7158[a] SHINGLE CLASSIFICATION	ASTM D3161 SHINGLE CLASSIFICATION
110	85	D, G or H	A, D or F
116	90	D, G or H	A, D or F
129	100	G or H	A, D or F
142	110	G or H	F
155	120	G or H	F
168	130	H	F
181	140	H	F
194	150	H	F

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. The standard calculations contained in ASTM D7158 assume Exposure Category B or C and a building height of 60 feet or less. Additional calculations are required for conditions outside of these assumptions.

905.2.5 Fasteners. Fasteners for asphalt shingles shall be galvanized steel, stainless steel, aluminum or copper roofing nails, minimum 12-gage [0.105 inch (3 mm)] shank with a minimum $^3/_8$-inch-diameter (9.5 mm) head, complying with ASTM F1667, of a length to penetrate through the roofing materials and not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing. Where the roof sheathing is less than $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) thick, the fasteners shall penetrate through the sheathing.

905.2.6 Attachment. Asphalt shingles shall have the minimum number of fasteners required by the manufacturer's approved installation instructions, but not less than four fasteners per strip shingle or two fasteners per individual shingle. Where the roof slope exceeds 21 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21:12, 175-percent slope), shingles shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's approved installation instructions.

905.2.7 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 905.1.2.

905.2.8 Flashing. Flashing for asphalt shingles shall comply with this section and the asphalt shingle manufacturer's approved installation instructions.

905.2.8.1 Base and cap flashing. Base and cap flashing shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Base flashing shall be of either corrosion-resistant metal of minimum nominal 0.019-inch (0.5 mm)

thickness or mineral-surfaced roll roofing weighing not less than 77 pounds per 100 square feet (4 kg/m^2). Cap flashing shall be corrosion-resistant metal of minimum nominal 0.019-inch (0.5 mm) thickness.

905.2.8.2 Valleys. Valley linings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions before applying shingles. Valley linings of the following types shall be permitted:

1. For open valleys (valley lining exposed) lined with metal, the valley lining shall be not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and of any of the corrosion-resistant metals in Table 905.2.8.2.
2. For open valleys, valley lining of two plies of mineral-surfaced roll roofing, complying with ASTM D3909 or ASTM D6380 Class M, shall be permitted. The bottom layer shall be 18 inches (457 mm) and the top layer not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide.
3. For closed valleys (valley covered with shingles), valley lining of one ply of smooth roll roofing complying with ASTM D6380 and not less than 36 inches wide (914 mm) or valley lining as described in Item 1 or 2 shall be permitted. Self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted in lieu of the lining material.

TABLE 905.2.8.2
VALLEY LINING MATERIAL

MATERIAL	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)	GAGE	WEIGHT (pounds)
Cold-rolled copper	0.0216 nominal	—	ASTM B370, 16 oz. per square foot
Lead-coated copper	0.0216 nominal	—	ASTM B101, 16 oz. per square foot
High-yield copper	0.0162 nominal	—	ASTM B370, 12 oz. per square foot
Lead-coated high-yield copper	0.0162 nominal	—	ASTM B101, 12 oz. per square foot
Aluminum	0.024	—	—
Stainless steel	—	28	—
Galvanized steel	0.0179	26 (zinc coated G90)	—
Zinc alloy	0.027	—	—
Lead	—	—	$2^1/_2$
Painted terne	—	—	20

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

905.2.8.3 Sidewall flashing. Base flashing against a vertical sidewall shall be continuous or step flashing and shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm)

in height and 4 inches (102 mm) in width and shall direct water away from the vertical sidewall onto the roof or into the gutter. Where siding is provided on the vertical sidewall, the vertical leg of the flashing shall be continuous under the siding. Where anchored masonry veneer is provided on the vertical sidewall, the base flashing shall be provided in accordance with this section and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with Section 703.8.2.2. Where exterior plaster or adhered masonry veneer is provided on the vertical sidewall, the base flashing shall be provided in accordance with this section and Section 703.6.3.

905.2.8.4 Other flashing. Flashing against a vertical front wall, as well as soil stack, vent pipe and chimney flashing, shall be applied in accordance with the asphalt shingle manufacturer's printed instructions.

905.2.8.5 Drip edge. *Refer to Sections 903.1 and 905.1.*

905.3 Clay and concrete tile. The installation of clay and concrete tile shall comply with the provisions of this section.

905.3.1 Deck requirements. Concrete and clay tile shall be installed only over solid sheathing or spaced structural sheathing boards.

905.3.2 Deck slope. Clay and concrete roof tile shall be installed on roof slopes of two and one-half units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater. For roof slopes from two and one-half units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), double underlayment application is required in accordance with Section 905.3.3.

905.3.3 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with Section 905.1.1.

905.3.4 Clay tile. Clay roof tile shall comply with ASTM C1167.

905.3.5 Concrete tile. Concrete roof tile shall comply with ASTM C1492.

905.3.6 Fasteners. Nails shall be corrosion resistant and not less than 11-gage, $^{5}/_{16}$-inch (11 mm) head, and of sufficient length to penetrate the deck not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19 mm) or through the thickness of the deck, whichever is less. Attaching wire for clay or concrete tile shall not be smaller than 0.083 inch (2 mm). Perimeter fastening areas include three tile courses but not less than 36

inches (914 mm) from either side of hips or ridges and edges of eaves and gable rakes.

905.3.7 Application. Tile shall be applied in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions, based on the following:

1. Climatic conditions.
2. Roof slope.
3. Underlayment system.
4. Type of tile being installed.

Clay and concrete roof tiles shall be fastened in accordance with this section and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Perimeter tiles shall be fastened with not less than one fastener per tile. Tiles with installed weight less than 9 pounds per square foot (0.4 kg/m^2) require not less than one fastener per tile regardless of roof slope. Clay and concrete roof tile attachment shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions where applied in areas where the ultimate design wind speed exceeds 130 miles per hour (58 m/s) and on buildings where the roof is located more than 40 feet (12 192 mm) above grade. In areas subject to snow, not less than two fasteners per tile are required. In other areas, clay and concrete roof tiles shall be attached in accordance with Table 905.3.7.

TABLE 905.3.7
CLAY AND CONCRETE TILE ATTACHMENT

SHEATHING	ROOF SLOPE	NUMBER OF FASTENERS
Solid without battens	All	One per tile
Spaced or solid with battens and slope < 5:12	Fasteners not required	—
Spaced sheathing without battens	5:12 ≤ slope < 12:12	One per tile/ every other row
	12:12 ≤ slope < 24:12	One per tile

905.3.8 Flashing. At the juncture of roof vertical surfaces, flashing and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions and, where of metal, shall be not less than 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) corrosion-resistant metal. The valley flashing shall extend not less than 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way and have a splash diverter rib not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). For roof slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) and greater, valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment of one layer of Type

I underlayment running the full length of the valley, in addition to other required underlayment. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less, metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solid-cemented to the roofing underlayment for slopes less than seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or be of self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet.

905.4 Metal roof shingles. The installation of metal roof shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

905.4.1 Deck requirements. Metal roof shingles shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied to spaced sheathing.

905.4.2 Deck slope. Metal roof shingles shall not be installed on roof slopes below three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).

905.4.3 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with Section 905.1.1.

905.4.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 905.1.2.

905.4.4 Material standards. Metal roof shingle roof coverings shall comply with Table 905.10.3(1). The materials used for metal roof shingle roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or be made corrosion resistant in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses listed in Table 905.10.3(2).

905.4.5 Application. Metal roof shingles shall be secured to the roof in accordance with this chapter and the approved manufacturer's installation instructions.

905.4.6 Flashing. Roof valley flashing shall be of corrosion-resistant metal of the same material as the roof covering or shall comply with the standards in Table 905.10.3(1). The valley flashing shall extend not less than 8 inches (203 mm) from the centerline each way and shall have a splash diverter rib not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19 mm) in height at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). The metal valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment directly under it consisting of one layer of underlayment running the full length of the valley, in addition to underlayment required for metal roof shingles. In

areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less, the metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solid-cemented to the roofing underlayment for roof slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet.

905.5 Mineral-surfaced roll roofing. The installation of mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall comply with this section.

905.5.1 Deck requirements. Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall be fastened to solidly sheathed roofs.

905.5.2 Deck slope. Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall not be applied on roof slopes below one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope).

905.5.3 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with Section 905.1.1.

905.5.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 905.1.2.

905.5.4 Material standards. Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall conform to ASTM D3909 or ASTM D6380, Class M.

905.5.5 Application. Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions.

905.6 Slate shingles. The installation of slate shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

905.6.1 Deck requirements. Slate shingles shall be fastened to solidly sheathed roofs.

905.6.2 Deck slope. Slate shingles shall be used only on slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope) or greater.

905.6.3 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with Section 905.1.1.

905.6.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 905.1.2.

905.6.4 Material standards. Slate shingles shall comply with ASTM C406.

905.6.5 Application. Minimum headlap for slate shingles shall be in accordance with Table 905.6.5. Slate shingles shall be secured to the roof with two fasteners per slate. Slate shingles shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 905.6.5
SLATE SHINGLE HEADLAP

SLOPE	HEADLAP (inches)
4:12 ≤ slope < 8:12	4
8:12 ≤ slope < 20:12	3
Slope ≥ 20:12	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

905.6.6 Flashing. Flashing and counterflashing shall be made with sheet metal. Valley flashing shall be not less than 15 inches (381 mm) wide. Valley and flashing metal shall be a minimum uncoated thickness of 0.0179-inch (0.5 mm) zinc coated G90. Chimneys, stucco or brick walls shall have not less than two plies of felt for a cap flashing consisting of a 4-inch-wide (102 mm) strip of felt set in plastic cement and extending 1 inch (25 mm) above the first felt and a top coating of plastic cement. The felt shall extend 2 inches (51 mm) over the base flashing.

905.7 Wood shingles. The installation of wood shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

905.7.1 Deck requirements. Wood shingles shall be installed on solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners.

905.7.1.1 Solid sheathing required. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less, solid sheathing is required on that portion of the roof requiring the application of an ice barrier.

905.7.2 Deck slope. Wood shingles shall be installed on slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater.

905.7.3 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with Section 905.1.1.

905.7.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 905.1.2.

905.7.4 Material standards. Wood shingles shall be of naturally durable wood and comply with the requirements of Table 905.7.4.

TABLE 905.7.4
WOOD SHINGLE MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

MATERIAL	MINIMUM GRADES	APPLICABLE GRADING RULES
Wood shingles of naturally durable wood	1, 2 or 3	*Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau (*CSSB*)*

905.7.5 Application. Wood shingles shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions. Wood shingles shall be laid with a side lap not less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (38 mm) between joints in courses, and two joints shall not be in direct alignment in any three adjacent courses. Spacing between shingles shall be not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch to $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (6.4 mm to 9.5 mm). Weather exposure for wood shingles shall not exceed those set in Table 905.7.5(1). Fasteners for untreated (naturally durable) wood shingles shall be box nails in accordance with Table 905.7.5(2). Nails shall be stainless steel Type 304 or 316 or hot-dipped galvanized with a coating weight of ASTM A153 Class D (1.0 oz/ft^2). Alternatively, two 16-gage stainless steel Type 304 or 316 staples with crown widths $\frac{7}{16}$ inch (11.1 mm) minimum, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) maximum, shall be used. Fasteners installed within 15 miles (24 km) of saltwater coastal areas shall be stainless steel Type 316. Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated shingles in accordance with Section 902 or pressure-impregnated-preservative-treated shingles of naturally durable wood in accordance with AWPA U1 shall be stainless steel Type 316. Fasteners shall have a minimum penetration into the sheathing of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.1 mm). For sheathing less than $\frac{3}{4}$ inch in (19.1 mm) thickness, each fastener shall penetrate through the sheathing. Wood shingles shall be attached to the roof with two fasteners per shingle, positioned in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Fastener packaging shall bear a label indicating the appropriate grade material or coating weight.

TABLE 905.7.5(1)
WOOD SHINGLE WEATHER EXPOSURE AND ROOF SLOPE

ROOFING MATERIAL	LENGTH (inches)	GRADE	EXPOSURE (inches)	
			3:12 pitch to < 4:12	4:12 pitch or steeper
Shingles of naturally durable wood	16	No. 1	$3\frac{3}{4}$	5
		No. 2	$3\frac{1}{2}$	4
		No. 3	3	$3\frac{1}{2}$
	18	No. 1	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$

		No. 2	4	4 1/2
		No. 3	3 1/2	4
	24	No. 1	5 3/4	7 1/2
		No. 2	5 1/2	6 1/2
		No. 3	5	5 1/2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE 905.7.5(2)
NAIL REQUIREMENTS FOR WOOD SHAKES AND WOOD SHINGLES

SHAKES	NAIL TYPE AND MINIMUM LENGTH	MINIMUM HEAD SIZE	MINIMUM SHANK DIAMETER
18" straight-split	5d box 1 3/4"	0.19"	.080"
18" and 24" handsplit and resawn	6d box 2"	0.19"	.0915"
24" taper-split	5d box 1 3/4"	0.19"	.080"
18" and 24" tapersawn	6d box 2"	0.19"	.0915"
Shingles	**Nail Type and Minimum Length**	**Minimum Head Size**	**Minimum Shank Diameter**
16" and 18"	3d box 1 1/4"	0.19"	.080"
24"	4d box 1 1/2"	0.19"	.080"

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

905.7.6 Valley flashing. Roof flashing shall be not less than No. 26 gage [0.019 inches (0.5 mm)] corrosion-resistant sheet metal and shall extend 10 inches (254 mm) from the centerline each way for roofs having slopes less than 12 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (100-percent slope), and 7 inches (178 mm) from the centerline each way for slopes of 12 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (100-percent slope) and greater. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

905.7.7 Label required. Each bundle of shingles shall be identified by a label of an approved grading or inspection bureau or agency.

905.8 Wood shakes. The installation of wood shakes shall comply with the provisions of this section.

905.8.1 Deck requirements. Wood shakes shall be used only on solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners. Where 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) spaced sheathing is installed at 10 inches (254 mm) on center, additional 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) boards shall be installed between the sheathing boards.

905.8.1.1 Solid sheathing required. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less, solid sheathing is required on that portion of the roof requiring an ice barrier.

905.8.2 Deck slope. Wood shakes shall only be used on slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater.

905.8.3 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with Section 905.1.1.

905.8.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 905.1.2.

905.8.4 Interlayment. Interlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type I.

905.8.5 Material standards. Wood shakes shall comply with the requirements of Table 905.8.5.

TABLE 905.8.5
WOOD SHAKE MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

MATERIAL	MINIMUM GRADES	APPLICABLE GRADING RULES
Wood shakes of naturally durable wood	1	Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau
Tapersawn shakes of naturally durable wood	1 or 2	Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau
Preservative-treated shakes and shingles of naturally durable wood	1	Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau
Fire-retardant-treated shakes and shingles of naturally durable wood	1	Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau
Preservative-treated tapersawn shakes of Southern pine treated in accordance with AWPA Standard U1 (Commodity Specification A, Special Requirement 4.6)	1 or 2	Forest Products Laboratory of the Texas Forest Services

905.8.6 Application. Wood shakes shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Wood shakes shall be laid with a side lap not less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (38 mm) between joints in adjacent courses. Spacing between shakes in the same course shall be $\frac{3}{8}$ inch to $\frac{5}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm to 15.9 mm) including tapersawn shakes. Weather exposures for wood shakes shall not exceed those set in Table 905.8.6. Fasteners for untreated (naturally durable) wood shakes shall be box nails in accordance with Table 905.7.5(2). Nails shall be stainless steel Type 304, or Type 316 or hot-dipped with a coating weight of ASTM A153 Class D (1.0 oz/ft^2). Alternatively, two 16-gage Type 304 or Type 316 stainless steel staples, with crown widths $\frac{7}{16}$

inch (11.1 mm) minimum, 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) maximum, shall be used. Fasteners installed within 15 miles (24 km) of saltwater coastal areas shall be stainless steel Type 316. Wood shakes shall be attached to the roof with two fasteners per shake positioned in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated (as defined in Section 902) shakes or pressure-impregnated-preservative-treated shakes of naturally durable wood in accordance with AWPA U1 shall be stainless steel Type 316. Fasteners shall have a minimum penetration into the sheathing of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm). Where the sheathing is less than 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) thick, each fastener shall penetrate through the sheathing. Fastener packaging shall bear a label indicating the appropriate grade material or coating weight.

TABLE 905.8.6
WOOD SHAKE WEATHER EXPOSURE AND ROOF SLOPE

ROOFING MATERIAL	LENGTH (inches)	GRADE	EXPOSURE (inches)
			4:12 pitch or steeper
Shakes of naturally durable wood	18	No. 1	7 1/2
	24	No. 1	10 [a]
Preservative-treated tapersawn shakes of Southern Yellow Pine	18	No. 1	7 1/2
	24	No. 1	10
	18	No. 2	5 1/2
	24	No. 2	7 1/2
Taper-sawn shakes of naturally durable wood	18	No. 1	7 1/2
	24	No. 1	10
	18	No. 2	5 1/2
	24	No. 2	7 1/2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For 24-inch by 3/8-inch handsplit shakes, the maximum exposure is 7 1/2 inches.

905.8.7 Shake placement. The starter course at the eaves shall be doubled and the bottom layer shall be either 15-inch (381 mm), 18-inch (457 mm) or 24-inch (610 mm) wood shakes or wood shingles. Fifteen-inch (381 mm) or 18-inch (457 mm) wood shakes shall be permitted to be used for the final course at the ridge. Shakes shall be interlaid with 18-inch-wide (457 mm) strips of not less than No. 30 felt shingled between each course in such a manner that felt is not exposed to the weather by positioning the lower edge of each felt strip above the butt end of the shake it covers a distance equal to twice the weather exposure.

905.8.8 Valley flashing. Roof valley flashing shall be not less than No. 26 gage [0.019 inch (0.5 mm)] corrosion-resistant sheet metal and shall extend not less

than 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

905.8.9 Label required. Each bundle of shakes shall be identified by a label of an approved grading or inspection bureau or agency.

905.9 Built-up roofs. The installation of built-up roofs shall comply with the provisions of this section and the manufacturer's approved installation instructions.

905.9.1 Slope. Built-up roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage, except for coal-tar built-up roofs, which shall have a design slope of a minimum one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

905.9.2 Material standards. Built-up roof covering materials shall comply with the standards in Table 905.9.2 or UL 55A.

TABLE 905.9.2
BUILT-UP ROOFING MATERIAL STANDARDS

MATERIAL STANDARD	STANDARD
Acrylic coatings used in roofing	ASTM D6083
Aggregate surfacing	ASTM D1863
Asphalt adhesive used in roofing	ASTM D3747
Asphalt cements used in roofing	ASTM D2822; D3019; D4586
Asphalt-coated glass fiber base sheet	ASTM D4601
Asphalt coatings used in roofing	ASTM D1227; D2823; D2824; D4479
Asphalt glass felt	ASTM D2178
Asphalt primer used in roofing	ASTM D41
Asphalt-saturated and asphalt-coated organic felt base sheet	ASTM D2626
Asphalt-saturated organic felt (perforated)	ASTM D226
Asphalt used in roofing	ASTM D312
Coal-tar cements used in roofing	ASTM D4022; D5643
Coal-tar primer used in roofing, dampproofing and waterproofing	ASTM D43
Coal-tar saturated organic felt	ASTM D227
Coal-tar used in roofing	ASTM D450, Type I or II
Glass mat, coal tar	ASTM D4990
Glass mat, venting type	ASTM D4897
Mineral-surfaced inorganic cap sheet	ASTM D3909
Thermoplastic fabrics used in roofing	ASTM D5665; D5726

905.9.3 Application. Built-up roofs shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions.

905.10 Metal roof panels. The installation of metal roof panels shall comply with the provisions of this section.

905.10.1 Deck requirements. Metal roof panel roof coverings shall be applied to solid or spaced sheathing, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied to spaced supports.

905.10.2 Slope. Minimum slopes for metal roof panels shall comply with the following:

1. The minimum slope for lapped, nonsoldered-seam metal roofs without applied lap sealant shall be three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).
2. The minimum slope for lapped, nonsoldered-seam metal roofs with applied lap sealant shall be one-half unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (4-percent slope). Lap sealants shall be applied in accordance with the approved manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. The minimum slope for standing-seam roof systems shall be one-quarter unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

905.10.3 Material standards. Metal-sheet roof covering systems that incorporate supporting structural members shall be designed in accordance with the *Ohio building code*. Metal-sheet roof coverings installed over structural decking shall comply with Table 905.10.3(1). The materials used for metal-sheet roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or provided with corrosion resistance in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses shown in Table 905.10.3(2).

TABLE 905.10.3(1)
METAL ROOF COVERING STANDARDS

ROOF COVERING TYPE	STANDARD APPLICATION RATE/THICKNESS
Galvanized steel	ASTM A653 G90 Zinc coated
Stainless steel	ASTM A240, 300 Series alloys
Steel	ASTM A924
Lead-coated copper	ASTM B101
Cold-rolled copper	ASTM B370 minimum 16 oz/sq ft and 12 oz/sq ft high-yield copper for metal-sheet roof-covering systems; 12 oz/sq ft for preformed metal shingle systems.
Hard lead	2 lb/sq ft
Soft lead	3 lb/sq ft
Aluminum	ASTM B209, 0.024 minimum thickness for roll-formed panels and 0.019-inch minimum thickness for pressformed shingles.
Terne (tin) and terne-coated stainless	Terne coating of 40 lb per double base box, field painted where applicable in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
Zinc	0.027 inch minimum thickness: 99.995% electrolytic high-grade zinc with alloy additives of copper (0.08 - 0.20%), titanium (0.07% - 0.12%) and aluminum (0.015%).

For SI: 1 ounce per square foot = 0.305 kg/m^2, 1 pound per square foot = 4.214 kg/m^2,

1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

TABLE 905.10.3(2)
MINIMUM CORROSION RESISTANCE

55% aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated steel	ASTM A792 AZ 50
5% aluminum alloy-coated steel	ASTM A875 GF60
Aluminum-coated steel	ASTM A463 T2 65
Galvanized steel	ASTM A653 G-90
Prepainted steel	ASTM A755 [a]

a. Paint systems in accordance with ASTM A755 shall be applied over steel products with corrosion-resistant coatings complying with ASTM A792, ASTM A875, ASTM A463, or ASTM A653.

905.10.4 Attachment. Metal roof panels shall be secured to the supports in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions. In the absence of manufacturer's installation instructions, the following fasteners shall be used:

1. Galvanized fasteners shall be used for steel roofs.
2. Copper, brass, bronze, copper alloy and 300-series stainless steel fasteners shall be used for copper roofs.
3. Stainless steel fasteners are acceptable for metal roofs.

905.10.5 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with Section 905.1.1.

905.11 Modified bitumen roofing. The installation of modified bitumen roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section and the manufacturer's approved installation instructions.

905.11.1 Slope. Modified bitumen roofing shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

905.11.2 Material standards. Modified bitumen roofing shall comply with the standards in Table 905.11.2.

TABLE 905.11.2
MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOFING MATERIAL STANDARDS

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Acrylic coating	ASTM D6083
Asphalt adhesive	ASTM D3747
Asphalt cement	ASTM D3019
Asphalt coating	ASTM D1227; D2824
Asphalt primer	ASTM D41
Modified bitumen roof membrane	ASTM D6162; D6163; D6164; D6222; D6223; D6298

905.11.2.1 Base sheet. A base sheet that complies with the requirements of Section 1507.11.2 of the *Ohio building code*, ASTM D1970, or ASTM D4601 shall be permitted to be used with a modified bitumen cap sheet.

905.11.3 Application. Modified bitumen roofs shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions.

905.12 Thermoset single-ply roofing. The installation of thermoset single-ply roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

905.12.1 Slope. Thermoset single-ply membrane roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

905.12.2 Material standards. Thermoset single-ply roof coverings shall comply with ASTM D4637 or ASTM D5019.

905.12.3 Application. Thermoset single-ply roofs shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions.

905.13 Thermoplastic single-ply roofing. The installation of thermoplastic single-ply roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

905.13.1 Slope. Thermoplastic single-ply membrane roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

905.13.2 Material standards. Thermoplastic single-ply roof coverings shall comply with ASTM D4434, ASTM D6754 or ASTM D6878.

905.13.3 Application. Thermoplastic single-ply roofs shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions.

905.14 Sprayed polyurethane foam roofing. The installation of sprayed polyurethane foam roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

905.14.1 Slope. Sprayed polyurethane foam roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

905.14.2 Material standards. Spray-applied polyurethane foam insulation shall comply with ASTM C1029, Type III or IV or ASTM D7425.

905.14.3 Application. Foamed-in-place roof insulation shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's instructions. A liquid-applied protective coating that complies with Table 905.14.3 shall be applied not less than 2 hours nor more than 72 hours following the application of the foam.

TABLE 905.14.3
PROTECTIVE COATING MATERIAL STANDARDS

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Acrylic coating	ASTM D6083
Silicone coating	ASTM D6694
Moisture-cured polyurethane coating	ASTM D6947

905.14.4 Foam plastics. Foam plastic materials and installation shall comply with Section 316.

905.15 Liquid-applied roofing. The installation of liquid-applied roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

905.15.1 Slope. Liquid-applied roofing shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

905.15.2 Material standards. Liquid-applied roofing shall comply with ASTM C836, C957, D1227, D3468, D6083, D6694 or D6947.

905.15.3 Application. Liquid-applied roofing shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

905.16 Photovoltaic shingles. The installation of photovoltaic shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section, Section 324 and NFPA 70.

905.16.1 Deck requirements. Photovoltaic shingles shall be applied to a solid or closely-fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied over spaced sheathing.

905.16.2 Deck slope. Photovoltaic shingles shall be used only on roof slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12) or greater.

905.16.3 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with Section 905.1.1.

905.16.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 905.1.2.

905.16.4 Material standards. Photovoltaic shingles shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1703.

905.16.5 Attachment. Photovoltaic shingles shall be attached in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

905.16.6 Wind resistance. Photovoltaic shingles shall be tested in accordance with procedures and acceptance criteria in ASTM D3161. Photovoltaic shingles shall comply with the classification requirements of Table 905.2.4.1 for the appropriate maximum basic wind speed. Photovoltaic shingle packaging shall bear a label to indicate compliance with the procedures in ASTM D3161 and the required classification from Table 905.2.4.1.

905.17 Building-integrated Photovoltaic (BIPV) roof panels applied directly to the roof deck. The installation of BIPV roof panels shall comply with the provisions of this section, Section 324 and NFPA 70.

905.17.1 Deck requirements. BIPV roof panels shall be applied to a solid or closely-fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied over spaced sheathing.

905.17.2 Deck slope. BIPV roof panels shall be used only on roof slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) or greater.

905.17.3 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with Section 905.1.1.

905.17.3.1 Ice barrier. Where required, an ice barrier shall comply with Section 905.1.2.

905.17.4 Ice barrier. In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, as designated in Table 301.2(1), an ice barrier that consists of not less than two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be used in lieu of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point not less than 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

Exception: Detached accessory structures that do not contain conditioned floor area.

905.17.5 Material standards. BIPV roof panels shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1703.

905.17.6 Attachment. BIPV roof panels shall be attached in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

905.17.7 Wind resistance. BIPV roof panels shall be tested in accordance with UL 1897. BIPV roof panel packaging shall bear a label to indicate compliance with UL 1897.

SECTION 906
ROOF INSULATION

906.1 General. The use of above-deck thermal insulation shall be permitted provided that such insulation is covered with an approved roof covering and complies with FM 4450 or UL 1256.

906.2 Material standards. Above-deck thermal insulation board shall comply with the standards in Table 906.2.

TABLE 906.2
MATERIAL STANDARDS FOR ROOF INSULATION

Cellular glass board	ASTM C552
Composite boards	ASTM C1289, Type III, IV, V or VI
Expanded polystyrene	ASTM C578
Extruded polystyrene board	ASTM C578
Fiber-reinforced gypsum board	ASTM C1278
Glass-faced gypsum board	ASTM C1177
Mineral wool board	ASTM C726
Perlite board	ASTM C728
Polyisocyanurate board	ASTM C1289, Type I or II
Wood fiberboard	ASTM C208

SECTION 907
ROOFTOP-MOUNTED PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEMS

907.1 Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel systems. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 324 and NFPA 70.

SECTION 908
REROOFING

908.1 General. Materials and methods of application used for re-covering or replacing an existing roof covering shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 9.

Exceptions:

1. Reroofing shall not be required to meet the minimum design slope requirement of one-quarter unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in Section 905 for roofs that provide positive roof drainage.
2. For roofs that provide positive drainage, re-covering or replacing an existing roof covering shall not require the secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers of Section 903.4.1 to be added to an existing roof.

908.2 Structural and construction loads. The structural roof components shall be capable of supporting the roof covering system and the material and equipment loads that will be encountered during installation of the roof covering system.

908.3 Roof replacement. Roof replacement shall include the removal of existing layers of roof coverings down to the roof deck.

Exception: Where the existing roof assembly includes an ice barrier membrane that is adhered to the roof deck, the existing ice barrier membrane shall be permitted to remain in place and covered with an additional layer of ice barrier membrane in accordance with Section 905.

908.3.1 Roof recover. The installation of a new roof covering over an existing roof covering shall be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the new roof covering is installed in accordance with the roof covering manufacturer's approved instructions
2. Complete and separate roofing systems, such as standing-seam metal roof systems, that are designed to transmit the roof loads directly to the building's structural system and do not rely on existing roofs and roof coverings for support, shall not require the removal of existing roof coverings.
3. Metal panel, metal shingle and concrete and clay tile roof coverings shall be permitted to be installed over existing wood shake roofs where applied in accordance with Section 908.4.
4. The application of a new protective roof coating over an existing protective roof coating, metal roof panel, metal roof shingle, mineral surfaced roll roofing, built-up roof, modified bitumen roofing,

thermoset and thermoplastic single-ply roofing and spray polyurethane foam roofing system shall be permitted without tear-off of existing roof coverings.

908.3.1.1 Roof recover not allowed. A roof recover shall not be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the existing roof or roof covering is water soaked or has deteriorated to the point that the existing roof or roof covering is not adequate as a base for additional roofing.
2. Where the existing roof covering is slate, clay, cement or asbestos-cement tile.
3. Where the existing roof has two or more applications of any type of roof covering.

908.4 Roof recovering. Where the application of a new roof covering over wood shingle or shake roofs creates a combustible concealed space, the entire existing surface shall be covered with gypsum board, mineral fiber, glass fiber or other approved materials securely fastened in place.

908.5 Reinstallation of materials. Existing slate, clay or cement tile shall be permitted for reinstallation, except that damaged, cracked or broken slate or tile shall not be reinstalled. Any existing flashings, edgings, outlets, vents or similar devices that are a part of the assembly shall be replaced where rusted, damaged or deteriorated. Aggregate surfacing materials shall not be reinstalled.

908.6 Flashings. Flashings shall be reconstructed in accordance with approved manufacturer's installation instructions. Metal flashing to which bituminous materials are to be adhered shall be primed prior to installation.

Replaces:	4101:8-9-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013

4101:8-10-01 Chimneys and fireplaces.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 1001
MASONRY FIREPLACES

1001.1 General. Masonry fireplaces shall be constructed in accordance with this section and the applicable provisions of Chapters 3 and 4.

TABLE 1001.1
SUMMARY OF REQUIREMENTS FOR MASONRY FIREPLACES AND CHIMNEYS

ITEM	LETTER[a]	REQUIREMENTS
Hearth slab thickness	A	4″
Hearth extension (each side of opening)	B	8″ fireplace opening < 6 square feet. 12″ fireplace opening ≥ 6 square feet.
Hearth extension (front of opening)	C	16″ fireplace opening < 6 square feet. 20″ fireplace opening ≥ 6 square feet.
Hearth slab reinforcing	D	Reinforced to carry its own weight and all imposed loads.
Thickness of wall of firebox	E	10″ solid brick or 8″ where a firebrick lining is used. Joints in firebrick 1/4″ maximum.
Distance from top of opening to throat	F	8″
Smoke chamber wall thickness Unlined walls	G	6″ 8″
Chimney Vertical reinforcing[b]	H	Four No. 4 full-length bars for chimney up to 40″ wide. Add two No. 4 bars for each additional 40″ or fraction of width or each additional flue.
Horizontal reinforcing	J	1/4″ ties at 18″ and two ties at each bend in vertical steel.
Bond beams	K	No specified requirements.
Fireplace lintel	L	Noncombustible material.
Chimney walls with flue lining	M	Solid masonry units or hollow masonry units grouted solid with not less than 4-inch nominal thickness.
Distances between adjacent flues	—	See Section 1003.13.
Effective flue area (based on area of fireplace opening)	P	See Section 1003.15.

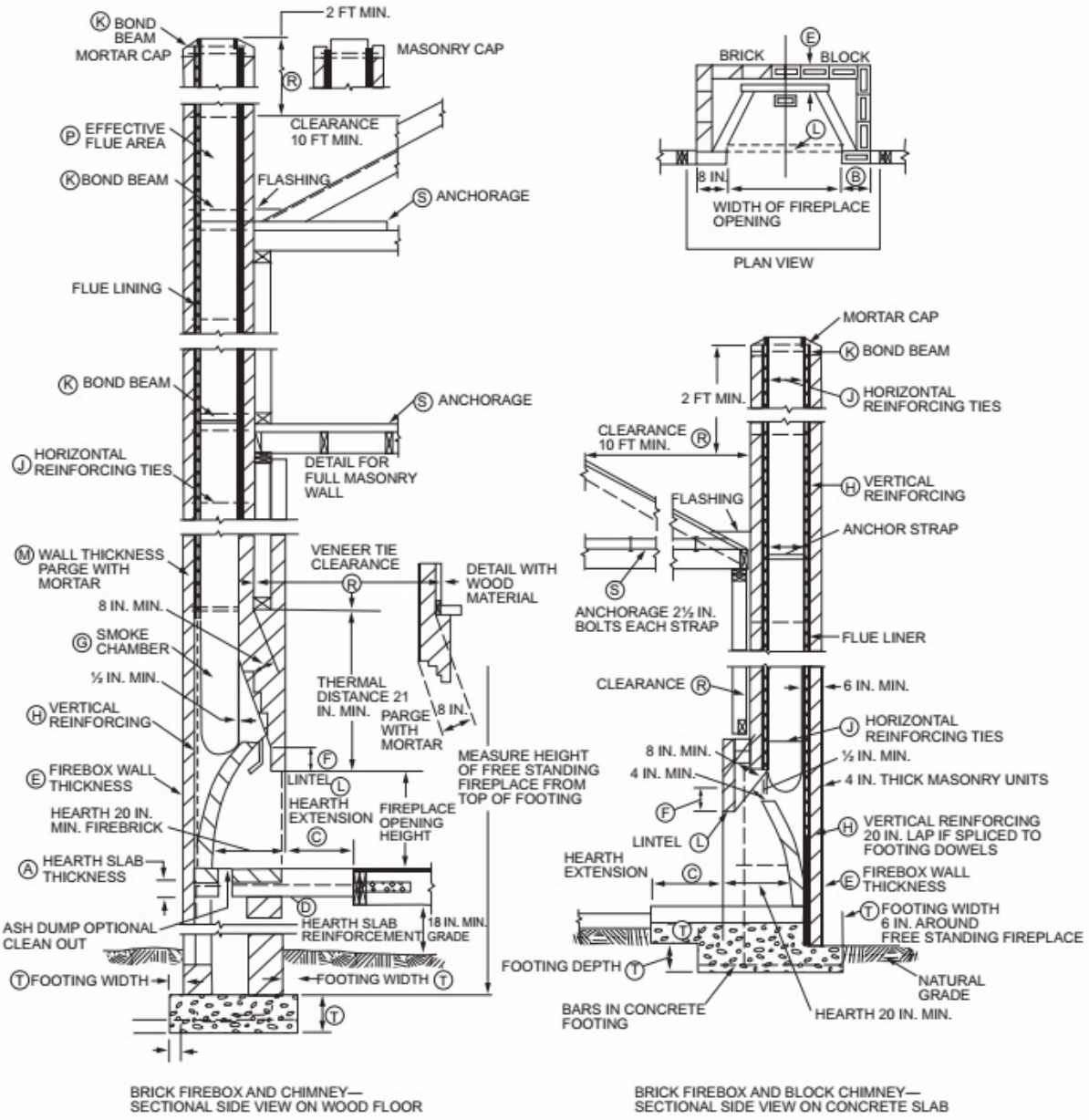
ITEM	LETTER[a]	REQUIREMENTS
Clearances: Combustible material Mantel and trim Above roof	R	 See Sections 1001.11 and 1003.18. See Section 1001.11, Exception 4. 3′ at roofline and 2′ at 10′.
Anchorage[b] Strap Number Embedment into chimney Fasten to Bolts	S	 3/16″ × 1″ Two 12″ hooked around outer bar with 6″ extension. 4 joists Two $^1/_2$″ diameter.
Footing Thickness Width	T	 12″ min. 6″ each side of fireplace wall.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

Note: This table provides a summary of major requirements for the construction of masonry chimneys and fireplaces. Letter references are to Figure 1001.1, which shows examples of typical construction. This table does not cover all requirements, nor does it cover all aspects of the indicated requirements. For the actual mandatory requirements of the code, see the indicated section of text.

a. The letters refer to Figure 1001.1.

b. Not required in Seismic Design Category A, B or C.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 1001.1
FIREPLACE AND CHIMNEY DETAILS

1001.2 Footings and foundations. Footings for masonry fireplaces and their chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or solid masonry not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond

the face of the fireplace or foundation wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural, undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade.

1001.2.1 Ash dump cleanout. Cleanout openings located within foundation walls below fireboxes, where provided, shall be equipped with ferrous metal or masonry doors and frames constructed to remain tightly closed except when in use. Cleanouts shall be located to allow access so that ash removal will not create a hazard to combustible materials.

1001.3 Seismic reinforcing. *Deleted.*

1001.3.1 Vertical reinforcing. *Deleted.*

1001.3.2 Horizontal reinforcing. *Deleted.*

1001.4 Seismic anchorage. *Deleted.*

1001.5 Firebox walls. Masonry fireboxes shall be constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. Where a lining of firebrick not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick or other approved lining is provided, the minimum thickness of back and sidewalls shall each be 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry, including the lining. The width of joints between firebricks shall not be greater than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm). Where a lining is not provided, the total minimum thickness of back and side walls shall be 10 inches (254 mm) of solid masonry. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C27 or C1261 and shall be laid with medium-duty refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199.

1001.5.1 Steel fireplace units. Installation of steel fireplace units with solid masonry to form a masonry fireplace is permitted where installed either in accordance with the requirements of their listing or the requirements of this section. Steel fireplace units incorporating a steel firebox lining shall be constructed with steel not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) thick, and an air-circulating chamber that is ducted to the interior of the building. The firebox lining shall be encased with solid masonry to provide a total thickness at the back and sides of not less than 8 inches (203 mm), of which not less than 4 inches (102 mm) shall be of solid masonry or concrete. Circulating air ducts used with steel fireplace units shall be constructed of metal or masonry.

1001.6 Firebox dimensions. The firebox of a concrete or masonry fireplace shall have a depth of not less than 20 inches (508 mm). The throat shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the fireplace opening. The throat opening shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) deep. The cross-sectional area of the passageway above the firebox, including the throat, damper and smoke chamber, shall be not less than the cross-sectional area of the flue.

Exception: Rumford fireplaces shall be permitted provided that the depth of the fireplace is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) and not less than one-third of the width of the fireplace opening, that the throat is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lintel and is not less than one-twentieth the cross-sectional area of the fireplace opening.

1001.7 Lintel and throat. Masonry over a fireplace opening shall be supported by a lintel of noncombustible material. The minimum required bearing length on each end of the fireplace opening shall be 4 inches (102 mm). The fireplace throat or damper shall be located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the lintel.

1001.7.1 Damper. Masonry fireplaces shall be equipped with a ferrous metal damper located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening. Dampers shall be installed in the fireplace or the chimney venting the fireplace, and shall be operable from the room containing the fireplace.

1001.8 Smoke chamber. Smoke chamber walls shall be constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. The total minimum thickness of front, back and side walls shall be 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry. The inside surface shall be parged smooth with refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199. Where a lining of firebrick not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick, or a lining of vitrified clay not less than $^{5}/_{8}$ -inch (16 mm) thick, is provided, the total minimum thickness of front, back and side walls shall be 6 inches (152 mm) of solid masonry, including the lining. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C1261 and shall be laid with medium-duty refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199. Vitrified clay linings shall conform to ASTM C315.

1001.8.1 Smoke chamber dimensions. The inside height of the smoke chamber from the fireplace throat to the beginning of the flue shall not be greater than the inside width of the fireplace opening. The inside surface of the smoke chamber shall not be inclined more than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from vertical where prefabricated smoke chamber linings are used or where the smoke chamber walls are rolled or sloped rather than corbeled. Where the inside surface of the smoke chamber is formed by corbeled masonry, the walls shall not be corbeled more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical.

1001.9 Hearth and hearth extension. Masonry fireplace hearths and hearth extensions shall be constructed of concrete or masonry, supported by noncombustible materials, and reinforced to carry their own weight and all imposed loads. Combustible material shall not remain against the underside of hearths and hearth extensions after construction.

1001.9.1 Hearth thickness. The minimum thickness of fireplace hearths shall be 4 inches (102 mm).

1001.9.2 Hearth extension thickness. The minimum thickness of hearth extensions shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

Exception: Where the bottom of the firebox opening is raised not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the hearth extension, a hearth extension of not less than $^3/_8$-inch-thick (10 mm) brick, concrete, stone, tile or other approved noncombustible material is permitted.

1001.10 Hearth extension dimensions. Hearth extensions shall extend not less than 16 inches (406 mm) in front of and not less than 8 inches (203 mm) beyond each side of the fireplace opening. Where the fireplace opening is 6 square feet (0.6 m^2) or larger, the hearth extension shall extend not less than 20 inches (508 mm) in front of and not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond each side of the fireplace opening.

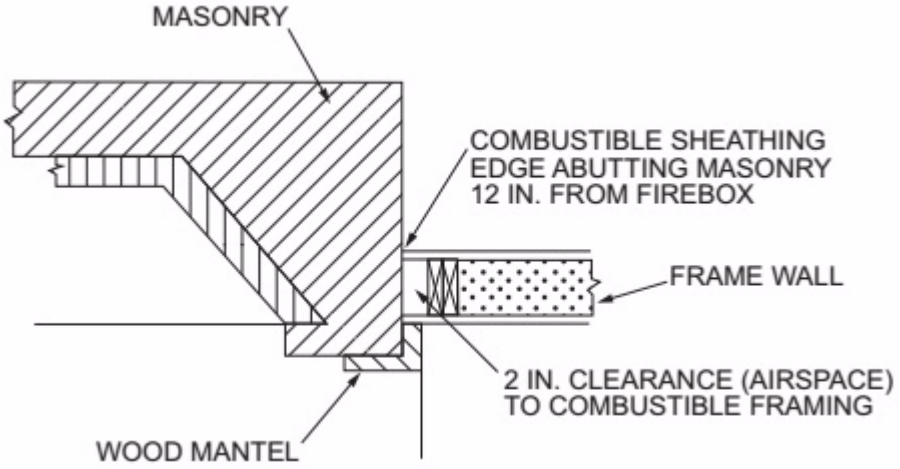
1001.11 Fireplace clearance. Wood beams, joists, studs and other combustible material shall have a clearance of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from the front faces and sides of masonry fireplaces and not less than 4 inches (102 mm) from the back faces of masonry fireplaces. The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fireblocking in accordance with Section 1001.12.

Exceptions:

1. Masonry fireplaces listed and labeled for use in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 127 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.
2. Where masonry fireplaces are part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete walls less than 12 inches (306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.
3. Exposed combustible trim and the edges of sheathing materials such as wood siding, flooring and gypsum board shall be permitted to abut the masonry fireplace sidewalls and hearth extension in accordance with

Figure 1001.11, provided such combustible trim or sheathing is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.

4. Exposed combustible mantels or trim is permitted to be placed directly on the masonry fireplace front surrounding the fireplace opening providing such combustible materials are not placed within 6 inches (152 mm) of a fireplace opening. Combustible material within 12 inches (306 mm) of the fireplace opening shall not project more than $^1/_8$ -inch (3 mm) for each 1-inch (25 mm) distance from such an opening.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 1001.11
CLEARANCE FROM COMBUSTIBLES

1001.12 Fireplace fireblocking. Fireplace fireblocking shall comply with the provisions of Section 602.8.

SECTION 1002
MASONRY HEATERS

1002.1 Definition. A masonry heater is a heating appliance constructed of concrete or solid masonry, hereinafter referred to as masonry, that is designed to absorb and store heat from a solid-fuel fire built in the firebox by routing the exhaust gases through internal heat exchange channels in which the flow path downstream of the firebox includes flow in a horizontal or downward direction before entering the chimney and that delivers heat by radiation from the masonry surface of the heater.

1002.2 Installation. Masonry heaters shall be installed in accordance with this section and comply with one of the following:

1. Masonry heaters shall comply with the requirements of ASTM E1602.
2. Masonry heaters shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1482 or CEN 15250 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1002.3 Footings and foundation. The firebox floor of a masonry heater shall be a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm) of noncombustible material and be supported on a noncombustible footing and foundation in accordance with Section 1003.2.

1002.4 Seismic reinforcing. *Deleted.*

1002.5 Masonry heater clearance. Combustible materials shall not be placed within 36 inches (914 mm) of the outside surface of a masonry heater in accordance with NFPA 211 Section 8-7 (clearances for solid-fuel-burning appliances), and the required space between the heater and combustible material shall be fully vented to permit the free flow of air around all heater surfaces.

Exceptions:

1. Where the masonry heater wall is not less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick of solid masonry and the wall of the heat exchange channels is not less than 5 inches (127 mm) thick of solid masonry, combustible materials shall not be placed within 4 inches (102 mm) of the outside surface of a masonry heater. A clearance of not less than 8 inches (203 mm) shall be provided between the gas-tight capping slab of the heater and a combustible ceiling.
2. Masonry heaters listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1482 or CEN 15250 shall be installed in accordance with the listing specifications and the manufacturer's written instructions.

SECTION 1003
MASONRY CHIMNEYS

1003.1 Definition. A masonry chimney is a chimney constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete, hereinafter referred to as masonry. Masonry chimneys shall be constructed, anchored, supported and reinforced as required in this chapter.

1003.2 Footings and foundations. Footings for masonry chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or solid masonry not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the face of the foundation or support wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural undisturbed earth

or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade.

1003.3 Seismic reinforcing. In Seismic Design Category A, B or C, reinforcement and seismic anchorage are not required.

1003.3.1 Vertical reinforcing. *Deleted.*

1003.3.2 Horizontal reinforcing. *Deleted.*

1003.4 Seismic anchorage. *Deleted*

1003.4.1 Anchorage. *Deleted*

1003.4.1.1 Cold-formed steel framing. *Deleted*

1003.5 Corbeling. Masonry chimneys shall not be corbeled more than one-half of the chimney's wall thickness from a wall or foundation, nor shall a chimney be corbeled from a wall or foundation that is less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick unless it projects equally on each side of the wall, except that on the second story of a two-story dwelling, corbeling of chimneys on the exterior of the enclosing walls shall be permitted to be equal to the wall thickness. The projection of a single course shall not exceed one-half the unit height or one-third of the unit bed depth, whichever is less.

1003.6 Changes in dimension. The chimney wall or chimney flue lining shall not change in size or shape within 6 inches (152 mm) above or below where the chimney passes through floor components, ceiling components or roof components.

1003.7 Offsets. Where a masonry chimney is constructed with a fireclay flue liner surrounded by one wythe of masonry, the maximum offset shall be such that the centerline of the flue above the offset does not extend beyond the center of the chimney wall below the offset. Where the chimney offset is supported by masonry below the offset in an approved manner, the maximum offset limitations shall not apply. Each individual corbeled masonry course of the offset shall not exceed the projection limitations specified in Section 1003.5.

1003.8 Additional load. Chimneys shall not support loads other than their own weight unless they are designed and constructed to support the additional load. Construction of masonry chimneys as part of the masonry walls or reinforced concrete walls of the building shall be permitted.

1003.9 Termination. Chimneys shall extend not less than 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within 10 feet (3048 mm), but shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point where the chimney passes through the roof.

1003.9.1 Chimney caps. Masonry chimneys shall have a concrete, metal or stone cap, a drip edge and a caulked bond break around any flue liners in accordance with ASTM C1283. The concrete, metal or stone cap shall be sloped to shed water.

1003.9.2 Spark arrestors. Where a spark arrestor is installed on a masonry chimney, the spark arrestor shall meet all of the following requirements:

1. The net free area of the arrestor shall be not less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.
2. The arrestor screen shall have heat and corrosion resistance equivalent to 19-gage galvanized steel or 24-gage stainless steel.
3. Openings shall not permit the passage of spheres having a diameter greater than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) nor block the passage of spheres having a diameter less than $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm).
4. The spark arrestor shall be located with access for cleaning and the screen or chimney cap shall be removable to allow for cleaning of the chimney flue.

1003.9.3 Rain caps. Where a masonry or metal rain cap is installed on a masonry chimney, the net free area under the cap shall be not less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.

1003.10 Wall thickness. Masonry chimney walls shall be constructed of solid masonry units or hollow masonry units grouted solid with not less than a 4-inch (102 mm) nominal thickness.

1003.10.1 Masonry veneer chimneys. Where masonry is used to veneer a frame chimney, through-flashing and weep holes shall be installed as required by Section 703.

1003.11 Flue lining (material). Masonry chimneys shall be lined. The lining material shall be appropriate for the type of appliance connected, in accordance with the terms of the appliance listing and manufacturer's instructions.

1003.11.1 Residential-type appliances (general). Flue lining systems shall comply with one of the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements of ASTM C315.
2. Listed and labeled chimney lining systems complying with UL 1777.
3. Factory-built chimneys or chimney units listed for installation within masonry chimneys.
4. Other approved materials that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening or cracking from flue gases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

1003.11.2 Flue linings for specific appliances. Flue linings other than these covered in Section 1003.11.1, intended for use with specific types of appliances, shall comply with Sections 1003.11.3 through 1003.11.6.

1003.11.3 Gas appliances. Flue lining systems for gas appliances shall be in accordance with Chapter 24.

1003.11.4 Pellet fuel-burning appliances. Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with pellet fuel-burning appliances shall be limited to the following:

1. Flue lining systems complying with Section 1003.11.1.
2. Pellet vents listed for installation within masonry chimneys (see Section 1003.11.6 for marking).

1003.11.5 Oil-fired appliances approved for use with Type L vent. Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with oil-fired appliances approved for use with Type L vent shall be limited to the following:

1. Flue lining systems complying with Section 1003.11.1.
2. Listed chimney liners complying with UL 641 (see Section 1003.11.6 for marking).

1003.11.6 Notice of usage. Where a flue is relined with a material not complying with Section 1003.11.1, the chimney shall be plainly and permanently identified by a label attached to a wall, ceiling or other conspicuous location adjacent to where the connector enters the chimney. The label shall include the following message or equivalent language:

THIS CHIMNEY FLUE IS FOR USE ONLY WITH [Type or category of appliance] APPLIANCES THAT BURN [Type of fuel]. DO NOT CONNECT OTHER TYPES OF APPLIANCES.

1003.12 Clay flue lining (installation). Clay flue liners shall be installed in accordance with ASTM C1283 and extend from a point not less than 8 inches (203

mm) below the lowest inlet or, in the case of fireplaces, from the top of the smoke chamber to a point above the enclosing walls. The lining shall be carried up vertically, with a slope not greater than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical.

Clay flue liners shall be laid in medium-duty water insoluble refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199 with tight mortar joints left smooth on the inside and installed to maintain an airspace or insulation not to exceed the thickness of the flue liner separating the flue liners from the interior face of the chimney masonry walls. Flue liners shall be supported on all sides. Only enough mortar shall be placed to make the joint and hold the liners in position.

1003.12.1 Listed materials. Listed materials used as flue linings shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listings and manufacturer's instructions.

1003.12.2 Space around lining. The space surrounding a chimney lining system or vent installed within a masonry chimney shall not be used to vent any other appliance.

Exception: This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1003.13 Multiple flues. Where two or more flues are located in the same chimney, masonry wythes shall be built between adjacent flue linings. The masonry wythes shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) thick and bonded into the walls of the chimney.

Exception: Where venting only one appliance, two flues shall be permitted to adjoin each other in the same chimney with only the flue lining separation between them. The joints of the adjacent flue linings shall be staggered not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

1003.14 Flue area (appliance). Chimney flues shall not be smaller in area than that of the area of the connector from the appliance [see Tables 1003.14(1) and 1003.14(2)]. The sizing of a chimney flue to which multiple appliance venting systems are connected shall be in accordance with Section 1805.3.

TABLE 1003.14(1)
NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF ROUND FLUE SIZES[a]

FLUE SIZE, INSIDE DIAMETER (inches)	CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)
6	28
7	38
8	50
10	78
10 3/4	90

12	113
15	176
18	254

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.
a. Flue sizes are based on ASTM C315.

TABLE 1003.14(2)
NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF
SQUARE AND RECTANGULAR FLUE SIZES

FLUE SIZE, OUTSIDE NOMINAL DIMENSIONS (inches)	CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)
4.5 × 8.5	23
4.5 × 13	34
8 × 8	42
8.5 × 8.5	49
8 × 12	67
8.5 × 13	76
12 × 12	102
8.5 × 18	101
13 × 13	127
12 × 16	131
13 × 18	173
16 × 16	181
16 × 20	222
18 × 18	233
20 × 20	298
20 × 24	335
24 × 24	431

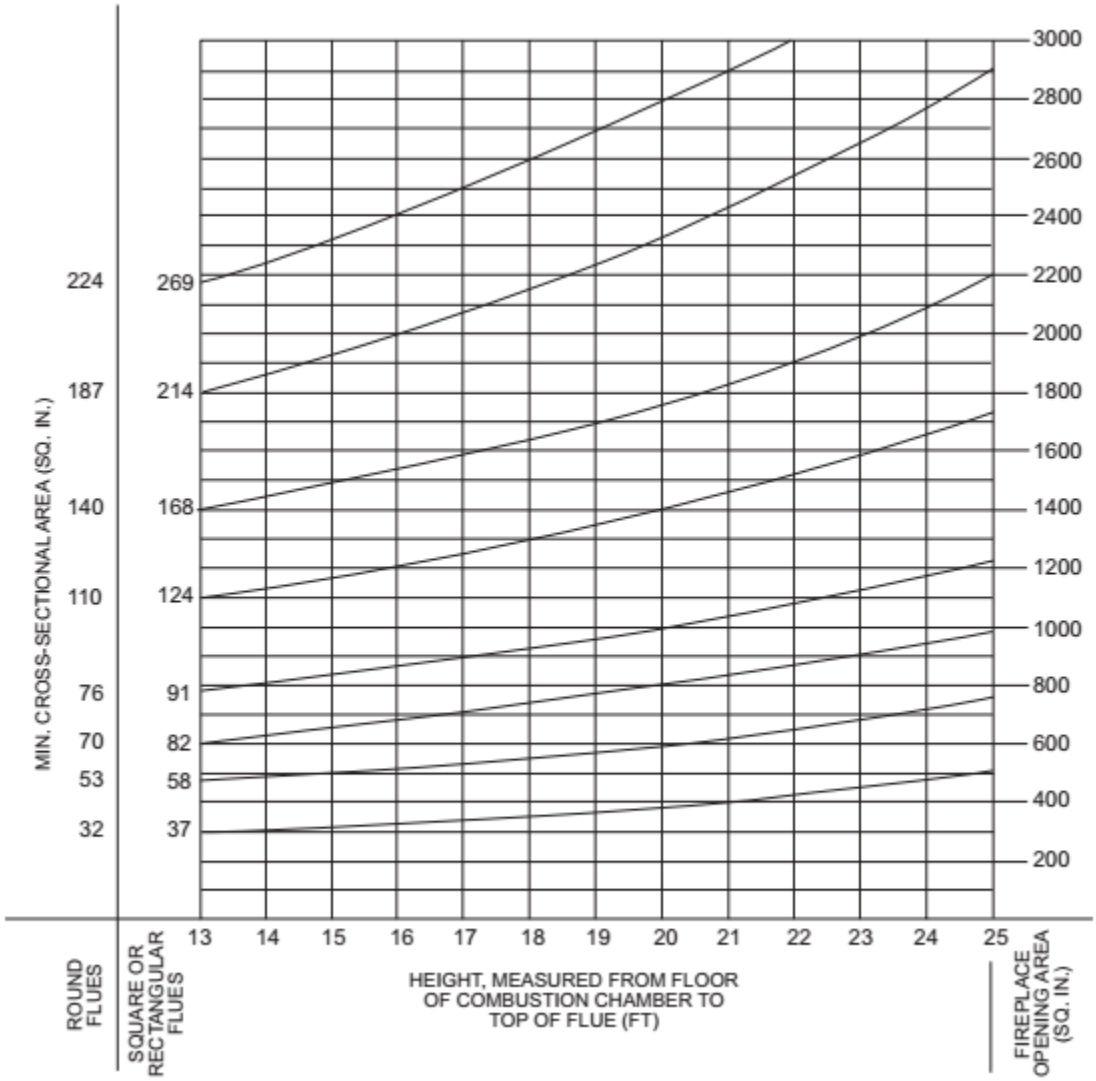
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.

1003.15 Flue area (masonry fireplace). Flue sizing for chimneys serving fireplaces shall be in accordance with Section 1003.15.1 or 1003.15.2.

1003.15.1 Option 1. Round chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than one-twelfth of the fireplace opening. Square chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of one-tenth of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an aspect ratio less than 2 to 1 shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of one-tenth of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an aspect ratio of 2 to 1 or more shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of one-eighth of the fireplace opening. Cross-sectional areas of clay flue linings are shown in Tables 1003.14(1) and 1003.14(2) or as provided by the manufacturer or as measured in the field.

1003.15.2 Option 2. The minimum net cross-sectional area of the chimney flue shall be determined in accordance with Figure 1003.15.2. A flue size providing not less than the equivalent net cross-sectional area shall be used. Cross-sectional areas of clay flue linings are shown in Tables 1003.14(1) and

1003.14(2) or as provided by the manufacturer or as measured in the field. The height of the chimney shall be measured from the firebox floor to the top of the chimney flue.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.

FIGURE 1003.15.2
FLUE SIZES FOR MASONRY CHIMNEYS

1003.16 Inlet. Inlets to masonry chimneys shall enter from the side. Inlets shall have a thimble of fireclay, rigid refractory material or metal that will prevent the

connector from pulling out of the inlet or from extending beyond the wall of the liner.

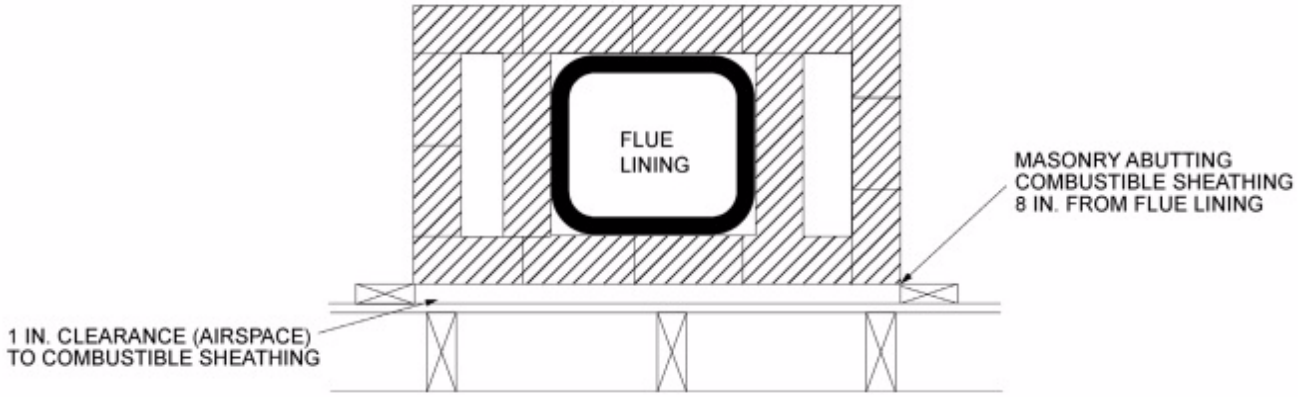
1003.17 Masonry chimney cleanout openings. Cleanout openings shall be provided within 6 inches (152 mm) of the base of each flue within every masonry chimney. The upper edge of the cleanout shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest chimney inlet opening. The height of the opening shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm). The cleanout shall be provided with a noncombustible cover.

Exception: Chimney flues serving masonry fireplaces where cleaning is possible through the fireplace opening.

1003.18 Chimney clearances. Any portion of a masonry chimney located in the interior of the building or within the exterior wall of the building shall have a minimum airspace clearance to combustibles of 2 inches (51 mm). Chimneys located entirely outside the exterior walls of the building, including chimneys that pass through the soffit or cornice, shall have a minimum airspace clearance of 1 inch (25 mm). The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fire blocking in accordance with Section 1003.19.

Exceptions:

1. Masonry chimneys equipped with a chimney lining system listed and labeled for use in chimneys in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 1777 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.
2. Where masonry chimneys are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete wall less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining.
3. Exposed combustible trim and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding and flooring, shall be permitted to abut the masonry chimney side walls, in accordance with Figure 1003.18, provided such combustible trim or sheathing is not less than 8 inches (203 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 1003.18
CLEARANCE FROM COMBUSTIBLES

1003.19 Chimney fireblocking. Spaces between chimneys and floors and ceilings through which chimneys pass shall be fireblocked with noncombustible material securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between chimneys and wood joists, beams or headers shall be self-supporting or be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid across the spaces between combustible material and the chimney.

1003.20 Chimney crickets. Chimneys shall be provided with crickets where the dimension parallel to the ridgeline is greater than 30 inches (762 mm) and does not intersect the ridgeline. The intersection of the cricket and the chimney shall be flashed and counterflashed in the same manner as normal roof-chimney intersections. Crickets shall be constructed in compliance with Figure 1003.20 and Table 1003.20.

TABLE 1003.20
CRICKET DIMENSIONS

ROOF SLOPE	H
12:12	1/2 of W
8:12	1/3 of W
6:12	1/4 of W
4:12	1/6 of W
3:12	1/8 of W

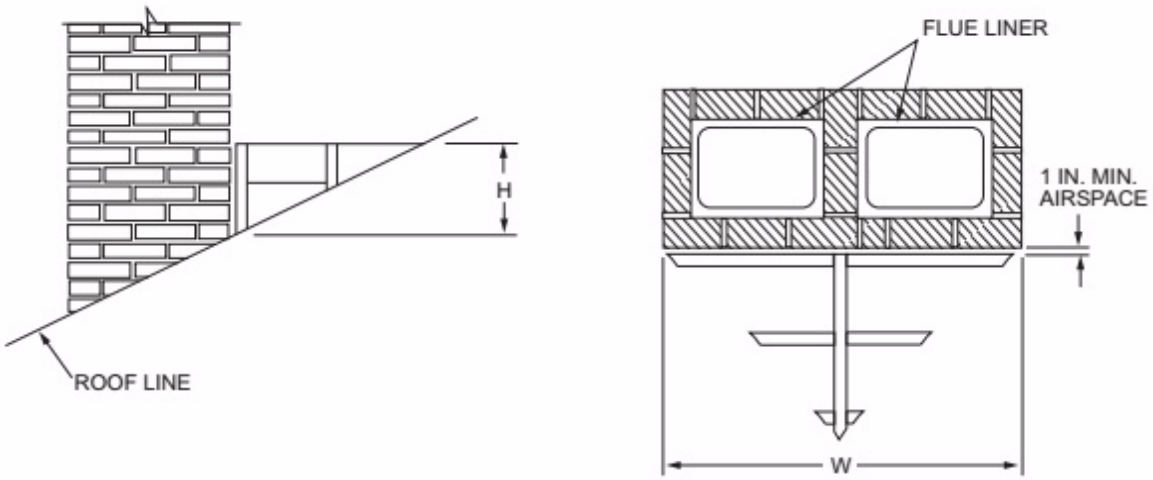


FIGURE 1003.20
CHIMNEY CRICKET

SECTION 1004
FACTORY-BUILT FIREPLACES

1004.1 General. Factory-built fireplaces shall be listed and labeled and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing. Factory-built fireplaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 127.

1004.2 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions of approved factory-built fireplaces shall be installed in accordance with the listing of the fireplace. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area. Listed and labeled hearth extensions shall comply with UL 1618.

1004.3 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of chimneys for factory-built fireplaces except where the shrouds are listed and labeled for use with the specific factory-built fireplace system and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1004.4 Unvented gas log heaters. An unvented gas log heater shall not be installed in a factory-built fireplace unless the fireplace system has been specifically tested, listed and labeled for such use in accordance with UL 127.

1004.5 Gasketed fireplace doors. A gasketed fireplace door shall not be installed on a factory-built fireplace except where the fireplace system has been specifically tested, listed and labeled for such use in accordance with UL 127.

SECTION 1005
FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

1005.1 Listing. Factory-built chimneys shall be listed and labeled and shall be installed and terminated in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1005.2 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built chimneys except where the shrouds are listed and labeled for use with the specific factory-built chimney system and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1005.3 Solid-fuel appliances. Factory-built chimneys installed in dwelling units with solid-fuel-burning appliances shall comply with the Type HT requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Type HT and "Residential Type and Building Heating Appliance Chimney."

Exception: Chimneys for use with open combustion chamber fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Residential Type and Building Heating Appliance Chimney."

Chimneys for use with open combustion chamber appliances installed in buildings other than dwelling units shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Building Heating Appliance Chimney" or "Residential Type and Building Heating Appliance Chimney."

1005.4 Factory-built fireplaces. Chimneys for use with factory-built fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 127.

1005.5 Support. Where factory-built chimneys are supported by structural members, such as joists and rafters, those members shall be designed to support the additional load.

1005.6 Medium-heat appliances. Factory-built chimneys for medium-heat appliances producing flue gases having a temperature above 1,000°F (538°C), measured at the entrance to the chimney, shall comply with UL 959.

1005.7 Factory-built chimney offsets. Where a factory-built chimney assembly incorporates offsets, no part of the chimney shall be at an angle of more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical at any point in the assembly and the chimney assembly shall not include more than four elbows.

1005.8 Insulation shield. Where factory-built chimneys pass through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of steel having a thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) shall be installed to provide clearance between the chimney and the insulation material. The clearance shall be not less than the clearance to combustibles specified by the chimney manufacturer's installation instructions. Where chimneys pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the insulation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a listed chimney system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 1006
EXTERIOR AIR SUPPLY

1006.1 Exterior air. Factory-built or masonry fireplaces covered in this chapter shall be equipped with an exterior air supply to ensure proper fuel combustion unless the room is mechanically ventilated and controlled so that the indoor pressure is neutral or positive.

1006.1.1 Factory-built fireplaces. Exterior combustion air ducts for factory-built fireplaces shall be a listed component of the fireplace and shall be installed in accordance with the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

1006.1.2 Masonry fireplaces. Listed combustion air ducts for masonry fireplaces shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

1006.2 Exterior air intake. The exterior air intake shall be capable of supplying all combustion air from the exterior of the dwelling or from spaces within the dwelling ventilated with outdoor air such as nonmechanically ventilated crawl or attic spaces. The exterior air intake shall not be located within the garage or basement of the dwelling. The exterior air intake, for other than listed factory-built fireplaces, shall not be located at an elevation higher than the firebox. The exterior air intake shall be covered with a corrosion-resistant screen of $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) mesh.

1006.3 Clearance. Unlisted combustion air ducts shall be installed with a minimum 1-inch (25 mm) clearance to combustibles for all parts of the duct within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the duct outlet.

1006.4 Passageway. The combustion air passageway shall be not less than 6 square inches (3870 mm^2) and not more than 55 square inches (0.035 m^2), except that combustion air systems for listed fireplaces shall be constructed in accordance with the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

1006.5 Outlet. The exterior air outlet shall be located in the back or side of the firebox chamber or shall be located outside of the firebox, at the level of the hearth and not greater than 24 inches (610 mm) from the firebox opening. The outlet shall be closable and designed to prevent burning material from dropping into concealed combustible spaces.

Replaces:	4101:8-10-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013

4101:8-11-01 Energy efficiency.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 1101
GENERAL

1101.1 Scope *and intent*. This chapter regulates the energy efficiency for the design and construction of buildings regulated by this code. *This chapter shall regulate the design and construction of buildings for the effective use and conservation of energy over the useful life of each building. This chapter is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this objective. This chapter is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.*

1101.2 Compliance. *Sections 1101.1 through 1101.12 shall apply to all compliance paths.*

1101.2.1. Compliance paths. *Compliance shall be demonstrated by meeting the requirements of one of the following options:*

1. *Sections 1101.14 through 1104 of this chapter, or*
2. *Section 1105 (the Simulated Performance approach) and the provisions of Sections 1101.14 through 1104 indicated as "Mandatory," or*
3. *Section 1106 (the Energy Rating Index (ERI) approach) and the provisions of Sections 1101.14 through 1104 indicated as "Mandatory," and Section 1103.5.3, or*
4. *Section 1112 ("The Ohio Home Builder's Association (OHBA) Alternative Energy Code Option"), or*
5. *The "International Energy Conservation Code."*

1101.3 Compliance materials. The building official shall be permitted to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar materials that meet the intent of this chapter.

1101.4 Above code programs. *Deleted.*

1101.5 Information on construction documents. Construction documents shall be drawn to scale on suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted

to be submitted when approved by the building official. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed, and show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the building, systems and equipment as herein governed. Details shall include the following as applicable:

1. Insulation materials and their R-values.
2. Fenestration U-factors and solar heat gain coefficients (SHGC).
3. Area-weighted U-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) calculations.
4. Mechanical system design criteria.
5. Mechanical and service water heating systems and equipment types, sizes and efficiencies.
6. Equipment and system controls.
7. Duct sealing, duct and pipe insulation and location.
8. Air sealing details.

1101.5.1 Building thermal envelope depiction. The building thermal envelope shall be represented on the construction documents.

1101.6 Defined terms. The following terms *are defined in Chapter 2:*

ABOVE-GRADE WALL.
ACCESSIBLE.
ADDITION.
AIR BARRIER.
ALTERATION.
AUTOMATIC.
BASEMENT WALL.
BUILDING.
BUILDING SITE.
BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE.
CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM.
CLIMATE ZONE.
CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA.
CONDITIONED SPACE.
CONTINUOUS AIR BARRIER.
CONTINUOUS INSULATION (ci).
CRAWL SPACE WALL.
CURTAIN WALL.
DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM.
DUCT.
DUCT SYSTEM.
DWELLING UNIT.

ENERGY ANALYSIS.
ENERGY COST.
ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL.
ERI REFERENCE DESIGN.
EXTERIOR WALL.
FENESTRATION.
Site-built fenestration product.
Skylights.
Vertical fenestration.
HEATED SLAB.
HIGH-EFFICACY LAMPS.
HISTORIC BUILDING.
INFILTRATION.
INSULATED SIDING.
INSULATING SHEATHING.
LABELED.
LISTED.
LOW-VOLTAGE LIGHTING.
MANUAL.
OPAQUE DOOR.
PROPOSED DESIGN.
RATED DESIGN.
READILY ACCESSIBLE.
REPAIR.
REROOFING.
RESIDENTIAL BUILDING.
ROOF ASSEMBLY.
ROOF RECOVER.
ROOF REPAIR.
ROOF REPLACEMENT.
R-VALUE (THERMAL RESISTANCE).
SERVICE WATER HEATING.
SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC).
STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN.
SUNROOM.
THERMAL ISOLATION.
THERMOSTAT.
U-FACTOR (THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE).
VENTILATION.
VENTILATION AIR.
VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE [VT].
WHOLE HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM.
ZONE.

1101.7 Climate zones. Climate zones from Figure 1101.7 or Table 1101.7 shall be used for determining the applicable requirements in Sections 1101 through 1111.

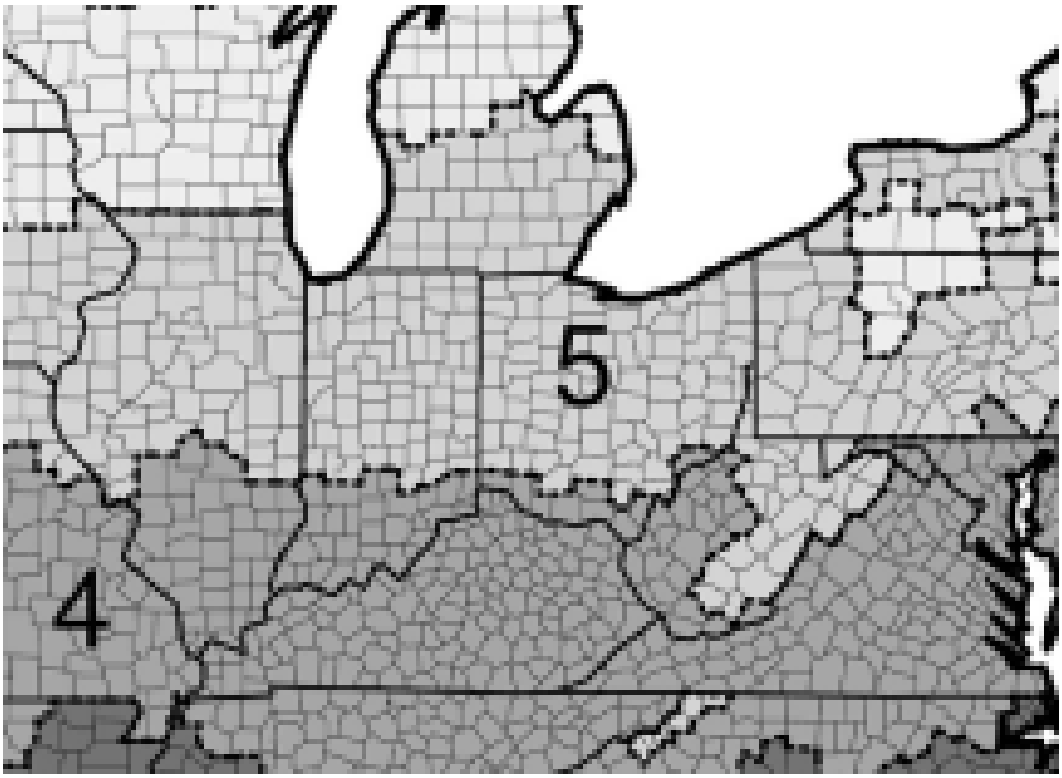


FIGURE 1101.7
CLIMATE ZONES

TABLE 1101.7
CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY

OHIO		
4A Adams	4A Hamilton	5A Noble
5A Allen	5A Hancock	5A Ottawa
5A Ashland	5A Hardin	5A Paulding
5A Ashtabula	5A Harrison	5A Perry
5A Athens	5A Henry	5A Pickaway
5A Auglaize	5A Highland	4A Pike
5A Belmont	5A Hocking	5A Portage
4A Brown	5A Holmes	5A Preble
5A Butler	5A Huron	5A Putnam
5A Carroll	5A Jackson	5A Richland
5A Champaign	5A Jefferson	5A Ross
5A Clark	5A Knox	5A Sandusky
4A Clermont	5A Lake	4A Scioto
5A Clinton	4A Lawrence	5A Seneca

5A Columbiana	5A Licking	5A Shelby
5A Coshocton	5A Logan	5A Stark
5A Crawford	5A Lorain	5A Summit
5A Cuyahoga	5A Lucas	5A Trumbull
5A Darke	5A Madison	5A Tuscarawas
5A Defiance	5A Mahoning	5A Union
5A Delaware	5A Marion	5A Van Wert
5A Erie	5A Medina	5A Vinton
5A Fairfield	5A Meigs	5A Warren
5A Fayette	5A Mercer	4A Washington
5A Franklin	5A Miami	5A Wayne
5A Fulton	5A Monroe	5A Williams
4A Gallia	5A Montgomery	5A Wood
5A Geauga	5A Morgan	5A Wyandot
5A Greene	5A Morrow	
5A Guernsey	5A Muskingum	

Key: A – Moist.

1101.7.1 Warm humid counties. *Deleted.*

1101.7.2 International climate zones. *Deleted.*

TABLE 1101.7.2(1)
INTERNATIONAL CLIMATE ZONE DEFINITIONS

Deleted.

TABLE 1101.7.2(2)
INTERNATIONAL CLIMATE ZONE DEFINITIONS

Deleted.

1101.8 Tropical climate zone. *Deleted.*

1101.9 Interior design conditions. The interior design temperatures used for heating and cooling load calculations shall be a maximum of 72°F (22°C) for heating and minimum of 75°F (24°C) for cooling.

1101.10 Identification. Materials, systems and equipment shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this code.

1101.10.1 Building thermal envelope insulation. An R-value identification mark shall be applied by the manufacturer to each piece of building thermal envelope insulation that is 12 inches (305 mm) or greater in width. Alternatively, the insulation installers shall provide a certification that indicates the type, manufacturer and R-value of insulation installed in each element of

the building thermal envelope. For blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose insulation, the initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled R-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be indicated on the certification. For sprayed polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation, the installed thickness of the areas covered and the R-value of the installed thickness shall be indicated on the certification. For insulated siding, the R-value shall be on a label on the product's package and shall be indicated on the certification. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certification in a conspicuous location on the job site.

Exception: For roof insulation installed above the deck, the R-value shall be labeled as required by the material standards specified in Table 906.2.

1101.10.1.1 Blown-in or sprayed roof and ceiling insulation. The thickness of blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose roof and ceiling insulation shall be written in inches (mm) on markers that are installed at not less than one for every 300 square feet (28 m^2) throughout the attic space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height. Each marker shall face the attic access opening. The thickness and installed R-value of sprayed polyurethane foam insulation shall be indicated on the certification provided by the insulation installer.

1101.10.2 Insulation mark installation. Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer's R-value mark is readily observable at inspection.

1101.10.3 Fenestration product rating. U-factors of fenestration products such as windows, doors and skylights shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100.

Exception: Where required, garage door U-factors shall be determined in accordance with either NFRC 100 or ANSI/DASMA 105.

U-factors shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer.

Products lacking such a labeled U-factor shall be assigned a default U-factor from Table 1101.10.3(1) or 1101.10.3(2). The solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) and visible transmittance (VT) of glazed fenestration products such as windows, glazed doors and skylights shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a labeled SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from Table 1101.10.3(3).

TABLE 1101.10.3(1)

DEFAULT GLAZED WINDOW, GLASS DOOR AND SKYLIGHT U-FACTORS

FRAME TYPE	WINDOW AND GLASS DOOR		SKYLIGHT	
	Single pane	Double pane	Single	Double
Metal	1.20	0.80	2.00	1.30
Metal with Thermal Break	1.10	0.65	1.90	1.10
Nonmetal or Metal Clad	0.95	0.55	1.75	1.05
Glazed Block	0.60			

TABLE 1101.10.3(2)
DEFAULT OPAQUE DOOR U-FACTORS

DOOR TYPE	OPAQUE U-FACTOR
Uninsulated Metal	1.20
Insulated Metal	0.60
Wood	0.50
Insulated, nonmetal edge, not exceeding 45% glazing, any glazing double pane	0.35

TABLE 1101.10.3(3)
DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC AND VT

	SINGLE GLAZED		DOUBLE GLAZED		GLAZED BLOCK
	Clear	Tinted	Clear	Tinted	
SHGC	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6
VT	0.6	0.3	0.6	0.3	0.6

1101.10.4 Insulation product rating. The thermal resistance, R-value, of insulation shall be determined in accordance with Part 460 of US-FTC CFR Title 16 in units of h • ft2 • °F/Btu at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).

1101.10.4.1 Insulated siding. The thermal resistance, R-value, of insulated siding shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363. Installation for testing shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1101.11 Installation. Materials, systems and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and this code.

1101.11.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation. Insulation applied to the exterior of basement walls, crawl space walls and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation's thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) below grade.

1101.12 Maintenance information. Maintenance instructions shall be furnished for equipment and systems that require preventive maintenance. Required regular maintenance actions shall be clearly stated and incorporated on a readily accessible label. The label shall include the title or publication number for the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of product.

1101.13 Compliance. *Deleted. See Section 1101.2.*

1101.13.1 Tropical zone. *Deleted.*

1101.14 Certificate (Mandatory). A permanent certificate shall be completed by the *owner* or *the owner's representative* and posted on a wall in the space where the furnace is located, a utility room or an approved location inside the building. Where located on an electrical panel, the certificate shall not cover or obstruct the visibility of the circuit directory label, service disconnect label or other required labels. The certificate shall indicate the predominant R-values of insulation installed in or on ceilings, roofs, walls, foundation components such as slabs, basement walls, crawl space walls and floors, and ducts outside conditioned spaces; U-factors of fenestration and the solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) of fenestration, and the results from any required duct system and building envelope air leakage testing performed on the building. Where there is more than one value for each component, the certificate shall indicate the value covering the largest area. The certificate shall indicate the types and efficiencies of heating, cooling and service water heating equipment. Where a gas-fired unvented room heater, electric furnace, or baseboard electric heater is installed in the residence, the certificate shall indicate "gas-fired unvented room heater," "electric furnace" or "baseboard electric heater," as appropriate. An efficiency shall not be indicated for gas-fired unvented room heaters, electric furnaces and electric baseboard heaters.

SECTION 1102
BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE

1102.1 General (Prescriptive). The building thermal envelope shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1102.1.1 through 1102.1.5.

Exceptions:

1. The following low-energy buildings, or portions thereof, separated from the remainder of the building by building thermal envelope assemblies complying with this section shall be exempt from the building thermal envelope provisions of Section 1102.
   - 1.1. Those with a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h • ft^2 (10.7 W/m^2) or 1.0 watt/ft^2 of floor area for space-conditioning purposes.
   - 1.2. Those that do not contain conditioned space.

2. Log homes designed in accordance with ICC 400.
3. *Existing buildings comply with Section 1107.*

1102.1.1 Vapor retarder. Wall assemblies in the building thermal envelope shall comply with the vapor retarder requirements of Section 702.7.

1102.1.2 Insulation and fenestration criteria. The building thermal envelope shall meet the requirements of Table 1102.1.2 based on the climate zone specified in Section 1101.7.

TABLE 1102.1.2
INSULATION AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS BY COMPONENT[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR[b]	SKYLIGHT[b] *U*-FACTOR	GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC[b, e]	CEILING *R*-VALUE	WOOD FRAME WALL *R*-VALUE	MASS WALL *R*-VALUE[i]	FLOOR *R*-VALUE	BASEMENT[c] WALL *R*-VALUE	SLAB[d] *R*-VALUE & DEPTH	CRAWL SPACE[c] WALL *R*-VALUE
4 except Marine	0.32	0.55	0.40	49	20 or 13 + 5[h]	8/13	19	10 /13	10, 2 ft	10/13
5 and Marine 4	0.30	0.55	NR	49	20 or 13 + 5[h]	13/17	30[g]	*10/13*	10, 2 ft	*10/13*

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
NR = Not Required.

a. R-values are minimums. U-factors and SHGC are maximums. Where insulation is installed in a cavity that is less than the label or design thickness of the insulation, the installed R-value of the insulation shall be not less than the R-value specified in the table.
b. The fenestration U-factor column excludes skylights. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.
Exception: *Deleted.*
c. "10/13" means R-10 continuous insulation on the interior or exterior of the home or R-13 cavity insulation on the interior of the basement wall.
d. R-5 insulation shall be provided under the full slab area of a heated slab in addition to the required slab edge insulation R-value for slabs. as indicated in the table. The slab edge insulation for heated slabs shall not be required to extend below the slab.
e. There are no SHGC requirements in the Marine Zone.
f. Basement wall insulation shall not be required in warm-humid locations as defined by Figure 1101.10 and Table 1101.10.
g. Alternatively, insulation sufficient to fill the framing cavity providing not less than an R-value of R-19.
h. The first value is cavity insulation, the second value is continuous insulation. Therefore, as an example, "13+5" means R-13 cavity insulation plus R-5 continuous insulation.
i. Mass walls shall be in accordance with Section 1102.2.5. The second R-value applies where more than half of the insulation is on the interior of the mass wall.

1102.1.3 R-value computation. Insulation material used in layers, such as framing cavity insulation or continuous insulation, shall be summed to compute the corresponding component R-value. The manufacturer's settled R-value shall be used for blown-in insulation. Computed R-values shall not include an R-value for other building materials or air films. Where insulated siding is used for the purpose of complying with the continuous insulation requirements of Table 1102.1.2, the manufacturer's labeled R-value for insulated siding shall be reduced by R-0.6.

1102.1.4 U-factor alternative. An assembly with a U-factor equal to or less than that specified in Table 1102.1.4 shall be permitted as an alternative to the R-value in Table 1102.1.2.

TABLE 1102.1.4
EQUIVALENT U-FACTORS[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION U-FACTOR	SKYLIGHT U-FACTOR	CEILING U-FACTOR	FRAME WALL U-FACTOR	MASS WALL U-FACTOR[b]	FLOOR U-FACTOR	BASEMENT WALL U-FACTOR	CRAWL SPACE WALL U-FACTOR
4 except Marine	0.32	0.55	0.026	0.060	0.098	0.047	0.059	0.065
5 and Marine 4	0.30	0.55	0.026	0.060	0.082	0.033	*0.059*	*0.065*

a. Nonfenestration U-factors shall be obtained from measurement, calculation or an approved source.
b. Mass walls shall be in accordance with Section 1102.2.5. Where more than half the insulation is on the interior, the mass wall U-factors shall not exceed 0.087 in Climate Zone 4, *and* 0.065 in Climate Zone 5.
c. In warm-humid locations as defined by Figure 1101.7 and Table 1101.7, the basement wall U-factor shall not exceed 0.360.

1102.1.5 Total UA alternative. Where the total building thermal envelope UA, the sum of U-factor times assembly area, is less than or equal to the Total UA resulting from multiplying the U-factors in Table 1102.1.4 by the same assembly area as in the proposed building, the building shall be considered to be in compliance with Table 1102.1.2. The UA calculation shall be performed using a method consistent with the ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals and shall include the thermal bridging effects of framing materials. In addition to UA compliance, SHGC requirements shall be met.

1102.2 Specific insulation requirements (Prescriptive). In addition to the requirements of Section 1102.1, insulation shall meet the specific requirements of Sections 1102.2.1 through 1102.2.13.

1102.2.1 Ceilings with attic spaces. Where Section 1102.1.2 requires R-38 insulation in the ceiling, installing R-30 insulation over 100 percent of the ceiling area requiring insulation shall satisfy the requirement for R-38 insulation wherever the full height of uncompressed R-30 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. Where Section 1102.1.2 requires R-49 insulation in the ceiling, installing R-38 insulation over 100 percent of the ceiling area requiring insulation shall satisfy the requirement for R-49 insulation wherever the full height of uncompressed R-38 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. This reduction shall not apply to the U-factor alternative approach in Section 1102.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section 1102.1.5.

1102.2.2 Ceilings without attic spaces. Where Section 1102.1.2 requires insulation R-values greater than R-30 in the ceiling and the design of the roof/ceiling assembly does not allow sufficient space for the required insulation, the minimum required insulation R-value for such roof/ceiling assemblies shall be R-30. Insulation shall extend over the top of the wall plate to the outer edge of such plate and shall not be compressed. This reduction of insulation from the requirements of Section 1102.1.2 shall be limited to 500 square feet (46 m^2) or 20 percent of the total insulated ceiling area, whichever is less. This reduction shall not apply to the U-factor alternative approach in Section 1102.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section 1102.1.5.

1102.2.3 Eave baffle. For air-permeable insulations in vented attics, a baffle shall be installed adjacent to soffit and eave vents. Baffles shall maintain an opening equal or greater than the size of the vent. The baffle shall extend over the top of the attic insulation. The baffle shall be permitted to be any solid material.

1102.2.4 Access hatches and doors. Access doors from conditioned spaces to unconditioned spaces such as attics and crawl spaces shall be weatherstripped and insulated to a level equivalent to the insulation on the surrounding surfaces. Access that prevents damaging or compressing the insulation shall be provided to all equipment. Where loose-fill insulation is installed, a wood-framed or equivalent baffle or retainer shall be installed to prevent the loose-fill insulation from spilling into the living space when the attic access is opened. The baffle or retainer shall provide a permanent means of maintaining the installed R-value of the loose-fill insulation.

Exception: Vertical doors providing access from conditioned spaces to unconditioned spaces that comply with the fenestration requirements of Table 1102.1.2 based on the applicable climate zone specified in Section 1101.7.

1102.2.5 Mass walls. Mass walls where used as a component of the building thermal envelope shall be one of the following:

1. Above-ground walls of concrete block, concrete, insulated concrete form, masonry cavity, brick but not brick veneer, adobe, compressed earth block, rammed earth, solid timber or solid logs.
2. Any wall having a heat capacity greater than or equal to 6 Btu/ft^2 • °F (123 kJ/m^2 • K).

1102.2.6 Steel-frame ceilings, walls, and floors. Steel-frame ceilings, walls, and floors shall comply with the insulation requirements of Table 1102.2.6 or the U-factor requirements of Table 1102.1.4. The calculation of the U-factor

for a steel-frame envelope assembly shall use a series-parallel path calculation method.

TABLE 1102.2.6
STEEL-FRAME CEILING, WALL AND FLOOR INSULATION R-VALUES

WOOD FRAME R-VALUE REQUIREMENT	COLD-FORMED STEEL-FRAME EQUIVALENT R-VALUE[a]
Steel Truss Ceilings[b]	
R-30	R-38 or R-30 + 3 or R-26 + 5
R-38	R-49 or R-38 + 3
R-49	R-38 + 5
Steel Joist Ceilings[b]	
R-30	R-38 in 2 x 4 or 2 x 6 or 2 x 8 R-49 in any framing
R-38	R-49 in 2 x 4 or 2 x 6 or 2 x 8 or 2 x 10
Steel-Framed Wall, 16 inches on center	
R-13	R-13 + 4.2 or R-21 + 2.8 or R-0 + 9.3 or R-15 + 3.8 or R-21 + 3.1
R-13 + 3	R-0 + 11.2 or R-13 + 6.1 or R-15 + 5.7 or R-19 + 5.0 or R-21 + 4.7
R-20	R-0 + 14.0 or R-13 + 8.9 or R-15 + 8.5 or R-19 + 7.8 or R-19 + 6.2 or R-21 + 7.5
R-20 + 5	R-13 + 12.7 or R-15 + 12.3 or R-19 + 11.6 or R-21 + 11.3 or R-25 + 10.9
R-21	R-0 + 14.6 or R-13 + 9.5 or R-15 + 9.1 or R-19 + 8.4 or R-21 + 8.1 or R-25 + 7.7
Steel-Framed Wall, 24 inches on center	
R-13	R-0 + 9.3 or R-13 + 3.0 or R-15 + 2.4
R-13 + 3	R-0 + 11.2 or R-13 + 4.9 or R-15 + 4.3 or R-19 + 3.5 or R-21 + 3.1
R-20	R-0 + 14.0 or R-13 + 7.7 or R-15 + 7.1 or R-19 + 6.3 or R-21 + 5.9
R-20 + 5	R-13 + 11.5 or R-15 + 10.9 or R-19 + 10.1 or R-21 + 9.7 or R-25 + 9.1
R-21	R-0 + 14.6 or R-13 + 8.3 or R-15 + 7.7 or R-19 + 6.9 or R-21 + 6.5 or R-25 + 5.9
Steel Joist Floor	
R-13	R-19 in 2 x 6, or R-19 + 6 in 2 x 8 or 2 x 10
R-19	R-19 + 6 in 2 x 6, or R-19 + 12 in 2 x 8 or 2 x 10

a. The first value is cavity insulation R-value, the second value is continuous insulation R-value. Therefore, for example, "R-30+3" means R-30 cavity insulation plus R-3 continuous insulation.

b. Insulation exceeding the height of the framing shall cover the framing.

1102.2.7 Walls with partial structural sheathing. Where Section 1102.1.2 requires continuous insulation on exterior walls and structural sheathing covers 40 percent or less of the gross area of all exterior walls, the required continuous insulation R-value shall be permitted to be reduced by an amount necessary, but not more than R-3, to result in a consistent total sheathing thickness on areas of the walls covered by structural sheathing. This reduction shall not apply to the

U-factor alternative in Section 1102.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section 1102.1.5.

1102.2.8 Floors. Floor framing-cavity insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking.

Exception: As an alternative, the floor framing-cavity insulation shall be in contact with the topside of sheathing or continuous insulation installed on the bottom side of floor framing where combined with insulation that meets or exceeds the minimum wood frame wall R-value in Table 1102.1.2 and that extends from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing members.

1102.2.9 Basement walls. Walls associated with conditioned basements shall be insulated from the top of the basement wall down to 10 feet (3048 mm) below grade or to the basement floor, whichever is less. Walls associated with unconditioned basements shall comply with this requirement except where the floor overhead is insulated in accordance with Sections 1102.1.2 and 1102.2.8.

1102.2.10 Slab-on-grade floors. Slab-on-grade floors with a floor surface less than 12 inches (305 mm) below grade shall be insulated in accordance with Table 1102.1.2. The insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab on the outside or inside of the foundation wall. Insulation located below grade shall be extended the distance provided in Table 1102.1.2 by any combination of vertical insulation, insulation extending under the slab or insulation extending out from the building. Insulation extending away from the building shall be protected by pavement or by not less than 10 inches (254 mm) of soil. The top edge of the insulation installed between the exterior wall and the edge of the interior slab shall be permitted to be cut at a 45-degree (0.79 rad) angle away from the exterior wall. Slab-edge insulation is not required in jurisdictions designated by the building official as having a very heavy termite infestation.

1102.2.11 Crawl space walls. As an alternative to insulating floors over crawl spaces, crawl space walls shall be insulated provided that the crawl space is not vented to the outdoors. Crawl space wall insulation shall be permanently fastened to the wall and shall extend downward from the floor to the finished grade elevation and then vertically or horizontally for not less than an additional 24 inches (610 mm). Exposed earth in unvented crawl space foundations shall be covered with a continuous Class I vapor retarder in accordance with this code. Joints of the vapor retarder shall overlap by 6 inches (153 mm) and be sealed or taped. The edges of the vapor retarder shall extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) up the stem walls and shall be attached to the stem walls.

1102.2.12 Masonry veneer. Insulation shall not be required on the horizontal portion of a foundation that supports a masonry veneer.

1102.2.13 Sunroom insulation. Sunrooms enclosing conditioned space shall meet the insulation requirements of this code.

Exception: For sunrooms with thermal isolation, and enclosing conditioned space, the following exceptions to the insulation requirements of this code shall apply:

1. The minimum ceiling insulation R-values shall be R-19 in Climate Zones 1 through 4 and R-24 in Climate Zones 5 through 8.
2. The minimum wall insulation R-value shall be R-13 in all climate zones. Walls separating a sunroom with a thermal isolation from conditioned space shall comply with the building thermal envelope requirements of this code.

1102.3 Fenestration (Prescriptive). In addition to the requirements of Section 1102, fenestration shall comply with Sections 1102.3.1 through 1102.3.5.

1102.3.1 U-factor. An area-weighted average of fenestration products shall be permitted to satisfy the U-factor requirements.

1102.3.2 Glazed fenestration SHGC. An area-weighted average of fenestration products more than 50-percent glazed shall be permitted to satisfy the SHGC requirements.

Dynamic glazing shall be permitted to satisfy the SHGC requirements of Table 1102.1.2 provided that the ratio of the higher to lower labeled SHGC is greater than or equal to 2.4, and the dynamic glazing is automatically controlled to modulate the amount of solar gain into the space in multiple steps. Dynamic glazing shall be considered separately from other fenestration, and area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not dynamic glazing shall be prohibited.

Exception: Dynamic glazing shall not be required to comply with this section where both the lower and higher labeled SHGC comply with the requirements of Table 1102.1.2.

1102.3.3 Glazed fenestration exemption. Not greater than 15 square feet (1.4 m^2) of glazed fenestration per dwelling unit shall be exempt from the U-factor and SHGC requirements in Section 1102.1.2. This exemption shall not apply to the U-factor alternative in Section 1102.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section 1102.1.5.

1102.3.4 Opaque door exemption. One side-hinged opaque door assembly not greater than 24 square feet (2.22 m^2) in area shall be exempt from the U-

factor requirement in Section 1102.1.2. This exemption shall not apply to the U-factor alternative in Section 1102.1.4 and the Total UA alternative in Section 1102.1.5.

1102.3.5 Sunroom fenestration. Sunrooms enclosing conditioned space shall comply with the fenestration requirements of this code.

New fenestration separating the sunroom with thermal isolation from conditioned space shall comply with the building thermal envelope requirements of this code.

Exception: In Climate Zones 2 through 8, for sunrooms with thermal isolation and enclosing conditioned space, the fenestration U-factor shall not exceed 0.45 and the skylight U-factor shall not exceed 0.70.

1102.4 Air leakage (Mandatory). The building thermal envelope shall be constructed to limit air leakage in accordance with the requirements of Sections 1102.4.1 through 1102.4.5.

1102.4.1 Building thermal envelope. The building thermal envelope shall comply with Sections 1102.4.1.1 and 1102.4.1.2. The sealing methods between dissimilar materials shall allow for differential expansion and contraction.

1102.4.1.1 Installation. The components of the building thermal envelope as indicated in Table 1102.4.1.1 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the criteria indicated in Table 1102.4.1.1, as applicable to the method of construction.

1102.4.1.2 Testing. The building or dwelling unit shall be tested and verified as having an air leakage rate of not *more than five* air changes per hour. Testing shall be conducted in accordance with RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827 and reported at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pascals). A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the building official. Testing shall be performed at any time after creation of all penetrations of the building thermal envelope.

During testing:

1. Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed, beyond the intended weatherstripping or other infiltration control measures.
2. Dampers including exhaust, intake, makeup air, backdraft and flue dampers shall be closed, but not sealed beyond intended infiltration control measures.
3. Interior doors, where installed at the time of the test, shall be open.

4. Exterior or interior terminations for continuous ventilation systems shall be sealed.
5. Heating and cooling systems, where installed at the time of the test, shall be turned off.
6. Supply and return registers, where installed at the time of the test, shall be fully open.

Exception: *Existing buildings complying with Section 1107.*

1102.4.2 Fireplaces. New wood-burning fireplaces shall have tight-fitting flue dampers or doors, and outdoor combustion air. Where using tight-fitting doors on factory-built fireplaces listed and labeled in accordance with UL 127, the doors shall be tested and listed for the fireplace.

1102.4.3 Fenestration air leakage. Windows, skylights and sliding glass doors shall have an air infiltration rate of not greater than 0.3 cfm per square foot (1.5 L/s/m^2), and for swinging doors not greater than 0.5 cfm per square foot (2.6 L/s/m^2), when tested in accordance with NFRC 400 or AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 by an *approved agency* and listed and labeled by the manufacturer.

Exception: Site-built *fenestration products*.

TABLE 1102.4.1.1
AIR BARRIER AND INSULATION INSTALLATION[a]

COMPONENT	AIR BARRIER CRITERIA	INSULATION INSTALLATION CRITERIA
General requirements	A continuous air barrier shall be installed in the building envelope. The exterior thermal envelope contains a continuous air barrier. Breaks or joints in the air barrier shall be sealed.	Air-permeable insulation shall not be used as a sealing material.
Ceiling/attic	The air barrier in any dropped ceiling or soffit shall be aligned with the insulation and any gaps in the air barrier sealed. Access openings, drop down stairs or knee wall doors to unconditioned attic spaces shall be sealed.	The insulation in any dropped ceiling/soffit shall be aligned with the air barrier.
Walls	The junction of the foundation and sill plate shall be sealed. The junction of the top plate and the top of exterior walls shall be sealed. Knee walls shall be sealed.	Cavities within corners and headers of frame walls shall be insulated by completely filling the cavity with a material having a thermal resistance of not less than R-3 per inch. Exterior thermal envelope insulation for framed walls shall be installed in substantial contact and in continuous alignment with the air barrier.
Windows, skylights and doors	The space between framing and skylights, and the jambs of windows and doors, shall be sealed.	—
Rim joists	Rim joists shall include the air barrier.	Rim joists shall be insulated.

COMPONENT	AIR BARRIER CRITERIA	INSULATION INSTALLATION CRITERIA
Floors including cantilevered floors and floors above garages.	The air barrier shall be installed at any exposed edge of insulation.	Floor framing cavity insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of subfloor decking. Alternatively, floor framing cavity insulation shall be in contact with the top side of sheathing or continuous insulation installed on the underside of floor framing; and extending from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing members.
Crawl space walls	Exposed earth in unvented crawl spaces shall be covered with a Class I vapor retarder with overlapping joints taped.	Crawl space insulation, where provided instead of floor insulation, shall be permanently attached to the walls.
Shafts, penetrations	Duct shafts, utility penetrations, and flue shafts opening to exterior or unconditioned space shall be sealed.	—
Narrow cavities	—	Batts to be installed in narrow cavities shall be cut to fit or narrow cavities shall be filled with insulation that on installation readily conforms to the available cavity space *Narrow cavities less than ½" may be left void.*
Garage separation	Air sealing shall be provided between the garage and conditioned spaces.	—
Recessed lighting	Recessed light fixtures installed in the building thermal envelope shall be sealed to the finished surface.	Recessed light fixtures installed in the building thermal envelope shall be air tight and IC rated.
Plumbing and wiring	—	In exterior walls, batt insulation shall be cut neatly to fit around wiring and plumbing or insulation that on installation, readily conforms to available space, shall extend behind piping and wiring.
Shower/tub on exterior wall	The air barrier installed at exterior walls adjacent to showers and tubs shall separate the wall from the shower or tub.	Exterior walls adjacent to showers and tubs shall be insulated.
Electrical/phone box on exterior walls	The air barrier shall be installed behind electrical and communication boxes. Alternatively, air-sealed boxes shall be installed.	—
HVAC register boots	HVAC supply and return register boots that penetrate building thermal envelope shall be sealed to the subfloor, wall covering or ceiling penetrated by the boot.	—
Concealed sprinklers	Where required to be sealed, concealed fire sprinklers shall only be sealed in a manner that is recommended by the manufacturer. Caulking or other adhesive sealants shall not be used to fill voids between fire sprinkler cover plates and walls or ceilings.	—

a. Inspection of log walls shall be in accordance with the provisions of ICC 400.

1102.4.4 Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances. In Climate Zones 3 through 8, where open combustion air ducts provide combustion air to open combustion fuel-burning appliances, the appliances and combustion air opening shall be located outside the building thermal envelope or enclosed in a room

that is isolated from inside the thermal envelope. Such rooms shall be sealed and insulated in accordance with the envelope requirements of Table 1102.1.2, where the walls, floors and ceilings shall meet a minimum of the basement wall R-value requirement. The door into the room shall be fully gasketed and any water lines and ducts in the room insulated in accordance with Section 1103. The combustion air duct shall be insulated where it passes through conditioned space to an R-value of not less than R-8.

Exceptions:

1. Direct vent appliances with both intake and exhaust pipes installed continuous to the outside.
2. Fireplaces and stoves complying with Sections 1102.4.2 and 1006.

1102.4.5 Recessed lighting. Recessed luminaires installed in the building thermal envelope shall be sealed to limit air leakage between conditioned and unconditioned spaces. Recessed luminaires shall be IC-rated and labeled as having an air leakage rate of not greater than 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at a pressure differential of 1.57 psf (75 Pa). Recessed luminaires shall be sealed with a gasket or caulked between the housing and the interior wall or ceiling covering.

1102.5 Maximum fenestration U-factor and SHGC (Mandatory). The area-weighted average maximum fenestration U-factor permitted using tradeoffs from Section 1102.1.5 or 1105 shall be 0.48 in Climate Zones 4 and 5 for vertical fenestration, and 0.75 in Climate Zones 4 through 8 for skylights.

SECTION 1103
SYSTEMS

1103.1 Controls (Mandatory). Not less than one thermostat shall be provided for each separate heating and cooling system.

1103.1.1 Programmable thermostat. The thermostat controlling the primary heating or cooling system of the dwelling unit shall be capable of controlling the heating and cooling system on a daily schedule to maintain different temperature set points at different times of the day. This thermostat shall include the capability to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain zone temperatures of not less than 55°F (13°C) to not greater than 85°F (29°C). The thermostat shall be programmed initially by the manufacturer with a heating temperature setpoint of not greater than 70°F (21°C) and a cooling temperature setpoint of not less than 78°F (26°C).

1103.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat (Mandatory). Heat pumps having supplementary electric-resistance heat shall have controls that, except during

defrost, prevent supplemental heat operation when the heat pump compressor can meet the heating load.

1103.2 Hot water boiler outdoor temperature setback. Hot water boilers that supply heat to the building through one- or two-pipe heating systems shall have an outdoor setback control that decreases the boiler water temperature based on the outdoor temperature.

1103.3 Ducts. Ducts and air handlers shall be installed in accordance with Sections 1103.3.1 through 1103.3.8.

1103.3.1 Insulation (Prescriptive). Supply and return ducts in attics shall be insulated to an R-value of not less than R-8 for ducts 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter and larger and not less than R-6 for ducts smaller than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter. Supply and return ducts in other portions of the building shall be insulated to not less than R-6 for ducts 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter and to not less than R-4.2 for ducts smaller than 3 inches (76.2 mm) in diameter.

Exception: Ducts located completely inside *conditioned space*.

1103.3.2 Sealing (Mandatory). Ducts, air handlers and filter boxes shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with Section 1601.4.1.

1103.3.2.1 Sealed air handler. Air handlers shall have a manufacturer's designation for an air leakage of not greater than 2 percent of the design airflow rate when tested in accordance with ASHRAE 193.

1103.3.3 Duct testing (Mandatory). Ducts shall be pressure tested to determine air leakage by one of the following methods:

1. Rough-in test: Total leakage shall be measured with a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure if installed at the time of the test. Registers shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.
2. Postconstruction test: Total leakage shall be measured with a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure. Registers shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.

Exceptions:

1. A duct air-leakage test shall not be required where the ducts and air handlers are located entirely *inside conditioned space*.
2. A duct air-leakage test shall not be required for ducts serving heat or energy recovery ventilators that are not integrated with ducts serving heating or cooling systems.

A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the building official.

1103.3.4 Duct leakage (Prescriptive). The total leakage of the ducts, where measured in accordance with Section *1103.3.3*, shall be as follows:

1. Rough-in test: The total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of conditioned floor area where the air handler is installed at the time of the test. Where the air handler is not installed at the time of the test, the total leakage shall be less than or equal to 3 cubic feet per minute (85 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of conditioned floor area.
2. Postconstruction test: Total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of conditioned floor area.

1103.3.5 Building cavities (Mandatory). Building framing cavities shall not be used as *supply* ducts.

1103.3.6 Ducts buried within ceiling insulation. Where supply and return air ducts are partially or completely buried in ceiling insulation, such ducts shall comply with all of the following:

1. The supply and return duct shall have an insulation R-value not less than R-8.
2. At all points along each duct, the sum of the ceiling insulation R-values against and above the top of the duct, and against and below the bottom of the duct shall be not less than R-19, excluding the R-value of the duct insulation.
3. *Deleted.*

1103.3.6.1 Effective R-value of deeply buried ducts. Where using a simulated energy performance analysis, sections of ducts that are installed in accordance with Section 1103.3.6, located directly on, or within 5.5 inches (140 mm) of the ceiling, surrounded with blown-in attic insulation having an R-value of R-30 or greater and located such that the top of the duct is not less than 3.5 inches (89 mm) below the top of the insulation, shall be considered as having an effective duct insulation R-value of R-25.

1103.3.7 Ducts located in conditioned space. For ducts to be considered as inside a conditioned space, such ducts shall comply with either of the following:

1. The duct system is located completely within the continuous air barrier and *inside conditioned space*.
2. The ducts are buried within ceiling insulation in accordance with Section 1103.3.6 and all of the following conditions exist:

2.1. The air handler is located completely within the continuous air barrier and *inside conditioned space*.

2.2. The duct leakage, as measured either by a rough-in test of the ducts or a post-construction total system leakage test to outside the building thermal envelope in accordance with Section 1103.3.4, is less than or equal to 1.5 cubic feet per minute (42.5 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of conditioned floor area served by the duct system.

2.3. The ceiling insulation R-value installed against and above the insulated duct is greater than or equal to the proposed ceiling insulation R-value, less the R-value of the insulation on the duct.

1103.4 Mechanical system piping insulation (Mandatory). Mechanical system piping capable of carrying fluids greater than 105°F (41°C) or less than 55°F (13°C) shall be insulated to an R-value of not less than R-3.

1103.4.1 Protection of piping insulation. Piping insulation exposed to weather shall be protected from damage, including that caused by sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance and wind. The protection shall provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Adhesive tape shall be prohibited.

1103.5 Service hot water systems. Energy conservation measures for service hot water systems shall be in accordance with Sections 1103.5.1 through 1103.5.4.

1103.5.1 Heated water circulation and temperature maintenance systems (Mandatory). Heated water circulation systems shall be in accordance with Section 1103.5.1.1. Heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with Section 1103.5.1.2. Automatic controls, temperature sensors and pumps shall be accessible. Manual controls shall be readily accessible.

1103.5.1.1 Circulation systems. Heated water circulation systems shall be provided with a circulation pump. The system return pipe shall be a dedicated return pipe or a cold water supply pipe. Gravity and thermosyphon circulation systems shall be prohibited. Controls for circulating hot water system pumps shall start the pump based on the identification of a demand for hot water within the occupancy. The controls shall automatically turn off the pump when the water in the circulation loop is at the desired temperature and when there is no demand for hot water.

1103.5.1.2 Heat trace systems. Electric heat trace systems shall comply with IEEE 515.1 or UL 515. Controls for such systems shall automatically adjust the energy input to the heat tracing to maintain the desired water

temperature in the piping in accordance with the times when heated water is used in the occupancy.

1103.5.2 Demand recirculation water systems. Demand recirculation water systems shall have controls that comply with both of the following:

1. The controls shall start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fixture or sensing the flow of hot or tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.
2. The controls shall limit the temperature of the water entering the cold water piping to not greater than 104ºF (40ºC).

1103.5.3 Hot water pipe insulation (Prescriptive). Insulation for hot water piping with a thermal resistance, R-value, of not less than R-3 shall be applied to the following:

1. Piping $^{3}/_{4}$-inch (19 mm) and larger in nominal diameter.
2. Piping serving more than one dwelling unit.
3. Piping located outside the conditioned space.
4. Piping from the water heater to a distribution manifold.
5. Piping located under a floor slab.
6. Buried piping.
7. Supply and return piping in recirculation systems other than demand recirculation systems.

1103.5.4 Drain water heat recovery units. Drain water heat recovery units shall comply with CSA B55.2. Drain water heat recovery units shall be tested in accordance with CSA B55.1. Potable water-side pressure loss of drain water heat recovery units shall be less than 3 psi (20.7 kPa) for individual units connected to one or two showers. Potable water-side pressure loss of drain water heat recovery units shall be less than 2 psi (13.8 kPa) for individual units connected to three or more showers.

1103.6 Mechanical ventilation (Mandatory). The building shall be provided with ventilation that complies with the requirements of Section *1505* or with other approved means of ventilation. Outdoor air intakes and exhausts shall have automatic or gravity dampers that close when the ventilation system is not operating.

1103.6.1 Whole-house mechanical ventilation system fan efficacy. Fans used to provide whole-house mechanical ventilation shall meet the efficacy requirements of Table 1103.6.1.

Exception: Where an air handler that is integral to tested and listed HVAC equipment is used to provide whole-house mechanical ventilation, the air handler shall be powered by an electronically commutated motor.

TABLE 1103.6.1
WHOLE-HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM FAN EFFICACY[a]

FAN LOCATION	AIR FLOW RATE MINIMUM (CFM)	MINIMUM EFFICACY (CFM/WATT)	AIR FLOW RATE MAXIMUM (CFM)
HRV or ERV	Any	1.2 cfm/watt	Any
Range hoods	Any	2.8 cfm/watt	Any
In-line fan	Any	2.8 cfm/watt	Any
Bathroom, utility room	10	1.4 cfm/watt	< 90
Bathroom, utility room	90	2.8 cfm/watt	Any

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 28.3 L/min.

a. When tested in accordance with HVI Standard 916.

1103.7 Equipment sizing and efficiency rating (Mandatory). Heating and cooling equipment shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual S based on building loads calculated in accordance with ACCA Manual J or other approved heating and cooling calculation methodologies. New or replacement heating and cooling equipment shall have an efficiency rating equal to or greater than the minimum required by federal law for the geographic location where the equipment is installed.

1103.8 Systems serving multiple dwelling units (Mandatory). Systems serving multiple dwelling units shall comply with Sections 403 and 404 of the International Energy Conservation Code—Commercial Provisions instead of Section 1103.

1103.9 Snow melt system controls (Mandatory). Snow- and ice-melting systems, supplied through energy service to the building, shall include automatic controls capable of shutting off the system when the pavement temperature is greater than 50°F (10°C) and precipitation is not falling, and an automatic or manual control that will allow shutoff when the outdoor temperature is greater than 40°F (4.8°C).

1103.10 Pools and permanent spa energy consumption (Mandatory). *Deleted.*

SECTION 1104
ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING SYSTEMS (MANDATORY)

1104.1 Lighting equipment (Mandatory). Not less than 90 percent of the permanently installed lighting fixtures shall contain only high-efficacy lamps.

1104.1.1 Lighting equipment (Mandatory). Fuel gas lighting systems shall not have continuously burning pilot lights.

SECTION 1105
SIMULATED PERFORMANCE ALTERNATIVE (PERFORMANCE)

1105.1 Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using simulated energy performance analysis. Such analysis shall include heating, cooling, mechanical ventilation and service water heating energy only.

1105.2 Mandatory requirements. Compliance with this section requires that the mandatory provisions identified in Section *1101.14-1104* be met. Supply and return ducts not completely inside the building thermal envelope shall be insulated to an R-value of not less than R-6.

1105.3 Performance-based compliance. Compliance based on simulated energy performance requires that a proposed residence (proposed design) be shown to have an annual energy cost that is less than or equal to the annual energy cost of the standard reference design. Energy prices shall be taken from a source approved by the building official, such as the Department of Energy, Energy Information Administration's State Energy Data System Prices and Expenditures reports. Building officials shall be permitted to require time-of-use pricing in energy cost calculations.

Exception: The energy use based on source energy expressed in Btu (J) or Btu per square foot (J/m^2) of conditioned floor area shall be permitted to be substituted for the energy cost. The source energy multiplier for electricity shall be 3.16. The source energy multiplier for fuels other than electricity shall be 1.1.

1105.4 Documentation. Documentation of the software used for the performance design and the parameters for the building shall be in accordance with Sections 1105.4.1 through 1105.4.3.

1105.4.1 Compliance software tools. Documentation verifying that the methods and accuracy of the compliance software tools conform to the provisions of this section shall be provided to the building official.

1105.4.2 Compliance report. Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the proposed design complies with Section 1105.3. A compliance report on the proposed design shall be submitted with the application for the building permit. Upon completion of the building, a compliance report based on the as-built condition of the building shall be

submitted to the building official before a certificate of occupancy is issued. Batch sampling of buildings to determine energy code compliance shall only be allowed for stacked multiple-family units.

Compliance reports shall include information in accordance with Sections 1105.4.2.1 and 1105.4.2.2. Where the proposed design of a building could be built on different sites where the cardinal orientation of the building on each site is different, compliance of the proposed design for the purposes of the application for the building permit shall be based on the worst-case orientation, worst-case configuration, worst-case building air leakage and worst-case duct leakage. Such worst-case parameters shall be used as inputs to the compliance software for energy analysis.

1105.4.2.1 Compliance report for permit application. A compliance report submitted with the application for building permit shall include the following:

1. Building street address, or other building site identification.
2. A statement indicating that the proposed design complies with Section 1105.3.
3. An inspection checklist documenting the building component characteristics of the proposed design as indicated in Table 1105.5.2(1). The inspection checklist shall show results for both the standard reference design and the proposed design with user inputs to the compliance software to generate the results.
4. A site-specific energy analysis report that is in compliance with Section 1105.3.
5. The name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the report.
6. The name and version of the compliance software tool.

1105.4.2.2 Compliance report for certificate of occupancy. A compliance report submitted for obtaining the certificate of occupancy shall include the following:

1. Building street address, or other building site identification.
2. A statement indicating that the as-built building complies with Section 1105.3.
3. A certificate indicating that the building passes the performance matrix for code compliance and indicating the energy saving features of the buildings.
4. A site-specific energy analysis report that is in compliance with Section 1105.3.
5. The name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the report.
6. The name and version of the compliance software tool.

1105.4.3 Additional documentation. The building official shall be permitted to require the following documents:

1. Documentation of the building component characteristics of the standard reference design.
2. A certification signed by the *owner or the owner's representative* providing the building component characteristics of the proposed design as given in Table 1105.5.2(1).
3. Documentation of the actual values used in the software calculations for the proposed design.

1105.5 Calculation procedure. Calculations of the performance design shall be in accordance with Sections 1105.5.1 and 1105.5.2.

1105.5.1 General. Except as specified by this section, the standard reference design and proposed design shall be configured and analyzed using identical methods and techniques.

1105.5.2 Residence specifications. The standard reference design and proposed design shall be configured and analyzed as specified by Table 1105.5.2(1). Table 1105.5.2(1) shall include, by reference, all notes contained in Table 1102.1.2.

TABLE 1105.5.2(1)
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Above-grade walls	Type: mass where the proposed wall is a mass wall; otherwise wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table 1102.1.4.	As proposed
	Solar absorptance = 0.75.	As proposed
	Emittance = 0.90.	As proposed
Basement and crawl space walls	Type: same as proposed.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table 1102.1.4, with the insulation layer on the interior side of the walls.	As proposed
Above-grade floors	Type: wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table 1102.1.4.	As proposed
Ceilings	Type: wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table 1102.1.4.	As proposed
Roofs	Type: composition shingle on wood sheathing.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	Solar absorptance = 0.75.	As proposed
	Emittance = 0.90.	As proposed
Attics	Type: vented with an aperture of 1 ft^2 per 300 ft^2 of ceiling area.	As proposed
Foundations	Type: same as proposed.	As proposed
	Foundation wall area above and below grade and soil characteristics: same as proposed.	As proposed
Opaque doors	Area: 40 ft^2.	As proposed
	Orientation: North.	As proposed
	U-factor: same as fenestration as specified in Table 1102.1.4.	As proposed
Vertical fenestration other than opaque doors	Total area[b] = (a) The proposed glazing area, where the proposed glazing area is less than 15 percent of the conditioned floor area. (b) 15 percent of the conditioned floor area, where the proposed glazing area is 15 percent or more of the conditioned floor area.	As proposed
	Orientation: equally distributed to four cardinal compass orientations (*N*, E, S & W).	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table 1102.1.4.	As proposed
	SHGC: as specified in Table 1102.1.2 except for *climate zones* without an SHGC requirement, the SHGC shall be equal to 0.40.	As proposed
	Interior shade fraction: 0.92-(0.21 × SHGC for the standard reference design).	Interior shade fraction: 0.92-(0.21 × SHGC as proposed)
	External shading: none	As proposed
Skylights	None	As proposed
Thermally isolated sunrooms	None	As proposed

(continued)

TABLE 1105.5.2(1)—continued
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Air exchange rate	The air leakage rate at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pa) shall be *Climate Zones* 1 and 2: 5 air changes per hour. *Climate Zones* 3 through 8: 3 air changes per hour. The mechanical ventilation rate shall be in addition to the air leakage rate and shall be the same as in the proposed design, but not greater than $0.01 \times CFA + 7.5 \times (N_{br} + 1)$ where: CFA = conditioned floor area, ft^2. N_{br} = number of bedrooms. Energy recovery shall not be assumed for mechanical ventilation.	The measured air exchange rate[a]. The mechanical ventilation rate[b] shall be in addition to the air leakage rate and shall be as proposed.
Mechanical ventilation	Where mechanical ventilation is not specified in the proposed design: None Where mechanical ventilation is specified in the proposed design, the annual vent fan energy use, in units of kWh/yr, shall equal $(1/e_f) \times [0.0876 \times CFA + 65.7 \times (N_{br}+1)]$ where: e_f = the minimum exhaust fan efficacy, as specified in Table 403.6.1, corresponding to a flow rate of $0.01 \times CFA + 7.5 \times (N_{br}+1)$ CFA = conditioned floor area, ft^2. N_{br} = number of bedrooms.	As proposed
Internal gains	IGain, in units of Btu/day per dwelling unit, shall equal $17{,}900 + 23.8 \times CFA + 4{,}104 \times N_{br}$ where: CFA = conditioned floor area, ft^2. N_{br} = number of bedrooms.	Same as standard reference design.
Internal mass	Internal mass for furniture and contents: 8 pounds per square foot of floor area.	Same as standard reference design, plus any additional mass specifically designed as a thermal storage element[c] but not integral to the building envelope or structure.
Structural mass	For masonry floor slabs: 80 percent of floor area covered by R-2 carpet and pad, and 20 percent of floor directly exposed to room air.	As proposed
	For masonry basement walls, as proposed, but with insulation as specified in Table 1102.1.4, located on the interior side of the walls.	As proposed
	For other walls, ceilings, floors, and interior walls: wood frame construction.	As proposed
Heating systems[d, e]	For other than electric heating without a heat pump: as proposed. Where the proposed design utilizes electric heating without a heat pump, the standard reference design shall be an air source heat pump meeting the requirements of Section 403 of the IECC—Commercial Provisions. Capacity: sized in accordance with Section 1103.7.	As proposed
Cooling systems[d, f]	As proposed. Capacity: sized in accordance with Section 1103.7.	As proposed
Service water heating[d, e, f, g]	As proposed. Use: same as proposed design.	As proposed Use, in units of gal/day = $30 + (10 \times N_{br})$ where: N_{br} = number of bedrooms.

(continued)

TABLE 1105.5.2(1)—continued
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Thermal distribution systems	Duct insulation: in accordance with Section 1103.3.1. A thermal distribution system efficiency (DSE) of 0.88 shall be applied to both the heating and cooling system efficiencies for all systems other than tested duct systems. **Exception:** For nonducted heating and cooling systems that do not have a fan, the standard reference design thermal distribution system efficiency (DSE) shall be 1. For tested duct systems, the leakage rate shall be 4 cfm (113.3 L/min) per 100 ft^2 (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* at a pressure of differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa).	Duct insulation: as proposed. As tested or, where not tested, as specified in Table 1105.5.2(2).
Thermostat	Type: Manual, cooling temperature setpoint = 75°F; Heating temperature setpoint = 72°F.	Same as standard reference design.

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.93 m^2, 1 British thermal unit = 1055 J, 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m^2, 1 gallon (US) = 3.785 L, °C = (°F-32)/1.8, 1 degree = 0.79 rad.

a. *The measured air exchange rate shall be determined by testing conducted in accordance with RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827*. Hourly calculations as specified in the ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals, or the equivalent, shall be used to determine the energy loads resulting from infiltration.

b. The combined air exchange rate for infiltration and mechanical ventilation shall be determined in accordance with Equation 43 of 2001 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals, page 26.24 and the "Whole-house Ventilation" provisions of 2001 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals, page 26.19 for intermittent mechanical ventilation.

c. Thermal storage element shall mean a component that is not part of the floors, walls or ceilings that is part of a passive solar system, and that provides thermal storage such as enclosed water columns, rock beds, or phase-change containers. A thermal storage element shall be in the same room as fenestration that faces within 15 degrees (0.26 rad) of true south, or shall be connected to such a room with pipes or ducts that allow the element to be actively charged.

d. For a proposed design with multiple heating, cooling or water heating systems using different fuel types, the applicable standard reference design system capacities and fuel types shall be weighted in accordance with their respective loads as calculated by accepted engineering practice for each equipment and fuel type present.

e. For a proposed design without a proposed heating system, a heating system having the prevailing federal minimum efficiency shall be assumed for both the standard reference design and proposed design.

f. For a proposed design home without a proposed cooling system, an electric air conditioner having the prevailing federal minimum efficiency shall be assumed for both the standard reference design and the proposed design.

g. For a proposed design with a nonstorage-type water heater, a 40-gallon storage-type water heater having the prevailing federal minimum energy factor for the same fuel as the predominant heating fuel type shall be assumed. For a proposed design without a proposed water heater, a 40-gallon storage-type water heater with the prevailing federal minimum efficiency for the same fuel as the predominant heating fuel type shall be assumed for both the proposed design and standard reference design.

h. For residences with conditioned basements, R-2 and R-4 residences, and for townhouses, the following formula shall be used to determine glazing area:

$$AF = A_S \times FA \times F$$

where:

AF = Total glazing area.
A_S = Standard reference design total glazing area.

FA = Above-grade thermal boundary gross wall area)/(above-grade boundary wall area + 0.5 × below-grade boundary wall area).

F = (above-grade thermal boundary wall area)/(above-grade thermal boundary wall area + common wall area) or 0.56, whichever is greater.

and where:

Thermal boundary wall is any wall that separates conditioned space from unconditioned space or ambient conditions.

Above-grade thermal boundary wall is any thermal boundary wall component not in contact with soil.

Below-grade boundary wall is any thermal boundary wall in soil contact.

Common wall area is the area of walls shared with an adjoining dwelling unit. L and CFA are in the same units.

TABLE 1105.5.2(2)
DEFAULT DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM EFFICIENCIES FOR PROPOSED DESIGNS[a]

DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CONFIGURATION AND CONDITION	FORCED AIR SYSTEMS	HYDRONIC SYSTEMS[b]
Distribution system components located in unconditioned space	—	0.95
Untested distribution systems entirely located in conditioned space[c]	0.88	1
"Ductless" systems[d]	1	—

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.47 L/s, 1 square foot = 0.093m^2, 1 pound per square inch = 6895 Pa, 1 inch water gauge = 1250 Pa.

a. Default values this table are for untested distribution systems, which must still meet minimum requirements for duct system insulation.

b. Hydronic systems shall mean those systems that distribute heating and cooling energy directly to individual spaces using liquids pumped through closed-loop piping and that do not depend on ducted, forced airflow to maintain space temperatures.

c. Entire system in conditioned space shall mean that no component of the distribution system, including the air handler unit, is located outside of the conditioned space.

d. Ductless systems shall be allowed to have forced airflow across a coil but shall not have any ducted airflow external to the manufacturer's air handler enclosure.

1105.6 Calculation software tools. Calculation software, where used, shall be in accordance with Sections 1105.6.1 through 1105.6.3.

1105.6.1 Minimum capabilities. Calculation procedures used to comply with this section shall be software tools capable of calculating the annual energy consumption of all building elements that differ between the standard reference design and the proposed design and shall include the following capabilities:

1. Computer generation of the standard reference design using only the input for the proposed design. The calculation procedure shall not allow the user to directly modify the building component characteristics of the standard reference design.
2. Calculation of whole-building (as a single zone) sizing for the heating and cooling equipment in the standard reference design residence in accordance with Section 1103.6.

3. Calculations that account for the effects of indoor and outdoor temperatures and part-load ratios on the performance of heating, ventilating and air-conditioning equipment based on climate and equipment sizing.
4. Printed building official inspection checklist listing each of the proposed design component characteristics from Table 1105.5.2(1) determined by the analysis to provide compliance, along with their respective performance ratings such as R-value, U-factor, SHGC, HSPF, AFUE, SEER and EF.

1105.6.2 Specific approval. Performance analysis tools meeting the applicable provisions of Section 1105 shall be permitted to be approved. Tools are permitted to be approved based on meeting a specified threshold for a jurisdiction. The building official shall be permitted to approve such tools for a specified application or limited scope.

1105.6.3 Input values. When calculations require input values not specified by Sections 1102, 1103, 1104 and 1105, those input values shall be taken from an approved source.

SECTION 1106
ENERGY RATING INDEX
COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVE

1106.1 Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using an Energy Rating Index (ERI) analysis.

1106.2 Mandatory requirements. Compliance with this section requires that the provisions identified in Sections *1101.14* through 1104 indicated as "mandatory" and in Section 1103.5.3 be met. The building thermal envelope shall be greater than or equal to levels of efficiency and Solar Heat Gain Coefficients in Table 402.1.1 or 402.1.3 of the 2009 International Energy Conservation Code.

Exception: Supply and return ducts not completely inside the building thermal envelope shall be insulated to an R-value of not less than R-6.

1106.3 Energy rating index. The Energy Rating Index (ERI) shall be determined in accordance with RESNET/ICC 301 except that the ERI reference design ventilation rate shall be in accordance with Equation 11-1 *and the ERI rated design ventilation rate shall comply with the mechanical ventilation requirements of the RCO Section 1505.*

Ventilation rate, CFM = (0.01 × total square foot area of house) + [7.5 × (number of bedrooms + 1)] **(Equation 11-1)**

Energy used to recharge or refuel a vehicle used for transportation on roads that are not on the building site shall not be included in the ERI reference design or the rated design.

1106.4 ERI-based compliance. Compliance based on an ERI analysis requires that the rated design be shown to have an ERI less than or equal to the appropriate value indicated in Table 1106.4 when compared to the ERI reference design.

TABLE 1106.4
MAXIMUM ENERGY RATING INDEX

CLIMATE ZONE	ENERGY RATING INDEX[a]
4	62
5	61

a. Where on-site renewable energy is included for compliance using the ERI analysis of Section 1106.4, the building shall meet the mandatory requirements of Section 1106.2, and the building thermal envelope shall be greater than or equal to the levels of efficiency and SHGC in Table 1102.1.2 or Table 1102.1.4.

1106.5 Verification. Verification of compliance with Section 1106 shall be *submitted to the residential building official*.

1106.6 Documentation. Documentation of the software used to determine the ERI and the parameters for the residential building shall be in accordance with Sections 1106.6.1 through 1106.6.3.

1106.6.1 Compliance software tools. Software tools used for determining ERI shall be Approved Software Rating Tools in accordance with RESNET/ICC 301.

1106.6.2 Compliance report. Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the ERI of the rated design complies with Sections 1106.3 and 1106.4. The compliance documentation shall include the following information:

1. Address or other identification of the residential building.
2. An inspection checklist documenting the building component characteristics of the rated design. The inspection checklist shall show results for both the ERI reference design and the rated design, and shall document all inputs entered by the user necessary to reproduce the results.
3. Name of individual completing the compliance report.
4. Name and version of the compliance software tool.

Exception: Where an otherwise identical building model is offered in multiple orientations, compliance for any orientation shall be permitted by

documenting that the building meets the performance requirements in each of the four (north, east, south and west) cardinal orientations.

1106.6.3 Additional documentation. The code official shall be permitted to require the following documents:

1. Documentation of the building component characteristics of the ERI reference design.
2. A certification signed by the *owner or the owner's representative* providing the building component characteristics of the rated design.
3. Documentation of the actual values used in the software calculations for the rated design.

1106.6.4 Specific approval. Performance analysis tools meeting the applicable sections of Section 1106 shall be approved. Documentation demonstrating the approval of performance analysis tools in accordance with Section 1106.6.1 shall be provided.

1106.6.5 Input values. Where calculations require input values not specified by Sections 1102, 1103, 1104 and 1105, those input values shall be taken from RESNET/ICC 301.

SECTION 1107
EXISTING BUILDINGS—GENERAL

1107.1 Scope. The provisions of Sections 1107 through 1111 shall control the alteration, repair, addition and change of occupancy of existing buildings and structures. *Where provisions of Sections 1107 through 1111 conflict with Section 113, the provisions of Section 113 shall take precedence.*

1107.1.1 Additions, alterations, or repairs: General. Additions, alterations, or repairs to an existing building, building system or portion thereof shall comply with Section 1108, 1109 or 1110. Unaltered portions of the existing building or building supply system shall not be required to comply with this chapter.

1107.2 Existing buildings. Except as specified in this chapter, this code shall not be used to require the removal, alteration or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing building or building system lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of this code.

1107.3 Maintenance. Buildings and structures, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices and systems that are required by this code shall be maintained in compliance with the code edition under which

installed. The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of buildings and structures. The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of energy conservation, fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures.

1107.4 Compliance. Alterations, repairs, additions and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing buildings and structures shall comply with the provisions for alterations, repairs, additions and changes of occupancy or relocation, respectively, in this code.

1107.4.1 Compliance alternative for existing buildings. *Table 1107.4.1 may be used for existing buildings in lieu of Table 1102.1.2.*

TABLE 1107.4.1
INSULATION AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS BY COMPONENT[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION U-FACTOR[b]	SKYLIGHT[b] U-FACTOR	GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC[b]	CEILING R-VALUE	WOOD FRAME WALL R-VALUE	MASS WALL R-VALUE[i]	FLOOR R-VALUE	BASEMENT[c] WALL R-VALUE	SLAB[d] R-VALUE AND DEPTH	CRAWL SPACE[c] WALL R-VALUE
4	0.35	0.60	NR	38	13	5/10	19	10/13	10, 2 ft	10/13
5	0.35	0.60	NR	38	20 or 13 + 5[h]	13/17	30[g]	10/13	10, 2 ft	10/13

a. *R-values are minimums. U-factors and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) are maximums. R-19 batts compressed in to nominal 2 x 6 framing cavity such that the R-value is reduced by R-1 or more shall be marked with the compressed batt R-value in addition to the full thickness R-value.*

b. *The fenestration U-factor column excludes skylights. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.*

c. *"10/13" means R-10 continuous insulated sheathing on the interior or exterior of the home or R-13 cavity insulation at the interior of the basement wall.*

d. *R-5 shall be added to the required slab edge R-values for heated slabs.*

e. *Deleted.*

f. *Deleted.*

g. *Or insulation sufficient to fill the framing cavity, R-19 minimum.*

h. *"13+5" means R-13 cavity insulation plus R-5 insulated sheathing. If structural sheathing covers 25% or less of the exterior, insulating sheathing is not required where structural sheathing is used. If structural sheathing covers more than 25% of exterior, structural sheathing shall be supplemented with insulated sheathing of at least R-2.*

i. *The second R-value applies when more than half the insulation is on the interior of the mass wall.*

j. *Deleted.*

1107.5 New and replacement materials. Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for repairs, provided that hazards to life, health or property are not created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not allow their use in buildings of similar occupancy, purpose and location.

1107.6 Historic buildings. Provisions of this chapter relating to the construction, repair, alteration, restoration and movement of structures, and change of occupancy shall not be mandatory for historic buildings provided that a report has been submitted to the building official and signed by the owner, a registered design

professional, or a representative of the State Preservation Office *at the Ohio History Connection* or the historic preservation authority having jurisdiction, demonstrating that compliance with that provision would threaten, degrade or destroy the historic form, fabric or function of the building.

SECTION 1108
ADDITIONS

1108.1 General. Additions to an existing building, building system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this chapter as they relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portion of the existing building or building system to comply with this chapter. Additions shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing building systems. An addition shall be deemed to comply with this chapter where the addition alone complies, where the existing building and addition comply with this chapter as a single building, or where the building with the addition does not use more energy than the existing building. Additions shall be in accordance with Section 1108.1.1 or 1108.1.2.

1108.1.1 Prescriptive compliance. Additions shall comply with Sections 1108.1.1.1 through 1108.1.1.4.

1108.1.1.1 Building envelope. New building envelope assemblies that are part of the addition shall comply with Sections 1102.1, 1102.2, 1102.3.1 through 1102.3.5, and 1102.4.

Exceptions:

1. Where unconditioned space is changed to conditioned space, the building envelope of the addition shall comply where the Total UA, as determined in Section 1102.1.5, of the existing building and the addition, and any alterations that are part of the project, is less than or equal to the Total UA generated for the existing building.
2. *Building thermal envelope testing is not required.*

1108.1.1.2 Heating and cooling systems. New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the addition shall comply with Section 1103.

Exception: Where ducts from an existing heating and cooling system are extended to an addition, duct systems with less than 40 linear feet (12.19 m) in unconditioned spaces shall not be required to be tested in accordance with Section 1103.3.3

1108.1.1.3 Service hot water systems. New service hot water systems that are part of the addition shall comply with Section 1103.4.

1108.1.1.4 Lighting. New lighting systems that are part of the addition shall comply with Section 1104.1.

1108.1.2 Existing plus addition compliance (Simulated Performance Alternative). Where unconditioned space is changed to conditioned space, the addition shall comply where the annual energy cost or energy use of the addition and the existing building, and any alterations that are part of the project, is less than or equal to the annual energy cost of the existing building when modeled in accordance with Section 1105. The addition and any alterations that are part of the project shall comply with Section 1105 in its entirety.

SECTION 1109
ALTERATIONS

1109.1 General. Alterations to any building or structure shall comply with the requirements of the code for new construction. Alterations shall be such that the existing building or structure is not less conforming with the provisions of this chapter than the existing building or structure was prior to the alteration.

Alterations to an existing building, building system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this chapter as they relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portions of the existing building or building system to comply with this chapter. Alterations shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing building systems. Alterations shall be such that the existing building or structure does not use more energy than the existing building or structure prior to the alteration. Alterations to existing buildings shall comply with Sections 1109.1.1 through 1109.2.

1109.1.1 Building envelope. Building envelope assemblies that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section 1102.1.2 or 1102.1.4, Sections 1102.2.1 through 1102.2.13, 1102.3.1, 1102.3.2, 1102.4.3 and 1102.4.5.

Exception: The following alterations shall not be required to comply with the requirements for new construction provided that the energy use of the building is not increased:

1. Storm windows installed over existing fenestration.
2. Existing ceiling, wall or floor cavities exposed during construction provided that these cavities are filled with insulation.
3. Construction where the existing roof, wall or floor cavity is not exposed.
4. Roof recover.
5. Roofs without insulation in the cavity and where the sheathing or insulation is exposed during reroofing shall be insulated either above or below the sheathing.

6. Surface-applied window film installed on existing single-pane fenestration assemblies to reduce solar heat gain provided that the code does not require the glazing or fenestration assembly to be replaced.

1109.1.1.1 Replacement fenestration. Where some or all of an existing fenestration unit is replaced with a new fenestration product, including sash and glazing, the replacement fenestration unit shall meet the applicable requirements for U-factor and SHGC as specified in Table 1102.1.2. Where more than one replacement fenestration unit is to be installed, an area-weighted average of the U-factor, SHGC or both of all replacement fenestration units shall be an alternative that can be used to show compliance.

1109.1.2 Heating and cooling systems. New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section 1103.

Exception: Where ducts from an existing heating and cooling system are extended, duct systems with less than 40 linear feet (12.19 m) in unconditioned spaces shall not be required to be tested in accordance with Section 1103.3.3.

1109.1.3 Service hot water systems. New service hot water systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section 1103.5.

1109.1.4 Lighting. New lighting systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section 1104.1.

Exception: Alterations that replace less than 50 percent of the luminaires in a space, provided that such alterations do not increase the installed interior lighting power.

1109.2 Change in space conditioning. Any nonconditioned or low energy space that is altered to become conditioned space shall be required to be brought into full compliance with this chapter.

Exception: Where the simulated performance option in Section 1105 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the proposed design is permitted to be 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise allowed by Section 1105.3.

SECTION 1110
REPAIRS

1110.1 General. Buildings, structures and parts thereof shall be repaired in compliance with Section 1107.3 and this section. Work on nondamaged

components necessary for the required repair of damaged components shall be considered to be part of the repair and shall not be subject to the requirements for alterations in this chapter. Routine maintenance required by Section 1107.3, ordinary repairs exempt from permit, and abatement of wear due to normal service conditions shall not be subject to the requirements for repairs in this section.

1110.2 Application. For the purposes of this code, the following shall be considered to be repairs:

1. Glass-only replacements in an existing sash and frame.
2. Roof repairs.
3. Repairs where only the bulb, ballast or both within the existing luminaires in a space are replaced provided that the replacement does not increase the installed interior lighting power.

SECTION 1111
CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY OR USE

1111.1 General. Spaces undergoing a change in occupancy that would result in an increase in demand for either fossil fuel or electrical energy shall comply with this chapter.

1111.2 General. Any space that is converted to a dwelling unit or portion thereof from another use or occupancy shall comply with this chapter.

Exception: Where the simulated performance option in Section 1105 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the proposed design is permitted to be 110 percent of the annual energy cost allowed by Section 1105.3.

SECTION 1112
OHIO HOME BUILDERS ASSOCIATION (OHBA) ALTERNATIVE ENERGY CODE OPTION

1112.1 General.

1112.1.1 Scope. *This section provides an alternative set of requirements for regulating the energy efficiency for the design and construction of new buildings regulated by this code.*

Exception: *Portions of the building envelope that do not enclose conditioned space are exempt from thermal envelope provisions of this section.*

1112.1.2 Compliance. *Compliance shall be demonstrated by meeting the requirements of this section, known as the OHBA Alternative Code. The*

applicant shall choose to comply with either Compliance Path #1 or Compliance Path #2 and shall demonstrate compliance with all applicable requirements of that one chosen path. The chosen path shall be identified on the construction documents. The requirements in this section are in lieu of the requirements found in Sections 1101.14 through 1106.

1112.1.3 Identification. *Materials, systems and equipment shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this section.*

1112.1.4 Building thermal envelope insulation. *An R-value identification mark shall be applied by the manufacturer to each piece of building thermal envelope insulation 12 inches (305 mm) or more wide. Alternately, the insulation installers shall provide a certification listing the type, manufacturer and R-value of insulation installed in each element of the building thermal envelope. For blown or sprayed insulation (fiberglass and cellulose), the initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled R-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be listed on the certification. For sprayed polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation, the installed thickness of the area covered and R-value of installed thickness shall be listed on the certificate. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certificate in a conspicuous location on the job site.*

1112.1.4.1 Blown or sprayed roof/ceiling insulation. *The thickness of blown in or sprayed roof/ceiling insulation (fiberglass or cellulose) shall be written in inches (mm) on markers that are installed at least one for every 300 ft^2 (28 m^2) throughout the attic space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) high. Each marker shall face the attic access opening. Spray polyurethane foam thickness and installed R-value shall be listed on the certificate provided by the insulation installer.*

1112.1.4.2 Insulation mark installation. *Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer's R-value mark is readily observable upon inspection.*

1112.1.5 Fenestration product rating. *U-factors of fenestration products (windows, doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a labeled U-factor shall be assigned a default U-factor from Tables 1112.1.5(1) and 1112.1.5(2). The solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) of glazed fenestration products (windows, glazed doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited,*

independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a labeled SHGC shall be assigned a default SHGC from Table 1112.1.5(3).

1112.1.6 Insulation product rating. *The thermal resistance (R-value) of insulation shall be determined in accordance with the CFR Title 16, Part 460, in units of h · ft² · °F/Btu at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).*

1112.1.7 Installation. *All materials, systems and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the provisions of this code.*

1112.1.7.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation. *Insulation applied to the exterior of basement walls, crawl space walls, and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation's thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) below grade.*

1112.1.8 Certificate. *A permanent certificate shall be posted on or in the electrical distribution panel. The certificate shall not cover or obstruct the visibility of the circuit directory label, service disconnect label or other required labels. The certificate shall be completed by the builder or registered design professional. The certificate shall list the predominant R-values of insulation installed in or on ceiling/roof, walls, foundation (slab, basement wall, crawlspace wall and/or floor) and ducts outside conditioned spaces; U-factors for fenestration; and the solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) of fenestration. Where there is more than one value for each component, the certificate shall list the value covering the largest area. The certificate shall list the types and efficiencies of heating, cooling and service water heating equipment. Where a gas-fired unvented room heater, electric furnace and/or baseboard electric heater is installed in the residence, the certificate shall list "gas-fired unvented room heater," "electric furnace" or "baseboard electric heater," as appropriate. An efficiency shall not be listed for gas-fired unvented room heaters, electric furnaces or electric base board heaters.*

TABLE 1112.1.5(1)
DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION U-FACTORS

FRAME TYPE	SINGLE PANE	DOUBLE PANE	SKYLIGHT	
			Single	Double
Metal	1.2	0.8	2	1.3
Metal with thermal break	1.1	0.65	1.9	1.1

FRAME TYPE	SINGLE PANE	DOUBLE PANE	SKYLIGHT	
			Single	Double
Nonmetal or metal clad	0.95	0.55	1.75	1.05
Glazed block	0.6			

TABLE 1112.1.5(2)
DEFAULT DOOR U-FACTORS

DOOR TYPE	U-FACTOR
Uninsulated metal	1.2
Insulated metal	0.6
Wood	0.5
Insulated, nonmetal edge, max 45% glazing, any glazing double pane	0.35

TABLE 1112.1.5(3)
DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC

SINGLE GLAZED		DOUBLE GLAZED		GLAZED BLOCK
Clear	Tinted	Clear	Tinted	
0.8	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6

1112.2 Building thermal envelope.

1112.2.1 Insulation and fenestration criteria. *The building thermal envelope shall meet the requirements of either Compliance Path #1 or Compliance Path #2 of Table 1112.2.1*

1112.2.1.1 R-value computation. *Insulation material used in layers, such as framing cavity insulation and insulating sheathing, shall be summed to compute the component R-value. The manufacturer's settled R-value shall be used for blown insulation. Computed R-values shall not include an R-value for other building materials or air films.*

1112.2.1.2 U-factor alternative. *An assembly with a U-factor equal to or less than that specified in Table 1112.2.1.2 shall be permitted as an alternative to the corresponding compliance path R-value in Table 1112.2.1.*

1112.2.1.3 Total UA alternative. *If the total building thermal envelope UA (sum of U-factor times assembly area) is less than or equal to the total UA resulting from using the U-factors in Table 1112.2.1.2, (multiplied by the same assembly area as in the proposed building), the building shall be considered in compliance with Table 1112.2.1. The UA calculation shall be done using a method consistent with the ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals and shall include the thermal bridging effects of framing*

materials. The SHGC requirements shall be met in addition to UA compliance.

TABLE 1112.2.1
INSULATION AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS BY COMPONENT[a]

	FENESTRATION U-FACTOR[b]	SKYLIGHT[b] U-FACTOR	GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC[b,e]	CEILING R-VALUE	WOOD FRAME WALL R-VALUE	MASS WALL R-VALUE[i]	FLOOR R-VALUE	BASEMENT[c] WALL R-VALUE	SLAB[d] R-VALUE AND DEPTH	CRAWL SPACE[c] WALL R-VALUE
Compliance Path #1	0.32	0.60	NR	49	15 or 13 + 3[h]	13/17	30[g]	10/13 (minimum 4 feet)	10, 2 ft	10/13
Compliance Path #2	0.32	0.60	NR	49	13	13/17	30[g]	10/13 (minimum 4 feet)	10, 2 ft	10/13

a. *R-values are minimums. U-factors and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) are maximums. R-19 batts compressed in to nominal 2 x 6 framing cavity such that the R-value is reduced by R-1 or more shall be marked with the compressed batt R-value in addition to the full thickness R-value.*
b. *The fenestration U-factor column excludes skylights. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.*
c. *"10/13" means R-10 continuous insulated sheathing on the interior or exterior of the home or R-13 cavity insulation at the interior of the basement wall.*
d. *R-5 shall be added to the required slab edge R-values for heated slabs.*
e. *Deleted.*
f. *Deleted.*
g. *Or insulation sufficient to fill the framing cavity, R-19 minimum.*
h. *"13+3" means R-13 cavity insulation plus R-3 insulated sheathing. If structural sheathing covers 25% or less of the exterior, insulating sheathing is not required where structural sheathing is used.*
i. *The second R-value applies when more than half the insulation is on the interior of the mass wall.*
j. *Deleted.*

1112.2.2 Specific insulation requirements.

1112.2.2.1 Ceilings with attic spaces. *When Section 1112.2.1 would require R-49 in the ceiling, R-38 shall be deemed to satisfy the requirement for R-49 wherever the full height of uncompressed R-38 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. This reduction shall not apply to the U-factor alternative approach in Section 1112.2.1.2 and the Total UA alternative in Section 1112.2.1.3.*

1112.2.2.2 Ceilings without attic spaces. *Where Section 1112.2.1 would require insulation levels above R-30 and the design of the roof/ceiling assembly does not allow sufficient space for the required insulation, the minimum required insulation for such roof/ceiling assemblies shall be R-30. This reduction of insulation from the requirements of Section 1112.2.1 shall be limited to 500 square feet (46 m^2) or twenty per cent of the total insulated ceiling area, whichever is less. This reduction shall not apply to the U-factor alternative approach in Section 1112.2.1.2 and the Total UA alternative in Section 1112.2.1.3.*

1112.2.2.3 Access hatches and doors. *Access doors from conditioned spaces to unconditioned spaces (e.g., attics and crawl spaces) shall be weatherstripped and insulated to a level equivalent to the insulation on the surrounding surfaces. Access shall be provided to all equipment which prevents damaging or compressing the insulation. A wood framed or equivalent baffle or retainer is required to be provided when loose fill insulation is installed, the purpose of which is to prevent the loose fill insulation from spilling into the living space when the attic access is opened and to provide a permanent means of maintaining the installed R-value of the loose fill insulation.*

1112.2.2.4 Mass walls. *Mass walls, for the purposes of this section, shall be considered above-grade walls of concrete block, concrete, insulated concrete form (ICF), masonry cavity, brick (other than brick veneer), earth (adobe, compressed earth block, rammed earth) and solid timber/logs.*

1112.2.2.5 Steel-frame ceilings, walls and floors. *Steel-frame ceilings, walls and floors shall meet the insulation requirements of Table 1112.2.2.5 or shall meet the U-factor requirements in Table 1112.2.1.2. The calculation of the U-factor for a steel-frame envelope assembly shall use a series-parallel path calculation method.*

1112.2.2.6 Floors. *Floor insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking.*

1112.2.2.7 Basement walls. *Exterior walls associated with conditioned basements shall be insulated from the top of the basement wall as specified in Table 1112.2.1. Walls associated with unconditioned basements shall meet this requirement unless the floor overhead is insulated in accordance with Sections 1112.2.1 and 1112.2.2.6.*

1112.2.2.8 Slab-on-grade floors. *Slab-on-grade floors with a floor surface less than 12 inches below grade shall be insulated in accordance with Table 1112.2.1. The insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab on the outside or inside of the foundation wall. Insulation located below grade shall be extended the distance provided in Table 1112.2.1 by any combination of vertical insulation, insulation extending under the slab or insulation extending protected by pavement or by a minimum of 10 inches (254 mm) of soil. The top edge of the insulation installed between the exterior wall and the edge of the interior slab shall be permitted to be cut at a 45-degree (0.79 rad) angle away from the exterior wall. Slab-edge*

insulation is not required in jurisdictions designated by the building official as having a very heavy termite infestation.

TABLE 1112.2.1.2
EQUIVALENT U-FACTORS[a]

	FENESTRATION U-FACTOR	***SKYLIGHT U-FACTOR***	***CEILING U-FACTOR***	***FRAME WALL U-FACTOR***	***MASS WALL U-FACTOR[b]***	***FLOOR U-FACTOR***	***BASEMENT WALL U-FACTOR***	***CRAWL SPACE WALL U-FACTOR***
Compliance Path #1	*0.32*	*0.60*	*0.026*	*0.077*	*0.082*	*0.033*	*0.059 (minimum 4 feet)*	*0.065*
Compliance Path #2	*0.32*	*0.60*	*0.026*	*0.082*	*0.082*	*0.033*	*0.059 (minimum 4 feet)*	*0.065*

a. Nonfenestration U-factors shall be obtained from measurement, calculation or approved referenced publications approved in accordance with this code.

b. When more than half the insulation is on the interior, the mass wall U-factors shall be the same as the frame wall U-factor.

TABLE 1112.2.2.5
STEEL-FRAME CEILING, WALL AND FLOOR INSULATION (R-VALUE)

WOOD FRAME R-VALUE REQUIREMENT	***COLD-FORMED STEEL EQUIVALENT R-VALUE[a]***
Steel Truss Ceilings[a]	
R-30	*R-38 or R-30 + 3 or R-26 + 5*
R-38	*R-49 or R-38 + 3*
R-49	*R-38 + 5*
Steel Joist Ceilings[b]	
R-30	*R-38 in 2 x 4 or 2 x 6 or 2 x 8 R-49 in any framing*
R-38	*R-49 in 2 x 4 or 2 x 6 or 2 x 8 or 2 x 10*
Steel Framed Wall	
R-13	*R-13 + 5 or R15 + 4 or R-21 + 3 or R-0 + 10*
R-15 or R-13+3	*R-0 + 11.2 or R-13 +6.1 or R-15 + 5.7 or R-19 + 5.0 or R-21 + 4.7*
R-19	*R-13 + 9 or R-19 + 8 or R-25 + 7*
R-21	*R-13 + 10 or R-19 + 9 or R-25 + 8*
Steel Joist Floor	
R-13	*R-19 in 2 x 6, R-19 + 6 in 2 x 8 or 2 x 10*
R-19	*R-19 + 6 in 2 x 6, R-19 + 12 in 2 x 8 or 2 x 10*
R-30	*R-19 + 6 in 2 x 6, R-19 + 12 in 2 x 8 or 2 x 10*

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Cavity insulation R-value is listed first, followed by continuous insulation R-value.

b. Insulation exceeding the height of the framing shall cover the framing.

1112.2.2.9 Crawl space walls. *As an alternative to insulating floors over crawl spaces, insulation of crawl space walls shall be permitted when the crawl space is not vented to the outside. Crawl space wall insulation shall be permanently fastened to the wall and extend downward from the floor to the finished grade level and then vertically and/or horizontally for at least an additional 24 inches (610 mm). Exposed earth in unvented crawl space foundations shall be covered with a continuous Class I vapor retarder. All joints of the vapor retarder shall overlap by 6 inches (152 mm) and be sealed or taped. The edges of the vapor retarder shall extend at least 6 inches (152 mm) up the stem wall and shall be attached to the stem wall.*

1112.2.2.10 Masonry veneer. *Insulation shall not be required on the horizontal portion of the foundation that supports a masonry veneer.*

1112.2.2.11 Thermally isolated sunroom insulation. *The minimum ceiling insulation R-values shall be R-24. The minimum wall R-value shall be R-13. New wall(s) separating the sunroom from conditioned space shall meet the building thermal envelope requirements.*

1112.2.3 Fenestration.

1112.2.3.1 U-factor. *An area-weighted average of fenestration products shall be permitted to satisfy the U-factor requirements.*

1112.2.3.2 Glazed fenestration SHGC. *An area-weighted average of fenestration products more than 50 percent glazed shall be permitted to satisfy the solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) requirements.*

1112.2.3.3 Glazed fenestration exemption. *Up to 15 square feet (1.4 m^2) of glazed fenestration per dwelling unit shall be permitted to be exempt from U-factor and SHGC requirements in Section 1112.2.1. This exemption shall not apply to the U-factor alternative approach in Section 1112.2.1.2 and the Total UA alternative in Section 1112.2.1.3.*

1112.2.3.4 Opaque door exemption. *One side-hinged opaque door assembly up to 24 square feet (2.22 m^2) in area is exempted from the U-factor requirement in Section 1112.2.1. This exemption shall not apply to the U-factor alternative approach in Section 1112.2.1.2 and the Total UA alternative in Section 1112.2.1.3.*

1112.2.3.5 Thermally isolated sunroom U-factor. *The maximum fenestration U-factor shall be 0.50 and the maximum skylight U-factor shall*

be 0.75. New windows and doors separating the sunroom from conditioned space shall meet the building thermal envelope requirements.

1112.2.3.6 Replacement fenestration. *Where some or all of an existing fenestration unit is replaced with a new fenestration product, including sash and glazing, the replacement fenestration unit shall meet the applicable requirements for U-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) in Table 1112.2.1*

1112.2.4 Air leakage.

1112.2.4.1 Building thermal envelope. *The building thermal envelope shall be durably sealed to limit infiltration. The sealing methods between dissimilar materials shall allow for differential expansion and contraction. The following shall be caulked, gasketed, weatherstripped or otherwise sealed with an air barrier material, suitable film or solid material.*

1. *All joints, seams and penetrations.*
2. *Site-built fenestration products.*
3. *Openings between window and door assemblies and their respective jambs and framing*
4. *Utility penetrations.*
5. *Dropped ceilings or chases adjacent to the thermal envelope.*
6. *Knee walls.*
7. *Walls and ceilings separating the garage from conditioned spaces.*
   Behind tubs and showers on exterior walls.
8. *Common walls between dwelling units.*
   Attic access openings.
   Rim joists junction.
9. *Other sources of infiltration.*

1112.2.4.2 Air sealing and insulation. *Building envelope air tightness and insulation installation shall be demonstrated to comply with Section 1112.2.4.2.1.*

1112.2.4.2.1 Testing. *Tested air leakage is less than 5 ACH when tested with a blower door at a pressure of 50 pascals (0.007 psi). Testing shall occur after rough in and after installation of penetrations of the building envelope, including penetrations for utilities, plumbing, electrical, ventilation and combustion appliances.*

During testing:

1. *Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed;*

2. *Dampers shall be closed, but not sealed; including exhaust, intake, makeup air, back draft, and flue dampers;*
3. *Interior doors shall be open;*
4. *Exterior openings for continuous ventilation systems and heat recovery ventilators shall be closed and sealed;*
5. *Heating and cooling system(s) shall be turned off;*
6. *HVAC ducts shall not be sealed; and*
7. *Supply and return registers shall not be sealed.*

1112.2.4.2.1.1 Sampling. *Where groups of seven or more buildings of similar design and construction are completed and are issued occupancy permits during a 120 day period, testing of less than 100 percent, but not less than 1 in 7 or 15 percent, of the buildings from a specific builder and/or contractor or of dwelling units to be tested shall be selected by the code official. If any tested building fails to comply with the maximum air leakage requirement in Section 1112.2.4.2.1 then all buildings shall be tested until a minimum of three consecutive buildings comply from that specific builder and/or contractor before the code official may permit sampling to resume.*

1112.2.4.3 Fireplaces. *New wood-burning fireplaces shall have doors or tight-fitting flue dampers and outdoor combustion air. If using tight-fitting doors on UL 127 fireplaces, they must be tested and listed for the fireplace.*

1112.2.4.4 Fenestration air leakage. *Windows, skylights and sliding glass doors shall have an air infiltration rate of no more than 0.3 cubic foot per minute per square foot [1.5(L/s)/m^2], and swinging doors no more than 0.5 cubic foot per minute per square foot [2.5(L/s)/m^2], when tested according to NFRC 400 or AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/ A440 by an approved agency, and listed and labeled by the manufacturer.*

Exception: *Site-built fenestration products.*

1112.2.4.5 Recessed lighting. *Recessed luminaires installed in the building thermal envelope shall be sealed to limit air leakage between conditioned and unconditioned spaces. All recessed luminaires shall be IC-rated and labeled as meeting ASTM E 283 when tested at 1.57 psf (75 Pa) pressure differential with no more than 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) of air movement from the conditioned space to the ceiling cavity. All recessed luminaires shall be sealed with a gasket or caulk between the housing and the interior wall or ceiling covering.*

1112.2.5 Maximum fenestration U-factor and SHGC. *The area-weighted average maximum fenestration U-factor permitted using trade-offs from Section 1112.2.1.3 shall be 0.48 for vertical fenestration, and 0.75 for skylights.*

1112.3 Systems.

1112.3.1 Controls. *At least one thermostat shall be installed for each separate heating and cooling system.*

1112.3.1.1 Programmable thermostat. *Where the primary heating system is a forced air furnace, at least one thermostat per dwelling unit shall be capable of controlling the heating and cooling system on a daily schedule to maintain different temperature set points at different times of the day. This thermostat shall include the capability to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain zone temperatures down to 55°F (13°C) or up to 85°F (29°C). The thermostat shall initially be programmed with a heating temperature set point no higher than 70°F (21°C) and a cooling temperature set point no lower than 78°F (26°C).*

1112.3.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat. *Heat pumps having supplementary electric-resistance heat shall have controls that, except during defrost, prevent supplemental heat operation when the heat pump compressor can meet the heating load.*

1112.3.2 Ducts.

1112.3.2.1 Insulation. *Supply ducts in attics shall be insulated to a minimum of R-8. All other ducts shall be insulated to a minimum of R-6.*

Exception: *Ducts or portions thereof located completely inside the building thermal envelope.*

1112.3.2.2 Sealing. *Ducts, air handlers, filter boxes and building cavities used as ducts shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with Section 1601.4. Duct tightness shall be verified by either of the following:*

1. *Post-construction test: Post-construction duct tightness shall be verified to meet the values prescribed in Table 1112.3.2.2(a) by testing either the "Leakage to Outdoors" or the "Total Leakage" in accordance with the chosen compliance path. Testing shall be conducted at a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, including the manufacturer's air handler end*

closure. All register boots shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.

TABLE 1112.3.2.2(a)
POST-CONSTRUCTION DUCT TIGHTNESS TESTING

	Leakage to Outdoors *(per 100 ft^2 (9.29 m^2) of conditioned floor area)*	***Total Leakage*** *(per 100 ft^2 (9.29 m^2) of conditioned floor area)*
Compliance Path #1	*≤ 6 cfm (2.83 L/s)*	*≤ 9 cfm (4.24 L/s)*
Compliance Path #2	*≤ 4 cfm (1.89 L/s)*	*≤ 6 cfm (2.83 L/s)*

2. *Rough-in test: Rough-in duct tightness shall be verified to meet the values prescribed in Table 1112.3.2.2(b) by testing the "Total Leakage" in accordance with the chosen compliance path. Testing shall be conducted at a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the roughed in system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure, if installed at the time of the test. All register boots shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.*

TABLE 1112.3.2.2(b)
ROUGH-IN DUCT TIGHTNESS TESTING

	Total Leakage – with air handler installed *(per 100 ft^2 (9.29 m^2) of conditioned floor area)*	***Total Leakage – without air handler installed*** *(per 100 ft^2 (9.29 m^2) of conditioned floor area)*
Compliance Path #1	*≤ 6 cfm (2.83 L/s)*	*≤ 4 cfm (1.89 L/s)*
Compliance Path #2	*≤ 4 cfm (1.89 L/s)*	*≤ 3 cfm (1.41 L/s)*

Exception: *Duct tightness test is not required if the air handler and all ducts are located within conditioned space.*

1112.3.2.3 Building cavities. *Building framing cavities shall not be used as supply ducts.*

1112.3.3 Circulating hot water systems. *The first five feet of circulating service hot water piping shall be insulated to at least R-2. Circulating hot water systems shall include an automatic or readily accessible manual switch that can turn off the hot water circulating pump when the system is not in use.*

1112.3.4 Mechanical ventilation. *Outdoor air intakes and exhausts shall have automatic or gravity dampers that close when the ventilation system is not operating.*

1112.3.5 Equipment sizing. *Heating and cooling equipment shall be sized as specified in Section 1401.3.*

1112.3.6 Snow melt system controls. *Snow-and ice-melting systems supplied through energy service to the building shall include automatic controls capable of shutting off the system when the pavement temperature is above 50°F (10°C) and no precipitation is falling and an automatic or manual control that will allow shutoff when the outdoor temperature is above 40°F (5°C).*

1112.4 Lighting systems.

1112.4.1 Lighting equipment. *A minimum of 90 percent of the lamps in permanently installed lighting fixtures shall be high-efficacy lamps.*

Replaces:	4101:8-11-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2008, 01/01/2009, 01/01/2013, 07/01/2014

4101:8-12-01 Mechanical administration.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 1201
GENERAL

1201.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapters 12 through 24 shall regulate the design, installation, maintenance, alteration and inspection of mechanical systems that are permanently installed and used to control environmental conditions within buildings. These chapters shall also regulate those mechanical systems, system components, equipment and appliances specifically addressed in this code.

1201.2 Application. In addition to the general administration requirements of Chapter 1, the administrative provisions of this chapter shall apply to the mechanical requirements of Chapters 13 through 24.

SECTION 1202
EXISTING MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

1202.1 Additions, alterations or repairs. Additions, alterations, renovations or repairs to a mechanical system shall conform to the requirements for a new mechanical system without requiring the existing mechanical system to comply with all of the requirements of this code. Additions, alterations or repairs shall not cause an existing mechanical system to become unsafe, hazardous or overloaded. Minor additions, alterations or repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous, and is approved.

1202.2 Existing installations. Except as otherwise provided for in this code, a provision in this code shall not require the removal, alteration or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing mechanical system lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code.

1202.3 Maintenance. Mechanical systems, both existing and new, and parts

thereof shall be maintained in proper operating condition in accordance with the original design and in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices or safeguards that are required by this code shall be maintained in compliance with the code edition under which such devices and safeguards were installed. The owner or the owner's designated agent shall be responsible for maintenance of the mechanical systems. To determine compliance with this provision, the building official shall have the authority to require a mechanical system to be reinspected.

Replaces:	4101:8-12-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	05/27/2006, 01/01/2013

4101:8-13-01 General mechanical system requirements.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

CHAPTER 13
GENERAL MECHANICAL SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

1301.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the installation of mechanical systems not specifically covered in other chapters applicable to mechanical systems. Installations of mechanical appliances, equipment and systems not addressed by this code shall comply with the applicable provisions of the *mechanical code* and the "International Fuel Gas Code".

1301.1.1 Flood-resistant installation. In flood hazard areas as established by Table 301.2(1), mechanical appliances, equipment and systems shall be located or installed in accordance with Section 322.1.6.

1301.2 Identification. Each length of pipe and tubing and each pipe fitting utilized in a mechanical system shall bear the identification of the manufacturer.

1301.3 Installation of materials. Materials shall be installed in strict accordance with the standards under which the materials are accepted and approved. In the absence of such installation procedures, the manufacturer's instructions shall be followed. Where the requirements of referenced standards or manufacturer's instructions do not conform to minimum provisions of this code, the provisions of this code shall apply.

1301.4 Plastic pipe, fittings and components. Plastic pipe, fittings and components shall be third-party certified as conforming to NSF 14.

1301.5 Third-party testing and certification. Piping, tubing and fittings shall comply with the applicable referenced standards, specifications and performance criteria of this code and shall be identified in accordance with Section 1301.2. Piping, tubing and fittings shall either be tested by *Board recognized* testing *laboratory* or certified by *Board recognized product* certification agency *body*.

SECTION 1302
APPROVAL

1302.1 Listed and labeled. Appliances regulated by this code shall be listed and labeled for the application in which they are installed and used, unless otherwise approved in accordance with Sections *106.4 and 106.5*.

SECTION 1303
LABELING OF APPLIANCES

1303.1 Label information. A permanent factory-applied nameplate(s) shall be affixed to appliances on which shall appear, in legible lettering, the manufacturer's name or trademark, the model number, a serial number and the seal or mark of the testing agency. A label also shall include the following:

1. Electrical appliances. Electrical rating in volts, amperes and motor phase; identification of individual electrical components in volts, amperes or watts and motor phase; and in Btu/h (W) output and required clearances.
2. Absorption units. Hourly rating in Btu/h (W), minimum hourly rating for units having step or automatic modulating controls, type of fuel, type of refrigerant, cooling capacity in Btu/h (W) and required clearances.
3. Fuel-burning units. Hourly rating in Btu/h (W), type of fuel approved for use with the appliance and required clearances.
4. Electric comfort-heating appliances. The electric rating in volts, amperes and phase; Btu/h (W) output rating; individual marking for each electrical component in amperes or watts, volts and phase; and required clearances from combustibles.
5. Maintenance instructions. Required regular maintenance actions and title or publication number for the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of product.

SECTION 1304
TYPE OF FUEL

1304.1 Fuel types. Fuel-fired appliances shall be designed for use with the type of fuel to which they will be connected and the altitude at which they are installed. Appliances that comprise parts of the building mechanical system shall not be converted for the use of a different fuel, except where approved and converted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The fuel input rate shall not be increased or decreased beyond the limit rating for the altitude at which the appliance is installed.

SECTION 1305
APPLIANCE ACCESS

1305.1 Appliance access for inspection service, repair and replacement. Appliances shall be located to allow for access for inspection, service, repair and replacement without removing permanent construction, other appliances, or any other piping or ducts not connected to the appliance being inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced. A level working space not less than 30 inches deep and 30 inches wide (762 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided in front of the control side to service an appliance.

1305.1.1 Appliances in rooms. Appliances installed in a compartment, alcove, basement or similar space shall be accessed by an opening or door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and large enough to allow removal of the largest appliance in the space, provided there is a level service space of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and the height of the appliance, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm), at the front or service side of the appliance with the door open.

1305.1.2 Appliances in attics. Attics containing appliances shall be provided with an opening and a clear and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the largest appliance, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) long measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the appliance. The passageway shall have continuous solid flooring in accordance with Chapter 5 not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present along all sides of the appliance where access is required. The clear access opening dimensions shall be not less than of 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest appliance.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway and level service space are not required where the appliance can be serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is unobstructed and not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide for its entire length, the passageway shall be not more than 50 feet (15 250 mm) long.

1305.1.2.1 Electrical requirements. A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be installed at or near the appliance location in accordance with *NFPA 70 as modified by Chapter 34*. Exposed lamps shall be protected from damage by location or lamp guards.

1305.1.3 Appliances under floors. Underfloor spaces containing appliances shall be provided with an unobstructed passageway large enough to remove the largest appliance, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide, nor more than 20 feet (6096 mm) long measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the appliance. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the appliance. If the depth of the passageway or the service space exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below the adjoining grade, the walls of the passageway shall be lined with concrete or masonry extending 4 inches (102 mm) above the adjoining grade in accordance with Chapter 4. The rough-framed access opening dimensions shall be not less than 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to remove the largest appliance.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway is not required where the level service space is present when the access is open, and the appliance can be serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is unobstructed and not less than 6 feet high (1929 mm) and 22 inches (559 mm) wide for its entire length, the passageway shall not be limited in length.

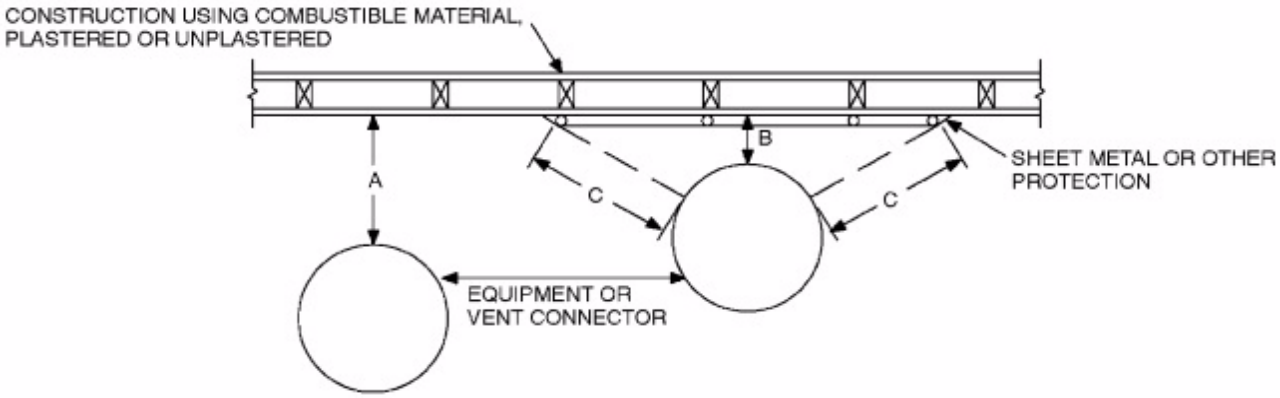
1305.1.3.1 Ground clearance. Equipment and appliances supported from the ground shall be level and firmly supported on a concrete slab or other approved material extending not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above the adjoining ground. Such support shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Appliances suspended from the floor shall have a clearance of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from the ground.

1305.1.3.2 Pit locations. Appliances installed in pits or excavations shall not come in direct contact with the surrounding soil and shall be installed not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above the pit floor. The sides of the pit or excavation shall be held back not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the appliance. Where the depth exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below adjoining grade, the walls of the pit or excavation shall be lined with concrete or masonry. Such concrete or masonry shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above adjoining grade and shall have sufficient lateral load-bearing capacity to resist collapse. Excavation on the control side of the appliance shall extend horizontally not less than 30 inches (762 mm). The appliance shall be protected from flooding in an approved manner.

1305.1.3.3 Electrical requirements. A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be installed at or near the appliance location in accordance with *NFPA 70 as modified by Chapter 34*. Exposed lamps shall be protected from damage by location or lamp guards.

SECTION 1306
CLEARANCES FROM COMBUSTIBLE CONSTRUCTION

1306.1 Appliance clearance. Appliances shall be installed with the clearances from unprotected combustible materials as indicated on the appliance label and in the manufacturer's installation instructions.



Note: "A" equals the required clearance with no protection. "B" equals the reduced clearance permitted in accordance with Table 1306.2. The protection applied to the construction using combustible material shall extend far enough in each direction to make "C" equal to "A."

FIGURE 1306.1
REDUCED CLEARANCE DIAGRAM

1306.2 Clearance reduction. The reduction of required clearances to combustible assemblies or combustible materials shall be based on Section 1306.2.1 or Section 1306.2.2.

TABLE 1306.2
REDUCTION OF CLEARANCES WITH

SPECIFIED FORMS OF PROTECTION [a, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l]

TYPE OF PROTECTION APPLIED TO AND COVERING ALL SURFACES OF COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL WITHIN THE DISTANCE SPECIFIED AS THE REQUIRED CLEARANCE WITH NO PROTECTION (See Figures M1306.1 and M1306.2)	WHERE THE REQUIRED CLEARANCE WITHOUT PROTECTION FROM APPLIANCE, VENT CONNECTOR, OR SINGLE WALL METAL PIPE IS:									
	36 inches		18 inches		12 inches		9 inches		6 inches	
	Allowable clearances with specified protection (Inches)[b]									
	Use column 1 for clearances above an appliance or horizontal connector. Use column 2 for clearances from an appliance, vertical connector and single-wall metal pipe.									
	Above column 1	Sides and rear column 2	Above column 1	Sides and rear column 2	Above column 1	Sides and rear column 2	Above column 1	Sides and rear column 2	Above column 1	Sides and rear column 2
$3^1/_2$-inch-thick masonry wall without ventilated air space	—	24	—	12	—	9	—	6	—	5
$^1/_2$-inch insulation board over 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts	24	18	12	9	9	6	6	5	4	3
Galvanized sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0236-inch (No. 24 gage) over 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts reinforced with wire or rear face with a ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
$3^1/_2$-inch-thick masonry wall with ventilated air space	—	12	—	6	—	6	—	6	—	6
Galvanized sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0236-inch (No. 24 gage) with a ventilated air space 1-inch off the combustible assembly	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	2
$^1/_2$-inch-thick insulation board with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
Galvanized sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0236-inch (No. 24 gage) with ventilated air space over 24 gage sheet steel with a ventilated space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts sandwiched between two sheets of galvanized sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0236-inch (No. 24 gage) with a ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.019 kg/m^3, °C = [(°F - 32)/1.8], 1 Btu/(h × ft^2 × °F/in.) = 0.001442299 (W/cm^2 × °C/cm).

a. Reduction of clearances from combustible materials shall not interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility of servicing.

b. Clearances shall be measured from the surface of the heat producing appliance or equipment to the outer surface of the combustible material or combustible assembly.

c. Spacers and ties shall be of noncombustible material. Spacers and ties shall not be used directly opposite appliance or connector.

d. Where all clearance reduction systems use a ventilated air space, adequate provision for air circulation shall be provided as described. (See Figures 1306.1 and 1306.2.)

e. There shall be not less than 1 inch between clearance reduction systems and combustible walls and ceilings for reduction systems using ventilated air space.

f. If a wall protector is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, adequate air circulation shall be permitted to be provided by leaving only the bottom and top edges or only the side and top edges open with not less than a 1-inch air gap.

g. Mineral wool and glass fiber batts (blanket or board) shall have a minimum density of 8 pounds per cubic foot and a minimum melting point of 1,500°F.

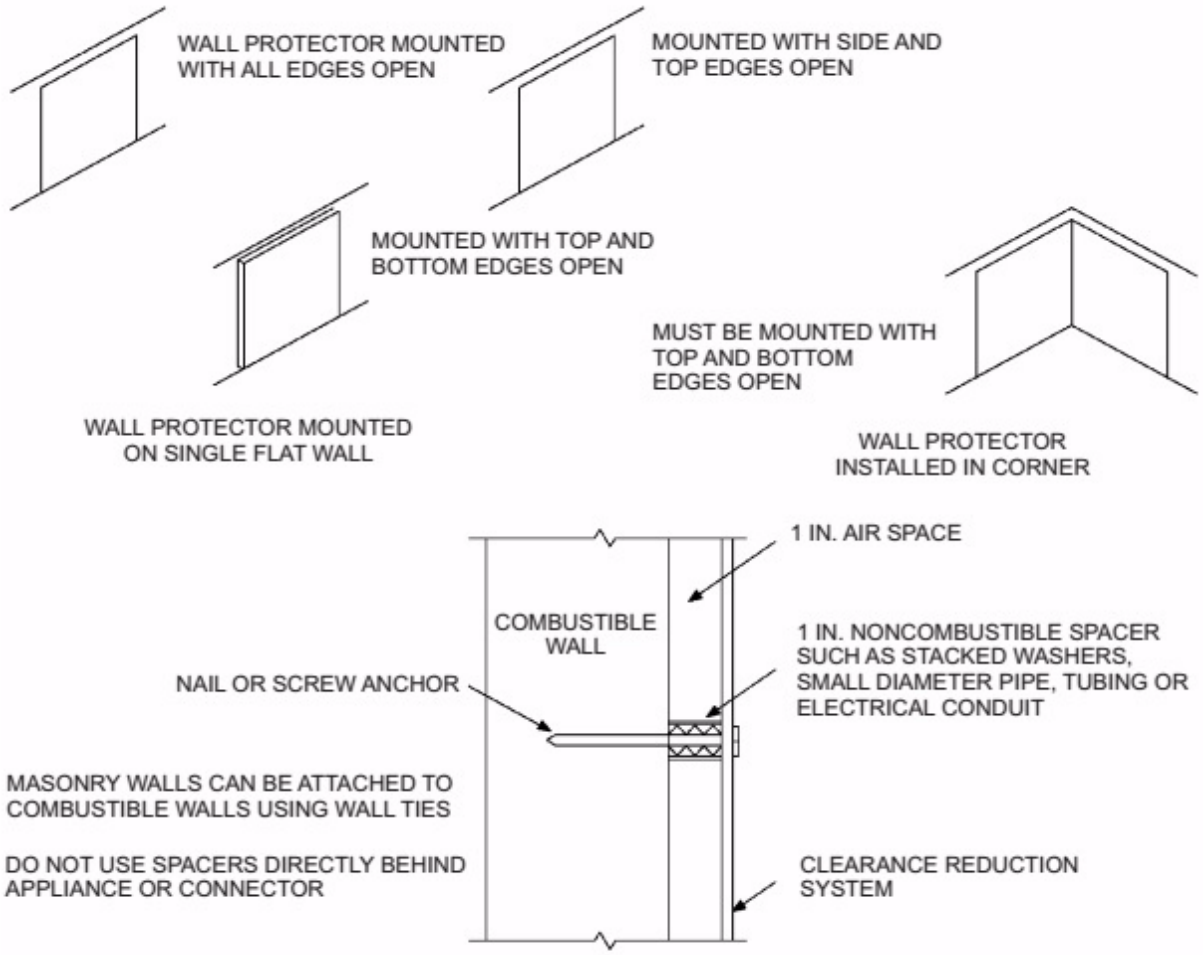
h. Insulation material used as part of a clearance reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu inch per square foot per hour °F or less. Insulation board shall be formed of noncombustible material.

i. There shall be not less than 1 inch between the appliance and the protector. The clearance between the appliance and the combustible surface shall not be reduced below that allowed in this table.

j. All clearances and thicknesses are minimum; larger clearances and thicknesses are acceptable.

k. Listed single-wall connectors shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with the terms of their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

l. For limitations on clearance reduction for solid-fuel-burning appliances see Section 1306.2.3.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 1306.2
WALL PROTECTOR CLEARANCE REDUCTION SYSTEM

1306.2.1 Labeled assemblies. The allowable clearance shall be based on an approved reduced clearance protective assembly that is listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1618.

1306.2.2 Reduction table. Reduction of clearances shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions and Table 1306.2. Forms of protection with ventilated air space shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Not less than 1-inch (25 mm) air space shall be provided between the protection and combustible wall surface.
2. Air circulation shall be provided by having edges of the wall protection open not less than 1 inch (25 mm).
3. If the wall protection is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, air circulation shall be provided by having the bottom and top edges, or the side and top edges not less than 1 inch (25 mm).
4. Wall protection covering two walls in a corner shall be open at the bottom and top edges not less than 1 inch (25 mm).

1306.2.3 Solid-fuel appliances. Table 1306.2 shall not be used to reduce the clearance required for solid-fuel appliances listed for installation with minimum clearances of 12 inches (305 mm) or less. For appliances listed for installation with minimum clearances greater than 12 inches (305 mm), Table 1306.2 shall not be used to reduce the clearance to less than 12 inches (305 mm).

SECTION 1307
APPLIANCE INSTALLATION

1307.1 General. Installation of appliances shall conform to the conditions of their listing and label and the manufacturer's installation instructions. The manufacturer's operating and installation instructions shall remain attached to the appliance.

1307.2 Anchorage of appliances. *Deleted.*

1307.3 Elevation of ignition source. Appliances having an ignition source shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor in garages. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a dwelling unit and that communicate with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the garage.

Exception: Elevation of the ignition source is not required for appliances that are listed as flammable-vapor-ignition resistant.

1307.3.1 Protection from impact. Appliances shall not be installed in a location subject to vehicle damage except where protected by approved barriers.

1307.4 Hydrogen generating and refueling operations. Ventilation shall be required in accordance with Section 1307.4.1, 1307.4.2 or 1307.4.3 in private garages that contain hydrogen-generating appliances or refueling systems. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a dwelling unit and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

1307.4.1 Natural ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be limited to a maximum floor area of 850 square feet (79 m^2) and shall communicate with the outdoors in accordance with Sections 1307.4.1.1 and 1307.4.1.2. The maximum rated output capacity of hydrogen-generating appliances shall not exceed 4 standard cubic feet per minute (1.9 L/s) of hydrogen for each 250 square feet (23 m^2) of floor area in such spaces. The minimum cross-sectional dimension of air openings shall be 3 inches (76 mm). Where ducts are used, they shall be of the same cross-sectional area as the free area of the openings to which they connect. In those locations, equipment and appliances having an ignition source shall be located so that the source of ignition is not within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling.

1307.4.1.1 Two openings. Two permanent openings shall be constructed within the garage. The upper opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling of the garage. The lower opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the floor of the garage. Both openings shall be constructed in the same exterior wall. The openings shall communicate directly with the outdoors and shall have a minimum free area of $^1/_2$ square foot per 1,000 cubic feet (1.7 m^2/1000 m^3) of garage volume.

1307.4.1.2 Louvers and grilles. In calculating free area required by Section 1307.4.1, the required size of openings shall be based on the net free area of each opening. If the free area through a design of louver or grille is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. If the design and free area are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have a 25-percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have a 75-percent free area. Louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position.

1307.4.2 Mechanical ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.16 of the *mechanical code*. In these locations, equipment and appliances having an ignition source shall be located so that the source of ignition is below the mechanical ventilation outlet(s).

1307.4.3 Specially engineered installations. As an alternative to the provisions of Sections 1307.4.1 and 1307.4.2, the necessary supply of air for ventilation and dilution of flammable gases shall be provided by an approved engineered system.

1307.5 Electrical appliances. Electrical appliances shall be installed in accordance with *NFPA 70 as modified in Chapter 34*.

1307.6 Plumbing connections. Potable water and drainage system connections to equipment and appliances regulated by this code shall be in accordance with *the plumbing code as modified in Chapter 25*.

SECTION 1308
MECHANICAL SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

1308.1 Drilling and notching. Wood-framed structural members shall be drilled, notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Sections 502.8, 602.6, 602.6.1 and 802.7. Holes in load-bearing members of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall be permitted only in accordance with Sections 505.2.6, 603.2.6 and 804.2.6. In accordance with the provisions of Sections 505.3.5, 603.3.4 and 804.3.3, cutting and notching of flanges and lips of load-bearing members of cold-formed steel light frame construction shall not be permitted. Structural insulated panels (SIPs) shall be drilled and notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Section 610.7.

1308.2 Protection against physical damage. Where piping will be concealed within light-frame construction assemblies, the piping shall be protected against penetration by fasteners in accordance with Sections 1308.2.1 through 1308.2.3.

Exception: Cast-iron piping and galvanized steel piping shall not be required to be protected.

1308.2.1 Piping through bored holes or notches. Where piping is installed through holes or notches in framing members and is located less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the framing member face to which wall, ceiling or floor membranes will be attached, the pipe shall be protected by shield plates that

cover the width of the pipe and the framing member and that extend 2 inches (51 mm) to each side of the framing member. Where the framing member that the piping passes through is a bottom plate, bottom track, top plate or top track, the shield plates shall cover the framing member and extend 2 inches (51 mm) above the bottom framing member and 2 inches (51 mm) below the top framing member.

1308.2.2 Piping in other locations. Where piping is located within a framing member and is less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the framing member face to which wall, ceiling or floor membranes will be attached, the piping shall be protected by shield plates that cover the width and length of the piping. Where piping is located outside of a framing member and is located less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the face of the framing member to which the membrane will be attached, the piping shall be protected by shield plates that cover the width and length of the piping.

1308.2.3 Shield plates. Shield plates shall be of steel material having a thickness of not less than 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage).

Replaces:	4101:8-13-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	05/27/2006, 01/01/2013

4101:8-14-01 Heating and cooling equipment and appliances.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 1401
GENERAL

1401.1 Installation. Heating and cooling equipment and appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the requirements of this code.

1401.2 Access. Heating and cooling equipment and appliances shall be located with respect to building construction and other equipment and appliances to permit maintenance, servicing and replacement. Clearances shall be maintained to permit cleaning of heating and cooling surfaces; replacement of filters, blowers, motors, controls and vent connections; lubrication of moving parts; and adjustments.

Exception: Access shall not be required for ducts, piping, or other components approved for concealment.

1401.3 Equipment and appliance sizing. Heating and cooling equipment and appliances shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual S or other approved sizing methodologies based on building loads calculated in accordance with ACCA Manual J or other approved heating and cooling calculation methodologies.

Exception: Heating and cooling equipment and appliance sizing shall not be limited to the capacities determined in accordance with Manual S where either of the following conditions applies:

1. The specified equipment or appliance utilizes multi- stage technology or variable refrigerant flow technology and the loads calculated in accordance with the approved heating and cooling calculation methodology are within the range of the manufacturer's published capacities for that equipment or appliance.
2. The specified equipment or appliance manufacturer's published capacities cannot satisfy both the total and sensible heat gains calculated in accordance with the approved heating and cooling calculation methodology and the next larger standard size unit is specified.

1401.4 Outdoor installations. Equipment and appliances installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled for outdoor installation. Supports and foundations shall prevent excessive vibration, settlement or movement of the equipment. Supports and foundations shall be in accordance with Section 1305.1.3.1.

1401.5 Flood hazard. In flood hazard areas as established by Table 301.2(1), heating and cooling equipment and appliances shall be located or installed in accordance with Section 322.1.6.

SECTION 1402
CENTRAL FURNACES

1402.1 General. Oil-fired central furnaces shall conform to ANSI/UL 727. Electric furnaces shall conform to UL 1995.

1402.2 Clearances. Clearances shall be provided in accordance with the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1402.3 Combustion air. Combustion air shall be supplied in accordance with Chapter 17. Combustion air openings shall be unobstructed for a distance of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in front of the openings.

SECTION M1403
HEAT PUMP EQUIPMENT

1403.1 Heat pumps. Electric heat pumps shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1995 or UL/CSA/ANCE 60335-2-40.

SECTION 1404
REFRIGERATION COOLING EQUIPMENT

1404.1 Compliance. Refrigeration cooling equipment shall comply with Section 1411.

SECTION 1405
BASEBOARD CONVECTORS

1405.1 General. Electric baseboard convectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and *NFPA 70 as modified by* Chapter 34. Electric baseboard heaters shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1042.

SECTION 1406
RADIANT HEATING SYSTEMS

1406.1 General. Electric radiant heating systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and *NFPA 70 as modified by* Chapter 34 and shall be listed for the application.

1406.2 Clearances. Clearances for radiant heating panels or elements to any wiring, outlet boxes and junction boxes used for installing electrical devices or mounting luminaires shall comply with *NFPA 70 as modified by* Chapter 34.

1406.3 Installation of radiant panels. Radiant panels installed on wood framing shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Heating panels shall be installed parallel to framing members and secured to the surface of framing members or mounted between framing members.
2. Mechanical fasteners shall penetrate only the unheated portions provided for this purpose. Panels shall not be fastened at any point closer than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) to an element. Other methods of attachment of the panels shall be in accordance with the panel manufacturer's instructions.
3. Unless listed and labeled for field cutting, heating panels shall be installed as complete units.

1406.4 Installation in concrete or masonry. Radiant heating systems installed in concrete or masonry shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Radiant heating systems shall be identified as being suitable for the installation, and shall be secured in place as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Radiant heating panels or radiant heating panel sets shall not be installed where they bridge expansion joints unless protected from expansion and contraction.

1406.5 Finish surfaces. Finish materials installed over radiant heating panels or systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Surfaces shall be secured so that nails or other fastenings do not pierce the radiant heating elements.

SECTION 1407
DUCT HEATERS

1407.1 General. Electric duct heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and *NFPA 70 as modified by* Chapter 34. Electric duct

heaters shall comply with UL 1996.

1407.2 Installation. Electric duct heaters shall be installed so that they will not create a fire hazard. Class 1 ducts, duct coverings and linings shall be interrupted at each heater to provide the clearances specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions. Such interruptions are not required for duct heaters listed and labeled for zero clearance to combustible materials. Insulation installed in the immediate area of each heater shall be classified for the maximum temperature produced on the duct surface.

1407.3 Installation with heat pumps and air conditioners. Duct heaters located within 4 feet (1219 mm) of a heat pump or air conditioner shall be listed and labeled for such installations. The heat pump or air conditioner shall addition- ally be listed and labeled for such duct heater installations.

1407.4 Access. Duct heaters shall be located to allow access for servicing, and clearance shall be maintained to permit adjustment, servicing and replacement of controls and heating elements.

1407.5 Fan interlock. The fan circuit shall be provided with an interlock to prevent heater operation when the fan is not operating.

SECTION 1408
VENTED FLOOR FURNACES

1408.1 General. Oil-fired vented floor furnaces shall comply with UL 729 and shall be installed in accordance with their listing, the manufacturer's instructions and the requirements of this code.

1408.2 Clearances. Vented floor furnaces shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

1408.3 Location. Location of floor furnaces shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Floor registers of floor furnaces shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from a wall.
2. Wall registers of floor furnaces shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from the adjoining wall at inside corners.
3. The furnace register shall be located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from doors in any position, draperies or similar combustible objects.
4. The furnace register shall be located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) below

any projecting combustible materials.

5. The floor furnace burner assembly shall not project into an occupied under-floor area.
6. The floor furnace shall not be installed in concrete floor construction built on grade.
7. The floor furnace shall not be installed where a door can swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the grille opening.

1408.4 Access. An opening in the foundation not less than 18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610 mm), or a trap door not less than 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided for access to a floor furnace. The opening and passageway shall be large enough to allow replacement of any part of the equipment.

1408.5 Installation. Floor furnace installations shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Thermostats controlling floor furnaces shall be located in the room in which the register of the floor furnace is located.
2. Floor furnaces shall be supported independently of the furnace floor register.
3. Floor furnaces shall be installed not closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to the ground. The minimum clearance shall be 2 inches (51 mm), where the lower 6 inches (152 mm) of the furnace is sealed to prevent water entry.
4. Where excavation is required for a floor furnace installation, the excavation shall extend 30 inches (762 mm) beyond the control side of the floor furnace and 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the remaining sides. Excavations shall slope outward from the perimeter of the base of the excavation to the surrounding grade at an angle not exceeding 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from horizontal.
5. Floor furnaces shall not be supported from the ground.

SECTION 1409
VENTED WALL FURNACES

1409.1 General. Oil-fired vented wall furnaces shall comply with UL 730 and shall be installed in accordance with their listing, the manufacturer's instructions and the requirements of this code.

1409.2 Location. The location of vented wall furnaces shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Vented wall furnaces shall be located where they will not cause a fire

hazard to walls, floors, combustible furnishings or doors. Vented wall furnaces installed between bathrooms and adjoining rooms shall not circulate air from bathrooms to other parts of the building.

2. Vented wall furnaces shall not be located where a door can swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the furnace air inlet or outlet measured at right angles to the opening. Doorstops or door closers shall not be installed to obtain this clearance.

1409.3 Installation. Vented wall furnace installations shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Required wall thicknesses shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Ducts shall not be attached to a wall furnace. Casing extensions or boots shall be installed only where listed as part of a listed and labeled appliance
3. A manual shutoff valve shall be installed ahead of all controls.

1409.4 Access. Vented wall furnaces shall be provided with access for cleaning of heating surfaces; removal of burners; replacement of sections, motors, controls, filters and other working parts; and for adjustments and lubrication of parts requiring such attention. Panels, grilles and access doors that must be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building construction.

SECTION 1410
VENTED ROOM HEATERS

1410.1 General. Vented room heaters shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E1509 for pellet-fuel burning, UL 896 for oil-fired or UL 1482 for solid fuel-fired and installed in accordance with their listing, the manufacturer's installation instructions and the requirements of this code.

1410.2 Floor mounting. Room heaters shall be installed on noncombustible floors or approved assemblies constructed of noncombustible materials that extend not less than 18 inches (457 mm) beyond the appliance on all sides.

Exceptions:

1. Listed room heaters shall be installed on noncombustible floors, assemblies constructed of noncombustible materials or floor protectors listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1618. The materials and dimensions shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.
2. Room heaters listed for installation on combustible floors without floor protection shall be installed in accordance with the appliance

manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 1411
HEATING AND COOLING EQUIPMENT

1411.1 Approved refrigerants. Refrigerants used in direct refrigerating systems shall conform to the applicable provisions of ANSI/ASHRAE 34.

1411.2 Refrigeration coils in warm-air furnaces. Where a cooling coil is located in the supply plenum of a warm-air furnace, the furnace blower shall be rated at not less than 0.5 -inch water column (124 Pa) static pressure unless the furnace is listed and labeled for use with a cooling coil. Cooling coils shall not be located upstream from heat exchangers unless listed and labeled for such use. Conversion of existing furnaces for use with cooling coils shall be permitted provided that the furnace will operate within the temperature rise specified for the furnace.

1411.3 Condensate disposal. Condensate from cooling coils and evaporators shall be conveyed from the drain pan outlet to an approved place of disposal. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than $^{1}/_{8}$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope). Condensate shall not discharge into a street, alley or other area where it would cause a nuisance.

1411.3.1 Auxiliary and secondary drain systems. In addition to the requirements of Section 1411.3, a secondary drain or auxiliary drain pan shall be required for each cooling or evaporator coil where damage to any building components will occur as a result of overflow from the equipment drain pan or stoppage in the condensate drain piping. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than $^{1}/_{8}$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope). Drain piping shall be not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ -inch (19 mm) nominal pipe size. One of the following methods shall be used:

1. An auxiliary drain pan with a separate drain shall be installed under the coils on which condensation will occur. The auxiliary pan drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The pan shall have a minimum depth of 1.5 inches (38 mm), shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) larger than the unit or the coil dimensions in width and length and shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant material. Galvanized sheet steel pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0236-inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 Gage). Nonmetallic pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0625 inch (1.6 mm).

2. A separate overflow drain line shall be connected to the drain pan installed with the equipment. This overflow drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The overflow drain line shall connect to the drain pan at a higher level than the primary drain connection.
3. An auxiliary drain pan without a separate drain line shall be installed under the coils on which condensation will occur. This pan shall be equipped with a water level detection device conforming to UL 508 that will shut off the equipment served prior to overflow of the pan. The pan shall be equipped with a fitting to allow for drainage. The auxiliary drain pan shall be constructed in accordance with Item 1 of this section.
4. A water-level detection device conforming to UL 508 shall be installed that will shut off the equipment served in the event that the primary drain is blocked. The device shall be installed in the primary drain line, the overflow drain line or the equipment-supplied drain pan, located at a point higher than the primary drain line connection and below the overflow rim of such pan.

1411.3.1.1 Water-level monitoring devices. On down-flow units and other coils that do not have secondary drain or provisions to install a secondary or auxiliary drain pan, a water-level monitoring device shall be installed inside the primary drain pan. This device shall shut off the equipment served in the event that the primary drain becomes restricted. Devices shall not be installed in the drain line.

1411.3.2 Drain pipe materials and sizes. Components of the condensate disposal system shall be ABS, cast iron, copper, cross-linked polyethylene, CPVC, galvanized steel, PE-RT, polyethylene, polypropylene or PVC pipe or tubing. Components shall be selected for the pressure and temperature rating of the installation. Joints and connections shall be made in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapter *25*. Condensate waste and drain line size shall be not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ -inch (19 mm) nominal diameter from the drain pan connection to the place of condensate disposal. Where the drain pipes from more than one unit are manifolded together for condensate drainage, the pipe or tubing shall be sized in accordance with an approved method.

1411.3.3 Drain line maintenance. Condensate drain lines shall be configured to permit the clearing of blockages and performance of maintenance without requiring the drain line to be cut.

1411.3.4 Appliances, equipment and insulation in pans. Where appliances, equipment or insulation are subject to water damage when auxiliary drain pans fill, those portions of the appliances, equipment and insulation shall be installed above the flood level rim of the pan. Supports located inside of the pan to support the appliance or equipment shall be water resistant and approved.

1411.4 Condensate pumps. Condensate pumps located in uninhabitable spaces, such as attics and crawl spaces, shall be connected to the appliance or equipment served such that when the pump fails, the appliance or equipment will be prevented from operating. Pumps shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1411.5 Auxiliary drain pan. Category IV condensing appliances shall have an auxiliary drain pan where damage to any building component will occur as a result of stoppage in the condensate drainage system. These pans shall be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 1411.3.

Exception: Fuel-fired appliances that automatically shut down operation in the event of a stoppage in the condensate drainage system.

1411.6 Insulation of refrigerant piping. Piping and fittings for refrigerant vapor (suction) lines shall be insulated with insulation having a thermal resistivity of not less than R-4 and having external surface permeance not exceeding 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(sm^{2}Pa)] when tested in accordance with ASTM E96.

1411.7 Location and protection of refrigerant piping. Refrigerant piping installed within 1-$^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) of the underside of roof decks shall be protected from damage caused by nails and other fasteners.

1411.8 Locking access port caps. Refrigerant circuit access ports located outdoors shall be fitted with locking-type tamper-resistant caps or shall be otherwise secured to prevent unauthorized access.

SECTION 1412
ABSORPTION COOLING EQUIPMENT

1412.1 Approval of equipment. Absorption systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Absorption equipment shall comply with UL 1995 or UL/CSA/ANCE 60335-2-40.

1412.2 Condensate disposal. Condensate from the cooling coil shall be disposed of as provided in Section 1411.3.

1412.3 Insulation of piping. Refrigerant piping, brine piping and fittings within a building shall be insulated to prevent condensation from forming on piping.

1412.4 Pressure-relief protection. Absorption systems shall be protected by a pressure-relief device. Discharge from the pressure-relief device shall be located where it will not create a hazard to persons or property.

SECTION 1413
EVAPORATIVE COOLING EQUIPMENT

1413.1 General. Evaporative cooling equipment and appliances shall comply with UL 1995 or UL/CSA/ANCE 60335-2-40 and shall be installed:

1. In accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. On level platforms in accordance with Section 1305.1.3.1.
3. So that openings in exterior walls are flashed in accordance with Section 703.4.
4. So as to protect the potable water supply in accordance with *the plumbing code and Chapter 25.*
5. So that air intake opening locations are in accordance with Section 303.5.1.

SECTION 1414
FIREPLACE STOVES

1414.1 General. Fireplace stoves shall be listed, labeled and installed in accordance with the terms of the listing. Fireplace stoves shall be tested in accordance with UL 737.

1414.2 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions for fireplace stoves shall be installed in accordance with the listing of the fireplace stove. The supporting structure for a hearth extension for a fireplace stove shall be at the same level as the supporting structure for the fireplace unit. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area.

SECTION 1415
MASONRY HEATERS

1415.1 General. Masonry heaters shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1002.

Replaces:	4101:8-14-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013

4101:8-15-01 Exhaust systems.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 1501
GENERAL

1501.1 Outdoor discharge. The air removed by every mechanical exhaust system shall be discharged to the outdoors in accordance with Section 1504.3. Air shall not be exhausted into an attic, soffit, ridge vent or crawl space.

Exception: Whole-house ventilation-type attic fans that discharge into the attic space of dwelling units having private attics shall be permitted.

SECTION 1502
CLOTHES DRYER EXHAUST

1502.1 General. Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1502.2 Independent exhaust systems. Dryer exhaust systems shall be independent of all other systems and shall convey the moisture to the outdoors.

Exception: This section shall not apply to listed and labeled condensing (ductless) clothes dryers.

1502.3 Duct termination. Exhaust ducts shall terminate on the outside of the building. Exhaust duct terminations shall be in accordance with the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. If the manufacturer's instructions do not specify a termination location, the exhaust duct shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in any direction from openings into buildings. Exhaust duct terminations shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Screens shall not be installed at the duct termination.

1502.3.1 Exhaust termination outlet and passageway size. The passageway of dryer exhaust duct terminals shall be undiminished in size and shall provide an open area of not less than 12.5 square inches (8065 mm^2).

1502.4 Dryer exhaust ducts. Dryer exhaust ducts shall conform to the requirements of Sections 1502.4.1 through 1502.4.7.

1502.4.1 Material and size. Exhaust ducts shall have a smooth interior finish and shall be constructed of metal not less than 0.0157 inch (0.3950 mm) in thickness (No. 28 gage). The duct shall be 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in diameter.

1502.4.2 Duct installation. Exhaust ducts shall be supported at intervals not to exceed 12 feet (3658 mm) and shall be secured in place. The insert end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct or fitting in the direction of airflow. Exhaust duct joints shall be sealed in accordance with Section 1601.4.1 and shall be mechanically fastened. Ducts shall not be joined with screws or similar fasteners that protrude more than $^1/_8$ -inch (3.2 mm) into the inside of the duct. Where dryer exhaust ducts are enclosed in wall or ceiling cavities, such cavities shall allow the installation of the duct without deformation.

1502.4.3 Transition duct. Transition ducts used to connect the dryer to the exhaust duct system shall be a single length that is listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2158A. Transition ducts shall be not greater than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length. Transition ducts shall not be concealed within construction.

1502.4.4 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilators. Domestic dryer exhaust duct power ventilators shall conform to UL 705 for use in dryer exhaust duct systems. The dryer exhaust duct power ventilator shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1502.4.5 Duct length. The maximum allowable exhaust duct length shall be determined by one of the methods specified in Sections 1502.4.5.1 through 1502.4.5.3.

1502.4.5.1 Specified length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be 35 feet (10 668 mm) from the connection to the transition duct from the dryer to the outlet terminal. Where fittings are used, the maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be reduced in accordance with Table 1502.4.5.1. The maximum length of the exhaust duct does not include the transition duct.

TABLE 1502.4.5.1
DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING EQUIVALENT LENGTH

DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING TYPE	EQUIVALENT LENGTH

4-inch radius mitered 45-degree elbow	2 feet 6 inches
4-inch radius mitered 90-degree elbow	5 feet
6-inch radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
6-inch radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 9 inches
8-inch radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
8-inch radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 7 inches
10-inch radius smooth 45-degree elbow	9 inches
10-inch radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 6 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

1502.4.5.2 Manufacturer's instructions. The size and maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. The *building* official shall be provided with a copy of the installation instructions for the make and model of the dryer at the concealment inspection. In the absence of fitting equivalent length calculations from the clothes dryer manufacturer, Table 1502.4.5.1 shall be used.

1502.4.5.3 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilator. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the dryer exhaust duct power ventilator.

1502.4.6 Length identification. Where the exhaust duct equivalent length exceeds 35 feet (10 668 mm), the equivalent length of the exhaust duct shall be identified on a permanent label or tag. The label or tag shall be located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the exhaust duct connection.

1502.4.7 Exhaust duct required. Where space for a clothes dryer is provided, an exhaust duct system shall be installed. Where the clothes dryer is not installed at the time of occupancy the exhaust duct shall be capped or plugged in the space in which it originates and identified and marked "future use."

Exception: Where a listed condensing clothes dryer is installed prior to occupancy of the structure.

1502.5 Protection required. Protective shield plates shall be placed where nails or screws from finish or other work are likely to penetrate the clothes dryer exhaust duct. Shield plates shall be placed on the finished face of framing members where there is less than $1^1/_4$ -inches (32 mm) between the duct and the finished face of the framing member. Protective shield plates shall be constructed of steel, shall have a minimum thickness of 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) and shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

SECTION 1503
DOMESTIC COOKING EXHAUST EQUIPMENT

1503.1 General. Domestic cooking exhaust equipment shall comply with the requirements of this section.

1503.2 Domestic cooking exhaust. Where domestic cooking exhaust equipment is provided, it shall comply with one of the following:

1. The fan for overhead range hoods and downdraft exhaust equipment not integral with the cooking appliance shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 507.
2. Overhead range hoods and downdraft exhaust equipment with integral fans shall comply with UL 507.
3. Domestic cooking appliances with integral downdraft exhaust equipment shall be listed and labeled in accordance with ANSI Z21.1 or UL 858.
4. Microwave ovens with integral exhaust for installation over the cooking surface shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 923.

1503.2.1 Open-top broiler exhaust. Domestic open-top broiler units shall be provided with a metal exhaust hood having a thickness of not less than 0.0157 inch (0.3950 mm) (No. 28 gage). Such hoods shall be installed with a clearance of not less than $^1/_4$ -inch (6.4 mm) between the hood and the underside of combustible material and cabinets. A clearance of not less than 24 inches (610 mm) shall be maintained between the cooking surface and combustible material and cabinets. The hood width shall be not less than the width of the broiler unit and shall extend over the entire unit.

Exception: Broiler units that incorporate an integral exhaust system, and that are listed and labeled for use without an exhaust hood, shall not be required to have an exhaust hood.

1503.3 Exhaust discharge. Domestic cooking exhaust equipment shall discharge to the outdoors through a duct. The duct shall have a smooth interior surface, shall be air tight, shall be equipped with a backdraft damper and shall be independent of all other exhaust systems. Ducts serving domestic cooking exhaust equipment shall not terminate in an attic or crawl space or areas inside the building.

Exception: Where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and where mechanical or natural ventilation is otherwise provided, listed and labeled ductless range hoods shall not be required to discharge to the outdoors.

1503.4 Duct material. Ducts serving domestic cooking exhaust equipment shall be constructed of galvanized steel, stainless steel or copper.

Exception: Ducts for domestic kitchen cooking appliances equipped with down-draft exhaust systems shall be permitted to be constructed of schedule 40 PVC pipe and fittings provided that the installation complies with all of the following:

1. The duct is installed under a concrete slab poured on grade.
2. The underfloor trench in which the duct is installed is completely backfilled with sand or gravel.
3. The PVC duct extends not more than 1 inch (25 mm) above the indoor concrete floor surface.
4. The PVC duct extends not more than 1 inch (25 mm) above grade outside of the building.
5. The PVC ducts are solvent cemented.

1503.5 Kitchen exhaust rates. Where domestic kitchen cooking appliances are equipped with ducted range hoods or down-draft exhaust systems, the fans shall be sized in accordance with Section 1505.4.4.

1503.6 Makeup air required. Where one or more gas, liquid or solid fuel-burning appliance that is neither direct-vent nor uses a mechanical draft venting system is located within a dwelling unit's air barrier, each exhaust system capable of exhausting in excess of 400 cubic feet per minute (0.19 m^3/s) shall be mechanically or passively provided with makeup air at a rate approximately equal to the exhaust air rate. Such makeup air systems shall be equipped with not fewer than one damper complying with Section 1503.6.2.

Exceptions:

1. *If an exhaust hood system's manufacturer's instructions and/or specifications differ from this requirement, the system shall be installed per the manufacturer's instructions and/or specifications.*
2. Makeup air is not required for exhaust systems installed for the exclusive purpose of space cooling and intended to be operated only when windows or other air inlets are open.

1503.6.1 Location. Kitchen exhaust makeup air shall be discharged into the same room in which the exhaust system is located or into rooms or duct systems that communicate through one or more permanent openings with the room in which such exhaust system is located. Such permanent openings shall have a net cross-sectional area not less than the required area of the makeup air supply openings.

1503.6.2 Makeup air dampers. Where makeup air is required by Section 1503.6, makeup air dampers shall comply with this section. Each damper shall be a gravity damper or an electrically operated damper that automatically opens when the exhaust system operates. Dampers shall be located to allow access for inspection, service, repair and replacement without removing permanent construction or any other ducts not connected to the damper being inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced. Gravity or barometric dampers shall not be used in passive makeup air systems except where the dampers are rated to provide the design makeup airflow at a pressure differential of 0.01 in. w.c. (3 Pa) or less.

SECTION 1504
EXHAUST DUCTS AND EXHAUST OPENINGS

1504.1 Duct construction. Where exhaust duct construction is not specified in this chapter, construction shall comply with Chapter 16.

1504.2 Duct length. The length of exhaust and supply ducts used with ventilating equipment shall not exceed the lengths determined in accordance with Table 1504.2.

Exception: Duct length shall not be limited where the duct system complies with the manufacturer's design criteria or where the flow rate of the installed ventilating equipment is verified by the installer or approved third party using a flow hood, flow grid or other airflow measuring device.

TABLE 1504.2
DUCT LENGTH

DUCT TYPE	FLEX DUCT								SMOOTH-WALL DUCT							
Fan airflow rating (CFM @ 0.25 inch wc[a])	50	80	100	125	150	200	250	300	50	80	100	125	150	200	250	300
Diameter[b] (inches)	Maximum length[c, d, e] (feet)															
3	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	5	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
4	56	4	X	X	X	X	X	X	114	31	10	X	X	X	X	X
5	NL	81	42	16	2	X	X	X	NL	152	91	51	28	4	X	X
6	NL	NL	158	91	55	18	1	X	NL	NL	NL	168	112	53	25	9
7	NL	NL	NL	NL	161	78	40	19	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL	148	88	54
8 and above	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL	189	111	69	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL	198	133

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Fan airflow rating shall be in accordance with ANSI/AMCA 210-ANSI/ASHRAE 51.
b. For noncircular ducts, calculate the diameter as four times the cross-sectional area divided by the perimeter.
c. This table assumes that elbows are not used. Fifteen feet of allowable duct length shall be deducted for each elbow installed in the duct run.
d. NL = no limit on duct length of this size.
e. X = not allowed. Any length of duct of this size with assumed turns and fittings will exceed the rated pressure drop.

1504.3 Exhaust openings. Air exhaust openings shall terminate as follows:

1. Not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from property lines.
2. Not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from gravity air intake openings, operable windows and doors.
3. Not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from mechanical air intake openings except where the exhaust opening is located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the air intake opening. Openings shall comply with Sections 303.5.2 and 303.6.

SECTION 1505
MECHANICAL VENTILATION

1505.1 General. Where local exhaust or whole-house mechanical ventilation is provided, the equipment shall be designed in accordance with this section.

1505.2 Recirculation of air. Exhaust air from bathrooms and toilet rooms shall not be recirculated within a residence or circulated to another dwelling unit and shall be exhausted directly to the outdoors. Exhaust air from bathrooms, toilet rooms and kitchens shall not discharge into an attic, crawl space or other areas inside the building. This section shall not prohibit the installation of ductless range hoods in accordance with the exception to Section 1503.3.

1505.3 Exhaust equipment. Exhaust equipment serving single dwelling units shall be listed and labeled as providing the minimum required airflow in accordance with ANSI/AMCA 210-ANSI/ASHRAE 51.

1505.4 Whole-house mechanical ventilation system. Whole-house mechanical ventilation systems shall be designed in accordance with Sections 1505.4.1 through 1505.4.4.

1505.4.1 System design. The whole-house ventilation system shall consist of one or more supply or exhaust fans, or a combination of such, and associated ducts and controls. Local exhaust or supply fans are permitted to serve as such

a system. Outdoor air ducts connected to the return side of an air handler shall be considered as providing supply ventilation.

1505.4.2 System controls. The whole-house mechanical ventilation system shall be provided with controls that enable manual override.

1505.4.3 Mechanical ventilation rate. The whole-house mechanical ventilation system shall provide outdoor air at a continuous rate as determined in accordance with Table 1505.4.3(1) or Equation 15-1.

Ventilation rate in cubic feet per minute =
(0.01 × total square foot area of house) +
[7.5 × (number of bedrooms + 1)] **Equation 15-1**

Exception: The whole-house mechanical ventilation system is permitted to operate intermittently where the system has controls that enable operation for not less than 25 percent of each 4-hour segment and the ventilation rate prescribed in Table 1505.4.3(1) is multiplied by the factor determined in accordance with Table 1505.4.3(2).

TABLE 1505.4.3(1)
CONTINUOUS WHOLE-HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM AIRFLOW RATE REQUIREMENTS

DWELLING UNIT FLOOR AREA (square feet)	NUMBER OF BEDROOMS				
	0 – 1	2 – 3	4 – 5	6 – 7	> 7
	Airflow in CFM				
< 1,500	30	45	60	75	90
1,501 – 3,000	45	60	75	90	105
3,001 – 4,500	60	75	90	105	120
4,501 – 6,000	75	90	105	120	135
6,001 – 7,500	90	105	120	135	150
> 7,500	105	120	135	150	165

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.0004719 m^3/s.

TABLE 1505.4.3(2)
INTERMITTENT WHOLE-HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION RATE FACTORS[a, b]

RUN-TIME PERCENTAGE IN EACH 4-HOUR SEGMENT	25%	33%	50%	66%	75%	100%
Factor[a]	4	3	2	1.5	1.3	1.0

a. For ventilation system run time values between those given, the factors are permitted to be determined by interpolation.

b. Extrapolation beyond the table is prohibited.

1505.4.4 Local exhaust rates. Local exhaust systems shall be designed to have the capacity to exhaust the minimum airflow rate determined in accordance with Table 1505.4.4.

TABLE 1505.4.4
MINIMUM REQUIRED LOCAL EXHAUST RATES FOR ONE-, TWO-*AND THREE* FAMILY DWELLINGS

AREA TO BE EXHAUSTED	EXHAUST RATES
Kitchens	100 cfm intermittent or 25 cfm continuous
Bathrooms-Toilet Rooms	Mechanical exhaust capacity of 50 cfm intermittent or 20 cfm continuous

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.0004719 m^3/s.

Replaces:	4101:8-15-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013, 07/01/2014

4101:8-16-01 Duct systems.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 1601
DUCT CONSTRUCTION

1601.1 Duct design. Duct systems serving heating, cooling and ventilation equipment shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this section and ACCA Manual D, the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions or other approved methods.

1601.1.1 Above-ground duct systems. Above-ground duct systems shall conform to the following:

1. Equipment connected to duct systems shall be designed to limit discharge air temperature to not greater than 250°F (121°C).
2. Factory-made ducts shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 181 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
3. Fibrous glass duct construction shall conform to the SMACNA Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards or NAIMA Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards.
4. Field-fabricated and shop-fabricated metal and flexible duct constructions shall conform to the SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible except as allowed by Table M1601.1.1. Galvanized steel shall conform to ASTM A653.
5. The use of gypsum products to construct return air ducts or plenums is permitted, provided that the air temperature does not exceed 125°F (52°C) and exposed surfaces are not subject to condensation.
6. Duct systems shall be constructed of materials having a flame spread index of not greater than 200.
7. Stud wall cavities and the spaces between solid floor joists to be used as air plenums shall comply with the following conditions:
   - 7.1. These cavities or spaces shall not be used as a plenum for supply air.
   - 7.2. These cavities or spaces shall not be part of a required fire-resistance-rated assembly.

7.3. Stud wall cavities shall not convey air from more than one floor level.

7.4. Stud wall cavities and joist-space plenums shall be isolated from adjacent concealed spaces by tight-fitting fireblocking in accordance with Section 602.8.

7.5. Stud wall cavities in the outside walls of building envelope assemblies shall not be utilized as air plenums.

8. Volume dampers, equipment and other means of supply, return and exhaust air adjustment used in system balancing shall be provided with access.

TABLE 1601.1.1
DUCT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS FOR SINGLE DWELLING UNITS[a]

ROUND DUCT DIAMETER (inches)	STATIC PRESSURE			
	½-inch water gage		1-inch water gage	
	Thickness (inches)		Thickness (inches)	
	Galvanized	Aluminum	Galvanized	Aluminum
< 12	0.013	0.018	0.013	0.018
12 to 14	0.013	0.018	0.016	0.023
15 to 17	0.016	0.023	0.019	0.027
18	0.016	0.023	0.024	0.034
19 to 20	0.019	0.027	0.024	0.034

RECTANGULAR DUCT DIMENSION (inches)	STATIC PRESSURE			
	½-inch water gage		1-inch water gage	
	Thickness (inches)		Thickness (inches)	
	Galvanized	Aluminum	Galvanized	Aluminum
□ 8	0.013	0.018	0.013	0.018
9 to 10	0.013	0.018	0.016	0.023
11 to 12	0.016	0.023	0.019	0.027
13 to 16	0.019	0.027	0.019	0.027
17 to 18	0.019	0.027	0.024	0.034
19 to 20	0.024	0.034	0.024	0.034

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 inch water gage = 249 Pa.

a. Ductwork that exceeds 20 inches by dimension or exceeds a pressure of 1 inch water gage shall be constructed in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible.

1601.1.2 Underground duct systems. Underground duct systems shall be constructed of approved concrete, clay, metal or plastic. The maximum design temperature for systems utilizing plastic duct and fittings shall be 150°F (66°C). Metal ducts shall be protected from corrosion in an approved manner or shall be completely encased in concrete not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick. Nonmetallic ducts shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Plastic pipe and fitting materials shall conform to cell classification 12454-B of ASTM D1248 or ASTM D1784 and external loading

properties of ASTM D2412. Ducts shall slope to a drainage point that has access. Ducts shall be sealed, secured and tested prior to encasing the ducts in concrete or direct burial. Duct tightness shall be verified as required by Section 1103.3. Metallic ducts having an approved protective coating and nonmetallic ducts shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1601.2 Vibration isolators. Vibration isolators installed between mechanical equipment and metal ducts shall be fabricated from approved materials and shall not exceed 10 inches (254 mm) in length.

[

1601.3 Duct insulation materials. Duct insulation materials shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Duct coverings and linings, including adhesives where used, shall have a flame spread index not higher than 25, and a smoke-developed index not over 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231.
   Exception: Spray application of polyurethane foam to the exterior of ducts in attics and crawl spaces shall be permitted subject to all of the following:
   1. The flame spread index is not greater than 25 and the smoke-developed index is not greater than 450 at the specified installed thickness.
   2. The foam plastic is protected in accordance with the ignition barrier requirements of Sections 316.5.3 and 316.5.4.
   3. The foam plastic complies with the requirements of Section 316.

2. Duct coverings and linings shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C). Coverings and linings shall be listed and labeled.
3. External reflective duct insulation shall be legibly printed or identified at intervals not greater than 36 inches (914 mm) with the name of the manufacturer, the product R-value at the specified installed thickness and the flame spread and smoke-developed indices. The installed thickness of the external duct insulation shall include the enclosed air space(s). The product R-value for external reflective duct insulation shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1668.
4. External duct insulation and factory-insulated flexible ducts shall be legibly printed or identified at intervals not longer than 36 inches (914 mm) with the name of the manufacturer, the thermal resistance R-value at the specified installed thickness and the flame spread and smoke-developed indices of the composite materials. Spray polyurethane foam manufacturers

shall provide the same product information and properties, at the nominal installed thickness, to the customer in writing at the time of foam application. Nonreflective duct insulation product R-values shall be based on insulation only, excluding air films, vapor retarders or other duct components, and shall be based on tested C-values at 75°F (24°C) mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with recognized industry procedures. The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its R-value shall be determined as follows:

4.1. For duct board, duct liner and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used.

4.2. For ductwrap, the installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25-percent compression) of nominal thickness.

4.3. For factory-made flexible air ducts, the installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.

4.4. For spray polyurethane foam, the aged R-value per inch measured in accordance with recognized industry standards shall be provided to the customer in writing at the time of foam application. In addition, the total R-value for the nominal application thickness shall be provided.

1601.4 Installation. Duct installation shall comply with Sections 1601.4.1 through 1601.4.10.

1601.4.1 Joints, seams and connections. Longitudinal and transverse joints, seams and connections in metallic and nonmetallic ducts shall be constructed as specified in SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible and NAIMA Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards. Joints, longitudinal and transverse seams, and connections in ductwork shall be securely fastened and sealed with welds, gaskets, mastics (adhesives), mastic-plus-embedded-fabric systems, liquid sealants or tapes. Tapes and mastics used to seal fibrous glass ductwork shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 181A and shall be marked "181A-P" for pressure-sensitive tape, "181 A-M" for mastic or "181 A-H" for heat-sensitive tape.

Tapes and mastics used to seal metallic and flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors shall comply with UL 181B and shall be marked "181 B-FX" for pressure-sensitive tape or "181 BM" for mastic. Duct connections to flanges of air distribution system equipment shall be sealed and mechanically fastened. Mechanical fasteners for use with flexible nonmetallic air ducts shall comply with UL 181B and shall be marked 181B-C. Crimp joints for round metallic

ducts shall have a contact lap of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) and shall be mechanically fastened by means of not less than three sheet-metal screws or rivets equally spaced around the joint.

Closure systems used to seal all ductwork shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

Exceptions:

1. Spray polyurethane foam shall be permitted to be applied without additional joint seals.
2. Where a duct connection is made that is partially without access, three screws or rivets shall be equally spaced on the exposed portion of the joint so as to prevent a hinge effect.
3. For ducts having a static pressure classification of less than 2 inches of water column (500 Pa), additional closure systems shall not be required for continuously welded joints and seams and locking-type joints and seams. This exception shall not apply to snap-lock and button-lock type joints and seams that are located outside of conditioned spaces.

1601.4.2 Duct lap. Crimp joints for round and oval metal ducts shall be lapped not less than 1 inch (25 mm) and the male end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct in the direction of airflow.

1601.4.3 Plastic duct joints. Joints between plastic ducts and plastic fittings shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1601.4.4 Support. Factory-made ducts listed in accordance with UL 181 shall be supported in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Field- and shop-fabricated fibrous glass ducts shall be supported in accordance with the SMACNA Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards or the NAIMA Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards. Field- and shop-fabricated metal and flexible ducts shall be supported in accordance with the SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards— Metal and Flexible.

1601.4.5 Fireblocking. Duct installations shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section 602.8.

1601.4.6 Duct insulation. Duct insulation shall be installed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. A vapor retarder having a permeance of not greater than 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(s · m^2 · Pa)] in accordance with ASTM E96, or aluminum foil with a thickness of not less than 2 mils (0.05 mm), shall be installed on the

exterior of insulation on cooling supply ducts that pass through unconditioned spaces conducive to condensation except where the insulation is spray polyurethane foam with a water vapor permeance of not greater than 3 perms per inch [1722 ng/(s · m^2 · Pa)] at the installed thickness.

2. Outdoor duct systems shall be protected against the elements.
3. Duct coverings shall not penetrate a fireblocked wall or floor.

1601.4.7 Factory-made air ducts. Factory-made air ducts shall not be installed in or on the ground, in tile or metal pipe, or within masonry or concrete.

1601.4.8 Duct separation. Ducts shall be installed with not less than 4 inches (102 mm) separation from earth except where they meet the requirements of Section 1601.1.2.

1601.4.9 Ducts located in garages. Ducts in garages shall comply with the requirements of Section 302.5.2.

1601.4.10 Flood hazard areas. In flood hazard areas as established by Table 301.2(1), duct systems shall be located or installed in accordance with Section 322.1.6.

1601.5 Under-floor plenums. Under-floor plenums shall be prohibited in new structures. Modification or repairs to under-floor plenums in existing structures shall conform to the requirements of this section.

1601.5.1 General. The space shall be cleaned of loose combustible materials and scrap, and shall be tightly enclosed. The ground surface of the space shall be covered with a moisture barrier having a thickness of not less than 4 mils (0.1 mm). Plumbing waste cleanouts shall not be located within the space.

Exception: Plumbing waste cleanouts shall be permitted to be located in unvented crawl spaces that receive conditioned air in accordance with Section 408.3.

1601.5.2 Materials. The under-floor space, including the sidewall insulation, shall be formed by materials having flame spread index values not greater than 200 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

1601.5.3 Furnace connections. A duct shall extend from the furnace supply outlet to not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the combustible framing. This duct shall comply with the provisions of Section 1601.1. A noncombustible

receptacle shall be installed below any floor opening into the plenum in accordance with the following requirements:

1. The receptacle shall be securely suspended from the floor members and shall be not more than 18 inches (457 mm) below the floor opening.
2. The area of the receptacle shall extend 3 inches (76 mm) beyond the opening on all sides.
3. The perimeter of the receptacle shall have a vertical lip not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height at the open sides.

1601.5.4 Access. Access to an under-floor plenum shall be provided through an opening in the floor with minimum dimensions of 18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610 mm).

1601.5.5 Furnace controls. The furnace shall be equipped with an automatic control that will start the air-circulating fan when the air in the furnace bonnet reaches a temperature not higher than 150°F (66°C). The furnace shall additionally be equipped with an approved automatic control that limits the outlet air temperature to 200°F (93°C).

1601.6 Independent garage HVAC systems. Furnaces and air-handling systems that supply air to living spaces shall not supply air to or return air from a garage.

SECTION 1602
RETURN AIR

1602.1 Outdoor air openings. Outdoor intake openings shall be located in accordance with Section 303.5.1. Opening protection shall be in accordance with Section 303.6

1602.2 Return air openings. Return air openings for heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems shall comply with all of the following:

1. Openings shall not be located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) measured in any direction from an open combustion chamber or draft hood of another appliance located in the same room or space.
2. The amount of return air taken from any room or space shall be not greater than the flow rate of supply air delivered to such room or space.
3. Return and transfer openings shall be sized in accordance with the appliance or equipment manufacturer's installation instructions, Manual D or the design of the registered design professional.
4. Return air shall not be taken from a closet, bathroom, toilet room, kitchen, garage, mechanical room, boiler room, furnace room or unconditioned attic.

Exceptions:

1. Taking return air from a kitchen is not prohibited where such return air openings serve the kitchen only, and are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the cooking appliances.
2. Dedicated forced-air systems serving only the garage shall not be prohibited from obtaining return air from the garage.

5. For other than dedicated HVAC systems, return air shall not be taken from indoor swimming pool enclosures and associated deck areas except where the air in such spaces is dehumidified,
6. Taking return air from an unconditioned crawl space shall not be accomplished through a direct connection to the return side of a forced-air furnace. Transfer openings in the crawl space enclosure shall not be prohibited.
7. Return air from one dwelling unit shall not be discharged into another dwelling unit.

Replaces:	4101:8-16-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013

4101:8-17-01 Combustion air.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 1701
GENERAL

1701.1 Scope. Solid fuel-burning appliances shall be provided with combustion air in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired appliances shall be provided with combustion air in accordance with NFPA 31. The methods of providing combustion air in this chapter do not apply to fireplaces, fireplace stoves and direct-vent appliances. The requirements for combustion and dilution air for gas-fired appliances shall be in accordance with Chapter 24.

1701.2 Opening location. In flood hazard areas as established in Table 301.2(1), combustion air openings shall be located at or above the elevation required in Section 322.2.1 or 322.3.2.

Replaces:	4101:8-17-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.06, 3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013

4101:8-18-01 Chimneys and vents.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 1801
GENERAL

1801.1 Venting required. Fuel-burning appliances shall be vented to the outdoors in accordance with their listing and label and manufacturer's installation instructions except appliances listed and labeled for unvented use. Venting systems shall consist of approved chimneys or vents, or venting assemblies that are integral parts of labeled appliances. Gas-fired appliances shall be vented in accordance with Chapter 24.

This section should not be construed as permitting the installation of portable unvented heaters in locations otherwise prohibited by section 3701.82 of the Revised Code or rules adopted by the state fire marshal pursuant to 3701.82 of the Revised Code.

1801.2 Draft requirements. A venting system shall satisfy the draft requirements of the appliance in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and shall be constructed and installed to develop a positive flow to convey combustion products to the outside atmosphere.

1801.3 Existing chimneys and vents. Where an appliance is permanently disconnected from an existing chimney or vent, or where an appliance is connected to an existing chimney or vent during the process of a new installation, the chimney or vent shall comply with Sections 1801.3.1 through 1801.3.4.

1801.3.1 Size. The chimney or vent shall be resized as necessary to control flue gas condensation in the interior of the chimney or vent and to provide the appliance, or appliances served, with the required draft. For the venting of oil-fired appliances to masonry chimneys, the resizing shall be done in accordance with NFPA 31.

1801.3.2 Flue passageways. The flue gas passageway shall be free of obstructions and combustible deposits and shall be cleaned if previously used

for venting a solid or liquid fuel-burning appliance or fireplace. The flue liner, chimney inner wall or vent inner wall shall be continuous and free of cracks, gaps, perforations, or other damage or deterioration that would allow the escape of combustion products, including gases, moisture and creosote.

1801.3.3 Cleanout. Masonry chimneys shall be provided with a cleanout opening complying with Section 1003.17.

1801.3.4 Clearances. Chimneys and vents shall have airspace clearance to combustibles in accordance with this code and the chimney or vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: Masonry chimneys equipped with a chimney lining system tested and listed for installation in chimneys in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 1777, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, shall not be required to have a clearance between combustible materials and exterior surfaces of the masonry chimney. Noncombustible firestopping shall be provided in accordance with this code.

1801.4 Space around lining. The space surrounding a flue lining system or other vent installed within a masonry chimney shall not be used to vent any other appliance. This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and this code.

1801.5 Mechanical draft systems. A mechanical draft system shall be used only with appliances listed and labeled for such use. Provisions shall be made to prevent the flow of fuel to the equipment when the draft system is not operating. Forced draft systems and portions of induced draft systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed to prevent leakage of flue gases into a building.

1801.6 Direct-vent appliances. Direct-vent appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1801.7 Support. Venting systems shall be adequately supported for the weight of the material used.

1801.8 Duct penetrations. Chimneys, vents and vent connectors shall not extend into or through supply and return air ducts or plenums.

1801.9 Fireblocking. Vent and chimney installations shall be fireblocked in

accordance with Section 602.8.

1801.10 Unused openings. Unused openings in any venting system shall be closed or capped.

1801.11 Multiple-appliance venting systems. Two or more listed and labeled appliances connected to a common natural draft venting system shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Appliances that are connected to common venting systems shall be located on the same floor of the dwelling.
   Exception: Engineered systems as provided for in Section 2427.
2. Inlets to common venting systems shall be offset such that no portion of an inlet is opposite another inlet.
3. Connectors serving appliances operating under a natural draft shall not be connected to any portion of a mechanical draft system operating under positive pressure.

1801.12 Multiple solid fuel prohibited. A solid fuel-burning appliance or fireplace shall not connect to a chimney passageway venting another appliance.

SECTION 1802
VENT COMPONENTS

1802.1 Draft hoods. Draft hoods shall be located in the same room or space as the combustion air openings for the appliances.

1802.2 Vent dampers. Vent dampers shall comply with Sections 1802.2.1 and 1802.2.2.

1802.2.1 Manually operated. Manually operated dampers shall not be installed except in connectors or chimneys serving solid fuel-burning appliances.

1802.2.2 Automatically operated. Automatically operated dampers shall conform to UL 17 and be installed in accordance with the terms of their listing and label. The installation shall prevent firing of the burner when the damper is not opened to a safe position.

1802.3 Draft regulators. Draft regulators shall be provided for oil-fired appliances that must be connected to a chimney. Draft regulators provided for solid fuel-burning appliances to reduce draft intensity shall be installed and set in accordance

with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1802.3.1 Location. Where required, draft regulators shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the appliance so that a difference in pressure will not exist between the air at the regulator and the combustion air supply.

SECTION 1803
CHIMNEY AND VENT CONNECTORS

1803.1 General. Connectors shall be used to connect fuel-burning appliances to a vertical chimney or vent except where the chimney or vent is attached directly to the appliance.

1803.2 Connectors for oil and solid fuel-burning appliances. Connectors for oil and solid fuel-burning appliances shall be constructed of factory-built chimney material, Type L vent material or single-wall metal pipe having resistance to corrosion and heat and thickness not less than that of galvanized steel as specified in Table 1803.2.

TABLE 1803.2
THICKNESS FOR SINGLE-WALL METAL PIPE CONNECTORS

DIAMETER OF CONNECTOR (inches)	GALVANIZED SHEET METAL GAGE NUMBER	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inch)
Less than 6	26	0.019
6 to 10	24	0.024
Over 10 through 16	22	0.029

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1803.3 Installation. Vent and chimney connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and within the space where the appliance is located. Appliances shall be located as close as practical to the vent or chimney. Connectors shall be as short and straight as possible and installed with a slope of not less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) rise per foot of run. Connectors shall be securely supported and joints shall be fastened with sheet metal screws or rivets. Devices that obstruct the flow of flue gases shall not be installed in a connector unless listed and labeled or approved for such installation.

1803.3.1 Floor, ceiling and wall penetrations. A chimney connector or vent connector shall not pass through any floor or ceiling. A chimney connector or vent connector shall not pass through a wall or partition unless the connector is listed and labeled for wall pass-through, or is routed through a device listed and labeled for wall pass-through and is installed in accordance with the conditions

of its listing and label. Connectors for oil-fired appliances listed and labeled for Type L vents, passing through walls or partitions shall be in accordance with the following:

1. Type L vent material for oil appliances shall be installed with not less than listed and labeled clearances to combustible material.
2. Single-wall metal pipe shall be guarded by a ventilated metal thimble not less than 4 inches (102 mm) larger in diameter than the vent connector. Not less than 6 inches (152 mm) of clearance shall be maintained between the thimble and combustibles.

1803.3.2 Length. The horizontal run of an uninsulated connector to a natural draft chimney shall not exceed 75 percent of the height of the vertical portion of the chimney above the connector. The horizontal run of a listed connector to a natural draft chimney shall not exceed 100 percent of the height of the vertical portion of the chimney above the connector.

1803.3.3 Size. A connector shall not be smaller than the flue collar of the appliance.

Exception: Where installed in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.

1803.3.4 Clearance. Connectors shall be installed with clearance to combustibles as set forth in Table 1803.3.4. Reduced clearances to combustible materials shall be in accordance with Table 1306.2 and Figure 1306.1.

TABLE 1803.3.4
CHIMNEY AND VENT CONNECTOR CLEARANCES TO COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS[a]

TYPE OF CONNECTOR	MINIMUM CLEARANCE (inches)
Single-wall metal pipe connectors:	
Oil and solid-fuel appliances	18
Oil appliances listed for use with Type L vents	9
Type L vent piping connectors:	
Oil and solid-fuel appliances	9
Oil appliances listed for use with Type L vents	3[b]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. These minimum clearances apply to unlisted single-wall chimney and vent connectors. Reduction of required clearances is permitted as in Table 1306.2.

b. Where listed Type L vent piping is used, the clearance shall be in accordance with the vent listing.

1803.3.5 Access The entire length of a connector shall allow access for inspection, cleaning and replacement.

1803.4 Connection to fireplace flue. Connection of appliances to chimney flues serving fireplaces shall comply with Sections 1803.4.1 through 1803.4.4.

1803.4.1 Closure and accessibility. A noncombustible seal shall be provided below the point of connection to prevent entry of room air into the flue. Means shall be provided for access to the flue for inspection and cleaning.

1803.4.2 Connection to factory-built fireplace flue. A different appliance shall not be connected to a flue serving a factory-built fireplace unless the appliance is specifically listed for such an installation. The connection shall be made in compliance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.

1803.4.3 Connection to masonry fireplace flue. A connector shall extend from the appliance to the flue serving a masonry fireplace to convey the flue gases directly into the flue. The connector shall be provided with access or shall be removable for inspection and cleaning of both the connector and the flue. Listed direct-connection devices shall be installed in accordance with their listing.

1803.4.4 Size of flue. The size of the fireplace flue shall be in accordance with Section 1805.3.1.

SECTION 1804
VENTS

1804.1 Type of vent required. Appliances shall be provided with a listed and labeled venting system as set forth in Table 1804.1.

TABLE 1804.1
VENT SELECTION CHART

VENT TYPES	APPLIANCE TYPES
Type L oil vents	Oil-burning appliances listed and labeled for venting with Type L vents
Pellet vents	Pellet fuel-burning appliances listed and labeled for use with pellet vents

1804.2 Termination. Vent termination shall comply with Sections 1804.2.1 through 1804.2.6.

1804.2.1 Through the roof. Vents passing through a roof shall extend through flashing and terminate in accordance with the manufacturer's installation requirements.

1804.2.2 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the

termination of vents except where the shrouds are listed and labeled for use with the specific venting system and are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1804.2.3 Natural draft appliances. Vents for natural draft appliances shall terminate not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the highest connected appliance outlet, and natural draft gas vents serving wall furnaces shall terminate at an elevation not less than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the bottom of the furnace.

1804.2.4 Type L vent. Type L venting systems shall conform to UL 641 and shall terminate with a listed and labeled cap in accordance with the vent manufacturer's installation instructions not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above the roof and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above any portion of the building within 10 feet (3048 mm).

1804.2.5 Direct vent terminations. Vent terminals for direct-vent appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1804.2.6 Mechanical draft systems. Mechanical draft systems shall comply with UL 378 and shall be installed in accordance with their listing, the manufacturer's instructions and, except for direct-vent appliances, the following requirements:

1. The vent terminal shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above a forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).
2. The vent terminal shall be located not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from, or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, window or gravity air inlet into a dwelling.
3. The vent termination point shall be located not closer than 3 feet (914 mm) to an interior corner formed by two walls perpendicular to each other.
4. The bottom of the vent terminal shall be located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished ground level.
5. The vent termination shall not be mounted directly above or within 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally of an oil tank vent or gas meter.
6. Power exhauster terminations shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from lot lines and adjacent buildings.
7. The discharge shall be directed away from the building.

1804.3 Installation. Type L and pellet vents shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listing and label and the manufacturer's instructions.

1804.3.1 Size of single-appliance venting systems. An individual vent for a single appliance shall have a cross-sectional area equal to or greater than the area of the connector to the appliance, but not less than 7 square inches (4515 mm2) except where the vent is an integral part of a listed and labeled appliance.

1804.4 Door swing. Appliance and equipment vent terminals shall be located such that doors cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally of the vent terminals. Door stops or closers shall not be installed to obtain this clearance.

SECTION 1805
MASONRY AND FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

1805.1 General. Masonry and factory-built chimneys shall be built and installed in accordance with Sections 1003 and 1005, respectively. Flue lining for masonry chimneys shall comply with Section 1003.11.

1805.2 Masonry chimney connection. A chimney connector shall enter a masonry chimney not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the bottom of the chimney. Where it is not possible to locate the connector entry not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the bottom of the chimney flue, a cleanout shall be provided by installing a capped tee in the connector next to the chimney. A connector entering a masonry chimney shall extend through, but not beyond, the wall and shall be flush with the inner face of the liner. Connectors, or thimbles where used, shall be firmly cemented into the masonry.

1805.3 Size of chimney flues. The effective area of a natural draft chimney flue for one appliance shall be not less than the area of the connector to the appliance. The area of chimney flues connected to more than one appliance shall be not less than the area of the largest connector plus 50 percent of the areas of additional chimney connectors.

Exception: Chimney flues serving oil-fired appliances sized in accordance with NFPA 31.

1805.3.1 Size of chimney flue for solid-fuel appliance. Except where otherwise specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions, the cross-sectional area of a flue connected to a solid fuel-burning appliance shall be not less than the area of the flue collar or connector, and not larger than three times the area of the flue collar.

Replaces:	4101:8-18-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013

4101:8-19-01 Special appliances, equipment and systems.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 1901
RANGES AND OVENS

1901.1 Clearances. Freestanding or built-in ranges shall have a vertical clearance above the cooking top of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) to unprotected combustible material. Reduced clearances are permitted in accordance with the listing and labeling of the range hoods or ovens with integral exhaust.

1901.2 Cooking appliances. Cooking appliances shall be listed and labeled for household use and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The installation shall not interfere with combustion air or access for operation and servicing. Electric cooking appliances shall comply with UL 1026 or UL 858. Solid-fuel-fired fireplace stoves shall comply with UL 737. Microwave ovens shall comply with UL 923.

SECTION 1902
SAUNA HEATERS

1902.1 Locations and protection. Sauna heaters shall be protected from accidental contact by persons with a guard of material having a low thermal conductivity, such as wood. The guard shall not have a substantial effect on the transfer of heat from the heater to the room.

1902.2 Installation. Sauna heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Sauna heaters shall comply with UL 875.

1902.3 Combustion air. Combustion air and venting for a nondirect vent-type heater shall be provided in accordance with Chapters 17 and 18, respectively.

1902.4 Controls. Sauna heaters shall be equipped with a thermostat that will limit room temperature to not greater than 194°F (90°C). Where the thermostat is not an integral part of the heater, the heat-sensing element shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ceiling.

SECTION 1903
STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER PLANTS

1903.1 General. Stationary fuel cell power plants having a power output not exceeding 1,000 kW shall comply with ANSI/CSA America FC 1 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 853.

SECTION 1904
GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEMS

1904.1 Installation. Gaseous hydrogen systems shall be installed in accordance with the applicable requirements of Sections 1307.4 and 1903.1, the "International Fuel Gas Code", the *fire code* and the *Ohio building code*.

SECTION 1905
ENGINE AND GAS-TURBINE POWERED EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCES

1905.1 General. *The installation of stationary internal combustion engines and gas turbines, including exhaust, fuel storage and piping, shall meet the requirements of this section.*

1905.2 Engine-driven equipment and appliances. *Permanently installed equipment and appliances powered by internal combustion engines and turbines shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and NFPA 37.*

1905.2.1 Fuel tanks connected to engine-driven building services equipment. *Fuel tanks piped to and supplying fuel for engine-driven building service equipment may be engine-mounted, located inside of a building, outside of a building, or on a roof in accordance with NFPA 37 or NFPA 30.*

1905.2.1.1 Engine-mounted tanks. *Engine-mounted tanks located outdoors may be located in accordance with Section 4.1.4 of NFPA 37 and shall be vented in accordance with NFPA 30. Engine-mounted tanks shall*

be provided with adequate clearance to enable filling, maintenance, and testing, shall be safeguarded against public access, and shall be protected from impact.

1905.2.1.2 Other fuel tanks. *Fuel tanks, other than engine-mounted tanks, piped to and supplying the engine shall be located, installed, and vented in accordance with the applicable sections of NFPA 37 or located, installed, and vented in accordance with NFPA 30.*

1905.2.2 Gaseous fuel supply. *Where an internal combustion engine supplied with gaseous fuel powers building service equipment, the fuel gas storage and piping system shall comply with NFPA 37 and Chapter 24.*

1905.3 Engine-driven Stationary generators. *Stationary emergency and standby power generator assemblies shall be listed in accordance with UL 2200 and shall comply with Section 3402.1.*

Replaces:	4101:8-19-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013, 01/01/2016

4101:8-20-01 Boilers and water heaters.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 2001
BOILERS

2001.1 Installation. In addition to the requirements of this code, the installation of boilers shall conform to the manufacturer's instructions. The manufacturer's rating data, the nameplate and operating instructions of a permanent type shall be attached to the boiler. Boilers shall have their controls set, adjusted and tested by the installer. A complete control diagram together with complete boiler operating instructions shall be furnished by the installer. Solid and liquid fuel-burning boilers shall be provided with combustion air as required by Chapter 17.

2001.1.1 Standards. Packaged oil-fired boilers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 726. Packaged electric boilers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 834. Solid fuel-fired boilers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2523. Boilers shall be designed, constructed and certified in accordance with the "ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section I or IV." *The boiler shall be provided with safety devices and controls as required in the applicable section of the "ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code." For boilers with fuel input ratings of 12,500,000 Btu/hr (3663 kW) or less, controls and safety devices meeting the requirements of ASME CSD-1 is an acceptable alternative.* Gas-fired boilers shall conform to the requirements listed in Chapter 24.

2001.2 Clearance. Boilers shall be installed in accordance with their listing and label.

2001.3 Valves. Every boiler or modular boiler shall have a shutoff valve in the supply and return piping. For multiple boiler or multiple modular boiler installations, each boiler or modular boiler shall have individual shutoff valves in the supply and return piping.

Exception: Shutoff valves are not required in a system having a single low-pressure steam boiler.

2001.4 Flood-resistant installation. In flood hazard areas established in Table 301.2(1), boilers, water heaters and their control systems shall be located or installed in accordance with Section 322.1.6.

SECTION 2002
OPERATING AND SAFETY CONTROLS

2002.1 Safety controls. Electrical and mechanical operating and safety controls for boilers shall be listed and labeled.

2002.2 Hot water boiler gauges. Every hot water boiler shall have a pressure gauge and a temperature gauge, or combination pressure and temperature gauge. The gauges shall indicate the temperature and pressure within the normal range of the system's operation.

2002.3 Steam boiler gauges. Every steam boiler shall have a water-gauge glass and a pressure gauge. The pressure gauge shall indicate the pressure within the normal range of the system's operation. The gauge glass shall be installed so that the midpoint is at the normal water level.

2002.4 Pressure relief valve. Boilers shall be equipped with pressure relief valves with minimum rated capacities for the equipment served. Pressure relief valves shall be set at the maximum rating of the boiler. Discharge shall be piped to drains by gravity to within 18 inches (457 mm) of the floor or to an open receptor.

2002.5 Boiler low-water cutoff. Steam and hot water boilers shall be protected with a low-water cutoff control.

Exception: A low-water cutoff is not required for coil-type and water-tube-type boilers that require forced circulation of water through the boiler and that are protected with a flow-sensing control.

2002.6 Operation. Low-water cutoff controls and flow-sensing controls required by Section 2002.5 shall automatically stop the combustion operation of the appliance when the water level drops below the lowest safe water level as established by the manufacturer or when the water circulation flow is less than that required for safe operation of the appliance, respectively.

SECTION 2003
EXPANSION TANKS

2003.1 General. Hot water boilers shall be provided with expansion tanks. Nonpressurized expansion tanks shall be securely fastened to the structure or boiler and supported to carry twice the weight of the tank filled with water. Provisions shall be made for draining nonpressurized tanks without emptying the system.

2003.1.1 Pressurized expansion tanks. Pressurized expansion tanks shall be consistent with the volume and capacity of the system. Tanks shall be capable of with-standing a hydrostatic test pressure of two and one-half times the allowable working pressure of the system.

2003.2 Minimum capacity. The minimum capacity of expansion tanks shall be determined from Table 2003.2.

TABLE 2003.2
EXPANSION TANK MINIMUM CAPACITY[a] FOR FORCED HOT-WATER SYSTEMS

SYSTEM VOLUME[b] (gallons)	PRESSURIZED DIAPHRAGM TYPE	NONPRESSURIZED TYPE
10	1.0	1.5
20	1.5	3.0
30	2.5	4.5
40	3.0	6.0
50	4.0	7.5
60	5.0	9.0
70	6.0	10.5
80	6.5	12.0
90	7.5	13.5
100	8.0	15.0

For SI: 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 pound per square inch gauge = 6.895 kPa, °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8.

a. Based on average water temperature of 195°F, fill pressure of 12 psig and an operating pressure of not greater than 30 psig.

b. System volume includes volume of water in boiler, convectors and piping, not including the expansion tank.

SECTION 2004
WATER HEATERS USED FOR SPACE HEATING

2004.1 General. Water heaters used to supply both potable hot water and hot water for space heating shall be installed in accordance with this chapter, Chapter 24, *the plumbing code as modified by Chapter 25* and the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 2005
WATER HEATERS

2005.1 General. Water heaters shall be installed in accordance with *the plumbing code as modified by Chapter 25*, the manufacturer's instructions and the

requirements of this code. Water heaters installed in an attic shall comply with the requirements of Section M1305.1.2. Gas-fired water heaters shall comply with the requirements in Chapter 24. Domestic electric water heaters shall comply with UL 174. Oiled-fired water heaters shall comply with UL 732. Solar thermal water heating systems shall comply with Chapter 23 and SRCC 300. Solid fuel-fired water heaters shall comply with UL 2523.

2005.2 Prohibited locations. Fuel-fired water heaters shall not be installed in a room used as a storage closet. Water heaters located in a bedroom or bathroom shall be installed in a sealed enclosure so that combustion air will not be taken from the living space. Installation of direct-vent water heaters within an enclosure is not required.

2005.2.1 Water heater access. Access to water heaters that are located in an attic or underfloor crawl space is permitted to be through a closet located in a sleeping room or bathroom where ventilation of those spaces is in accordance with this code.

2005.3 Electric water heaters. Electric water heaters shall be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of *NFPA 70 as modified in Chapter 34*.

2005.4 Supplemental water-heating devices. Potable water-heating devices that use refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers shall be approved and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 2006
POOL HEATERS

2006.1 General. *Deleted*.

2006.2 Clearances. *Deleted*.

2006.3 Bypass valves. *Deleted*.

Replaces:	4101:8-20-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013, 07/01/2014

4101:8-21-01 Hydronic piping.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 2101
HYDRONIC PIPING SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

2101.1 General. Hydronic piping shall conform to Table 2101.1. Approved piping, valves, fittings and connections shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Pipe and fittings shall be rated for use at the operating temperature and pressure of the hydronic system. Used pipe, fittings, valves or other materials shall be free of foreign materials.

TABLE 2101.1
HYDRONIC PIPING AND FITTING MATERIALS

MATERIAL	USE CODE[a]	STANDARD[b]	JOINTS	NOTES
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe	1, 5	ASTM D1527 ASTM F2806 ASTM F2969	Solvent cement joints	—
Chlorinated poly (vinyl chloride) (CPVC) pipe and tubing	1, 2, 3	ASTM D2846	Solvent cement joints, compression joints and threaded	—
Copper and copper-alloy pipe	1	ASTM B42, B43, B302	Brazed, soldered and mechanical fi threaded, welded and flanged	—
Copper and copper-alloy tubing (Type K, L or M)	1, 2	ASME B16.51, ASTM B75, B88, B135, B251, B306	Brazed, soldered, press-connected and flared mechanical fittings	Joints embedded in concrete shall be brazed.
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX)	1, 2, 3	ASTM F876	(See PEX fitting	Install in accordance manufacturer's instructions
Cross-linked polyethylene/ aluminum/ cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe	1, 2	ASTM F1281 or CAN/ CSA B137.10	Mechanical, crimp/insert	Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions
PEX fittings		ASTM F877 ASTM F1807 ASTM F1960 ASTM F2098 ASTM F2159 ASTM F2735	Copper crimp/insert fittings, cold expansion fittings, stainless steel clamp, insert fittings	Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions

MATERIAL	USE CODE[a]	STANDARD[b]	JOINTS	NOTES
Polybutylene (PB) pipe and tubing	1, 2, 3	ASTM D3309	Heat-fusion, crimp/insert and compression	Joints in concrete shall be heat-fused
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe	1, 2, 3	ASTM F1282 CSA B 137.9	Mechanical, crimp/insert	—
Polypropylene (PP)	1, 2, 3	ISO 15874 ASTM F2389	Heat- fusion joints, mechanical fittings, threaded adapters, compression joints	—
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	1, 2, 3	ASTM F2623, ASTM F2769, CSA B137.18	Copper crimp/insert fitting, stainless steel clamp, insert fittings	—
Raised temperature Polyethylene (PE-RT) fittings	1, 2, 3	ASTM D3261 ASTM F1807 ASTM F2098 ASTM F2159 ASTM F2735 ASTM F2769 CSA B137.18	Copper crimp/insert fitting, stainless steel clamp, insert fittings	—
Steel pipe	1, 2	ASTM A53 ASTM A106	Brazed, welded, threaded, flanged and mechanical fittings	Joints in concrete shall be welded. Galvanized pipe shall not be welded or brazed.
Steel tubing	1	ASTM A254	Mechanical fittings, welded	—

For SI: °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8.

a. Use code:
   1. Above ground.
   2. Embedded in radiant systems.
   3. Temperatures below 180°F only.
   4. Low temperature (below 130°F) applications only.
   5. Temperatures below 160°F only.

b. Standards as listed in Chapter 44.

2101.2 System drain down. Hydronic piping systems shall be installed to permit draining of the system. Where the system drains to the plumbing drainage system, the installation shall conform to the requirements of *the plumbing code as modified by Chapter 25.*

Exception: The buried portions of systems embedded underground or under floors.

2101.3 Protection of potable water. The potable water system shall be protected from backflow in accordance with *the plumbing code as modified by Chapter 25.*

2101.4 Pipe penetrations. Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved.

2101.5 Contact with building material. A hydronic piping system shall not be in direct contact with any building material that causes the piping material to degrade or corrode.

2101.6 Drilling and notching. Wood-framed structural members shall be drilled, notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Sections 502.8, 602.6, 602.6.1 and 802.7. Holes in load-bearing members of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall be permitted only in accordance with Sections 505.2.6, 603.2.6 and 804.2.6. In accordance with the provisions of Sections 505.3.5, 603.3.4 and 804.3.3, cutting and notching of flanges and lips of load-bearing members of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall not be permitted. Structural insulated panels (SIPs) shall be drilled and notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Section 610.7.

2101.7 Prohibited tee applications. Fluid in the supply side of a hydronic system shall not enter a tee fitting through the branch opening.

2101.8 Expansion, contraction and settlement. Piping shall be installed so that piping, connections and equipment shall not be subjected to excessive strains or stresses. Provisions shall be made to compensate for expansion, contraction, shrinkage and structural settlement.

2101.9 Piping support. Hangers and supports shall be of material of sufficient strength to support the piping, and shall be fabricated from materials compatible with the piping material. Piping shall be supported at intervals not exceeding the spacing specified in Table 2101.9.

TABLE 2101.9
HANGER SPACING INTERVALS

PIPING MATERIAL	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (feet)	MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (feet)
ABS	4	10[a]
CPVC ≤ 1-inch pipe or tubing	3	5[a]
CPVC ≥ 11/4 inches	4	10[a]
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	12	10
Copper or copper-alloy tubing	6	10
PB pipe or tubing	2.67	4
PE pipe or tubing	2.67	4
PE-RT ≤ 1 inch	2.67	10[a]
PE-RT ≥ 11/4 inches	4	10[a]
PEX tubing ≤ 1 inch	2.67	4
PEX tubing ≥ 11/4 inches	4	10[a]
PP < 1-inch pipe or tubing	2.67	4
PP > 11/4 inches	4	10[a]

PVC	4	10[a]
Steel pipe	12	15
Steel tubing	8	10

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. For sizes 2 inches and smaller, a guide shall be installed midway between required vertical supports. Such guides shall prevent pipe movement in a direction perpendicular to the axis of the pipe.

2101.10 Tests. Hydronic piping systems shall be tested hydrostatically at a pressure of one and one-half times the maximum system design pressure, but not less than 100 pounds per square inch (689 kPa). The duration of each test shall be not less than 15 minutes.

Exception: For PEX piping systems, testing with a compressed gas shall be an alternative to hydrostatic testing where compressed air or other gas pressure testing is specifically authorized by all of the manufacturers' instructions for the PEX pipe and fittings products installed at the time the system is being tested, and compressed air or other gas testing is not otherwise prohibited by applicable codes, laws, or regulations outside of this code.

SECTION 2102
BASEBOARD CONVECTORS

2102.1 General. Baseboard convectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Convectors shall be supported independently of the hydronic piping.

SECTION 2103
FLOOR HEATING SYSTEMS

2103.1 Piping materials. Piping for embedment in concrete or gypsum materials shall be standard-weight steel pipe, copper and copper-alloy pipe and tubing, cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe, chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC), polybutylene, cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing, polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) or polypropylene (PP) with a rating of not less than 100 psi at 180°F (690 kPa at 82°C).

2103.2 Thermal barrier required. Radiant floor heating systems shall have a thermal barrier in accordance with Sections 2103.2.1 and 2103.2.2. Insulation R-values for slab-on-grade and suspended floor installations shall be in accordance with Chapter 11.

Exception: Insulation shall not be required in engineered systems where it can be demonstrated that the insulation will decrease the efficiency or have a negative effect on the installation.

2103.2.1 Thermal break required. A thermal break consisting of asphalt expansion joint materials or similar insulating materials shall be provided at a point where a heated slab meets a foundation wall or other conductive slab.

2103.2.2 Thermal barrier material marking. Insulating materials used in thermal barriers shall be installed so that the manufacturer's R-value mark is readily observable upon inspection.

2103.3 Piping joints. Copper and copper-alloy systems shall be soldered, brazed, or press connected. Soldering shall be in accordance with ASTM B828. Fluxes for soldering shall be in accordance with ASTM B813. Brazing fluxes shall be in accordance with AWS A5.31. Press-connect joints shall be in accordance with ASME B16.51. Piping joints that are embedded shall be installed in accordance with the following requirements :

1. Steel pipe joints shall be welded.
2. Copper tubing shall be joined by brazing complying with *the plumbing code as modified by Chapter 25.*
3. Polybutylene pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polybutylene fittings.
4. CPVC tubing shall be joined using solvent cement joints.
5. Polypropylene pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings.
6. Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing shall be joined using cold expansion, insert or compression fittings.
7. Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) tubing shall be joined using insert or compression fittings.

2103.4 Testing. Piping or tubing to be embedded shall be tested by applying a hydrostatic pressure of not less than 100 psi (690 kPa). The pressure shall be maintained for 30 minutes, during which the joints shall be visually inspected for leaks.

SECTION 2104
LOW TEMPERATURE PIPING

2104.1 Piping materials. Low temperature piping for embedment in concrete or gypsum materials shall be as indicated in Table 2101.1.

2104.2 Piping joints. Piping joints that are embedded, other than those in Section M2103.3, shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Polyethylene tubing shall be installed with heat-fusion joints.
3. Polypropylene (PP) tubing shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4. Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2104.3 Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) plastic tubing. Joints between raised temperature polyethylene tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections 2104.3.1 through 2104.3.3. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2104.3.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting such inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

2104.3.2 PE-RT-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-RT pipe.

2104.3.3 PE-RT insert fittings. PE-RT insert fittings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2104.4 Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe. Joints between polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections 2104.4.1 and 2104.4.2. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2104.4.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting such inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

2104.4.2 PE-AL-PE-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-AL-PE pipe.

SECTION 2105
GROUND-SOURCE HEAT-PUMP SYSTEM LOOP PIPING

2105.1 Plastic ground-source heat-pump loop piping. Plastic piping and tubing material used in water-based ground-source heat-pump ground-loop systems shall conform to the standards specified in this section.

2105.2 Used materials. Reused pipe, fittings, valves, and other materials shall not be used in ground-source heat-pump loop systems.

2105.3 Material rating. Pipe and tubing shall be rated for the operating temperature and pressure of the ground-source heat-pump loop system. Fittings shall be suitable for the pressure applications and recommended by the manufacturer for installation with the pipe and tubing material installed. Where used underground, materials shall be suitable for burial.

2105.4 Piping and tubing materials standards. Ground-source heat-pump ground-loop pipe and tubing shall conform to the standards listed in Table 2105.4.

TABLE 2105.4
GROUND-SOURCE LOOP PIPE

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC)	ASTM D2846; ASTM F437; ASTM F438; ASTM F439; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; CSA B137.6
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX)	ASTM F876; ~~ASTM F 877;~~ CSA B137.5
High-density polyethylene (HDPE)	ASTM D2737; ASTM D3035; ASTM F714; AWWA C901; CSA B137.1; CSA C448; NSF 358-1
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene pressure pipe (PE-AL-PE)	ASTM F1282; AWWA C 903; CSA B137.9
Polypropylene (PP-R)	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11, NSF 358-2
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241; CSA 137.3
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769, CSA B137.18

2105.5 Fittings. Ground-source heat-pump pipe fittings shall be approved for installation with the piping materials to be installed, shall conform to the standards listed in Table 2105.5 and, where installed underground, shall be suitable for burial.

TABLE 2105.5
GROUND-SOURCE LOOP PIPE FITTINGS

PIPE MATERIAL	STANDARD
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC)	ASTM D2846; ASTM F437; ASTM F438; ASTM F439; ASTM F1970; CSA B137.6
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX)	ASTM F877; ASTM F1807; ASTM F1960; ASTM F2080; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2434; CSA B137.5
High-density polyethylene (HDPE)	ASTM D2683; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1055; CSA B137.1; CSA C448; NSF 358-1
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE)	ASTM F1282; ASTM F2434; CSA B137.9

Polypropylene (PP-R)	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11; NSF 358-2
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	ASTM D2464; ASTM D2466; ASTM D2467; ASTM F1970, CSA B137.2; CSA B137.3
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM D2683; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1055; ASTM F1807; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2735; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.1; CSA B137.18

2105.6 Joints and connections. Joints and connections shall be of an approved type. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure of the ground-source loop system. Joints used underground shall be approved for such applications.

2105.6.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with approved transition fittings.

2105.7 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square, reamed, and shall be free of burrs and obstructions. CPVC, PE and PVC pipe shall be chamfered. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

2105.8 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 2105.9 through 2105.11, the preparation and installation of mechanical and thermoplastic-welded joints shall comply with Sections 2105.8.1 and 2105.8.2.

2105.8.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2105.8.2 Thermoplastic-welded joints. Joint surfaces for thermoplastic-welded joints shall be cleaned by an approved procedure. Joints shall be welded in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2105.9 CPVC plastic pipe. Joints between CPVC plastic pipe or fittings shall be solvent-cemented in accordance with Section 2906.9.1.2. Threaded joints between fittings and CPVC plastic pipe shall be in accordance with Section 2105.9.1.

2105.9.1 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. The pipe shall be Schedule 80 or heavier plastic pipe and shall be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. Thread lubricant, pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only and shall be approved for application on the piping material.

2105.10 Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 2105.10.1 and 2105.10.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 2105.8.1.

2105.10.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

2105.10.2 Plastic-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to plastic pipe or tubing.

2105.11 Polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing. Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings for ground-source heat-pump loop systems shall be heat-fusion joints complying with Section 2105.11.1, electrofusion joints complying with Section 2105.11.2, or stab-type insertion joints complying with Section 2105.11.3.

2105.11.1 Heat-fusion joints. Joints shall be of the socket-fusion, saddle-fusion or butt-fusion type, and joined in accordance with ASTM D2657. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures and joined. The joint shall remain undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2683 or ASTM D3261.

2105.11.2 Electrofusion joints. Joints shall be of the electrofusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture, and scoured to expose virgin resin. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures for the period of time specified by the manufacturer. The joint shall remain undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1055.

2105.11.3 Stab-type insert fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Pipe ends shall be chamfered and inserted into the fittings to full depth. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1924.

2105.12 Polypropylene (PP) plastic. Joints between PP plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 2105.12.1 and 2105.12.2.

2105.12.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polypropylene (PP) pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, electrofusion polypropylene fittings or by butt fusion. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall remain undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2389.

2105.12.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2105.13 Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) plastic tubing. Joints between raised temperature polyethylene tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 2105.13.1 through 2105.13.4. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 2105.8.1.

2105.13.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

2105.13.2 PE-RT-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-RT pipe or tubing.

2105.13.3 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints shall be of the socket-fusion, saddle-fusion or butt-fusion type, and shall be joined in accordance with ASTM D2657. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures and joined. The joint shall remain undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2683 or ASTM D3261.

2105.13.4 Electrofusion joints. Joints shall be of the electrofusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture and scoured to expose virgin resin. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures for the period of time specified by the manufacturer and joined. The joint shall remain undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1055.

2105.14 PVC plastic pipe. Joints between PVC plastic pipe or fittings shall be solvent-cemented in accordance with Section 2906.9.1.4. Threaded joints between fittings and PVC plastic pipe shall be in accordance with Section 2105.9.1.

2105.15 Shutoff valves. Shutoff valves shall be installed in ground-source loop piping systems in the locations indicated in Sections 2105.15.1 through 2105.15.6.

2105.15.1 Heat exchangers. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the supply and return side of a heat exchanger.

Exception: Shutoff valves shall not be required where heat exchangers are integral with a boiler or are a component of a manufacturer's boiler and heat

exchanger packaged unit and are capable of being isolated from the hydronic system by the supply and return valves required by Section 2001.3.

2105.15.2 Central systems. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the building supply and return of a central utility system.

2105.15.3 Pressure vessels. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the connection to any pressure vessel.

2105.15.4 Pressure-reducing valves. Shutoff valves shall be installed on both sides of a pressure-reducing valve.

2105.15.5 Equipment and appliances. Shutoff valves shall be installed on connections to mechanical equipment and appliances. This requirement does not apply to components of ground-source loop systems such as pumps, air separators, metering devices, and similar equipment.

2105.15.6 Expansion tanks. Shutoff valves shall be installed at connections to non diaphragm-type expansion tanks.

2105.16 Reduced pressure. A pressure relief valve shall be installed on the low-pressure side of a hydronic piping system that has been reduced in pressure. The relief valve shall be set at the maximum pressure of the system design. The valve shall be installed in accordance with Section 2002.

2105.17 Installation. Piping, valves, fittings, and connections shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2105.18 Protection of potable water. Where ground-source heat-pump ground-loop systems have a connection to a potable water supply, the potable water system shall be protected from backflow in accordance with Section 2902.

2105.19 Pipe penetrations. Openings for pipe penetrations in walls, floors and ceilings shall be larger than the penetrating pipe. Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved. The annular space surrounding pipe penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 2606.1.

2105.20 Clearance from combustibles. A pipe in a ground-source heat pump piping system having an exterior surface temperature exceeding 250°F (121°C) shall have a clearance of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) from combustible materials.

2105.21 Contact with building material. A ground-source heat-pump ground-loop piping system shall not be in direct contact with building materials that cause the piping or fitting material to degrade or corrode, or that interfere with the operation of the system.

2105.22 Strains and stresses. Piping shall be installed so as to prevent detrimental strains and stresses in the pipe. Provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from expansion, contraction and structural settlement. Piping shall be installed so as to avoid structural stresses or strains within building components.

2105.22.1 Flood hazard. Piping located in a flood hazard area shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the design flood elevation.

2105.23 Pipe support. Pipe shall be supported in accordance with Section 2101.9.

2105.24 Velocities. Ground-source heat-pump ground-loop systems shall be designed so that the flow velocities do not exceed the maximum flow velocity recommended by the pipe and fittings manufacturer. Flow velocities shall be controlled to reduce the possibility of water hammer.

2105.25 Labeling and marking. Ground-source heat-pump ground-loop system piping shall be marked with tape, metal tags or other methods where it enters a building. The marking shall state the following words: "GROUND-SOURCE HEAT-PUMP LOOP SYSTEM." The marking shall indicate if antifreeze is used in the system and shall indicate the chemicals by name and concentration.

2105.26 Chemical compatibility. Antifreeze and other materials used in the system shall be chemically compatible with the pipe, tubing, fittings and mechanical systems.

2105.27 Makeup water. The transfer fluid shall be compatible with the makeup water supplied to the system.

2105.28 Testing. Before connection header trenches are backfilled, the assembled loop system shall be pressure tested with water at 100 psi (689 kPa) for 15 minutes without observed leaks. Flow and pressure loss testing shall be performed and the actual flow rates and pressure drops shall be compared to the calculated design

values. If actual flow rate or pressure drop values differ from calculated design values by more than 10 percent, the cause shall be identified and corrective action taken.

2105.29 Embedded piping. Ground-source heat-pump ground-loop piping to be embedded in concrete shall be pressure tested prior to pouring concrete. During pouring, the pipe shall be maintained at the proposed operating pressure.

Replaces:	4101:8-21-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013

4101:8-22-01 Special piping and storage systems.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 2200
SCOPE

2200.1 Scope. *This chapter shall govern the design, installation, construction and repair of fuel oil and diesel oil storage and piping systems supplying and piped to building service equipment. The storage of fuel oil and flammable and combustible liquids not associated with building services equipment shall be in accordance with Chapters 6 and 34 of the fire code and enforced by the fire official.*

SECTION 2201
OIL TANKS

2201.1 Materials. Supply tanks shall be listed and labeled and shall conform to UL 58 for underground tanks and UL 80 for indoor tanks.

2201.2 Above-ground tanks. The maximum amount of fuel oil *or diesel oil* stored above ground or inside of a building shall be 660 gallons (2498 L). The supply tank shall be supported on rigid noncombustible supports to prevent settling or shifting.

***Exceptions*:**

1. The storage of fuel oil, used for space or water heating, above ground or inside buildings in quantities exceeding 660 gallons (2498 L) shall comply with NFPA 31.
2. *The storage of diesel oil supplying and piped to engine-driven building services equipment, including emergency and standby generators, above ground or inside buildings in quantities exceeding 660 gallons shall comply with NFPA 37.*

2201.2.1 Tanks within buildings. Supply tanks for use inside of buildings shall be of such size and shape to permit installation and removal from dwellings as whole units. Supply tanks larger than 10 gallons (38 L) shall be placed not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from any fire or flame either within or external to any fuel-burning appliance.

2201.2.2 Outdoor above-ground tanks. Tanks installed outdoors, above ground shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from an adjoining property line. Such tanks shall be suitably protected from the weather and from physical damage.

2201.3 Underground tanks. Excavations for underground tanks shall not undermine the foundations of existing structures. The clearance from the tank to the nearest wall of a basement, pit or property line shall be not less than 1 foot (305 mm). Tanks shall be set on and surrounded with noncorrosive inert materials such as clean earth, sand or gravel well-tamped in place. Tanks shall be covered with not less than 1 foot (305 mm) of earth. Corrosion protection shall be provided in accordance with Section 2203.7.

2201.3.1 Regulated underground storage of fuel oil. *The design, installation, registration, and inspection of regulated underground storage tanks shall be in accordance with the fire code and rules adopted by the state fire marshal and enforced by the fire official, in accordance with sections 3737.87 to 3737.89 of the Revised Code. Underground storage tanks not regulated by the state fire marshal's Bureau of Underground Storage tanks shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 23 of NFPA 30.*

2201.4 Multiple tanks. Cross connection of two supply tanks shall be permitted in accordance with Section 2203.6.

2201.5 Oil gauges. Inside tanks shall be provided with a device to indicate when the oil in the tank has reached a predetermined safe level. Glass gauges or a gauge subject to breakage that could result in the escape of oil from the tank shall not be used. Liquid-level indicating gauges shall comply with UL 180.

2201.6 Flood-resistant installation. In flood hazard areas as established by Table 301.2(1), tanks shall be installed in accordance with Section 322.2.4 or 322.3.10.

2201.7 Tanks abandoned or removed. Outdoor above-grade fill piping shall be removed when tanks are abandoned or removed. Tank abandonment and removal shall be in accordance with the *fire code.*

SECTION 2202
OIL PIPING, FITTING AND CONNECTIONS

2202.1 Materials. Piping shall consist of steel pipe, copper and copper-alloy pipe

and tubing or steel tubing conforming to ASTM A539. Aluminum tubing shall not be used between the fuel-oil tank and the burner units.

2202.2 Joints and fittings. Piping shall be connected with standard fittings compatible with the piping material. Cast-iron fittings shall not be used for oil piping. Unions requiring gaskets or packings, right or left couplings, and sweat fittings employing solder having a melting point less than 1,000°F (538°C) shall not be used for oil piping. Threaded joints and connections shall be made tight with a lubricant or pipe thread compound.

2202.3 Flexible connectors. Flexible metallic hoses shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 536 and shall be installed in accordance with their listing and labeling and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Connectors made from combustible materials shall not be used inside of buildings or above ground outside of buildings.

SECTION 2203
INSTALLATION

2203.1 General. Piping shall be installed in a manner to avoid placing stresses on the piping, and to accommodate expansion and contraction of the piping system.

2203.2 Supply piping. Supply piping used in the installation of oil burners and appliances shall be not smaller than $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (9 mm) pipe or $^{3}/_{8}$ -inch (9 mm) outside diameter tubing. Copper tubing and fittings shall be Type L or heavier.

2203.3 Fill piping. Fill piping shall terminate outside of buildings at a point not less than 2 feet (610 mm) from any building opening at the same or lower level. Fill openings shall be equipped with a tight metal cover.

2203.4 Vent piping. Vent piping shall be not smaller than $1^{1}/_{4}$ -inch (32 mm) pipe. Vent piping shall be laid to drain toward the tank without sags or traps in which the liquid can collect. Vent pipes shall not be cross connected with fill pipes, lines from burners or overflow lines from auxiliary tanks. The lower end of a vent pipe shall enter the tank through the top and shall extend into the tank not more than 1 inch (25 mm).

2203.5 Vent termination. Vent piping shall terminate out- side of buildings at a point not less than 2 feet (610 mm), measured vertically or horizontally, from any building opening. Outer ends of vent piping shall terminate in a weather-proof cap or fitting having an unobstructed area equal to or greater than the cross-sectional

area of the vent pipe, and shall be located sufficiently above the ground to avoid being obstructed by snow and ice.

2203.6 Cross connection of tanks. Cross connection of two supply tanks, not exceeding 660 gallons (2498 L) aggregate capacity, with gravity flow from one tank to another, shall be acceptable providing that the two tanks are on the same horizontal plane.

2203.7 Corrosion protection. Underground tanks and buried piping shall be protected by corrosion-resistant coatings or special alloys or fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

SECTION 2204
OIL PUMPS AND VALVES

2204.1 Pumps. Oil pumps shall be positive displacement types that automatically shut off the oil supply when stopped. Automatic pumps shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 343 and shall be installed in accordance with their listing.

2204.2 Shutoff valves. A manual shutoff valve shall be installed between the oil supply tank and the burner. Such valve shall be provided with ready access. Where the shutoff valve is installed in the discharge line of an oil pump, a pressure relief valve shall be incorporated to bypass or return surplus oil. Valves shall comply with UL 842.

2204.3 Maximum pressure. Pressure at the oil supply inlet to an appliance shall be not greater than 3 pounds per square inch (20.7 kPa).

2204.4 Relief valves. Fuel-oil lines incorporating heaters shall be provided with relief valves that will discharge to a return line when excess pressure exists.

Replaces:	4101:8-22-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013, 01/01/2016

4101:8-23-01 Solar thermal energy systems.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 2301
SOLAR THERMAL ENERGY SYSTEMS

2301.1 General. This section provides for the design, construction, installation, alteration and repair of equipment and systems using solar thermal energy to provide space heating or cooling, hot water heating and swimming pool heating.

2301.2 Design and installation. The design and installation of solar thermal energy systems shall comply with Sections 2301.2.1 through 2301.2.13.

2301.2.1 Access. Access shall be provided to solar energy equipment for maintenance. Solar systems and appurtenances shall not obstruct or interfere with the operation of any doors, windows or other building components requiring operation or access. Roof-mounted solar thermal equipment shall not obstruct or interfere with the operation of roof-mounted equipment, appliances, chimneys, plumbing vents, roof hatches, smoke vents, skylights and other roof penetrations and openings.

2301.2.2 Collectors and panels. Solar collectors and panels shall comply with Sections 2301.2.2.1 and 2301.2.2.2.

2301.2.2.1 Roof-mounted collectors. The roof shall be constructed to support the loads imposed by roof- mounted solar collectors. Roof-mounted solar collectors that serve as a roof covering shall conform to the requirements for roof coverings in Chapter 9 of this code. Where mounted on or above the roof coverings, the collectors and supporting structure shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or fire-retardant- treated wood equivalent to that required for the roof construction.

2301.2.2.2 Collector sensors. Collector sensor installation, sensor location and the protection of exposed sensor wires from degradation shall be in accordance with ICC/900/SRCC 300.

2301.2.3 Pressure and temperature relief valves and system components. System components containing fluids shall be protected with temperature and pressure relief valves or pressure relief valves. Relief devices shall be installed in sections of the system so that a section cannot be valved off or isolated from a relief device. Direct systems and the potable water portion of indirect systems shall be equipped with a relief valve in accordance with *the plumbing code as modified by Chapter 25*. For indirect systems, pressure relief valves in solar loops shall comply with ICC 900/SRCC 300. System components shall have a working pressure rating of not less than the setting of the pressure relief device.

2301.2.4 Vacuum relief. System components that might be subjected to a vacuum during operation or shutdown shall be designed to withstand such a vacuum or shall be protected with vacuum relief valves.

2301.2.5 Piping insulation. Piping shall be insulated in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 11. Exterior insulation shall be protected from ultraviolet degradation. The entire solar loop shall be insulated. Where split-style insulation is used, the seam shall be sealed. Fittings shall be fully insulated.

Exceptions:

1. Those portions of the piping that are used to help prevent the system from overheating shall not be required to be insulated.
2. Those portions of piping that are exposed to solar radiation, made of the same material as the solar collector absorber plate and are covered in the same manner as the solar collector absorber, or that are used to collect additional solar energy, shall not be required to be insulated.
3. Piping in thermal solar systems using unglazed solar collectors to heat a swimming pool shall not be required to be insulated.

2301.2.6 Protection from freezing. System components shall be protected from damage resulting from freezing of heat-transfer liquids at the winter design temperature provided in Table 301.2(1). Freeze protection shall be provided in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300. Drain-back systems shall be installed in compliance with Section 2301.2.6.1. Systems utilizing freeze-protection valves shall comply with Section 2301.2.6.2.

Exception: Where the 97.5-percent winter design temperature is greater than or equal to 48°F (9°C).

2301.2.6.1 Drain-back systems. Drain-back systems shall be designed

and installed to allow for manual gravity draining of fluids from areas subject to freezing to locations not subject to freezing, and air filling of the components and piping. Such piping and components shall maintain a horizontal slope in the direction of flow of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope). Piping and components subject to manual gravity draining shall permit subsequent air filling upon drainage and air venting upon refilling.

2301.2.6.2 Freeze-protection valves. Freeze-protection valves shall discharge in a manner that does not create a hazard or structural damage.

2301.2.7 Storage tank sensors. Storage tank sensors shall comply with ICC 900/SRCC 300.

2301.2.8 Expansion tanks. Expansion tanks in solar energy systems shall be installed in accordance with Section 2003 in solar collector loops that contain pressurized heat transfer fluid. Where expansion tanks are used, the system shall be designed in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300 to provide an expansion tank that is sized to withstand the maximum operating pressure of the system.

Exception: Expansion tanks shall not be required in the collector loop of drain-back systems.

2301.2.9 Roof and wall penetrations. Roof and wall penetrations shall be flashed and sealed in accordance with Chapter 9 to prevent entry of water, rodents and insects.

2301.2.10 Description and warning labels. Solar thermal systems shall comply with description label and warning label requirements of Section 2301.2.11.2 and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

2301.2.11 Solar loop. Solar loops shall be in accordance with Sections 2301.2.11.1 and 2301.2.11.2.

2301.2.11.1 Solar loop isolation. Valves shall be installed to allow the solar loop to be isolated from the remainder of the system.

2301.2.11.2 Drain and fill valve labels and caps. Drain and fill valves shall be labeled with a description and warning that identifies the fluid in the solar loop and a warning that the fluid might be discharged at high temperature and pressure. Drain caps shall be installed at drain and fill

valves.

2301.2.12 Maximum temperature limitation. Systems shall be equipped with means to limit the maximum water temperature of the system fluid entering or exchanging heat with any pressurized vessel inside the dwelling to 180°F (82°C). This protection is in addition to the required temperature and pressure relief valves required by Section 2301.2.3.

2301.2.13 *Deleted.*

2301.3 Labeling. Labeling shall comply with Sections 2301.3.1 and 2301.3.2.

2301.3.1 Collectors and panels. Solar thermal collectors and panels shall be listed and labeled in accordance with ICC 901/SRCC 100. Factory-built collectors shall bear a label indicating the manufacturer's name, model number and serial number.

2301.3.2 Thermal storage units. Pressurized water storage tanks shall bear a label indicating the manufacturer's name and address, model number, serial number, storage unit maximum and minimum allowable operating temperatures and storage unit maximum and minimum allowable operating pressures. The label shall clarify that these specifications apply only to the water storage tanks.

2301.4 Heat transfer gases or liquids and heat exchangers. Essentially toxic transfer fluids, ethylene glycol, flammable gases and flammable liquids shall not be used as heat transfer fluids. Heat transfer gases and liquids shall be rated to withstand the system's maximum design temperature under operating conditions without degradation. Heat exchangers used in solar thermal systems shall comply with *the plumbing code as modified by Chapter 25*, and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

Heat transfer fluids shall be in accordance with SRCC 300. The flash point of the heat transfer fluids utilized in solar thermal systems shall be not less than 50°F (28°C) above the design maximum non-operating or no-flow temperature attained by the fluid in the collector.

2301.5 Backflow protection. Connections from the potable water supply to solar systems shall comply with *the plumbing code as modified by Chapter 25*.

2301.6 Filtering. Air provided to occupied spaces that passes through thermal mass storage systems by mechanical means shall be filtered for particulates at the outlet of the thermal mass storage system.

2301.7 Solar thermal systems for heating potable water. Where a solar thermal system heats potable water to supply a potable hot water distribution system, the solar thermal system shall be in accordance with Sections 2301.7.1, 2301.7.2 and *the plumbing code as modified by Chapter 25.*

2301.7.1 Indirect systems. Heat exchangers that are components of indirect solar thermal heating systems shall comply with Section *the plumbing code as modified by Chapter 25.*

2301.7.2 Direct systems. Where potable water is directly heated by a solar thermal system, the pipe, fit- tings, valves and other components that are in contact with the potable water in the solar heating system shall comply with the requirements of *the plumbing code as modified by Chapter 25.*

Replaces:	4101:8-23-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013

4101:8-24-01 Fuel gas.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 2401
GENERAL

2401.1 Application. This chapter covers those fuel gas piping systems, fuel-gas appliances and related accessories, venting systems and combustion air configurations most commonly encountered in the construction of one-, *two- and three-* family dwellings and structures regulated by this code.

Coverage of piping systems shall extend from the point of delivery to the outlet of the appliance shutoff valves (see definition of "Point of delivery"). Piping systems requirements shall include design, materials, components, fabrication, assembly, installation, testing, inspection, operation and maintenance. Requirements for gas appliances and related accessories shall include installation, combustion and ventilation air and venting and connections to piping systems.

The omission from this chapter of any material or method of installation provided for in the "International Fuel Gas Code" shall not be construed as prohibiting the use of such material or method of installation. Fuel-gas piping systems, fuel-gas appliances and related accessories, venting systems and combustion air configurations not specifically covered in these chapters shall comply with the applicable provisions of the "International Fuel Gas Code".

Gaseous hydrogen systems shall be regulated by Chapter 7 of the "International Fuel Gas Code".

This chapter shall not apply to the following:

1. Liquefied natural gas (LNG) installations.
2. Temporary LP-gas piping for buildings under construction or renovation that is not to become part of the permanent piping system.
3. Except as provided in Section 2412.1.1, gas piping, meters, gas pressure regulators, and other appurtenances used by the serving gas supplier in the distribution of gas, other than undiluted LP-gas.
4. Portable LP-gas appliances and equipment of all types that is not connected

to a fixed fuel piping system.

5. Portable fuel cell appliances that are neither connected to a fixed piping system nor interconnected to a power grid.
6. Installation of hydrogen gas, LP-gas and compressed natural gas (CNG) systems on vehicles.
7. *Existing fuel-gas piping systems, fuel-gas appliances and related accessories provided no serious hazard exists.*

SECTION 2402
GENERAL

2402.1 Scope. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this chapter, have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

2402.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

2402.3 Terms defined in other codes. Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the "*Ohio* Building Code", *fire code, mechanical code, "International Fuel Gas Code"* or *plumbing code*, such terms shall have meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

SECTION 2403
GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ACCESS (TO).
AIR CONDITIONER, GAS-FIRED.
AIR CONDITIONING.
AIR, EXHAUST.
AIR-HANDLING UNIT.
AIR, MAKEUP.
ALTERATION.
ANODELESS RISER.
APPLIANCE.
APPLIANCE, AUTOMATICALLY CONTROLLED.
APPLIANCE, FAN-ASSISTED COMBUSTION.
APPLIANCE, UNVENTED.
APPLIANCE, VENTED.
APPROVED.
APPROVED AGENCY.

ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE.
AUTOMATIC IGNITION.
BAROMETRIC DRAFT REGULATOR.
BOILER, LOW-PRESSURE.
- **Hot water heating boiler.**
- **Hot water supply boiler.**
- **Steam heating boiler.**

BONDING JUMPER.
BRAZING.
BTU.
BUILDING OFFICIAL.
BURNER.
- **Induced-draft.**
- **Power.**

CHIMNEY.
- **Factory-built chimney.**
- **Masonry chimney.**

CLEARANCE.
CLOTHES DRYER.
- **Type 1.**

CODE.
COMBUSTIBLE ASSEMBLY.
COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL.
COMBUSTION.
COMBUSTION AIR.
COMBUSTION CHAMBER.
COMBUSTION PRODUCTS.
CONCEALED LOCATION.
CONCEALED PIPING.
CONDENSATE.
CONNECTOR, APPLIANCE (Fuel).
CONNECTOR, CHIMNEY OR VENT.
CONTROL.
CONVERSION BURNER.
CUBIC FOOT.
DAMPER.
DECORATIVE APPLIANCE, VENTED.
DECORATIVE APPLIANCES FOR INSTALLATION IN VENTED FIREPLACES.
DEMAND.
DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION.

DILUTION AIR.
DIRECT-VENT APPLIANCES.
DRAFT.
Mechanical or induced draft.
Natural draft.
DRAFT HOOD.
DRAFT REGULATOR.
DRIP.
DUCT FURNACE.
DWELLING UNIT.
EQUIPMENT.
EXCESS FLOW VALVE (EFV).
EXTERIOR MASONRY CHIMNEYS.
FIREPLACE.
Factory-built fireplace.
Masonry fireplace.
FLAME SAFEGUARD.
FLASHBACK ARRESTOR CHECK VALVE.
FLOOD HAZARD AREA.
FLOOR FURNACE.
FLUE, APPLIANCE. The passage(s) within an appliance through which combustion products pass from the combustion chamber of the appliance to the draft hood inlet opening on an appliance equipped with a draft hood or to the outlet of the appliance on an appliance not equipped with a draft hood.

FLUE COLLAR.
FLUE GASES.
FLUE LINER (LINING).
FUEL GAS.
FURNACE.
FURNACE, CENTRAL.
FURNACE PLENUM.
GAS CONVENIENCE OUTLET.
GAS PIPING.
HAZARDOUS LOCATION.
HOUSE PIPING.
IGNITION PILOT.
IGNITION SOURCE.
INFRARED RADIANT HEATER.
JOINT, FLARED.
JOINT, MECHANICAL.

JOINT, PLASTIC ADHESIVE.
LABELED.
LEAK CHECK.
LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS or LPG (LP-GAS).
LISTED.
LIVING SPACE.
LOG LIGHTER.
MAIN BURNER.
METER.
MODULATING.
NONCOMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS.
OFFSET (VENT).
OUTLET.
OXYGEN DEPLETION SAFETY SHUTOFF SYSTEM (ODS).
PILOT.
PIPING.
- **Pipe.**
- **Tubing**

PIPING SYSTEM.
PLASTIC, THERMOPLASTIC.
POINT OF DELIVERY.
PRESSURE DROP.
PRESSURE TEST.
PURGE.
READY ACCESS (TO).
REGULATOR.
REGULATOR, GAS APPLIANCE.
REGULATOR, LINE GAS PRESSURE.
REGULATOR, MEDIUM-PRESSURE (MP Regulator).
REGULATOR, PRESSURE.
REGULATOR, SERVICE PRESSURE.
RELIEF OPENING.
RELIEF VALVE (DEVICE).
RELIEF VALVE, PRESSURE.
RELIEF VALVE, TEMPERATURE.
- **Manual reset type.**
- **Reseating or self-closing type.**

RELIEF VALVE, VACUUM.
RISER, GAS.
ROOM HEATER, UNVENTED.
ROOM HEATER, VENTED.

SAFETY SHUTOFF DEVICE.
SHAFT.
SPECIFIC GRAVITY.
THERMOSTAT.
- **Electric switch type.**
- **Integral gas valve type.** *Deleted.*
  1. *Deleted.*
  2. *Deleted.*

THIRD-PARTY CERTIFICATION AGENCY. *Deleted.*
THIRD-PARTY CERTIFIED. *Deleted.*
THIRD-PARTY TESTED. *Deleted.*
TOILET, GAS-FIRED.
TRANSITION FITTINGS, PLASTIC TO STEEL.
UNIT HEATER.
- **High-static pressure type.** *Deleted.*
- **Low-static pressure type.** *Deleted.*

UNVENTED ROOM HEATER.
VALVE.
- **Appliance shutoff.**
- **Automatic.**
- **Automatic gas shutoff.**
- **Individual main burner.**
- **Main burner control.**
- **Manual main gas-control.**
- **Manual reset.**
- **Service shutoff.**

VENT.
- **Special gas vent.**
- **Type B vent.**
- **Type BW vent.**
- **Type L vent.**

VENT CONNECTOR.
VENT PIPING.
- **Breather.**
- **Relief.**

VENTED APPLIANCE CATEGORIES.
- **Category I.**
- **Category II.**
- **Category III.**
- **Category IV.**

VENTED ROOM HEATER.

VENTED WALL FURNACE.
VENTING SYSTEM.
WALL HEATER, UNVENTED TYPE.
WATER HEATER.

SECTION 2404
GENERAL

2404.1 Scope. This section shall govern the approval and installation of all equipment and appliances that comprise parts of the installations regulated by this code in accordance with Section 2401.

2404.2 Other fuels. The requirements for combustion and dilution air for gas-fired appliances shall be governed by Section 2407. The requirements for combustion and dilution air for appliances operating with fuels other than fuel gas shall be regulated by Chapter 17.

2404.3 Listed and labeled. Appliances regulated by this code shall be listed and labeled for the application in which they are used unless otherwise approved in accordance with *Sections 106.4 and 106.5*. The approval of unlisted appliances in accordance with *Sections 106.4 and 106.5* shall be based on approved engineering evaluation.

2404.4 Vibration isolation. Where means for isolation of vibration of an appliance is installed, an approved means for support and restraint of that appliance shall be provided.

2404.5 Repair. Defective material or parts shall be replaced or repaired in such a manner so as to preserve the original approval or listing.

2404.6 Wind resistance. Appliances and supports that are exposed to wind shall be designed and installed to resist the wind pressures determined in accordance with this code.

2404.7 Flood hazard. For structures located in flood hazard areas, the appliance, equipment and system installations regulated by this code shall be located at or above the elevation required by Section 322 for utilities and attendant equipment.

Exception: The appliance, equipment and system installations regulated by this code are permitted to be located below the elevation required by Section 322 for utilities and attendant equipment provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components

and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to such elevation.

2404.8 Seismic resistance. Where earthquake loads are applicable in accordance with this code, the sup- ports shall be designed and installed for the seismic forces in accordance with this code.

2404.9 Rodentproofing. Buildings or structures and the walls enclosing habitable or occupiable rooms and spaces in which persons live, sleep or work, or in which feed, food or foodstuffs are stored, prepared, processed, served or sold, shall be constructed to protect against the entry of rodents.

2404.10 Auxiliary drain pan. Category IV condensing appliances shall be provided with an auxiliary drain pan where damage to any building component will occur as a result of stoppage in the condensate drainage system. Such pan shall be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of the *mechanical code* Section 1411.

Exception: An auxiliary drain pan shall not be required for appliances that automatically shut down operation in the event of a stoppage in the condensate drainage system.

2404.11 Condensate pumps. Condensate pumps located in uninhabitable spaces, such as attics and crawl spaces, shall be connected to the appliance or equipment served such that when the pump fails, the appliance or equipment will be prevented from operating. Pumps shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 2405
STRUCTURAL SAFETY

2405.1 Structural safety. The building shall not be weakened by the installation of any gas piping. In the process of installing or repairing any gas piping, the finished floors, walls, ceilings, tile work or any other part of the building or premises that is required to be changed or replaced shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with the requirements of this code.

2405.2 Alterations to trusses. Truss members and components shall not be cut, drilled, notched, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without the written concurrence and approval of a registered design professional. Alterations resulting in the addition of loads to any member, such as HVAC equipment and water heaters, shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of

supporting such additional loading.

2405.3 Engineered wood products. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glued-laminated members and I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.

SECTION 2406
APPLIANCE LOCATION

2406.1 General. Appliances shall be located as required by this section, specific requirements elsewhere in this code and the conditions of the equipment and appliance listing.

2406.2 Prohibited locations. Appliances shall not be located in sleeping rooms, bathrooms, toilet rooms, storage closets or surgical rooms, or in a space that opens only into such rooms or spaces, except where the installation complies with one of the following:

1. The appliance is a direct-vent appliance installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Vented room heaters, wall furnaces, vented decorative appliances, vented gas fireplaces, vented gas fireplace heaters and decorative appliances for installation in vented solid fuel-burning fireplaces are installed in rooms that meet the required volume criteria of Section 2407.5.
3. A single wall-mounted unvented room heater is installed in a bathroom and such unvented room heater is equipped as specified in Section 2445.6 and has an input rating not greater than 6,000 Btu/h (1.76 kW). The bathroom shall meet the required volume criteria of Section 2407.5.
4. A single wall-mounted unvented room heater is installed in a bedroom and such unvented room heater is equipped as specified in Section G2445.6 and has an input rating not greater than 10,000 Btu/h (2.93 kW). The bedroom shall meet the required volume criteria of Section 2407.5.
5. The appliance is installed in a room or space that opens only into a bedroom or bathroom, and such room or space is used for no other purpose and is provided with a solid weather-stripped door equipped with an approved self-closing device. Combustion air shall be taken directly from the outdoors in accordance with Section 2407.6.
6. A clothes dryer is installed in a residential bathroom or toilet room having a permanent opening with an area of not less than 100 square inches (0.06 m^2) that communicates with a space outside of a sleeping room, bathroom,

toilet room or storage closet.

2406.3 Outdoor locations. Appliances installed in outdoor locations shall be either listed for outdoor installation or provided with protection from outdoor environmental factors that influence the operability, durability and safety of the appliance.

SECTION 2407
COMBUSTION, VENTILATION AND DILUTION AIR

2407.1 General. Air for combustion, ventilation and dilution of flue gases for appliances installed in buildings shall be provided by application of one of the methods pre- scribed in Sections 2407.5 through 2407.9. Where the requirements of Section 2407.5 are not met, outdoor air shall be introduced in accordance with one of the methods prescribed in Sections 2407.6 through 2407.9. Direct-vent appliances, gas appliances of other than natural draft design, vented gas appliances not designated as Category I and appliances equipped with power burners, shall be provided with combustion, ventilation and dilution air in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.

Exception: Type 1 clothes dryers that are provided with makeup air in accordance with Section 2439.5.

2407.2 Appliance location. Appliances shall be located so as not to interfere with proper circulation of combustion, ventilation and dilution air.

2407.3 Draft hood/regulator location. Where used, a draft hood or a barometric draft regulator shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the appliance served to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or regulator and the combustion air supply.

2407.4 Makeup air provisions. Where exhaust fans, clothes dryers and kitchen ventilation systems interfere with the operation of appliances, makeup air shall be provided.

2407.5 Indoor combustion air. The required volume of indoor air shall be determined in accordance with Section 2407.5.1 or 2407.5.2, except that where the air infiltration rate is known to be less than 0.40 air changes per hour (ACH), Section 2407.5.2 shall be used. The total required volume shall be the sum of the required volume calculated for all appliances located within the space. Rooms communicating directly with the space in which the appliances are installed through openings not furnished with doors, and through combustion air openings sized and

located in accordance with Section 2407.5.3, are considered to be part of the required volume.

2407.5.1 Standard method. The minimum required volume shall be 50 cubic feet per 1,000 Btu/h (4.8 m^3/kW) of the appliance input rating.

2407.5.2 Known air-infiltration-rate method. Where the air infiltration rate of a structure is known, the minimum required volume shall be determined as follows:
For appliances other than fan-assisted, calculate volume using Equation 24-1.

$$Required\ Volume_{other} \geq \frac{21\ ft^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{other}}{1{,}000\ Btu/h}\right) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-1)}$$

For fan-assisted appliances, calculate volume using Equation 24-2.

$$Required\ Volume_{fan} \geq \frac{15\ ft^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{fan}}{1{,}000\ Btu/hr}\right) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-2)}$$

Where:
I_{other} = All appliances other than fan assisted (input in Btu/h).
I_{fan} = Fan-assisted appliance (input in Btu/h).
ACH = Air change per hour (percent of volume of space exchanged per hour, expressed as a decimal).

For purposes of this calculation, an infiltration rate greater than 0.60 ACH shall not be used in Equations 24-1 and 24-2.

2407.5.3 Indoor opening size and location. Openings used to connect indoor spaces shall be sized and located in accordance with Sections 2407.5.3.1 and 2407.5.3.2 (see Figure 2407.5.3).

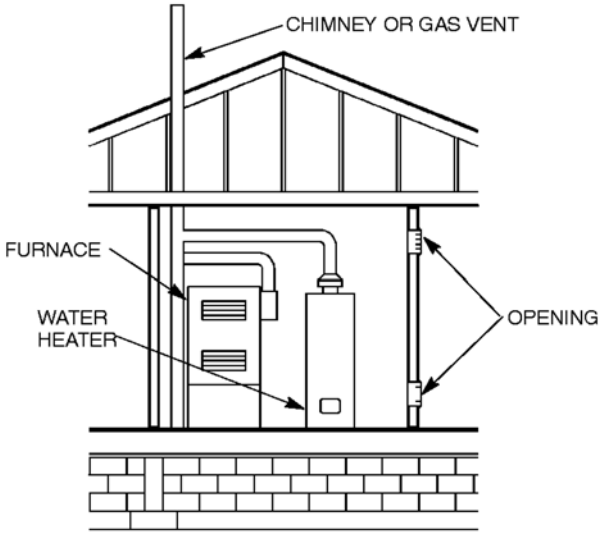


FIGURE 2407.5.3
ALL AIR FROM INSIDE THE BUILDING

2407.5.3.1 Combining spaces on the same story. Where combining spaces on the same story, each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 1,000 Btu/h (2,200 mm^2/kW) of the total input rating of all appliances in the space, but not less than 100 square inches (0.06 m^2). One permanent opening shall commence within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top and one permanent opening shall commence within 12 inches (305 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

2407.5.3.2 Combining spaces in different stories. The volumes of spaces in different stories shall be considered to be communicating spaces where such spaces are connected by one or more permanent openings in doors or floors having a total minimum free area of 2 square inches per 1,000 Btu/h (4402 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all appliances.

2407.6 Outdoor combustion air. Outdoor combustion air shall be provided through opening(s) to the outdoors in accordance with Section 2407.6.1 or 2407.6.2. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

2407.6.1 Two-permanent-openings method. Two permanent openings, one commencing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top and one commencing within

12 inches (305 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure, shall be provided. The openings shall communicate directly or by ducts with the outdoors or spaces that freely communicate with the out- doors.

Where directly communicating with the outdoors, or where communicating with the outdoors through vertical ducts, each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 4,000 Btu/h (550 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all appliances in the enclosure [see Figures 2407.6.1(1) and 2407.6.1(2)].

Where communicating with the outdoors through horizontal ducts, each opening shall have a minimum free area of not less than 1 square inch per 2,000 Btu/h (1100 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all appliances in the enclosure [see Figure 2407.6.1(3)].

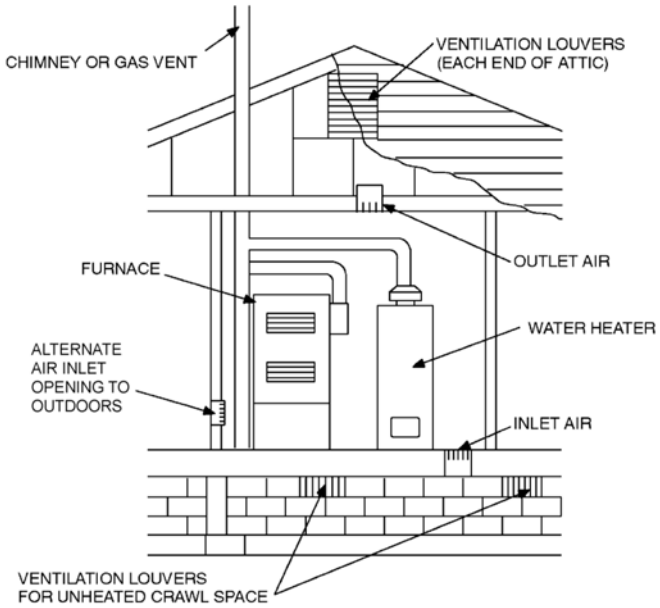


FIGURE 2407.6.1(1)
ALL AIR FROM OUTDOORS –
INLET AIR FROM VENTILATED CRAWL SPACE AND
OUTLET AIR TO VENTILATED ATTIC

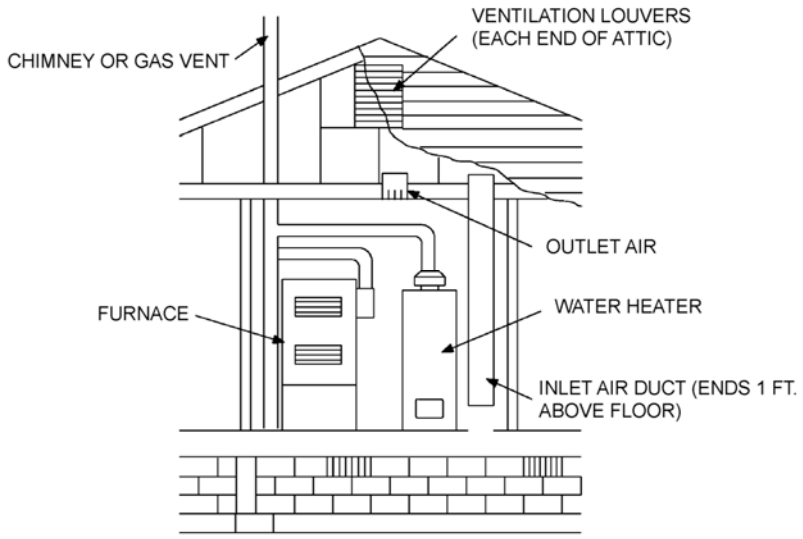


FIGURE 2407.6.1(2)
ALL AIR FROM OUTDOORS THROUGH VENTILATED ATTIC

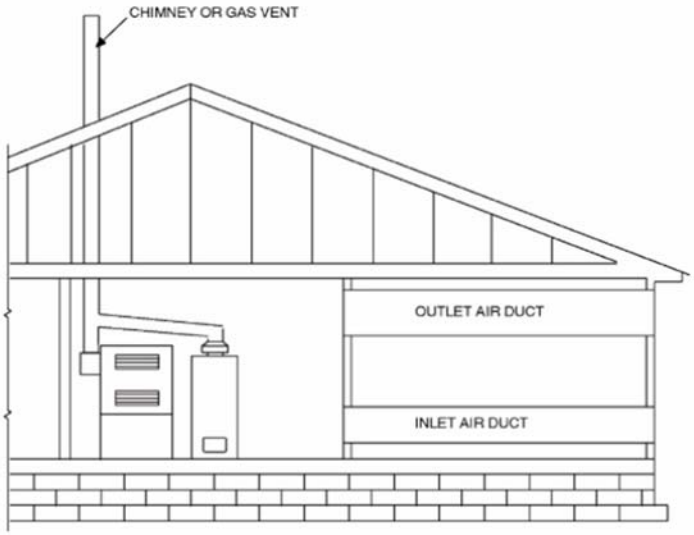


FIGURE 2407.6.1(3)
ALL AIR FROM OUTDOORS

2407.6.2 One-permanent-opening method. One permanent opening, commencing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top of the enclosure, shall be provided. The appliance shall have clearances of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) from the sides and back and 6 inches (152 mm) from the front of the appliance.

The opening shall directly communicate with the outdoors or through a vertical or horizontal duct to the outdoors, or spaces that freely communicate with the outdoors (see Figure 2407.6.2) and shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 3,000 Btu/h (734 mm^2/kW) of the total input rating of all appliances located in the enclosure and not less than the sum of the areas of all vent connectors in the space.

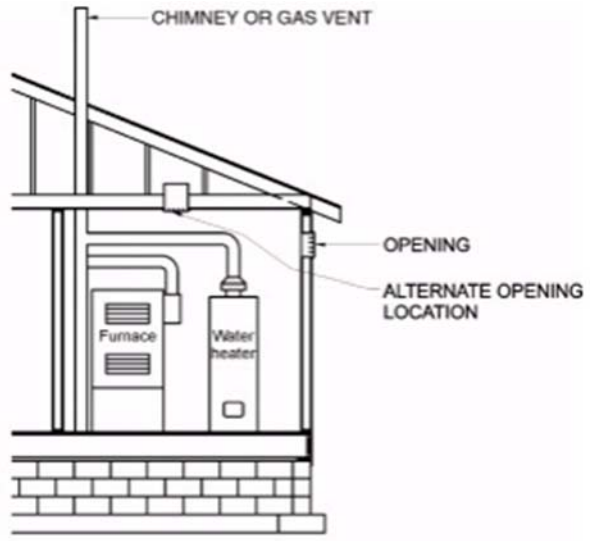


FIGURE 2407.6.2
SINGLE COMBUSTION AIR OPENING, ALL AIR FROM OUTDOORS

2407.7 Combination indoor and outdoor combustion air. The use of a combination of indoor and outdoor combustion air shall be in accordance with Sections 2407.7.1 through 2407.7.3.

2407.7.1 Indoor openings. Where used, openings connecting the interior spaces shall comply with Section 2407.5.3.

2407.7.2 Outdoor opening location. Outdoor opening(s) shall be located in accordance with Section 2407.6.

2407.7.3 Outdoor opening(s) size. The outdoor opening(s) size shall be calculated in accordance with the following:

1. The ratio of interior spaces shall be the available volume of all communicating spaces divided by the required volume.
2. The outdoor size reduction factor shall be one minus the ratio of interior spaces.

3. The minimum size of outdoor opening(s) shall be the full size of outdoor opening(s) calculated in accordance with Section G2407.6, multiplied by the reduction factor. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

2407.8 Engineered installations. Engineered combustion air installations shall provide an adequate supply of combustion, ventilation and dilution air and shall be approved.

2407.9 Mechanical combustion air supply. Where all combustion air is provided by a mechanical air supply system, the combustion air shall be supplied from the outdoors at a rate not less than 0.35 cubic feet per minute per 1,000 Btu/h (0.034 m3/min per kW) of total input rating of all appliances located within the space.

2407.9.1 Makeup air. Where exhaust fans are installed, makeup air shall be provided to replace the exhausted air.

2407.9.2 Appliance interlock. Each of the appliances served shall be interlocked with the mechanical air supply system to prevent main burner operation when the mechanical air supply system is not in operation.

2407.9.3 Combined combustion air and ventilation air system. Where combustion air is provided by the building's mechanical ventilation system, the system shall provide the specified combustion air rate in addition to the required ventilation air.

2407.10 Louvers and grilles. The required size of openings for combustion, ventilation and dilution air shall be based on the net free area of each opening. Where the free area through a design of louver, grille or screen is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to pro- vide the free area specified. Where the design and free area of louvers and grilles are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have 25-percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have 75-percent free area. Screens shall have a mesh size not smaller than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm).

Non-motorized louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position. Motorized louvers shall be interlocked with the appliance so that they are proven to be in the full open position prior to main burner ignition and during main burner operation. Means shall be provided to prevent the main burner from igniting if the louvers fail to open during burner start-up and to shut down the main burner if the louvers close during operation.

2407.11 Combustion air ducts. Combustion air ducts shall comply with all of the following:

1. Ducts shall be constructed of galvanized steel complying with Chapter 16 or of a material having equivalent corrosion resistance, strength and rigidity.
   Exception: Within dwellings units, unobstructed stud and joist spaces shall not be prohibited from conveying combustion air, provided that not more than one required fireblock is removed.
2. Ducts shall terminate in an unobstructed space allowing free movement of combustion air to the appliances.
3. Ducts shall serve a single enclosure.
4. Ducts shall not serve both upper and lower combustion air openings where both such openings are used. The separation between ducts serving upper and lower combustion air openings shall be maintained to the source of combustion air.
5. Ducts shall not be screened where terminating in an attic space.
6. Horizontal upper combustion air ducts shall not slope downward toward the source of combustion air.
7. The remaining space surrounding a chimney liner, gas vent, special gas vent or plastic piping installed within a masonry, metal or factory-built chimney shall not be used to supply combustion air.
   Exception: Direct-vent gas-fired appliances designed for installation in a solid fuel-burning fire- place where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
8. Combustion air intake openings located on the exterior of a building shall have the lowest side of such openings located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) vertically from the adjoining finished ground level.

2407.12 Protection from fumes and gases. Where corrosive or flammable process fumes or gases, other than products of combustion, are present, means for the disposal of such fumes or gases shall be provided. Such fumes or gases include carbon monoxide, hydrogen sulfide, ammonia, chlorine and halogenated hydrocarbons.

In barbershops, beauty shops and other facilities where chemicals that generate corrosive or flammable products, such as aerosol sprays, are routinely used, non-direct vent-type appliances shall be located in a mechanical room separated or partitioned off from other areas with provisions for combustion air and dilution air from the outdoors. Direct-vent appliances shall be installed in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 2408
INSTALLATION

2408.1 General. Equipment and appliances shall be installed as required by the terms of their approval, in accordance with the conditions of listing, the manufacturer's instructions and this code. Manufacturer's installation instructions shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection. Where a code provision is less restrictive than the conditions of the listing of the equipment or appliance or the manufacturer's installation instructions, the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions shall apply.

Unlisted appliances approved in accordance with Section 2404.3 shall be limited to uses recommended by the manufacturer and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the provisions of this code and the requirements determined by the *building* official.

2408.2 Elevation of ignition source. Equipment and appliances having an ignition source shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor in hazardous locations and public garages, private garages, repair garages, motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a dwelling unit and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

Exception: Elevation of the ignition source is not required for appliances that are listed as flammable-vapor-ignition resistant.

2408.2.1 Installation in residential garages. In residential garages where appliances are installed in a separate, enclosed space having access only from outside of the garage, such appliances shall be permitted to be installed at floor level, provided that the required combustion air is taken from the exterior of the garage.

2408.3 Private garages. Appliances located in private garages shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the appliances are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section 2408.2.

2408.4 Clearances from grade. Equipment and appliances installed at grade level shall be supported on a level concrete slab or other approved material extending not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above adjoining grade or shall be suspended not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above adjoining grade. Such supports shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

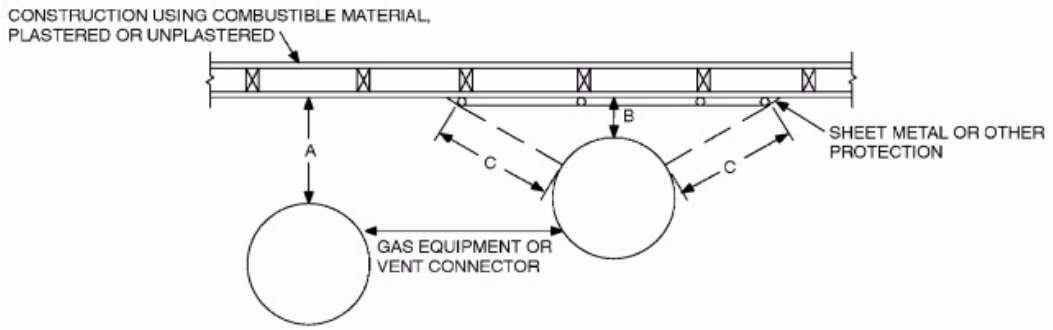
2408.5 Clearances to combustible construction. Heat-producing equipment and appliances shall be installed to maintain the required clearances to combustible construction as specified in the listing and manufacturer's instructions. Such clearances shall be reduced only in accordance with Section 2409. Clearances to combustibles shall include such considerations as door swing, drawer pull, overhead projections or shelving and window swing. Devices, such as door stops or limits and closers, shall not be used to provide the required clearances.

2408.6 Avoid strain on gas piping. Appliances shall be supported and connected to the piping so as not to exert undue strain on the connections.

SECTION 2409
CLEARANCE REDUCTION

2409.1 Scope. This section shall govern the reduction in required clearances to combustible materials, including gypsum board, and combustible assemblies for chimneys, vents, appliances, devices and equipment. Clearance requirements for air-conditioning equipment and central heating boilers and furnaces shall comply with Sections 2409.3 and 2409.4.

2409.2 Reduction table. The allowable clearance reduction shall be based on one of the methods specified in Table 2409.2 or shall utilize a reduced clearance protective assembly listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1618. Where required clearances are not listed in Table 2409.2, the reduced clearances shall be determined by linear interpolation between the distances listed in the table. Reduced clearances shall not be derived by extrapolation below the range of the table. The reduction of the required clearances to combustibles for listed and labeled appliances and equipment shall be in accordance with the requirements of this section, except that such clearances shall not be reduced where reduction is specifically prohibited by the terms of the appliance or equipment listing [see Figures 2409.2(1) through 2409.2(3)].

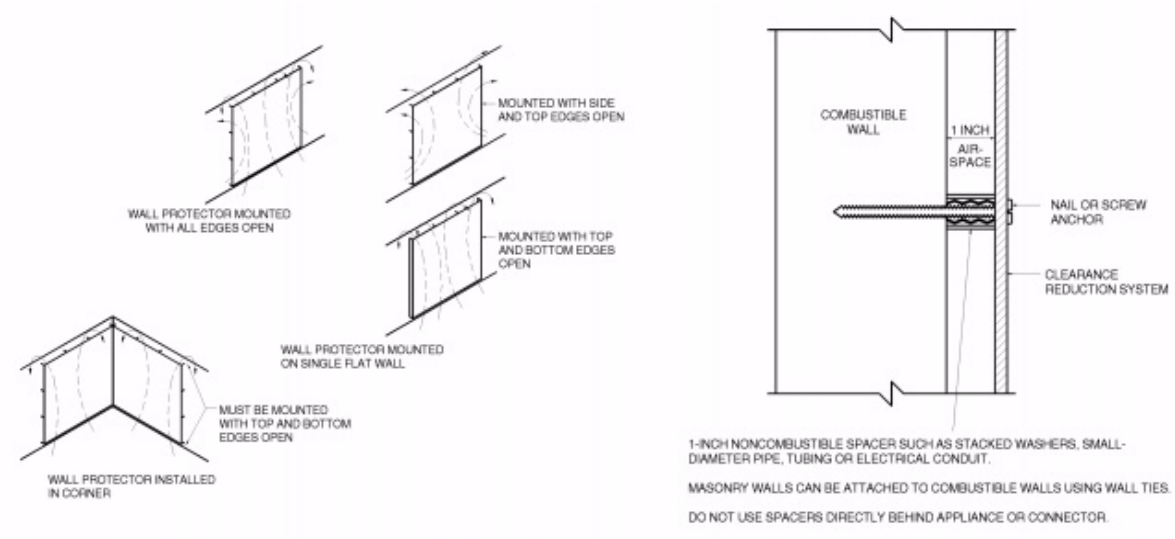


NOTES:

A =the clearance without protection.

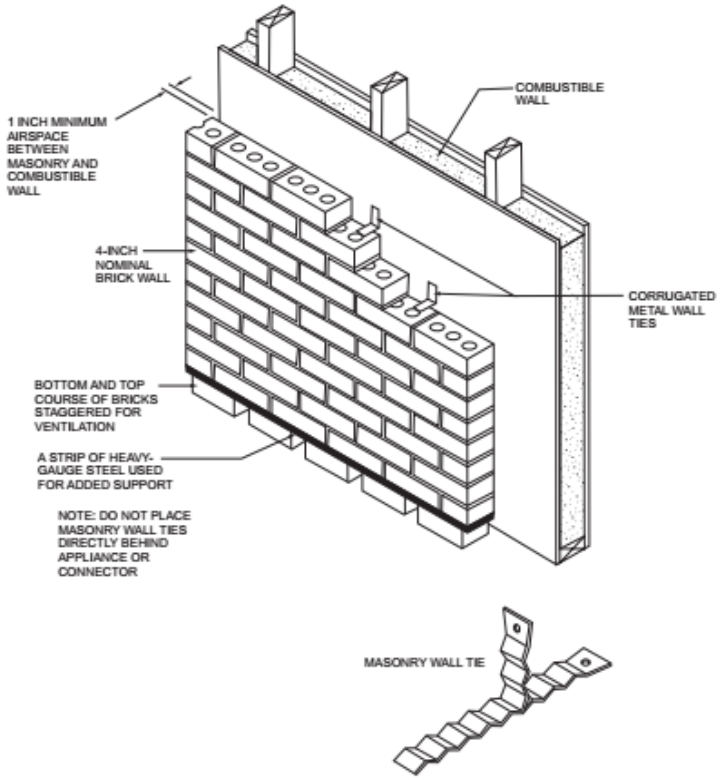
B =the reduced clearance permitted in accordance with Table 2409.2. The protection applied to the construction using combustible material shall extend far enough in each direction to make "C" equal to "A."

FIGURE 2409.2(1)
EXTENT OF PROTECTION NECESSARY TO REDUCE CLEARANCES FROM GAS EQUIPMENT OR VENT CONNECTORS



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 2409.2(2)
WALL PROTECTOR CLEARANCE REDUCTION SYSTEM



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 2409.2(3)
MASONRY CLEARANCE REDUCTION SYSTEM

TABLE 2409.2 [a through k]
REDUCTION OF CLEARANCES WITH SPECIFIED FORMS OF PROTECTION

TYPE OF PROTECTION APPLIED TO AND COVERING ALL SURFACES OF COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL WITHIN THE DISTANCE SPECIFIED AS THE REQUIRED CLEARANCE WITH NO PROTECTION [see Figures G2409.2(1), G2409.2(2), and G2409.2(3)]	WHERE THE REQUIRED CLEARANCE WITH NO PROTECTION FROM APPLIANCE, VENT CONNECTOR, OR SINGLE-WALL METAL PIPE IS: (inches)									
	36		18		12		9		6	
	Allowable clearances with specified protection (inches)									
	Use Column 1 for clearances above appliance or horizontal connector. Use Column 2 for clearances from appliance, vertical connector and single-wall metal pipe.									
	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and rear Col. 2
1. $3^1/_2$-inch-thick masonry wall without ventilated airspace	—	24	—	12	—	9	—	6	—	5
2. $^1/_2$-inch insulation board over 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts	24	18	12	9	9	6	6	5	4	3
3. 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal over 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts reinforced with wire on rear face with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
4. $3^1/_2$-inch-thick masonry wall with ventilated airspace	—	12	—	6	—	6	—	6	—	6
5. 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	2
6. $^1/_2$-inch-thick insulation board with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
7. 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace over 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
8. 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts sandwiched between two sheets 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, ºC = [(ºF - 32)/1.8], 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m^3, 1 Btu per inch per square foot per hour per ºF = 0.144 W/m^2 × K.

a. Reduction of clearances from combustible materials shall not interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility of servicing.

b. Clearances shall be measured from the outer surface of the combustible material to the nearest point on the surface of the appliance, disregarding any intervening protection applied to the combustible material.

c. Spacers and ties shall be of noncombustible material. A spacer or tie shall not be used directly opposite an appliance or connector.

d. For all clearance reduction systems using a ventilated airspace, adequate provision for air circulation shall be provided as described [see Figures 2409.2(2) and 2409.2(3)].

e. There shall be not less than 1 inch between clearance reduction systems and combustible walls and ceilings for reduction systems using ventilated airspace.

f. Where a wall protector is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, it shall have a minimum 1-inch air gap. To provide air circulation, the bottom and top edges, or only the side and top edges, or all edges shall be left open.

g. Mineral wool batts (blanket or board) shall have a density of 8 pounds per cubic foot and a minimum melting point of 1500ºF.

h. Insulation material used as part of a clearance reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu per inch per square foot per hour per ºF or less.

i. There shall be not less than 1 inch between the appliance and the protector. In no case shall the clearance between the appliance and the combustible surface be reduced below that allowed in this table.
j. Clearances and thicknesses are minimum; larger clearances and thicknesses are acceptable.
k. Listed single-wall connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2409.3 Clearances for indoor air-conditioning appliances. Clearance requirements for indoor air-conditioning appliances shall comply with Sections 2409.3.1 through 2409.3.4.

2409.3.1 Appliances clearances. Air-conditioning appliances shall be installed with clearances in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2409.3.2 Clearance reduction. Air-conditioning appliances shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to combustible material, provided that the combustible material or appliance is protected as described in Table 2409.2 and such reduction is allowed by the manufacturer's instructions.

2409.3.3 Plenum clearances. Where the furnace plenum is adjacent to plaster on metal lath or non- combustible material attached to combustible material, the clearance shall be measured to the surface of the plaster or other noncombustible finish where the clearance specified is 2 inches (51 mm) or less.

2409.3.4 Clearance from supply ducts. Supply air ducts connecting to listed central heating furnaces shall have the same minimum clearance to combustibles as required for the furnace supply plenum for a distance of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the supply plenum. Clearance is not required beyond the 3-foot (914 mm) distance.

2409.4 Central-heating boilers and furnaces. Clearance requirements for central-heating boilers and furnaces shall comply with Sections 2409.4.1 through 2409.4.5. The clearance to these appliances shall not interfere with combustion air; draft hood clearance and relief; and accessibility for servicing.

2409.4.1 Appliances clearances. Central-heating furnaces and low-pressure boilers shall be installed with clearances in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2409.4.2 Clearance reduction. Central-heating furnaces and low-pressure boilers shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to combustible material provided that the combustible material or appliance is protected as described in Table 2409.2 and such reduction is allowed by the manufacturer's

instructions.

2409.4.3 Plenum clearances. Where the furnace plenum is adjacent to plaster on metal lath or non-combustible material attached to combustible material, the clearance shall be measured to the surface of the plaster or other noncombustible finish where the clearance specified is 2 inches (51 mm) or less.

2409.4.4 Clearance from supply ducts. Supply air ducts connecting to listed central heating furnaces shall have the same minimum clearance to combustibles as required for the furnace supply plenum for a distance of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the supply plenum. Clearance is not required beyond the 3-foot (914 mm) distance.

2409.4.5 Clearance for servicing appliances. Front clearance shall be sufficient for servicing the burner and the furnace or boiler.

SECTION 2410
ELECTRICAL

2410.1 Grounding. Gas piping shall not be used as a grounding electrode.

2410.2 Connections. Electrical connections between appliances and the building wiring, including the grounding of the appliances, shall conform to *NFPA 70 as modified by Chapter 34.*

SECTION 2411
ELECTRICAL BONDING

2411.1 Pipe and tubing other than CSST. Each above-ground portion of a gas piping system other than corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) that is likely to become energized shall be electrically continuous and bonded to an effective ground-fault current path. Gas piping other than CSST shall be considered to be bonded where it is connected to an appliance that is connected to the equipment grounding conductor of the circuit that supplies that appliance.

2411.2 CSST. This section applies to corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) that is not listed with an arc-resistant jacket or coating system in accordance with ANSI LC1/CSA 6.26. CSST gas piping systems and piping systems containing one or more segments of CSST shall be electrically continuous and bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system or, where provided, the lightning protection

grounding electrode system.

2411.2.1 Point of connection. The boding jumper shall connect to a metallic pipe, pipe fitting or CSST fitting.

2411.2.2 Size and material of jumper. The bonding jumper shall be not smaller than 6 AWG copper wire or equivalent.

2411.2.3 Bonding jumper length. The length of the bonding jumper between the connection to a gas piping system and the connection to a grounding electrode system shall not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm). Any additional grounding electrodes installed to meet this requirement shall be bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system or, where provided, the lightning protection grounding electrode system.

2411.2.4 Bonding connections. Bonding connections shall be in accordance with NFPA 70.

2411.2.5 Connection devices. Devices used for making the bonding connections shall be listed for the application in accordance with UL 467.

2411.3 Arc-resistant CSST. This section applies to corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) that is listed with an arc-resistant jacket or coating system in accordance with ANSI LC1/CSA 6.26. The CSST shall be electrically continuous and bonded to an effective ground fault current path. Where any CSST component of a piping system does not have an arc-resistant jacket or coating system, the bonding requirements of Section 2411.2 shall apply. Arc-resistant-jacketed CSST shall be considered to be bonded where it is connected to an appliance that is connected to the appliance grounding conductor of the circuit that supplies that appliance.

SECTION 2412
GENERAL

2412.1 Scope. This section shall govern the design, installation, modification and maintenance of piping systems. The applicability of this code to piping systems extends from the point of delivery to the connections with the appliances and includes the design, materials, components, fabrication, assembly, installation, testing, inspection, operation and maintenance of such piping systems.

2412.1.1 Utility piping systems located within buildings. Utility service

piping located within buildings shall be installed in accordance with the structural safety and fire protection provisions of this code.

2412.2 Liquefied petroleum gas storage. The storage system for liquefied petroleum gas shall be designed and installed in accordance with the *fire code* and NFPA 58.

2412.3 Modifications to existing systems. In modifying or adding to existing piping systems, sizes shall be maintained in accordance with this chapter.

2412.4 Additional appliances. Where an additional appliance is to be served, the existing piping shall be checked to determine if it has adequate capacity for all appliances served. If inadequate, the existing system shall be enlarged as required or separate piping of adequate capacity shall be provided.

2412.5 Identification. For other than steel pipe, exposed piping shall be identified by a yellow label marked "Gas" in black letters. The marking shall be spaced at intervals not exceeding 5 feet (1524 mm). The marking shall not be required on pipe located in the same room as the appliance served.

2412.6 Interconnections. Where two or more meters are installed on the same premises but supply separate consumers, the piping systems shall not be interconnected on the outlet side of the meters.

2412.7 Piping meter identification. Piping from multiple meter installations shall be marked with an approved permanent identification by the installer so that the piping system supplied by each meter is readily identifiable.

2412.8 Minimum sizes. Pipe utilized for the installation, extension and alteration of any piping system shall be sized to supply the full number of outlets for the intended purpose and shall be sized in accordance with Section 2413.

2412.9 Identification. Each length of pipe and tubing and each pipe fitting, utilized in a fuel gas system, shall bear the identification of the manufacturer.

Exceptions:

1. Steel pipe sections that are 2 feet (610 mm) and less in length and are cut from longer sections of pipe.
2. Steel pipe fittings 2 inches and less in size.
3. Where identification is provided on the product packaging or crating.
4. Where other approved documentation is provided.

2412.10 Piping materials standards. *Piping, tubing and fittings shall either be tested or listed by an approved agency as complying with the applicable referenced standards, specifications and performance criteria of this code and shall be identified in accordance with Section 2412.9.*

SECTION 2413
PIPE SIZING

2413.1 General considerations. Piping systems shall be of such size and so installed as to provide a supply of gas sufficient to meet the maximum demand and supply gas to each appliance inlet at not less than the minimum supply pressure required by the appliance.

2413.2 Maximum gas demand. The volumetric flow rate of gas to be provided shall be the sum of the maximum input of the appliances served.

The total connected hourly load shall be used as the basis for pipe sizing, assuming that all appliances could be operating at full capacity simultaneously. Where a diversity of load can be established, pipe sizing shall be permitted to be based on such loads.

The volumetric flow rate of gas to be provided shall be adjusted for altitude where the installation is above 2,000 feet (610 m) in elevation.

2413.3 Sizing. Gas piping shall be sized in accordance with one of the following:

1. Pipe sizing tables or sizing equations in accordance with Section 2413.4 or 2413.5, as applicable.
2. The sizing tables included in a listed piping system's manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. Other approved engineering methods.

2413.4 Sizing tables and equations. This section applies to piping materials other than non-corrugated stainless steel tubing. Where Tables 2413.4(1) through 2413.4(21) are used to size piping or tubing, the pipe length shall be determined in accordance with Section 2413.4.1, 2413.4.2 or 2413.4.3.

Where Equations 24-3 and 24-4 are used to size piping or tubing, the pipe or tubing shall have smooth inside walls and the pipe length shall be determined in accordance with Section 2413.4.1, 2413.4.2 or 2413.4.3.

1. Low-pressure gas equation [Less than $1^1/_2$ pounds per square inch (psi) (10.3 kPa)]:

$$D = \frac{Q^{0.381}}{19.17\left(\frac{\Delta H}{C_r \times L}\right)^{0.206}}$$ **(Equation 24-3)**

2. High-pressure gas equation [$1^1/_2$ pounds per square inch and above]:

$$D = \frac{Q^{0.381}}{18.93\left[\frac{(P_1^2 - P_2^2) \times Y}{C_r \times L}\right]^{0.206}}$$ **(Equation 24-4)**

Where:

D	=	Inside diameter of pipe, inches (mm).
Q	=	Input rate appliance(s), cubic feet per hour at 60ºF (16ºC) and 30-inch mercury column.
P_1	=	Upstream pressure, psia (P_1 + 14.7).
P_2	=	Downstream pressure, psia (P_2 + 14.7).
L	=	Equivalent length of pipe, feet.
ΔH	=	Pressure drop, inch water column (27.7-inch water column = 1 psi).

TABLE 2413.4
C_r AND Y VALUES FOR NATURAL GAS AND UNDILUTED PROPANE AT STANDARD CONDITIONS

GAS	EQUATION FACTORS	
	C_r	Y
Natural gas	0.6094	0.9992
Undiluted propane	1.2462	0.9910

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m^3, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1-inch water column = 0.249 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.293 W.

2413.4.1 Longest length method. The pipe size of each section of gas piping shall be determined using the longest length of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote outlet and the load of the section.

2413.4.2 Branch length method. Pipe shall be sized as follows:

1. Pipe size of each section of the longest pipe run from the point of delivery to the most remote outlet shall be determined using the longest run of piping and the load of the section.
2. The pipe size of each section of branch piping not previously sized shall be determined using the length of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote outlet in each branch and the load of the section.

2413.4.3 Hybrid pressure. The pipe size for each section of higher pressure gas piping shall be determined using the longest length of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote line pressure regulator. The pipe size from the line pressure regulator to each outlet shall be determined using the length of piping from the regulator to the most remote outlet served by the regulator.

2413.5 Noncorrugated stainless steel tubing. Noncorrugated stainless steel tubing shall be sized in accordance with Equations 24-3 and 24-4 of Section 2413.4 in conjunction with Section 2413.4.1, 2413.4.2 or 2413.4.3.

2413.6 Allowable pressure drop. The design pressure loss in any piping system under maximum probable flow conditions, from the point of delivery to the inlet connection of the appliance, shall be such that the supply pressure at the appliance is greater than or equal to the minimum pressure required by the appliance.

2413.7 Maximum operating pressure. The maximum design operating pressure for piping systems located inside buildings shall not exceed 5 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (34 kPa gauge) except where one or more of the following conditions are met:

1. The piping joints are welded or brazed.
2. The piping joints are flanged and pipe-to-flange connections are made by welding or brazing.
3. The piping is located in a ventilated chase or otherwise enclosed for protection against accidental gas accumulation.
4. The piping is a temporary installation for buildings under construction.

2413.7.1 Operation below -5°F (-21°C). LP-gas systems designed to operate below -5ºF (-21ºC) or with butane or a propane-butane mix shall be designed to either accommodate liquid LP-gas or prevent LP-gas vapor from condensing into a liquid.

TABLE 2413.4(1)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

PIPE SIZE (inches)														
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**8**	**10**	**12**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**	**5.047**	**6.065**	**7.981**	**10.020**	**11.938**
Length(ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**													
10	172	360	678	1,390	2,090	4,020	6,400	11,300	23,100	41,800	67,600	139,000	252,000	399,000
20	118	247	466	957	1,430	2,760	4,400	7,780	15,900	28,700	46,500	95,500	173,000	275,000
30	95	199	374	768	1,150	2,220	3,530	6,250	12,700	23,000	37,300	76,700	139,000	220,000
40	81	170	320	657	985	1,900	3,020	5,350	10,900	19,700	31,900	65,600	119,000	189,000
50	72	151	284	583	873	1,680	2,680	4,740	9,660	17,500	28,300	58,200	106,000	167,000
60	65	137	257	528	791	1,520	2,430	4,290	8,760	15,800	25,600	52,700	95,700	152,000
70	60	126	237	486	728	1,400	2,230	3,950	8,050	14,600	23,600	48,500	88,100	139,000
80	56	117	220	452	677	1,300	2,080	3,670	7,490	13,600	22,000	45,100	81,900	130,000
90	52	110	207	424	635	1,220	1,950	3,450	7,030	12,700	20,600	42,300	76,900	122,000
100	50	104	195	400	600	1,160	1,840	3,260	6,640	12,000	19,500	40,000	72,600	115,000
125	44	92	173	355	532	1,020	1,630	2,890	5,890	10,600	17,200	35,400	64,300	102,000
150	40	83	157	322	482	928	1,480	2,610	5,330	9,650	15,600	32,100	58,300	92,300
175	37	77	144	296	443	854	1,360	2,410	4,910	8,880	14,400	29,500	53,600	84,900
200	34	71	134	275	412	794	1,270	2,240	4,560	8,260	13,400	27,500	49,900	79,000
250	30	63	119	244	366	704	1,120	1,980	4,050	7,320	11,900	24,300	44,200	70,000
300	27	57	108	221	331	638	1,020	1,800	3,670	6,630	10,700	22,100	40,100	63,400
350	25	53	99	203	305	587	935	1,650	3,370	6,100	9,880	20,300	36,900	58,400
400	23	49	92	189	283	546	870	1,540	3,140	5,680	9,190	18,900	34,300	54,300
450	22	46	86	177	266	512	816	1,440	2,940	5,330	8,620	17,700	32,200	50,900
500	21	43	82	168	251	484	771	1,360	2,780	5,030	8,150	16,700	30,400	48,100
550	20	41	78	159	239	459	732	1,290	2,640	4,780	7,740	15,900	28,900	45,700
600	19	39	74	152	228	438	699	1,240	2,520	4,560	7,380	15,200	27,500	43,600
650	18	38	71	145	218	420	669	1,180	2,410	4,360	7,070	14,500	26,400	41,800
700	17	36	68	140	209	403	643	1,140	2,320	4,190	6,790	14,000	25,300	40,100
750	17	35	66	135	202	389	619	1,090	2,230	4,040	6,540	13,400	24,400	38,600
800	16	34	63	130	195	375	598	1,060	2,160	3,900	6,320	13,000	23,600	37,300
850	16	33	61	126	189	363	579	1,020	2,090	3,780	6,110	12,600	22,800	36,100
900	15	32	59	122	183	352	561	992	2,020	3,660	5,930	12,200	22,100	35,000
950	15	31	58	118	178	342	545	963	1,960	3,550	5,760	11,800	21,500	34,000
1,000	14	30	56	115	173	333	530	937	1,910	3,460	5,600	11,500	20,900	33,100
1,100	14	28	53	109	164	316	503	890	1,810	3,280	5,320	10,900	19,800	31,400
1,200	13	27	51	104	156	301	480	849	1,730	3,130	5,070	10,400	18,900	30,000
1,300	12	26	49	100	150	289	460	813	1,660	3,000	4,860	9,980	18,100	28,700
1,400	12	25	47	96	144	277	442	781	1,590	2,880	4,670	9,590	17,400	27,600
1,500	11	24	45	93	139	267	426	752	1,530	2,780	4,500	9,240	16,800	26,600
1,600	11	23	44	89	134	258	411	727	1,480	2,680	4,340	8,920	16,200	25,600
1,700	11	22	42	86	130	250	398	703	1,430	2,590	4,200	8,630	15,700	24,800
1,800	10	22	41	84	126	242	386	682	1,390	2,520	4,070	8,370	15,200	24,100
1,900	10	21	40	81	122	235	375	662	1,350	2,440	3,960	8,130	14,800	23,400
2,000	NA	20	39	79	119	229	364	644	1,310	2,380	3,850	7,910	14,400	22,700

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,

1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
2. Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(2)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

PIPE SIZE (inches)									
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**								
10	1,510	3,040	5,560	11,400	17,100	32,900	52,500	92,800	189,000
20	1,070	2,150	3,930	8,070	12,100	23,300	37,100	65,600	134,000
30	869	1,760	3,210	6,590	9,880	19,000	30,300	53,600	109,000
40	753	1,520	2,780	5,710	8,550	16,500	26,300	46,400	94,700
50	673	1,360	2,490	5,110	7,650	14,700	23,500	41,500	84,700
60	615	1,240	2,270	4,660	6,980	13,500	21,400	37,900	77,300
70	569	1,150	2,100	4,320	6,470	12,500	19,900	35,100	71,600
80	532	1,080	1,970	4,040	6,050	11,700	18,600	32,800	67,000
90	502	1,010	1,850	3,810	5,700	11,000	17,500	30,900	63,100
100	462	934	1,710	3,510	5,260	10,100	16,100	28,500	58,200
125	414	836	1,530	3,140	4,700	9,060	14,400	25,500	52,100
150	372	751	1,370	2,820	4,220	8,130	13,000	22,900	46,700
175	344	695	1,270	2,601	3,910	7,530	12,000	21,200	43,300
200	318	642	1,170	2,410	3,610	6,960	11,100	19,600	40,000
250	279	583	1,040	2,140	3,210	6,180	9,850	17,400	35,500
300	253	528	945	1,940	2,910	5,600	8,920	15,800	32,200
350	232	486	869	1,790	2,670	5,150	8,210	14,500	29,600
400	216	452	809	1,660	2,490	4,790	7,640	13,500	27,500
450	203	424	759	1,560	2,330	4,500	7,170	12,700	25,800
500	192	401	717	1,470	2,210	4,250	6,770	12,000	24,400
550	182	381	681	1,400	2,090	4,030	6,430	11,400	23,200
600	174	363	650	1,330	2,000	3,850	6,130	10,800	22,100
650	166	348	622	1,280	1,910	3,680	5,870	10,400	21,200
700	160	334	598	1,230	1,840	3,540	5,640	9,970	20,300
750	154	322	576	1,180	1,770	3,410	5,440	9,610	19,600
800	149	311	556	1,140	1,710	3,290	5,250	9,280	18,900
850	144	301	538	1,100	1,650	3,190	5,080	8,980	18,300
900	139	292	522	1,070	1,600	3,090	4,930	8,710	17,800
950	135	283	507	1,040	1,560	3,000	4,780	8,460	17,200
1,000	132	275	493	1,010	1,520	2,920	4,650	8,220	16,800
1,100	125	262	468	960	1,440	2,770	4,420	7,810	15,900
1,200	119	250	446	917	1,370	2,640	4,220	7,450	15,200
1,300	114	239	427	878	1,320	2,530	4,040	7,140	14,600
1,400	110	230	411	843	1,260	2,430	3,880	6,860	14,000
1,500	106	221	396	812	1,220	2,340	3,740	6,600	13,500
1,600	102	214	382	784	1,180	2,260	3,610	6,380	13,000
1,700	99	207	370	759	1,140	2,190	3,490	6,170	12,600
1,800	96	200	358	736	1,100	2,120	3,390	5,980	12,200
1,900	93	195	348	715	1,070	2,060	3,290	5,810	11,900
2,000	91	189	339	695	1,040	2,010	3,200	5,650	11,500

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,

1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(3)
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TUBE SIZE (inches)										
Nominal	**K & L**	**1/4**	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
	ACR	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**7/8**	**11/8**	**13/8**	—	—
Outside		**0.375**	**0.500**	**0.625**	**0.750**	**0.875**	**1.125**	**1.375**	**1.625**	**2.125**
Inside		**0.305**	**0.402**	**0.527**	**0.652**	**0.745**	**0.995**	**1.245**	**1.481**	**1.959**
Length (ft)		**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**								
10		27	55	111	195	276	590	1,060	1,680	3,490
20		18	38	77	134	190	406	730	1,150	2,400
30		15	30	61	107	152	326	586	925	1,930
40		13	26	53	92	131	279	502	791	1,650
50		11	23	47	82	116	247	445	701	1,460
60		10	21	42	74	105	224	403	635	1,320
70		NA	19	39	68	96	206	371	585	1,220
80		NA	18	36	63	90	192	345	544	1,130
90		NA	17	34	59	84	180	324	510	1,060
100		NA	16	32	56	79	170	306	482	1,000
125		NA	14	28	50	70	151	271	427	890
150		NA	13	26	45	64	136	245	387	806
175		NA	12	24	41	59	125	226	356	742
200		NA	11	22	39	55	117	210	331	690
250		NA	NA	20	34	48	103	186	294	612
300		NA	NA	18	31	44	94	169	266	554
350		NA	NA	16	28	40	86	155	245	510
400		NA	NA	15	26	38	80	144	228	474
450		NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	214	445
500		NA	NA	13	23	33	71	128	202	420
550		NA	NA	13	22	32	68	122	192	399
600		NA	NA	12	21	30	64	116	183	381
650		NA	NA	12	20	29	62	111	175	365
700		NA	NA	11	20	28	59	107	168	350
750		NA	NA	11	19	27	57	103	162	338
800		NA	NA	10	18	26	55	99	156	326
850		NA	NA	10	18	25	53	96	151	315
900		NA	NA	NA	17	24	52	93	147	306
950		NA	NA	NA	17	24	50	90	143	297
1,000		NA	NA	NA	16	23	49	88	139	289
1,100		NA	NA	NA	15	22	46	84	132	274
1,200		NA	NA	NA	15	21	44	80	126	262
1,300		NA	NA	NA	14	20	42	76	120	251
1,400		NA	NA	NA	13	19	41	73	116	241
1,500		NA	NA	NA	13	18	39	71	111	232
1,600		NA	NA	NA	13	18	38	68	108	224
1,700		NA	NA	NA	12	17	37	66	104	217
1,800		NA	NA	NA	12	17	36	64	101	210
1,900		NA	NA	NA	11	16	35	62	98	204
2,000		NA	NA	NA	11	16	34	60	95	199

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
3. Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(4)
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

TUBE SIZE (inches)										
	K & L	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
Nominal	ACR	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour								
10		245	506	1,030	1,800	2,550	5,450	9,820	15,500	32,200
20		169	348	708	1,240	1,760	3,750	6,750	10,600	22,200
30		135	279	568	993	1,410	3,010	5,420	8,550	17,800
40		116	239	486	850	1,210	2,580	4,640	7,310	15,200
50		103	212	431	754	1,070	2,280	4,110	6,480	13,500
60		93	192	391	683	969	2,070	3,730	5,870	12,200
70		86	177	359	628	891	1,900	3,430	5,400	11,300
80		80	164	334	584	829	1,770	3,190	5,030	10,500
90		75	154	314	548	778	1,660	2,990	4,720	9,820
100		71	146	296	518	735	1,570	2,830	4,450	9,280
125		63	129	263	459	651	1,390	2,500	3,950	8,220
150		57	117	238	416	590	1,260	2,270	3,580	7,450
175		52	108	219	383	543	1,160	2,090	3,290	6,850
200		49	100	204	356	505	1,080	1,940	3,060	6,380
250		43	89	181	315	448	956	1,720	2,710	5,650
300		39	80	164	286	406	866	1,560	2,460	5,120
350		36	74	150	263	373	797	1,430	2,260	4,710
400		33	69	140	245	347	741	1,330	2,100	4,380
450		31	65	131	230	326	696	1,250	1,970	4,110
500		30	61	124	217	308	657	1,180	1,870	3,880
550		28	58	118	206	292	624	1,120	1,770	3,690
600		27	55	112	196	279	595	1,070	1,690	3,520
650		26	53	108	188	267	570	1,030	1,620	3,370
700		25	51	103	181	256	548	986	1,550	3,240
750		24	49	100	174	247	528	950	1,500	3,120
800		23	47	96	168	239	510	917	1,450	3,010
850		22	46	93	163	231	493	888	1,400	2,920
900		22	44	90	158	224	478	861	1,360	2,830
950		21	43	88	153	217	464	836	1,320	2,740
1,000		20	42	85	149	211	452	813	1,280	2,670
1,100		19	40	81	142	201	429	772	1,220	2,540
1,200		18	38	77	135	192	409	737	1,160	2,420
1,300		18	36	74	129	183	392	705	1,110	2,320
1,400		17	35	71	124	176	376	678	1,070	2,230
1,500		16	34	68	120	170	363	653	1,030	2,140
1,600		16	33	66	116	164	350	630	994	2,070
1,700		15	31	64	112	159	339	610	962	2,000
1,800		15	30	62	108	154	329	592	933	1,940
1,900		14	30	60	105	149	319	575	906	1,890
2,000		14	29	59	102	145	310	559	881	1,830

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(5)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

TUBE SIZE (EHD)														
Flow Designation	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**39**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**													
5	46	63	115	134	225	270	471	546	895	1,037	1,790	2,070	3,660	4,140
10	32	44	82	95	161	192	330	383	639	746	1,260	1,470	2,600	2,930
15	25	35	66	77	132	157	267	310	524	615	1,030	1,200	2,140	2,400
20	22	31	58	67	116	137	231	269	456	536	888	1,050	1,850	2,080
25	19	27	52	60	104	122	206	240	409	482	793	936	1,660	1,860
30	18	25	47	55	96	112	188	218	374	442	723	856	1,520	1,700
40	15	21	41	47	83	97	162	188	325	386	625	742	1,320	1,470
50	13	19	37	42	75	87	144	168	292	347	559	665	1,180	1,320
60	12	17	34	38	68	80	131	153	267	318	509	608	1,080	1,200
70	11	16	31	36	63	74	121	141	248	295	471	563	1,000	1,110
80	10	15	29	33	60	69	113	132	232	277	440	527	940	1,040
90	10	14	28	32	57	65	107	125	219	262	415	498	887	983
100	9	13	26	30	54	62	101	118	208	249	393	472	843	933
150	7	10	20	23	42	48	78	91	171	205	320	387	691	762
200	6	9	18	21	38	44	71	82	148	179	277	336	600	661
250	5	8	16	19	34	39	63	74	133	161	247	301	538	591
300	5	7	15	17	32	36	57	67	95	148	226	275	492	540

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: L = 1.3n, where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings or bends.
2. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
3. Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(6)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

TUBE SIZE (EHD)														
Flow Designation	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**39**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour**													
10	270	353	587	700	1,100	1,370	2,590	2,990	4,510	5,037	9,600	10,700	18,600	21,600
25	166	220	374	444	709	876	1,620	1,870	2,890	3,258	6,040	6,780	11,900	13,700
30	151	200	342	405	650	801	1,480	1,700	2,640	2,987	5,510	6,200	10,900	12,500
40	129	172	297	351	567	696	1,270	1,470	2,300	2,605	4,760	5,380	9,440	10,900
50	115	154	266	314	510	624	1,140	1,310	2,060	2,343	4,260	4,820	8,470	9,720
75	93	124	218	257	420	512	922	1,070	1,690	1,932	3,470	3,950	6,940	7,940
80	89	120	211	249	407	496	892	1,030	1,640	1,874	3,360	3,820	6,730	7,690
100	79	107	189	222	366	445	795	920	1,470	1,685	3,000	3,420	6,030	6,880
150	64	87	155	182	302	364	646	748	1,210	1,389	2,440	2,800	4,940	5,620
200	55	75	135	157	263	317	557	645	1,050	1,212	2,110	2,430	4,290	4,870
250	49	67	121	141	236	284	497	576	941	1,090	1,890	2,180	3,850	4,360
300	44	61	110	129	217	260	453	525	862	999	1,720	1,990	3,520	3,980
400	38	52	96	111	189	225	390	453	749	871	1,490	1,730	3,060	3,450
500	34	46	86	100	170	202	348	404	552	783	1,330	1,550	2,740	3,090

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds 3/4 psi, DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator can vary with flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with the regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: L = 1.3n where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings or bends.
4. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(7)
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	0.60

PIPE SIZE (inches)						
Nominal OD	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
Designation	**SDR 9**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 10**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**
Actual ID	**0.660**	**0.860**	**1.077**	**1.328**	**1.554**	**1.943**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**					
10	201	403	726	1,260	1,900	3,410
20	138	277	499	865	1,310	2,350
30	111	222	401	695	1,050	1,880
40	95	190	343	594	898	1,610
50	84	169	304	527	796	1,430
60	76	153	276	477	721	1,300
70	70	140	254	439	663	1,190
80	65	131	236	409	617	1,110
90	61	123	221	383	579	1,040
100	58	116	209	362	547	983
125	51	103	185	321	485	871
150	46	93	168	291	439	789
175	43	86	154	268	404	726
200	40	80	144	249	376	675
250	35	71	127	221	333	598
300	32	64	115	200	302	542
350	29	59	106	184	278	499
400	27	55	99	171	258	464
450	26	51	93	160	242	435
500	24	48	88	152	229	411

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(8)
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

Gas	Natural
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	0.60

PIPE SIZE (inches)						
Nominal OD	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
Designation	**SDR 9**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 10**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**
Actual ID	**0.660**	**0.860**	**1.077**	**1.328**	**1.554**	**1.943**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**					
10	1,860	3,720	6,710	11,600	17,600	31,600
20	1,280	2,560	4,610	7,990	12,100	21,700
30	1,030	2,050	3,710	6,420	9,690	17,400
40	878	1,760	3,170	5,490	8,300	14,900
50	778	1,560	2,810	4,870	7,350	13,200
60	705	1,410	2,550	4,410	6,660	12,000
70	649	1,300	2,340	4,060	6,130	11,000
80	603	1,210	2,180	3,780	5,700	10,200
90	566	1,130	2,050	3,540	5,350	9,610
100	535	1,070	1,930	3,350	5,050	9,080
125	474	949	1,710	2,970	4,480	8,050
150	429	860	1,550	2,690	4,060	7,290
175	395	791	1,430	2,470	3,730	6,710
200	368	736	1,330	2,300	3,470	6,240
250	326	652	1,180	2,040	3,080	5,530
300	295	591	1,070	1,850	2,790	5,010
350	272	544	981	1,700	2,570	4,610
400	253	506	913	1,580	2,390	4,290
450	237	475	856	1,480	2,240	4,020
500	224	448	809	1,400	2,120	3,800
550	213	426	768	1,330	2,010	3,610
600	203	406	733	1,270	1,920	3,440
650	194	389	702	1,220	1,840	3,300
700	187	374	674	1,170	1,760	3,170
750	180	360	649	1,130	1,700	3,050
800	174	348	627	1,090	1,640	2,950
850	168	336	607	1,050	1,590	2,850
900	163	326	588	1,020	1,540	2,770
950	158	317	572	990	1,500	2,690
1,000	154	308	556	963	1,450	2,610
1,100	146	293	528	915	1,380	2,480
1,200	139	279	504	873	1,320	2,370
1,300	134	267	482	836	1,260	2,270
1,400	128	257	463	803	1,210	2,180
1,500	124	247	446	773	1,170	2,100
1,600	119	239	431	747	1,130	2,030
1,700	115	231	417	723	1,090	1,960
1,800	112	224	404	701	1,060	1,900
1,900	109	218	393	680	1,030	1,850
2,000	106	212	382	662	1,000	1,800

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(9)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**Pipe sizing between first stage (high-pressure regulator) and second stage (low-pressure regulator).**								
	PIPE SIZE (inches)								
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	3,320	6,950	13,100	26,900	40,300	77,600	124,000	219,000	446,000
20	2,280	4,780	9,000	18,500	27,700	53,300	85,000	150,000	306,000
30	1,830	3,840	7,220	14,800	22,200	42,800	68,200	121,000	246,000
40	1,570	3,280	6,180	12,700	19,000	36,600	58,400	103,000	211,000
50	1,390	2,910	5,480	11,300	16,900	32,500	51,700	91,500	187,000
60	1,260	2,640	4,970	10,200	15,300	29,400	46,900	82,900	169,000
70	1,160	2,430	4,570	9,380	14,100	27,100	43,100	76,300	156,000
80	1,080	2,260	4,250	8,730	13,100	25,200	40,100	70,900	145,000
90	1,010	2,120	3,990	8,190	12,300	23,600	37,700	66,600	136,000
100	956	2,000	3,770	7,730	11,600	22,300	35,600	62,900	128,000
125	848	1,770	3,340	6,850	10,300	19,800	31,500	55,700	114,000
150	768	1,610	3,020	6,210	9,300	17,900	28,600	50,500	103,000
175	706	1,480	2,780	5,710	8,560	16,500	26,300	46,500	94,700
200	657	1,370	2,590	5,320	7,960	15,300	24,400	43,200	88,100
250	582	1,220	2,290	4,710	7,060	13,600	21,700	38,300	78,100
300	528	1,100	2,080	4,270	6,400	12,300	19,600	34,700	70,800
350	486	1,020	1,910	3,930	5,880	11,300	18,100	31,900	65,100
400	452	945	1,780	3,650	5,470	10,500	16,800	29,700	60,600
450	424	886	1,670	3,430	5,140	9,890	15,800	27,900	56,800
500	400	837	1,580	3,240	4,850	9,340	14,900	26,300	53,700
550	380	795	1,500	3,070	4,610	8,870	14,100	25,000	51,000
600	363	759	1,430	2,930	4,400	8,460	13,500	23,900	48,600
650	347	726	1,370	2,810	4,210	8,110	12,900	22,800	46,600
700	334	698	1,310	2,700	4,040	7,790	12,400	21,900	44,800
750	321	672	1,270	2,600	3,900	7,500	12,000	21,100	43,100
800	310	649	1,220	2,510	3,760	7,240	11,500	20,400	41,600
850	300	628	1,180	2,430	3,640	7,010	11,200	19,800	40,300
900	291	609	1,150	2,360	3,530	6,800	10,800	19,200	39,100
950	283	592	1,110	2,290	3,430	6,600	10,500	18,600	37,900
1,000	275	575	1,080	2,230	3,330	6,420	10,200	18,100	36,900
1,100	261	546	1,030	2,110	3,170	6,100	9,720	17,200	35,000
1,200	249	521	982	2,020	3,020	5,820	9,270	16,400	33,400
1,300	239	499	940	1,930	2,890	5,570	8,880	15,700	32,000
1,400	229	480	903	1,850	2,780	5,350	8,530	15,100	30,800
1,500	221	462	870	1,790	2,680	5,160	8,220	14,500	29,600
1,600	213	446	840	1,730	2,590	4,980	7,940	14,000	28,600
1,700	206	432	813	1,670	2,500	4,820	7,680	13,600	27,700
1,800	200	419	789	1,620	2,430	4,670	7,450	13,200	26,900
1,900	194	407	766	1,570	2,360	4,540	7,230	12,800	26,100
2,000	189	395	745	1,530	2,290	4,410	7,030	12,400	25,400

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(10)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop	3.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**Pipe sizing between first stage (high-pressure regulator) and second stage (low-pressure regulator).**								
	PIPE SIZE (inches)								
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	5,890	12,300	23,200	47,600	71,300	137,000	219,000	387,000	789,000
20	4,050	8,460	15,900	32,700	49,000	94,400	150,000	266,000	543,000
30	3,250	6,790	12,800	26,300	39,400	75,800	121,000	214,000	436,000
40	2,780	5,810	11,000	22,500	33,700	64,900	103,000	183,000	373,000
50	2,460	5,150	9,710	19,900	29,900	57,500	91,600	162,000	330,000
60	2,230	4,670	8,790	18,100	27,100	52,100	83,000	147,000	299,000
70	2,050	4,300	8,090	16,600	24,900	47,900	76,400	135,000	275,000
80	1,910	4,000	7,530	15,500	23,200	44,600	71,100	126,000	256,000
90	1,790	3,750	7,060	14,500	21,700	41,800	66,700	118,000	240,000
100	1,690	3,540	6,670	13,700	20,500	39,500	63,000	111,000	227,000
125	1,500	3,140	5,910	12,100	18,200	35,000	55,800	98,700	201,000
150	1,360	2,840	5,360	11,000	16,500	31,700	50,600	89,400	182,000
175	1,250	2,620	4,930	10,100	15,200	29,200	46,500	82,300	167,800
200	1,160	2,430	4,580	9,410	14,100	27,200	43,300	76,500	156,100
250	1,030	2,160	4,060	8,340	12,500	24,100	38,400	67,800	138,400
300	935	1,950	3,680	7,560	11,300	21,800	34,800	61,500	125,400
350	860	1,800	3,390	6,950	10,400	20,100	32,000	56,500	115,300
400	800	1,670	3,150	6,470	9,690	18,700	29,800	52,600	107,300
450	751	1,570	2,960	6,070	9,090	17,500	27,900	49,400	100,700
500	709	1,480	2,790	5,730	8,590	16,500	26,400	46,600	95,100
550	673	1,410	2,650	5,450	8,160	15,700	25,000	44,300	90,300
600	642	1,340	2,530	5,200	7,780	15,000	23,900	42,200	86,200
650	615	1,290	2,420	4,980	7,450	14,400	22,900	40,500	82,500
700	591	1,240	2,330	4,780	7,160	13,800	22,000	38,900	79,300
750	569	1,190	2,240	4,600	6,900	13,300	21,200	37,400	76,400
800	550	1,150	2,170	4,450	6,660	12,800	20,500	36,200	73,700
850	532	1,110	2,100	4,300	6,450	12,400	19,800	35,000	71,400
900	516	1,080	2,030	4,170	6,250	12,000	19,200	33,900	69,200
950	501	1,050	1,970	4,050	6,070	11,700	18,600	32,900	67,200
1,000	487	1,020	1,920	3,940	5,900	11,400	18,100	32,000	65,400
1,100	463	968	1,820	3,740	5,610	10,800	17,200	30,400	62,100
1,200	442	923	1,740	3,570	5,350	10,300	16,400	29,000	59,200
1,300	423	884	1,670	3,420	5,120	9,870	15,700	27,800	56,700
1,400	406	849	1,600	3,280	4,920	9,480	15,100	26,700	54,500
1,500	391	818	1,540	3,160	4,740	9,130	14,600	25,700	52,500
1,600	378	790	1,490	3,060	4,580	8,820	14,100	24,800	50,700
1,700	366	765	1,440	2,960	4,430	8,530	13,600	24,000	49,000
1,800	355	741	1,400	2,870	4,300	8,270	13,200	23,300	47,600
1,900	344	720	1,360	2,780	4,170	8,040	12,800	22,600	46,200
2,000	335	700	1,320	2,710	4,060	7,820	12,500	22,000	44,900

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(11)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**Pipe sizing between 2 psig service and line pressure regulator.**								
	PIPE SIZE (inches)								
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	2,680	5,590	10,500	21,600	32,400	62,400	99,500	176,000	359,000
20	1,840	3,850	7,240	14,900	22,300	42,900	68,400	121,000	247,000
30	1,480	3,090	5,820	11,900	17,900	34,500	54,900	97,100	198,000
40	1,260	2,640	4,980	10,200	15,300	29,500	47,000	83,100	170,000
50	1,120	2,340	4,410	9,060	13,600	26,100	41,700	73,700	150,000
60	1,010	2,120	4,000	8,210	12,300	23,700	37,700	66,700	136,000
70	934	1,950	3,680	7,550	11,300	21,800	34,700	61,400	125,000
80	869	1,820	3,420	7,020	10,500	20,300	32,300	57,100	116,000
90	815	1,700	3,210	6,590	9,880	19,000	30,300	53,600	109,000
100	770	1,610	3,030	6,230	9,330	18,000	28,600	50,600	103,000
125	682	1,430	2,690	5,520	8,270	15,900	25,400	44,900	91,500
150	618	1,290	2,440	5,000	7,490	14,400	23,000	40,700	82,900
175	569	1,190	2,240	4,600	6,890	13,300	21,200	37,400	76,300
200	529	1,110	2,080	4,280	6,410	12,300	19,700	34,800	71,000
250	469	981	1,850	3,790	5,680	10,900	17,400	30,800	62,900
300	425	889	1,670	3,440	5,150	9,920	15,800	27,900	57,000
350	391	817	1,540	3,160	4,740	9,120	14,500	25,700	52,400
400	364	760	1,430	2,940	4,410	8,490	13,500	23,900	48,800
450	341	714	1,340	2,760	4,130	7,960	12,700	22,400	45,800
500	322	674	1,270	2,610	3,910	7,520	12,000	21,200	43,200
550	306	640	1,210	2,480	3,710	7,140	11,400	20,100	41,100
600	292	611	1,150	2,360	3,540	6,820	10,900	19,200	39,200
650	280	585	1,100	2,260	3,390	6,530	10,400	18,400	37,500
700	269	562	1,060	2,170	3,260	6,270	9,990	17,700	36,000
750	259	541	1,020	2,090	3,140	6,040	9,630	17,000	34,700
800	250	523	985	2,020	3,030	5,830	9,300	16,400	33,500
850	242	506	953	1,960	2,930	5,640	9,000	15,900	32,400
900	235	490	924	1,900	2,840	5,470	8,720	15,400	31,500
950	228	476	897	1,840	2,760	5,310	8,470	15,000	30,500
1,000	222	463	873	1,790	2,680	5,170	8,240	14,600	29,700
1,100	210	440	829	1,700	2,550	4,910	7,830	13,800	28,200
1,200	201	420	791	1,620	2,430	4,680	7,470	13,200	26,900
1,300	192	402	757	1,550	2,330	4,490	7,150	12,600	25,800
1,400	185	386	727	1,490	2,240	4,310	6,870	12,100	24,800
1,500	178	372	701	1,440	2,160	4,150	6,620	11,700	23,900
1,600	172	359	677	1,390	2,080	4,010	6,390	11,300	23,000
1,700	166	348	655	1,340	2,010	3,880	6,180	10,900	22,300
1,800	161	337	635	1,300	1,950	3,760	6,000	10,600	21,600
1,900	157	327	617	1,270	1,900	3,650	5,820	10,300	21,000
2,000	152	318	600	1,230	1,840	3,550	5,660	10,000	20,400

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(12)
SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**Pipe sizing between single- or second-stage (low pressure) regulator and appliance.**								
	PIPE SIZE (inches)								
Nominal	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**	**2 1/2**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	291	608	1,150	2,350	3,520	6,790	10,800	19,100	39,000
20	200	418	787	1,620	2,420	4,660	7,430	13,100	26,800
30	160	336	632	1,300	1,940	3,750	5,970	10,600	21,500
40	137	287	541	1,110	1,660	3,210	5,110	9,030	18,400
50	122	255	480	985	1,480	2,840	4,530	8,000	16,300
60	110	231	434	892	1,340	2,570	4,100	7,250	14,800
80	101	212	400	821	1,230	2,370	3,770	6,670	13,600
100	94	197	372	763	1,140	2,200	3,510	6,210	12,700
125	89	185	349	716	1,070	2,070	3,290	5,820	11,900
150	84	175	330	677	1,010	1,950	3,110	5,500	11,200
175	74	155	292	600	899	1,730	2,760	4,880	9,950
200	67	140	265	543	814	1,570	2,500	4,420	9,010
250	62	129	243	500	749	1,440	2,300	4,060	8,290
300	58	120	227	465	697	1,340	2,140	3,780	7,710
350	51	107	201	412	618	1,190	1,900	3,350	6,840
400	46	97	182	373	560	1,080	1,720	3,040	6,190
450	42	89	167	344	515	991	1,580	2,790	5,700
500	40	83	156	320	479	922	1,470	2,600	5,300
550	37	78	146	300	449	865	1,380	2,440	4,970
600	35	73	138	283	424	817	1,300	2,300	4,700
650	33	70	131	269	403	776	1,240	2,190	4,460
700	32	66	125	257	385	741	1,180	2,090	4,260
750	30	64	120	246	368	709	1,130	2,000	4,080
800	29	61	115	236	354	681	1,090	1,920	3,920
850	28	59	111	227	341	656	1,050	1,850	3,770
900	27	57	107	220	329	634	1,010	1,790	3,640
950	26	55	104	213	319	613	978	1,730	3,530
1,000	25	53	100	206	309	595	948	1,680	3,420
1,100	25	52	97	200	300	578	921	1,630	3,320
1,200	24	50	95	195	292	562	895	1,580	3,230
1,300	23	48	90	185	277	534	850	1,500	3,070
1,400	22	46	86	176	264	509	811	1,430	2,930
1,500	21	44	82	169	253	487	777	1,370	2,800
1,200	24	50	95	195	292	562	895	1,580	3,230
1,300	23	48	90	185	277	534	850	1,500	3,070
1,400	22	46	86	176	264	509	811	1,430	2,930
1,500	21	44	82	169	253	487	777	1,370	2,800
1,600	20	42	79	162	243	468	746	1,320	2,690
1,700	19	40	76	156	234	451	719	1,270	2,590
1,800	19	39	74	151	226	436	694	1,230	2,500
1,900	18	38	71	146	219	422	672	1,190	2,420
2,000	18	37	69	142	212	409	652	1,150	2,350

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(13)
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE		**Sizing between first stage (high-pressure regulator) and second stage (low-pressure regulator).**								
TUBE SIZE (inches)										
	K & L	**1/4**	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
Nominal	**ACR**	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**7/8**	**1 1/8**	**1 3/8**	—	—
Outside		**0.375**	**0.500**	**0.625**	**0.750**	**0.875**	**1.125**	**1.375**	**1.625**	**2.125**
Inside		**0.305**	**0.402**	**0.527**	**0.652**	**0.745**	**0.995**	**1.245**	**1.481**	**1.959**
Length (ft)		**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10		513	1,060	2,150	3,760	5,330	11,400	20,500	32,300	67,400
20		352	727	1,480	2,580	3,670	7,830	14,100	22,200	46,300
30		283	584	1,190	2,080	2,940	6,290	11,300	17,900	37,200
40		242	500	1,020	1,780	2,520	5,380	9,690	15,300	31,800
50		215	443	901	1,570	2,230	4,770	8,590	13,500	28,200
60		194	401	816	1,430	2,020	4,320	7,780	12,300	25,600
70		179	369	751	1,310	1,860	3,980	7,160	11,300	23,500
80		166	343	699	1,220	1,730	3,700	6,660	10,500	21,900
90		156	322	655	1,150	1,630	3,470	6,250	9,850	20,500
100		147	304	619	1,080	1,540	3,280	5,900	9,310	19,400
125		131	270	549	959	1,360	2,910	5,230	8,250	17,200
150		118	244	497	869	1,230	2,630	4,740	7,470	15,600
175		109	225	457	799	1,130	2,420	4,360	6,880	14,300
200		101	209	426	744	1,060	2,250	4,060	6,400	13,300
250		90	185	377	659	935	2,000	3,600	5,670	11,800
300		81	168	342	597	847	1,810	3,260	5,140	10,700
350		75	155	314	549	779	1,660	3,000	4,730	9,840
400		70	144	292	511	725	1,550	2,790	4,400	9,160
450		65	135	274	480	680	1,450	2,620	4,130	8,590
500		62	127	259	453	643	1,370	2,470	3,900	8,120
550		59	121	246	430	610	1,300	2,350	3,700	7,710
600		56	115	235	410	582	1,240	2,240	3,530	7,350
650		54	111	225	393	558	1,190	2,140	3,380	7,040
700		51	106	216	378	536	1,140	2,060	3,250	6,770
750		50	102	208	364	516	1,100	1,980	3,130	6,520
800		48	99	201	351	498	1,060	1,920	3,020	6,290
850		46	96	195	340	482	1,030	1,850	2,920	6,090
900		45	93	189	330	468	1,000	1,800	2,840	5,910
950		44	90	183	320	454	970	1,750	2,750	5,730
1,000		42	88	178	311	442	944	1,700	2,680	5,580
1,100		40	83	169	296	420	896	1,610	2,540	5,300
1,200		38	79	161	282	400	855	1,540	2,430	5,050
1,300		37	76	155	270	383	819	1,470	2,320	4,840
1,400		35	73	148	260	368	787	1,420	2,230	4,650
1,500		34	70	143	250	355	758	1,360	2,150	4,480
1,600		33	68	138	241	343	732	1,320	2,080	4,330
1,700		32	66	134	234	331	708	1,270	2,010	4,190
1,800		31	64	130	227	321	687	1,240	1,950	4,060
1,900		30	62	126	220	312	667	1,200	1,890	3,940
2,000		29	60	122	214	304	648	1,170	1,840	3,830

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(14)
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE		**Sizing between single- or second-stage (low-pressure regulator) and appliance.**								
TUBE SIZE (inches)										
	K & L	**1/4**	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
Nominal	**ACR**	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**7/8**	**1 1/8**	**1 3/8**	—	—
Outside		**0.375**	**0.500**	**0.625**	**0.750**	**0.875**	**1.125**	**1.375**	**1.625**	**2.125**
Inside		**0.305**	**0.402**	**0.527**	**0.652**	**0.745**	**0.995**	**1.245**	**1.481**	**1.959**
Length (ft)		**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10		45	93	188	329	467	997	1,800	2,830	5,890
20		31	64	129	226	321	685	1,230	1,950	4,050
30		25	51	104	182	258	550	991	1,560	3,250
40		21	44	89	155	220	471	848	1,340	2,780
50		19	39	79	138	195	417	752	1,180	2,470
60		17	35	71	125	177	378	681	1,070	2,240
70		16	32	66	115	163	348	626	988	2,060
80		15	30	61	107	152	324	583	919	1,910
90		14	28	57	100	142	304	547	862	1,800
100		13	27	54	95	134	287	517	814	1,700
125		11	24	48	84	119	254	458	722	1,500
150		10	21	44	76	108	230	415	654	1,360
175		NA	20	40	70	99	212	382	602	1,250
200		NA	18	37	65	92	197	355	560	1,170
250		NA	16	33	58	82	175	315	496	1,030
300		NA	15	30	52	74	158	285	449	936
350		NA	14	28	48	68	146	262	414	861
400		NA	13	26	45	63	136	244	385	801
450		NA	12	24	42	60	127	229	361	752
500		NA	11	23	40	56	120	216	341	710
550		NA	11	22	38	53	114	205	324	674
600		NA	10	21	36	51	109	196	309	643
650		NA	NA	20	34	49	104	188	296	616
700		NA	NA	19	33	47	100	180	284	592
750		NA	NA	18	32	45	96	174	274	570
800		NA	NA	18	31	44	93	168	264	551
850		NA	NA	17	30	42	90	162	256	533
900		NA	NA	17	29	41	87	157	248	517
950		NA	NA	16	28	40	85	153	241	502
1,000		NA	NA	16	27	39	83	149	234	488
1,100		NA	NA	15	26	37	78	141	223	464
1,200		NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	212	442
1,300		NA	NA	14	24	34	72	129	203	423
1,400		NA	NA	13	23	32	69	124	195	407
1,500		NA	NA	13	22	31	66	119	188	392
1,600		NA	NA	12	21	30	64	115	182	378
1,700		NA	NA	12	20	29	62	112	176	366
1,800		NA	NA	11	20	28	60	108	170	355
1,900		NA	NA	11	19	27	58	105	166	345
2,000		NA	NA	11	19	27	57	102	161	335

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. NA means a flow of less than 10,000 Btu/hr.
3. Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(15)
SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE		**Tube sizing between 2 psig service and line pressure regulator.**								
TUBE SIZE (inches)										
	K & L	**1/4**	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
Nominal	**ACR**	**3/8**	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**7/8**	**1 1/8**	**1 3/8**	**—**	**—**
Outside		**0.375**	**0.500**	**0.625**	**0.750**	**0.875**	**1.125**	**1.375**	**1.625**	**2.125**
Inside		**0.305**	**0.402**	**0.527**	**0.652**	**0.745**	**0.995**	**1.245**	**1.481**	**1.959**
Length (ft)		**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10		413	852	1,730	3,030	4,300	9,170	16,500	26,000	54,200
20		284	585	1,190	2,080	2,950	6,310	11,400	17,900	37,300
30		228	470	956	1,670	2,370	5,060	9,120	14,400	29,900
40		195	402	818	1,430	2,030	4,330	7,800	12,300	25,600
50		173	356	725	1,270	1,800	3,840	6,920	10,900	22,700
60		157	323	657	1,150	1,630	3,480	6,270	9,880	20,600
70		144	297	605	1,060	1,500	3,200	5,760	9,090	18,900
80		134	276	562	983	1,390	2,980	5,360	8,450	17,600
90		126	259	528	922	1,310	2,790	5,030	7,930	16,500
100		119	245	498	871	1,240	2,640	4,750	7,490	15,600
125		105	217	442	772	1,100	2,340	4,210	6,640	13,800
150		95	197	400	700	992	2,120	3,820	6,020	12,500
175		88	181	368	644	913	1,950	3,510	5,540	11,500
200		82	168	343	599	849	1,810	3,270	5,150	10,700
250		72	149	304	531	753	1,610	2,900	4,560	9,510
300		66	135	275	481	682	1,460	2,620	4,140	8,610
350		60	124	253	442	628	1,340	2,410	3,800	7,920
400		56	116	235	411	584	1,250	2,250	3,540	7,370
450		53	109	221	386	548	1,170	2,110	3,320	6,920
500		50	103	209	365	517	1,110	1,990	3,140	6,530
550		47	97	198	346	491	1,050	1,890	2,980	6,210
600		45	93	189	330	469	1,000	1,800	2,840	5,920
650		43	89	181	316	449	959	1,730	2,720	5,670
700		41	86	174	304	431	921	1,660	2,620	5,450
750		40	82	168	293	415	888	1,600	2,520	5,250
800		39	80	162	283	401	857	1,540	2,430	5,070
850		37	77	157	274	388	829	1,490	2,350	4,900
900		36	75	152	265	376	804	1,450	2,280	4,750
950		35	72	147	258	366	781	1,410	2,220	4,620
1,000		34	71	143	251	356	760	1,370	2,160	4,490
1,100		32	67	136	238	338	721	1,300	2,050	4,270
1,200		31	64	130	227	322	688	1,240	1,950	4,070
1,300		30	61	124	217	309	659	1,190	1,870	3,900
1,400		28	59	120	209	296	633	1,140	1,800	3,740
1,500		27	57	115	201	286	610	1,100	1,730	3,610
1,600		26	55	111	194	276	589	1,060	1,670	3,480
1,700		26	53	108	188	267	570	1,030	1,620	3,370
1,800		25	51	104	182	259	553	1,000	1,570	3,270
1,900		24	50	101	177	251	537	966	1,520	3,170
2,000		23	48	99	172	244	522	940	1,480	3,090

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note:

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(16)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE: SIZING BETWEEN SINGLE OR SECOND STAGE (Low Pressure) REGULATOR AND THE APPLIANCE SHUTOFF VALVE.

	TUBE SIZE (EHD)													
Flow Designation	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**39**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**													
5	72	99	181	211	355	426	744	863	1,420	1,638	2,830	3,270	5,780	6,550
10	50	69	129	150	254	303	521	605	971	1,179	1,990	2,320	4,110	4,640
15	39	55	104	121	208	248	422	490	775	972	1,620	1,900	3,370	3,790
20	34	49	91	106	183	216	365	425	661	847	1,400	1,650	2,930	3,290
25	30	42	82	94	164	192	325	379	583	762	1,250	1,480	2,630	2,940
30	28	39	74	87	151	177	297	344	528	698	1,140	1,350	2,400	2,680
40	23	33	64	74	131	153	256	297	449	610	988	1,170	2,090	2,330
50	20	30	58	66	118	137	227	265	397	548	884	1,050	1,870	2,080
60	19	26	53	60	107	126	207	241	359	502	805	961	1,710	1,900
70	17	25	49	57	99	117	191	222	330	466	745	890	1,590	1,760
80	15	23	45	52	94	109	178	208	307	438	696	833	1,490	1,650
90	15	22	44	50	90	102	169	197	286	414	656	787	1,400	1,550
100	14	20	41	47	85	98	159	186	270	393	621	746	1,330	1,480
150	11	15	31	36	66	75	123	143	217	324	506	611	1,090	1,210
200	9	14	28	33	60	69	112	129	183	283	438	531	948	1,050
250	8	12	25	30	53	61	99	117	163	254	390	476	850	934
300	8	11	23	26	50	57	90	107	147	234	357	434	777	854

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings or bends.
2. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
3. Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(17)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE: SIZING BETWEEN 2 PSI SERVICE AND THE LINE PRESSURE REGULATOR.														
TUBE SIZE (EHD)														
Flow Designation	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**39**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**													
10	426	558	927	1,110	1,740	2,170	4,100	4,720	7,130	7,958	15,200	16,800	29,400	34,200
25	262	347	591	701	1,120	1,380	2,560	2,950	4,560	5,147	9,550	10,700	18,800	21,700
30	238	316	540	640	1,030	1,270	2,330	2,690	4,180	4,719	8,710	9,790	17,200	19,800
40	203	271	469	554	896	1,100	2,010	2,320	3,630	4,116	7,530	8,500	14,900	17,200
50	181	243	420	496	806	986	1,790	2,070	3,260	3,702	6,730	7,610	13,400	15,400
75	147	196	344	406	663	809	1,460	1,690	2,680	3,053	5,480	6,230	11,000	12,600
80	140	189	333	393	643	768	1,410	1,630	2,590	2,961	5,300	6,040	10,600	12,200
100	124	169	298	350	578	703	1,260	1,450	2,330	2,662	4,740	5,410	9,530	10,900
150	101	137	245	287	477	575	1,020	1,180	1,910	2,195	3,860	4,430	7,810	8,890
200	86	118	213	248	415	501	880	1,020	1,660	1,915	3,340	3,840	6,780	7,710
250	77	105	191	222	373	448	785	910	1,490	1,722	2,980	3,440	6,080	6,900
300	69	96	173	203	343	411	716	829	1,360	1,578	2,720	3,150	5,560	6,300
400	60	82	151	175	298	355	616	716	1,160	1,376	2,350	2,730	4,830	5,460
500	53	72	135	158	268	319	550	638	1,030	1,237	2,100	2,450	4,330	4,880

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds 1/2 psi (based on 13 in. w.c. outlet pressure), DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator can vary with flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with the regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings or bends.
4. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(18)
CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	5.0 psi
Pressure Drop	3.5 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

TUBE SIZE (EHD)														
Flow Designation	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**39**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**													
10	826	1,070	1,710	2,060	3,150	4,000	7,830	8,950	13,100	14,441	28,600	31,200	54,400	63,800
25	509	664	1,090	1,310	2,040	2,550	4,860	5,600	8,400	9,339	18,000	19,900	34,700	40,400
30	461	603	999	1,190	1,870	2,340	4,430	5,100	7,680	8,564	16,400	18,200	31,700	36,900
40	396	520	867	1,030	1,630	2,030	3,820	4,400	6,680	7,469	14,200	15,800	27,600	32,000
50	352	463	777	926	1,460	1,820	3,410	3,930	5,990	6,717	12,700	14,100	24,700	28,600
75	284	376	637	757	1,210	1,490	2,770	3,190	4,920	5,539	10,300	11,600	20,300	23,400
80	275	363	618	731	1,170	1,450	2,680	3,090	4,770	5,372	9,990	11,200	19,600	22,700
100	243	324	553	656	1,050	1,300	2,390	2,760	4,280	4,830	8,930	10,000	17,600	20,300
150	196	262	453	535	866	1,060	1,940	2,240	3,510	3,983	7,270	8,210	14,400	16,600
200	169	226	393	464	755	923	1,680	1,930	3,050	3,474	6,290	7,130	12,500	14,400
250	150	202	352	415	679	828	1,490	1,730	2,740	3,124	5,620	6,390	11,200	12,900
300	136	183	322	379	622	757	1,360	1,570	2,510	2,865	5,120	5,840	10,300	11,700
400	117	158	279	328	542	657	1,170	1,360	2,180	2,498	4,430	5,070	8,920	10,200
500	104	140	251	294	488	589	1,050	1,210	1,950	2,247	3,960	4,540	8,000	9,110

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Notes:

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds1 psi, DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drop across regulator can vary with the flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity of selected regulator. Consult with the tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where L is additional length (feet) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings or bends.
4. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(19)
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**PE pipe sizing between integral 2-stage regulator at tank or second stage (low-pressure regulator) and**					
	PIPE SIZE (inches)					
Nominal OD	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
Designation	**SDR 9**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 10**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**
Actual ID	**0.660**	**0.860**	**1.077**	**1.328**	**1.554**	**1.943**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**					
10	340	680	1,230	2,130	3,210	5,770
20	233	468	844	1,460	2,210	3,970
30	187	375	677	1,170	1,770	3,180
40	160	321	580	1,000	1,520	2,730
50	142	285	514	890	1,340	2,420
60	129	258	466	807	1,220	2,190
70	119	237	428	742	1,120	2,010
80	110	221	398	690	1,040	1,870
90	103	207	374	648	978	1,760
100	98	196	353	612	924	1,660
125	87	173	313	542	819	1,470
150	78	157	284	491	742	1,330
175	72	145	261	452	683	1,230
200	67	135	243	420	635	1,140
250	60	119	215	373	563	1,010
300	54	108	195	338	510	916
350	50	99	179	311	469	843
400	46	92	167	289	436	784
450	43	87	157	271	409	736
500	41	82	148	256	387	695

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(20)
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE	**PE pipe sizing between 2 psig service regulator and line pressure regulator.**					
	PIPE SIZE (inches)					
Nominal OD	**1/2**	**3/4**	**1**	**1 1/4**	**1 1/2**	**2**
Designation	**SDR 9**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 10**	**SDR 11**	**SDR 11**
Actual ID	**0.660**	**0.860**	**1.077**	**1.328**	**1.554**	**1.943**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**					
10	3,130	6,260	11,300	19,600	29,500	53,100
20	2,150	4,300	7,760	13,400	20,300	36,500
30	1,730	3,450	6,230	10,800	16,300	29,300
40	1,480	2,960	5,330	9,240	14,000	25,100
50	1,310	2,620	4,730	8,190	12,400	22,200
60	1,190	2,370	4,280	7,420	11,200	20,100
70	1,090	2,180	3,940	6,830	10,300	18,500
80	1,010	2,030	3,670	6,350	9,590	17,200
90	952	1,910	3,440	5,960	9,000	16,200
100	899	1,800	3,250	5,630	8,500	15,300
125	797	1,600	2,880	4,990	7,530	13,500
150	722	1,450	2,610	4,520	6,830	12,300
175	664	1,330	2,400	4,160	6,280	11,300
200	618	1,240	2,230	3,870	5,840	10,500
250	548	1,100	1,980	3,430	5,180	9,300
300	496	994	1,790	3,110	4,690	8,430
350	457	914	1,650	2,860	4,320	7,760
400	425	851	1,530	2,660	4,020	7,220
450	399	798	1,440	2,500	3,770	6,770
500	377	754	1,360	2,360	3,560	6,390
550	358	716	1,290	2,240	3,380	6,070
600	341	683	1,230	2,140	3,220	5,790
650	327	654	1,180	2,040	3,090	5,550
700	314	628	1,130	1,960	2,970	5,330
750	302	605	1,090	1,890	2,860	5,140
800	292	585	1,050	1,830	2,760	4,960
850	283	566	1,020	1,770	2,670	4,800
900	274	549	990	1,710	2,590	4,650
950	266	533	961	1,670	2,520	4,520

1,000	259	518	935	1,620	2,450	4,400
1,100	246	492	888	1,540	2,320	4,170
1,200	234	470	847	1,470	2,220	3,980
1,300	225	450	811	1,410	2,120	3,810
1,400	216	432	779	1,350	2,040	3,660
1,500	208	416	751	1,300	1,960	3,530
1,600	201	402	725	1,260	1,900	3,410
1,700	194	389	702	1,220	1,840	3,300
1,800	188	377	680	1,180	1,780	3,200
1,900	183	366	661	1,140	1,730	3,110
2,000	178	356	643	1,110	1,680	3,020

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m^3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

TABLE 2413.4(21)
POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC TUBING

Gas	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity	1.50

INTENDED USE: PE PIPE SIZING BETWEEN INTEGRAL 2-STAGE REGULATOR AT TANK OR SECOND STAGE (low-		
Plastic Tubing Size (CTS) (inch)		
Nominal OD	**1/2**	**1**
Designation	**SDR 7**	**SDR 11**
Actual ID	**0.445**	**0.927**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**	
10	121	828
20	83	569
30	67	457
40	57	391
50	51	347
60	46	314
70	42	289
80	39	269
90	37	252
100	35	238
125	31	211
150	28	191
175	26	176
200	24	164
225	22	154
250	21	145
275	20	138
300	19	132
350	18	121
400	16	113
450	15	106
500	15	100

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 m3/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

SECTION 2414
PIPING MATERIALS

2414.1 General. Materials used for piping systems shall comply with the requirements of this chapter or shall be approved.

2414.2 Used materials. Pipe, fittings, valves or other materials shall not be used again unless they are free from foreign materials and have been ascertained to be adequate for the service intended.

2414.3 Other materials. Material not covered by the standards specifications listed herein shall be investigated and tested to determine that it is safe and suitable for the proposed service, and, in addition, shall be recommended for that service by the manufacturer and shall be approved by the *building* official.

2414.4 Metallic pipe. Metallic pipe shall comply with Sections 2414.4.1 and 2414.4.2.

2414.4.1 Cast iron. Cast-iron pipe shall not be used.

2414.4.2 Steel. Steel, stainless steel and wrought-iron pipe shall not be lighter than Schedule 10 and shall comply with the dimensional standards of ASME B36.10, 10M and one of the following standards:

1. ASTM A53/A53M.
2. ASTM A106.
3. ASTM A312.

2414.5 Metallic tubing. Tubing shall not be used with gases corrosive to the tubing material.

2414.5.1 Steel tubing. Steel tubing shall comply with ASTM A254.

2414.5.2 Stainless steel. Stainless steel tubing shall comply with ASTM A268 or ASTM A269.

2414.5.3 Copper or copper-alloy tubing. Copper tubing shall comply with Standard Type K or L of ASTM B88 or ASTM B280.

Copper and copper-alloy tubing shall not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 grains of hydro- gen sulfide per 100 standard cubic feet of gas (0.7 milligrams per 100 liters).

2414.5.4 Corrugated stainless steel tubing. Corrugated stainless steel tubing shall be listed in accordance with ANSI LC1/CSA 6.26.

2414.6 Plastic pipe, tubing and fittings. Polyethylene plastic pipe, tubing and fittings used to supply fuel gas shall conform to ASTM D2513. Such pipe shall be marked "Gas" and "ASTM D2513."

Polyamide pipe, tubing and fittings shall be identified and conform to ASTM F2945. Such pipe shall be marked "Gas" and "ASTM F2945."

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) and chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe, tubing and fittings shall not be used to supply fuel gas.

2414.6.1 Anodeless risers. Plastic pipe, tubing and anodeless risers shall comply with the following:

1. Factory-assembled anodeless risers shall be recommended by the manufacturer for the gas used and shall be leak tested by the manufacturer in accordance with written procedures.
2. Service head adapters and field-assembled anodeless risers incorporating service head adapters shall be recommended by the manufacturer for the gas used, and shall be designed and certified to meet the requirements of Category I of ASTM D2513, and U.S. Department of Transportation, Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192.281(e). The manufacturer shall provide the user with qualified installation instructions as prescribed by the U.S. Department of Transportation, Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192.283(b).

2414.6.2 LP-gas systems. The use of plastic pipe, tubing and fittings in undiluted liquefied petroleum gas piping systems shall be in accordance with NFPA 58.

2414.6.3 Regulator vent piping. Plastic pipe and fittings used to connect regulator vents to remote vent terminations shall be of PVC conforming to ANSI/UL 651. PVC vent piping shall not be installed indoors.

2414.7 Workmanship and defects. Pipe, tubing and fittings shall be clear and free from cutting burrs and defects in structure or threading, and shall be thoroughly brushed, and chip and scale blown.

Defects in pipe, tubing and fittings shall not be repaired. Defective pipe, tubing and fittings shall be replaced. (See Section 2417.1.2.)

2414.8 Protective coating. Where in contact with material or atmosphere exerting

a corrosive action, metallic piping and fittings coated with a corrosion-resistant material shall be used. External or internal coatings or linings used on piping or components shall not be considered as adding strength.

2414.9 Metallic pipe threads. Metallic pipe and fitting threads shall be taper pipe threads and shall comply with ASME B 1.20.1.

2414.9.1 Damaged threads. Pipe with threads that are stripped, chipped, corroded or otherwise damaged shall not be used. Where a weld opens during the operation of cutting or threading, that portion of the pipe shall not be used.

2414.9.2 Number of threads. Field threading of metallic pipe shall be in accordance with Table 2414.9.2.

TABLE 2414.9.2
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THREADING METALLIC PIPE

IRON PIPE SIZE (inches)	APPROXIMATE LENGTH OF THREADED PORTION (inches)	APPROXIMATE NO. OF THREADS TO BE CUT
1/2	3/4	10
3/4	3/4	10
1	7/8	10
1 1/4	1	11
1 1/2	1	11

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

2414.9.3 Thread joint compounds. Thread joint compounds shall be resistant to the action of liquefied petroleum gas or to any other chemical constituents of the gases to be conducted through the piping.

2414.10 Metallic piping joints and fittings. The type of piping joint used shall be suitable for the pressure- temperature conditions and shall be selected giving consideration to joint tightness and mechanical strength under the service conditions. The joint shall be able to sustain the maximum end force caused by the internal pressure and any additional forces caused by temperature expansion or contraction, vibration, fatigue, or to the weight of the pipe and its contents.

2414.10.1 Pipe joints. Schedule 40 and heavier pipe joints shall be threaded, flanged, brazed, welded or assembled with press-connect fittings listed in accordance with ANSI LC4/CSA 6.32. Pipe lighter than Schedule 40 shall be connected using press-connect fittings, flanges, brazing or welding. Where

nonferrous pipe is brazed, the brazing materials shall have a melting point in excess of 1,000ºF (538ºC). Brazing alloys shall not contain more than 0.05-percent phosphorus.

2414.10.2 Copper tubing joints. Copper tubing joints shall be assembled with approved gas tubing fittings, shall be brazed with a material having a melting point in excess of 1,000ºF (538ºC) or assembled with press-connect fittings listed in accordance with ANSI LC4/CSA 6.32. Brazing alloys shall not contain more than 0.05-percent phosphorus.

2414.10.3 Stainless steel tubing joints. Stainless steel tubing joints shall be welded, assembled with approved tubing fittings, brazed with a material having a melting point in excess of 1,000°F (538°C), or assembled with press-connect fittings listed in accordance with ANSI LC4/CSA 6.32.

2414.10.4 Flared joints. Flared joints shall be used only in systems constructed from nonferrous pipe and tubing where experience or tests have demonstrated that the joint is suitable for the conditions and where provisions are made in the design to prevent separation of the joints.

2414.10.5 Metallic fittings. Metallic fittings shall comply with the following:

1. Fittings used with steel, stainless steel or wrought- iron pipe shall be steel, stainless steel, copper alloy, malleable iron or cast iron.
2. Fittings used with copper or copper alloy pipe shall be copper or copper alloy.
3. Cast-iron bushings shall be prohibited.
4. Special fittings. Fittings such as couplings, proprietary-type joints, saddle tees, gland-type compression fittings, and flared, flareless and compression- type tubing fittings shall be: used within the fitting manufacturer's pressure-temperature recommendations; used within the service conditions anticipated with respect to vibration, fatigue, thermal expansion and contraction; and shall be approved.
5. Where pipe fittings are drilled and tapped in the field, the operation shall be in accordance with all of the following:
    5.1. The operation shall be performed on systems having operating pressures of 5 psi (34.5 kPa) or less.
    5.2. The operation shall be performed by the gas supplier or the gas supplier's designated representative.
    5.3. The drilling and tapping operation shall be performed in accordance with written procedures prepared by the gas supplier.
    5.4. The fittings shall be located outdoors.

5.5. The tapped fitting assembly shall be inspected and proven to be free of leakage.

2414.11 Plastic piping, joints and fittings. Plastic pipe, tubing and fittings shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. Such joints shall comply with the following:

1. The joints shall be designed and installed so that the longitudinal pull-out resistance of the joint will be greater than or equal to the tensile strength of the plastic piping material.
2. Heat-fusion joints shall be made in accordance with qualified procedures that have been established and proven by test to produce gas-tight joints as strong as or stronger than the pipe or tubing being joined. Joints shall be made with the joining method recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Heat fusion fittings shall be marked "ASTM D2513."
3. Where compression-type mechanical joints are used, the gasket material in the fitting shall be compatible with the plastic piping and with the gas distributed by the system. An internal tubular rigid stiffener shall be used in conjunction with the fitting. The stiffener shall be flush with the end of the pipe or tubing and shall extend to or beyond the outside end of the compression fitting when installed. The stiffener shall be free of rough or sharp edges and shall not be a force-fit in the plastic. Split tubular stiffeners shall not be used.
4. Plastic piping joints and fittings for use in liquefied petroleum gas piping systems shall be in accordance with NFPA 58.

SECTION 2415
PIPING SYSTEM INSTALLATION

2415.1 Installation of materials. Materials used shall be installed in strict accordance with the standards under which the materials are accepted and approved. In the absence of such installation procedures, the manufacturer's instructions shall be followed. Where the requirements of referenced standards or manufacturer's instructions do not conform to minimum provisions of this code, the provisions of this code shall apply.

2415.2 CSST. CSST piping systems shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their approval, the conditions of listing, the manufacturer's instructions and this code.

2415.3 Prohibited locations. Piping shall not be installed in or through a ducted supply, return or exhaust, or a clothes chute, chimney or gas vent, dumbwaiter or

elevator shaft. Piping installed downstream of the point of delivery shall not extend through any *dwelling* unit other than the unit served by such piping.

2415.4 Piping in solid partitions and walls. Concealed piping shall not be located in solid partitions and solid walls, unless installed in a chase or casing.

2415.5 Fittings in concealed locations. Fittings installed in concealed locations shall be limited to the following types:

1. Threaded elbows, tees and couplings.
2. Brazed fittings.
3. Welded fittings.
4. Fittings listed to ANSI LC1/CSA 6.26 or ANSI LC4/ CSA 6.32.

2415.6 Underground penetrations prohibited. Gas piping shall not penetrate building foundation walls at any point below grade. Gas piping shall enter and exit a building at a point above grade and the annular space between the pipe and the wall shall be sealed.

2415.7 Protection against physical damage. Where piping will be concealed within light-frame construction assemblies, the piping shall be protected against penetration by fasteners in accordance with Sections 2415.7.1 through 2415.7.3.

Exception: Black steel piping and galvanized steel piping shall not be required to be protected.

2415.7.1 Piping through bored holes or notches. Where piping is installed through holes or notches in framing members and the piping is located less than $1^1/_2$ -inches (38 mm) from the framing member face to which wall, ceiling or floor membranes will be attached, the pipe shall be protected by shield plates that cover the width of the pipe and the framing member and that extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) to each side of the framing member. Where the framing member that the piping passes through is a bottom plate, bottom track, top plate or top track, the shield plates shall cover the framing member and extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the bottom framing member and not less than 4 inches (102 mm) below the top framing member.

2415.7.2 Piping installed in other locations. Where the piping is located within a framing member and is less than $1^1/_2$ -inches (38 mm) from the framing member face to which wall, ceiling or floor membranes will be attached, the piping shall be protected by shield plates that cover the width and length of the piping. Where the piping is located outside of a framing member and is located less than $1^1/_2$ -inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the face of the framing

member to which the membrane will be attached, the piping shall be protected by shield plates that cover the width and length of the piping.

2415.7.3 Shield plates. Shield plates shall be of steel material having a thickness of not less than 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage).

2415.8 Piping in solid floors. Piping in solid floors shall be laid in channels in the floor and covered in a manner that will allow access to the piping with a minimum amount of damage to the building. Where such piping is subject to exposure to excessive moisture or corrosive substances, the piping shall be protected in an approved manner. As an alternative to installation in channels, the piping shall be installed in a conduit of Schedule 40 steel, wrought iron, PVC or ABS pipe in accordance with Section 2415.8.1 or 2415.8.2.

2415.8.1 Conduit with one end terminating outdoors. The conduit shall extend into an occupiable portion of the building and, at the point where the conduit terminates in the building, the space between the conduit and the gas piping shall be sealed to prevent the possible entrance of any gas leakage. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the pipe emerges from the floor. If the end sealing is capable of withstanding the full pressure of the gas pipe, the conduit shall be designed for the same pressure as the pipe. Such conduit shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) outside the building, shall be vented above grade to the outdoors and shall be installed so as to prevent the entrance of water and insects.

2415.8.2 Conduit with both ends terminating indoors. Where the conduit originates and terminates within the same building, the conduit shall originate and terminate in an accessible portion of the building and shall not be sealed. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the pipe emerges from the floor.

2415.9 Above-ground piping outdoors. Piping installed outdoors shall be elevated not less than $3^1/_2$ -inches (89 mm) above ground and where installed across roof surfaces, shall be elevated not less than $3^1/_2$ -inches (89 mm) above roof surface. Piping installed above ground, outdoors, and installed across the surface of roofs shall be securely supported and located where it will be protected from physical damage. Where passing through an outside wall, the piping shall be protected against corrosion by coating or wrapping with an inert material. Where piping is encased in a protective pipe sleeve, the annular space between the piping and the sleeve shall be sealed.

2415.10 Isolation. Metallic piping and metallic tubing that conveys fuel gas from an LP-gas storage container shall be provided with an approved dielectric fitting to electrically isolate the underground portion of the pipe or tube from the above-ground portion that enters a building. Such dielectric fitting shall be installed above ground, outdoors.

2415.11 Protection against corrosion. Steel pipe or tubing exposed to corrosive action, such as soil condition or moisture, shall be protected in accordance with Sections 2415.11.1 through 2415.11.5.

2415.11.1 Galvanizing. Zinc coating shall not be deemed adequate protection for underground gas piping.

2415.11.2 Protection methods. Underground piping shall comply with one or more of the following:

1. The piping shall be made of corrosion-resistant material that is suitable for the environment in which it will be installed.
2. Pipe shall have a factory-applied, electrically-insulating coating. Fittings and joints between sections of coated pipe shall be coated in accordance with the coating manufacturer's instructions.
3. The piping shall have a cathodic protection system installed and the system shall be monitored and maintained in accordance with an approved program.

2415.11.3 Dissimilar metals. Where dissimilar metals are joined underground, an insulating coupling or fitting shall be used.

2415.11.4 Protection of risers. Steel risers connected to plastic piping shall be cathodically protected by means of a welded anode, except where such risers are anodeless risers.

2415.11.5 Prohibited use. Uncoated threaded or socket-welded joints shall not be used in piping in contact with soil or where internal or external crevice corrosion is known to occur.

2415.12 Minimum burial depth. Underground piping systems shall be installed a minimum depth of 12 inches (305 mm) below grade, except as provided for in Section 2415.12.1.

2415.12.1 Individual outdoor appliances. Individual lines to outdoor lights, grills and other appliances shall be installed not less than 8 inches (203 mm)

below finished grade, provided that such installation is approved and is installed in locations not susceptible to physical damage.

2415.13 Trenches. The trench shall be graded so that the pipe has a firm, substantially continuous bearing on the bottom of the trench.

2415.14 Piping underground beneath buildings. Piping installed underground beneath buildings is prohibited except where the piping is encased in a conduit of wrought iron, plastic pipe, steel pipe, a piping or encasement system listed for installation beneath buildings, or other approved conduit material designed to withstand the superimposed loads. The conduit shall be protected from corrosion in accordance with Section 2415.11 and shall be installed in accordance with Section 2415.14.1 or 2415.14.2.

2415.14.1 Conduit with one end terminating outdoors. The conduit shall extend into an occupiable portion of the building and, at the point where the conduit terminates in the building, the space between the conduit and the gas piping shall be sealed to prevent the possible entrance of any gas leakage. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the pipe emerges from the floor. Where the end sealing is capable of withstanding the full pressure of the gas pipe, the conduit shall be designed for the same pressure as the pipe. Such conduit shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) outside the building, shall be vented above grade to the outdoors and shall be installed so as to prevent the entrance of water and insects.

2415.14.2 Conduit with both ends terminating indoors. Where the conduit originates and terminates within the same building, the conduit shall originate and terminate in an accessible portion of the building and shall not be sealed. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the pipe emerges from the floor.

2415.15 Outlet closures. Gas outlets that do not connect to appliances shall be capped gas tight.

Exception: Listed and labeled flush-mounted-type quick-disconnect devices and listed and labeled gas convenience outlets shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2415.16 Location of outlets. The unthreaded portion of piping outlets shall extend not less than 1 inch (25 mm) through finished ceilings and walls and where extending through floors or outdoor patios and slabs, shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above them. The outlet fitting or piping shall be securely supported.

Outlets shall not be placed behind doors. Outlets shall be located in the room or space where the appliance is installed.

Exception: Listed and labeled flush-mounted-type quick-disconnect devices and listed and labeled gas convenience outlets shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2415.17 Plastic pipe. The installation of plastic pipe shall comply with Sections 2415.17.1 through 2415.17.3.

2415.17.1 Limitations. Plastic pipe shall be installed outdoors underground only. Plastic pipe shall not be used within or under any building or slab or be operated at pressures greater than 100 psig (689 kPa) for natural gas or 30 psig (207 kPa) for LP-gas.

Exceptions:

1. Plastic pipe shall be permitted to terminate above ground outside of buildings where installed in premanufactured anodeless risers or service head adapter risers that are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Plastic pipe shall be permitted to terminate with a wall head adapter within buildings where the plastic pipe is inserted in a piping material for fuel gas use in buildings.
3. Plastic pipe shall be permitted under outdoor patio, walkway and driveway slabs provided that the burial depth complies with Section 2415.12.

2415.17.2 Connections. Connections made outdoors and underground between metallic and plastic piping shall be made only with transition fittings conforming to ASTM D2513 Category I or ASTM F1973.

2415.17.3 Tracer. A yellow-insulated copper tracer wire or other approved conductor, or a product specifically designed for that purpose, shall be installed adjacent to underground nonmetallic piping. Access shall be provided to the tracer wire or the tracer wire shall terminate above ground at each end of the nonmetallic piping. The tracer wire size shall be not less than 18 AWG and the insulation type shall be suitable for direct burial.

2415.18 Pipe cleaning. The use of a flammable or combustible gas to clean or remove debris from a piping system shall be prohibited.

2415.19 Prohibited devices. A device shall not be placed inside the piping or fittings that will reduce the cross- sectional area or otherwise obstruct the free flow

of gas.

Exceptions:

1. Approved gas filters.
2. An approved fitting or device where the gas piping system has been sized to accommodate the pressure drop of the fitting or device.

2415.20 Testing of piping. Before any system of piping is put in service or concealed, it shall be tested to ensure that it is gas tight. Testing, inspection and purging of piping systems shall comply with Section 2417.

SECTION 2416
PIPING BENDS AND CHANGES IN DIRECTION

2416.1 General. Changes in direction of pipe shall be permitted to be made by the use of fittings, factory bends or field bends.

2416.2 Metallic pipe. Metallic pipe bends shall comply with the following:

1. Bends shall be made only with bending tools and procedures intended for that purpose.
2. Bends shall be smooth and free from buckling, cracks or other evidence of mechanical damage.
3. The longitudinal weld of the pipe shall be near the neutral axis of the bend.
4. Pipe shall not be bent through an arc of more than 90 degrees (1.6 rad).The inside radius of a bend shall be not less than six times the outside diameter of the pipe.

2416.3 Plastic pipe. Plastic pipe bends shall comply with the following:

1. The pipe shall not be damaged and the internal diameter of the pipe shall not be effectively reduced.
2. Joints shall not be located in pipe bends.
3. The radius of the inner curve of such bends shall be not less than 25 times the inside diameter of the pipe.
4. Where the piping manufacturer specifies the use of special bending tools or procedures, such tools or procedures shall be used.

SECTION 2417
INSPECTION, TESTING AND PURGING

2417.1 General. Prior to acceptance and initial operation, all piping installations shall be visually inspected and pressure tested to determine that the materials, design, fabrication and installation practices comply with the requirements of this

code.

2417.1.1 Inspections. Inspection shall consist of visual examination, during or after manufacture, fabrication, assembly or pressure tests.

2417.1.2 Repairs and additions. In the event repairs or additions are made after the pressure test, the affected piping shall be tested.

Minor repairs and additions are not required to be pressure tested provided that the work is inspected and connections are tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting fluid or other approved leak-detecting methods.

2417.1.3 New branches. Where new branches are installed to new appliances, only the newly installed branches shall be required to be pressure tested. Connections between the new piping and the existing piping shall be tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting fluid or other approved leak-detecting methods.

2417.1.4 Section testing. A piping system shall be permitted to be tested as a complete unit or in sections. A valve in a line shall not be used as a bulkhead between gas in one section of the piping system and test medium in an adjacent section, except where a double block and bleed valve system is installed. A valve shall not be subjected to the test pressure unless it can be deter- mined that the valve, including the valve-closing mechanism, is designed to safely withstand the test pressure.

2417.1.5 Regulators and valve assemblies. Regulator and valve assemblies fabricated independently of the piping system in which they are to be installed shall be permitted to be tested with inert gas or air at the time of fabrication.

2417.1.6 Pipe clearing. Prior to testing, the interior of the pipe shall be cleared of all foreign material.

2417.2 Test medium. The test medium shall be air, nitrogen, carbon dioxide or an inert gas. Oxygen shall not be used as a test medium.

2417.3 Test preparation. Pipe joints, including welds, shall be left exposed for examination during the test.

Exception: Covered or concealed pipe end joints that have been previously tested in accordance with this code.

2417.3.1 Expansion joints. Expansion joints shall be provided with temporary restraints, if required, for the additional thrust load under test.

2417.3.2 Appliance and equipment isolation. Appliances and equipment that are not to be included in the test shall be either disconnected from the piping or isolated by blanks, blind flanges or caps.

2417.3.3 Appliance and equipment disconnection. Where the piping system is connected to appliances or equipment designed for operating pressures of less than the test pressure, such appliances or equipment shall be isolated from the piping system by disconnecting them and capping the outlet(s).

2417.3.4 Valve isolation. Where the piping system is connected to appliances or equipment designed for operating pressures equal to or greater than the test pressure, such appliances or equipment shall be isolated from the piping system by closing the individual appliance or equipment shutoff valve(s).

2417.3.5 Testing precautions. Testing of piping systems shall be performed in a manner that protects the safety of employees and the public during the test.

2417.4 Test pressure measurement. Test pressure shall be measured with a manometer or with a pressure-measuring device designed and calibrated to read, record, or indicate a pressure loss caused by leakage during the pressure test period. The source of pressure shall be isolated before the pressure tests are made. Mechanical gauges used to measure test pressures shall have a range such that the highest end of the scale is not greater than five times the test pressure.

2417.4.1 Test pressure. The test pressure to be used shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ -times the proposed maximum working pressure, but not less than 3 psig (20 kPa gauge), irrespective of design pressure. Where the test pressure exceeds 125 psig (862 kPa gauge), the test pressure shall not exceed a value that produces a hoop stress in the piping greater than 50 percent of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

2417.4.2 Test duration. The test duration shall be not less than 10 minutes.

2417.5 Detection of leaks and defects. The piping system shall withstand the test pressure specified without showing any evidence of leakage or other defects. Any reduction of test pressures as indicated by pressure gauges shall be deemed to indicate the presence of a leak unless such reduction can be readily attributed to some other cause.

2417.5.1 Detection methods. The leakage shall be located by means of an

approved gas detector, a noncorrosive leak detection fluid or other approved leak detection methods.

2417.5.2 Corrections. Where leakage or other defects are located, the affected portion of the piping system shall be repaired or replaced and retested.

2417.6 Piping system and equipment leakage check. Leakage checking of systems and equipment shall be in accordance with Sections 2417.6.1 through 2417.6.4.

2417.6.1 Test gases. Leak checks using fuel gas shall be permitted in piping systems that have been pressure tested in accordance with Section 2417.

2417.6.2 Before turning gas on. During the process of turning gas on into a system of new gas piping, the entire system shall be inspected to determine that there are no open fittings or ends and that all valves at unused outlets are closed and plugged or capped.

2417.6.3 Leak check. Immediately after the gas is turned on into a new system or into a system that has been initially restored after an interruption of service, the piping system shall be checked for leakage. Where leakage is indicated, the gas supply shall be shut off until the necessary repairs have been made.

2417.6.4 Placing appliances and equipment in operation. Appliances and equipment shall not be placed in operation until after the piping system has been checked for leakage in accordance with Section 2417.6.3, the piping system has been purged in accordance with Section 2417.7 and the connections to the appliances have been checked for leakage.

2417.7 Purging. The purging of piping shall be in accordance with Sections 2417.7.1 through 2417.7.3.

2417.7.1 Piping systems required to be purged outdoors. The purging of piping systems shall be in accordance with the provisions of Sections 2417.7.1.1 through 2417.7.1.4 where the piping system meets either of the following:

1. The design operating gas pressure is greater than 2psig (13.79 kPa).
2. The piping being purged contains one or more sections of pipe or tubing meeting the size and length criteria of Table 2417.7.1.1.

2417.7.1.1 Removal from service. Where existing gas piping is opened,

the section that is opened shall be isolated from the gas supply and the line pressure vented in accordance with Section 2417.7.1.3. Where gas piping meeting the criteria of Table 2417.7.1.1 is removed from service, the residual fuel gas in the piping shall be displaced with an inert gas.

TABLE 2417.7.1.1
SIZE AND LENGTH OF PIPING

NOMINAL PIPE SIZE (inches)a	LENGTH OF PIPING (feet)
≥ 2½ < 3	> 50
≥ 3 < 4	> 30
≥ 4 < 6	> 15
≥ 6 < 8	> 10
≥ 8	Any length

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. CSST EHD size of 62 is equivalent to nominal 2-inch pipe or tubing size.

2417.7.1.2 Placing in operation. Where gas piping containing air and meeting the criteria of Table 2417.7.1.1 is placed in operation, the air in the piping shall first be displaced with an inert gas. The inert gas shall then be displaced with fuel gas in accordance with Section 2417.7.1.3.

2417.7.1.3 Outdoor discharge of purged gases. The open end of a piping system being pressure vented or purged shall discharge directly to an outdoor location. Purging operations shall comply will all of the following requirements:

1. The point of discharge shall be controlled with a shutoff valve.
2. The point of discharge shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from sources of ignition, not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from building openings and not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from mechanical air intake openings.
3. During discharge, the open point of discharge shall be continuously attended and monitored with a combustible gas indicator that complies with Section 2417.7.1.4.
4. Purging operations introducing fuel gas shall be stopped when 90 percent fuel gas by volume is detected within the pipe.
5. Persons not involved in the purging operations shall be evacuated from all areas within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the point of discharge.

2417.7.1.4 Combustible gas indicator. Combustible gas indicators shall be listed and shall be calibrated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Combustible gas indicators shall numerically display a volume

scale from zero percent to 100 percent in 1-percent or smaller increments.

2417.7.2 Piping systems allowed to be purged indoors or outdoors. The purging of piping systems shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 2417.7.2.1 where the piping system meets both of the following:

1. The design operating gas pressure is 2 psig (13.79 kPa) or less.
2. The piping being purged is constructed entirely from pipe or tubing not meeting the size and length criteria of Table 2417.7.1.1.

2417.7.2.1 Purging procedure. The piping system shall be purged in accordance with one or more of the following:

1. The piping shall be purged with fuel gas and shall discharge to the outdoors.
2. The piping shall be purged with fuel gas and shall discharge to the indoors or outdoors through an appliance burner not located in a combustion chamber. Such burner shall be provided with a continuous source of ignition.
3. The piping shall be purged with fuel gas and shall discharge to the indoors or outdoors through a burner that has a continuous source of ignition and that is designed for such purpose.
4. The piping shall be purged with fuel gas that is discharged to the indoors or outdoors, and the point of discharge shall be monitored with a listed combustible gas detector in accordance with Section 2417.7.2.2. Purging shall be stopped when fuel gas is detected.
5. The piping shall be purged by the gas supplier in accordance with written procedures.

2417.7.2.2 Combustible gas detector. Combustible gas detectors shall be listed and shall be calibrated or tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Combustible gas detectors shall be capable of indicating the presence of fuel gas.

2417.7.3 Purging appliances and equipment. After the piping system has been placed in operation, appliances and equipment shall be purged before being placed into operation.

SECTION 2418
PIPING SUPPORT

2418.1 General. Piping shall be provided with support in accordance with Section G2418.2.

2418.2 Design and installation. Piping shall be supported with metal pipe hooks, metal pipe straps, metal bands, metal brackets, metal hangers or building structural components suitable for the size of piping, of adequate strength and quality, and located at intervals so as to prevent or damp out excessive vibration. Piping shall be anchored to prevent undue strains on connected appliances and shall not be supported by other piping. Pipe hangers and supports shall conform to the requirements of MSS SP-58 and shall be spaced in accordance with Section 2424. Supports, hangers and anchors shall be installed so as not to interfere with the free expansion and contraction of the piping between anchors. The components of the supporting equipment shall be designed and installed so that they will not be disengaged by movement of the supported piping.

SECTION 2419
DRIPS AND SLOPED PIPING

2419.1 Slopes. Piping for other than dry gas conditions shall be sloped not less than ¼ inch in 15 feet (6.3 mm in 4572 mm) to prevent traps.

2419.2 Drips. Where wet gas exists, a drip shall be provided at any point in the line of pipe where condensate could collect. A drip shall be provided at the outlet of the meter and shall be installed so as to constitute a trap wherein an accumulation of condensate will shut off the flow of gas before the condensate will run back into the meter.

2419.3 Location of drips. Drips shall be provided with ready access to permit cleaning or emptying. A drip shall not be located where the condensate is subject to freezing.

2419.4 Sediment trap. Where a sediment trap is not incorporated as part of the appliance, a sediment trap shall be installed downstream of the appliance shutoff valve as close to the inlet of the appliance as practical. The sediment trap shall be either a tee fitting having a capped nipple of any length installed vertically in the bottommost opening of the tee as illustrated in Figure 2419.4 or other device approved as an effective sediment trap. Illuminating appliances, ranges, clothes dryers, decorative vented appliances for installation in vented fireplaces, gas fireplaces and outdoor grills need not be so equipped.

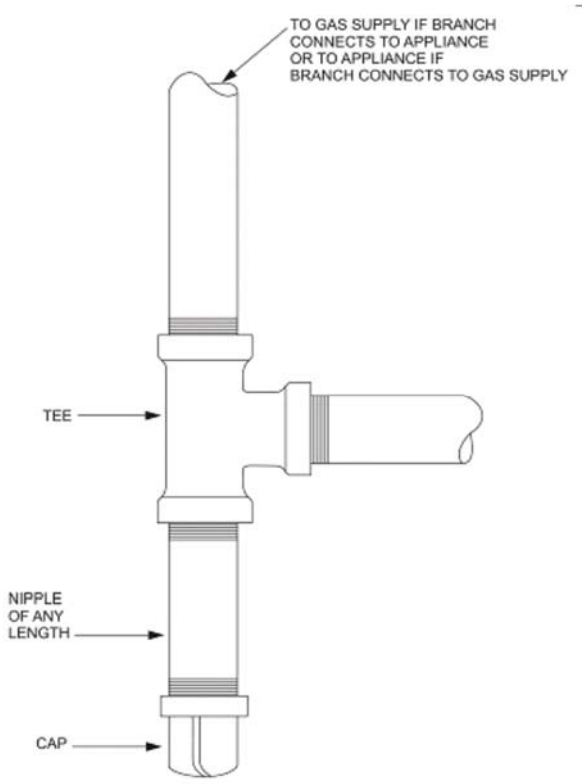


FIGURE 2419.4
METHOD OF INSTALLING A TEE FITTING SEDIMENT TRAP

SECTION 2420
SHUTOFF VALVES

2420.1 General. Piping systems shall be provided with shutoff valves in accordance with this section.

2420.1.1 Valve approval. Shutoff valves shall be of an approved type; shall be constructed of materials compatible with the piping; and shall comply with the standard that is applicable for the pressure and application, in accordance with Table 2420.1.1.

TABLE 2420.1.1
MANUAL GAS VALVE STANDARDS

VALVE STANDARDS	APPLIANCE SHUTOFF VALVE APPLICATION UP TO 1/2 psig PRESSURE	OTHER VALVE APPLICATIONS			
		UP TO 1/2 psig PRESSURE	UP TO 2 psig PRESSURE	UP TO 5 psig PRESSURE	UP TO 125 psig PRESSURE
ANSI Z21.15/CGA	X	—	—	—	—
ASME B 16.44	X	X	X [a]	X [b]	—
ASME B 16.33	X	X	X	X	X

For SI: 1 pound per square inch gauge = 6.895 kPa.

a. If labeled 2G.

b. If labeled 5G.

2420.1.2 Prohibited locations. Shutoff valves shall be prohibited in concealed locations and furnace plenums.

2420.1.3 Access to shutoff valves. Shutoff valves shall be located in places so as to provide access for operation and shall be installed so as to be protected from damage.

2420.2 Meter valve. Every meter shall be equipped with a shutoff valve located on the supply side of the meter.

2420.3 Individual buildings. In a common system serving more than one building, shutoff valves shall be installed outdoors at each building.

2420.4 MP regulator valves. A listed shutoff valve shall be installed immediately ahead of each MP regulator.

2420.5 Appliance shutoff valve. Each appliance shall be provided with a shutoff valve in accordance with Section 2420.5.1, 2420.5.2 or 2420.5.3.

2420.5.1 Located within same room. The shutoff valve shall be located in the same room as the appliance. The shutoff valve shall be within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the appliance, and shall be installed upstream of the union, connector or quick disconnect device it serves. Such shutoff valves shall be provided with access. Shutoff valves serving movable appliances, such as cooking appliances and clothes dryers, shall be considered to be provided with access where installed behind such appliances. Appliance shutoff valves located in the firebox of a fireplace shall be installed in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.

2420.5.2 Vented decorative appliances and room heaters. Shutoff valves for vented decorative appliances, room heaters and decorative appliances for

installation in vented fireplaces shall be permitted to be installed in an area remote from the appliances where such valves are provided with ready access. Such valves shall be permanently identified and shall not serve another appliance. The piping from the shutoff valve to within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the appliance shall be designed, sized and installed in accordance with Sections 2412 through 2419.

2420.5.3 Located at manifold. Where the appliance shutoff valve is installed at a manifold, such shutoff valve shall be located within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the appliance served and shall be readily accessible and permanently identified. The piping from the manifold to within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the appliance shall be designed, sized and installed in accordance with Sections 2412 through 2419.

2420.6 Shutoff valves in tubing systems. Shutoff valves installed in tubing systems shall be rigidly and securely supported independently of the tubing.

SECTION 2421
FLOW CONTROLS

2421.1 Pressure regulators. A line pressure regulator shall be installed where the appliance is designed to operate at a lower pressure than the supply pressure. Line gas pressure regulators shall be listed as complying with ANSI Z21.80/CSA 6.22. Access shall be provided to pressure regulators. Pressure regulators shall be protected from physical damage. Regulators installed on the exterior of the building shall be approved for outdoor installation.

2421.2 MP regulators. MP pressure regulators shall comply with the following:

1. The MP regulator shall be approved and shall be suit- able for the inlet and outlet gas pressures for the application.
2. The MP regulator shall maintain a reduced outlet pressure under lock-up (no-flow) conditions.
3. The capacity of the MP regulator, determined by published ratings of its manufacturer, shall be adequate to supply the appliances served.
4. The MP pressure regulator shall be provided with access. Where located indoors, the regulator shall be vented to the outdoors or shall be equipped with a leak- limiting device, in either case complying with Section 2421.3.
5. A tee fitting with one opening capped or plugged shall be installed between the MP regulator and its upstream shutoff valve. Such tee fitting shall be positioned to allow connection of a pressure-measuring instrument and to serve as a sediment trap.

6. A tee fitting with one opening capped or plugged shall be installed not less than 10 pipe diameters downstream of the MP regulator outlet. Such tee fitting shall be positioned to allow connection of a pressure-measuring instrument. The tee fitting is not required where the MP regulator serves an appliance that has a pressure test port on the gas control inlet side and the appliance is located in the same room as the MP regulator.
7. Where connected to rigid piping, a union shall be installed within 1 foot (304 mm) of either side of the MP regulator.

2421.3 Venting of regulators. Pressure regulators that require a vent shall be vented directly to the outdoors. The vent shall be designed to prevent the entry of insects, water and foreign objects.

Exception: A vent to the outdoors is not required for regulators equipped with and labeled for utilization with an approved vent-limiting device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2421.3.1 Vent piping. Vent piping for relief vents and breather vents shall be constructed of materials allowed for gas piping in accordance with Section 2414. Vent piping shall be not smaller than the vent connection on the pressure-regulating device. Vent piping serving relief vents and combination relief and breather vents shall be run independently to the outdoors and shall serve only a single device vent. Vent piping serving only breather vents is permitted to be connected in a manifold arrangement where sized in accordance with an approved design that minimizes backpressure in the event of diaphragm rupture. Regulator vent piping shall not exceed the length specified in the regulator manufacturer's instructions.

2421.4 Excess flow valves. Where automatic excess flow valves are installed, they shall be listed in accordance with ANSI Z21.93/CSA 6.30 and shall be sized and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2421.5 Flashback arrestor check valve. Where fuel gas is used with oxygen in any hot work operation, a listed protective device that serves as a combination flash- back arrestor and backflow check valve shall be installed at an approved location on both the fuel gas and oxygen supply lines. Where the pressure of the piped fuel gas supply is insufficient to ensure such safe operation, approved equipment shall be installed between the gas meter and the appliance that increases pressure to the level required for such safe operation.

SECTION 2422
APPLIANCE CONNECTIONS

2422.1 Connecting appliances. Appliances shall be connected to the piping system by one of the following:

1. Rigid metallic pipe and fittings.
2. Corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
3. Listed and labeled appliance connectors in compliance with ANSI Z21.24/CSA 6.10 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and located entirely in the same room as the appliance.
4. Listed and labeled quick-disconnect devices used in con- junction with listed and labeled appliance connectors.
5. Listed and labeled convenience outlets used in conjunction with listed and labeled appliance connectors.
6. Listed and labeled outdoor appliance connectors in compliance with ANSI Z21.75/CSA 6.27 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
7. Listed outdoor gas hose connectors in compliance with ANSI Z21.54 used to connect portable outdoor appliances. The gas hose connection shall be made only in the outdoor area where the appliance is used, and shall be to the gas piping supply at an appliance shutoff valve, a listed quick-disconnect device or listed gas convenience outlet.

2422.1.1 Protection from damage. Connectors and tubing shall be installed so as to be protected against physical damage.

2422.1.2 Connector installation. Appliance fuel connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Sections 2422.1.2.1 through 2422.1.2.4.

2422.1.2.1 Maximum length. Connectors shall have an overall length not to exceed 6 feet (1829 mm). Measurement shall be made along the centerline of the connector. Only one connector shall be used for each appliance.

Exception: Rigid metallic piping used to connect an appliance to the piping system shall be permitted to have a total length greater than 6 feet (1829 mm), provided that the connecting pipe is sized as part of the piping system in accordance with Section 2413 and the location of the appliance shutoff valve complies with Section 2420.5.

2422.1.2.2 Minimum size. Connectors shall have the capacity for the total demand of the connected appliance.

2422.1.2.3 Prohibited locations and penetrations. Connectors shall not be concealed within, or extended through, walls, floors, partitions, ceilings or appliance housings.

Exceptions:

1. Connectors constructed of materials allowed for piping systems in accordance with Section 2414 shall be permitted to pass through walls, floors, partitions and ceilings where installed in accordance with Section 2420.5.2 or 2420.5.3.
2. Rigid steel pipe connectors shall be permitted to extend through openings in appliance housings.
3. Fireplace inserts that are factory equipped with grommets, sleeves or other means of protection in accordance with the listing of the appliance.
4. Semi-rigid tubing and listed connectors shall be permitted to extend through an opening in an appliance housing, cabinet or casing where the tubing or connector is protected against damage.

2422.1.2.4 Shutoff valve. A shutoff valve not less than the nominal size of the connector shall be installed ahead of the connector in accordance with Section G2420.5.

2422.1.3 Connection of gas engine-powered *equipment and appliances*. Internal combustion engines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply piping.

2422.1.4 Unions. A union fitting shall be provided for appliances connected by rigid metallic pipe. Such unions shall be accessible and located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the appliance.

2422.1.5 Movable appliances. Where appliances are equipped with casters or are otherwise subject to periodic movement or relocation for purposes such as routine cleaning and maintenance, such appliances shall be connected to the supply system piping by means of an appliance connector listed as complying with ANSI Z21.69/CSA 6.16 or by means of Item 1 of Section 2422.1. Such flexible connectors shall be installed and protected against physical damage in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2422.2 Suspended low-intensity infrared tube heaters. Suspended low-intensity infrared tube heaters shall be connected to the building piping system with a

connector listed for the application complying with ANSI Z21.24/CGA 6.10. The connector shall be installed as specified by the tube heater manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 2423
COMPRESSED NATURAL GAS MOTOR VEHICLE FUEL-DISPENSING FACILITIES

2423.1 General. Motor fuel-dispensing facilities for CNG fuel shall be in accordance with Section 413 of the "International Fuel Gas Code".

SECTION 2424
PIPING SUPPORT INTERVALS

2424.1 Interval of support. Piping shall be supported at intervals not exceeding the spacing specified in Table 2424.1. Spacing of supports for CSST shall be in accordance with the CSST manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 2424.1
SUPPORT OF PIPING

STEEL PIPE, NOMINAL SIZE OF PIPE (inches)	SPACING OF SUPPORTS (feet)	NOMINAL SIZE OF TUBING SMOOTH-WALL (inch O.D.)	SPACING OF SUPPORTS (feet)
1/2	6	1/2	4
3/4 or 1	8	5/8 or 3/4	6
1 1/4 or larger (horizontal)	10	7/8 or 1 (horizontal)	8
1 1/4 or larger (vertical)	Every floor level	1 or larger (vertical)	Every floor level

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

SECTION 2425
GENERAL

2425.1 Scope. This section shall govern the installation, maintenance, repair and approval of factory-built chimneys, chimney liners, vents and connectors and the utilization of masonry chimneys serving gas-fired appliances.

2425.2 General. Every appliance shall discharge the products of combustion to the outdoors, except for appliances exempted by Section 2425.8.

2425.3 Masonry chimneys. Masonry chimneys shall be constructed in accordance

with Section 2427.5 and Chapter 10.

2425.4 Minimum size of chimney or vent. Chimneys and vents shall be sized in accordance with Sections 2427 and 2428.

2425.5 Abandoned inlet openings. Abandoned inlet openings in chimneys and vents shall be closed by an approved method.

2425.6 Positive pressure. Where an appliance equipped with a mechanical forced draft system creates a positive pressure in the venting system, the venting system shall be designed for positive pressure applications.

2425.7 Connection to fireplace. Connection of appliances to chimney flues serving fireplaces shall be in accordance with Sections 2425.7.1 through 2425.7.3.

2425.7.1 Closure and access. A noncombustible seal shall be provided below the point of connection to prevent entry of room air into the flue. Means shall be pro- vided for access to the flue for inspection and cleaning.

2425.7.2 Connection to factory-built fireplace flue. An appliance shall not be connected to a flue serving a factory-built fireplace unless the appliance is specifically listed for such installation. The connection shall be made in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions.

2425.7.3 Connection to masonry fireplace flue. A connector shall extend from the appliance to the flue serving a masonry fireplace such that the flue gases are exhausted directly into the flue. The connector shall be accessible or removable for inspection and cleaning of both the connector and the flue. Listed direct connection devices shall be installed in accordance with their listing.

2425.8 Appliances not required to be vented. The following appliances shall not be required to be vented:

1. Ranges.
2. Built-in domestic cooking units listed and marked for optional venting.
3. Hot plates and laundry stoves.
4. Type 1 clothes dryers (Type 1 clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with the requirements of Section 2439).
5. Refrigerators.
6. Counter appliances.
7. Room heaters listed for unvented use.

Where the appliances listed in Items 5 through 7 are installed so that the aggregate input rating exceeds 20 Btu per hour per cubic foot (207 W/m^3) of volume of the room or space in which such appliances are installed, one or more shall be provided with venting systems or other approved means for conveying the vent gases to the outdoor atmosphere so that the aggregate input rating of the remaining unvented appliances does not exceed 20 Btu per hour per cubic foot (207 W/m^3). Where the room or space in which the appliance is installed is directly connected to another room or space by a doorway, archway or other opening of comparable size that cannot be closed, the volume of such adjacent room or space shall be permitted to be included in the calculations.

2425.9 Chimney entrance. Connectors shall connect to a masonry chimney flue at a point not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lowest portion of the interior of the chimney flue.

2425.10 Connections to exhauster. Appliance connections to a chimney or vent equipped with a power exhauster shall be made on the inlet side of the exhauster. Joints on the positive pressure side of the exhauster shall be sealed to prevent flue-gas leakage as specified by the manufacturer's installation instructions for the exhauster.

2425.11 Masonry chimneys. Masonry chimneys utilized to vent appliances shall be located, constructed and sized as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions for the appliances being vented and Section 2427.

2425.12 Residential and low-heat appliances flue lining systems. Flue lining systems for use with residential-type and low-heat appliances shall be limited to the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements of ASTM C315 or equivalent. Clay flue lining shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 10.
2. Listed chimney lining systems complying with UL 1777.
3. Other approved materials that will resist, without cracking, softening or corrosion, flue gases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800ºF (982ºC).

2425.13 Category I appliance flue lining systems. Flue lining systems for use with Category I appliances shall be limited to the following:

1. Flue lining systems complying with Section 2425.12.
2. Chimney lining systems listed and labeled for use with gas appliances with draft hoods and other Category I gas appliances listed and labeled for use with Type B vents.

2425.14 Category II, III and IV appliance venting systems. The design, sizing and installation of vents for Category II, III and IV appliances shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.

2425.15 Existing chimneys and vents. Where an appliance is permanently disconnected from an existing chimney or vent, or where an appliance is connected to an existing chimney or vent during the process of a new installation, the chimney or vent shall comply with Sections 2425.15.1 through 2425.15.4.

2425.15.1 Size. The chimney or vent shall be resized as necessary to control flue gas condensation in the interior of the chimney or vent and to provide the appliance or appliances served with the required draft. For Category I appliances, the resizing shall be in accordance with Section 2426.

2425.15.2 Flue passageways. The flue gas passageway shall be free of obstructions and combustible deposits and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting a solid or liquid fuel-burning appliance or fireplace. The flue liner, chimney inner wall or vent inner wall shall be continuous and shall be free of cracks, gaps, perforations, or other damage or deterioration that would allow the escape of combustion products, including gases, moisture and creosote.

2425.15.3 Cleanout. Masonry chimney flues shall be provided with a cleanout opening having a mini- mum height of 6 inches (152 mm). The upper edge of the opening shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest chimney inlet opening. The cleanout shall be provided with a tight-fitting, noncombustible cover.

2425.15.4 Clearances. Chimneys and vents shall have airspace clearance to combustibles in accordance with Chapter 10 and the chimney or vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: Masonry chimneys without the required airspace clearances shall be permitted to be used if lined or relined with a chimney lining system listed for use in chimneys with reduced clearances in accordance with UL 1777. The chimney clearance shall be not less than permitted by the terms of the chimney liner listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

2425.15.4.1 Fireblocking. Noncombustible fireblocking shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 10.

SECTION 2426

VENTS

2426.1 General. Vents, except as provided in Section 2427.7, shall be listed and labeled. Type B and BW vents shall be tested in accordance with UL 441. Type L vents shall be tested in accordance with UL 641. Vents for Category II and III appliances shall be tested in accordance with UL 1738. Plastic vents for Category IV appliances shall not be required to be listed and labeled where such vents are as specified by the appliance manufacturer and are installed in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.

2426.2 Connectors required. Connectors shall be used to connect appliances to the vertical chimney or vent, except where the chimney or vent is attached directly to the appliance. Vent connector size, material, construction and installation shall be in accordance with Section 2427.

2426.3 Vent application. The application of vents shall be in accordance with Table 2427.4.

2426.4 Insulation shield. Where vents pass through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) shall be installed to provide clearance between the vent and the insulation material. The clearance shall be not less than the clearance to combustibles specified by the vent manufacturer's installation instructions. Where vents pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the insulation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a listed vent system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2426.5 Installation. Vent systems shall be sized, installed and terminated in accordance with the vent and appliance manufacturer's installation instructions and Section G2427.

2426.6 Support of vents. All portions of vents shall be adequately supported for the design and weight of the materials employed.

2426.7 Protection against physical damage. In concealed locations, where a vent is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than 11/2 inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the vent shall be protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575- inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage) shall cover the area of the vent where the member is notched or bored and shall extend not less than 4 inches (102

mm) above sole plates, below top plates and to each side of a stud, joist or rafter.

2426.7.1 Door swing. Appliance and equipment vent terminals shall be located such that doors cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally of the vent terminal. Door stops or closures shall not be installed to obtain this clearance.

SECTION 2427
VENTING OF APPLIANCES

2427.1 General. The venting of appliances shall be in accordance with Sections 2427.2 through 2427.16.

2427.2 Venting systems required. Except as permitted in Sections 2425.8, 2427.2.1 and 2427.2.2, all appliances shall be connected to venting systems.

2427.2.1 Direct-vent appliances. Listed direct-vent appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Section 2427.8, Item 3.

2427.2.2 Appliances with integral vents. Appliances incorporating integral venting means shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Section 2427.8, Items 1 and 2.

2427.3 Design and construction. Venting systems shall be designed and constructed so as to convey all flue and vent gases to the outdoors.

2427.3.1 Appliance draft requirements. A venting system shall satisfy the draft requirements of the appliance in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2427.3.2 Design and construction. Appliances required to be vented shall be connected to a venting system designed and installed in accordance with the pro- visions of Sections 2427.4 through 2427.16.

2427.3.3 Mechanical draft systems. Mechanical draft systems shall comply with the following:

1. Mechanical draft systems shall be listed in accordance with UL 378 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for both the appliance and the mechanical draft system.
2. Appliances requiring venting shall be permitted to be vented by means

of mechanical draft systems of either forced or induced draft design.

3. Forced draft systems and all portions of induced draft systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed so as to prevent leakage of flue or vent gases into a building.
4. Vent connectors serving appliances vented by natural draft shall not be connected into any portion of mechanical draft systems operating under positive pressure.
5. Where a mechanical draft system is employed, provisions shall be made to prevent the flow of gas to the main burners when the draft system is not performing so as to satisfy the operating requirements of the appliance for safe performance.
6. The exit terminals of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above finished ground level where located adjacent to public walkways and shall be located as specified in Section 2427.8, Items 1 and 2.

2427.3.4 Air ducts and furnace plenums. Venting systems shall not extend into or pass through any fabricated air duct or furnace plenum.

2427.3.5 Above-ceiling air-handling spaces. Where a venting system passes through an above-ceiling air-handling space or other non-ducted portion of an air-handling system, the venting system shall conform to one of the following requirements:

1. The venting system shall be a listed special gas vent; other venting system serving a Category III or Cate gory IV appliance; or other positive pressure vent, with joints sealed in accordance with the appliance or vent manufacturer's instructions.
2. The venting system shall be installed such that fittings and joints between sections are not installed in the above-ceiling space.
3. The venting system shall be installed in a conduit or enclosure with sealed joints separating the interior of the conduit or enclosure from the ceiling space.

2427.4 Type of venting system to be used. The type of venting system to be used shall be in accordance with Table 2427.4.

TABLE 2427.4
TYPE OF VENTING SYSTEM TO BE USED

APPLIANCES	TYPE OF VENTING SYSTEM
Listed Category I appliances Listed appliances equipped with draft hood Appliances listed for use with Type B gas vent	Type B gas vent (Section 2427.6) Chimney (Section 2427.5) Single-wall metal pipe (Section 2427.7) Listed chimney lining system for gas venting (Section 2427.5.2) Special gas vent listed for these appliances (Section 2427.4.2)
Listed vented wall furnaces	Type B-W gas vent (Sections 2427.6, 2436)
Category II, Category III and Category IV appliances	As specified or furnished by manufacturers of listed appliances (Sections 2427.4.1, 2427.4.2)
Unlisted appliances	Chimney (Section 2427.5)
Decorative appliances in vented fireplaces	Chimney
Direct-vent appliances	See Section 2427.2.1
Appliances with integral vent	See Section 2427.2.2

2427.4.1 Plastic piping. Where plastic piping is used to vent an appliance, the appliance shall be listed for use with such venting materials and the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions shall identify the specific plastic piping material. The plastic pipe venting materials shall be labeled in accordance with the product standards specified by the appliance manufacturer or shall be listed in accordance with UL 1738.

2427.4.1.1 Plastic vent joints. Plastic pipe and fittings used to vent appliances shall be installed in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions. Plastic pipe venting materials listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1738 shall be installed in accordance with the vent manufacturer's instructions. Where a primer is required, it shall be of a contrasting color.

2427.4.2 Special gas vent. Special gas vent shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1738 and installed in accordance with the special gas vent manufacturer's instructions.

2427.5 Masonry, metal and factory-built chimneys. Masonry, metal and factory-built chimneys shall comply with Sections 2427.5.1 through 2427.5.10.

2427.5.1 Factory-built chimneys. Factory-built chimneys shall be listed in accordance with UL 103 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Factory-built chimneys used to vent appliances that operate at a positive vent pressure shall be listed for such application.

2427.5.2 Masonry chimneys. Masonry chimneys shall be built and installed in accordance with NFPA 211 and shall be lined with an approved clay flue

lining, a chimney lining system listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1777 or other approved material that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening or cracking from vent gases at temperatures up to 1,800ºF (982ºC).

Exception: Masonry chimney flues serving listed gas appliances with draft hoods, Category I appliances and other gas appliances listed for use with Type B vents shall be permitted to be lined with a chimney lining system specifically listed for use only with such appliances. The liner shall be installed in accordance with the liner manufacturer's instructions. A permanent identifying label shall be attached at the point where the connection is to be made to the liner. The label shall read: "This chimney liner is for appliances that burn gas only. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or incinerators."

2427.5.3 Chimney termination. Chimneys for residential-type or low-heat appliances shall extend not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point where they pass through a roof of a building and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 feet (3048 mm). Chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall extend not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 25 feet (7620 mm). Chimneys shall extend not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the highest connected appliance draft hood outlet or flue collar. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built chimneys except where such shrouds are listed and labeled for use with the specific factory-built chimney system and are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2427.5.4 Size of chimneys. The effective area of a chimney venting system serving listed appliances with draft hoods, Category I appliances, and other appliances listed for use with Type B vents shall be determined in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. The provisions of Section 2428.
2. For sizing an individual chimney venting system for a single appliance with a draft hood, the effective areas of the vent connector and chimney flue shall be not less than the area of the appliance flue collar or draft hood outlet, nor greater than seven times the draft hood outlet area.
3. For sizing a chimney venting system connected to two appliances with draft hoods, the effective area of the chimney flue shall be not less than the area of the larger draft hood outlet plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller draft hood outlet, nor greater than seven times the smallest draft hood outlet area.
4. Chimney venting systems using mechanical draft shall be sized in accordance with approved engineering methods.

5. Other approved engineering methods.

2427.5.5 Inspection of chimneys. Before replacing an existing appliance or connecting a vent connector to a chimney, the chimney passageway shall be examined to ascertain that it is clear and free of obstructions and it shall be cleaned if previously used for venting solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or fireplaces.

2427.5.5.1 Chimney lining. Chimneys shall be lined in accordance with NFPA 211.

Exception: Where an existing chimney complies with Sections 2427.5.5 through 2427.5.5.3 and its sizing is in accordance with Section 2427.5.4, its continued use shall be allowed where the appliance vented by such chimney is replaced by an appliance of similar type, input rating and efficiency.

2427.5.5.2 Cleanouts. Cleanouts shall be examined and where they do not remain tightly closed when not in use, they shall be repaired or replaced.

2427.5.5.3 Unsafe chimneys. Where inspection reveals that an existing chimney is not safe for the intended application, it shall be repaired, rebuilt, lined, relined or replaced with a vent or chimney to conform to NFPA 211 and it shall be suitable for the appliances to be vented.

2427.5.6 Chimneys serving appliances burning other fuels. Chimneys serving appliances burning other fuels shall comply with Sections 2427.5.6.1 through 2427.5.6.4.

2427.5.6.1 Solid fuel-burning appliances. An appliance shall not be connected to a chimney flue serving a separate appliance designed to burn solid fuel.

2427.5.6.2 Liquid fuel-burning appliances. Where one chimney flue serves gas appliances and liquid fuel-burning appliances, the appliances shall be connected through separate openings or shall be connected through a single opening where joined by a suitable fitting located as close as practical to the chimney. Where two or more openings are provided into one chimney flue, they shall be at different levels. Where the appliances are automatically controlled, they shall be equipped with safety shutoff devices.

2427.5.6.3 Combination gas- and solid fuel-burning appliances. A

combination gas- and solid fuel-burning appliance shall be permitted to be connected to a single chimney flue where equipped with a manual reset device to shut off gas to the main burner in the event of sustained backdraft or flue gas spillage. The chimney flue shall be sized to properly vent the appliance.

2427.5.6.4 Combination gas- and oil fuel-burning appliances. Where a single chimney flue serves a listed combination gas- and oil fuel-burning appliance, such flue shall be sized in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.

2427.5.7 Support of chimneys. All portions of chimneys shall be supported for the design and weight of the materials employed. Factory-built chimneys shall be supported and spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

2427.5.8 Cleanouts. Where a chimney that formerly carried flue products from liquid or solid fuel- burning appliances is used with an appliance using fuel gas, an accessible cleanout shall be provided. The cleanout shall have a tight-fitting cover and be installed so its upper edge is not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lower edge of the lowest chimney inlet opening.

2427.5.9 Space surrounding lining or vent. The remaining space surrounding a chimney liner, gas vent, special gas vent or plastic piping installed within a masonry chimney flue shall not be used to vent another appliance. The insertion of another liner or vent within the chimney as provided in this code and the liner or vent manufacturer's instructions shall not be prohibited.

The remaining space surrounding a chimney liner, gas vent, special gas vent or plastic piping installed within a masonry, metal or factory-built chimney shall not be used to supply combustion air. Such space shall not be prohibited from supplying combustion air to direct-vent appliances designed for installation in a solid fuel-burning fireplace and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2427.5.10 Insulation shield. Where a factory-built chimney passes through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of steel having a thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.475 mm) (nominal 26 gage) shall be installed to provide clearance between the chimney and the insulation material. The clearance shall be not less than the clearance to combustibles specified by the chimney manufacturer's installation instructions. Where chimneys pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51 mm)

above the installation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a listed chimney system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

2427.6 Gas vents. Gas vents shall comply with Sections 2427.6.1 through 2427.6.12. (See Section 2403, General Definitions.)

2427.6.1 Materials. Type B and BW gas vents shall be listed in accordance with UL 441. Vents for listed combination gas- and oil-burning appliances shall be listed in accordance with UL 641.

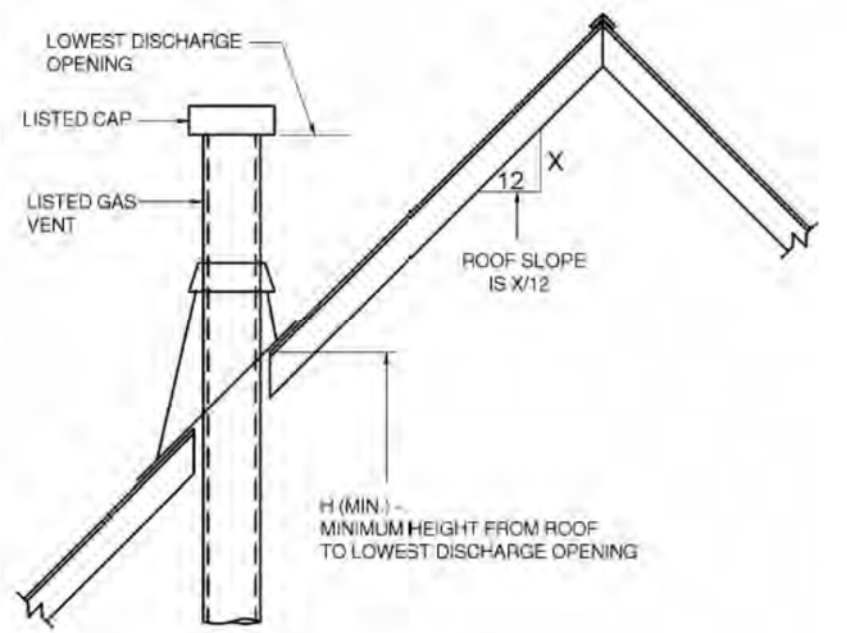
2427.6.2 Installation, general. Gas vents shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2427.6.3 Type B-W vent capacity. A Type B- W gas vent shall have a listed capacity not less than that of the listed vented wall furnace to which it is connected.

2427.6.4 Gas vent terminations. A gas vent shall terminate in accordance with one of the following:

1. Gas vents that are 12 inches (305 mm) or less in size and located not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) from a vertical wall or similar obstruction shall terminate above the roof in accordance with Figure 2427.6.3.
2. Gas vents that are over 12 inches (305 mm) in size or are located less than 8 feet (2438 mm) from a vertical wall or similar obstruction shall terminate not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above the highest point where they pass through the roof and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above any portion of a building within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally.
3. As provided for direct-vent systems in Section 2427.2.1.
4. As provided for appliances with integral vents in Section 2427.2.2.
5. As provided for mechanical draft systems in Section 2427.3.3.

2427.6.4.1 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of gas vents except where such shrouds are listed for use with the specific gas venting system and are installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.



ROOF SLOPE	H (minimum) ft
Flat to 6/12	1.0
Over 6/12 to 7/12	1.25
Over 7/12 to 8/12	1.5
Over 8/12 to 9/12	2.0
Over 9/12 to 10/12	2.5
Over 10/12 to 11/12	3.25
Over 11/12 to 12/12	4.0
Over 12/12 to 14/12	5.0
Over 14/12 to 16/12	6.0
Over 16/12 to 18/12	7.0
Over 18/1 2 to 20/12	7.5
Over 20/12 to 21/12	8.0

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 2427.6.4
TERMINATION LOCATIONS FOR GAS VENTS WITH LISTED CAPS 12 INCHES OR LESS IN SIZE NOT LESS THAN 8 FEET FROM A VERTICAL WALL

2427.6.5 Minimum height. A Type B or L gas vent shall terminate not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in vertical height above the highest connected appliance

draft hood or flue collar. A Type B-W gas vent shall terminate not less than 12 feet (3658 mm) in vertical height above the bottom of the wall furnace.

2427.6.6 Roof terminations. Gas vents shall extend through the roof flashing, roof jack or roof thimble and terminate with a listed cap or listed roof assembly.

2427.6.7 Forced air inlets. Gas vents shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).

2427.6.8 Exterior wall penetrations. A gas vent extending through an exterior wall shall not terminate adjacent to the wall or below eaves or parapets, except as provided in Sections 2427.2.1 and 2427.3.3.

2427.6.9 Size of gas vents. Venting systems shall be sized and constructed in accordance with Sections 2427.6.9.1 through 2427.6.9.4 and the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions.

2427.6.9.1 Category I appliances. The sizing of natural draft venting systems serving one or more listed appliances equipped with a draft hood or appliances listed for use with Type B gas vent, installed in a single story of a building, shall be in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. The provisions of Section 2428.
2. For sizing an individual gas vent for a single, draft-hood-equipped appliance, the effective area of the vent connector and the gas vent shall be not less than the area of the appliance draft hood outlet, nor greater than seven times the draft hood outlet area.
3. For sizing a gas vent connected to two appliances with draft hoods, the effective area of the vent shall be not less than the area of the larger draft hood outlet plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller draft hood outlet, nor greater than seven times the smaller draft hood outlet area.
4. Approved engineering practices.

2427.6.9.2 Vent offsets. Type B and L vents sized in accordance with Item 2 or 3 of Section G2427.6.8.1 shall extend in a generally vertical direction with offsets not exceeding 45 degrees (0.79 rad), except that a vent system having not more than one 60- degree (1.04 rad) offset shall be permitted. Any angle greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the vertical is considered horizontal. The total horizontal distance of a vent plus the horizontal vent connector serving draft- hood-equipped appliances shall be not greater than 75 percent of the vertical height of the vent.

2427.6.9.3 Category II, III and IV appliances. The sizing of gas vents for Category II, III and IV appliances shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions. The sizing of plastic pipe that is specified by the appliance manufacturer as a venting material for Category II, III and IV appliances, shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2427.6.9.4 Mechanical draft. Chimney venting systems using mechanical draft shall be sized in accordance with approved engineering methods.

2427.6.10 Support of gas vents. Gas vents shall be supported and spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

2427.6.11 Marking. In those localities where solid and liquid fuels are used extensively, gas vents shall be permanently identified by a label attached to the wall or ceiling at a point where the vent connector enters the gas vent. The determination of where such localities exist shall be made by the code official. The label shall read:

"This gas vent is for appliances that burn gas. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or incinerators."

2427.6.12 Fastener penetrations. Screws, rivets and other fasteners shall not penetrate the inner wall of double-wall gas vents, except at the transition from an appliance draft hood outlet, a flue collar or a single-wall metal connector to a double-wall vent.

2427.7 Single-wall metal pipe. Single-wall metal pipe vents shall comply with Sections 2427.7.1 through 2427.7.13.

2427.7.1 Construction. Single-wall metal pipe shall be constructed of galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.0304 inch (0.7 mm) thick, or other approved, non- combustible, corrosion-resistant material.

2427.7.2 Cold climate. Uninsulated single-wall metal pipe shall not be used outdoors for venting appliances in regions where the 99-percent winter design temperature is below 32ºF (0ºC).

2427.7.3 Termination. Single-wall metal pipe shall terminate not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in vertical height above the highest connected appliance draft hood outlet or flue collar. Single-wall metal pipe shall extend not less than 2

feet (610 mm) above the highest point where it passes through a roof of a building and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 feet (3048 mm). An approved cap or roof assembly shall be attached to the terminus of a single-wall metal pipe.

2427.7.4 Limitations of use. Single-wall metal pipe shall be used only for runs directly from the space in which the appliance is located through the roof or exterior wall to the outdoor atmosphere.

2427.7.5 Roof penetrations. A pipe passing through a roof shall extend without interruption through the roof flashing, roof jack or roof thimble. Where a single-wall metal pipe passes through a roof constructed of combustible material, a noncombustible, non-ventilating thimble shall be used at the point of passage. The thimble shall extend not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above and 6 inches (152 mm) below the roof with the annular space open at the bottom and closed only at the top. The thimble shall be sized in accordance with Section 2427.7.7.

2427.7.6 Installation. Single-wall metal pipe shall not originate in any unoccupied attic or concealed space and shall not pass through any attic, inside wall, concealed space, or floor. The installation of a single-wall metal pipe through an exterior combustible wall shall comply with Section 2427.7.7.

2427.7.7 Single-wall penetrations of combustible walls. A single-wall metal pipe shall not pass through a combustible exterior wall unless guarded at the point of passage by a ventilated metal thimble not smaller than the following:

1. For listed appliances with draft hoods and appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents, the thimble shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe. Where there is a run of not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) of metal pipe in the open between the draft hood outlet and the thimble, the thimble shall be permitted to be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.
2. For unlisted appliances having draft hoods, the thimble shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.
3. For residential and low-heat appliances, the thimble shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.

Exception: In lieu of thimble protection, all combustible material in the wall shall be removed a sufficient distance from the metal pipe to provide the specified clearance from such metal pipe to combustible material. Any material used to close up such opening shall be noncombustible.

2427.7.8 Clearances. Minimum clearances from single-wall metal pipe to combustible material shall be in accordance with Table 2427.10.5. The clearance from single-wall metal pipe to combustible material shall be permitted to be reduced where the combustible material is protected as specified for vent connectors in Table 2409.2.

2427.7.9 Size of single-wall metal pipe. A venting system constructed of single-wall metal pipe shall be sized in accordance with one of the following methods and the appliance manufacturer's instructions:

1. For a draft-hood-equipped appliance, in accordance with Section 2428.
2. For a venting system for a single appliance with a draft hood, the areas of the connector and the pipe each shall be not less than the area of the appliance flue collar or draft hood outlet, whichever is smaller. The vent area shall be not greater than seven times the draft hood outlet area.
3. Other approved engineering methods.

2427.7.10 Pipe geometry. Any shaped single-wall metal pipe shall be permitted to be used, provided that its equivalent effective area is equal to the effective area of the round pipe for which it is substituted, and provided that the minimum internal dimension of the pipe is not less than 2 inches (51 mm).

2427.7.11 Termination capacity. The vent cap or a roof assembly shall have a venting capacity of not less than that of the pipe to which it is attached.

2427.7.12 Support of single-wall metal pipe. All portions of single-wall metal pipe shall be sup- ported for the design and weight of the material employed.

2427.7.13 Marking. Single-wall metal pipe shall comply with the marking provisions of Section 2427.6.10.

2427.8 Venting system termination location. The location of venting system terminations shall comply with the following (see Appendix C):

1. A mechanical draft venting system shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced-air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).
   Exceptions:
   1. This provision shall not apply to the combustion air intake of a direct-vent appliance.
   2. This provision shall not apply to the separation of the integral outdoor air inlet and flue gas discharge of listed outdoor appliances.

2. A mechanical draft venting system, excluding direct- vent appliances, shall

terminate not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from, or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, operable window or gravity air inlet into any building. The bottom of the vent terminal shall be located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished ground level.

3. The clearances for through-the-wall, direct-vent terminals shall be in accordance with Table 2427.8.
4. Through-the-wall vents for Category II and IV appliances and non-categorized condensing appliances shall not terminate over public walkways or over an area where condensate or vapor could create a nuisance or hazard or could be detrimental to the operation of regulators, relief valves or other equipment. Where local experience indicates that condensate is a problem with Category I and III appliances, this provision shall also apply. Drains for condensate shall be installed in accordance with the appliance and vent manufacturer's instructions.
5. Vent systems for Category IV appliances that terminate through an outside wall of a building and discharge flue gases perpendicular to the adjacent wall shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from an operable opening in an adjacent building. This requirement shall not apply to vent terminals that are 2 feet (607 mm) or more above or 25 feet (7620 mm) or more below operable openings.

TABLE 2427.8
THROUGH-THE-WALL, DIRECT-VENT TERMINATION CLEARANCES

DIRECT-VENT APPLIANCE INPUT RATING (Btu/hr)	THROUGH-THE-WALL VENT TERMINAL CLEARANCE FROM ANY AIR OPENING INTO THE BUILDING (inches)
< 10,000	6
≥ 10,000 ≤ 50,000	9
> 50,000 ≤ 150,000	12
> 150,000	In accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions and not less than the clearances specified in Section 2427.8, Item 2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 Btu/hr = 0.2931 W.

2427.9 Condensation drainage. Provisions shall be made to collect and dispose of condensate from venting systems serving Category II and IV appliances and non-categorized condensing appliances in accordance with Section 2427.8, Item 4. Where local experience indicates that condensation is a problem, provisions shall be made to drain off and dispose of condensate from venting systems serving Category I and III appliances in accordance with Section 2427.8, Item 4.

2427.10 Vent connectors for Category I appliances. Vent connectors for Category I appliances shall comply with Sections 2427.10.1 through 2427.10.13.

2427.10.1 Where required. A vent connector shall be used to connect an appliance to a gas vent, chimney or single-wall metal pipe, except where the gas vent, chimney or single-wall metal pipe is directly connected to the appliance.

2427.10.2 Materials. Vent connectors shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 2427.10.2.1 through 2427.10.2.4.

2427.10.2.1 General. A vent connector shall be made of noncombustible corrosion-resistant material capable of withstanding the vent gas temperature produced by the appliance and of sufficient thick- ness to withstand physical damage.

2427.10.2.2 Vent connectors located in unconditioned areas. Where the vent connector used for an appliance having a draft hood or a Category I appliance is located in or passes through attics, crawl spaces or other unconditioned spaces, that portion of the vent connector shall be listed Type B, Type L or listed vent material having equivalent insulation properties.

Exception: Single-wall metal pipe located within the exterior walls of the building in areas having a local 99-percent winter design temperature of 5ºF (-15ºC) or higher shall be permitted to be used in unconditioned spaces other than attics and crawl spaces.

2427.10.2.3 Residential-type appliance connectors. Where vent connectors for residential-type appliances are not installed in attics or other unconditioned spaces, connectors for listed appliances having draft hoods, appliances having draft hoods and equipped with listed conversion burners and Category I appliances shall be one of the following:

1. Type B or L vent material.
2. Galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
3. Aluminum (1100 or 3003 alloy or equivalent) sheet not less than 0.027 inch (0.69 mm) thick.
4. Stainless steel sheet not less than 0.012 inch (0.31 mm) thick.
5. Smooth interior wall metal pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion equal to or greater than that of Item 2, 3 or 4.
6. A listed vent connector. Vent connectors shall not be covered with insulation.

Exception: Listed insulated vent connectors shall be installed in

accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2427.10.2.4 Low-heat appliance. A vent connector for a nonresidential, low-heat appliance shall be a factory-built chimney section or steel pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion equivalent to that for the appropriate galvanized pipe as specified in Table 2427.10.2.4. Factory-built chimney sections shall be joined together in accordance with the chimney manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 2427.10.2.4
MINIMUM THICKNESS FOR GALVANIZED STEEL VENT CONNECTORS FOR LOW-HEAT APPLIANCES

DIAMETER OF CONNECTOR (inches)	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inch)
Less than 6	0.019
6 to less than 10	0.023
10 to 12 inclusive	0.029
14 to 16 inclusive	0.034
Over 16	0.056

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

2427.10.3 Size of vent connector. Vent connectors shall be sized in accordance with Sections 2427.10.3.1 through 2427.3.5.

2427.10.3.1 Single draft hood and fan-assisted. A vent connector for an appliance with a single draft hood or for a Category I fan-assisted combustion system appliance shall be sized and installed in accordance with Section 2428 or other approved engineering methods.

2427.10.3.2 Multiple draft hood. For a single appliance having more than one draft hood outlet or flue collar, the manifold shall be constructed according to the instructions of the appliance manufacturer. Where there are no instructions, the manifold shall be designed and constructed in accordance with approved engineering practices. As an alternate method, the effective area of the manifold shall equal the combined area of the flue collars or draft hood outlets and the vent connectors shall have a minimum 1-foot (305 mm) rise.

2427.10.3.3 Multiple appliances. Where two or more appliances are connected to a common vent or chimney, each vent connector shall be sized in accordance with Section 2428 or other approved engineering methods.

As an alternative method applicable only where all of the appliances are

draft hood equipped, each vent connector shall have an effective area not less than the area of the draft hood outlet of the appliance to which it is connected.

2427.10.3.4 Common connector/manifold. Where two or more appliances are vented through a common vent connector or vent manifold, the common vent connector or vent manifold shall be located at the highest level consistent with available headroom and the required clearance to combustible materials and shall be sized in accordance with Section G2428 or other approved engineering methods.

As an alternate method applicable only where there are two draft hood-equipped appliances, the effective area of the common vent connector or vent manifold and all junction fittings shall be not less than the area of the larger vent connector plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller flue collar outlet.

2427.10.3.5 Size increase. Where the size of a vent connector is increased to overcome installation limitations and obtain connector capacity equal to the appliance input, the size increase shall be made at the appliance draft hood outlet.

2427.10.4 Two or more appliances connected to a single vent or chimney. Where two or more vent connectors enter a common vent, chimney flue, or single-wall metal pipe, the smaller connector shall enter at the highest level consistent with the available headroom or clearance to combustible material. Vent connectors serving Category I appliances shall not be connected to any portion of a mechanical draft system operating under positive static pressure, such as those serving Category III or IV appliances.

2427.10.4.1 Two or more openings. Where two or more openings are provided into one chimney flue or vent, the openings shall be at different levels, or the connectors shall be attached to the vertical portion of the chimney or vent at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) or less relative to the vertical.

2427.10.5 Clearance. Minimum clearances from vent connectors to combustible material shall be in accordance with Table 2427.10.5.

Exception: The clearance between a vent connector and combustible material shall be permitted to be reduced where the combustible material is protected as specified for vent connectors in Table 2409.2.

TABLE 2427.10.5[a]
CLEARANCES FOR CONNECTORS

APPLIANCE	MINIMUM DISTANCE FROM COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL			
	Listed Type B gas vent	Listed Type L vent material	Single-wall metal pipe	Factory-built chimney
Listed appliances with draft hoods and appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents	As listed	As listed	6 inches	As listed
Residential boilers and furnaces with listed gas conversion burner and with draft hood	6 inches	6 inches	9 inches	As listed
Residential appliances listed for use with Type L vents	Not permitted	As listed	9 inches	As listed
Listed gas-fired toilets	Not permitted	As listed	As listed	As listed
Unlisted residential appliances with draft hood	Not permitted	6 inches	9 inches	As listed
Residential and low-heat appliances other than above	Not permitted	9 inches	18 inches	As listed
Medium-heat appliances	Not permitted	Not permitted	36 inches	As listed

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. These clearances shall apply unless the manufacturer's installation instructions for a listed appliance or connector specify different clearances, in which case the listed clearances shall apply.

2427.10.6 Joints. Joints between sections of connector piping and connections to flue collars and draft hood outlets shall be fastened by one of the following methods:

1. Sheet metal screws.
2. Vent connectors of listed vent material assembled and connected to flue collars or draft hood outlets in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
3. Other approved means.

2427.10.7 Slope. A vent connector shall be installed without dips or sags and shall slope upward toward the vent or chimney not less than ¼ inch per foot (21 mm/m).

Exception: Vent connectors attached to a mechanical draft system installed in accordance with the appliance and draft system manufacturers' instructions.

2427.10.8 Length of vent connector. The maximum horizontal length of a single-wall connector shall be 75 percent of the height of the chimney or vent except for engineered systems. The maximum horizontal length of a Type B double-wall connector shall be 100 percent of the height of the chimney or vent

except for engineered systems.

2427.10.9 Support. A vent connector shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed to maintain clearances and prevent physical damage and separation of joints.

2427.10.10 Chimney connection. Where entering a flue in a masonry or metal chimney, the vent connector shall be installed above the extreme bottom to avoid stoppage. Where a thimble or slip joint is used to facilitate removal of the connector, the connector shall be firmly attached to or inserted into the thimble or slip joint to prevent the connector from falling out. Means shall be employed to prevent the connector from entering so far as to restrict the space between its end and the opposite wall of the chimney flue (see Section 2425.9).

2427.10.11 Inspection. The entire length of a vent connector shall be provided with ready access for inspection, cleaning and replacement.

2427.10.12 Fireplaces. A vent connector shall not be connected to a chimney flue serving a fire- place unless the fireplace flue opening is permanently sealed.

2427.10.13 Passage through ceilings, floors or walls. Single-wall metal pipe connectors shall not pass through any wall, floor or ceiling except as per- mitted by Section 2427.7.4.

2427.11 Vent connectors for Category II, III and IV appliances. Vent connectors for Category II, III and IV appliances shall be as specified for the venting systems in accordance with Section 2427.4.

2427.12 Draft hoods and draft controls. The installation of draft hoods and draft controls shall comply with Sections 2427.12.1 through 2427.12.7.

2427.12.1 Appliances requiring draft hoods. Vented appliances shall be installed with draft hoods.

Exception: Dual oven-type combination ranges; direct-vent appliances; fan-assisted combustion system appliances; appliances requiring chimney draft for operation; single firebox boilers equipped with conversion burners with inputs greater than 400,000 Btu per hour (117 kW); appliances equipped with blast, power or pressure burners that are not listed for use with draft hoods; and appliances designed for forced venting.

2427.12.2 Installation. A draft hood supplied with or forming a part of a listed

vented appliance shall be installed without alteration, exactly as furnished and specified by the appliance manufacturer.

2427.12.2.1 Draft hood required. If a draft hood is not supplied by the appliance manufacturer where one is required, a draft hood shall be installed, shall be of a listed or approved type and, in the absence of other instructions, shall be of the same size as the appliance flue collar. Where a draft hood is required with a conversion burner, it shall be of a listed or approved type.

2427.12.2.2 Special design draft hood. Where it is determined that a draft hood of special design is needed or preferable for a particular installation, the installation shall be in accordance with the recommendations of the appliance manufacturer and shall be approved.

2427.12.3 Draft control devices. Where a draft control device is part of the appliance or is supplied by the appliance manufacturer, it shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. In the absence of manufacturer's instructions, the device shall be attached to the flue collar of the appliance or as near to the appliance as practical.

2427.12.4 Additional devices. Appliances requiring a controlled chimney draft shall be permitted to be equipped with a listed double-acting barometric-draft regulator installed and adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2427.12.5 Location. Draft hoods and barometric draft regulators shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the appliance in such a manner as to pre- vent any difference in pressure between the hood or regulator and the combustion air supply.

2427.12.6 Positioning. Draft hoods and draft regulators shall be installed in the position for which they were designed with reference to the horizontal and vertical planes and shall be located so that the relief opening is not obstructed by any part of the appliance or adjacent construction. The appliance and its draft hood shall be located so that the relief opening is accessible for checking vent operation.

2427.12.7 Clearance. A draft hood shall be located so its relief opening is not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from any surface except that of the appliance it serves and the venting system to which the draft hood is connected. Where a

greater or lesser clearance is indicated on the appliance label, the clearance shall be not less than that specified on the label. Such clearances shall not be reduced.

2427.13 Manually operated dampers. A manually operated damper shall not be placed in the vent connector for any appliance. Fixed baffles shall not be classified as manually operated dampers.

2427.14 Automatically operated vent dampers. An automatically operated vent damper shall be of a listed type.

2427.15 Obstructions. Devices that retard the flow of vent gases shall not be installed in a vent connector, chimney, or vent. The following shall not be considered as obstructions:

1. Draft regulators and safety controls specifically listed for installation in venting systems and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Approved draft regulators and safety controls that are designed and installed in accordance with approved engineering methods.
3. Listed heat reclaimers and automatically operated vent dampers installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4. Approved economizers, heat reclaimers and recuperators installed in venting systems of appliances not required to be equipped with draft hoods, provided that the appliance manufacturer's instructions cover the installation of such a device in the venting system and performance in accordance with Sections 2427.3 and 2427.3.1 is obtained.
5. Vent dampers serving listed appliances installed in accordance with Sections 2428.2.1 and 2428.3.1 or other approved engineering methods.

2427.16 Outside wall penetrations. Where vents, including those for direct-vent appliances, penetrate outside walls of buildings, the annular spaces around such penetrations shall be permanently sealed using approved materials to prevent entry of combustion products into the building.

SECTION 2428
SIZING OF CATEGORY I APPLIANCE VENTING SYSTEMS

2428.1 Definitions. The following definitions apply to the tables in this section.

APPLIANCE CATEGORIZED VENT DIAMETER/AREA. The minimum vent area/diameter permissible for Category I appliances to maintain a nonpositive vent static pressure when tested in accordance with nationally recognized standards.

FAN-ASSISTED COMBUSTION SYSTEM. An appliance equipped with an integral mechanical means to either draw or force products of combustion through the combustion chamber or heat exchanger.

FAN Min. The minimum input rating of a Category I fan-assisted appliance attached to a vent or connector.

FAN Max. The maximum input rating of a Category I fan-assisted appliance attached to a vent or connector.

NAT Max. The maximum input rating of a Category I drafthood-equipped appliance attached to a vent or connector.

FAN + FAN. The maximum combined appliance input rating of two or more Category I fan-assisted appliances attached to the common vent.

FAN + NAT. The maximum combined appliance input rating of one or more Category I fan-assisted appliances and one or more Category I draft-hood-equipped appliances attached to the common vent.

NA. Vent configuration is not allowed due to potential for condensate formation or pressurization of the venting system, or not applicable due to physical or geometric restraints.

NAT + NAT. The maximum combined appliance input rating of two or more Category I draft-hood-equipped appliances attached to the common vent.

2428.2 Application of single-appliance vent Tables 2428.2(1) and 2428.2(2). The application of Tables 2428.2(1) and 2428.2(2) shall be subject to the requirements of Sections 2428.2.1 through 2428.2.17.

2428.2.1 Vent obstructions. These venting tables shall not be used where obstructions, as described in Section 2427.15, are installed in the venting system. The installation of vents serving listed appliances with vent dampers shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions or in accordance with the following:

1. The maximum capacity of the vent system shall be determined using the "NAT Max" column.
2. The minimum capacity shall be determined as if the appliance were a fan-assisted appliance, using the "FAN Min" column to determine the

minimum capacity of the vent system. Where the corresponding "FAN Min" is "NA," the vent configuration shall not be permitted and an alternative venting configuration shall be utilized.

2428.2.2 Minimum size. Where the vent size determined from the tables is smaller than the appliance draft hood outlet or flue collar, the smaller size shall be permitted to be used provided that all of the following requirements are met:

1. The total vent height (H) is not less than 10 feet (3048 mm).
2. Vents for appliance draft hood outlets or flue collars 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced more than one table size.
3. Vents for appliance draft hood outlets or flue collars larger than 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes.
4. The maximum capacity listed in the tables for a fan- assisted appliance is reduced by 10 percent (0.90 x maximum table capacity).
5. The draft hood outlet is greater than 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter. Do not connect a 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) vent to a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) draft hood outlet. This provision shall not apply to fan- assisted appliances.

2428.2.3 Vent offsets. Single-appliance venting configurations with zero (0) lateral lengths in Tables 2428.2(1) and 2428.2(2) shall not have elbows in the venting system. Single-appliance venting configurations with lateral lengths include two 90-degree (1.57 rad) elbows. For each additional elbow up to and including 45 degrees (0.79 rad), the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each additional elbow greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) up to and including 90 degrees (1.57 rad), the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent. Where multiple offsets occur in a vent, the total lateral length of all offsets combined shall not exceed that specified in Tables 2428.2(1) and 2428.2(2).

2428.2.4 Zero lateral. Zero (0) lateral (L) shall apply only to a straight vertical vent attached to a top outlet draft hood or flue collar.

2428.2.5 High-altitude installations. Sea-level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high-altitude installation. Actual input, derated for altitude, shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high-altitude installation.

2428.2.6 Multiple input rate appliances. For appliances with more than one input rate, the minimum vent capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall be less than the lowest appliance input rating, and the maximum vent

capacity (FAN Max/NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest appliance rating input.

2428.2.7 Liner system sizing and connections. Listed corrugated metallic chimney liner systems in masonry chimneys shall be sized by using Table 2428.2(1) or 2428.2(2) for Type B vents with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in Table 2428.2(1) or 2428.2(2). Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity further reduced in accordance with Section 2428.2.3. The 20-percent reduction for corrugated metallic chimney liner systems includes an allowance for one long-radius 90-degree (1.57 rad) turn at the bottom of the liner.

Connections between chimney liners and listed double-wall connectors shall be made with listed adapters designed for such purpose.

2428.2.8 Vent area and diameter. Where the vertical vent has a larger diameter than the vent connector, the vertical vent diameter shall be used to determine the minimum vent capacity, and the connector diameter shall be used to determine the maximum vent capacity. The flow area of the vertical vent shall not exceed seven times the flow area of the listed appliance categorized vent area, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area unless designed in accordance with approved engineering methods.

2428.2.9 Chimney and vent locations. Tables 2428.2(1) and 2428.2(2) shall be used only for chimneys and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. A Type B vent or listed chimney lining system passing through an unused masonry chimney flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. Where vents extend outdoors above the roof more than 5 feet (1524 mm) higher than required by Figure 2427.6.4, and where vents terminate in accordance with Section 2427.6.4, Item 2, the outdoor portion of the vent shall be enclosed as required by this section for vents not considered to be exposed to the outdoors or such venting system shall be engineered. A Type B vent shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors where it passes through an unventilated enclosure or chase insulated to a value of not less than R-8.

2428.2.10 Corrugated vent connector size. Corrugated vent connectors shall be not smaller than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter, or draft hood outlet diameter.

2428.2.11 Vent connector size limitation. Vent connectors shall not be increased in size more than two sizes greater than the listed appliance

categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter or draft hood outlet diameter.

2428.2.12 Component commingling. In a single run of vent or vent connector, different diameters and types of vent and connector components shall be permitted to be used, provided that all such sizes and types are permitted by the tables.

2428.2.13 Draft hood conversion accessories. Draft hood conversion accessories for use with masonry chimneys venting listed Category I fan-assisted appliances shall be listed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for such listed accessories.

2428.2.14 Table interpolation. Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between the table entries.

2428.2.15 Extrapolation prohibited. Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted.

2428.2.16 Engineering calculations. For vent heights less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and greater than shown in the tables, engineering methods shall be used to calculate vent capacities.

2428.2.17 Height entries. Where the actual height of a vent falls between entries in the height column of the applicable table in Tables 2428.2(1) and 2428.2(2), either interpolation shall be used or the lower appliance input rating shown in the table entries shall be used for FAN Max and NAT Max column values and the higher appliance input rating shall be used for the FAN Min column values.

2428.3 Application of multiple appliance vent Tables 2428.3(1) through 2428.3(4). The application of Tables 2428.3(1) through 2428.3(4) shall be subject to the requirements of Sections 2428.3.1 through 2428.3.24.

2428.3.1 Vent obstructions. These venting tables shall not be used where obstructions, as described in Section 2427.15, are installed in the venting system. The installation of vents serving listed appliances with vent dampers shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions or in accordance with the following:

1. The maximum capacity of the vent connector shall be determined using the NAT Max column.
2. The maximum capacity of the vertical vent or chimney shall be

determined using the FAN+NAT column where the second appliance is a fan-assisted appliance, or the NAT+NAT column where the second appliance is equipped with a draft hood.

3. The minimum capacity shall be determined as if the appliance were a fan-assisted appliance.
   3.1. The minimum capacity of the vent connector shall be determined using the FAN Min column.
   3.2. The FAN+FAN column shall be used where the second appliance is a fan-assisted appliance, and the FAN+NAT column shall be used where the second appliance is equipped with a draft hood, to determine whether the vertical vent or chimney configuration is not permitted (NA). Where the vent configuration is NA, the vent configuration shall not be permitted and an alternative venting con- figuration shall be utilized.

2428.3.2 Connector length limit. The vent connector shall be routed to the vent utilizing the shortest possible route. Except as provided in Section 2428.3.3, the maximum vent connector horizontal length shall be 1 1/2 -feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of connector diameter as shown in Table 2428.3.2.

TABLE 2428.3.2
MAXIMUM VENT CONNECTOR LENGTH

CONNECTOR DIAMETER (inches)	CONNECTOR MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL LENGTH (feet)
3	4 1/2
4	6
5	7 1/2
6	9
7	10 1/2
8	12
9	13 1/2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

2428.3.3 Connectors with longer lengths. Connectors with longer horizontal lengths than those listed in Section 2428.3.2 are permitted under the following conditions:

1. The maximum capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) of the vent connector shall be reduced 10 percent for each additional multiple of the length allowed by Section 2428.3.2. For example, the maximum length listed in Table 2428.3.2 for a 4-inch (102 mm) connector is 6 feet (1829 mm). With a connector length greater than 6 feet (1829 mm) but not exceeding 12 feet (3658 mm), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 10

percent (0.90 × maximum vent connector capacity). With a connector length greater than 12 feet (3658 mm), but not exceeding 18 feet (5486 mm), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum vent capacity).

2. For a connector serving a fan-assisted appliance, the minimum capacity (FAN Min) of the connector shall be determined by referring to the corresponding single-appliance table. For Type B double-wall connectors, Table 2428.2(1) shall be used. For single-wall connectors, Table 2428.2(2) shall be used. The height (*H*) and lateral (*L*) shall be measured according to the procedures for a single-appliance vent, as if the other appliances were not present.

2428.3.4 Vent connector manifold. Where the vent connectors are combined prior to entering the vertical portion of the common vent to form a common vent manifold, the size of the common vent manifold and the common vent shall be determined by applying a 10-percent reduction (0.90 × maximum common vent capacity) to the common vent capacity part of the common vent tables. The length of the common vent connector manifold (L_m) shall not exceed 1 $^1/_2$ -feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of common vent connector manifold diameter (*D*).

2428.3.5 Common vertical vent offset. Where the common vertical vent is offset, the maximum capacity of the common vent shall be reduced in accordance with Section 2428.3.6. The horizontal length of the common vent offset (L_0) shall not exceed 1 $^1/_2$ -feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of common vent diameter (*D*). Where multiple offsets occur in a common vent, the total horizontal length of all offsets combined shall not exceed 1 $^1/_2$ -feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of the common vent diameter (*D*).

2428.3.6 Elbows in vents. For each elbow up to and including 45 degrees (0.79 rad) in the common vent, the maximum common vent capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) up to and including 90 degrees (1.57 rad), the maximum common vent capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent.

2428.3.7 Elbows in connectors. The vent connector capacities listed in the common vent sizing tables include allowance for two 90-degree (1.57 rad) elbows. For each additional elbow up to and including 45 degrees (0.79 rad), the maximum vent connector capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) up to

and including 90 degrees (1.57 rad), the maximum vent connector capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent.

2428.3.8 Common vent minimum size. The cross-sectional area of the common vent shall be equal to or greater than the cross-sectional area of the largest connector.

2428.3.9 Common vent fittings. At the point where tee or wye fittings connect to a common vent, the opening size of the fitting shall be equal to the size of the common vent. Such fittings shall not be prohibited from having reduced-size openings at the point of connection of appliance vent connectors.

2428.3.9.1 Tee and wye fittings. Tee and wye fittings connected to a common gas vent shall be considered to be part of the common gas vent and shall be constructed of materials consistent with that of the common gas vent.

2428.3.10 High-altitude installations. Sea-level input ratings shall be used when determining maxi- mum capacity for high-altitude installation. Actual input, derated for altitude, shall be used for determining mini- mum capacity for high-altitude installation.

2428.3.11 Connector rise measurement. Connector rise (*R*) for each appliance connector shall be measured from the draft hood outlet or flue collar to the centerline where the vent gas streams come together.

2428.3.12 Vent height measurement. For multiple appliances all located on one floor, available total height (*H*) shall be measured from the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar up to the level of the outlet of the common vent.

2428.3.13 Vertical vent maximum size. Where two or more appliances are connected to a vertical vent or chimney, the flow area of the largest section of vertical vent or chimney shall not exceed seven times the smallest listed appliance categorized vent areas, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area unless designed in accordance with approved engineering methods.

2428.3.14 Multiple input rate appliances. For appliances with more than one input rate, the mini- mum vent connector capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall be less than the lowest appliance input rating, and the maximum vent connector capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest appliance input rating.

2428.3.15 Liner system sizing and connections. Listed, corrugated metallic chimney liner systems in masonry chimneys shall be sized by using Table 2428.3(1) or 2428.3(2) for Type B vents, with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maxi- mum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in Table 2428.3(1) or 2428.3(2). Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity further reduced in accordance with Sections 2428.3.5 and 2428.3.6. The 20-percent reduction for corrugated metallic chimney liner systems includes an allowance for one long-radius 90-degree (1.57 rad) turn at the bottom of the liner. Where double-wall connectors are required, tee and wye fittings used to connect to the common vent chimney liner shall be listed double-wall fittings. Connections between chimney liners and listed double-wall fittings shall be made with listed adapter fittings designed for such purpose.

2428.3.16 Chimney and vent location. Tables 2428.3(1), 2428.3(2), 2428.3(3) and 2428.3(4) shall be used only for chimneys and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. A Type B vent or listed chimney lining system passing through an unused masonry chimney flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. Where vents extend outdoors above the roof more than 5 feet (1524 mm) higher than required by Figure 2427.6.4 and where vents terminate in accordance with Section 2427.6.4, Item 2, the outdoor portion of the vent shall be enclosed as required by this section for vents not considered to be exposed to the outdoors or such venting system shall be engineered. A Type B vent shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors where it passes through an unventilated enclosure or chase insulated to a value of not less than R8.

2428.3.17 Connector maximum and mini- mum size. Vent connectors shall not be increased in size more than two sizes greater than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter or draft hood outlet diameter. Vent connectors for draft-hood-equipped appliances shall not be smaller than the draft hood outlet diameter. Where a vent connector size(s) determined from the tables for a fan-assisted appliance(s) is smaller than the flue collar diameter, the use of the smaller size(s) shall be permitted provided that the installation complies with all of the following conditions:

1. Vent connectors for fan-assisted appliance flue collars 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced by more than one table size [for example, 12 inches to 10 inches (305 mm to 254 mm) is a one-size reduction] and those larger than 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes [for example, 24 inches to 20 inches

(610 mm to 508 mm) is a two-size reduction].

2. The fan-assisted appliance(s) is common vented with a draft-hood-equipped appliance(s).
3. The vent connector has a smooth interior wall.

2428.3.18 Component commingling. Combinations of pipe sizes and combinations of single-wall and double-wall metal pipe shall be allowed within any connector run(s) or within the common vent, provided that all of the appropriate tables permit all of the desired sizes and types of pipe, as if they were used for the entire length of the subject connector or vent. Where single-wall and Type B double-wall metal pipes are used for vent connectors within the same venting system, the common vent must be sized using Table 2428.3(2) or 2428.3(4), as appropriate.

2428.3.19 Draft hood conversion accessories. Draft hood conversion accessories for use with masonry chimneys venting listed Category I fan-assisted appliances shall be listed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for such listed accessories.

2428.3.20 Multiple sizes permitted. Where a table permits more than one diameter of pipe to be used for a connector or vent, all of the permitted sizes shall be permitted to be used.

2428.3.21 Table interpolation. Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between table entries.

2428.3.22 Extrapolation prohibited. Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted.

2428.3.23 Engineering calculations. For vent heights less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and greater than shown in the tables, engineering methods shall be used to calculate vent capacities.

2428.3.24 Height entries. Where the actual height of a vent falls between entries in the height column of the applicable table in Tables 2428.3(1) through 2428.3(4), either interpolation shall be used or the lower appliance input rating shown in the table shall be used for FAN Max and NAT Max column values and the higher appliance input rating shall be used for the FAN Min column values.

TABLE 2428.2(1)
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent connection	Connected directly to vent

HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	LATERAL (*L*) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																					
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																					
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	0	0	78	46	0	152	86	0	251	141	0	375	205	0	524	285	0	698	370	0	897	470
	2	13	51	36	18	97	67	27	157	105	32	232	157	44	321	217	53	425	285	63	543	370
	4	21	49	34	30	94	64	39	153	103	50	227	153	66	316	211	79	419	279	93	536	362
	6	25	46	32	36	91	61	47	149	100	59	223	149	78	310	205	93	413	273	110	530	354
8	0	0	84	50	0	165	94	0	276	155	0	415	235	0	583	320	0	780	415	0	1,006	537
	2	12	57	40	16	109	75	25	178	120	28	263	180	42	365	247	50	483	322	60	619	418
	5	23	53	38	32	103	71	42	171	115	53	255	173	70	356	237	83	473	313	99	607	407
	8	28	49	35	39	98	66	51	164	109	64	247	165	84	347	227	99	463	303	117	596	396
10	0	0	88	53	0	175	100	0	295	166	0	447	255	0	631	345	0	847	450	0	1,096	585
	2	12	61	42	17	118	81	23	194	129	26	289	195	40	402	273	48	533	355	57	684	457
	5	23	57	40	32	113	77	41	187	124	52	280	188	68	392	263	81	522	346	95	671	446
	10	30	51	36	41	104	70	54	176	115	67	267	175	88	376	245	104	504	330	122	651	427
15	0	0	94	58	0	191	112	0	327	187	0	502	285	0	716	390	0	970	525	0	1,263	682
	2	11	69	48	15	136	93	20	226	150	22	339	225	38	475	316	45	633	414	53	815	544
	5	22	65	45	30	130	87	39	219	142	49	330	217	64	463	300	76	620	403	90	800	529
	10	29	59	41	40	121	82	51	206	135	64	315	208	84	445	288	99	600	386	116	777	507
	15	35	53	37	48	112	76	61	195	128	76	301	198	98	429	275	115	580	373	134	755	491
20	0	0	97	61	0	202	119	0	349	202	0	540	307	0	776	430	0	1,057	575	0	1,384	752
	2	10	75	51	14	149	100	18	250	166	20	377	249	33	531	346	41	711	470	50	917	612
	5	21	71	48	29	143	96	38	242	160	47	367	241	62	519	337	73	697	460	86	902	599
	10	28	64	44	38	133	89	50	229	150	62	351	228	81	499	321	95	675	443	112	877	576
	15	34	58	40	46	124	84	59	217	142	73	337	217	94	481	308	111	654	427	129	853	557
	20	48	52	35	55	116	78	69	206	134	84	322	206	107	464	295	125	634	410	145	830	537

TABLE 2428.2(1)
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT
(continued)

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent connection	Connected directly to vent

HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	LATERAL (*L*) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																				
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																				
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
30	0	0	100	64	0	213	128	0	374	220	0	587	336	0	853	475	0	1,173	650	0	1,548	855
	2	9	81	56	13	166	112	14	283	185	18	432	280	27	613	394	33	826	535	42	1,072	700
	5	21	77	54	28	160	108	36	275	176	45	421	273	58	600	385	69	811	524	82	1,055	688
	10	27	70	50	37	150	102	48	262	171	59	405	261	77	580	371	91	788	507	107	1,028	668
	15	33	64	NA	44	141	96	57	249	163	70	389	249	90	560	357	105	765	490	124	1,002	648
	20	56	58	NA	53	132	90	66	237	154	80	374	237	102	542	343	119	743	473	139	977	628
	30	NA	NA	NA	73	113	NA	88	214	NA	104	346	219	131	507	321	149	702	444	171	929	594
50	0	0	101	67	0	216	134	0	397	232	0	633	363	0	932	518	0	1,297	708	0	1,730	952
	2	8	86	61	11	183	122	14	320	206	15	497	314	22	715	445	26	975	615	33	1,276	813
	5	20	82	NA	27	177	119	35	312	200	43	487	308	55	702	438	65	960	605	77	1,259	798
	10	26	76	NA	35	168	114	45	299	190	56	471	298	73	681	426	86	935	589	101	1,230	773
	15	59	70	NA	42	158	NA	54	287	180	66	455	288	85	662	413	100	911	572	117	1,203	747
	20	NA	NA	NA	50	149	NA	63	275	169	76	440	278	97	642	401	113	888	556	131	1,176	722
	30	NA	NA	NA	69	131	NA	84	250	NA	99	410	259	123	605	376	141	844	522	161	1,125	670

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE 2428.2(2)
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent connection	Single-wall metal connector

HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	LATERAL (*L*) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																											
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			12				
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																											
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT		
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max		
6	0	38	77	45	59	151	85	85	249	140	126	373	204	165	522	284	211	695	369	267	894	469	371	1,118	569	537	1,639	849		
	2	39	51	36	60	96	66	85	156	104	123	231	156	159	320	213	201	423	284	251	541	368	347	673	453	498	979	648		
	4	NA	NA	33	74	92	63	102	152	102	146	225	152	187	313	208	237	416	277	295	533	360	409	664	443	584	971	638		
	6	NA	NA	31	83	89	60	114	147	99	163	220	148	207	307	203	263	409	271	327	526	352	449	656	433	638	962	627		
8	0	37	83	50	58	164	93	83	273	154	123	412	234	161	580	319	206	777	414	258	1,002	536	360	1,257	658	521	1,852	967		
	2	39	56	39	59	108	75	83	176	119	121	261	179	155	363	246	197	482	321	246	617	417	339	768	513	486	1,120	743		
	5	NA	NA	37	77	102	69	107	168	114	151	252	171	193	352	235	245	470	311	305	604	404	418	754	500	598	1,104	730		
	8	NA	NA	33	90	95	64	122	161	107	175	243	163	223	342	225	280	458	300	344	591	392	470	740	486	665	1,089	715		
10	0	37	87	53	57	174	99	82	293	165	120	444	254	158	628	344	202	844	449	253	1,093	584	351	1,373	718	507	2,031	1,057		
	2	39	61	41	59	117	80	82	193	128	119	287	194	153	400	272	193	531	354	242	681	456	332	849	559	475	1,242	848		
	5	52	56	39	76	111	76	105	185	122	148	277	186	190	388	261	241	518	344	299	667	443	409	834	544	584	1,224	825		
	10	NA	NA	34	97	100	68	132	171	112	188	261	171	237	369	241	296	497	325	363	643	423	492	808	520	688	1,194	788		
15	0	36	93	57	56	190	111	80	325	186	116	499	283	153	713	388	195	966	523	244	1,259	681	336	1,591	838	488	2,374	1,237		
	2	38	69	47	57	136	93	80	225	149	115	337	224	148	473	314	187	631	413	232	812	543	319	1,015	673	457	1,491	983		
	5	51	63	44	75	128	86	102	216	140	144	326	217	182	459	298	231	616	400	287	795	526	392	997	657	562	1,469	963		
	10	NA	NA	39	95	116	79	128	201	131	182	308	203	228	438	284	284	592	381	349	768	501	470	966	628	664	1,433	928		
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	72	158	186	124	220	290	192	272	418	269	334	568	367	404	742	484	540	937	601	750	1,399	894		
20	0	35	96	60	54	200	118	78	346	201	114	537	306	149	772	428	190	1,053	573	238	1,379	750	326	1,751	927	473	2,631	1,346		
	2	37	74	50	56	148	99	78	248	165	113	375	248	144	528	344	182	708	468	227	914	611	309	1,146	754	443	1,689	1,098		
	5	50	68	47	73	140	94	100	239	158	141	363	239	178	514	334	224	692	457	279	896	596	381	1,126	734	547	1,665	1,074		
	10	NA	NA	41	93	129	86	125	223	146	177	344	224	222	491	316	277	666	437	339	866	570	457	1,092	702	646	1,626	1,037		
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	80	155	208	136	216	325	210	264	469	301	325	640	419	393	838	549	526	1,060	677	730	1,587	1,005		
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	186	192	126	254	306	196	309	448	285	374	616	400	448	810	526	592	1,028	651	808	1,550	973		

TABLE 2428.2(2)
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT
(continued)

Number of Appliances	Single
Appliance Type	Category I
Appliance Vent connection	Single-wall metal connector

HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	LATERAL (*L*) (feet)	VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																										
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			12		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																										
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Mi	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
30	0	34	99	63	53	211	127	76	372	219	110	584	334	144	849	472	184	1,168	647	229	1,542	852	312	1,971	1,056	454	2,996	1,545
	2	37	80	56	55	164	111	76	281	183	109	429	279	139	610	392	175	823	533	219	1,069	698	296	1,346	863	424	1,999	1,308
	5	49	74	52	72	157	106	98	271	173	136	417	271	171	595	382	215	806	521	269	1,049	684	366	1,324	846	524	1,971	1,283
	10	NA	NA	NA	91	144	98	122	255	168	171	397	257	213	570	367	265	777	501	327	1,017	662	440	1,287	821	620	1,927	1,234
	15	NA	NA	NA	115	131	NA	151	239	157	208	377	242	255	547	349	312	750	481	379	985	638	507	1,251	794	702	1,884	1,205
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	181	223	NA	246	357	228	298	524	333	360	723	461	433	955	615	570	1,216	768	780	1,841	1,166
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	389	477	305	461	670	426	541	895	574	704	1,147	720	937	1,759	1,101
50	0	33	99	66	51	213	133	73	394	230	105	629	361	138	928	515	176	1,292	704	220	1,724	948	295	2,223	1,189	428	3,432	1,818
	2	36	84	61	53	181	121	73	318	205	104	495	312	133	712	443	168	971	613	209	1,273	811	280	1,615	1,007	401	2,426	1,509
	5	48	80	NA	70	174	117	94	308	198	131	482	305	164	696	435	204	953	602	257	1,252	795	347	1,591	991	496	2,396	1,490
	10	NA	NA	NA	89	160	NA	118	292	186	162	461	292	203	671	420	253	923	583	313	1,217	765	418	1,551	963	589	2,347	1,455
	15	NA	NA	NA	112	148	NA	145	275	174	199	441	280	244	646	405	299	894	562	363	1,183	736	481	1,512	934	668	2,299	1,421
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	176	257	NA	236	420	267	285	622	389	345	866	543	415	1,150	708	544	1,473	906	741	2,251	1,387
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	315	376	NA	373	573	NA	442	809	502	521	1,086	649	674	1,399	848	892	2,159	1,318

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE 2428.3(1)
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliances Type	Category I
Appliances Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE (*R*) (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT AND CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	22	37	26	35	66	46	46	106	72	58	164	104	77	225	142	92	296	185	109	376	237	128	466	289
	2	23	41	31	37	75	55	48	121	86	60	183	124	79	253	168	95	333	220	112	424	282	131	526	345
	3	24	44	35	38	81	62	49	132	96	62	199	139	82	275	189	97	363	248	114	463	317	134	575	386
8	1	22	40	27	35	72	48	49	114	76	64	176	109	84	243	148	100	320	194	118	408	248	138	507	303
	2	23	44	32	36	80	57	51	128	90	66	195	129	86	269	175	103	356	230	121	454	294	141	564	358
	3	24	47	36	37	87	64	53	139	101	67	210	145	88	290	198	105	384	258	123	492	330	143	612	402
10	1	22	43	28	34	78	50	49	123	78	65	189	113	89	257	154	106	341	200	125	436	257	146	542	314
	2	23	47	33	36	86	59	51	136	93	67	206	134	91	282	182	109	374	238	128	479	305	149	596	372
	3	24	50	37	37	92	67	52	146	104	69	220	150	94	303	205	111	402	268	131	515	342	152	642	417
15	1	21	50	30	33	89	53	47	142	83	64	220	120	88	298	163	110	389	214	134	493	273	162	609	333
	2	22	53	35	35	96	63	49	153	99	66	235	142	91	320	193	112	419	253	137	532	323	165	658	394
	3	24	55	40	36	102	71	51	163	111	68	248	160	93	339	218	115	445	286	140	565	365	167	700	444
20	1	21	54	31	33	99	56	46	157	87	62	246	125	86	334	171	107	436	224	131	552	285	158	681	347
	2	22	57	37	34	105	66	48	167	104	64	259	149	89	354	202	110	463	265	134	587	339	161	725	414
	3	23	60	42	35	110	74	50	176	116	66	271	168	91	371	228	113	486	300	137	618	383	164	764	466
30	1	20	62	33	31	113	59	45	181	93	60	288	134	83	391	182	103	512	238	125	649	305	151	802	372
	2	21	64	39	33	118	70	47	190	110	62	299	158	85	408	215	105	535	282	129	679	360	155	840	439
	3	22	66	44	34	123	79	48	198	124	64	309	178	88	423	242	108	555	317	132	706	405	158	874	494

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL COMMON VENT DIAMETER (*D*)—inches																				
	4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																				
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	92	81	65	140	116	103	204	161	147	309	248	200	404	314	260	547	434	335	672	520	410
8	101	90	73	155	129	114	224	178	163	339	275	223	444	348	290	602	480	378	740	577	465
10	110	97	79	169	141	124	243	194	178	367	299	242	477	377	315	649	522	405	800	627	495
15	125	112	91	195	164	144	283	228	206	427	352	280	556	444	365	753	612	465	924	733	565
20	136	123	102	215	183	160	314	255	229	475	394	310	621	499	405	842	688	523	1,035	826	640
30	152	138	118	244	210	185	361	297	266	547	459	360	720	585	470	979	808	605	1,209	975	740
50	167	153	134	279	244	214	421	353	310	641	547	423	854	706	550	1,164	977	705	1,451	1,188	860

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE 2428.3(2)
TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliances Type	Category I
Appliances Vent Connection	Single-wall metal connector

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE (*R*) (feet)	SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	NA	NA	26	NA	NA	46	NA	NA	71	NA	NA	102	207	223	140	262	293	183	325	373	234	447	463	286
	2	NA	NA	31	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	85	168	182	123	215	251	167	271	331	219	334	422	281	458	524	344
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	62	121	131	95	175	198	138	222	273	188	279	361	247	344	462	316	468	574	385
8	1	NA	NA	27	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	75	NA	NA	106	226	240	145	285	316	191	352	403	244	481	502	299
	2	NA	NA	32	NA	NA	57	125	126	89	184	193	127	234	266	173	293	353	228	360	450	292	492	560	355
	3	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	64	130	138	100	191	208	144	241	287	197	302	381	256	370	489	328	501	609	400
10	1	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	50	119	121	77	182	186	110	240	253	150	302	335	196	372	429	252	506	534	308
	2	NA	NA	33	84	85	59	124	134	91	189	203	132	248	278	183	311	369	235	381	473	302	517	589	368
	3	NA	NA	36	89	91	67	129	144	102	197	217	148	257	299	203	320	398	265	391	511	339	528	637	413
15	1	NA	NA	29	79	87	52	116	138	81	177	214	116	238	291	158	312	380	208	397	482	266	556	596	324
	2	NA	NA	34	83	94	62	121	150	97	185	230	138	246	314	189	321	411	248	407	522	317	568	646	387
	3	NA	NA	39	87	100	70	127	160	109	193	243	157	255	333	215	331	438	281	418	557	360	579	690	437
20	1	49	56	30	78	97	54	115	152	84	175	238	120	233	325	165	306	425	217	390	538	276	546	664	336
	2	52	59	36	82	103	64	120	163	101	182	252	144	243	346	197	317	453	259	400	574	331	558	709	403
	3	55	62	40	87	107	72	125	172	113	190	264	164	252	363	223	326	476	294	412	607	375	570	750	457
30	1	47	60	31	77	110	57	112	175	89	169	278	129	226	380	175	296	497	230	378	630	294	528	779	358
	2	51	62	37	81	115	67	117	185	106	177	290	152	236	397	208	307	521	274	389	662	349	541	819	425
	3	54	64	42	85	119	76	122	193	120	185	300	172	244	412	235	316	542	309	400	690	394	555	855	482

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL COMMON VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																							
	4			5			6			7			8			9			10					
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT			
6	NA	78	64	NA	113	99	200	158	144	304	244	196	398	310	257	541	429	332	665	515	407			
8	NA	87	71	NA	126	111	218	173	159	331	269	218	436	342	285	592	473	373	730	569	460			
10	NA	94	76	163	137	120	237	189	174	357	292	236	467	369	309	638	512	398	787	617	487			
15	121	108	88	189	159	140	275	221	200	416	343	274	544	434	357	738	599	456	905	718	553			
20	131	118	98	208	177	156	305	247	223	463	383	302	606	487	395	824	673	512	1,013	808	626			
30	145	132	113	236	202	180	350	286	257	533	446	349	703	570	459	958	790	593	1,183	952	723			
50	159	145	128	268	233	208	406	337	296	622	529	410	833	686	535	1,139	954	689	1,418	1,157	838			

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE 2428.3(3)
MASONRY CHIMNEY

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliances Type	Category I
Appliances Vent Connection	Type B double-wall connector

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE (*R*) (feet)	TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(*D*) inches																								
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																								
		FAN	NAT		FAN	NAT		FAN	NAT		FAN	NAT		FAN	NAT		FAN	NAT		FAN	NAT		FAN	NAT		
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Max
6	1	24	33	21	39	62	40	52	106	67	65	194	101	87	274	141	104	370	201	124	479	253	145	599	319	
	2	26	43	28	41	79	52	53	133	85	67	230	124	89	324	173	107	436	232	127	562	300	148	694	378	
	3	27	49	34	42	92	61	55	155	97	69	262	143	91	369	203	109	491	270	129	633	349	151	795	439	
8	1	24	39	22	39	72	41	55	117	69	71	213	105	94	304	148	113	414	210	134	539	267	156	682	335	
	2	26	47	29	40	87	53	57	140	86	73	246	127	97	350	179	116	473	240	137	615	311	160	776	394	
	3	27	52	34	42	97	62	59	159	98	75	269	145	99	383	206	119	517	276	139	672	358	163	848	452	
10	1	24	42	22	38	80	42	55	130	71	74	232	108	101	324	153	120	444	216	142	582	277	165	739	348	
	2	26	50	29	40	93	54	57	153	87	76	261	129	103	366	184	123	498	247	145	652	321	168	825	407	
	3	27	55	35	41	105	63	58	170	100	78	284	148	106	397	209	126	540	281	147	705	366	171	893	463	
15	1	24	48	23	38	93	44	54	154	74	72	277	114	100	384	164	125	511	229	153	658	297	184	824	375	
	2	25	55	31	39	105	55	56	174	89	74	299	134	103	419	192	128	558	260	156	718	339	187	900	432	
	3	26	59	35	41	115	64	57	189	102	76	319	153	105	448	215	131	597	292	159	760	382	190	960	486	
20	1	24	52	24	37	102	46	53	172	77	71	313	119	98	437	173	123	584	239	150	752	312	180	943	397	
	2	25	58	31	39	114	56	55	190	91	73	335	138	101	467	199	126	625	270	153	805	354	184	1,011	452	
	3	26	63	35	40	123	65	57	204	104	75	353	157	104	493	222	129	661	301	156	851	396	187	1,067	505	

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	MINIMUM INTERNAL AREA OF MASONRY CHIMNEY FLUE (square inches)																								
	12			19			28			38			50			63			78			113			
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																								
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	
6	NA	74	25	NA	119	46	NA	178	71	NA	257	103	NA	351	143	NA	458	188	NA	582	246	1,041	853	NA	
8	NA	80	28	NA	130	53	NA	193	82	NA	279	119	NA	384	163	NA	501	218	724	636	278	1,144	937	408	
10	NA	84	31	NA	138	56	NA	207	90	NA	299	131	NA	409	177	606	538	236	776	686	302	1,226	1,010	454	
15	NA	NA	36	NA	152	67	NA	233	106	NA	334	152	523	467	212	682	611	283	874	781	365	1,374	1,156	546	
20	NA	NA	41	NA	NA	75	NA	250	122	NA	368	172	565	508	243	742	668	325	955	858	419	1,513	1,286	648	
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	270	137	NA	404	198	615	564	278	816	747	381	1,062	969	496	1,702	1,473	749	
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	620	328	879	831	461	1,165	1,089	606	1,905	1,692	922	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE 2428.3(4)
MASONRY CHIMNEY

Number of Appliances	Two or more
Appliances Type	Category I
Appliances Vent Connection	Single-wall connector

VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet)	CONNECTOR RISE (*R*) (feet)	SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER (*D*)—inches																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
		FAN		NA	FAN		NA	FAN		NA	FAN		NA	FAN		NA	FAN		NA	FAN		NAT	FAN		NA
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	NA	NA	21	NA	NA	39	NA	NA	66	179	191	100	231	271	140	292	366	200	362	474	252	499	594	316
	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	84	186	227	123	239	321	172	301	432	231	373	557	299	509	696	376
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	61	134	153	97	193	258	142	247	365	202	309	491	269	381	634	348	519	793	437
8	1	NA	NA	21	NA	NA	40	NA	NA	68	195	208	103	250	298	146	313	407	207	387	530	263	529	672	331
	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	137	139	85	202	240	125	258	343	177	323	465	238	397	607	309	540	766	391
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	62	143	156	98	210	264	145	266	376	205	332	509	274	407	663	356	551	838	450
10	1	NA	NA	22	NA	NA	41	130	151	70	202	225	106	267	316	151	333	434	213	410	571	273	558	727	343
	2	NA	NA	29	NA	NA	53	136	150	86	210	255	128	276	358	181	343	489	244	420	640	317	569	813	403
	3	NA	NA	34	97	102	62	143	166	99	217	277	147	284	389	207	352	530	279	430	694	363	580	880	459
15	1	NA	NA	23	NA	NA	43	129	151	73	199	271	112	268	376	161	349	502	225	445	646	291	623	808	366
	2	NA	NA	30	92	103	54	135	170	88	207	295	132	277	411	189	359	548	256	456	706	334	634	884	424
	3	NA	NA	34	96	112	63	141	185	101	215	315	151	286	439	213	368	586	289	466	755	378	646	945	479
20	1	NA	NA	23	87	99	45	128	167	76	197	303	117	265	425	169	345	569	235	439	734	306	614	921	347
	2	NA	NA	30	91	111	55	134	185	90	205	325	136	274	455	195	355	610	266	450	787	348	627	986	443
	3	NA	NA	35	96	119	64	140	199	103	213	343	154	282	481	219	365	644	298	461	831	391	639	1,042	496

COMMON VENT CAPACITY

VENT HEIGHT (H) (feet)	MINIMUM INTERNAL AREA OF MASONRY CHIMNEY FLUE (square inches)																							
	12			19			28			38			50			63			78			113		
	COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H																							
	FAN +FA	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FA	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FA	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FA	FAN +NA	NAT +NA	FAN +FA	FAN +NA	NAT +NAT
6	NA	NA	25	NA	118	45	NA	176	71	NA	255	102	NA	348	142	NA	455	187	NA	579	245	NA	846	NA
8	NA	NA	28	NA	128	52	NA	190	81	NA	276	118	NA	380	162	NA	497	217	NA	633	277	1,136	928	405
10	NA	NA	31	NA	136	56	NA	205	89	NA	295	129	NA	405	175	NA	532	234	171	680	300	1,216	1,000	450
15	NA	NA	36	NA	NA	66	NA	230	105	NA	335	150	NA	400	210	677	602	280	866	772	360	1,359	1,139	540
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	74	NA	247	120	NA	362	170	NA	503	240	765	661	321	947	849	415	1,495	1,264	640
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	135	NA	398	195	NA	558	275	808	739	377	1,052	957	490	1,682	1,447	740
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	612	325	NA	821	456	1,152	1,076	600	1,879	1,672	910

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

SECTION 2429
DIRECT-VENT, INTEGRAL VENT, MECHANICAL VENT AND VENTILATION/EXHAUST HOOD VENTING

2429.1 General. The installation of direct-vent and integral vent appliances shall be in accordance with Section 2427. Mechanical venting systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 2427.

SECTION 2430
FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

2430.1 Listing. Factory-built chimneys for building heating appliances producing flue gases having a temperature not greater than 1,000ºF (538ºC), measured at the entrance to the chimney, shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 103 and shall be installed and terminated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2430.2 Support. Where factory-built chimneys are supported by structural members, such as joists and rafters, such members shall be designed to support the additional load.

SECTION 2431
GENERAL

2431.1 Scope. Sections 2432 through 2454 shall govern the approval, design, installation, construction, maintenance, alteration and repair of the appliances and equipment specifically identified herein.

SECTION 2432
DECORATIVE APPLIANCES FOR INSTALLATION IN FIREPLACES

2432.1 General. Decorative appliances for installation in approved solid fuel-burning fireplaces shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.60/CSA 6.26 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Manually lighted natural gas decorative appliances shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.84.

2432.2 Flame safeguard device. Decorative appliances for installation in approved solid fuel-burning fireplaces, with the exception of those tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.84, shall utilize a direct ignition device, an ignitor or a pilot flame to ignite the fuel at the main burner, and shall be equipped with a flame

safeguard device. The flame safe-guard device shall automatically shut off the fuel supply to a main burner or group of burners when the means of ignition of such burners becomes inoperative.

2432.3 Prohibited installations. Decorative appliances for installation in fireplaces shall not be installed where prohibited by Section 2406.2.

SECTION 2433
LOG LIGHTERS

2433.1 General. Log lighters shall be tested in accordance with CSA 8 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 2434
VENTED GAS FIREPLACES (DECORATIVE APPLIANCES)

2434.1 General. Vented gas fireplaces shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.50/CSA 2.22, shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall be designed and equipped as specified in Section 2432.2.

2434.2 Access. Panels, grilles and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building.

SECTION 2435
VENTED GAS FIREPLACE HEATERS

2435.1 General. Vented gas fireplace heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.88/CSA-2.33 and shall be designed and equipped as specified in Section 2432.2.

SECTION 2436
VENTED WALL FURNACES

2436.1 General. Vented wall furnaces shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2436.2 Venting. Vented wall furnaces shall be vented in accordance with Section 2427.

2436.3 Location. Vented wall furnaces shall be located so as not to cause a fire hazard to walls, floors, combustible furnishings or doors. Vented wall furnaces installed between bathrooms and adjoining rooms shall not circulate air from bathrooms to other parts of the building.

2436.4 Door swing. Vented wall furnaces shall be located so that a door cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of an air inlet or air outlet of such furnace measured at right angles to the opening. Doorstops or door closers shall not be installed to obtain this clearance.

2436.5 Ducts prohibited. Ducts shall not be attached to wall furnaces. Casing extension boots shall not be installed unless listed as part of the appliance.

2436.6 Access. Vented wall furnaces shall be provided with access for cleaning of heating surfaces, removal of burners, replacement of sections, motors, controls, filters and other working parts, and for adjustments and lubrication of parts requiring such attention. Panels, grilles and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building construction.

SECTION 2437
FLOOR FURNACES

2437.1 General. Floor furnaces shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2437.2 Placement. The following provisions apply to floor furnaces:

1. Floors. Floor furnaces shall not be installed in the floor of any doorway, stairway landing, aisle or passageway of any enclosure, public or private, or in an exitway from any such room or space.
2. Walls and corners. The register of a floor furnace with a horizontal warm air outlet shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to the nearest wall. A distance of not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from two adjoining sides of the floor furnace register to walls shall be provided to eliminate the necessity of occupants walking over the warm-air discharge. The remaining sides shall be permitted to be placed not closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to a wall. Wall-register models shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to a corner.
3. Draperies. The furnace shall be placed so that a door, drapery, or similar object cannot be nearer than 12 inches (305 mm) to any portion of the

register of the furnace.

4. Floor construction. Floor furnaces shall not be installed in concrete floor construction built on grade.
5. Thermostat. The controlling thermostat for a floor furnace shall be located within the same room or space as the floor furnace or shall be located in an adjacent room or space that is permanently open to the room or space containing the floor furnace.

2437.3 Bracing. The floor around the furnace shall be braced and headed with a support framework designed in accordance with Chapter 5.

2437.4 Clearance. The lowest portion of the floor furnace shall have not less than a 6-inch (152 mm) clearance from the grade level; except where the lower 6-inch (152 mm) portion of the floor furnace is sealed by the manufacturer to prevent entrance of water, the minimum clearance shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Where such clearances cannot be provided, the ground below and to the sides shall be excavated to form a pit under the furnace so that the required clearance is provided beneath the lowest portion of the furnace. A 12-inch (305 mm) minimum clearance shall be provided on all sides except the control side, which shall have an 18-inch (457 mm) minimum clearance.

2437.5 First-floor installation. Where the basement story level below the floor in which a floor furnace is installed is utilized as habitable space, such floor furnaces shall be enclosed as specified in Section 2437.6 and shall project into a non-habitable space.

2437.6 Upper-floor installations. Floor furnaces installed in upper stories of buildings shall project below into non-habitable space and shall be separated from the non-habitable space by an enclosure constructed of noncombustible materials. The floor furnace shall be provided with access, clearance to all sides and bottom of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) and combustion air in accordance with Section 2407.

SECTION 2438
CLOTHES DRYERS

2438.1 General. Clothes dryers shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.5.1/CSA 7.1 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 2439

CLOTHES DRYER EXHAUST

2439.1 Installation. Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Dryer exhaust systems shall be independent of all other systems and shall convey the moisture and any products of combustion to the outside of the building.

2439.2 Duct penetrations. Ducts that exhaust clothes dryers shall not penetrate or be located within any fireblocking, draftstopping or any wall, floor/ceiling or other assembly required by this code to be fire-resistance rated, unless such duct is constructed of galvanized steel or aluminum of the thickness specified in the mechanical provisions of this code and the fire-resistance rating is maintained in accordance with this code. Fire dampers shall not be installed in clothes dryer exhaust duct systems.

2439.3 Exhaust installation. Exhaust ducts for clothes dryers shall terminate on the outside of the building and shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Screens shall not be installed at the duct termination. Ducts shall not be connected or installed with sheet metal screws or other fasteners that will obstruct the flow. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall not be connected to a vent connector, vent or chimney. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall not extend into or through ducts or plenums. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall be sealed in accordance with Section 1601.4.1.

2439.3.1 Exhaust termination outlet and passageway. The passageway of dryer exhaust duct terminals shall be undiminished in size and shall provide an open area of not less than 12.5 square inches (8065 mm^2).

2439.4 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilators. Domestic dryer exhaust duct power ventilators shall be listed and labeled to UL 705 for use in dryer exhaust duct systems. The dryer exhaust duct power ventilator shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2439.5 Makeup air. Installations exhausting more than 200 cfm (0.09 m^3/s) shall be provided with makeup air. Where a closet is designed for the installation of a clothes dryer, an opening having an area of not less than 100 square inches (0.0645 m^2) for makeup air shall be provided in the closet enclosure, or makeup air shall be provided by other approved means.

2439.6 Protection required. Protective shield plates shall be placed where nails or screws from finish or other work are likely to penetrate the clothes dryer exhaust

duct. Shield plates shall be placed on the finished face of all framing members where there is less than 1 1/4 -inches (32 mm) between the duct and the finished face of the framing member. Protective shield plates shall be constructed of steel, shall have a minimum thickness of 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) and shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

2439.7 Domestic clothes dryer exhaust ducts. Exhaust ducts for domestic clothes dryers shall conform to the requirements of Sections 2439.7.1 through 2439.7.6.

2439.7.1 Material and size. Exhaust ducts shall have a smooth interior finish and shall be constructed of metal not less than 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) in thickness. The exhaust duct size shall be 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in diameter.

2439.7.2 Duct installation. Exhaust ducts shall be supported at 4-foot (1219 mm) intervals and secured in place. The insert end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct or fitting in the direction of airflow. Ducts shall not be joined with screws or similar fasteners that protrude more than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) into the inside of the duct. Where dryer exhaust ducts are enclosed in wall or ceiling cavities, such cavities shall allow the installation of the duct without deformation.

2439.7.3 Transition ducts. Transition ducts used to connect the dryer to the exhaust duct system shall be a single length that is listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2158A. Transition ducts shall be not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length and shall not be concealed within construction.

2439.7.4 Duct length. The maximum allowable exhaust duct length shall be determined by one of the methods specified in Sections 2439.7.4.1 through 2439.7.4.3.

2439.7.4.1 Specified length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be 35 feet (10 668 mm) from the connection to the transition duct from the dryer to the outlet terminal. Where fittings are used, the maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be reduced in accordance with Table 2439.7.4.1.

TABLE 2439.7.4.1
DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING EQUIVALENT LENGTH

DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING TYPE	EQUIVALENT LENGTH
4-inch radius mitered 45-degree elbow	2 feet, 6 inches
4-inch radius mitered 90-degree elbow	5 feet
6-inch radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
6-inch radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot, 9 inches
8-inch radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
8-inch radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot, 7 inches
10-inch radius smooth 45-degree elbow	9 inches
10-inch radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot, 6 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 2 inch (6.4 mm) high.5.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

2439.7.4.2 (614.8.4.2) Manufacturer's instructions. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. The code official shall be provided with a copy of the installation instructions for the make and model of the dryer. Where the exhaust duct is to be concealed, the installation instructions shall be provided to the code official prior to the concealment inspection. In the absence of fitting equivalent length calculations from the clothes dryer manufacturer, Table 2439.7.4.1 shall be utilized.

2439.7.4.3 (614.8.4.3) Dryer exhaust duct power ventilator length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer exhaust duct power ventilator manufacturer's installation instructions.

2439.7.5 Length identification. Where the exhaust duct equivalent length exceeds 35 feet (10 668 mm), the equivalent length of the exhaust duct shall be *determined by the dryer manufacturer's instructions and* identified on a permanent label or tag. The label or tag shall be located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the exhaust duct connection *or at the electric panel.*

2439.7.6 Exhaust duct required. Where space for a clothes dryer is provided, an exhaust duct system shall be installed.

Where the clothes dryer is not installed at the time of occupancy, the exhaust duct shall be capped at the location of the future dryer.

Exception: Where a listed condensing clothes dryer is installed prior to occupancy of the structure.

SECTION 2440
SAUNA HEATERS

2440.1 General. Sauna heaters shall be installed in accordance with the

manufacturer's instructions.

2440.2 Location and protection. Sauna heaters shall be located so as to minimize the possibility of accidental contact by a person in the room.

2440.2.1 Guards. Sauna heaters shall be protected from accidental contact by an approved guard or barrier of material having a low coefficient of thermal conductivity. The guard shall not substantially affect the transfer of heat from the heater to the room.

2440.3 Access. Panels, grilles and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations, shall not be attached to the building.

2440.4 Combustion and dilution air intakes. Sauna heaters of other than the direct-vent type shall be installed with the draft hood and combustion air intake located outside the sauna room. Where the combustion air inlet and the draft hood are in a dressing room adjacent to the sauna room, there shall be provisions to prevent physically blocking the combustion air inlet and the draft hood inlet, and to prevent physical contact with the draft hood and vent assembly, or warning notices shall be posted to avoid such contact. Any warning notice shall be easily readable, shall contrast with its background and the wording shall be in letters not less than ¼ inch (6.4 mm) high.

2440.5 Combustion and ventilation air. Combustion air shall not be taken from inside the sauna room. Combustion and ventilation air for a sauna heater not of the direct- vent type shall be provided to the area in which the combustion air inlet and draft hood are located in accordance with Section 2407.

2440.6 Heat and time controls. Sauna heaters shall be equipped with a thermostat that will limit room temperature to 194ºF (90ºC). If the thermostat is not an integral part of the sauna heater, the heat-sensing element shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ceiling. If the heat- sensing element is a capillary tube and bulb, the assembly shall be attached to the wall or other support, and shall be protected against physical damage.

2440.6.1 Timers. A timer, if provided to control main burner operation, shall have a maximum operating time of 1 hour. The control for the timer shall be located outside the sauna room.

2440.7 Sauna room. A ventilation opening into the sauna room shall be provided. The opening shall be not less than 4 inches by 8 inches (102 mm by 203 mm)

located near the top of the door into the sauna room.

SECTION 2441
POOL AND SPA HEATERS

2441.1 General. *Where regulations are adopted and enforced by the local jurisdiction, heaters for residential swimming pools and spas shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.56/CSA 4.7 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.*

SECTION 2442
FORCED-AIR WARM-AIR FURNACES

2442.1 General. Forced-air warm-air furnaces shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3 or UL 795 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2442.2 Dampers. Volume dampers shall not be placed in the air inlet to a furnace in a manner that will reduce the required air to the furnace.

2442.3 Prohibited sources. Outdoor or return air for forced-air heating and cooling systems shall not be taken from the following locations:

1. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) from an appliance vent outlet, a vent opening from a plumbing drainage system or the discharge outlet of an exhaust fan, unless the out- let is 3 feet (914 mm) above the outside air inlet.
2. Where there is the presence of objectionable odors, fumes or flammable vapors; or where located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the surface of any abutting public way or driveway; or where located at grade level by a sidewalk, street, alley or driveway.
3. A hazardous or insanitary location or a refrigeration machinery room as defined in the *mechanical code*.
4. A room or space, the volume of which is less than 25 percent of the entire volume served by such system. Where connected by a permanent opening having an area sized in accordance with this code, adjoining rooms or spaces shall be considered to be a single room or space for the purpose of determining the volume of such rooms or spaces.

   Exception: The minimum volume requirement shall not apply where the amount of return air taken from a room or space is less than or equal to the amount of supply air delivered to such room or space.
5. A room or space containing an appliance where such a room or space serves as the sole source of return air.

Exception: This shall not apply where:

1. The appliance is a direct-vent appliance or an appliance not requiring a vent in accordance with Section 2425.8.
2. The room or space complies with the following requirements:
   2.1. The return air shall be taken from a room or space having a volume exceeding 1 cubic foot for each 10 Btu/h (9.6 L/W) of combined input rating of all fuel-burning appliances therein.
   2.2. The volume of supply air discharged back into the same space shall be approximately equal to the volume of return air taken from the space.
   2.3. Return-air inlets shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a draft hood in the same room or space or the combustion chamber of any atmospheric burner appliance in the same room or space.
3. Rooms or spaces containing solid fuel-burning appliances, provided that return-air inlets are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the firebox of such appliances.

6. A closet, bathroom, toilet room, kitchen, garage, boiler room, furnace room or unconditioned attic.

   Exceptions:
   1. Where return air intakes are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from cooking appliances and serve only the kitchen area, taking return air from a kitchen area shall not be prohibited.
   2. Dedicated forced-air systems serving only a garage shall not be prohibited from obtaining return air from the garage.
7. A crawl space by means of direct connection to the return side of a forced-air system. Transfer openings in the crawl space enclosure shall not be prohibited.

2442.4 Screen. Required outdoor air inlets shall be covered with a screen having $^1/_4$ -inch (6.4 mm) openings.

2442.5 Return-air limitation. Return air from one dwelling unit shall not be discharged into another dwelling unit.

2442.6 Furnace plenums and air ducts. Where a furnace is installed so that supply ducts carry air circulated by the furnace to areas outside of the space containing the furnace, the return air shall be handled by a duct(s) sealed to the furnace casing and terminating outside of the space containing the furnace.

SECTION 2443
CONVERSION BURNERS

2443.1 (619.1) Conversion burners. The installation of conversion burners shall conform to ANSI Z21.8.

SECTION 2444
UNIT HEATERS

2444.1 General. Unit heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z83.8/CSA 2.6 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2444.2 Support. Suspended-type unit heaters shall be supported by elements that are designed and constructed to accommodate the weight and dynamic loads. Hangers and brackets shall be of noncombustible material.

2444.3 Ductwork. Ducts shall not be connected to a unit heater unless the heater is listed for such installation.

2444.4 Clearance. Suspended-type unit heaters shall be installed with clearances to combustible materials of not less than 18 inches (457 mm) at the sides, 12 inches (305 mm) at the bottom and 6 inches (152 mm) above the top where the unit heater has an internal draft hood or 1 inch (25 mm) above the top of the sloping side of the vertical draft hood.

Floor-mounted-type unit heaters shall be installed with clearances to combustible materials at the back and one side only of not less than 6 inches (152 mm). Where the flue gases are vented horizontally, the 6-inch (152 mm) clearance shall be measured from the draft hood or vent instead of the rear wall of the unit heater. Floor-mounted-type unit heaters shall not be installed on combustible floors unless listed for such installation.

Clearances for servicing all unit heaters shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: Unit heaters listed for reduced clearance shall be permitted to be installed with such clearances in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 2445
UNVENTED ROOM HEATERS

2445.1 General. Unvented room heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.11.2 and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

2445.2 Prohibited use. One or more unvented room heaters shall not be used as the sole source of comfort heating in a dwelling unit.

2445.3 Input rating. Unvented room heaters shall not have an input rating in excess of 40,000 Btu/h (11.7 kW).

2445.4 Prohibited locations. The location of unvented room heaters shall comply with Section 2406.2.

2445.5 Room or space volume. The aggregate input rating of all unvented appliances installed in a room or space shall not exceed 20 Btu/h per cubic foot (207 W/m^3) of volume of such room or space. Where the room or space in which the appliances are installed is directly connected to another room or space by a doorway, archway or other opening of comparable size that cannot be closed, the volume of such adjacent room or space shall be permitted to be included in the calculations.

2445.6 Oxygen-depletion safety system. Unvented room heaters shall be equipped with an oxygen-depletion-sensitive safety shutoff system. The system shall shut off the gas supply to the main and pilot burners when the oxygen in the surrounding atmosphere is depleted to the percent con- centration specified by the manufacturer, but not lower than 18 percent. The system shall not incorporate field adjustment means capable of changing the set point at which the system acts to shut off the gas supply to the room heater.

2445.7 Unvented decorative room heaters. An unvented decorative room heater shall not be installed in a factory-built fireplace unless the fireplace system has been specifically tested, listed and labeled for such use in accordance with UL 127.

2445.7.1 Ventless firebox enclosures. Vent-less firebox enclosures used with unvented decorative room heaters shall be listed as complying with ANSI Z21.91.

SECTION 2446
VENTED ROOM HEATERS

2446.1 General. Vented room heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32, shall be designed and equipped as specified in Section 2432.2 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 2447
COOKING APPLIANCES

2447.1 Cooking appliances. Cooking appliances that are designed for permanent installation, including ranges, ovens, stoves, broilers, grills, fryers, griddles, hot plates and barbecues, shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.1 or ANSI Z21.58/CSA 1.6 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2447.2 Prohibited location. Cooking appliances designed, tested, listed and labeled for use in commercial occupancies shall not be installed within dwelling units or within any area where domestic cooking operations occur.

Exceptions:

1. Appliances that are also listed as domestic cooking appliances.
2. *Deleted*.

2447.3 Domestic appliances. Cooking appliances installed within dwelling units and within areas where domestic cooking operations occur shall be listed and labeled as household-type appliances for domestic use.

2447.4 Range installation. Ranges installed on combustible floors shall be set on their own bases or legs and shall be installed with clearances of not less than that shown on the label.

2447.5 Vertical clearance above cooking top. Household cooking appliances shall have a vertical clearance above the cooking top of not less than 30 inches (760 mm) to combustible material and metal cabinets. A minimum clearance of 24 inches (610 mm) is permitted where one of the following is installed:

1. The underside of the combustible material or metal cabinet above the cooking top is protected with not less than $^1/_4$ -inch (6.4 mm) insulating millboard covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick.
2. A metal ventilating hood constructed of sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick is installed above the cooking top with a clearance of not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) between the hood and the underside of the combustible material or metal cabinet. The hood shall have a width not less than the width of the appliance and shall be centered over the appliance.
3. A listed cooking appliance or microwave oven is installed over a listed cooking appliance and in compliance with the terms of the manufacturer's installation instructions for the upper appliance.

SECTION 2448
WATER HEATERS

2448.1 General. Water heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1 and ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2448.1.1 Installation requirements. The requirements for water heaters relative to sizing, relief valves, drain pans and scald protection shall be in accordance with this code.

2448.2 Water heaters utilized for space heating. Water heaters utilized both to supply potable hot water and provide hot water for space-heating applications shall be listed and labeled for such applications by the manufacturer and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and this code.

SECTION 2449
AIR-CONDITIONING APPLIANCES

2449.1 General. Gas-fired air-conditioning appliances shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.40.1/CSA 2.91 or ANSI Z21.40.2/CSA 2.92 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2449.2 Independent piping. Gas piping serving heating appliances shall be permitted to also serve cooling appliances where such heating and cooling appliances cannot be operated simultaneously (see Section 2413).

2449.3 Connection of gas-engine-powered air conditioners. To protect against the effects of normal vibration in service, gas engines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply piping.

2449.4 Installation. Air-conditioning appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Unless the appliance is listed for installation on a combustible surface such as a floor or roof, or unless the surface is protected in an approved manner, the appliance shall be installed on a surface of noncombustible construction with noncombustible material and surface finish, and combustible material shall not be against the underside thereof.

SECTION 2450
ILLUMINATING APPLIANCES

2450.1 General. Illuminating appliances shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.42 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2450.2 Mounting on buildings. Illuminating appliances designed for wall or ceiling mounting shall be securely attached to substantial structures in such a manner that they are not dependent on the gas piping for support.

2450.3 Mounting on posts. Illuminating appliances designed for post mounting shall be securely and rigidly attached to a post. Posts shall be rigidly mounted. The strength and rigidity of posts greater than 3 feet (914 mm) in height shall be at least equivalent to that of a $2\ ^{1}/_{2}$ -inch-diameter (64 mm) post constructed of 0.064-inch-thick (1.6 mm) steel or a 1-inch (25 mm) Schedule 40 steel pipe. Posts 3 feet (914 mm) or less in height shall not be smaller than a $^{3}/_{4}$ -inch (19.1 mm) Schedule 40 steel pipe. Drain openings shall be provided near the base of posts where there is a possibility of water collecting inside them.

2450.4 Appliance pressure regulators. Where an appliance pressure regulator is not supplied with an illuminating appliance and the service line is not equipped with a service pressure regulator, an appliance pressure regulator shall be installed in the line to the illuminating appliance. For multiple installations, one regulator of adequate capacity shall be permitted to serve more than one illuminating appliance.

SECTION 2451
INFRARED RADIANT HEATERS

2451.1 General. Infrared radiant heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z83.19 or Z83.20 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2451.2 Support. Infrared radiant heaters shall be fixed in a position independent of gas and electric supply lines. Hangers and brackets shall be of noncombustible material.

SECTION 2452
BOILERS

2452.1 Standards. *Boilers shall be designed, constructed and certified in accordance with the "ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section I or IV". The boiler shall be provided with safety devices and controls as required in the applicable section of the "ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code." Alternatively,*

controls and safety devices for boilers with fuel input ratings of 12,500,000 Btu/hr (3,662,500 W) or less shall meet the requirements of ASME CSD-1. Controls and safety devices for boilers with inputs greater than 12,500,000 Btu/hr (3,662,500 W) shall meet the requirements of NFPA 85. Packaged oil-fired boilers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 726. Packaged electric boilers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 834. Solid-fuel-fired boilers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2523.

2452.2 Installation. In addition to the requirements of this code, the installation of boilers shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Operating instructions of a permanent type shall be attached to the boiler. Boilers shall have all controls set, adjusted and tested by the installer. A complete control diagram together with complete boiler operating instructions shall be furnished by the installer. The manufacturer's rating data and the nameplate shall be attached to the boiler.

2452.3 Clearance to combustible material. Clearances to combustible materials shall be in accordance with Section 2409.4.

SECTION 2453
CHIMNEY DAMPER OPENING AREA

2453.1 Free opening area of chimney dampers. Where an unlisted decorative appliance for installation in a vented fireplace is installed, the fireplace damper shall have a permanent free opening equal to or greater than specified in Table 2453.1.

TABLE 2453.1
FREE OPENING AREA OF CHIMNEY DAMPER FOR VENTING FLUE GASES FROM UNLISTED DECORATIVE APPLIANCES FOR INSTALLATION IN VENTED FIREPLACES

CHIMNEY HEIGHT (feet)	MINIMUM PERMANENT FREE OPENING (square inches)[a]						
	8	13	20	29	39	51	64
	Appliance input rating (Btu per hour)						
6	7,800	14,000	23,200	34,000	46,400	62,400	80,000
8	8,400	15,200	25,200	37,000	50,400	68,000	86,000
10	9,000	16,800	27,600	40,400	55,800	74,400	96,400
15	9,800	18,200	30,200	44,600	62,400	84,000	108,800
20	10,600	20,200	32,600	50,400	68,400	94,000	122,200
30	11,200	21,600	36,600	55,200	76,800	105,800	138,600

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2, 1,000 Btu per hour = 0.2931 kW.

a. The first six minimum permanent free openings (8 to 51 square inches) correspond approximately to the cross-sectional areas of chimneys having diameters of 3 through 8 inches, respectively. The 64-square-inch opening corresponds to the cross-sectional area of standard 8-inch by 8-inch chimney tile.

SECTION 2454
OUTDOOR DECORATIVE APPLIANCES

2454.1 General. Permanently fixed-in-place out- door decorative appliances shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.97 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Replaces:	4101:8-24-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	05/27/2006, 01/01/2013, 01/01/2016

4101:8-25-01 Plumbing *systems.*

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

Section 2501
PLUMBING SYSTEMS

2501.1 Plumbing systems. *The provisions of the "Ohio Plumbing Code" as referenced in Chapter 44 shall be incorporated herein, except as modified in Section 2501.1.1, and shall govern the installation, testing and operation of the plumbing in buildings within the scope of this code.*

2501.1.1 Modifications to the "Ohio Plumbing Code". *The following sections of the "Ohio Plumbing Code" shall be deleted and replaced with the following language:*

417.5.2 Shower lining requirements*. Floors under shower compartments, except where prefabricated receptors have been provided, shall be lined and made water tight utilizing material complying with Sections 417.5.2.1 through 417.5.2.5. Such liners shall turn up on all sides at least 2 inches (51 mm) above the finished threshold level. Liners shall be recessed and fastened to an approved backing so as not to occupy the space required for wall covering, and shall not be nailed or perforated at any point less than 1 inch (25 mm) above the finished threshold. Liners shall be pitched one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) and shall be sloped toward the fixture drains and be securely fastened to the waste outlet at the seepage entrance, making a water-tight joint between the liner and the outlet.*

Exceptions:

1. *Floor surfaces under shower heads provided for rinsing laid directly on the ground are not required to comply with this section.*
2. *Where a sheet-applied, load-bearing, bonded, waterproof membrane is installed as the shower lining, the membrane shall not be required to be recessed.*

1002.4 Trap seals. *Each fixture trap shall have a liquid seal of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) and not more than 4 inches (102 mm), or deeper for special designs relating to accessible fixtures. Where a trap seal is subject to loss by evaporation, a trap seal primer valve shall be installed. Trap seal primer valves shall connect to the trap at a point above the level of the trap seal. A trap seal primer valve shall conform to ASSE 1018 or ASSE 1044.*

Exceptions*:*

1. *Where a trap is supplied with water on a regular basis, a trap seal primer valve shall not be required.*
2. *A trap seal primer valve is not required in garage floor drains in one-, two- and three-family dwellings.*

Replaces:	4101:8-25-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013

4101:8-29-01 Water supply and distribution.

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 2901
GENERAL
Deleted. See the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 2902
PROTECTION OF POTABLE WATER SUPPLY
Deleted. See Section 608 of the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 2903
WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM
Deleted. See Section 603 of the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 2904
DWELLING UNIT FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

2904.1 General. The design and installation of residential fire sprinkler systems shall be in accordance with *NFPA 13*, *NFPA 13R*, NFPA 13D or Section 2904, which shall be considered to be equivalent to NFPA 13D. Partial residential sprinkler systems shall be permitted to be installed only in buildings not required to be equipped with a residential sprinkler system. Section 2904 shall apply to stand-alone electrical and multipurpose wet-pipe sprinkler systems that do not include the use of antifreeze. A multipurpose fire sprinkler system shall provide domestic water to both fire sprinklers and plumbing fixtures. A stand-alone sprinkler system shall be separate and independent from the water distribution system. A backflow preventer shall not be required to separate a sprinkler system from the water distribution system, provided that the sprinkler system complies with all of the following:

1. The system complies with *NFPA 13*, *NFPA 13R*, NFPA 13D or Section 2904.
2. The piping material complies with Section 2906 *and the plumbing code*.
3. The system does not contain antifreeze.

4. The system does not have a fire department connection.

2904.1.1 Required sprinkler locations. Sprinklers shall be installed to protect all areas of a dwelling unit.

Exceptions:

1. Attics, crawl spaces and normally unoccupied concealed spaces that do not contain fuel-fired appliances do not require sprinklers. In attics, crawl spaces and normally unoccupied concealed spaces that contain fuel-fired equipment, a sprinkler shall be installed above the equipment; however, sprinklers shall not be required in the remainder of the space.
2. Clothes closets, linen closets and pantries not exceeding 24 square feet (2.2 m^2) in area, with the smallest dimension not greater than 3 feet (915 mm) and having wall and ceiling surfaces of gypsum board.
3. Bathrooms not more than 55 square feet (5.1 m^2) in area.
4. Garages; carports; exterior porches; unheated entry areas, such as mud rooms, that are adjacent to an exterior door; and similar areas.

2904.2 Sprinklers. Sprinklers shall be new listed residential sprinklers and shall be installed in accordance with the sprinkler manufacturer's instructions.

2904.2.1 Temperature rating and separation from heat sources. Except as provided for in Section 2904.2.2, sprinklers shall have a temperature rating of not less than 135°F (57°C) and not more than 170°F (77°C). Sprinklers shall be separated from heat sources as required by the sprinkler manufacturer's installation instructions.

2904.2.2 Intermediate temperature sprinklers. Sprinklers shall have an intermediate temperature rating not less than 175°F (79°C) and not more than 225°F (107°C) where installed in the following locations:

1. Directly under skylights, where the sprinkler is exposed to direct sunlight.
2. In attics.
3. In concealed spaces located directly beneath a roof.
4. Within the distance to a heat source as specified in Table 2904.2.2.

TABLE 2904.2.2
LOCATIONS WHERE INTERMEDIATE TEMPERATURE SPRINKLERS ARE REQUIRED

HEAT SOURCE	RANGE OF DISTANCE FROM HEAT SOURCE WITHIN WHICH INTERMEDIATE TEMPERATURE SPRINKLERS ARE REQUIRED[a, b] (inches)
Fireplace, side of open or recessed	12 to 36
Fireplace, front of recessed fireplace	36 to 60
Coal and wood burning stove	12 to 42
Kitchen range top	9 to 18
Oven	9 to 18
Vent connector or chimney connector	9 to 18
Heating duct, not insulated	9 to 18
Hot water pipe, not insulated	6 to 12
Side of ceiling or wall warm air register	12 to 24
Front of wall mounted warm air register	18 to 36
Water heater, furnace or boiler	3 to 6
Luminaire up to 250 watts	3 to 6
Luminaire 250 watts up to 499 watts	6 to 12

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Sprinklers shall not be located at distances less than the minimum table distance unless the sprinkler listing allows a lesser distance.

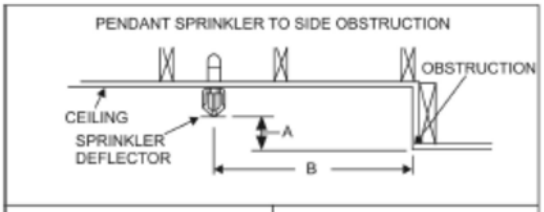
b. Distances shall be measured in a straight line from the nearest edge of the heat source to the nearest edge of the sprinkler.

2904.2.3 Freezing areas. Piping shall be protected from freezing as required by Section 2603.5 *and the plumbing code*. Where sprinklers are required in areas that are subject to freezing, dry-side-wall or dry-pendent sprinklers extending from a nonfreezing area into a freezing area shall be installed.

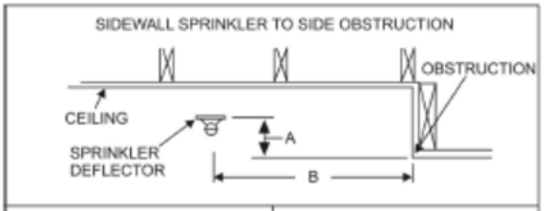
2904.2.4 Sprinkler coverage. Sprinkler coverage requirements and sprinkler obstruction requirements shall be in accordance with Sections 2904.2.4.1 and 2904.2.4.2.

2904.2.4.1 Coverage area limit. The area of coverage of a single sprinkler shall not exceed 400 square feet (37 m^2) and shall be based on the sprinkler listing and the sprinkler manufacturer's installation instructions.

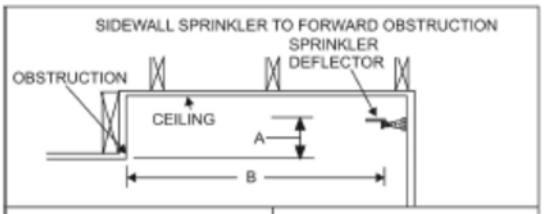
2904.2.4.2 Obstructions to coverage. Sprinkler discharge shall not be blocked by obstructions unless additional sprinklers are installed to protect the obstructed area. Additional sprinklers shall not be required where the sprinkler separation from obstructions complies with either the minimum distance indicated in Figure 2904.2.4.2 or the minimum distances specified in the sprinkler manufacturer's instructions where the manufacturer's instructions permit a lesser distance.



WHERE "A" IS LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO: (INCHES)	"B" MUST BE NOT LESS THAN: (FEET)
1	1½
3	3
5	4
7	4½
9	1½
11	6½
14	7



WHERE "A" IS LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO: (INCHES)	"B" MUST BE NOT LESS THAN: (FEET)
1	1½
3	3
5	4
7	4½
9	6
11	6½
14	7



WHERE "A" IS LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO: (INCHES)	"B" MUST BE NOT LESS THAN: (FEET)
1	8
2	10
3	11
4	12
6	13
7	14
9	15
11	16
14	17

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 2904.2.4.2
MINIMUM ALLOWABLE DISTANCE BETWEEN SPRINKLER AND OBSTRUCTION

2904.2.4.2.1 Additional requirements for pendent sprinklers. Pendent sprinklers within 3 feet (915 mm) of the center of a ceiling fan, surface-mounted ceiling luminaire or similar object shall be considered to be obstructed, and additional sprinklers shall be installed.

2904.2.4.2.2 Additional requirements for side-wall sprinklers. Sidewall sprinklers within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the center of a ceiling fan, surface-mounted ceiling luminaire or similar object shall be considered to be obstructed, and additional sprinklers shall be installed.

2904.2.5 Sprinkler installation on systems assembled with solvent cement. The solvent cementing of threaded adapter fittings shall be completed and threaded adapters for sprinklers shall be verified as being clear of excess cement prior to the installation of sprinklers on systems assembled with solvent cement.

2904.2.6 Sprinkler modifications prohibited. Painting, caulking or modifying of sprinklers shall be prohibited. Sprinklers that have been painted, caulked, modified or damaged shall be replaced with new sprinklers.

2904.3 Sprinkler piping system. Sprinkler piping shall be supported in accordance with requirements for cold water distribution piping. Sprinkler piping shall comply with the requirements for cold water distribution piping. For multipurpose piping systems, the sprinkler piping shall connect to and be a part of the cold water distribution piping system.

Exception: For plastic piping, it shall be permissible to follow the manufacturer's installation instructions.

2904.3.1 Nonmetallic pipe and tubing. Nonmetallic pipe and tubing, such as CPVC, PEX, and PE-RT shall be listed for use in residential fire sprinkler systems.

2904.3.1.1 Nonmetallic pipe protection. Nonmetallic pipe and tubing systems shall be protected from expo- sure to the living space by a layer of not less than 3/8-inch-thick (9.5 mm) gypsum wallboard, ½-inch-thick (13mm) plywood, or other material having a 15-minute fire rating. 8

Exceptions:

1. Pipe protection shall not be required in areas that do not require protection with sprinklers as specified in Section 2904.1.1.
2. Pipe protection shall not be required where exposed piping is permitted by the pipe listing.

2904.3.2 Shutoff valves prohibited. With the exception of shutoff valves for the entire water distribution system, valves shall not be installed in any location where the valve would isolate piping serving one or more sprinklers.

Exception: *A separate control valve is permitted to be installed in the sprinkler system piping provided the valve is supervised in one of the following methods:*

1. *Central station, proprietary, or remote station alarm service, or*
2. *Local alarm service that causes the sounding of an audible signal at a constantly attended location, or*
3. *Valves that are locked open*

2904.3.3 Single dwelling limit. Piping beyond the service valve located at the beginning of the water distribution system shall not serve more than one dwelling.

2904.3.4 Drain. A means to drain the sprinkler system shall be provided on the system side of the water distribution shutoff valve.

2904.4 Determining system design flow. The flow for sizing the sprinkler piping system shall be based on the flow rating of each sprinkler in accordance with Section P2904.4.1 and the calculation in accordance with Section 2904.4.2.

2904.4.1 Determining required flow rate for each sprinkler. The minimum required flow for each sprinkler shall be determined using the sprinkler manufacturer's published data for the specific sprinkler model based on all of the following:

1. The area of coverage.
2. The ceiling configuration.
3. The temperature rating.
4. Any additional conditions specified by the sprinkler manufacturer.

2904.4.2 System design flow rate. The design flow rate for the system shall be based on the following:

1. The design flow rate for a room having only one sprinkler shall be the flow rate required for that sprinkler, as determined by Section 2904.4.1.
2. The design flow rate for a room having two or more sprinklers a shall be determined by identifying the sprinkler in that room with the highest required flow rate, based on Section 2904.4.1, and multiplying that flow rate by 2.
3. Where the sprinkler manufacturer specifies different criteria for ceiling configurations that are not smooth, flat and horizontal, the required flow

rate for that room shall comply with the sprinkler manufacturer's instructions.

4. The design flow rate for the sprinkler system shall be the flow required by the room with the largest flow rate, based on Items 1, 2 and 3.
5. For the purpose of this section, it shall be permissible to reduce the design flow rate for a room by subdividing the space into two or more rooms, where each room is evaluated separately with respect to the required design flow rate. Each room shall be bounded by walls and a ceiling. Openings in walls shall have a lintel not less than 8 inches (203 mm) in depth and each lintel shall form a solid barrier between the ceiling and the top of the opening.

2904.5 Water supply. The water supply shall provide not less than the required design flow rate for sprinklers in accordance with Section 2904.4.2 at a pressure not less than that used to comply with Section 2904.6.

2904.5.1 Water supply from individual sources. Where a dwelling unit water supply is from a tank system, a private well system or a combination of these, the available water supply shall be based on the minimum pressure control setting for the pump.

2904.5.2 Required capacity. The water supply shall have the capacity to provide the required design flow rate for sprinklers for a period of time as follows:

1. Seven minutes for dwelling units one story in height and less than 2,000 square feet (186 m^2) in area.
2. Ten minutes for dwelling units two or more stories in height or equal to or greater than 2,000 square feet (186 m^2) in area.

Where a well system, a water supply tank system or a combination thereof is used, any combination of well capacity and tank storage shall be permitted to meet the capacity requirement.

2904.6 Pipe sizing. The piping to sprinklers shall be sized for the flow required by Section 2904.4.2. The flow required to supply the plumbing fixtures shall not be required to be added to the sprinkler design flow.

2904.6.1 Method of sizing pipe. Piping supplying sprinklers shall be sized using the prescriptive method in Section 2904.6.2 or by hydraulic calculation in accordance with NFPA 13D. The minimum pipe size from the water supply source to any sprinkler shall be ¾ inch (19 mm) nominal. Threaded adapter

fittings at the point where sprinklers are attached to the piping shall be not less than ½ inch (13 mm) nominal.

2904.6.2 Prescriptive pipe sizing method. Pipe shall be sized by determining the available pressure to offset friction loss in piping and identifying a piping material, diameter and length using the equation in Section 2904.6.2.1 and the procedure in Section 2904.6.2.2.

2904.6.2.1 Available pressure equation. The pressure available to offset friction loss in the interior piping system (P_t) shall be determined in accordance with the Equation 29-1.

$P_t = P_{sup} - PL_{svc} - PL_m - PL_d - PL_e - P_{sp}$ **(Equation 29-1)**

where:

P_t = Pressure used in applying Tables 2904.6.2(4) through 2904.6.2(9).

P_{sup} = Pressure available from the water supply source.

PL_{svc} = Pressure loss in the water service pipe.

PL_m = Pressure loss in the water meter.

PL_d = Pressure loss from devices other than the water meter.

PL_e = Pressure loss associated with changes in elevation.

P = Maximum pressure required by a sprinkler.

TABLE 2904.6.2(1)
WATER SERVICE PRESSURE LOSS (PL_{svc})[a, b]

FLOW RATE[c] (gpm)	¾ -INCH WATER SERVICE PRESSURE LOSS (psi)				1-INCH WATER SERVICE PRESSURE LOSS (psi)				1 ¼ -INCH WATER SERVICE PRESSURE LOSS (psi)			
	Length of water service pipe (feet)				Length of water service pipe (feet)				Length of water service pipe (feet)			
	40 or less	41 to 75	76 to 100	101 to 150	40 or less	41 to 75	76 to 100	101 to 150	40 or less	41 to 75	76 to 100	101 to 150
8	5.1	8.7	11.8	17.4	1.5	2.5	3.4	5.1	0.6	1.0	1.3	1.9
10	7.7	13.1	17.8	26.3	2.3	3.8	5.2	7.7	0.8	1.4	2.0	2.9
12	10.8	18.4	24.9	NP	3.2	5.4	7.3	10.7	1.2	2.0	2.7	4.0
14	14.4	24.5	NP	NP	4.2	7.1	9.6	14.3	1.6	2.7	3.6	5.4
16	18.4	NP	NP	NP	5.4	9.1	12.4	18.3	2.0	3.4	4.7	6.9
18	22.9	NP	NP	NP	6.7	11.4	15.4	22.7	2.5	4.3	5.8	8.6
20	27.8	NP	NP	NP	8.1	13.8	18.7	27.6	3.1	5.2	7.0	10.4
22	NP	NP	NP	NP	9.7	16.5	22.3	NP	3.7	6.2	8.4	12.4
24	NP	NP	NP	NP	11.4	19.3	26.2	NP	4.3	7.3	9.9	14.6
26	NP	NP	NP	NP	13.2	22.4	NP	NP	5.0	8.5	11.4	16.9
28	NP	NP	NP	NP	15.1	25.7	NP	NP	5.7	9.7	13.1	19.4
30	NP	NP	NP	NP	17.2	NP	NP	NP	6.5	11.0	14.9	22.0
32	NP	NP	NP	NP	19.4	NP	NP	NP	7.3	12.4	16.8	24.8
34	NP	NP	NP	NP	21.7	NP	NP	NP	8.2	13.9	18.8	NP
36	NP	NP	NP	NP	24.1	NP	NP	NP	9.1	15.4	20.9	NP

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 0.063 L/s, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

NP = Not Permitted. Pressure loss exceeds reasonable limits.

a. Values are applicable for underground piping materials listed in Table 2905.4 and are based on an SDR of 11 and a Hazen Williams C Factor of 150.

b. Values include the following length allowances for fittings: 25% length increase for actual lengths up to 100 feet and 15% length increase for actual lengths over 100 feet.

c. Flow rate from Section 2904.4.2. Add 5 gpm to the flow rate required by Section 2904.4.2 where the water service pipe supplies more than one dwelling.

TABLE 2904.6.2(2)
MINIMUM WATER METER PRESSURE LOSS (PL_m)[a]

FLOW RATE (gallons per minute, gpm)[b]	5/8-INCH METER PRESSURE LOSS (pounds per square inch, psi)	¾ -INCH METER PRESSURE LESS (pounds per square inch, psi)	1-INCH METER PRESSURE LOSS (pounds per square inch, psi)
8	2	1	1
10	3	1	1
12	4	1	1
14	5	2	1
16	7	3	1
18	9	4	1
20	11	4	2
22	NP	5	2
24	NP	5	2
26	NP	6	2
28	NP	6	2
30	NP	7	2
32	NP	7	3
34	NP	8	3
36	NP	8	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.063 L/s.
NP = Not permitted unless the actual water meter pressure loss is known.

a. Table 2904.6.2(2) establishes conservative values for water meter pressure loss or installations where the water meter loss is unknown. Where the actual water meter pressure loss is known, P_m shall be the actual loss.

b. Flow rate from Section 2904.4.2. Add 5 gpm to the flow rate required by Section 2904.4.2 where the water service pipe supplies more than one dwelling.

TABLE 2904.6.2(3)
ELEVATION LOSS (PL_e)

ELEVATION (feet)	PRESSURE LOSS (psi)
5	2.2
10	4.4
15	6.5
20	8.7
25	10.9
30	13
35	15.2
40	17.4

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

TABLE 2904.6.2(4)
ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR ¾-INCH TYPE M COPPER WATER TUBING

SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm)	WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch)	AVAILABLE PRESSURE—P_t (psi)									
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
		Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet)									
8	¾	217	289	361	434	506	578	650	723	795	867
9	¾	174	232	291	349	407	465	523	581	639	697
10	¾	143	191	239	287	335	383	430	478	526	574
11	¾	120	160	200	241	281	321	361	401	441	481
12	¾	102	137	171	205	239	273	307	341	375	410
13	¾	88	118	147	177	206	235	265	294	324	353
14	¾	77	103	128	154	180	205	231	257	282	308
15	¾	68	90	113	136	158	181	203	226	248	271
16	¾	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200	220	241
17	¾	54	72	90	108	125	143	161	179	197	215
18	¾	48	64	81	97	113	129	145	161	177	193
19	¾	44	58	73	88	102	117	131	146	160	175
20	¾	40	53	66	80	93	106	119	133	146	159
21	¾	36	48	61	73	85	97	109	121	133	145
22	¾	33	44	56	67	78	89	100	111	122	133
23	¾	31	41	51	61	72	82	92	102	113	123
24	¾	28	38	47	57	66	76	85	95	104	114
25	¾	26	35	44	53	61	70	79	88	97	105
26	¾	24	33	41	49	57	65	73	82	90	98
27	¾	23	30	38	46	53	61	69	76	84	91
28	¾	21	28	36	43	50	57	64	71	78	85
29	¾	20	27	33	40	47	53	60	67	73	80
30	¾	19	25	31	38	44	50	56	63	69	75
31	¾	18	24	29	35	41	47	53	59	65	71
32	¾	17	22	28	33	39	44	50	56	61	67
33	¾	16	21	26	32	37	42	47	53	58	63
34	¾	NP	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
35	¾	NP	19	24	28	33	38	42	47	52	57
36	¾	NP	18	22	27	31	36	40	45	49	54
37	¾	NP	17	21	26	30	34	38	43	47	51
38	¾	NP	16	20	24	28	32	36	40	45	49
39	¾	NP	15	19	23	27	31	35	39	42	46
40	¾	NP	NP	18	22	26	29	33	37	40	44

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.

NP = Not Permitted.

a. Flow rate from Section 2904.4.2.

TABLE 2904.6.2(5)
ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR 1-INCH TYPE M COPPER WATER TUBING

SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm)	WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch)	AVAILABLE PRESSURE—P_t (psi)									
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
		Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet)									
8	1	806	1075	1343	1612	1881	2149	2418	2687	2955	3224
9	1	648	864	1080	1296	1512	1728	1945	2161	2377	2593
10	1	533	711	889	1067	1245	1422	1600	1778	1956	2134
11	1	447	586	745	894	1043	1192	1341	1491	1640	1789
12	1	381	508	634	761	888	1015	1142	1269	1396	1523
13	1	328	438	547	657	766	875	985	1094	1204	1313
14	1	286	382	477	572	668	763	859	954	1049	1145
15	1	252	336	420	504	588	672	756	840	924	1008
16	1	224	298	373	447	522	596	671	745	820	894
17	1	200	266	333	400	466	533	600	666	733	799
18	1	180	240	300	360	420	479	539	599	659	719
19	1	163	217	271	325	380	434	488	542	597	651
20	1	148	197	247	296	345	395	444	493	543	592
21	1	135	180	225	270	315	360	406	451	496	541
22	1	124	165	207	248	289	331	372	413	455	496
23	1	114	152	190	228	267	305	343	381	419	457
24	1	106	141	176	211	246	282	317	352	387	422
25	1	98	131	163	196	228	261	294	326	359	392
26	1	91	121	152	182	212	243	273	304	334	364
27	1	85	113	142	170	198	226	255	283	311	340
28	1	79	106	132	159	185	212	238	265	291	318
29	1	74	99	124	149	174	198	223	248	273	298
30	1	70	93	116	140	163	186	210	233	256	280
31	1	66	88	110	132	153	175	197	219	241	263
32	1	62	83	103	124	145	165	186	207	227	248
33	1	59	78	98	117	137	156	176	195	215	234
34	1	55	74	92	111	129	148	166	185	203	222
35	1	53	70	88	105	123	140	158	175	193	210
36	1	50	66	83	100	116	133	150	166	183	199
37	1	47	63	79	95	111	126	142	158	174	190
38	1	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	181
39	1	43	57	72	86	100	115	129	143	158	172
40	1	41	55	68	82	96	109	123	137	150	164

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.

a. Flow rate from Section 2904.4.2.

TABLE 2904.6.2(6)
ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR ¾-INCH CPVC PIPE

SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm)	WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch)	AVAILABLE PRESSURE—P_t (psi)									
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
		Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet)									
8	3/4	348	465	581	697	813	929	1045	1161	1278	1394
9	3/4	280	374	467	560	654	747	841	934	1027	1121
10	3/4	231	307	384	461	538	615	692	769	845	922
11	3/4	193	258	322	387	451	515	580	644	709	773
12	3/4	165	219	274	329	384	439	494	549	603	658
13	3/4	142	189	237	284	331	378	426	473	520	568
14	3/4	124	165	206	247	289	330	371	412	454	495
15	3/4	109	145	182	218	254	290	327	363	399	436
16	3/4	97	129	161	193	226	258	290	322	354	387
17	3/4	86	115	144	173	202	230	259	288	317	346
18	3/4	78	104	130	155	181	207	233	259	285	311
19	3/4	70	94	117	141	164	188	211	234	258	281
20	3/4	64	85	107	128	149	171	192	213	235	256
21	3/4	58	78	97	117	136	156	175	195	214	234
22	3/4	54	71	89	107	125	143	161	179	197	214
23	3/4	49	66	82	99	115	132	148	165	181	198
24	3/4	46	61	76	91	107	122	137	152	167	183
25	3/4	42	56	71	85	99	113	127	141	155	169
26	3/4	39	52	66	79	92	105	118	131	144	157
27	3/4	37	49	61	73	86	98	110	122	135	147
28	3/4	34	46	57	69	80	92	103	114	126	137
29	3/4	32	43	54	64	75	86	96	107	118	129
30	3/4	30	40	50	60	70	81	91	101	111	121
31	3/4	28	38	47	57	66	76	85	95	104	114
32	3/4	27	36	45	54	63	71	80	89	98	107
33	3/4	25	34	42	51	59	68	76	84	93	101
34	3/4	24	32	40	48	56	64	72	80	88	96
35	3/4	23	30	38	45	53	61	68	76	83	91
36	3/4	22	29	36	43	50	57	65	72	79	86
37	3/4	20	27	34	41	48	55	61	68	75	82
38	3/4	20	26	33	39	46	52	59	65	72	78
39	3/4	19	25	31	37	43	50	56	62	68	74
40	3/4	18	24	30	35	41	47	53	59	65	71

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.

a. Flow rate from Section 2904.4.2.

TABLE 2904.6.2(7)
ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR 1-INCH CPVC PIPE

SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm)	WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch)	AVAILABLE PRESSURE—P_t (psi)									
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
		Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet)									
8	1	1049	1398	1748	2098	2447	2797	3146	3496	3845	4195
9	1	843	1125	1406	1687	1968	2249	2530	2811	3093	3374
10	1	694	925	1157	1388	1619	1851	2082	2314	2545	2776
11	1	582	776	970	1164	1358	1552	1746	1940	2133	2327
12	1	495	660	826	991	1156	1321	1486	1651	1816	1981
13	1	427	570	712	854	997	1139	1281	1424	1566	1709
14	1	372	497	621	745	869	993	1117	1241	1366	1490
15	1	328	437	546	656	765	874	983	1093	1202	1311
16	1	291	388	485	582	679	776	873	970	1067	1164
17	1	260	347	433	520	607	693	780	867	954	1040
18	1	234	312	390	468	546	624	702	780	858	936
19	1	212	282	353	423	494	565	635	706	776	847
20	1	193	257	321	385	449	513	578	642	706	770
21	1	176	235	293	352	410	469	528	586	645	704
22	1	161	215	269	323	377	430	484	538	592	646
23	1	149	198	248	297	347	396	446	496	545	595
24	1	137	183	229	275	321	366	412	458	504	550
25	1	127	170	212	255	297	340	382	425	467	510
26	1	118	158	197	237	276	316	355	395	434	474
27	1	111	147	184	221	258	295	332	368	405	442
28	1	103	138	172	207	241	275	310	344	379	413
29	1	97	129	161	194	226	258	290	323	355	387
30	1	91	121	152	182	212	242	273	303	333	364
31	1	86	114	143	171	200	228	257	285	314	342
32	1	81	108	134	161	188	215	242	269	296	323
33	1	76	102	127	152	178	203	229	254	280	305
34	1	72	96	120	144	168	192	216	240	265	289
35	1	68	91	114	137	160	182	205	228	251	273
36	1	65	87	108	130	151	173	195	216	238	260
37	1	62	82	103	123	144	165	185	206	226	247
38	1	59	78	98	117	137	157	176	196	215	235
39	1	56	75	93	112	131	149	168	187	205	224
40	1	53	71	89	107	125	142	160	178	196	214

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.

a. Flow rate from Section 2904.4.2.

TABLE 2904.6.2(8)
ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR ¾-INCH PEX AND PE-RT TUBING

SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm)	WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch)	AVAILABLE PRESSURE—P_t (psi)									
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
		Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet)									
8	3/4	93	123	154	185	216	247	278	309	339	370
9	3/4	74	99	124	149	174	199	223	248	273	298
10	3/4	61	82	102	123	143	163	184	204	225	245
11	3/4	51	68	86	103	120	137	154	171	188	205
12	3/4	44	58	73	87	102	117	131	146	160	175
13	3/4	38	50	63	75	88	101	113	126	138	151
14	3/4	33	44	55	66	77	88	99	110	121	132
15	3/4	29	39	48	58	68	77	87	96	106	116
16	3/4	26	34	43	51	60	68	77	86	94	103
17	3/4	23	31	38	46	54	61	69	77	84	92
18	3/4	21	28	34	41	48	55	62	69	76	83
19	3/4	19	25	31	37	44	50	56	62	69	75
20	3/4	17	23	28	34	40	45	51	57	62	68
21	3/4	16	21	26	31	36	41	47	52	57	62
22	3/4	NP	19	24	28	33	38	43	47	52	57
23	3/4	NP	17	22	26	31	35	39	44	48	52
24	3/4	NP	16	20	24	28	32	36	40	44	49
25	3/4	NP	NP	19	22	26	30	34	37	41	45
26	3/4	NP	NP	17	21	24	28	31	35	38	42
27	3/4	NP	NP	16	20	23	26	29	33	36	39
28	3/4	NP	NP	15	18	21	24	27	30	33	36
29	3/4	NP	NP	NP	17	20	23	26	28	31	34
30	3/4	NP	NP	NP	16	19	21	24	27	29	32
31	3/4	NP	NP	NP	15	18	20	23	25	28	30
32	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	17	19	21	24	26	28
33	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	16	18	20	22	25	27
34	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	17	19	21	23	25
35	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	16	18	20	22	24
36	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	15	17	19	21	23
37	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	16	18	20	22
38	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	16	17	19	21
39	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	16	18	20
40	3/4	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	16	17	19

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s. NP = Not Permitted.

a. Flow rate from Section 2904.4.2.

TABLE 2904.6.2(9)
ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR 1-INCH PEX AND PE-RT TUBING

SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm)	WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch)	AVAILABLE PRESSURE—P_t (psi)									
		15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
		Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet)									
8	1	314	418	523	628	732	837	941	1046	1151	1255
9	1	252	336	421	505	589	673	757	841	925	1009
10	1	208	277	346	415	485	554	623	692	761	831
11	1	174	232	290	348	406	464	522	580	638	696
12	1	148	198	247	296	346	395	445	494	543	593
13	1	128	170	213	256	298	341	383	426	469	511
14	1	111	149	186	223	260	297	334	371	409	446
15	1	98	131	163	196	229	262	294	327	360	392
16	1	87	116	145	174	203	232	261	290	319	348
17	1	78	104	130	156	182	208	233	259	285	311
18	1	70	93	117	140	163	187	210	233	257	280
19	1	63	84	106	127	148	169	190	211	232	253
20	1	58	77	96	115	134	154	173	192	211	230
21	1	53	70	88	105	123	140	158	175	193	211
22	1	48	64	80	97	113	129	145	161	177	193
23	1	44	59	74	89	104	119	133	148	163	178
24	1	41	55	69	82	96	110	123	137	151	164
25	1	38	51	64	76	89	102	114	127	140	152
26	1	35	47	59	71	83	95	106	118	130	142
27	1	33	44	55	66	77	88	99	110	121	132
28	1	31	41	52	62	72	82	93	103	113	124
29	1	29	39	48	58	68	77	87	97	106	116
30	1	27	36	45	54	63	73	82	91	100	109
31	1	26	34	43	51	60	68	77	85	94	102
32	1	24	32	40	48	56	64	72	80	89	97
33	1	23	30	38	46	53	61	68	76	84	91
34	1	22	29	36	43	50	58	65	72	79	86
35	1	20	27	34	41	48	55	61	68	75	82
36	1	19	26	32	39	45	52	58	65	71	78
37	1	18	25	31	37	43	49	55	62	68	74
38	1	18	23	29	35	41	47	53	59	64	70
39	1	17	22	28	33	39	45	50	56	61	67
40	1	16	21	27	32	37	43	48	53	59	64

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.

a. Flow rate from Section 2904.4.2.

2904.6.2.2 Calculation procedure. Determination of the required size for water distribution piping shall be in accordance with the following procedure:

Step 1—Determine P_{sup}

Obtain the static supply pressure that will be available from the water main from the water purveyor, or for an individual source, the available supply pressure shall be in accordance with Section 2904.5.1.

Step 2—Determine PL_{svc}

Use Table 2904.6.2(1) to determine the pressure loss in the water service pipe based on the selected size of the water service.

Step 3—Determine PL_m

Use Table 2904.6.2(2) to determine the pressure loss from the water meter, based on the selected water meter size.

Step 4—Determine PL_d

Determine the pressure loss from devices other than the water meter installed in the piping system supplying sprinklers, such as pressure-reducing valves, backflow preventers, water softeners or water filters. Device pressure losses shall be based on the device manufacturer's specifications. The flow rate used to determine pressure loss shall be the rate from Section 2904.4.2, except that 5 gpm (0.3 L/s) shall be added where the device is installed in a water service pipe that supplies more than one dwelling. As an alternative to deducting pressure loss for a device, an automatic bypass valve shall be installed to divert flow around the device when a sprinkler activates.

Step 5—Determine PL_e

Use Table 2904.6.2(3) to determine the pressure loss associated with changes in elevation. The elevation used in applying the table shall be the difference between the elevation where the water source pressure was measured and the elevation of the highest sprinkler.

Step 6—Determine P_{sp}

Determine the maximum pressure required by any individual sprinkler based on the flow rate from Section 2904.4.1. The required pressure is provided in the sprinkler manufacturer's published data for the specific sprinkler model based on the selected flow rate.

Step 7—Calculate P_t

Using Equation 29-1, calculate the pressure available to offset friction loss in water-distribution piping between the service valve and the sprinklers.

Step 8—Determine the maximum allowable pipe length

Use Tables 2904.6.2(4) through 2904.6.2(9) to select a material and size for water distribution piping. The piping material and size shall be acceptable if the developed length of pipe between the service valve and the most remote sprinkler does not exceed the maximum allowable length specified by the applicable table. Interpolation of P_t between the tabular values shall be permitted.

The maximum allowable length of piping in Tables 2904.6.2(4) through 2904.6.2(9) incorporates an adjustment for pipe fittings. Additional consideration of friction losses associated with pipe fittings shall not be required.

2904.7 Instructions and signs. An owner's manual for the fire sprinkler system shall be provided to the owner. A sign or valve tag shall be installed at the main shutoff valve to the water distribution system stating the following: "Warning, the water system for this home supplies fire sprinklers that require certain flows and pressures to fight a fire. Devices that restrict the flow or decrease the pressure or automatically shut off the water to the fire sprinkler system, such as water softeners, filtration systems and automatic shutoff valves, shall not be added to this system without a review of the fire sprinkler system by a fire protection specialist. Do not remove this sign."

2904.8 Inspections. The water distribution system shall be inspected in accordance with Sections 2904.8.1 and 2904.8.2.

2904.8.1 Preconcealment inspection. The following items shall be verified prior to the concealment of any sprinkler system piping:

1. Sprinklers are installed in all areas as required by Section 2904.1.1.
2. Where sprinkler water spray patterns are obstructed by construction features, luminaires or ceiling fans, additional sprinklers are installed as required by Section 2904.2.4.2.
3. Sprinklers are the correct temperature rating and are installed at or beyond the required separation distances from heat sources as required by Sections 2904.2.1 and 2904.2.2.
4. The pipe size equals or exceeds the size used in applying Tables 2904.6.2(4) through 2904.6.2(9) or, if the piping system was hydraulically calculated in accordance with Section 2904.6.1, the size used in the hydraulic calculation.
5. The pipe length does not exceed the length permit- ted by Tables 2904.6.2(4) through 2904.6.2(9) or, if the piping system was hydraulically calculated in accordance with Section 2904.6.1, pipe lengths and fittings do not exceed those used in the hydraulic calculation.
6. Nonmetallic piping that conveys water to sprinklers is listed for use with fire sprinklers.
7. Piping is supported in accordance with the pipe manufacturer's and sprinkler manufacturer's installation instructions.
8. The piping system is tested in accordance with Section 2503.7.

2904.8.2 Final inspection. The following items shall be verified upon completion of the system:

1. Sprinkler are not painted, damaged or otherwise hindered from

operation.

2. Where a pump is required to provide water to the system, the pump starts automatically upon system water demand.
3. Pressure-reducing valves, water softeners, water filters or other impairments to water flow that were not part of the original design have not been installed.
4. The sign or valve tag required by Section 2904.7 is installed and the owner's manual for the system is present.

SECTION 2905
HEATED WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS
Deleted. See Section 607 of the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 2906
MATERIALS, JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS
Deleted. See Section 605 of the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 2907
CHANGES IN DIRECTION
Deleted. See the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 2908
SUPPORT
Deleted. See Section 308 of the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 2909
DRINKING WATER TREATMENT UNITS
Deleted. See Section 611 of the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 2910
NONPOTABLE WATER SYSTEMS
Deleted. See Section 1301 of the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 2911
ON-SITE NONPOTABLE WATER REUSE SYSTEMS
Deleted. See Section 1301 of the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 2912
NONPOTABLE RAINWATER COLLECTION AND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS
Deleted. See Section 1301 of the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 2913
RECLAIMED WATER SYSTEMS

Deleted. See Section 1301 of the Plumbing Code.

Replaces:	4101:8-29-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013

4101:8-34-01 *Electrical.*

[Comment: When a reference is made within this rule to a federal statutory provision, an industry consensus standard, or any other technical publication, the specific date and title of the publication as well as the name and address of the promulgating agency are listed in rule 4101:8-44-01 of the Administrative Code. The application of the referenced standards shall be limited and as prescribed in section 102.5 of rule 4101:8-1-01 of the Administrative Code.]

SECTION 3401
ELECTRICAL

3401.1 *Electrical.* *The provisions of the National Electrical Code, NFPA 70, shall be incorporated herein and shall govern the installation, testing and operation of the electrical systems of one-, two- and three-family dwellings and their accessory structures except for the following:*

1. ***Section 210.8(A)(2) shall be modified to read:***

   Garages, and also accessory buildings that have a floor located at or below grade level not intended as habitable rooms and limited to storage areas, work areas, and areas of similar use *except for the receptacle located to serve a garage door opener when the device is a single receptacle and located in the ceiling.*

2. ***Section 210.8(A)(5) shall be modified to read:***

   Unfinished portions or areas of the basement not intended as habitable rooms.

   Exceptions:

   1. A receptacle supplying only a permanently installed fire alarm or burglar alarm system shall not be required to have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection.
   2. *A single receptacle located to serve a sump pump shall not be required to have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection when there is a duplex receptacle with ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection within six (6) feet of the sump pump.*

3. ***Section 210.8(D) shall be deleted.***

4. ***Section 210.12(A) shall be modified to read:***

All 120-volt single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere branch circuits supplying outlets or devices installed in dwelling unit kitchens, family rooms, dining rooms, living rooms, parlors, libraries, dens, bedrooms, sun rooms, recreational rooms, closets, hallways, laundry rooms, or similar rooms or areas shall be protected by any of the means described in 210.12(A)(1) through (6):

(l) A listed combination-type arc-fault circuit interrupter, installed to provide protection of the entire branch circuit.

(2) A listed branch/feeder-type AFCI installed at the origin of the branch-circuit in combination with a listed outlet branch-circuit type arc-fault circuit interrupter installed at the first outlet box on the branch circuit. The first outlet box in the branch circuit shall be marked to indicate that it is the first outlet of the circuit.

(3) A listed supplemental arc protection circuit breaker installed at the origin of the branch circuit in combination with a listed outlet branch-circuit type arc-fault circuit interrupter installed at the first outlet box on the branch circuit where all of the following conditions are met:

a. The branch-circuit wiring shall be continuous from the branch-circuit overcurrent device to the outlet branch-circuit arc-fault circuit interrupter.

b. The maximum length of the branch-circuit wiring from the branch-circuit overcurrent device to the first outlet shall not exceed 15.2 m (50 ft.) for a 14 AWG conductor or 21.3 m (70 ft.) for a 12 AWG conductor.

c. The first outlet box in the branch circuit shall be marked to indicate that it is the first outlet of the circuit.

(4) A listed outlet branch-circuit type arc-fault circuit interrupter installed at the first outlet on the branch circuit in combination with a listed branch-circuit overcurrent protective device where all of the following conditions are met:

a. The branch-circuit wiring shall be continuous from the branch-circuit overcurrent device to the outlet branch-circuit arc-fault circuit interrupter.

b. The maximum length of the branch-circuit wiring from the branch-circuit overcurrent device to the first outlet shall not exceed 15.2 m (50 ft.) for a 14 AWG conductor or 21.3 m (70 ft.) for a 12 AWG conductor.

c. The first outlet box in the branch circuit shall be marked to indicate that it is the first outlet of the circuit.

d. The combination of the branch-circuit overcurrent device and outlet branch-circuit AFCI shall be identified as meeting the requirements for a system combination-type AFCI and shall be listed as such.

(5) If RMC, IMC, EMT, Type MC, or steel-armored Type AC cables meeting the requirements of 250.118, metal wireways, metal auxiliary gutters, and metal outlet and junction boxes are installed for the portion of the branch circuit between the branch-circuit overcurrent device and the first outlet, it shall be permitted to install a listed outlet branch-circuit type AFCI at the first outlet to provide protection for the remaining portion of the branch circuit.

(6) Where a listed metal or nonmetallic conduit or tubing or Type MC cable is encased in not less than 50 mm (2 in.) of concrete for the portion of the branch circuit between the branch-circuit overcurrent device and the first outlet, it shall be permitted to install a listed outlet branch-circuit type AFCI at the first outlet to provide protection for the remaining portion of the branch circuit.

Exception *No 1*: Where an individual branch circuit to a fire alarm system installed in accordance with 760.41(B) or 760.121(B) is installed in RMC, IMC, EMT, or steel-sheathed cable, Type AC or Type MC, meeting the requirements of 250.118, with metal outlet and junction boxes, AFCI protection shall be permitted to be omitted.

Exception No. 2: Branch circuits supplying receptacle outlets installed to serve only the kitchen countertop surfaces shall be permitted to be installed without arc-fault circuit interrupter protection.

5. ***Section 210.64 shall be modified to read:***

At least one 125-volt, single-phase, 15- or 20-ampere-rated receptacle outlet shall be installed in an accessible location within 7.5m (25 ft.) of the indoor electrical service equipment. The required receptacle outlet shall be located within the same room or area as the service equipment.

Exception No. 1: The receptacle outlet shall not be required to be installed in one-, two-, *or three*-family dwellings.

Exception No. 2: Where the service voltage is greater than 120 volts to ground, a receptacle outlet shall not be required for services dedicated to equipment covered in Articles 675 and 682.

SECTION 3402
EMERGENCY AND STANDBY POWER SYSTEMS

3402.1 ***Installation.*** *Emergency and standby power systems shall be installed in accordance with this code and NFPA 70. The performance, classification, transfer, testing, and maintenance of emergency and standby power systems shall also comply with either NFPA 110 (liquid- and gas- fueled systems) or NFPA 111 (battery and inertia systems), as applicable.*

3402.1.1 Stationary generators. *Stationary emergency and standby power generator assemblies shall be listed in accordance with UL 2200.*

3402.1.1.1 Engine-driven generators. *The installation of liquid- and gas-fueled stationary internal combustion engines and gas turbines used to drive generator assemblies shall meet the requirements of NFPA 37.*

3402.1.1.1.1 Fuel tanks connected to generator assemblies. *Fuel tanks piped to and supplying fuel for engine-driven generator assemblies may be engine-mounted, located inside of a building, outside of a building, or on a roof in accordance with NFPA 37 or NFPA 30.*

3402.1.1.1.1.1 Engine-mounted tanks. *Engine-mounted tanks located outdoors may be located in accordance with Section 4.1.4 of NFPA 37 and shall be vented in accordance with NFPA 30. Engine-mounted tanks shall be provided with adequate clearance to enable filling, maintenance, and testing, shall be safeguarded against public access, and shall be protected from impact.*

3402.1.1.1.1.2 Other fuel tanks. *Fuel tanks, other than engine-mounted tanks, piped to and supplying the generator engine shall be located, installed, and vented in accordance with the applicable sections of NFPA 37 or located, installed, and vented in accordance with NFPA 30.*

3402.1.1.1.2 Gaseous fuel supply. *Where an internal combustion engine supplied with gaseous fuel powers emergency or standby generators, the fuel gas storage and piping system shall comply with NFPA 37 and Chapter 24.*

Replaces:	4101:8-34-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	01/01/2013, 01/01/2016

4101:8-44-01 Referenced standards.

4401.1 General. *This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this code. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 102.5.*

4401.2 Referenced codes. *When indicated in this code, the following codes refer to provisions in the listed chapters of the administrative code:*

Referenced Code	***Ohio Administrative Code Chapters***
Ohio Building Code *Fire Code* *Mechanical Code* *Plumbing Code*	*4101:1-1 to 4101:1-35* *1301:7-1 to 1301:7-7* *4101:2-1 to 4101:2-15* *4101:3-1 to 4101:3-15, codified and published as the 2017 Ohio Plumbing Code, effective 11-1-2017, and as modified in Section 2501.1.1.*

4401.3 Referenced standard list.

AAMA American Architectural Manufacturers Association
1827 Walden Office Square, Suite 550
Schaumburg, IL 60173

Standard Referenced	**Title**
AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/ I.S.2/ A440—17:	North American Fenestration Standards/ Specifications for Windows, Doors and Skylights
450—10:	Voluntary Performance Rating Method for Mulled Fenestration Assemblies
506—16:	Voluntary Specifications for Hurricane Impact and Cycle Testing of Fenestration Products
711—16:	Voluntary Specification for Self-adhering Flashing Used for Installation of Exterior Wall Fenestration Products
712—14:	Voluntary Specification for Mechanically Attached Flexible Flashing

AAMA	American Architectural Manufacturers Association 1827 Walden Office Square, Suite 550 Schaumburg, IL 60173
Standard Referenced	**Title**
714—15:	Voluntary Specification for Liquid Applied Flashing Used to Create a Water-resistive Seal around Exterior Wall Openings in Buildings
AAMA/NPEA/NSA 2100—12:	Specifications for Sunrooms

ACCA	Air Conditioning Contractors of America 2800 Shirlington Road, Suite 300 Arlington, VA 22206
Standard referenced	**Title**
Manual D—2016:	Residential Duct Systems
Manual J—2016:	Residential Load Calculation—Eighth Edition
Manual S—2014:	Residential Equipment Selection

ACI	American Concrete Institute 38800 Country Club Drive Farmington Hills, MI 48331
Standard referenced	**Title**
318—14:	Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete
332—14:	Residential Code Requirements for Structural Concrete

AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute 25 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 800 Washington, DC 20001
Standard referenced	**Title**
AISI S100—16:	North American Specification for the Design of Cold-formed Steel Structural Members, 2016
AISI S220—15:	North American Standard for Cold-formed Steel Framing—Nonstructural Members, 2015
AISI S230—15:	Standard for Cold-formed Steel Framing—Prescriptive Method for One- and Two-family Dwellings, 2015

AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute 25 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 800 Washington, DC 20001
Standard referenced	**Title**
AISI S240—15:	North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing

AMCA	Air Movement and Control Association International 30 West University Drive Arlington Heights, IL 60004
Standard referenced	**Title**
ANSI/AMCA 210-ANSI/ASHRAE 51—07:	Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating

ANCE	Association of the Electric Sector Av. Lázaro Cardenas No. 869 Col. Nueva Industrial Vallejo C.P. 07700 México D.F.
Standard referenced	**Title**
NMX-J-521/2-40-ANCE—2014/ CAN/CSA-22.2 No. 60335-2-40—12/ UL 60335-2-40:	Safety of Household and Similar Electric Appliances, Part 2-40: Particular Requirements for Heat Pumps, Air-Conditioners and Dehumidifiers

ANSI	American National Standards Institute 25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor New York, NY 10036
Standard referenced	**Title**
A108.1A—*17*:	Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-set Method, with Portland Cement Mortar
A108.1B—*17*: **[JR: most current A108 edition is 2017]**	Installation of Ceramic Tile, Quarry Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-set or Latex Portland Mortar
A108.4—*17*:	Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesives or Water-Cleanable Tile-setting Epoxy Adhesive

ANSI	American National Standards Institute 25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor New York, NY 10036
Standard referenced	**Title**
A108.5—*17*:	Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex Portland Cement Mortar
A108.6—*17*:	Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical-resistant, Water-cleanable Tile-setting and -grouting Epoxy
A108.11—*17*:	Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units
ANSI 117—2015:	Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Softwood Species
A118.1—*17*:	American National Standard Specifications for Dry-set Portland Cement Mortar
A118.3—13:	American National Standard Specifications for Chemical-resistant, Water-cleanable Tile-setting and -grouting Epoxy, and Water-cleanable Tile-setting Epoxy Adhesive
A118.4—16:	American National Standard Specifications for Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar
A118.10—*17*:	Specification for Load-bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation
A136.1—*17*:	American National Standard Specifications for Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile
A137.1—17:	American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile
LC1/CSA 6.26—13:	Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)
LC4/CSA 6.32—12:	Press-connect Metallic Fittings for Use in Fuel Gas Distribution Systems
Z21.1—2010:	Household Cooking Gas Appliances
Z21.5.1/ CSA 7.1—14:	Gas Clothes Dryers— Volume I—Type I Clothes Dryers
Z21.8—94 (R2002):	Installation of Domestic Gas Conversion Burners
Z21.10.1/ CSA 4.1—12:	Gas Water Heaters—Volume I—Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu per hour or Less
Z21.10.3/ CSA 4.3—11:	Gas Water Heaters—Volume III—Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings above 75,000 Btu per hour, Circulating and Instantaneous

ANSI	American National Standards Institute 25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor New York, NY 10036
Standard referenced	**Title**
Z21.11.2—11:	Gas-fired Room Heaters—Volume II—Unvented Room Heaters
Z21.13/ CSA 4.9—11:	Gas-fired Low-pressure Steam and Hot Water Boilers
Z21.15/ CSA 9.1—09:	Manually Operated Gas Valves for Appliances, Appliance Connector Valves and Hose End Valves
Z21.22—99 (R20*15*):	Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems—with Addenda Z21.22a—2000 (R2003) and 21.22b—2001 (R2003)
Z21.24/ CSA 6.10—06:	Connectors for Gas Appliances
Z21.40.1/ CSA 2.91—96 (R2011):	Gas-fired, Heat-activated Air-conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances
Z21.40.2/ CSA 2.92—96 (R2011):	Air-conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances (Thermal Combustion)
Z21.42—2014:	Gas-fired Illuminating Appliances
Z21.47/ CSA 2.3—12:	Gas-fired Central Furnaces
Z21.50/ CSA 2.22—16:	Vented Gas Fireplaces
Z21.54—2009:	Gas Hose Connectors for Portable Outdoor Gas-fired Appliances
Z21.56/ CSA 4.7—17:	Gas-fired Pool Heaters
Z21.58—*18*/ CSA 1.6—*18*:	Outdoor Cooking Gas Appliances
Z21.60/ CSA 2.26—12:	Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid Fuel-burning Fireplaces
Z21.69/ CSA 6.16—09:	Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances
Z21.75/ CSA 6.27—07:	Connectors for Outdoor Gas Appliances and Manufactured Homes
Z21.80/ CSA 6.22—11:	Line Pressure Regulators
ANSI/ CSA FC 1—12:	Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems
Z21.84—12:	Manually Listed, Natural Gas Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid Fuel-burning Fireplaces
Z21.86/ CSA 2.32—08:	Gas-fired Vented Space Heating Appliances
Z21.88/ CSA 2.33—16:	Vented Gas Fireplace Heaters
Z21.91—07:	Ventless Firebox Enclosures for Gas-fired Unvented Decorative Room Heaters

ANSI	American National Standards Institute 25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor New York, NY 10036
Standard referenced	**Title**
Z21.93/ CSA 6.30—13:	Excess Flow Valves for Natural and LP Gas with Pressures up to 5 psig
Z21.97—12:	Outdoor Decorative Appliances
Z83.6—90 (R1998):	Gas-fired Infrared Heaters
Z83.8/ CSA 2.6—09:	Gas-fired Unit Heaters, Gas Packaged Heaters, Gas Utility Heaters and Gas-fired Duct Furnaces
Z83.19—01 (R2009):	Gas-fuel High-intensity Infrared Heaters
Z83.20—08:	Gas-fired Low-intensity Infared Heaters Outdoor Decorative Appliances
Z97.1—2014:	Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings—Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test

APA	APA—The Engineered Wood Association 7011 South 19th Tacoma, WA 98466
Standard referenced	**Title**
ANSI/A190.1—2017:	Structural Glued-laminated Timber
ANSI/ APA PRP 210—2014:	Standard for Performance-rated Engineered Wood Siding
ANSI/ APA PRG 320—2017:	Standard for Performance-rated Cross Laminated Timber
ANSI/ APA PRR 410—2016:	Standard for Performance-rated Engineered Wood Rim Boards
ANSI/ APA PRS 610.1—2013:	Standard for Performance-Rated Structural Insulated Panels in Wall Applications
APA E30—15:	Engineered Wood Construction Guide

ASCE/SEI	American Society of Civil Engineers Structural Engineering Institute 1801 Alexander Bell Drive Reston, VA 20191-4400
Standard referenced	**Title**
7—16:	Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures

ASCE/SEI	American Society of Civil Engineers Structural Engineering Institute 1801 Alexander Bell Drive Reston, VA 20191-4400
Standard referenced	**Title**
24—14:	Flood-resistant Design and Construction
32—17:	Design and Construction of Frost-protected Shallow Foundations

ASHRAE	ASHRAE 1791 Tullie Circle NE Atlanta, GA 30329
Standard referenced	**Title**
ASHRAE—2001:	2001 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals for use in reference to Table 1105.5.2 (1) only
ASHRAE—2017:	ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals
ASHRAE 193—2010 (RA 2014):	Method of Test for Determining Air Tightness of HVAC Equipment
34—2016:	Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants

ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers Two Park Avenue New York, NY 10016-5990
Standard referenced	**Title**
ASME A17.1—2016/ CSA B44—16:	Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators
A18.1—2014:	Safety Standard for Platforms and Stairway Chair Lifts
B1.20.1—2013:	Pipe Threads, General-purpose (Inch)
B16.33—2012:	Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves for Use in Gas Piping Systems up to 125 psig (Sizes $^{1}/_{2}$ through 2)
B16.44—2012:	Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves for Use in Above-ground Piping Systems up to 5 psi
B36.10M—2004(R2015):	Welded and Seamless Wrought-steel Pipe

ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers Two Park Avenue New York, NY 10016-5990
Standard referenced	**Title**
BPVC—2015:	ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code (Sections I, II, IV, V, VI and VIII)
CSD-1—2016:	Controls and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
A36/A36M—14:	Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
A53/A53M—12:	Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-dipped, Zinc-coated Welded and Seamless
A106/A106M—14:	Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-temperature Service
A123/A123M—15:	Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
A153/A153M—09:	Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
A167—99(2009):	Specification for Stainless and Heat-resisting Chromium-nickel Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip
A240/A240M—15A:	Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications
A254—12:	Specification for Copper Brazed Steel Tubing
A268—2010:	Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Ferritic and Martensitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service
A269—2015:	Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service
A307—14:	Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 psi Tensile Strength
A463/A463M—15:	Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Aluminum-coated by the Hot-dip Process

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
A539—99:	Specification for Electric-resistance-welded Coiled Steel Tubing for Gas and Fuel Oil Lines
A563—15:	Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts
A615/A615M—2015aE1:	Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
A641/A641M—09a(2014):	Specification for Zinc-coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire
A653/A653M—15:	Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-iron Alloy-coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-dip Process
A706/A706M—15:	Specification for Low-alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
A755/A755M—2015:	Specification for Steel Sheet, Metallic Coated by the Hot-dip Process and Prepainted by the Coil-coating Process for Exterior Exposed Building Products
A792/A792M—10(2015):	Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-zinc Alloy-coated by the Hot-dip Process
A875/A875M—13:	Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-5%, Aluminum Alloy-coated by the Hot-dip Process
A924/A924M—14:	Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-coated by the Hot-dip Process
A996/A996M—15:	Specifications for Rail-steel and Axle-steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
A1003/A1003M—15:	Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Carbon, Metallic and Nonmetallic-coated for Cold-formed Framing Members
B42—2015A:	Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
B43—15:	Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes
B75/B75M—11:	Specification for Seamless Copper Tube
B88—14:	Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
B101—12:	Specification for Lead-coated Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
B135—10:	Specification for Seamless Brass Tube
B209—14:	Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-alloy Sheet and Plate
B251—10:	Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-alloy Tube
B302—12:	Specification for Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
B306—13:	Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)
B370—12:	Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction
B695—04(2009):	Standard Specification for Coatings of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on Iron and Steel
B813—10:	Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering Applications of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
B828—02(2010):	Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings
C5—10:	Specification for Quicklime for Structural Purposes
C22/C22M—2015:	Specification for Gypsum
C27—98(2013):	Specification for Standard Classification of Fireclay and High-alumina Refractory Brick
C28/C28M—10(2015):	Specification for Gypsum Plasters
C33/C33M—13:	Specification for Concrete Aggregates
C34—13:	Specification for Structural Clay Load-bearing Wall Tile
C35/C35M—(2014):	Specification for Inorganic Aggregates for Use in Gypsum Plaster
C55—2014A:	Specification for Concrete Building Brick
C56—13:	Standard Specification for Structural Clay Nonloadbearing Tile
C59/C59M—00(2015):	Specification for Gypsum Casting Plaster and Molding Plaster
C61/C61M—00(2015):	Specification for Gypsum Keene’s Cement

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
C62—13A:	Standard Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)
C73—14:	Specification for Calcium Silicate Face Brick (Sand Lime Brick)
C90—14:	Specification for Load-bearing Concrete Masonry Units
C91/C91M—12:	Specification for Masonry Cement
C94/C94M—15A:	Standard Specification for Ready-mixed Concrete
C126—15:	Standard Specification for Ceramic Glazed Structural Clay Facing Tile, Facing Brick, and Solid Masonry Units
C129—14A:	Specification for Nonload-bearing Concrete Masonry Units
C143/C143M—15:	Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
C145—85:	Specification for Solid Load-bearing Concrete Masonry Units
C150/C150M—15:	Specification for Portland Cement
C199—84(2011):	Test Method for Pier Test for Refractory Mortar
C203—05a(2012):	Standard Test Methods for Breaking Load and Flexural Properties of Block-type Thermal Insulation
C207—06(2011):	Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes
C208—12:	Specification for Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board
C212—14:	Standard Specification for Structural Clay Facing Tile
C216—15:	Specification for Facing Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)
C270—14A:	Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry
C315—07(2011):	Specification for Clay Flue Liners and Chimney Pots
C406/C406M—2015:	Specifications for Roofing Slate
C411—11:	Test Method for Hot-surface Performance of High-temperature Thermal Insulation

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
C475/C475M—15:	Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Wallboard
C476—10:	Specification for Grout for Masonry
C503/C503M—2010:	Standard Specification for Marble Dimension Stone
C514—04(2014):	Specification for Nails for the Application of Gypsum Wallboard
C552—15:	Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
C557—03(2009)e01:	Specification for Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing
C568/C568M—2010:	Standard Specification for Limestone Dimension Stone
C578—15:	Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
C587—04(2014):	Specification for Gypsum Veneer Plaster
C595/C595M—14E1:	Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
C615/C615M—11:	Standard Specification for Granite Dimension Stone
C616/C616M—10:	Standard Specification for Quartz-based Dimension Stone
C629/C629M—10:	Standard Specification for Slate Dimension Stone
C631—09(2014):	Specification for Bonding Compounds for Interior Gypsum Plastering
C645—14:	Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members
C652—15:	Specification for Hollow Brick (Hollow Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)
C685/C685M—14:	Specification for Concrete Made by Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing
C726—12:	Standard Specification for Mineral Wool Roof Insulation Board
C728—15:	Standard Specification for Perlite Thermal Insulation Board
C744—14:	Standard Specification for Prefaced Concrete and Calcium Silicate Masonry Units

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
C836/C836M—15:	Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Separate Wearing Course
C841—03(2013):	Standard Specification for Installation of Interior Lathing and Furring
C842—05(2015):	Standard Specification for Application of Interior Gypsum Plaster
C843—99(2012):	Specification for Application of Gypsum Veneer Plaster
C844—2015:	Specification for Application of Gypsum Base to Receive Gypsum Veneer Plaster
C847—14A:	Specification for Metal Lath
C887—13:	Specification for Packaged, Dry, Combined Materials for Surface Bonding Mortar
C897—15:	Specification for Aggregate for Job-mixed Portland Cement-based Plasters
C920—14A:	Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
C926—15B:	Specification for Application of Portland Cement-based Plaster
C933—14:	Specification for Welded Wire Lath
C946—10:	Standard Practice for Construction of Dry-Stacked, Surface-Bonded Walls
C954—15:	Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in (0.84 mm) or to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness
C957/C957M—15:	Specification for High-solids Content, Cold Liquid-applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Integral Wearing Surface
C1002—14:	Specification for Steel Self-piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
C1029—15:	Specification for Spray-applied Rigid Cellular Polyurethane Thermal Insulation
C1032—14:	Specification for Woven Wire Plaster Base
C1047—14a:	Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base
C1063—15A:	Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring to Receive Interior and Exterior Portland Cement-based Plaster
C1088—14:	Standard Specification for Thin Veneer Brick Units Made from Clay or Shale
C1107/C1107M—14A:	Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-cement Grout (Nonshrink)
C1116/C116M—10(2015):	Standard Specification for Fiber-reinforced Concrete and Shotcrete
C1157—11/C1157M—11:	Standard Performance Specification for Hydraulic Cement
C1167—11:	Specification for Clay Roof Tiles
C1177/C1177M—13:	Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing
C1178/C1178M—13:	Specification for Glass Mat Water-resistant Gypsum Backing Panel
C1186—08(2012):	Specification for Flat Fiber Cement Sheets
C1261—13:	Specification for Firebox Brick for Residential Fireplaces
C1278/C1278M—07a(2011):	Specification for Fiber-reinforced Gypsum Panels
C1283—11:	Practice for Installing Clay Flue Lining
C1288—14:	Standard Specification for Discrete Nonasbestos Fiber-cement Interior Substrate Sheets
C1289—15:	Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board
C1325—14:	Standard Specification for Nonasbestos Fiber-mat Reinforced Cement Interior Substrate Sheets Backer Units
C1328/C1328M—12:	Specification for Plastic (Stucco) Cement
C1363—11:	The Standard Test Method for Thermal Performance of Building Materials and

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
	Envelope Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus
C1364—10B:	Standard Specification for Architectural Cast Stone
C1396/C1396M—2014A:	Specification for Gypsum Board
C1405—15:	Standard Specification for Glazed Brick (Single Fired, Brick Units)
C1492—03(2009):	Specification for Concrete Roof Tile
C1513—2013:	Standard Specification for Steel Tapping Screws for Cold-formed Steel Framing Connections
C1634—15:	Standard Specification for Concrete Facing Brick
C1658/C1658M—13:	Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Panels
C1668—13a:	Standard Specification for Externally Applied Reflective Insulation Systems on Rigid Duct in Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning (HVAC) Systems
C1670/1670M—16:	Standard Specification for Adhered Manufactured Stone Masonry Veneer Units
C1691—11:	Standard Specification for Unreinforced Autoclaved Aerated Concrete (AAC) Masonry Units
C1693—11:	Standard Specification for Autoclaved Aerated Concrete (AAC)
C1766—13:	Standard Specification for Factory-Laminated Gypsum Panel Products
D41/D41M—2011:	Specification for Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing
D43/D43M—2000(2012)E1:	Specification for Coal Tar Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing
D226/D226M—09:	Specification for Asphalt-saturated (Organic Felt) Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
D227/D227M—03(2011)e1:	Specification for Coal Tar Saturated (Organic Felt) Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
D312/D321M—15:	Specification for Asphalt Used in Roofing
D422—63(2007)E2:	Test Method for Particle-size Analysis of Soils

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
D449/D449M—03(2014)E1:	Specification for Asphalt Used in Dampproofing and Waterproofing
D450/D450M—07(2013)E1:	Specification for Coal-tar Pitch Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing
D1227—13:	Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Used as a Protective Coating for Roofing
D1248—12:	Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Extrusion Materials for Wire and Cable
D1693—15:	Test Method for Environmental Stress-cracking of Ethylene Plastics
D1784—11:	Standard Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds
D1863/D1863M—05(2011)e1:	Specification for Mineral Aggregate Used in Built-up Roofs
D1970/D1970M—2015A:	Specification for Self-adhering Polymer Modified Bitumen Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection
D2178/D2178M—15:	Specification for Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
D2412—11:	Test Method for Determination of External Loading Characteristics of Plastic Pipe by Parallel-plate Loading
D2447—03:	Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe Schedules 40 and 80, Based on Outside Diameter
D2513—2014e1:	Specification for Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing and Fittings
D2626/D2626M—04 (2012)e1:	Specification for Asphalt-saturated and Coated Organic Felt Base Sheet Used in Roofing
D2683—14:	Specification for Socket-type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing
D2822/D2822M—05(2011)e1:	Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Containing

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
D2823/D2823M—05(2011)e1:	Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings, Asbestos Containing
D2824/D2824M—2013:	Specification for Aluminum-pigmented Asphalt Roof Coatings, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered and Fibered without Asbestos
D2898—10:	Test Methods for Accelerated Weathering of Fire-retardant-treated Wood for Fire Testing
D3019—08:	Specification for Lap Cement Used with Asphalt Roll Roofing, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered and Nonasbestos Fibered
D3161/D3161M—15:	Test Method for Wind-Resistance of Steep Slope Roofing Products (Fan Induced Method)
D3201/D3201M—2013:	Test Method for Hygroscopic Properties of Fire-retardant Wood and Wood-base Products
D3309—96a(2002):	Specification for Polybutylene (PB) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution System
D3350—14:	Specification for Polyethylene Plastic Pipe and Fitting Materials
D3462/D3462M—10A:	Specification for Asphalt Shingles Made From Glass Felt and Surfaced with Mineral Granules
D3468/D3468M—99(2013)E1:	Specification for Liquid-applied Neoprene and Chlorosulfanated Polyethylene Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
D3679—13:	Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Siding
D3737—2012:	Practice for Establishing Allowable Properties for Structural Glued Laminated Timber (Glulam)
D3747—79(2007):	Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Adhesive for Adhering Roof Insulation
D3909/D3909M—14:	Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Glass Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules
D4022/D4022M—2007(2012)e1:	Specification for Coal Tar Roof Cement, Asbestos Containing
D4318—10E1:	Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit and Plasticity Index of Soils

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
D4434/D4434M—12:	Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Sheet Roofing
D4479/D4479M—07(2012)e1:	Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings—asbestos-free
D4586/D4586M—07(2012)e1:	Specification for Asphalt Roof Cemen—asbestos-free
D4601/D4601M—04(2012)e1:	Specification for Asphalt-coated Glass Fiber Base Sheet Used in Roofing
D4637/D4637M—14E1:	Specification for EPDM Sheet Used in Single-ply Roof Membrane
D4829—11:	Test Method for Expansion Index of Soils
D4869/D4869M—15:	Specification for Asphalt-saturated (Organic Felt) Underlayment Used in Steep Slope Roofing
D4897/D4897M—01(2009):	Specification for Asphalt Coated Glass-fiber Venting Base Sheet Used in Roofing
D4990—1997a(2013):	Specification for Coal Tar Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
D5019—07a:	Specification for Reinforced Nonvulcanized Polymeric Sheet Used in Roofing Membrane
D5055—13E1:	Specification for Establishing and Monitoring Structural Capacities of Prefabricated Wood I-joists
D5456—14B:	Standard Specification for Evaluation of Structural Composite Lumber Products
D5516—09:	Test Method for Evaluating the Flexural Properties of Fire-retardant-treated Softwood Plywood Exposed to the Elevated Temperatures
D5643/D5643M—06(2012)e1:	Specification for Coal Tar Roof Cement Asbestos-free
D5664—10:	Test Methods For Evaluating the Effects of Fire-retardant Treatments and Elevated Temperatures on Strength Properties of Fire-retardant-treated Lumber
D5665/D5665M—99a(2014)E1:	Specification for Thermoplastic Fabrics Used in Cold-applied Roofing and Waterproofing

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
D5726—98(2013):	Specification for Thermoplastic Fabrics Used in Hot-applied Roofing and Waterproofing
D6083—05e01:	Specification for Liquid-applied Acrylic Coating Used in Roofing
D6162/D6162M—2000a(2015)E1:	Specification for Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using a Combination of Polyester and Glass Fiber Reinforcements
D6163/D6163M—2000(2015)E1:	Specification for Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Glass Fiber Reinforcements
D6164/D6164M—11:	Specification for Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Polyester Reinforcements
D6222/D6222M—11:	Specification for Atactic Polypropylene (APP) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Polyester Reinforcements
D6223/D6223M—02(2009)E1:	Specification for Atactic Polypropylene (APP) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using a Combination of Polyester and Glass Fiber Reinforcement
D6298—13:	Specification for Fiberglass-reinforced Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheets with a Factory Applied Metal Surface
D6305—08(2015)E1:	Practice for Calculating Bending Strength Design Adjustment Factors for Fire-retardant-treated Plywood Roof Sheathing
D6380/D6380—03(2013)E1:	Standard Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Organic Felt)
D6464—03a(2009)e1:	Standard Specification for Expandable Foam Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing
D6694/D6694M—08(2013)E1:	Standard Specification for Liquid-applied Silicone Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing Systems

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
D6754/D6754M—10:	Standard Specification for Ketone-ethylene-ester-based Sheet Roofing
D6757—2013:	Specification for Underlayment Felt Containing Inorganic Fibers Used with Steep Slope Roofing
D6841—08:	Standard Practice for Calculating Design Value Treatment Adjustment Factors for Fire-retardant-treated Lumber
D6878/D6878M—13:	Standard Specification for Thermoplastic-polyolefin-based Sheet Roofing
D6947/D6947M—07(2013)E1:	Standard Specification for Liquid Applied Moisture Cured Polyurethane Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing System
D7032—14:	Standard Specification for Establishing Performance Ratings for Wood-plastic Composite Deck Boards and Guardrail Systems (Guards or Handrails)
D7158—D7158M—2016:	Standard Test Method for Wind Resistance of Asphalt Shingles (Uplift Force/Uplift Resistance Method)
D7254—15:	Standard Specification for Polypropylene (PP) siding
D7425/D7425M—13:	Standard Specification for Spray Polyurethane Foam Used for Roofing Application
D7672—14:	Standard Specification for Evaluating Structural Capacities of Rim Board Products and Assemblies
D7793—13:	Standard Specification for Insulated Vinyl Siding
E84—2016:	Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
E96/E96M—2015:	Test Method for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
E108—2016:	Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings
E119—2016:	Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
E136—2016:	Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C
E283—04(2012):	Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences across the Specimen
E330/E330M—14:	Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
E331—00(2009):	Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
E779—10:	Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization
E814—2013A:	Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems
E970—14:	Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Exposed Attic Floor Insulation Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source
E1509—12:	Standard Specification for Room Heaters, Pellet Fuel-burning Type
E1602—03(2010)e1:	Guide for Construction of Solid Fuel Burning Masonry Heaters
E1827—11:	Standard Test Methods for Determining Airtightness of Building Using an Orifice Blower Door
E1886—13A:	Test Method for Performance Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Missile(s) and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials
E1996—2014a:	Standard Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes
E2178—2013:	Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
E2231—15:	Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics
E2273—03(2011):	Standard Test Method for Determining the Drainage Efficiency of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) Clad Wall Assemblies
E2568—09e1:	Standard Specification for PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems
E2570/E2570M—07(2014)E1:	Standard Test Methods for Evaluating Water-resistive Barrier (WRB) Coatings Used Under Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) or EIFS with Drainage
E2634—11(2015):	Standard Specification for Flat Wall Insulating Concrete Form (ICF) Systems
F844—07a(2013):	Standard Specification for Washers, Steel, Plain (Flat), Unhardened for General Use
F876—15A:	Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing
F877—2011A:	Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
F1055—13:	Specification for Electrofusion Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene and Crosslinked Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing
F1281—11:	Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Pressure Pipe
F1282—10:	Specification for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe
F1554—15:	Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55 and 105-ksi Yield Strength
F1667—15:	Specification for Driven Fasteners, Nails, Spikes and Staples
F1807—15:	Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
	Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
F1924—12:	Standard Specification for Plastic Mechanical Fittings for Use on Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene Gas Distribution Pipe and Tubing
F1960—15:	Specification for Cold Expansion Fittings with PEX Reinforcing Rings for Use with Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing
F1970—12E1:	Standard Specification for Special Engineered Fittings, Appurtenances or Valves for Use in Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) or Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Systems
F1973—13E1:	Standard Specification for Factory Assembled Anodeless Risers and Transition Fittings in Polyethylene (PE) and Polyamide 11 (PA 11) Fuel Gas Distribution Systems
F 2090—17:	Specification for Window Fall Prevention Devices with Emergency Escape (Egress) Release Mechanisms
F2098—08:	Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Clamps for Securing SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing to Metal Insert and Plastic Insert Fittings
F2389—15:	Standard for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems
F2623—14:	Standard Specification for Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) SDRG Tubing
F2735—09:	Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) and Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
F2769—14:	Polyethylene or Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Plastic Hot and Cold-Water Tubing and Distribution Systems

ASTM	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428
Standard referenced	**Title**
F2806—10(2015):	Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (Metric SDR-PR)
F2945—2015:	Standard Specification for Polyamide 11 Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing and Fittings
F2969—12:	Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) IPS Dimensioned Pressure Pipe

AWC	American Wood Council 222 Catoctin Circle SE, Suite 201 Leesburg, VA 20175
Standard referenced	**Title**
AWC STJR—2015:	Span Tables for Joists and Rafters
ANSI/AWC WFCM—2018:	Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-family Dwellings
ANSI/AWC NDS—2018:	National Design Specification (NDS) for Wood Construction—with 2018 Supplement
ANSI/AWC PWF—2015:	Permanent Wood Foundation Design Specification

AWPA	American Wood Protection Association P.O. Box 361784 Birmingham, AL 35236-1784
Standard referenced	**Title**
C1—03:	All Timber Products—Preservative Treatment by Pressure Processes
M4—16:	Standard for the Care of Preservative-treated Wood Products
U1—16:	USE CATEGORY SYSTEM: User Specification for Treated Wood Except Commodity Specification H

AWS	American Welding Society 8669 NW 36 Street, #130 Miami, FL 33166
Standard referenced	**Title**
ANSI/AWS A5.31M/A5.31—2012:	Specification for Fluxes for Brazing and Braze Welding Edition: 2nd

AWWA	American Water Works Association 6666 West Quincy Avenue Denver, CO 80235
Standard referenced	**Title**
C903—16:	Polyethylene-aluminum-polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe, 12 mm ($^1/_2$ in.) through 50 mm (2 in.), for Water Service

CEN	European Committee for Standardization (EN) Central Secretariat Rue de Stassart 36 B-10 50 Brussels
Standard referenced	**Title**
EN 15250-2007:	Slow Heat Release Appliances Fired by Solid Fuel Requirements and Test Methods

CPA	Composite Panel Association 19465 Deerfield Avenue, Suite 306 Leesburg, VA 20176
Standard referenced	**Title**
ANSI A135.4—2012:	Basic Hardboard
ANSI A135.5—2012:	Prefinished Hardboard Paneling
ANSI A135.6—2012:	Engineered Wood Siding
ANSI A135.7—2012:	Engineered Wood Trim
A208.1—2016:	Particleboard

CPSC	Consumer Product Safety Commission 4330 East-West Highway Bethesda, MD 20814
Standard referenced	**Title**
16 CFR, Part 1201—(2002):	Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing
16 CFR, Part 1209—(2002):	Interim Safety Standard for Cellulose Insulation
16 CFR, Part 1404—(2002):	Cellulose Insulation

CSA	CSA Group 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road Cleveland, OH 44131-5516
Standard referenced	**Title**
AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17:	North American Fenestration Standard/ Specification for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights
ANSI/CSA FC I—2014:	Fuel Cell Technologies—Part 3-100; Stationary fuel cell power systems-Safety
ASME A17.1/ CSA B44—2016:	Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators
CSA 8—93:	Requirements for Gas Fired Log Lighters for Wood Burning Fireplaces
B44—20*16*:	Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators
B55.1—2015:	Test Method for Measuring Efficiency and Pressure Loss of Drain Water Heat Recovery Units
B55.2—2015:	Drain Water Heat Recovery Units
B137.9—16:	Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe Systems
B137.10—13:	Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe Systems
B137.18—13:	Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications
C22.2 No. 218.1—M89(R2011):	Spas, Hot Tubs and Associated Equipment
C22.2 No. 236—15:	Heating and Cooling Equipment
CSA C448 Series—16:	Design and Installation of Earth Energy Systems
CSA O325—07:	Construction Sheathing
O437-Series—93:	Standards on OSB and Waferboard (Reaffirmed 2006)

CSA	CSA Group 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road Cleveland, OH 44131-5516
Standard referenced	**Title**
CAN/CSA/C22.2 No. 60335-2-40—2012:	Safety of Household and Similar Electrical Appliances, Part 2-40: Particular Requirements for Electrical Heat Pumps, Air-Conditioners and Dehumidifiers

CSSB	Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau P.O. Box 1178 Sumas, WA 98295-1178
Standard referenced	**Title**
CSSB—97:	Grading and Packing Rules for Western Red Cedar Shakes and Western Red Shingles of the Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau

DASMA	Door & Access Systems Manufacturers Association International 1300 Sumner Avenue Cleveland, OH 44115-2851
Standard referenced	**Title**
105—2016:	Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Air Infiltration of Garage Doors and Rolling Doors
108—2017:	Standard Method for Testing Garage Doors, Rolling Doors and Flexible Doors; Determination of Structural Performance Under Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
115—2016:	Standard Method for Testing Sectional Garage Doors, Rolling Doors and Flexible Doors: Determination of Structural Performance Under Missile Impact and Cyclic Wind Pressure

DOC	United States Department of Commerce 1401 Constitution Avenue, NW Washington, DC 20230
Standard referenced	**Title**
PS 1—09:	Structural Plywood

PS 2—10:	Performance Standard for Wood-based Structural-use Panels
PS 20—05:	American Softwood Lumber Standard

DOTn U.S. Department of Transportation
1200 New Jersey Avenue SE
East Building, 2nd floor
Washington, DC 20590

Standard referenced	Title
49 CFR, Parts 192.281(e) & 192.283 (b) (2009):	Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards

FEMA Federal Emergency Management Agency
500 C Street SW
Washington, DC 20472

Standard referenced	Title
FEMA TB-2—08:	Flood Damage-resistant Materials Requirements
FEMA TB-11—01:	Crawlspace Construction for Buildings Located in Special Flood Hazard Area

FM FM Approvals
Headquarters Office
1151 Boston-Providence Turnpike
P.O. Box 9102
Norwood, MA 02062

Standard referenced	Title
4450—(1989):	Approval Standard for Class 1 Insulated Steel Deck Roofs—with Supplements through July 1992
4880—(2015):	Approval Standard for Class 1 Rating of Building Panels or Interior Finish Materials

GA Gypsum Association
6525 Belcrest Road, Suite 480
Hyattsville, MD 20782

Standard referenced	Title
GA-253—2016:	Application of Gypsum Sheathing

HPVA	Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association 1825 Michael Faraday Drive Reston, Virginia 20190
Standard referenced	**Title**
ANSI/HPVA HP-1—2016:	American National Standard for Hardwood and Decorative Plywood

HVI	Home Ventilating Institute 1000 North Rand Road Suite 214 Wauconda, Il 60084
Standard referenced	**Title**
916—09	Airflow Test Procedure

ICC	International Code Council, Inc. 500 New Jersey Avenue NW 6th Floor Washington, DC 20001
Standard referenced	**Title**
ANSI/RESNET/ICC 301—2014:	Standard for the Calculation and Labeling of the Energy Performance of Low-Rise Residential Buildings using the Energy Rating Index, March 7, 2014, republished 2016
ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380—2016:	Standard for Testing Airtightness of Building Enclosures, Airtightness of Heating and Cooling Air Distribution and Airflow of Mechanical Ventilation Systems
ICC/ANSI A117.1—09:	Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
ICC 400—17:	Standard on the Design and Construction of Log Structures
ICC 500—14:	ICC/NSSA Standard on the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters
ICC 600—14:	Standard for Residential Construction in High-wind Regions
ICC 900/SRCC 300—2015:	Solar Thermal System Standard
ICC 901/SRCC 100—2015:	Solar Thermal Collector Standard
IEBC—18:	International Existing Building Code®
IECC—18:	International Energy Conservation Code®

ICC	International Code Council, Inc. 500 New Jersey Avenue NW 6th Floor Washington, DC 20001
Standard referenced	**Title**
IECC—06:	International Energy Conservation Code® for use with 1101.6 only.
IFGC—18:	International Fuel Gas Code®

IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, Inc. 3 Park Avenue, 17th Floor New York, NY 10016-5997
Standard referenced	**Title**
515.1—2012:	IEEE Standard for the Testing, Design, Installation and Maintenance of Electrical Resistance Trace Heating for Commercial Applications

ISO	International Organization for Standardization Chemin de Blandonnet 8 CP 401 1214 Vernier Geneva, Switzerland
Standard referenced	**Title**
8336—2009:	Fibre-cement Flat Sheets-product Specification and Test Methods
15874—2002:	Polypropylene Plastic Piping Systems for Hot and Cold Water Installations

MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry 127 Park Street, NE Vienna, VA 22180
Standard referenced	**Title**
SP-58—09:	Pipe Hangers and Supports—Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application and Installation

NAIMA	North American Insulation Manufacturers Association 11 Canal Center Plaza, Suite 101 Alexandria, VA 22314
Standard referenced	**Title**
AH 116—09:	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards, Fifth Edition

NFPA	National Fire Protection Association 1 Batterymarch Park Quincy, MA 02169-7471
Standard referenced	**Title**
13—16:	Standard for Installation of Sprinkler Systems
13D—16:	Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes
13R—16:	Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Low-Rise Residential Occupancies
30-15	*Flammable and combustible liquids code*
31—16:	Standard for the Installation of Oil-burning Equipment
37-10	*Standard for the installation and use of stationary combustion engines and gas turbines*
58—17:	Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code
70—17:	National Electrical Code
72—16:	National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
85—15:	Boiler and Combustion Systems Hazards Code
110-10	*Standard for emergency and standby power systems*
111-10	*Standard on stored electrical energy emergency and standby power systems*
211—16:	Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel Burning Appliances
259—18:	Standard for Test Method for Potential Heat of Building Materials
275—17:	Standard Method of Fire Tests for the Evaluation of Thermal Barriers
286—15:	Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth
501—17:	Standard on Manufactured Housing

NFPA	National Fire Protection Association 1 Batterymarch Park Quincy, MA 02169-7471
Standard referenced	**Title**
720—15:	Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detectors and Warning Equipment
853—15:	Standard on the Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems

NFRC	National Fenestration Rating Council, Inc. 6305 Ivy Lane, Suite 140 Greenbelt, MD 20770
Standard referenced	**Title**
100—2017:	Procedure for Determining Fenestration Products *U*-Factors
200—2017:	Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence
400—2017:	Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage

NSF	NSF International 789 N. Dixboro Road P.O. Box 130140 Ann Arbor, MI 48105
Standard referenced	**Title**
14—2015:	Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials
358-1—2014:	Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground Source “Geothermal” Heat Pump Systems
358-2—2012:	Polypropylene Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground Source “Geothermal” Heat Pump Systems

PCA	Portland Cement Association 5420 Old Orchard Road Skokie, IL 60077
Standard referenced	**Title**

100—12:	Prescriptive Design of Exterior Concrete Walls for One- and Two-family Dwellings (Pub. No. EB241)

SBCA Structural Building Components Association
6300 Enterprise Lane
Madison, WI 53719

Standard referenced	Title
BCSI—2013 (Updated March 2015):	Building Component Safety Information Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing, Restraining & Bracing of Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses
CFS-BCSI—2008:	Cold-formed Steel Building Component Safety Information (CFSBCSI) Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing & Bracing of Cold-formed Steel Trusses
FS100—12:	Standard Requirements for Wind Pressure Resistance of Foam Plastic Insulating Sheathing Used in Exterior Wall Covering Assemblies

SMACNA Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors National Assoc. Inc.
4021 Lafayette Center Road
Chantilly, VA 22021

Standard referenced	Title
SMACNA—10:	Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards (2003)
SMACNA/ANSI—2016:	HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible 4th Edition (ANSI) 2016

TMS The Masonry Society
105 South Sunset Street, Suite Q
Longmont, CO 80501

Standard referenced	Title
402—2016:	Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures
403—2017:	Direct Design Handbook for Masonry Structures
404—2016:	Standard for the Design of Architectural Cast Stone
602—2016:	Specification for Masonry Structures

TPI	Truss Plate Institute 218 N. Lee Street, Suite 312 Alexandria, VA 22314
Standard referenced	**Title**
TPI 1—2014:	National Design Standard for Metal-plate-connected Wood Truss Construction

UL	UL LLC 333 Pfingsten Road Northbrook, IL 60062
Standard referenced	**Title**
17—2008:	Vent or Chimney Connector Dampers for Oil-fired Appliances—with revisions through September 2013
55A—04:	Materials for Built-up Roof Coverings
58—96:	Steel Underground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids—with Revisions through July 1998
80—2007:	Steel Tanks for Oil-burner Fuel— with revisions through January 2014
103—2010:	Factory-built Chimneys for Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances— with revisions through July 2012
127—2011:	Factory-built Fireplaces— with revisions through May 2015
174—04:	Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters—with revisions through April 2015
180—2012:	Liquid-level Indicating Gauges for Oil Burner Fuels and Other Combustible Liquids
181—05:	Factory-made Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with revisions through May 2003
181A—2013:	Closure Systems for Use with Rigid Air Ducts and Air Connectors— with revisions through December 1998
181B—2013:	Closure Systems for Use with Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors— with revisions through August 2003
217—06:	Single- and Multiple-station Smoke Alarms— with revisions through October 2015
263—2011:	Standards for Fire Test of Building Construction and Materials—with revisions through June 2015
268—2009:	Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems

UL	UL LLC 333 Pfingsten Road Northbrook, IL 60062
Standard referenced	**Title**
325—02:	Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver and Window Operations and Systems—with revisions through May 2015
343—2008:	Pumps for Oil-burning Appliances— with revisions through June 2013
378—06:	Draft Equipment— with revisions through June 12, 2014
441—10:	Gas Vents—with revisions through June 12, 2014
507—99:	Standard for Electric Fans
508—99:	Industrial Control Equipment— with revisions through October 2013
515—11:	Electrical Resistance Heat Tracing for Commercial and Industrial Applications Including Revisions through July 2015
536—97:	Flexible Metallic Hose— with revisions through December 2014
641—2010:	Type L, Low-temperature Venting Systems— with revisions through June 2013
651—2011:	Schedule 40 and Schedule 80 Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings—with revisions through May 2014
705—04:	Standard for Power Ventilators— with revisions through December 2013
723—08:	Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials— with revisions through August 2013
726—95:	Oil-fired Boiler Assemblies— with revisions through October 2013
727—06:	Oil-fired Central Furnaces— with revisions through October 2013
729—03:	Oil-fired Floor Furnaces— with revisions through October 2013
730—03:	Oil-fired Wall Furnaces— with revisions through October 2013
732—95:	Oil-fired Storage Tank Water Heaters— with revisions through October 2013
737—2011:	Fireplaces Stoves— with revisions through August 2015

UL	UL LLC 333 Pfingsten Road Northbrook, IL 60062
Standard referenced	**Title**
790—04:	Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings—with revisions through July 2014
795—2011:	Commercial-industrial Gas Heating Equipment—with revisions through November 2013
834—04:	Heating, Water Supply and Power Boilers—Electric—with revisions through December 2013
842—07:	Valves for Flammable Fluids—with revisions through May 2015
858—05:	Household Electric Ranges—with revisions through June 2015
875—09:	Electric Dry-bath Heaters—with revisions through December 2013
896—93:	Oil-burning Stoves—with revisions through November 2013
923—2013:	Microwave Cooking Appliances—with revisions through June 2015
959—2010:	Medium Heat Appliance Factory-built Chimneys—with revisions through June 2014
1026—2012:	Electric Household Cooking and Food Serving Appliances—with revisions through August 2015
1040—96:	Fire Test of Insulated Wall Construction—with revisions through October 2012
1042—2009:	Electric Baseboard Heating Equipment—with revisions through September 2014
1256—02:	Fire Test of Roof Deck Construction—with revisions through July 2013
1261—01:	Electric Water Heaters for Pools and Tubs—with revisions through July 2012
1479—03:	Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops—with revisions through June 2015
1482—2011:	Solid-Fuel-type Room Heaters—with revisions through August 2015
1563—2009:	Standard for Electric Spas, Hot Tubs and Associated Equipment—with revisions through March 2015
1618—09:	Wall Protectors, Floor Protectors, and Hearth Extensions—with revisions through October 2015

UL	UL LLC 333 Pfingsten Road Northbrook, IL 60062
Standard referenced	**Title**
1693—2010:	Electric Radiant Heating Panels and Heating Panel Sets—with revisions through October 2011
1703—02:	Flat-plate Photovoltaic Modules and Panels—with revisions through October 2015
1715—97:	Fire Test of Interior Finish Material—with revisions through January 2013
1738—2010:	Venting Systems for Gas-burning Appliances, Categories II, III and IV—with revisions through November 2014
1741—2010:	Inverters, Converters, Controllers and Interconnection System Equipment with Distributed Energy Resources—with revisions through January 2015
1777—07:	Chimney Liners—with revisions through October 2015
1897—12:	Uplift Tests for Roof Covering Systems—with revisions through September 2015
1995—2011:	Heating and Cooling Equipment—with revisions through July 2015
1996—2009:	Electric Duct Heaters—with revisions through June 2014
2034—08:	Standard for Single- and Multiple-station Carbon Monoxide Alarms—with revisions through March 2015
2075—2013:	Standard for Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors
2158A—2010:	Outline of Investigation for Clothes Dryer Transition Duct
2200-15	*Stationary engine generator assemblies*
2523—09:	Standard for Solid Fuel-fired Hydronic Heating Appliances, Water Heaters and Boilers—with revisions through February 2013
2703—14:	Mounting Systems, Mounting Devices, Clamping/Retention Devices and Ground Lugs for Use with Flat-Plate Photovoltaic Modules and Panels
9540—14:	Outline of Investigation for Energy Storage Systems and Equipment
UL/CSA/ANCE 60335-2-40—2012:	Standard for Household and Similar Electrical Appliances, Part 2: Particular Requirements for Motor-compressors

ULC	ULC 13775 Commerce Parkway Richmond, BC V6V 2V4
Standard referenced	**Title**
CAN/ULC S 102.2—2010:	Standard Methods for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials and Assemblies

US-FTC	United States-Federal Trade Commission 600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW Washington, DC 20580
Standard referenced	**Title**
CFR Title 16(2015):	R-value Rule

WDMA	Window and Door Manufacturers Association 2025 M Street NW, Suite 800 Washington, DC 20036-3309
Standard referenced	**Title**
AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/ I.S2/A440—17:	North American Fenestration Standard/ Specifications for Windows, Doors and Skylights
I.S. 11—13:	Industry Standard Analytical Method for Design Pressure (DP) Ratings of Fenestration Products

WMA	World Millwork Alliance (formerly Association of Millwork Distributors Standards AMD) 10047 Robert Trent Parkway New Port Richey, FL 34655-4649
Standard referenced	**Title**
ANSI WMA 100—2016:	Standard Method of Determining Structural Performance Ratings of Side Hinged Exterior Door Systems and Procedures for Component Substitution

Replaces:	4101:8-44-01
Effective:	7/1/2019
Five Year Review (FYR) Dates:	07/01/2024

CERTIFIED ELECTRONICALLY

Certification

12/14/2018

Date

Promulgated Under:	119.03
Statutory Authority:	3781.10(A)(1)
Rule Amplifies:	3781.01, 4740.14, 3791.04, 3781.11, 3781.10, 3781.06
Prior Effective Dates:	05/27/2006, 01/01/2008, 03/31/2008 (Emer.), 06/24/2008, 01/01/2009, 01/01/2013, 07/01/2014, 01/01/2016, 01/01/2018

Ohio | Department of Commerce
Ohio Board of Building Standards
John R. Kasich, Governor
Jacqueline T. Williams, Director

2019 RESIDENTIAL CODE OF OHIO
Effective Date: July 1, 2019

Residential Code of Ohio – Summary of Changes

ICC Model Codes - 2012, 2015 and 2018 International Residential Code

And other changes as adopted by Ohio Board of Building Standards

RCO Rule	RCO Section	Source	Description
4101:8-1-01	**Administration**		
	Chapter 1	BBS	Adopted entire Chapter as Ohio specific administrative process
	101.2 Scope	BBS	Includes electrical equipment coming from building services associated with bodies of water (pools, spas and ponds)
	101.2 – exemption #1	BBS	Exempt all work related to manufactured home as dwelling
	101.2 – exemption #12	BBS	Exempt poles and equipment not connected to building services
	101.2 – exemption #13	BBS	Exempt all work related to fixed or floating docks
	101.2 – exemption #14	BBS	Exempt retaining walls, bridges, site stairs – not required
	101.2 – exemption #15	BBS	Change #13 to #15 to address the application of OBC provisions to construction in a dwelling
	101.2 – exemption #16	BBS	Change #14 to #16 to clarify a commercial building using the RCO for construction criteria remains a commercial building
	101.5	BBS	Clarify – jurisdictions without a residential building dept.
	102.8.2	BBS	Clarify – non-required elevator and lift requirements
	102.10	BBS	Clarify – Exempt from approval / comply with provisions
			Add – battery operated alarms without other construction
			Add – process equipment – exempt from approval
	105.1.4	BBS	Clarify - phased approval
	111.1.2	BBS	Add a certificate of completion for alterations/repairs performed while building remains occupied
	113.5	BBS	Clarify alteration - replacement (not repair)
	113.6	BBS	Clarify alteration - repair (not minor)
	113.7.3	BBS	Include Type B family day care homes
	113.8	BBS	Clarify an IU becomes an existing building after initial install
	114.3.2.1	BBS	Add provision for use of Evaluation Service Reports (ES reports)
4101:8-2-01	**Definitions**		
202	Access (to)	2018	Clarification of difference between accessible and access to
	Accessory Structure	2015	Modify definition to remove size limitation. Previously adopted
	Alternating Tread Device	2015	Added definition
	Attic, Habitable	2018	Simplified definition
	Change of occupancy	2018	Added definition. Previously defined in Ohio. Keep Ohio def.
	CO Alarm	2018	Added definition
	CO Detector	2018	Added definition
	Crawl Space	2018	Added definition
	Fenestration	2018	Clarification – vertical fenestration, skylights and sloped glazing as applied to the RCO in general and Chapter 11 specifically
	Manufacturer's Installation Instructions	BBS	Clarification – expand the scope beyond "equipment" when instructions shall be followed.
	Ready Access (to)	2018	Clarification of difference between accessible and access to

Residential Code of Ohio –
Summary of Changes

ICC Model Codes - 2012, 2015 and 2018 International Residential Code

And other changes as adopted by Ohio Board of Building Standards

RCO Rule	RCO Section	Source	Description
	Solar - Energy System	2018	Added definition related to solar energy systems to clarify the related provisions in Chapters 3 and 9
	Solar - Thermal Collector	2018	
	Solar - Thermal System	2018	
	Structural Composite Lumber	2012	Adding definitions for LVL, PSL, LSL and OSL
	Townhouse	BBS	Deleted the term
	Windborne debris region	2012	Simplified definition. No regions in Ohio.
	Continuous insulation	2015/BBS	From Chapter 11 – Energy Efficiency Relocate all definitions to Chapter 2
	Insulated siding	2015/BBS	
	Insulted vinyl siding	2015/BBS	
	Air barrier	2018/BBS	
	Building Thermal Envelope	2018/BBS	
	Skylight	2018/BBS	
	Vertical fenestration	2018/BBS	
	Opaque Door	2018/BBS	
	Definitions – Fuel Gas	BBS	Move all definitions from Chapter 24 Fuel Gas to Chapter 2
4101:8-3-01	**Building Planning**		
	301.2	2015/18/BBS	**Table** 301.2(1) – Fixed constants for Ohio / Removed Man. J
	301.2	2015	Wind Design Maps updated for V_{ult}
	301.2	2018	**Figures** 301.2(2) & (3) – Added an area of SDC C
	301.2	2015	**Figure** 301.2(8) – Component and cladding pressure zones
	301.2	2015	**Table** 301.2(2) – Component and cladding loads
	301.2.1	2012	Wind design criteria – Clarify intent
Deleted	301.2.1.1	2012/BBS	Wind design limitations – not applicable in Ohio
	301.2.1.1.1	2015	Sunrooms – Category descriptions
Deleted	301.2.1.2	2012/15/ BBS	Opening protection -Windborne debris – not applicable in Ohio
	301.2.1.4	2015	Wind exposure – Reduced to three exposures – B, C & D
Deleted	301.2.1.5.1	2015/BBS	**Table** 301.2.1.5.1 – not applicable in Ohio
	301.2.2	2012	Seismic provisions
	301.2.2.1	2018	Seismic Design Category – Identified zone meeting Category "C" existing in Ohio. See **Figure**s 301.2(2) and 301.2(3)
	301.2.2.6	2018	Irregular Buildings – rearrange for ease of use
	301.2.4	2015	Floodplain construction – Must comply with most restrictive
	301.3	2015	Story Height – max.ht. 11'-7" for frame; 13'-7" for masonry
	301.5	2012	**Table** 301.5 Clarify attic live loads
	302.1	2012/15/18	Exterior walls
	302.2	2015/18/BBS	"Townhouse" replaced– separation – Ohio language retained
	302.2.2	2012/18/BBS	"Townhouse" replaced- parapet exception – moved to 302.2.4
	302.3	2018	Dwelling unit separation – Added use of OBC section 703.3
	302.4.2	2018	Membrane penetration – Listed luminaries permitted
	302.5.1	2012/18/BBS	Opening protection at garage door – no self-closing requirement.
	302.10	2018	Flame Spread - Insulation
	302.13	2015/18	Fire protection of floors-New location & Add electric heat
	303.4	2012	Ventilation-mechanical required under 5ACH
	303.5	2012	Ventilation-intake - 3' below if contaminant is <10'
	303.7	2015	Stairway illumination – Clarify – separate interior
	303.8	2015	Stairway illumination -Clarify – separate exterior
	304.1	2015	Habitable room area – minimum reduced to 70sf
	305	2015/BBS	Ceiling Height – minimum height reduced

Residential Code of Ohio –
Summary of Changes

ICC Model Codes - 2012, 2015 and 2018 International Residential Code

And other changes as adopted by Ohio Board of Building Standards

RCO Rule	RCO Section	Source	Description
	308.4	2012	Glazing-hazardous locations
	308.4.2	2015/18	Glazing-safety at doors
	308.4.4.1	2018	Glazing in Guards & Railings
	308.4.5	2012/15	Glazing-wet locations
	308.4.6	2012	Glazing-stairway/ramp adjacent
	308.4.7	2012/15	Glazing-stairway/ramp landing
	309.5	2012	Sprinklers in private garages
	310	2015	Emergency/rescue – Reorganized -separate windows & doors
	310.1	2012/18	Emergency/rescue – sill height / added exception w/FP
	310.2.3.2	2012/15	Drainage-window wells
	310.3	2018	Area wells for Emergency/rescue doors
	310.5	2015	Emergency/rescue – Addition requirements
	310.6	2015	Emergency/rescue – Alteration requirements
	311.1	2015	Means of egress –egress door opens to public way
	311.3.1	2012	Egress door-floor elevation
	311.7.1	2018	Handrail projection
	311.7.3	2015/18/BBS	Stair rise (maximum) – increased to 148-1/2" flr/flr
	311.7.5	2012/15/BBS	Stair-treads & risers – Keep at 9"T and 8-1/4"R
	311.7.5.1	2015	Stair-riser – Open riser requirements
	311.7.5.3	2018	Stair nosings – Clarify must be consistent through stair
	311.7.6	2012	Stair-landings
	311.7.8	2018	Handrail projection
	311.7.10.1	2015	Stair-spiral – Tread measured at walkline - redefined
	311.7.11	2015	Stair-alternating tread devices – New
	311.7.12	2015	Stair-Ships ladder - New
	311.8	2015/BBS	Ramps – slope – Keep slope 1:8
	312	2012	Guards - window fall protection moved from Chapter 6
	312.1.1	2018	Guards – Clarify where required
	312.1.2	2015	Guards - height
	312.2.1	2015/BBS	Window - fall protect – not required/Option-must comply
	314	2012/15/18/BBS	Smoke alarms – Keep Ohio technology requirements
	315	2012/15/18/BBS	CO detection systems –interconnection not required in Ohio
	316.4	2012	Thermal barrier – New referenced standard
	316.5.13	2012	Thermal barrier - floors
	317.1	2018	Fastener in treated wood
	320.1.1	2015	Transient occupancy guestrooms use OBC Chapter 11
	322.1	2015	Hazard-flood - substantial damage
	322.2	2015	Hazard-flood - elevation requirements
	322.3	2015/18	Coastal high-hazard
	324	2015/18	New &expanded section – Solar energy
	324.4	2018	Photovoltaic - Roof mount
	324.6	2018	Photovoltaic - Roof access
	324.6.2.2	2018	Photovoltaic - Roof escape
Deleted	325	2015/BBS	Mezzanines -
Deleted	325.3	2018/BBS	Mezzanines -
Deleted	325.6	2018/BBS	Habitable attics -
Deleted	326	2015/BBS	Swimming pools, spas and hot tubs
	327	2018	New section - Stationary storage battery systems
	328	BBS	Relocate post frame, accessory structure, prescriptive requirements

Residential Code of Ohio –
Summary of Changes

ICC Model Codes - 2012, 2015 and 2018 International Residential Code

And other changes as adopted by Ohio Board of Building Standards

RCO Rule	RCO Section	Source	Description
4101:8-4-01	**Foundations**		
	403.1.1	2015	Footing size – Expanded table and added depth
Deleted	403.1.2	2015/BBS	Footing – Continuous in SDC D – not applicable in Ohio
Deleted	403.1.3	2015/BBS	Footing – Reinforcing requirements in SDC D – not applicable in Ohio
	403.1.4.1	BBS	Deleted exceptions 1 and 2.
	403.1.6	2015/BBS	Foundation anchor – middle third – not adopted
	403.3(1)	2018	Update Table notes - R values
	403.4	2018	Added width to Table
Deleted	404.1.4	2015/BBS	Foundation - masonry SDC D - not applicable in Ohio
	404.1.9	2012	Foundation - isolated masonry pier -New
	404.4	2015	Retaining walls – revised thresholds triggering enforcement
	405.1	2012	Foundation – drainage, add filter fabric to perforated pipe
	408.3	2015	Added dehumidification in unvented crawl space
4101:8-5-01	**Floors**		
	501.3	2012	Fire protection-floor. Previously adopted. Moved to 302.13
	502.3.1	2015	**Table** 503.3.1(1)
		2015	**Table** 503.3.1(2)
	502.1	2015	Framing of floor openings.
	502.6.3	BBS	Stabilizing provision for steel beams in open pockets
	502.9.1	BBS	Stabilizing provision for steel columns
	505.3.2	2018	Update span Tables - Cold form light gage steel framing
	507	2012	Decks - Create a section for deck construction
	507.1	2015/18	Focus scope
	507.2	2015/18	Deck materials
	507.2.4	2015	Deck-alt lateral connect. Moved in model code reorganization to 507.9.2
	507.3	2018	Deck footings
	507.4	2015/18	Deck posts
	507.5	2015/18	Deck beams
	507.6	2015/18	Deck joists
	507.7	2015/18	Decking
	507.8	2015/18	Vertical and Lateral supports
	507.9	2012/2018/BBS	Ledgers and band joists. Tension anchor permitted - not required
4101:8-6-01	**Wall construction**		
	602.3 **Table** 602.3(1)	2012	Update structural. member fastening – expanded options
		2015	Update roof fastening – expanded options
		2015	Updated wall fastening – expanded options
		2015	Updated floor fastening – expanded options
	602.3.1	2015/18	Stud-size, height & spacing; Tables 602.3(5) and 602.3(6)
	602.7	2012/15/18	Headers
	602.7.1	2012	Headers-single member
	602.7.5	2018	Updated & Expanded Table
	602.10	2012	Bracing – Previously adopted, no change
	602.10.1	2012	Bracing-wall lines – Previously adopted, no change
	602.10.2	2012	Bracing-wall panels – Previously adopted, no change

Residential Code of Ohio –
Summary of Changes

ICC Model Codes - 2012, 2015 and 2018 International Residential Code

And other changes as adopted by Ohio Board of Building Standards

RCO Rule	RCO Section	Source	Description
	602.10.3	2012/15/18	Bracing-length required. Update **Table**s 602.10.3(1) and (4)
	602.10.4	2012	Bracing methods – Previously adopted, no change
	602.10.4.1	2018	Bracing- Mixing methods. New section to address multiple methods in one building
	602.10.5	2012/15	Bracing-length minimum. Update **Table** 602.10.5
	602.10.6	2012	Bracing-Methods – New in 2012. Previously adopted, no change
	602.10.6.1	2012	Bracing – Method ABW. Previously adopted, no change
	602.10.6.2	2012	Bracing - Method PFH. Previously adopted, no change
	602.10.6.3	2012	Bracing – Method PFG. Previously adopted, no change
	602.10.6.4	2012/18	Bracing – Method CS-PF. Modified Figure – add note "continuous sheathing"
Deleted	602.10.6.5	2012/BBS	Bracing-masonry. SDC D not applicable in Ohio
	602.10.7	2012	Bracing - wall lines – sheathing. Previously adopted, no change
	602.10.9	2012	Bracing - panel support. Previously adopted, no change
Deleted	602.10.9.1	2015/BBS	Bracing - SDC D- not applicable in Ohio (refer 403.1.2)
	602.10.11	2015	Bracing - cripple wall
	602.12	2012/15	Bracing - simplified
	602.12.6	2012	Bracing - simplified—Narrow panel. Previously adopted, no change
	603.3.1	2018	Updated Table for V-ult
	603.3.1.1	2018	Updated Table for V-ult
	603.9.5	2015	Sheathing - structural/masonry for SDC C
	606	2015	Masonry walls – reorganized and expanded
	606.3.3	2012/15	Wall ties - installation
	606.3.5	2015	Grouting - masonry
	607	2015	New section - Glass unit masonry
	610	2018	Structural Insulted Panels (SIP). Reorganized Section
	610.7	2015	SIP-drilling & notching. Updated provisions
4101:8-7-01	**Wall covering**		Reorganized
	702.7	2015	Vapor retarder – relocated from Chapter 6
	703.2	2018	Clarify Water resistive barrier
	703.3	2015	Cladding – thickness & attachment
	703.3.1	2018	Soffit installation
	703.5	2015	Cladding – wood, hardboard, SIP
	703.6	2015	Cladding – wood shake/shingle
	703.7.3.2	2012	Cladding – masonry lintel
	703.7.4	2012	Cladding – masonry anchorage
	703.7.4.2	2012	Cladding – masonry grout fill
	703.8	2012	Cladding - flashing
	703.8.4	2018	Added Table - Veneer anchorage
			Air space. - May contain mortar from construction activities
	703.9	2015	Cladding - EIFS
	703.11.1	2015	Cladding –

Residential Code of Ohio –
Summary of Changes

ICC Model Codes - 2012, 2015 and 2018 International Residential Code

And other changes as adopted by Ohio Board of Building Standards

RCO Rule	RCO Section	Source	Description
			vinyl attachment
	703.11.2	2018	Modify installation with foam and add Table
	703.12	2012	Cladding – masonry-adhered
	703.13	2015	Cladding – insulated vinyl
	703.14	2015	Cladding - polypropylene
	703.15	2015	Cladding – attachment wood
	703.16	2015	Cladding - attachment
	703.17	2015	Cladding – attachment masonry
4101:8-8-01	**Roof-ceiling construction**		
	802	2018	Reorganize section
	802.1.5.4	2018	Fire retardant treated. Add labeling requirement
	802.4	2015	Change to **Rafter** maximum spans **Table** 802.4
	802.5	2015	Change to **Ceiling joist** maximum spans **Table** 802.5
	802.7	2012	Roof – Structure. Cutting, drilling and notching provisions
	802.11	2012	Roof – uplift. Expanded tables; separated rafters and trusses
	806	2012	Roof - ventilation
	806.1	2015	Ventilation - attic
	806.2	2018	Clarify - minimum venting area
	806.5	2012/15/18	Attic - unvented,
4101:8-9-01	**Roof covering**		
	903.2.1	2012	Flashings - roof (locations)
	903.2.2	2012	Crickets/saddles
	905.1.1	2015	Underlayment – consolidated separate sections into one including ice barriers
	905.2.7.2	2012	Underlayment - high wind requirements
	905.2.8.3	2012	Flashing sidewall
	905.2.8.5	2012/BBS	Drip edge – refer to manufactures instructions for application
	905.7.5	2015	Wood shingle application - fasteners
	905.8.6	2015	Wood shake application - fasteners
	905.16	2015	New section - Photo voltaic shingles
	905.17	2018	New section - Building integrated PV panels
	907	2015	New section - Photo voltaic-roof mounted system
	908	2012/15	Roof recovering versus replacement
4101:8-10-01	**Chimneys and fireplaces**		
	1003.9.1	2012	Caps - masonry chimney.
	1003.9.3	2012	Caps – rain. Not required, applies when installed
	1005.7	2012	Chimney offsets - factory built
	1005.8	2018	Insulation shield
4101:8-11-01	**Energy efficiency**		
	1101		See comparison chart by BBS
	1101.2	2012/BBS	Compliance path options
	1101.6	BBS	Moved definitions to Chapter 2

Residential Code of Ohio –
Summary of Changes

ICC Model Codes - 2012, 2015 and 2018 International Residential Code

And other changes as adopted by Ohio Board of Building Standards

RCO Rule	RCO Section	Source	Description
		2018	Modified definition - Air barrier
			Modified definition - Building Thermal Envelope
		2015	Added Definition. - Continuous insulation
			Added Definition - Insulated siding
			Added Definition - Insulted vinyl siding
		2018	Added Definition - Skylight (energy)
			Added Definition. - Opaque Door (energy)
	1101.10.3	2018	Modified **Table**s 1101.10.3(1) & (2) – Titles only
	1101.13	2015/BBS	Moved compliance path options to 1101.2
	1101.14	2015	Certificate - permanent
	1101.15	2012/15/BBS	Created compliance path in 2012. Moved in 2015. See 1101.2
	1102.1	2018	Log homes - ICC-400 (exempt)
		BBS	New section 1107 Existing buildings
	1102.1.2	2018	Modified Table–All fenestration, ceiling and mass wall values. Frame walls in zone 4 only
		BBS	Foundation wall insulation value kept at R= 10/13
	1102.1.4	2018	Modified Table - All fenestration, ceiling and mass wall values. Frame walls in zone 4 only
		BBS	Foundation wall insulation value kept at U= 0.059 and 0.065
	1102.1.3	2015	R-value for insulated cladding
	1102.2.2	2018	Clarify application of exception
	1102.2.4	2015	Access hatch & door
	1102.2.5	2018	Clarify mass wall requirements
	1102.2.6	2018	Modified light steel framing insulation equivalent
	1102.2.7	2015	R-value reduction – **Table** 1102.1.2
	1102.2.8	2015	Insulation of floor cavity – **Table** 1102.4.1.1
	1102.4	2018	Update testing standard
			5 ACH - Delete 3rd party requirement for testing
	1102.4.1.1	2015	Clarify insulation at corners & headers – **Table** 1102.4.1.1
		BBS	Clarify requirement for narrow cavities - **Table** 1102.4.1.1
	1102.4.2	2015	WBFP doors – **Table** 1102.4.1.1
	1103.3	2015/18	Duct sealing and & testing requirements. Clarify exceptions
	1103.3.2	2015	Remove testing
	1103.3.3	2015	Add testing
	1103.3.4	2015	Add duct leakage
	1103.3.5	2015/BBS	Permit non-ducted RA only in framing cavity
	1103.3.6	2018	Ducts - Buried & deeply buried
	1103.3.7	2018	Ducts - in conditioned space
	1103.5	2018	HW circulation & temperature maintenance system
	1104.1	2018	Modification to requirement for high efficacy lamps
	1106.3	2018	ERI ventilation rate
	1106.4	2018	Modify Table - ERI numbers
	1107.1	BBS	Clarify 113 supersedes 1107.1 if in conflict
	1107.4	BBS	Existing building compliance alternative
	1108.1.1.1	BBS	Except – Existing building thermal envelope
	1112	BBS	Keep OHBA options for energy efficiency
	1112.2.4.2.1	BBS	Modify air leakage rate to 5 ACH
	1112.4	BBS	Modify required high efficacy lamps

Residential Code of Ohio –
Summary of Changes

ICC Model Codes - 2012, 2015 and 2018 International Residential Code

And other changes as adopted by Ohio Board of Building Standards

RCO Rule	RCO Section	Source	Description
4101:8-12-01	**Mechanical administration**		
4101:8-13-01	**General mechanical system requirements**		
	1301	2012	Add identification and certification for pipe, tubing, & fittings
	1305.1.1	2018	Delete this provision for access to furnace in a compartment
	1305.1.3.2	2018	Modify requirements for appliances in pits
4101:8-14-01	**Heating and cooling equipment**		
	1411.6	2012	Add locking requirement for port cap access.
	1411.8	2015	Relocate from 1411.6
4101:8-15-01	**Exhaust systems**		
	1502.3.1	2018	Modify dryer exhaust termination
	1502.4	2012	Modify requirements for dryer exhaust duct.
	1502.4.2	2018	Modify concealed dryer duct
	1502.4.4	2015	Added requirements for use of power vent in dryer exhaust
	1502.4.5	2015	Added length per manufacturer when power vent is used
	1502.4.6	2015	Modify duct length labeling. All ducts over 35' equivalent length
	1503	2018	Clarify, reorganize and modify domestic cooking exhaust
	1503.4	2015	Range hood-make-up air requirements.
	1503.6	2018	Relocate from 1503.4. Modify make up air requirements
	1504	2018	Moved to microwave ovens to 1503.2. Relocate and modify 1506 exhaust ducts to 1504
	1505	2018	Moved to overhead exhaust hoods to 1503.2.1. Relocate and modify 1507 mechanical ventilation to 1505
	1506	2012	Added minimum clearance requirement for exhaust opening.
	1506.2	2015	Vent - exhaust duct length. Add **Table** 1506.2
	1507	2012	Added prescriptive design criteria for mechanical ventilation
4101:8-16-01	**Duct systems**		
	1601.1	2012	Modify requirement for duct design per Manual D when installed
	1601.1.1	2012/15	Modify duct construction to follow SMACNA
	1601.1.2	2018	Modify underground duct – Seal and test
	1601.2	2015	Move factory made duct 1601.1.1- #2
	1601.4	2015	Duct-installation
	1601.4.1	2012	Duct-joints, seams & connect
	1602	2015	Modify/reorganize Outdoor/RA
	1602.2	2012/15	Prohibited O/A and R/A locations. Change title
4101:8-19-01	**Special fuel burning equipment**		
	1901	2012/18	Modify clearance requirements for ranges and ovens
4101:8-21-01	**Hydronic piping**		
	2101.9	2018	Modify PEX tubing hanger spacing
	2101.10	2018	Modify Pressure testing. Exception for when testing PEX
	2103.2	2018	Modify radiant floor thermal barrier. In accordance with Chap 11

Residential Code of Ohio – Summary of Changes

ICC Model Codes - 2012, 2015 and 2018 International Residential Code

And other changes as adopted by Ohio Board of Building Standards

RCO Rule	RCO Section	Source	Description
4101:8-23-01	**Solar thermal systems**		Keep section limited to solar thermal energy (2015)
	2301	2012/18	Add thermal solar energy requirements. Add protections & access
	2302	2012	Add photovoltaic solar energy system requirements
		2015	Delete Photovoltaics – include in other code sections
4101:8-24-01	**Fuel gas**		
	2403	BBS	Move all definitions to Chapter 2
	2404.11	2015	Add condensate pump requirements
	2406.2	2018	Added an exception to prohibited location of appliance.
	2409.1	2012	Clarification to include gypsum board as a combustible material
	2411.1.1	2015	Add bonding requirements for (CSST). Previously adopted
	2411.2	2018	Renumber CSST sections
	2411.3	2018	Add Arc resistant CSST
	2412	2012	Add requirements for pipe identification & certification
	2412.10	BBS	Pipe material testing and certification per Ohio process.
	2413.2	2015	Modify calculation for maximum gas demand
	2414.4.2	2018	Modify to allow schedule 10 piping
	2414.6	2015	Modify to prohibit PVC & CPVC for pipe, tubing & fittings
	2414.10.1	2018	Modify to allow press connect fittings
	2415	2012	Add requirements for CSST identification & certification. Previously adopted
	2415.5	2015	Clarify permitted fittings in concealed locations
	2415.7	2015	Modify protection of piping in concealed locations
	2415.11	2018	Reorganize section and add corrosion protection requirements
	2419.4	2012	Add **Figure** 2419.4 to clarify sediment trap installation
	2420.5.1	2018	Clarify - Shut off valve location behind moveable appliance is ok
	2420.6	2018	Add requirement to support shut off valve in tubing systems
	2421.2	2015	Modify regulator (medium pressure) installed with unions
	2422.1	2015	Add referenced standard for portable outdoor appliance connect.
	2426.7.1	2015	Add door swing clearance at vent terminals
	2427.4.1	2015	Modify use of listed plastic vent piping is per manufacturers instruction
	2427.6.8.3	2015	Modify size of listed plastic vent piping is per manufacturers instruction
	2427.8	2015	Modify to include new requirements for sidewall vent systems
	2439.4	2015	Added requirements for use of power vent in dryer exhaust
	2439.7	2015	Added length per manufacturer when power vent is used
			Modify duct length labeling. All ducts over 35’ equivalent length
	2442.2	2018	Remove prescriptive duct sizing in favor of other sizing methods
	2442.4	2012	Modify the prohibited locations for outside & return air
	2447.2	2015/18	Add exceptions to prohibited location of commercial appliance
4101:8-25-01	**Plumbing systems**		
	All sections in 4101:8-25-01 through 4101:8-33-01 except 4101:8-29-01 (see below)	BBS	Delete all model code sections. Adopt the Ohio plumbing code with an effective date of Nov. 1, 2017 and include Ohio modifications from Chapter 25 and Chapter 29 of the RCO to replace model code provisions for plumbing systems
4101:8-29-01	**Water supply and distribution**		

Residential Code of Ohio –
Summary of Changes

ICC Model Codes - 2012, 2015 and 2018 International Residential Code

And other changes as adopted by Ohio Board of Building Standards

RCO Rule	RCO Section	Source	Description
	2904.2.4.2	2012	Sprinkler obstruction minimum distance.
	2904.3.2	BBS	Permit shut-off valves per 13D requirements
4101:8-34-01	**General requirements**		
	All sections in 4101:8-34-01 through 4101:8-43-01	BBS	Delete all model code sections. Adopt the NFPA 70 (National Electric Code, 2017 edition) as the referenced standard and include Ohio modifications from Chapter 34 to replace model code provisions for electric systems
4101:8-44-01	**Referenced standards**		
	All referenced standards	BBS	Update to current edition. Delete non-applicable standards